READING THE MIDDLE AGES

SOURCES FROM EUROPE, BYZANTIUM, AND THE ISLAMIC WORLD

EDITED BY BARBARA H. ROSENWEIN • THIRD EDITION

READING THE MIDDLE AGES

This page intentionally left blank

READING THE MIDDLE AGES

SOURCES FROM EUROPE, BYZANTIUM, AND THE ISLAMIC WORLD

EDITED BY BARBARA H. ROSENWEIN • THIRD EDITION

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO PRESS

Toronto Buffalo London

Copyright © University of Toronto Press 2018

utorontopress.com

All rights reserved. The use of any part of this publication reproduced, transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, or stored in a retrieval system, without prior written consent of the publisher—or in the case of photocopying, a licence from Access Copyright (the Canadian Copyright Licensing Agency) 320–56 Wellesley Street West, Toronto, Ontario, M5S 2S3—is an infringement of the copyright law.

LIBRARY AND ARCHIVES CANADA CATALOGUING IN PUBLICATION

Reading the Middle Ages: sources from Europe, Byzantium, and the Islamic world / edited by Barbara H. Rosenwein. — Third edition.

Includes bibliographical references and index.
Issued in print and electronic formats.
ISBN 978-1-4426-3674-3 (hardcover).—ISBN 978-1-4426-3673-6 (softcover).—
ISBN 978-1-4426-3675-0 (PDF).—ISBN 978-1-4426-3676-7 (HTML)

1. Middle Ages—Sources. I. Rosenwein, Barbara H., editor

D113.R38 2018 909.07 C2018-900016-3
C2018-900017-1

We welcome comments and suggestions regarding any aspect of our publications—please feel free to contact us at news@utphighereducation.com or visit our Internet site at www.utorontopress.com.

North America
5201 Dufferin Street
North York, Ontario, Canada, M3H 5T8

2250 Military Road
Tonawanda, New York, USA, 14150

UK, Ireland, and continental Europe
NBN International
Estover Road, Plymouth, PL6 7PY, UK
ORDERS PHONE: 44 (0) 1752 202301
ORDERS FAX: 44 (0) 1752 202333
ORDERS E-MAIL: enquiries@nbninternational.com

ORDERS PHONE: 1–800–565–9523
ORDERS FAX: 1–800–221–9985
ORDERS E-MAIL: utpbooks@utpress.utoronto.ca

Every effort has been made to contact copyright holders; in the event of an error or omission, please notify the publisher.

The University of Toronto Press acknowledges the financial support for its publishing activities of the Government of Canada through the Canada Book Fund.

Printed in Canada.

Funded by the Government of Canada | Financé par le gouvernement du Canada | Canada

For Frank and Amy

IMPORTANT PLACES
MENTIONED
IN THE SOURCES

Yet research continues, and it continues to be fruitful, because historians are not passive instruments, and because they read the same old documents with fresh eyes and with new questions in mind.

Georges Duby, *History Continues*

This page intentionally left blank

Contents

Reading through Looking xvi
Preface xvii
Abbreviations and Symbols xix
Authorized Version of the Bible xx

I PRELUDE: THE ROMAN WORLD TRANSFORMED (*c.*300–*c.*600)

A Christianized Empire
1.1 Toleration or favoritism? *The Edict of Milan* (313) 1
1.2 Law: *The Theodosian Code* (438) 4
1.3 Plague: Gregory the Great, *Letter to Bishop Dominic of Carthage* (600) 6

Heresy and Orthodoxy
1.4 Heretics: *Manichaean Texts* (before 350?) 8
1.5 Orthodoxy's declaration: *The Nicene Creed* (325) 11

Patristic Thought
1.6 Conversion: Augustine, *Confessions* (397–401) 12
1.7 Relating this world to the next: Augustine, *The City of God* (413–426) 16
1.8 Monasticism: *The Benedictine Rule* (*c.*530–*c.*560) 20

Saintly Models
1.9 The virginal life: Jerome, *Letter 24 (To Marcella)* (384) 28
1.10 The eremitical life: Athanasius, *The Life of St. Antony of Egypt* (357) 30
1.11 The active life: Sulpicius Severus, *The Life of St. Martin of Tours* (397) 35
1.12 The cult of saints: Gregory of Tours, *The Life of Monegundis* (580s) 38

Barbarian Kingdoms
1.13 Gothic Italy as Rome's heir: Cassiodorus, *Variae* (*State Papers*) (*c.*507–536) 41
1.14 The conversion of the Franks: Bishop Avitus of Vienne, *Letter to Clovis* (508?) 43
1.15 Gothic Spain converts: *The Third Council of Toledo* (589) 44
1.16 Merovingian Gaul's bishop-historian: Gregory of Tours, *Histories* (576–594) 48

Timeline for Chapter One 53

II THE EMERGENCE OF SIBLING CULTURES (*c.*600–*c.*750)

The Resilience of Byzantium

2.1 The Siege of Constantinople: *The Easter Chronicle* (630) 55
Map 2.1: The Siege of Constantinople 56
2.2 Purifying practice: *The Quinisext Council* (691/692) 60
2.3 The iconoclastic argument: *The Synod of 754* 62

The Formation of the Islamic World

2.4 The sacred text: *Qur'an Suras* 1, 53:1–18, 81, 87, 96, 98 (*c.*610–622) 66
2.5 Muslim conquests: John of Nikiu, *Chronicle* (*c.*690) 69
Map 2.2: The Muslim Conquest of Egypt 70
2.6 Umayyad diplomacy: *The Treaty of Tudmir* (713) 78
2.7 Administration: *Letters to 'Abd Allah b. As'ad* (*c.*730–750) 79
2.8 Praising the caliph: Al-Akhtal, *The Tribe Has Departed* (*c.*692) 82

The Impoverished but Inventive West

2.9 The private penitential tradition: *Penitential of Finnian* (late 6th cent.) 85
2.10 A royal saint: *The Life of Queen Balthild* (*c.*680) 88
2.11 Reforming the continental Church: *Letters to Boniface* (723–726) 92
2.12 Creating a Roman Christian identity for England: Bede, *The Ecclesiastical History of the English People* (731) 95

Timeline for Chapter Two 104

III CREATING NEW IDENTITIES (*c.*750–*c.*900)

The Material Basis of Society

3.1 Manors in the West: *Polyptyque of the Church of Saint Mary of Marseille* (814–815) 105
3.2 The Byzantine countryside: Niketas, *The Life of Saint Philaretos* (821/822) 107
3.3 The sale of a slave in Italy: *A Contract of Sale* (725) 114

A Multiplicity of Heroes

3.4 Charlemagne as Roman emperor: Einhard, *Life of Charlemagne* (825–826?) 115
3.5 An Abbasid victory in verse: Abu Tammam, *The sword gives truer tidings* (838) 124
3.6 Mothers and fathers: Dhuoda, *Handbook for Her Son* (841–843) 128
3.7 A Christian hero in northern Iberia: *The Chronicle of Alfonso III* (early 880s) 132
3.8 Celebrating local leaders: Abbo of Saint-Germain-des-Prés, *Battles of the City of Paris* (late 9th cent.) 135

Religion and Politics

3.9 An early view of the Prophet: Muhammad ibn Ishaq, *Life of Muhammad* (754–767) 143
3.10 Muhammad's words in the hadith: Al-Bukhari, *On Fasting* (9th cent.) 147
3.11 The pope and the Carolingians: Pope Stephen II, *Letters to King Pippin III* (755–756) 151
3.12 Modeling the state on Old Testament Israel: *The Admonitio Generalis* (789) 159
3.13 The Slavic conversion: Constantine-Cyril, *Prologue to the Gospel* (863–867) 161
3.14 The Bulgarian khan in Byzantine guise: *Seal of Boris-Michael* (864–889) 163
3.15 The Bulgarians adopt Christianity: Pope Nicholas I, *Letter to Answer the Bulgarians' Questions* (866) 164

Timeline for Chapter Three 169

IV POLITICAL COMMUNITIES REORDERED (*c.*900–*c.*1050)

Regionalism: Its Advantages and Its Discontents

4.1 Fragmentation in the Islamic world: Al-Tabari, *The Defeat of the Zanj Revolt* (*c.*915) 171
4.2 The powerful in the Byzantine countryside: Romanus I Lecapenus, *Novel* (934) 177
4.3 Evanescent centralization in al-Andalus: Ibn ʿAbd Rabbihi, *Praise Be to Him* (929–940) 179
4.4 Donating to Cluny: Cluny's *Foundation Charter* (910) and various charters of donation (10th–11th cent.) 184
Genealogy 4.1: The Grossi 184
4.5 Love and complaints in Angoulême: *Agreement between Count William of the Aquitainians and Hugh IV of Lusignan* (1028) 190
4.6 The Peace of God at Bourges: Andrew of Fleury, *The Miracles of St. Benedict* (1040–1043) 196

Byzantium in Ascendance

4.7 Patronage of the arts: "Theophanes Continuatus," *Constantine VII Porphyrogenitus* (before 963) 198
4.8 The toils of war: *The Epitaph of Basil II* (1025) 199
4.9 Imperial rule under two sisters: Michael Psellus, *Zoe and Theodora* (before 1063) 200

Scholarship and the Arts across the Islamic World

4.10 Political theory: Al-Farabi, *The Perfect State* (*c.*940–942) 205
4.11 A Jewish poet in al-Andalus: Dunash ben Labrat, *There Came a Voice* (mid-10th cent.) 208
4.12 Education: Al-Qabisi, *A Treatise Detailing the Circumstances of Students and the Rules Governing Teachers and Students* (before 1012) 210

Kingdoms in East Central Europe

4.13 Hungary as heir of Rome: King Stephen, *Laws* (1000–1038) 213
4.14 Coming to terms with Catholic Poland: Thietmar of Merseburg, *Chronicle* (1013–1018) 218
4.15 Poland's self-image: *Boleslaw's Coin* (992–1000) 222
4.16 Kievan Rus': *The Russian Primary Chronicle* (*c.*1113, incorporating earlier materials) 222

Northern Europe

4.17 An Ottonian courtier-bishop: Ruotger, *Life of Bruno, Archbishop of Cologne* (late 960s) 224
4.18 Law: King Æthelred II, *Law Code* (1008) 228
4.19 Christianity comes to Denmark: *The Jelling Monument* (960s) 231
4.20 The Vikings as enemies: *The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* (*c.*1048?) 233
Map 4.1: Southern England 233
4.21 The Vikings as heroes: *Egil's Saga* (10th cent./13th cent.) 235

Timeline for Chapter Four 240

V NEW CONFIGURATIONS (*c.*1050–*c.*1150)

The Seljuk Transformation

5.1 The Seljuks as enemies: Abu'l-Fazl Beyhaqi, *The Battle of Dandanqan* (before 1077) 241
Map 5.1: The Early Seljuk Empire 242
5.2 Shiʿites vilified: Nizam al-Mulk, *The Book of Policy* (1091) 244

A Profit Economy

5.3 Cultivating new lands: *Frederick of Hamburg's Agreement with Colonists from Holland* (1106) 246
5.4 Urban commerce: Ibn ʿAbdun, *Regulations for the Market at Seville* (early 12th cent.) 247
5.5 The role of royal patronage: Henry I, *Privileges for the Citizens of London* (1130–1133) 250

Church Reform

5.6 The pope's challenge: Gregory VII, *Admonition to Henry IV* (1075) 251
5.7 The royal response: Henry IV, *Letter to Gregory VII* (1075) 253
5.8 The papal view: Gregory VII, *Letter to Hermann of Metz* (1076) 255

The Clergy in Action

5.9 Dressing for the liturgy: *Vesting Prayers* (*c.*1000?) 257
5.10 Keeping tabs: *A Visitation Record* (1268) 259

The First Crusade

5.11 Calling the crusade: Robert the Monk, *Pope Urban II Preaches the First Crusade* (1095) 261
5.12 Jewish martyrs: Solomon bar Samson, *Chronicle* (*c.*1140) 263
5.13 A Westerner in the Holy Land: Stephen of Blois, *Letter to His Wife* (March 1098) 266

READING THROUGH LOOKING (for contents see p. xvi)

5.14 The Muslim view: Ibn al-Qalanisi, *The Damascus Chronicle of the Crusades* (before 1160) 269

The Norman Conquest of England

5.15 The pro-Norman position: William of Jumièges, *The Deeds of the Dukes of the Normans* (*c.*1070) 271
5.16 The native position: "Florence of Worcester," *Chronicle of Chronicles* (early 12th cent.) 272
5.17 The Conquest depicted: *The Bayeux Tapestry* (end of the 11th cent.) 274
5.18 Exploiting the Conquest: *Domesday Book* (1087) 275

The Twelfth-Century Renaissance

5.19 Logic: Peter Abelard, *Glosses on Porphyry* (*c.*1100) 278
5.20 Medical science: Constantine the African's translation of Johannitius's *Isagoge* (before 1098) 280

Cluniacs and Cistercians

5.21 The Cistercian view: St. Bernard, *Apologia* (1125) 284
5.22 The Cluniac view: Peter the Venerable, *Miracles* (mid-1130s–mid-1150s) 288

Timeline for Chapter Five 290

VI INSTITUTIONALIZING ASPIRATIONS (*c.*1150–*c.*1250)

Wars Holy and Unholy

6.1 The Northern Crusades: Helmold, *The Chronicle of the Slavs* (1167–1168) 291
6.2 Saladin's *jihad*: Ibn Shaddad, *The Rare and Excellent History of Saladin* (1195–1216) 294
6.3 The Fourth Crusade: Nicetas Choniates, *O City of Byzantium* (*c.*1215) 298

Grounding Justice in Royal Law

6.4 English common law: *The Assize of Clarendon* (1166) 302
6.5 The legislation of a Spanish king: *The Laws of Cuenca* (1189–1193) 305

Local Arrangements

6.6 A Byzantine monastery on Cyprus: Neophytos, *Testamentary Rule* for the Hermitage of the Holy Cross (1214) 310
6.7 Doing business: *A Genoese societas* (1253) 316
6.8 Women's work: *Guild Regulations of the Parisian Silk Fabric Makers* (13th cent.) 317

Bureaucracy at the Papal Curia

6.9 The growth of papal business: Innocent III, *Letters* (1200–1202) 318
6.10 Petitioning the papacy: *Register of Thomas of Hereford* (1281) 320
6.11 Mocking the papal bureaucracy: *The Gospel According to the Marks of Silver* (*c.*1200) 322

Confrontations

6.12 Henry II and Becket: *The Constitutions of Clarendon* (1164) 323
6.13 Emperor and pope: *The Diet of Besançon* (1157) 326
6.14 King and nobles: *Magna Carta* (1215) 330

New Literary Forms

6.15 Byzantine romantic fiction: Niketas Eugenianos, *Drosilla and Charikles* (*c.*1156) 336
6.16 Love and propriety in al-Andalus: Anonymous, *The Tale of Bayad and Riyad* (early 13th cent.) 344
6.17 A troubadour love song: Bernart de Ventadorn, *When I see the lark* (*c.*1147–after 1172) 350
6.18 A trobairitz love song: La Comtessa de Dia, *I have been in heavy grief* (late 12th–early 13th cent.) 352
6.19 A political song from the south of France: Bertran de Born, *Half a sirventés I'll sing* (1190) 353
6.20 Fabliaux: *The Piece of Shit* and *The Ring That Controlled Erections* (13th cent.) 354
6.21 Romance: Chrétien de Troyes, *Lancelot* (*c.*1177–1181) 356

Developments in Religious Sensibilities

6.22 Disciplining and purifying Christendom: *Decrees of Lateran IV* (1215) 366
6.23 Devotion through poverty: Peter Waldo in *The Chronicle of Laon* (1173–1178) 371
6.24 Devotion through mysticism: Jacques de Vitry, *The Life of Mary of Oignies* (1213) 373
6.25 The mendicant movement: St. Francis, *A Rule for Hermitages* (1217–1221) and *The Testament* (1226) 375
6.26 Religious feeling turned violent: *Chronicle of Trier* (1231) 378

Timeline for Chapter Six 380

VII TENSIONS AND RECONCILIATIONS (*c.*1250–*c.*1350)

The Mongols and the Mamluks

7.1 A spokesman for Mongol rule: Rashid al-Din, *Universal History* (before 1318) 381
Genealogy 7.1: The Mongol Khans 382
7.2 A Mongol reply to the pope: Guyuk Khan, *Letter to Pope Innocent IV* (1246) 386
7.3 The Hungarian king bewails the Mongol invasions: Béla IV, *Letter to Pope Innocent IV* (*c.*1250) 387
7.4 An Islamic account of the fall of Acre: Abu'l-Fida, *A Short History of Mankind* (1318–1319) 390
7.5 A Christian account of the fall of Acre: "The Templar of Tyre," *Deeds of the Cypriots* (before 1343) 393
7.6 The global economy: Francesco Balducci Pegolotti, *The Practice of Trade* (*c.*1340s) 399
Map 7.1: Place Names from Azov to Hangzhou 400

New Formations in Eastern Europe

7.7 Poland as a frontier society: *The Henryków Book* (*c.*1268) 402
7.8 The Lithuanian duke flirts with Christianity: Duke Gediminas, *Letter to Pope John XXII* (1322) and *Letter to the townspeople of Lübeck, Rostock, Stralsund, Greifswald, Stettin, and Gotland* (May 26, 1323) 404
7.9 Pagan Lithuania in Christian Europe: Peter of Dusburg, *Chronicle of the Prussian Land* (*c.*1320–1326) 407

7.10 Bulgaria claims a saint: *The Short Life of St. Petka (Paraskeve) of Tarnov* (13th cent.) 411

Transformations in the Cities

7.11 The *popolo* gains power: *The Ghibelline Annals of Piacenza* (1250) 412
7.12 The Hanseatic League: *Decrees of the League* (1260–1264) 414
7.13 Too big to fail? *A Great Bank Petitions the City Council of Siena* (1298) 415

Heresies and Persecutions

7.14 Inquisition: Jacques Fournier, *Episcopal Register* (1318–1325) 418
7.15 Jews in England: *Statute of the Jewry* (1275) and *Petition of the "Commonalty" of the Jews* (shortly after 1275) 424

Rulers and Ruled

7.16 The Spanish Cortes: Alfonso X, *Cortes of Valladolid* (1258) 427
7.17 The commons participate: *Summons of Representatives of Shires and Towns to Parliament* (1295) 431
7.18 A charismatic ruler: Joinville, *The Life of St. Louis* (1272) 432
7.19 The papal challenge: Boniface VIII, *Unam sanctam* (1302) 438

Modes of Thought, Feeling, and Devotion

7.20 Scholasticism: Thomas Aquinas, *On Love* (1271) 439
7.21 The vernacular comes into its own: Dante, *Inferno*, Canto V (Paolo and Francesca) (1313–1321) 441
7.22 Medieval drama: *Directions for an Annunciation Play* (14th cent.) 444

Timeline for Chapter Seven 446

VIII CATASTROPHE AND CREATIVITY (*c.*1350–*c.*1500)

The Black Death

8.1 The effects of the plague: Giovanni Boccaccio, *The Decameron* (1348–1351) 447
8.2 Warding off the plague through processions: Ibn Battuta, *Travels* (before 1368) 451
8.3 Warding off the plague through prayer: Archbishop William, *Letter to His Official at York* (July 1348) 452
8.4 Blaming the Jews for the Black Death: Heinrich von Diessenhoven, *On the Persecution of the Jews* (*c.*1350) 453

The Ottomans

8.5 A Turkish hero: Ashikpashazade, *Othman Comes to Power* (late 15th cent.) 455
8.6 Diplomacy: *Peace Agreement between the Ottoman Sultan Mehmed II and the Signoria of Venice* (January 25, 1478) 457

Byzantium: Decline and Fall

8.7 Before the fall: Patriarch Anthony, *Letter to the Russian Church* (1395) 460
8.8 The fall bewailed: George Sphrantzes, *Chronicle* (before 1477) 461
8.9 Byzantine culture persists: *Petitions from the Greek Community at Venice* (1470–1511) 465

War and Social Unrest

8.10 Chivalric and non-chivalric models: Froissart, *Chronicles* (*c.*1400) 468
8.11 National feeling: Jeanne d'Arc, *Letter to the English* (1429) 472
8.12 The woolworkers (*ciompi*) revolt at Siena: Donato di Neri and his son, *Chronicle of Siena* (1371) 474
8.13 The commons revolt: *Wat Tyler's Rebellion* (after 1381) 479

Crises and Changes in the Church and Religion

8.14 The conciliarist movement: Jean Gerson, *Sermon at the Council of Constance* (1415) 485

8.15 The Hussite program: *The Four Articles of Prague* (1420) 488

The Renaissance

8.16 Re-evaluating antiquity: Cincius Romanus, *Letter to His Most Learned Teacher Franciscus de Fiana* (1416) 489
8.17 A new theory of art: Leon Battista Alberti, *On Painting* (1435–1436) 491
8.18 Defending women: Christine de Pisan, *The Book of the City of Ladies* (1404–1407) 494

Finding a New World

8.19 Mapping the New World: Juan de la Cosa, *World Chart* (1500) 496
8.20 Taking Mexico: Hernán Cortés, *The Second Letter* (1520) 497

Timeline for Chapter Eight 501

Sources 503
Index of Names, Places, and Readings 507

Reading through Looking

Following page 268

Introduction I

Part 1: Material Objects II
Plate 1 Seal of Boris-Michael (864–889) II
Plate 2 Boleslaw's Coin (992–1000) III
Plate 3.a The Jelling Monument (960s) IV
Plate 3.b The Jelling Monument reconstructed V
Plate 4 The Bayeux Tapestry (end of the 11th cent.) VI
Plate 5 Juan de la Cosa, *World Chart* (1500) VIII

Part 2: Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages X
"Greek Fire" X
Plate 6 "Greek fire" in the *Synopsis historion* (end of the 12th cent.) X
Plate 7 A portable hand-siphon (11th cent.) XI
Siege Warfare XII
Plate 8 Siege warfare in the "Crusader Bible" (*c.*1244–1254) XIII
Plate 9 Great Helm (second half of the 13th cent.) XIV
Mongol Arms and Armor XV
Plate 10 Mongol heavy cavalry (*c.*1306 or *c.*1314–1315) XV
Plate 11 Mongol armored coat (late 13th cent.) XVI
Plate 12 Mongol ceramic bombs (late 13th cent.) XVII
The Longbow XVIII
Plate 13 A miniature of the battle of Crécy (late 15th cent.) XIX
***Handgonnes* and Cannons** XX
Plate 14 *Handgonne* with matchlock (1411) XXI
Plate 15 Gunpowder weapons (1442–1443) XXII
Plate 16 Small bombard (15th cent.) XXIII

Selected Readings XXIV

Preface

The major difference between *Reading the Middle Ages* and other medieval history source books is its systematic incorporation of Islamic and Byzantine materials alongside Western readings. This third edition adds still more readings for those cultures, especially the Islamic world. By organizing the sources topically rather than by region, students and teachers are invited to make comparisons and contrasts within and across cultures. Each source is provided with an introduction followed by one or (usually) two apposite questions. More questions are available on the website for *Reading the Middle Ages* (www.utphistorymatters.com); those pertaining to sources in the second edition were composed by Bruce Venarde, while questions for the new sources have been created by Riccardo Cristiani. Although this book may be used independently or alongside any textbook, it is particularly designed to complement the fifth edition of *A Short History of the Middle Ages*. The chapters have the same titles and chronological scope; the readings here should help expand, deepen, sharpen, and modify the knowledge gained there.

The sources in *Reading the Middle Ages* are varied; there are, for example, records of sales, biographies, hagiographies, poems, and histories.[1] There are two collections of material sources: "Reading through Looking," and an entirely new set of illustrations on "Weapons and Warfare" composed by Riccardo Cristiani. Some teachers may wish to assign all the readings in each chapter; others may wish to concentrate on only a few texts from each chapter. It is also easy to organize readings thematically by region, since the index groups together all the sources pertaining to Italy, Spain, France, and so on.

The introduction to the first text in this book includes a discussion of how to read a primary source. The same project is repeated in chapter 4, this time with a very different sort of document. It should become clear to users of this book that the kinds of questions one brings to all documents are initially the same, but the answers lead down very different paths that suggest their own new questions and approaches. Each reader's curiosity,

[1] To make the texts translated from the Greek, Slavic languages, and Arabic more accessible, I have left out diacritical marks and non-Latin letters. Users of this book should, however, keep in mind that Arabic terms such as *sura* and names such as al-Bukhari should more properly be spelled *sūra* and al-Bukhārī, Slavic names such as Boleslaw are more correctly written Bolesław, and Greek terms such as *lorikion* and *komes* are more accurately *lōrikion* and *komēs*.

personality, and interests become part of the process; this, even more than the discovery of hitherto unknown sources, is the foundation of new historical thought.

This is the place for me to acknowledge—with pleasure and enormous gratitude—the many debts that I have incurred in the preparation of this book. All those who contributed translations for this third edition deserve my first thanks: Phil Booth, Riccardo Cristiani, and Joseph O'Callaghan.

Very special thanks go to Dionysios Stathakopoulos and Julia Bray. The former supplied me with numerous—and even annotated—suggestions for readings connected to the Byzantine world, while Julia did the same for medieval Islamic civilizations. It is literally true that the revisions of this book were made possible by these two generous scholars.

Maps were ably made by Erik Goosmann, whose expertise in history as well as cartography was invaluable at every step.

For special help, I thank University of Toronto Press people with whom I worked: Judith Earnshaw, Natalie Fingerhut, Beate Schwirtlich, and Matthew Jubb at Em Dash Design.

Above all, I am grateful to Riccardo Cristiani: for the web questions and the pictorial insert, as mentioned above, but also for his thoughtful and careful reading of the entire manuscript, which led to numerous corrections and clarifications, and his index, which provides the user with numerous reference tools, such as dates for all persons and titles of all readings and their dates. He also helped coordinate all names, places, and facts in this book with those in *A Short History*.

Finally, I thank my husband, Tom, for supporting my work in every way.

Abbreviations and Symbols

AH	Anno Hijra = year 1 of the Islamic calendar, equivalent to 622 CE
b.	before a date = born
b.	before a name = son of (*ibn*, *ben*)
BCE	before common era. Interchangeable with BC. See CE below.
bef.	On timelines = before
bt.	daughter of (*bint*)
cent.	century (used after an ordinal number, e.g. 6th cent. means "sixth century")
c.	circa (used before a date to indicate that it is approximate)
CE	common era. Interchangeable with AD. Both reflect Western dating practices, which begin "our" era with the birth of Christ. In *Reading the Middle Ages*, all dates are CE unless otherwise specified or some confusion might arise.
d.	date of death
d.	dinar = *denarius*, penny
Douay	The standard English version of the Vulgate (Latin) version of the Bible. Ordinarily the books are the same as in the Authorized Version (AV) (see below). The chief differences are that (1) the Douay version accepts some books considered apocryphal in the AV; and (2) the Psalm numbers sometimes differ. The Douay numbers follow the psalm numbering in the Greek Bible, whereas the AV and other Protestant Bibles follow the numbering of the Hebrew text.
e.g.	*exempli gratia* = for example
fl.	*floruit* (used—when birth and death dates are not known—to mean that a person "flourished" or was active at the time of the date)
ibid.	in the same place, referring to the reference in the preceding note
i.e.	that is (from the Latin *id est*)
£	pound (from the first letter of the Latin word *libra*)
MS	manuscript
pl.	plural
r.	ruled
s.	shilling = *solidus*, sous
sing.	singular
...	Ellipses, indicating that words or passages of the original have been left out.

[] Brackets, indicating words or passages that are not in the original but have been added by the editor to aid in the understanding of a passage.

A date such as Boethius (d. 524/526) means that the exact date of his death is not known or disputed, but it is, at least, within the date range of 524 to 526.

Authorized Version of the Bible

In *Reading the Middle Ages*, references to the Bible are to the Authorized Version (AV). (Psalms are cited in both AV and Douay versions.) The standard abbreviations for the books of the AV are set out below. The Revised Standard Version of the Bible, which is perhaps the best translation in English, derives from the AV, which is based on the King James Version.

Old Testament

Genesis / Gen.
Exodus / Exod.
Leviticus / Lev.
Numbers / Num.
Deuteronomy / Deut.
Joshua / Josh.
Judges / Judges
Ruth / Ruth
1 Samuel / 1 Sam.
2 Samuel / 2 Sam.
1 Kings / 1 Kings
2 Kings / 2 Kings
1 Chronicles / 1 Chron.
2 Chronicles / 2 Chron.
Ezra / Ezra
Nehemiah / Neh.
Esther / Esther
Job / Job
Psalms / Ps.
Proverbs / Prov.
Ecclesiastes / Eccles.
Song of Solomon / Song of Sol.
(This is also often called the Song of Songs)
Isaiah / Isa.
Jeremiah / Jer.
Lamentations / Lam.
Ezekiel / Ezek.
Daniel / Dan.
Hosea / Hos.
Joel / Joel
Amos / Amos
Obadiah / Obad.
Jonah / Jon.
Micah / Mic.
Nahum / Nah.
Habakkuk / Hab.
Zephaniah / Zeph.
Haggai / Hag.
Zechariah / Zech.
Malachi / Mal.

New Testament

Matthew / Matt.
Mark / Mark
Luke / Luke
John / John
Acts of the Apostles / Acts
Romans / Rom.
1 Corinthians / 1 Cor.
2 Corinthians / 2 Cor.
Galatians / Gal.
Ephesians / Eph.
Philippians / Phil.
Colossians / Col.
1 Thessalonians / 1 Thess.
2 Thessalonians / 2 Thess.
1 Timothy / 1 Tim.
2 Timothy / 2 Tim.
Titus / Titus
Philemon / Philem.
Hebrews / Heb.
James / James
1 Peter / 1 Pet.
2 Peter / 2 Pet.
1 John / 1 John
2 John / 2 John
3 John / 3 John
Jude / Jude
Revelation / Rev.

Apocrypha

1 Esdras / 1 Esd.
2 Esdras / 2 Esd.
Tobit (Tobias) / Tob.
Judith / Jth.
The Rest of Esther / Rest of Esther
The Wisdom of Solomon / Wisd. of Sol.
Ecclesiasticus / Ecclus.
Baruch / Bar.
The Song of the Three Holy Children / Song of Three Children
Susanna / Sus.
Bel and the Dragon / Bel and Dragon
Prayer of Manasses / Pr. of Man.
1 Maccabees / 1 Macc.
2 Maccabees / 2 Macc.

I

Prelude: The Roman World Transformed (c.300–c.600)

A CHRISTIANIZED EMPIRE

1.1 Toleration or favoritism? *The Edict of Milan* (313). Original in Latin.

No edict (an order issued to governors throughout the empire) was issued at Milan. But Emperors Constantine (r.306–337) and Licinius (r.308–324) met there in 313 and agreed to the provisions of what would be promulgated a few months later—the so-called *Edict of Milan*. It gave notice that Constantine and Licinius agreed to tolerate Christianity along with other religions and that they determined to restore the properties that the Church had lost under Emperor Diocletian (r.284–305). The current owners of the property might be compensated from the emperors' private funds if they applied to their "vicar," an imperial administrator with regional authority.

The Edict of Milan is the first source in this collection. Let us use it to begin a discussion of how to read primary sources. Each primary source calls for its own methodology and approach; there is no one way to handle all of them. Moreover, as the epigraph of this book points out, readers should bring their own special insights to old sources. Nevertheless, it is usually helpful to begin by asking a standard series of questions.

Who wrote it, and for what audience was it written? Normally this is fairly easy to answer, but often it is not. In this case, it seems that Emperors Constantine and Licinius conceived of the statement, though civil servants in an imperial writing office drafted and published it. The immediate recipients were provincial governors, each referred to as "your Excellency" in this document; they were expected to publish—that is, publicize—the contents to the public.

When was it written? Your editor has given the date 313, which is the year in which the document was issued. At this stage in your historical work, you need not worry about

how this date was arrived at. It is more important for you to consider the circumstances and historical events in the context of which this date takes on meaning. In this instance, you should be thinking that the date is pertinent to the history of the Roman Empire; that it comes directly after Constantine won a major battle at the Milvian Bridge in 312; that he attributed his victory to a sign from the Christian God; that immediately thereafter he took over administration of the western portion of the Roman Empire and soon (in 313) allied with Licinius; and that a few months later Licinius became ruler of the eastern half of the Empire. Therefore, you should expect the document to have to do with both imperial authority and religion, which is precisely what you will discover when you read it.

Where was it written? In this case "Milan" is not the right answer. In fact, the *Edict* was issued by Licinius at Nicomedia (today Izmit), in the eastern half of the Empire. But sometimes you will not know so specific an answer, and you must work with what information you have.

Why was it written? Often you will find a provisional answer to this question right in the text of the primary source. Ostensibly the *Edict* was written, as it says, "to give both to Christians and to all others free facility to follow the religion which each may desire." But you should go beyond this obvious answer to ask what other motives might have been at work, what sorts of negotiations may have been involved in its writing, and who benefited.

What is it? In this case, you know that it is *called* an *Edict* but is something a bit different. You might choose to call it an "imperial ordinance," an "official document," or even a "policy statement."

What does it say? This is the most important question of all. To answer it, you need to analyze the document for its various provisions, taking care to understand them fully and seeking further information (if necessary) about its vocabulary.

What are the implications of what it says? This requires you to ask many questions about matters that lie behind the text. Important questions to ask are: *What does the document reveal about such institutions as family, power, social classes and groups, religion, and education and literacy in the world that produced it? What are its underlying assumptions about human nature, agency, and goals; about the nature of the divine? Does the source apply to men and women in the same way?*

How reliable is it? If the document is authentic—if it really is what it purports to be—then at the very least you can know that it was issued by its writer(s). In this case, you can be sure that Constantine and Licinius did indeed want *The Edict of Milan* to be promulgated. You may wish to speculate about how much of it was Constantine's idea and how much Licinius's by considering what else you know about their religious convictions and political motives. The document certainly tells you about the ideals and intentions that they wanted the world to believe they had. But it alone cannot tell you whether the provisions were carried out. To know that, you need other documents and evidence about the nature of Roman imperial power at the time. One document that may help here is the *Creed* declared by the Council of Nicaea (p. 11 below), since Constantine presided over that council.

Are there complicating factors? Medieval texts were all handwritten, and they were "published"—in the sense of being made public and distributed—in relatively small numbers. In many cases we do not have them in their original state. *The Edict of Milan* was issued in multiple handwritten copies in Latin, but none of them has survived. We know its contents because it was incorporated into the writings of two Christian apologists:[1] Lactantius's *On the Deaths of the Persecutors* (written perhaps in 318) and Eusebius's *History of the Church* (the first edition of which was published at some time between 303 and 312). Eusebius's text of the *Edict*, which he translated and presented in Greek, is not entirely the same as the one given by Lactantius. Scholars think that the one in Lactantius is the original, and that is the one printed here. But you should not be content with that. You should instead ask yourself at least two questions about these intermediary sources: *What motives might lead a later source to reproduce a text? What new meanings does the original source take on when it is embedded in a larger document with its own agenda?* You might also consider the fact that the *Edict* was not considered important enough to be drawn upon by the legal experts who compiled *The Theodosian Code* (438; see below, p. 4) or the later *Codex Justinianus* (529).

You should ask these sorts of questions of every source you read. Soon you will see how different the answers are for each document, for every one of them poses special challenges. If you like, look ahead to p. 171 to see this point clearly demonstrated in connection with a very different source, al-Tabari, *The Defeat of the Zanj Revolt*.

[Source: *Church and State Through the Centuries: A Collection of Historic Documents with Commentaries*, trans. and ed. Sidney Z. Ehler and John B. Morrall (Westminster, MD: Newman Press, 1954), pp. 5–6.]

We, Constantine and Licinius the Emperors, having met in concord at Milan and having set in order everything which pertains to the common good and public security, are of the opinion that among the various things which we perceived would profit men, or which should be set in order first, was to be found the cultivation of religion; we should therefore give both to Christians and to all others free facility to follow the religion which each may desire, so that by this means whatever divinity is enthroned in heaven may be gracious and favorable to us and to all who have been placed under our authority. Therefore we are of the opinion that the following decision is in accordance with sound and true reasoning: that no one who has given his mental assent to the Christian persuasion or to any other which he feels to be suitable to him should be compelled to deny his conviction, so that the Supreme Godhead ("Summa Divinitas"), whose worship we freely observe, can assist us in all things with his usual favor and benevolence. Wherefore it is necessary for your Excellency to know that it is our pleasure that all restrictions which were previously put forward in official pronouncements concerning the sect of the Christians should be removed, and that each one of them who freely and sincerely carries out the purpose of observing the Christian religion may endeavor to practice its precepts without any fear or danger. We believed that these points should be fully brought to your attention, so that you might know that we have given free and absolute permission to practice their religion to the Christians. Now that you perceive what we have granted to them, your Excellency must also learn that for the sake of peace in our time a similar public and free right to practice their religion or cult is granted to others, so that every person may have free opportunity to worship according to his own wish. This has been done by us to avoid any appearance of disfavor to any one religion. We have decided furthermore to decree the following in respect of the Christians: if those places at which they were accustomed in former times to hold their meetings (concerning which a definite procedure was laid down for your guidance in previous communications) have been at any previous time acquired from our treasury or from any other person, let the persons

[1] An "apologist" is someone who justifies or argues in favor of a doctrine or ideology.

concerned be willing and swift to restore them to the Christians without financial recompense and without trying to ask a price. Let those who have received such property as a gift restore whatever they have acquired to the Christians in similar manner; if those who have bought such property or received it as a gift seek some recompense from our benevolence, let them apply to the vicar, by whom their cases will be referred to our clemency. You are to consider it your duty that all these things shall be handed over to the Christian body immediately and without delay by your intervention. And since the aforesaid Christians are known to have possessed not only those places at which they are accustomed to assemble, but others also pertaining to the law of their body, that is of the churches, not of private individuals, you are to order in accordance with the law which we have described above the return of all those possessions to the aforesaid Christians, that is to their bodies and assemblies without any further hesitation or argument. Our previous statement is to be borne in mind that those who restore this property without price may, as we have said, expect some compensation from our benevolence.

You ought to bring into play your very effective intervention in all these matters concerning the aforesaid Christian body so that there may be a swift fulfillment of our Edict, in which the interests of public quiet have been consulted by our clemency. Let all this be done, so that as we stated above, the divine favor, of which we have experienced so many instances, may continue with us to bless our successors through all time with public well-being. In order that the character of this our perpetual benevolence can reach the knowledge of all, it will be well for you to circulate everywhere, and to bring to the awareness of all, these points which have been written to you as above, so that the enactment of this our benevolence may not be hidden.

1.2 Law: *The Theodosian Code* (438). Original in Latin.

The Theodosian Code, a massive compilation of imperial edicts and letters issued in 438 under the Roman emperor Theodosius II (r.408–450), was meant to serve as an authoritative standard for determining legal cases throughout the Empire. Covering topics as diverse as legal procedure, marriage, the army, and the Church, the *Code* was immediately adopted by Roman judicial authorities and later was a model for the laws drawn up in Rome's barbarian successor states. The *Code* divided its topics into "Books," which were further subdivided into "Titles." Under each Title were arranged excerpts from pertinent imperial legislation. These were followed, when the compilers thought necessary, by legal interpretations. The passages below concern marriage and divorce.

1. How and why did the *Code* attempt to control social and moral behavior, such as that involved in marriage and divorce?
2. What sort of rights did women have in a Roman divorce?

[Source: *The Theodosian Code and Novels and the Sirmondian Constitutions*, trans. Clyde Pharr (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1952), pp. 76–77 (slightly modified).]

Book 3, Title 14: Marriages with Foreigners

1. EMPERORS VALENTINIAN AND VALENS AUGUSTUSES TO THEODOSIUS, MASTER OF THE HORSE. [368–373]

No provincial, of whatever rank or class he may be, shall marry a barbarian wife, nor shall a provincial woman be united with any foreigner. But if there should be any alliances between provincials and foreigners through such marriages and if anything should be disclosed as suspect or criminal among them, it shall be expiated by capital punishment.

Interpretation: No Roman shall presume to have a barbarian wife of any nation whatever, nor shall any

Roman woman be united in marriage with a barbarian. But if they should do this, they shall know that they are subject to capital punishment.

Title 16: Notices of Divorce

1. EMPEROR CONSTANTINE AUGUSTUS TO ABLAVIUS, PRAETORIAN PREFECT. [331]

It is Our[1] pleasure that no woman, on account of her own depraved desires, shall be permitted to send a notice of divorce to her husband on trumped up grounds, as, for instance, that he is a drunkard or a gambler or a philanderer, nor indeed shall a husband be permitted to divorce his wife on every sort of pretext. But when a woman sends a notice of divorce, the following criminal charges only shall be investigated, that is, if she should prove that her husband is a homicide, a sorcerer, or a destroyer of tombs, so that the wife may thus earn commendation and at length recover her entire dowry. For if she should send a notice of divorce to her husband on grounds other than these three criminal charges, she must leave everything, even to her last hairpin, in her husband's home, and as punishment for her supreme self confidence, she shall be deported to an island. In the case of a man also, if he should send a notice of divorce, inquiry shall be made as to the following three criminal charges, namely, if he wishes to divorce her as an adulteress, a sorceress, or a procuress.[2] For if he should cast off a wife who is innocent of these crimes, he must restore her entire dowry, and he shall not marry another woman. But if he should do this, his former wife shall be given the right to enter and seize his home by force and to transfer to herself the entire dowry of his later wife in recompense for the outrage inflicted upon her.

Interpretation: The right to send notice of divorce is extended to a wife or husband for certain approved reasons and causes; for they are forbidden to dissolve a marriage for a trivial charge. If perchance a woman should say that her husband is either a drunkard or given to licentiousness, she shall not send him notice of divorce on that account. But if perchance she should prove that he is either a homicide, a sorcerer, or a violator of tombs, the husband who is convicted of these crimes appears to be justly divorced, without any fault of the woman; and she may recover her dowry and depart. If the woman should not be able to prove such crimes, she shall be subjected to the following punishment: namely, that she shall forfeit both the dowry which she had given or which had been given on her behalf and the gift[3] which she received, and she shall also be liable to exile by relegation.[4] But if a man should cast off his wife, he also is not permitted to divorce her for a trivial quarrel, as often happens, unless perhaps he should be able to prove that she is guilty of certain crimes, that is, if he is able to prove that she is an adulteress, a sorceress, or a procuress. But if he cannot prove this, he shall restore her dowry to the woman, and he shall not presume to take another wife. But if perchance he should attempt to do so, the woman who was cast off, though innocent, shall have the right to vindicate [claim] for herself her husband's home and all his substance. It is recognized that this is ordained in order that if a woman should be unjustly divorced, she is ordered to acquire the dowry of the second wife also.

2. EMPERORS HONORIUS, THEODOSIUS, AND CONSTANTIUS AUGUSTUSES TO PALLADIUS, PRAETORIAN PREFECT. [421]

If a woman should serve notice of divorce upon her husband and separate from him and if she should prove no grounds for divorce, the gifts shall be annulled which she had received when betrothed. She shall also be deprived of her dowry, and she shall be sentenced to the punishment of deportation. We deny her not only the right to a union with a subsequent husband, but even the right of postliminium.[5] But if a woman who has revolted against her marriage should prove merely flaws of character and ordinary faults, she shall lose her dowry and restore to her husband all gifts, and never at all shall she be associated in marriage with any man. In order that she may not defile her unmarried state with wanton debauchery, We grant to the repudiated husband the right to bring an accusation.[6]

1. It remains to say that if a woman who withdraws[7] should prove serious grounds and a conscience involved

---

[1] This is the "imperial 'we'"—the emperor refers to himself, as representative of the state, in the plural.

[2] I.e., a madam or prostitute.

[3] The betrothal and prenuptial gifts.

[4] There were two forms of punishment by exile: in the harshest, the exile lost all civil rights. In exile by relegation, he or she retained these rights.

[5] The right to return home and resume her former life.

[6] On grounds of immorality.

[7] From her marriage.

in great crimes, she shall obtain possession of her dowry and shall also retain the betrothal bounty, and she shall regain the right to marry after a period of five years from the day of the divorce. For then it will appear that she has done this from loathing of her own husband rather than from a desire for another husband.[1]

2(1). Certainly if the husband should be the first to give notice of divorce and if he should charge his wife with a grave crime, he shall prosecute the accused woman in accordance with the law, and when he has obtained his revenge, he shall both get possession of her dowry and recover his bounty [gifts] to her, and he shall acquire the unrestricted right to marry another woman immediately. 3. If it is a fault of character and not of criminality, the husband shall recover his gifts but relinquish the dowry, and he shall have the right to marry another woman after a period of two years. 4. But if the husband should wish to dissolve the marriage because of a mere disagreement and should charge the repudiated woman with no vices or sins, he shall lose both his gifts and the dowry and be compelled to live in perpetual celibacy; he shall suffer punishment for his insolent divorce in the sadness of solitude; and the woman shall be granted the right to marry after the termination of a year. Moreover, We order to be preserved the guarantees of the ancient law in regard to the retentions from dowries, on account of children.

Interpretation: If a woman should be the first to serve a notice of divorce upon her husband and should not prove the statutory grounds for divorce, she shall forfeit the betrothal bounty, and she shall not recover that which she gave her husband as dowry. In addition, she shall also be sent into exile by relegation, and she shall not have the right to marry or to return to her own.[2] Indeed, if she should prove slight faults in her husband, for which she appears to seek a divorce, she shall forfeit her dowry and shall restore the betrothal gifts, and she shall not have the right to marry another man. If, however, after divorcing her husband, she should become involved in adultery, her husband shall have the right to prosecute her even after the divorce. But if a woman who has separated from her husband should prove that he is guilty of grave and definite crimes, she shall both recover her dowry and vindicate that which her husband bestowed upon her as a betrothal bounty, and she shall have the unrestricted right of marriage after five years.

Indeed, if the husband should be the first to serve notice of divorce, he shall secure his revenge on grounds approved by law, he shall vindicate the dowry of his repudiated wife, shall recover his betrothal gifts, and shall have the right to marry another woman immediately if he wishes. If indeed there were no definite crimes, but, as often happens, the husband is displeased with the frivolity of his wife's character, he shall recover his gifts and shall restore to her immediately anything which he has received from her, and after a period of two years he shall have the right to marry another wife. But if no defect of character should be proved but merely mental discord, the innocent woman who is rejected by her husband shall both vindicate the gifts made to her by the man and shall recover her dowry. But he shall remain alone forever and shall not presume to associate himself in marriage with another woman. The woman, however, is permitted to proceed to another marriage after a year if she should so wish. But for the sake of their common children, if there should be any, the Emperor orders those rules to be observed which have been established in the law concerning retentions according to the number of children, which law Paulus sets forth in his *Book of Responses* under the title, *A Wife's Property*.[3] ...

1.3 Plague: Gregory the Great, *Letter to Bishop Dominic of Carthage* (600). Original in Latin.

The Plague of Justinian lasted from 541 to *c.*750. Named after the emperor under whom it first appeared, the plague spread across the Mediterranean and beyond, from the Middle East to Europe. Pope Gregory the Great (590–604) was well known for spearheading a drive to convert the English to Christianity (see Bede, below, p. 95), for his commentaries on the

[1] The husband of another woman?

[2] That is, she shall not have the right of postliminium—to return home and resume her normal life.

[3] The juridical writings of Julius Paulus (*fl. c.*200) were considered authoritative.

Book of Job and other exegetical works, and for his "biography" (in fact the second book of his *Dialogues* on the holy men of Italy) of Saint Benedict of Nursia (for whose *Rule* see below, p. 20). Gregory was also a devoted pastor who wrote a *Pastoral Rule* that served as a handbook for priests throughout the Middle Ages. In his letter to Dominic, who held the important position of bishop of Carthage, Gregory set forth in brief many of the ideas about the purposes of tribulation in this world that earlier had been elaborated in detail by Augustine (see *The City of God*, below p. 16). To counter the plague at Rome, Gregory organized penitential processions there at the beginning of his papacy and probably again *c*.602; these were among the "good deeds and tears of penitence" that he mentioned in his letter to Dominic.

1. Why would Gregory, based in the city of Rome, be concerned about an African bishop?
2. In what ways did Gregory consider the plague to be a "positive" event?

[Source: *Gregorii Magni Registrum epistularum libri VIII-XIV* 10.20, ed. Dag Norberg, Corpus Christianorum, Series Latina 140A (Turnhout: Brepols, 1982), pp. 850–51. Translated by Carole Straw.]

Gregory to Dominic, Bishop of Carthage

We already know how great a plague has invaded Africa;[1] and since not even Italy is free from the attack of this scourge, the groans of our grief are doubled. But amidst these evils and other innumerable calamities, dearest brother,[2] our heart would fail in tribulation without hope unless the Lord's voice had forearmed our frailty. For long ago, the trumpet of the Gospel text resounded for the faithful, foreshadowing the impending end of the world: pestilence, wars and many other things that up to now, as you know, we awaited in fear, and will come. But since we suffer these things that we foreknow, surely we ought not to be afflicted by them as if they were unknown to us. For often even the kind of death is a consolation, considering other ways of dying. How many mutilations and cruelties have we seen for which only death was the remedy, when life was torture? When the choice of a death was offered David, did he not decide that his people should die at the hand of God, rejecting famine and the sword?[3] You realize from this how much grace there is for those who die from a divine blow, when they die in the way that was offered as a gift to the holy prophet. And so, let us give thanks in every adversity to our Creator and, trusting in his mercy, let us endure everything with patience, for we suffer even less than we deserve. And since we are scourged in this life so that we may by no means be left without the consolation of eternal life, it is necessary that the more we know the nearness of the judgment to come—as these signs declare—the more we should safeguard the accounts we must render to his examination, through the zeal of good deeds and tears of penitence. In this way, by means of the favor of His grace, such great blows do not become for us the beginning of damnation, but the blessing of purification. But since the nature of our weakness is that we cannot help but grieve for those dying, let this teaching of your fraternity be a comfort to those in tribulation. Let it inculcate into them the stability of the promised good things [of Heaven], so that, strengthened by the most certain hope, they learn not to grieve for the loss of passing things, in comparison to the gift to come. Let your word prevent them (as we believe it does) more and more from perpetrating wicked deeds, let it set forth in full the reward of the good and the punishment of evil so that those who love good the less should at least thoroughly fear wrongdoing and restrain themselves from what must be punished. For those who live among the scourges, to commit deeds worthy of scourges is a special form of pride against the punisher, and it is to irritate all the more the anger of the one who lashes.[4] And

[1] Gregory is using the "royal we" here; he means himself.

[2] Why would Gregory invoke the metaphor of brotherhood with Dominic even though they were not blood brothers?

[3] In 2 Sam. 24, David orders a census to count the number of fighting men in Israel and Judah. Then he repents. God gives him three ways to die: seven years' famine, three months' flight from the enemy in hot pursuit, or three days of pestilence. Afraid of falling into human hands, David chooses death at God's hand, namely by pestilence. Many die, but he does not.

[4] The "punisher" and "the one who lashes" refer to God.

it is the first kind of madness not to want someone justly to cease his evil deeds, and unjustly to wish that God would check his punishment. But since we need divine assistance in these things, let us, beloved brother, with joined prayers beseech the clemency of almighty God that he may allow us to accomplish things worthily, and may goad the hearts of the people mercifully to do these things, so that as we conform our actions wholesomely in fear of God, we may merit to be rescued from the evils assailing us and to reach to heavenly joys, led by his grace, without which we can do nothing.

HERESY AND ORTHODOXY

1.4 Heretics: *Manichaean Texts* (before 350?). Original in Coptic.

The Manichaeans were founded by Mani (216–277), a Persian prince who early in life joined an ascetic group devoted to spreading the message of Christ. In 240, when he was 24 years old, driven by visions and revelations, he left that group to found a new religion with its own rituals and texts. Spread through active missionizing, especially in India and Egypt, Mani's teachings were enormously popular. At its height, it had followers both in the east and west and engaged (and argued) with Zoroastrianism, Christianity, Taoism, Buddhism, and, later, Islam.

Styling himself the "apostle of Jesus Christ," Mani considered his religion to be the ultimate one, subsuming and fulfilling all the others. In the late Roman Empire, Manichaeism was a lively rival of the Roman brand of Christianity, attracting even the young Augustine (for whom see two readings below, pp. 12 and 16). Although in detail very elaborate and complex, Mani's teachings must here be summed up briefly. The universe had two principles: light (which was good and equivalent to life) and darkness (which was evil and equivalent to death). Originally, these two were separate; then (in our own historical time) they mingled; finally, at the end of time, light (along with goodness and life) will triumph. Human beings represent a mingling: their materiality, carnality and sexuality is death; their soul is divine and is life itself. The task of this period of history is to liberate and save the soul. The Manichaean "elect" delighted in knowing about the many emanations of the divine, in practicing lives of strict asceticism, and in anticipating their triumphant entry into eternal life. Habitual sinners could expect eternal death; ordinary believers could look forward to rebirth in new bodies—with a new chance at election.

The two documents presented here witness to the Manichaean message. The first, Psalm 223, was probably originally composed in Aramaic, perhaps just after Mani's death. It seems to have circulated in a variety of formats alongside other psalms composed by different authors. Although the version here comes from a finely produced Coptic Manichaean Psalm book dating from the late 4th or early 5th century, it is probably safe to assume that the psalm itself comes from before 350.

The second document, "The Chapters of the Teacher"—the *kephalaia*—was probably written around the same time as the psalms, perhaps also in Aramaic. Purporting to report the very words of Mani, it was no doubt very much reworked in the form that we have it. Chapter 79, given here, probably reflects the beliefs and practices of the elect in the 4th century.

1. Imagine and describe the audience that might have read or listened to these texts.
2. How might these texts have appealed to people living in the newly Christianized Roman Empire?

[Source: *Manichaean Texts from the Roman Empire*, ed. Iain Gardner and Samuel N.C. Lieu (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2004), pp. 176–79, 240 (notes added).]

[Psalm] 223

Let us worship the Spirit of the Paraclete.[1]

Let us bless our lord Jesus who has sent to us
the Spirit of truth. He came and separated us from the error
of the world, he brought us a mirror, we looked,
we saw the all in it.

When the Holy Spirit came he revealed to us
the way of truth and taught us that there are two
natures, that of light and that of darkness,
separate one from the other from the beginning.

The kingdom of light, on the one hand consisted in five
greatnesses, and they are the Father and his twelve
aeons and the aeons of the aeons, the living air,
the land of light; the Great Spirit breathing in them,
nourishing them with its light.

However, the kingdom of darkness consists of five storehouses,
which are smoke and fire
and wind and water and darkness; their counsel
creeping in them, moving them and raising them
to make war with one another.

Now, as they were making war with one another they dared
to make an attempt upon the land of light, thinking that they
would be able to conquer it. Yet they know not that which they have
thought to do they will bring down upon their own heads.

And there was a multitude of angels in the land of the light,
having the power to go forth to subdue the enemy
of the Father, whom it pleased that by his word that
he would send, he should subdue the rebels who desired
to exalt themselves above that which was more exalted than they.

Like unto a shepherd that shall see a lion coming to
destroy his sheep-fold: for he uses guile and takes
a lamb and sets it as a snare that he may catch him
by it; for by a single lamb he saves his
sheep-fold. After these things he heals the lamb that
has been wounded by the lion.

This too is the way of the Father, who sent his
strong son; and he produced from himself his
virgin equipped with five powers, that
she might fight against the five abysses of the dark.

When the watcher stood by the border
of the light, he showed to them his virgin who
is his soul; they bestirred themselves in their abyss, desiring
to exalt themselves over her, they opened their mouth desiring
to swallow her.

He held fast her crown, he spread her over them, like
nets over fishes, he made her rain down upon them
like purified clouds of water, she thrust herself
within them like piercing lightning. She crept in their
inward parts, she bound them all, they not knowing it.

[1] The Paraclete is mentioned in John 14:16 as the one who will take the place of Jesus. This is Mani.

When the First Man had perfected his war,
the Father sent his second son.
He came and helped his brother out of the abyss;
he established this whole universe out of the mixture that
took place of the light and the darkness.

He spread out all the powers of the abyss to ten heavens and
eight earths, he shut them up in this universe
for a season; while he made it a prison for all the powers of darkness,
it is also a place of purification for the soul that was swallowed in them.

The sun and moon he founded, he set them on high, to
purify the soul. Daily they take up the refined part
to the heights, but the dregs however they scrape
down to the abyss, what is mixed they convey
above and below.

This entire universe stands firm for a season, there
being a great building which is being built outside this
world. So soon as that Builder shall finish,
the whole universe will be dissolved and set on fire
that the fire may smelt it away.

All life, the relic of light wheresoever it be, he will
gather to himself and of it depict a Statue.
And the counsel of death too, all the darkness,
he will gather together and paint its very self for a [bond (?)][1]
for the ruler.

In an instant the Living Spirit will come ...
... he will succor the light. However, the counsel of death
and the darkness he will shut up in the tomb
that was established for it, that it might be bound in it for ever.

There is no other means to bind the enemy save this means;
for he will not be received to the light because he is a stranger to it;
nor again can he be left in his land of darkness, that he may
not wage a war greater than the first.

A new aeon will be built in the place of this universe
that shall dissolve, that in it the powers of the light may
reign, because they have performed and fulfilled the will
of the Father entire, they have subdued the hated one, they have
... over him for ever.

This is the knowledge of Mani, let us worship him
and bless him. Blessed is he every one that believes in him,
for he it is who may live with all the righteous.

Glory and victory to our lord Mani, the Spirit of
truth that comes from the Father, who has unveiled for us
the beginning, the middle and the end.
Victory to the soul of the blessed Maria, Theona, Pshai, Jmnoute.[2]

The Chapters of the Teacher (kephalaia) 79: "Concerning the Fasting of the Saints"

Once more the enlightener speaks to his disciples: "The fasting that the saints fast by is profitable for four great works.

The first work: Shall the holy man punish his body by fasting, he subdues the entire ruling-power that exists in him.

The second: This soul that comes in to him in the administration of his food, day by day; it shall be made holy, cleansed, purified, and washed from the adulteration of the darkness that is mixed in with it.

The third: That person shall make every deed a holy one; the mystery of the children of light in whom there is neither corruption nor ... the food, nor [do they] wound it. Rather, they are holy, there is nothing in them that defiles, as they live in peace.

The fourth: They make a ... the Cross, they restrain their hands from the hand [that harms and] ... not

[1] The word "bond" is a conjecture by the editors. The ellipses (...) below mean that one or more words are missing.

[2] Maria, etc. Perhaps these names refer to Manichaean martyrs.

destroy the living soul.

The fasting is profitable to the saints for these four great works should they persist; that is if they are constant in them daily, and cause the body to make its members to fast with a holy fast.

... [The Catechumens of the] faith. They who have not strength to fast daily should make their fast on the lord's day. They too make a contribution to the works and the fasting of the saints by their faith and their alms."

1.5 Orthodoxy's declaration: *The Nicene Creed* (325). Original in Greek.

A dispute between Bishop Alexander of Alexandria and Arius, an Alexandrian priest, concerning the relationship between the Father and the Son (Jesus Christ) within the Godhead had such far-flung repercussions that Emperor Constantine (r.306–337) called the Council of Nicaea (325), the first "ecumenical" (universal) council, to adjudicate the matter. We do not know precisely what Arius taught, but he clearly subordinated the Son to the Father. The council declared that the Son was of the "same substance" (*homousios*) as the Father and thus not subordinate, a formulation that Arius could not accept. Although Arius was excommunicated, some of his supporters remained in high positions. When Constantius II (r.337–361) came to the imperial throne, he favored the position that the Orthodox called "Arian" and supported Ulfila, whose missionary work among the Goths led to their adoption of "Arianism." Although—or perhaps because—the Goths were allowed into the empire in 376, the Council of Constantinople, held in 381, affirmed the ban on Arianism, in effect branding as heretics the Goths and other barbarian tribes who adopted the Arian position.

1. What are the implications of making the Son of God of one substance with the Father?
2. What are points of comparison (the similarities and the differences) between Orthodox Christian beliefs as set forth in the Nicene Creed and those of the Manichaeans as espoused in Psalm 223?

[Source: John N.D. Kelly, *Early Christian Doctrines*, 2nd ed. (New York: Harper and Row, 1958), p. 232.]

We believe in one God, the Father almighty, maker of all things, visible and invisible;

And in one Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, begotten from the Father, only-begotten, that is, from the substance of the Father, God from God, light from light, true God from true God, begotten not made, of one substance [*homousios*] with the Father, through Whom all things came into being, things in heaven and things on earth, Who because of us men and because of our salvation came down and became incarnate, becoming man, suffered and rose again on the third day, ascended to the heavens, and will come to judge the living and the dead;

And in the Holy Spirit. But as for those who say, There was when He was not, and, Before being born He was not, and that He came into existence out of nothing, or who assert that the Son of God is from a different hypostasis or substance, or is created, or is subject to alteration or change—these the Catholic Church anathematizes.[1]

[1] I.e., excommunicates.

PATRISTIC THOUGHT

1.6 Conversion: Augustine, *Confessions* (397–401). Original in Latin.

The man who would become bishop of Hippo (today Annaba, in Algeria) in 396 and the preeminent Church Father in the West by the time he died, Augustine (354–430) was the son of a pagan father, Patricius, and a Christian mother, Monica. Educated in rhetoric at schools near his home in Roman North Africa, he seemed headed for a prestigious professional career in law. He threw himself with passion into various modes of life, all (until the last one) recounted with regret in his autobiographical *Confessions*. Involved in a long-term relationship with a woman he never named, he had a son, Adeodatus (meaning: "given by God"). Around the same time, he was attracted to Manichaeism (see above, p. 8) and, after reading Cicero's *Hortensius*, decided to devote himself to philosophy. At that point, he quit studying to become a lawyer and began to teach. All the while his mother prayed that he would convert to the Roman Church, and once Theodosius I became emperor (r.379–395) and made Christianity the official religion, there was yet another good reason to make the conversion. But Augustine did not do so right away. He had first to become disillusioned with the Manichaeans and to hear the sermons of Bishop Ambrose of Milan, which taught him how to understand the Bible spiritually. The excerpt that follows from Book 7, Chapters 5–7 and 12 of his *Confessions* begins around this time, when a Christian named Simplicianus told Augustine about a rhetorician and teacher, Victorinus, who had had the courage to give up his career to follow Christ.

1. What were Augustine's two wills and which one won in the end?
2. Why doesn't Augustine consider his conversion to be his own achievement?

[Source: *The Confessions of St. Augustine*, trans. Rex Warner (New York: Mentor, 1963), pp. 167–74, 181–83 (notes added).]

5. When this man of yours, Simplicianus, told me all this about Victorinus,[1] I was on fire to be like him, and this, of course, was why he had told me the story. He told me this too—that in the time of the Emperor Julian (r.361–363), when a law was passed forbidding Christians to teach literature and rhetoric, Victorinus had obeyed the law, preferring to give up his talking-shop rather than your Word, by which you make even the tongues of infants eloquent. In this I thought that he was not only brave but lucky, because he had got the chance of giving all his time to you. This was just what I longed for myself, but I was held back, and I was held back not by fetters put on me by someone else, but by the iron bondage of my own will. The enemy [i.e., the Devil] held my will and made a chain out of it and bound me with it. From a perverse will came lust, and slavery to lust became a habit, and the habit, being constantly yielded to, became a necessity. These were like links, hanging each to each (which is why I called it a chain), and they held me fast in a hard slavery. And the new will which I was beginning to have

[1] "This man of yours": "yours" refers to God, to whom the *Confessions* are addressed. Victorinus had been a celebrated teacher and champion of the pagan gods. Eventually, however, he was willing to jeopardize his fame and publicly declare himself a Christian. This happened in the mid-fourth century, before the 380s, when a series of laws made Christianity the official religion of the Roman Empire.

and which urged me to worship you in freedom and to enjoy you, God, the only certain joy, was not yet strong enough to overpower the old will which by its oldness had grown hard in me. So my two wills, one old, one new, one carnal, one spiritual, were in conflict, and they wasted my soul by their discord.

In this way my personal experience enabled me to understand what I had read—that "the flesh lusteth against the spirit and the spirit against the flesh."[1] I, no doubt, was on both sides, but I was more myself when I was on the side which I approved of for myself than when I was on the side of which I disapproved. For it was no longer really I myself who was on this second side, since there to a great extent I was rather suffering things against my will than doing them voluntarily. Yet it was my own fault that habit fought back so strongly against me; for I had come willingly where I now did not will to be. And who has any right to complain when just punishment overtakes the sinner? Nor did I have any longer the excuse which I used to think I had when I said that the reason why I had not yet forsaken the world and given myself up to your service was because I could not see the truth clearly. Now I could see it perfectly clearly. But I was still tied down to earth and refused to take my place in your army. And I was just as frightened of being freed from all my hampering baggage as I ought to have been frightened of being hampered. The pack of this world was a kind of pleasant weight upon me, as happens in sleep, and the thoughts in which I meditated on you were like the efforts of someone who tries to get up but is so overcome with drowsiness that he sinks back again into sleep. Of course no one wants to sleep forever, and everyone in his senses would agree that it is better to be awake; yet all the same, when we feel a sort of lethargy in our limbs, we often put off the moment of shaking off sleep, and, even though it is time to get up, we gladly take a little longer in bed, conscious though we may be that we should not be doing so. In just the same way I was quite certain that it was better to give myself up to your charity rather than to give in to my own desires; but, though the former course was a conviction to which I gave my assent, the latter was a pleasure to which I gave my consent. For I had no answer to make to you when you called me; "Awake, thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead, and Christ shall give thee light."[2] And, while you showed me wherever I looked that what you said was true, I, convinced by the truth, could still find nothing at all to say except lazy words spoken half asleep: "A minute," "just a minute," "just a little time longer." But there was no limit to the minutes, and the little time longer went a long way. It was in vain that "I delighted in Thy law according to the inner man, when another law in my members rebelled against the law of my mind, and led me captive under the law of sin which was in my members."[3] For the law of sin is the strong force of habit, which drags the mind along and controls it even against its will—though deservedly, since the habit was voluntarily adopted. "Who then should deliver me this wretched from the body of this death, by Thy grace only, through Jesus Christ our Lord?"[4]

6. Now, Lord, my helper and my redeemer, I shall tell and confess to your name how it was that you freed me from the bondage of my desire for sex, in which I was so closely fettered, and from my slavery to the affairs of this world. I was leading my usual life; my anxiety was growing greater and greater, and every day I sighed to you. I went often to your Church, whenever I had time to spare from all that business under the weight of which I was groaning. Alypius[5] was with me. He was free from his official legal work after a third term as assessor and was now waiting to sell his legal advice to anyone who came along, just as I was selling the ability to make speeches—if such an ability can be imparted by teaching. Nebridius, as an act of friendship to us, had consented to teach under Verecundus, a great friend of us all, a citizen and elementary schoolmaster of Milan. He had been very eager to have Nebridius on his staff and indeed had claimed it as something due from our friendship that one of us should come and give him the help and support which he badly needed. Nebridius was not influenced by any desire for profit; he could have done better for himself by teaching literature, if he had wanted. But he was the kindest and best of friends, and, being always ready to help others, would not turn down our request. He conducted himself very carefully in his work, being unwilling to become known in what are regarded by the world as "distinguished circles," and avoiding everything which could disturb his peace of mind; for he wanted to have his

[1] Gal. 5:17.

[2] Eph. 5:14.

[3] Rom. 7:22–23.

[4] Rom. 7:24.

[5] Alypius was one of Augustine's friends.

mind free and at leisure for as many hours as possible so as to pursue wisdom, to read about it, or to hear about it.

One day, when Alypius and I were at home (Nebridius, for some reason which I cannot remember, was away) we were visited by a man called Ponticianus who, coming from Africa, was a fellow countryman of ours and who held an important appointment at the emperor's court. He had something or other which he wanted to ask us, and we sat down to talk. In front of us was a table for playing games on, and he happened to notice a book lying on the table. He took it, opened it, and found that it was the apostle Paul. He was quite surprised at this, since he had imagined it would be one of the books over which I wearied myself out in the course of my profession. Next he began to smile and, looking closely at me, told me that he was not only surprised but pleased at his unexpected discovery that I had this book and only this book at my side. For he was a Christian, and baptized. He often knelt before you, our God, in Church, praying long and frequently to you. I told him that I gave the greatest attention to these works of Scripture, and then, on his initiative, a conversation began about the Egyptian monk Antony, whose name was very well known among your servants, although Alypius and I up to this time had never heard of him. When Ponticianus discovered this he talked all the more about him, since he wanted us in our ignorance, at which he was much surprised, to learn more about such a great man. And we were amazed as we heard of these wonderful works of yours which had been witnessed by so many people, had been done in the true faith and the Catholic Church, and all so recently—indeed practically in our own times. All of us were full of wonder, Alypius and I at the importance of what we were hearing, Ponticianus at the fact that we had never heard the story before.

He went on to speak of the communities living in monasteries, of their way of life which was full of the sweet fragrance of you, and of the fruitful deserts in the wilderness, about which we knew nothing. There was actually a monastery in Milan outside the walls of the city. It was full of good brothers and was under the care of Ambrose, but we had not even heard of this. So Ponticianus went on speaking and we sat quiet, listening to him eagerly. In the course of his talk he told us how once, when the emperor was at Trier and busy with holding the chariot races in the Circus, he himself with three friends had gone for a walk in the afternoon through the gardens near the city walls. It happened that they walked in two groups, one of the three going one way with him, and the others going another way by themselves. These other two, as they strolled along, happened to come to a small house which was inhabited by some of your servants, "poor in spirit, of whom is the kingdom of heaven,"[1] and there they found a book in which was written an account of the life of Antony. One of the two friends began to read it. He became full of wonder and excitement, and, as he read, he began to think of how he himself could lead a life like this and, abandoning his profession in this world, give his service to you. For these two men were both officials in the emperor's civil service. Suddenly, then, he was filled with a holy love; he felt a sober shame, and, angry with himself, he looked toward his friend and said: "Tell me now; in all this hard work which we do, what are we aiming at? What is it that we want? Why is it that we are state officials? Can we have any higher hope at court than to become friends of the emperor? And is not that a position difficult to hold and full of danger? Indeed does one not have to go through danger after danger simply to reach a place that is more dangerous still? And how long will it take to get there? But, if I want, I can be the friend of God now, this moment." After saying this, he turned back to the book, troubled and perplexed by the new life to which he was giving birth. So he read on, and his heart, where you saw it, was changed, and, as soon appeared, his mind shook off the burden of the world. While he was reading and the waves in his heart rose and fell, there were times when he cried out against himself, and then he distinguished the better course and chose it for his own. Now he was yours, and he said to his friend: "I have now broken away from all our hopes and ambitions and have decided to serve God, and I am entering on this service now, this moment, in this place. You may not like to imitate me in this, but you must not oppose me."

The other replied that he would stay with him and be his comrade in so great a service and for so great a reward. Both of them were now yours; they were building their own fortress at the right cost—namely, the forsaking of all that they had and the following of you.

At this point Ponticianus and his companion, who had been walking in a different part of the garden, looking for their friends, came and found them in this place. When they found them, they suggested that they should go back, as it was now nearly sunset. The others however told them of the decision which they had reached and what they proposed to do; they described how the whole thing had started and how their resolution was now fixed, and they begged their friends, if they would not now join

[1] Matt. 5:3.

them, not to interfere with their purpose. Ponticianus and his friends, while not changing from their former ways, did (as Ponticianus told us) weep for themselves and, devoutly and sincerely congratulating the others, asked them to remember them in their prayers; then, with their own hearts still down on the earth, they went off to the palace. But the other two, with their hearts fixed on heaven, remained there in the cottage. Each of these two was engaged to be married, and when the girls to whom they were engaged heard what had happened, they also dedicated their virginity to you.

7. This was what Ponticianus told us. But you, Lord, while he was speaking, were turning me around so that I could see myself; You took me from behind my own back, which was where I had put myself during the time when I did not want to be observed by myself, and you set me in front of my own face so that I could see how foul a sight I was—crooked, filthy, spotted, and ulcerous. I saw and I was horrified, and I had nowhere to go to escape from myself. If I tried to look away from myself, Ponticianus still went on with his story, and again you were setting me in front of myself, forcing me to look into my own face, so that I might see my sin and hate it. I did know it, but I pretended that I did not. I had been pushing the whole idea away from me and forgetting it.

But now the more ardent was the love I felt for those two men of whom I was hearing and of how healthfully they had been moved to give themselves up entirely to you to be cured, the more bitter was the hatred I felt for myself when I compared myself with them. Many years (at least twelve) of my own life had gone by since the time when I was nineteen and was reading Cicero's *Hortensius* and had been fired with an enthusiasm for wisdom. Yet I was still putting off the moment when, despising this world's happiness, I should give all my time to the search for that of which not only the finding but merely the seeking must be preferred to the discovered treasures and kingdoms of men or to all the pleasures of the body easily and abundantly available. But I, wretched young man that I was—even more wretched at the beginning of my youth—had begged you for chastity and had said: "Make me chaste and continent, but not yet." I was afraid that you might hear me too soon and cure me too soon from the disease of a lust which I preferred to be satisfied rather than extinguished. And I had gone along evil ways, following a sacrilegious superstition—not because I was convinced by it, but simply preferring it to the other doctrines into which I never inquired in a religious spirit, but merely attacked them in a spirit of spite.

I had thought that the reason why I was putting off from day to day the time when I should despise all worldly hopes and follow you alone was because I could see no certainty toward which I could direct my course. But now the day had come when in my own eyes I was stripped naked and my conscience cried out against me: "Can you not hear me? Was it not this that you used to say, that you would not throw off the burden of vanity for a truth that was uncertain? Well, look. Now the truth is certain, and you are still weighed down by your burden. Yet these others, who have not been so worn out in the search and not been meditating the matter for ten years or more, have had the weight taken from their backs and have been given wings to fly."

So I was being gnawed at inside, and as Ponticianus went on with his story I was lost and overwhelmed in a terrible kind of shame. When the story was over and the business about which he had come had been settled he went away, and I retired into myself. Nor did I leave anything unsaid against myself. With every scourge of condemnation I lashed my soul on to follow me now that I was trying to follow you. And my soul hung back; it refused to follow, and it could give no excuse for its refusal. All the arguments had been used already and had been shown to be false. There remained a mute shrinking; for it feared like death to be restrained from the flux of a habit by which it was melting away into death.

...

12. And now from my hidden depths my searching thought had dragged up and set before the sight of my heart the whole mass of my misery. Then a huge storm rose up within me bringing with it a huge downpour of tears. So that I might pour out all these tears and speak the words that came with them I rose up from Alypius (solitude seemed better for the business of weeping) and went further away so that I might not be embarrassed even by his presence. This was how I felt and he realized it. No doubt I had said something or other, and he could feel the weight of my tears in the sound of my voice. And so I rose to my feet, and he, in a state of utter amazement, remained in the place where we had been sitting. I flung myself down on the ground somehow under a fig tree and gave free rein to my tears; they streamed and flooded from my eyes, an "acceptable sacrifice to Thee."[1]

[1] Recalling Phil. 4:18.

And I kept saying to you, not perhaps in these words, but with this sense: "And Thou, O Lord, how long? How long, Lord; wilt Thou be angry forever? Remember not our former iniquities."[1] For I felt that it was these which were holding me fast. And in my misery I would exclaim: "How long, how long this 'tomorrow and tomorrow'? Why not now? Why not finish this very hour with my uncleanness?"

So I spoke, weeping in the bitter contrition of my heart. Suddenly a voice reaches my ears from a nearby house. It is the voice of a boy or a girl (I don't know which) and in a kind of singsong the words are constantly repeated: "Take it and read it. Take it and read it." At once my face changed, and I began to think carefully of whether the singing of words like these came into any kind of game which children play, and I could not remember that I had ever heard anything like it before. I checked the force of my tears and rose to my feet, being quite certain that I must interpret this as a divine command to me to open the book and read the first passage which I should come upon. For I had heard this about Antony: he had happened to come in when the Gospel was being read, and as though the words read were spoken directly to himself, had received the admonition: "Go, sell all that thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven, and come and follow me."[2] And by such an oracle he had been immediately converted to you.

So I went eagerly back to the place where Alypius was sitting, since it was there that I had left the book of the Apostle when I rose to my feet. I snatched up the book, opened it, and read in silence the passage upon which my eyes first fell: "Not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying: but put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh in concupiscence."[3] I had no wish to read further; there was no need to. For immediately I had reached the end of this sentence it was as though my heart was filled with a light of confidence and all the shadows of my doubt were swept away.

Before shutting the book I put my finger or some other marker in the place and told Alypius what had happened. By now my face was perfectly calm. And Alypius in his turn told me what had been going on in himself, and which I knew nothing about. He asked to see the passage which I had read. I showed him and he went on further than the part I had read, nor did I know the words which followed. They were these: "Him that is weak in the faith, receive."[4] He applied this to himself and told me so. He was strengthened by the admonition; calmly and unhesitatingly he joined me in a purpose and a resolution so good, and so right for his character, which had always been very much better than mine.

The next thing we do is to go inside and tell my mother. How happy she is! We describe to her how it all took place, and there is no limit to her joy and triumph. Now she was praising you, "Who art able to do above that which we ask or think";[5] for she saw that with regard to me you had given her so much more than she used to ask for when she wept so pitifully before you. For you converted me to you in such a way that I no longer sought a wife nor any other worldly hope. I was now standing on that rule of faith, just as you had shown me to her in a vision so many years before. And so you had changed her mourning into joy, a joy much richer than she had desired and much dearer and purer than that which she looked for by having grandchildren of my flesh.

1.7 Relating this world to the next: Augustine, *The City of God* (413–426). Original in Latin.

As a young man, St. Augustine (354–430) wanted to be an orator and teacher—that is, a rhetorician—but his restless quest for life's meaning led him to make a dramatic conversion, chronicled in his *Confessions* (above, p. 12). Later, as bishop of Hippo in North

[1] See Ps. 6:3.

[2] Matt. 19:21.

[3] Rom. 13:13.

[4] Rom. 14:1.

[5] Eph. 3:20.

Africa (r.395–430), he became the most influential churchman of his day and for centuries to come, especially in the Roman Catholic West. Counted among the Church Fathers, Augustine formulated many of the key themes of Western Christianity until at least the twelfth century. Perhaps the most enduring of his works was *The City of God*, which, by postulating two cities—the City of God and the City of Man—permitted Augustine to explore the mingling of the sacred with the secular realms, the uses of adversity in the world, the vision of Heaven as a place of total peace, and the idea that the life of man on earth is a pilgrimage—a holy trek—from home (the here-and-now) to a longed-for place of succor (the City of God). In spite of these universal and timeless themes, the book was written in response to a very specific historical event: the sack of Rome by the Visigoths under their leader Alaric in 410.

1. What does Augustine mean when he says that the City of God exists as "a stranger among the ungodly, living by faith"?
2. What are the evils of human society in Augustine's view, and why does he say that nevertheless the "life of the saints" is "social"?

[Source: Augustine, *Concerning the City of God against the Pagans*, trans. Henry Bettenson (New York: Penguin, 1972), pp. 5–7, 13–17, 858–59, 881, 891–92.]

Book 1

PREFACE. THE PURPOSE AND ARGUMENT OF THIS WORK

Here, my dear Marcellinus,[1] is the fulfilment of my promise, a book in which I have taken upon myself the task of defending the glorious City of God against those who prefer their own gods to the Founder of that City. I treat of it both as it exists in this world of time, a stranger among the ungodly, living by faith,[2] and as it stands in the security of its everlasting seat. This security it now awaits in steadfast patience, until "justice returns to judgment,"[3] but it is to attain it hereafter in virtue of its ascendancy over its enemies, when the final victory is won and peace established. The task is long and arduous; but God is our helper.[4]

I know how great is the effort needed to convince the proud of the power and excellence of humility, an excellence which makes it soar above all the summits of this world, which sway in their temporal instability, overtopping them all with an eminence not arrogated by human pride, but granted by divine grace. For the King and Founder of this City which is our subject has revealed in the Scripture of his people this statement of the divine Law, "God resists the proud, but he gives grace to the humble."[5] This is God's prerogative; but man's arrogant spirit in its swelling pride has claimed it as its own, and delights to hear this verse quoted in its own praise: "To spare the conquered, and beat down the proud."[6]

Therefore I cannot refrain from speaking about the city of this world, a city which aims at dominion, which

[1] Marcellinus (d.413) was an intimate disciple of St. Augustine sent by the Emperor Honorius to preside over the council summoned at Carthage to settle the dispute between Catholics and Donatists. Marcellinus was anxious to convert Volusianus (d.437), proconsul of Africa. Volusianus showed interest, but among his objections to Christianity was the charge that it had undermined the Roman Empire. Marcellinus wrote to ask for help from St. Augustine (who had already corresponded with Volusianus), and this led eventually to the writing of *The City of God*.

[2] See Hab. 2:4; Rom. 1:17; Gal. 3:11; Heb. 10:38.

[3] Ps. 94:15; Douay Ps. 93:15.

[4] See Ps. 118:7; Douay Ps. 117:7.

[5] 1 Pet. 5:5.

[6] Virgil, *Aeneid* 6.853.

holds nations in enslavement, but is itself dominated by that very lust of domination. I must consider this city as far as the scheme of this work demands and as occasion serves.

1. THE ENEMIES OF CHRISTIANITY WERE SPARED BY THE BARBARIANS AT THE SACK OF ROME, OUT OF RESPECT FOR CHRIST

From this world's city there arise enemies against whom the City of God has to be defended, though many of these correct their godless errors and become useful citizens of that City. But many are inflamed with hate against it and feel no gratitude for the benefits offered by its Redeemer. The benefits are unmistakable; those enemies would not today be able to utter a word against the City if, when fleeing from the sword of their enemy, they had not found, in the City's holy places, the safety on which they now congratulate themselves.[1] The barbarians spared them for Christ's sake; and now these Romans assail Christ's name. The sacred places of the martyrs and the basilicas of the apostles bear witness to this, for in the sack of Rome they afforded shelter to fugitives, both Christian and pagan. The bloodthirsty enemy raged thus far, but here the frenzy of butchery was checked; to these refuges the merciful among the enemy conveyed those whom they had spared outside, to save them from encountering foes who had no such pity. Even men who elsewhere raged with all the savagery an enemy can show, arrived at places where practices generally allowed by laws of war were forbidden and their monstrous passion for violence was brought to a sudden halt; their lust for taking captives was subdued.

In this way many escaped who now complain of this Christian era, and hold Christ responsible for the disasters which their city endured. But they do not make Christ responsible for the benefits they received out of respect for Christ, to which they owed their lives. They attribute their deliverance to their own destiny; whereas if they had any right judgment they ought rather to attribute the harsh cruelty they suffered at the hands of their enemies to the providence of God. For God's providence constantly uses war to correct and chasten the corrupt morals of mankind, as it also uses such afflictions to train men in a righteous and laudable way of life, removing to a better state those whose life is approved, or else keeping them in this world for further service.

Moreover, they should give credit to this Christian era for the fact that these savage barbarians showed mercy beyond the custom of war—whether they so acted in general in honor of the name of Christ, or in places specially dedicated to Christ's name, buildings of such size and capacity as to give mercy a wider range. For this clemency our detractors ought rather to give thanks to God; they should have recourse to his name in all sincerity so as to escape the penalty of everlasting fire, seeing that so many of them assumed his name dishonestly, to escape the penalty of immediate destruction. Among those whom you see insulting Christ's servants with such wanton insolence there are very many who came unscathed through that terrible time of massacre only by passing themselves off as Christ's servants. And now with ungrateful pride and impious madness they oppose his name in the perversity of their hearts, so that they may incur the punishment of eternal darkness; but then they took refuge in that name, though with deceitful lips, so that they might continue to enjoy this transitory light....

8. BLESSINGS AND DISASTERS OFTEN SHARED BY GOOD AND BAD

No doubt this question will be asked, "Why does the divine mercy extend even to the godless and ungrateful?" The only explanation is that it is the mercy of one "who makes his sun rise on the good and on the bad, and sends rain alike on the righteous and the unrighteous."[2] Some of the wicked are brought to penitence by considering these facts, and amend their impiety, while others, in the words of the Apostle, "despise the riches of God's goodness and forbearance, in the hardness and impenitence of their hearts, and lay up for themselves a store of wrath in the day of God's anger and of the revelation of the just judgment of God, who will repay every man according to his actions."[3] Yet the patience of God still invites the wicked to penitence, just as God's chastisement trains the good in patient endurance. God's mercy embraces the good for their cherishing, just as his severity chastens the wicked for their punishment. God, in his providence, decided to prepare future blessings for the righteous, which the unrighteous will not enjoy, and

[1] This refers to Alaric's clemency toward those who took sanctuary in Christian shrines, and especially in the basilicas of St. Peter and St. Paul.

[2] Matt. 5:45.

[3] Rom. 2:4–6; "the Apostle" refers always to St. Paul in the works of the early Fathers of the Church.

sorrows for the ungodly, with which the good will not be tormented. But he has willed that these temporal goods and temporal evils should befall good and bad alike, so that the good things should not be too eagerly coveted, when it is seen that the wicked also enjoy them, and that the evils should not be discreditably shunned, when it is apparent that the good are often afflicted with them.

The most important question is this: What use is made of the things thought to be blessings, and of the things reputed evil? The good man is not exalted by this world's goods; nor is he overwhelmed by this world's ills. The bad man is punished by misfortune of this kind just because he is corrupted by good fortune....

Book 19

5. SOCIAL LIFE; ITS VALUE AND ITS DANGERS

The philosophies hold the view that the life of the wise man should be social; and in this we support them much more heartily. For here we are, with the nineteenth book in hand on the subject of the City of God; and how could that City have made its first start, how could it have advanced along its course, how could it attain its appointed goal, if the life of the saints were not social? And yet, who would be capable of listing the number and the gravity of the ills which abound in human society amid the distresses of our mortal condition? Who would be competent to assess them? Our philosophers should listen to a character in one of their own comedies, voicing a sentiment with which all mankind agrees:

> I married a wife; and misery I found!
> Children were born; and they increased my cares.[1]

Again, think of the disorders of love, as listed in another quotation from Terence:

> Wrongs and suspicions, enmities and war—
> Then, peace again.[2]

Have they not everywhere filled up the story of human experience? Are they not of frequent occurrence, even in the honorable love of friends? The story of mankind is full of them at every point; for in that story we are aware of wrongs, suspicions, enmities and war—undoubted evils, these. And even peace is a doubtful good, since we do not know the hearts of those with whom we wish to maintain peace, and even if we could know them today, we should not know what they might be like tomorrow. In fact, who are, in general, more friendly, or at any rate ought to be, than those within the walls of the same home? And yet, is anyone perfectly serene in that situation, when such grievous ills have so often arisen from the secret treachery of people within those walls? And the bitterness of these ills matches the sweetness of the peace that was reckoned genuine, when it was in fact only a very clever pretense.

This explains why some words of Cicero come so close to our hearts that we cannot but sigh when we read:

> No treachery is more insidious than that which is hidden under a pretense of loyalty, or under the name of kinship. For against an open adversary you could be on your guard and thus easily avoid him; but this hidden evil, within the house and family, not only arises before you are aware but even overwhelms you before you can catch sight of it and investigate it.[3]

Hence also that inspired utterance, "A man's enemies are those of his own household,"[4] is heard with deep sorrow of heart. For even if anyone is strong enough to bear these ills with equanimity, or watchful enough to guard with foresight and discretion against the contrivances of pretended friendship, nevertheless he cannot but feel grievous anguish, if he himself is a good man, at the wickedness of the traitors, when by experience he knows their utter viciousness, whether they were always evil and their goodness was a sham, or whether they suffered a change from good-nature to the malice that they now display. If, then, safety is not to be found in the home, the common refuge from the evils that befall mankind, what shall we say of the city? The larger the city, the more is its forum filled with civil lawsuits and criminal trials, even if that city be at peace, free from the alarms or—what is more frequent—the bloodshed, of sedition and civil war. It is true that cities are at times

---

[1] Terence, *Adelphi* 5.4.13–14.

[2] Terence, *Eunuchus* 1.1.14–15.

[3] Cicero, *Actio in Verrem* 2.1.13.

[4] Matt. 10:36.

exempt from those occurrences; they are never free from the danger of them....

20. THE FELLOW-CITIZENS OF THE SAINTS ARE IN THIS LIFE MADE HAPPY BY HOPE

We see, then, that the Supreme Good, of the City of God is everlasting and perfect peace, which is not the peace through which men pass in their mortality, in their journey from birth, to death, but that peace in which they remain in their immortal state, experiencing no adversity at all. In view of this, can anyone deny that this is the supremely blessed life, or that the present life on earth, however full it may be of the greatest possible blessings of soul and body and of external circumstances, is, in comparison, most miserable? For all that, if anyone accepts the present life in such a spirit that he uses it with the end in view of that other life on which he has set his heart with all his ardor and for which he hopes with all his confidence, such a man may without absurdity be called happy even now, though rather by future hope than in present reality. Present reality without that hope is, to be sure, a false happiness, in fact, an utter misery. For the present does not bring into play the true goods of the mind; since no wisdom is true wisdom if it does not direct its attention, in all its prudent decisions, its resolute actions, its self-control and its just dealings with others, towards that ultimate state in which God will be all in all,[1] in the assurance of eternity and the perfection of peace....

26. ..."Blessed is the people, whose God is the Lord."[2] It follows that a people alienated from that God must be wretched. Yet even such a people loves a peace of its own, which is not to be rejected; but it will not possess it in the end, because it does not make good use of it before the end. Meanwhile, however, it is important for us also that this people should possess this peace in this life, since so long as the two cities are intermingled we also make use of the peace of Babylon—although the People of God is by faith set free from Babylon, so that in the meantime they are only pilgrims in the midst of her. That is why the Apostle instructs the Church to pray for kings of that city and those in high positions, adding these words: "that we may lead a quiet and peaceful life with all devotion and love."[3] And when the prophet Jeremiah predicted to the ancient People of God the coming captivity, and bade them, by God's inspiration, to go obediently to Babylon, serving God even by their patient endurance, he added his own advice that prayers should be offered for Babylon, "because in her peace is your peace"[4]—meaning, of course, the temporal peace of the meantime, which is shared by good and bad alike.

1.8 Monasticism: *The Benedictine Rule* (*c.*530–*c.*560). Original in Latin.

St. Benedict (d.*c.*550–*c.*560), founder of several monasteries near Rome, wrote the most famous *Rule* for monks. In large measure it is an organized and institutionalized presentation of biblical directives, especially those inspired by the Gospels. The key virtue of the monk in Benedict's *Rule* is obedience. The key duty is the Work of God, the hours of daily chant—known as the offices[5]—centered on the Psalter, all 150 psalms of which the monks were to complete each week. Within a half-century or so, Benedict's *Rule* had been incorporated alongside others in many Western monasteries. In the ninth century, it was adopted as the official norm for the monasteries of the Carolingian Empire. Compare its notions of human virtue and life on earth with those expressed in Augustine's *City of God*, p. 16 above.

[1] 1 Cor. 15:28.

[2] Ps. 144:15; Douay Ps. 143:15.

[3] 1 Tim. 2:2.

[4] Jer. 29:7.

[5] These are Vigils (the Night Office), Matins, Prime, Terce, Sext, None, Vespers, and Compline.

1. What role does obedience play in the life of the monk, and why?
2. Imagine that you were the abbot of a Benedictine monastery. What would be your job description?

[Source: *The Rule of St. Benedict*, ed. and trans. Bruce L. Venarde (Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 2011), pp. 3, 7, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23, 29, 31, 33, 35, 37, 45, 47, 57, 59, 61, 79, 85, 87, 89, 97, 123, 125, 139, 141, 143, 161, 163, 177, 179, 187, 189, 191, 193, 229 (notes modified).]

In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, here begins the prologue of the Rule by the great father Saint Benedict

Listen carefully, my son, to the teachings of a master and incline the ear of your heart. Gladly accept and effectively fulfill the admonition of a loving father so that through the work of obedience you may return to him from whom you had withdrawn through the sloth of disobedience. To you, therefore, my word is now directed—to whoever, renouncing his own will in order to fight for the Lord Christ, the true king, takes up the brilliant and mighty weapons of obedience....

Therefore our hearts and bodies must be prepared to fight for holy obedience to his instructions and what is not possible in us by nature let us ask God to order the aid of his grace to supply us. And if, fleeing the punishments of hell, we desire to attain eternal life, while there is still time and we are in this body and there is time to carry out all these things by the light of this life, we must hurry and do now what would profit us for eternity.

Thus we must found a school for the Lord's service.[1] In its design we hope we will establish nothing harsh, nothing oppressive. But if, according to the dictates of fairness, there emerges something a little severe in the interest of amending sins or preserving love, do not at once be frightened by fear and flee the path of salvation, which can only be narrow at the start. Instead, by progress in monastic life and faith, with hearts expanded in love's indescribable sweetness, we run along the path of God's commands so that, never turning away from his instruction and persevering in his doctrine in the monastery until death, through patience we may share the sufferings of Christ and also deserve to be sharers in his kingdom. Amen.

Here begins the text of the Rule. It is called that because it rules the conduct of those who obey it.

Chapter 1
The Kinds of Monks

It is clear there are four kinds of monks. First are the cenobites, those in a monastery serving under a rule and an abbot. The second kind are anchorites, that is, hermits, those no longer fresh in the fervor of monastic life but long tested in a monastery, who have learned, by now schooled with the help of many, to fight against the Devil. Well trained among a band of brothers for single combat in the desert, by now confident even without another's encouragement, they are ready with God's help, to fight the vices of body and mind with hand and arm alone. The third, a very vile kind, are the sarabaites, tested by no rule nor instructed by experience, like gold in the furnace; but softened like lead, still keeping faith with worldly ways, they are known to lie to God by having tonsures.[2] They go around in pairs or threes or, of course, singly with no shepherd, shut in their own sheepfolds, not the Lord's, and the pleasure of their desires is their law, since they call holy whatever they have thought or chosen and they deem forbidden what they have not wished to do. The fourth kind of monks are those called gyrovagues,[3] who

[1] In the Latin of this period, "school" could mean not only a place where instruction was received, but also the group receiving instruction, as well as, more generally, a vocational corporation (such as a guild) of people devoted to a common craft or service. A similar usage can be seen in the English "school of painters" or "school of porpoises."

[2] The tonsure is a haircut, reminiscent of male-pattern baldness, characteristic of monks. Interestingly, Benedict does not mention it elsewhere in the *Rule*.

[3] A combination word from the Greek for "circle" and the Latin for "to wander," reminiscent of the English idiom "to go around in circles."

spend their whole lives lodging in different regions and different monasteries three or four days at a time, always wandering and never stable, serving their own wills and the lure of gluttony worse than sarabaites in every way. It is better to keep silent than to discuss the utterly wretched monastic ways of all these people. Therefore, leaving them aside, with God's help let us proceed to specifications for a very strong kind of monk, the cenobites.

Chapter 2
What Sort of Man the Abbot Should Be

An abbot who is worthy to lead a monastery should always remember what he is called and fulfill the name of "superior" in his deeds. For he is believed to act in the place of Christ in the monastery when he is called by Christ's title, as the apostle says: "You have received the spirit of the adoption of sons, in which we cry out 'Abba, Father.'"[1] Therefore, the abbot must not teach or establish or decree anything that is outside the Lord's commandments, but instead, his decrees and his teaching should sprinkle the yeast of divine justice in the minds of his disciples. The abbot must always be mindful that there will have to be a trial in God's fearsome court concerning two matters: his teaching and his disciples' obedience. And an abbot should know that whatever use the father of the household finds lacking in the sheep will be blamed on the shepherd. It will be equally the case that if all assiduous diligence is applied to a shepherd's unsettled and disobedient flock and every effort to cure its unhealthiness is applied, let their shepherd, acquitted in the Lord's judgment, say to the Lord, with the prophet, "I did not hide your justice in my heart and I spoke your truth and your salvation,[2] yet they scornfully rejected me."[3] And then in the end the punishment for disobedient sheep in his care will be death itself prevailing over them....

Chapter 3
Summoning the Brothers for Counsel

Whenever there is important business to do in the monastery, the abbot should call the whole community together and tell the brothers what it is about. After hearing the brothers' counsel, he should mull things over and do what he judges most beneficial. We said that all should be called to counsel because often the Lord reveals what is best to a junior brother.[4] Thus the brothers should give advice with all humble deference and not presume to defend their views too insistently, and instead let the decision depend on the abbot's judgment so that all may comply with what he has deemed most salutary. But just as it is fitting for disciples to obey their master, so too is it seemly for him to arrange everything justly and prudently.

Everybody therefore, should follow the Rule as a master in all things and nobody should rashly deviate from it. Nobody in the monastery should follow his own heart's will, nor presume to argue with the abbot insolently or outside the monastery.[5] Anyone who so presumes should be subject to the discipline of the Rule.[6] However, the abbot himself should do everything in fear of God and in observance of the Rule, knowing beyond all doubt that he will have to render an account concerning all his decisions to God, the most just judge.

If minor business concerning monastic interests is to be done, let the abbot take only the advice of the senior monks, as it is written: "Do everything with counsel and you will not regret it later."[7]

Chapter 4
The Tools of Good Works

First of all, "to love the Lord God with your whole heart, whole soul, and whole strength," then "your neighbor

---

[1] Rom. 8:15.

[2] Ps. 40:11; Douay Ps. 39:11.

[3] Ezek. 20:27.

[4] Junior could mean "younger" or "lesser in rank."

[5] The meaning here is obscure; as it stands, it means that respectful disagreement with the abbot is permitted only within the cloister but never outside. Some manuscripts read "inside or out," which would restrict much more severely the brothers' opportunities to question the abbot's decision.

[6] This discipline is described in chapters 23–30. It mainly involved "excommunication," that is, an internal shunning and restriction of privileges in the community.

[7] Ecclus. 32:24.

as yourself."[1] Then "not to kill, commit adultery, steal, covet, or give false testimony; honor all men,"[2] and never do to another what you do not want done to yourself.[3] "Renounce yourself to follow Christ. Punish your body,"[4] do not embrace pleasure, love fasting. Give relief to the poor, clothe the naked, visit the sick, bury the dead. Help those in trouble, comfort those in mourning. Make yourself a stranger to the ways of the world, put nothing above the love of Christ.

Do not give in to anger, or waste time holding a grudge. Keep no deceit in your heart, nor give false peace, nor abandon charity. Do not swear oaths, lest by chance you perjure yourself, speak truth with heart and tongue. "Do not return evil for evil."[5] Do no injury, but even bear patiently those done to you. "Love your enemies."[6] Do not curse in return those who curse you, but bless them instead. "Endure persecution for the sake of justice. Do not be proud, nor overly fond of wine,"[7] nor a glutton, a sluggard, "slothful," a grumbler, or a detractor....

Look: these are the tools of the spiritual craft. When we have used them day and night without ceasing and given them back on the Day of Judgment, we will receive in return the reward God himself promised: "What the eye has not seen nor the ear heard, God has prepared for those who love him."[8] The workshops where we should industriously carry all this out are the cloisters of the monastery and stability in the community....

Chapter 7
Humility

Divine Scripture calls out to us, brothers, saying, "Everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted."[9] When it says these words, it shows us that all exaltation is a kind of pride, which the prophet shows he guards against, saying, "Lord, my heart is not exalted, nor my eyes lifted up, nor did I move among great affairs or marvels that are beyond me." But what "if I did not understand humbly if I exalted my soul, would you refuse me in my soul like a weaned child on his mother's lap?"[10] So, brothers, if we want to reach the summit of the greatest humility and arrive quickly at that heavenly exaltation toward which we ascend through humility in this present life, as we ascend through our deeds we must raise the ladder that appeared to Jacob in his dream, on which ascending and descending angels were shown to him. We understand without a doubt that this descent and ascent can be nothing other than to descend by exaltation and ascend by humility. That raised ladder is our life in the world, which, in humble hearts, should be hoisted by the Lord to heaven. For we say that the sides of the ladder are our body and soul, in which our divine calling has placed the various rungs of humility and discipline we must climb.

The first step of humility, therefore, is that, placing the fear of God before his eyes at all times, one should altogether shun forgetfulness and always remember everything God commanded so that he always turns over in his mind both how hell burns those who scorn God for their sins and the eternal life prepared for those who fear God. Guarding himself at all times from sins and vices, those of thought, the tongue, the hands, the feet, and of his own will, but also the desires of the flesh, let him consider that he is always observed by God from heaven at all times and that his actions everywhere are seen by the divine gaze and reported by angels at all times....

Chapter 8
Divine Offices at Night

In wintertime, that is, from the first of November until Easter, reason dictates that monks should rise at the eighth hour of the night, so that after resting a little past midnight,

---

1 Matt. 22:37, 39; Mark 12:30–31; Luke 10:27.

2 Rom. 13:9; 1 Pet. 2:17.

3 Tob. 4:16.

4 Matt. 16:24; Luke 9:23; 1 Cor. 9:27.

5 1 Thess. 5:15.

6 Matt. 5:44; Luke 6:27.

7 Matt. 5:10; Titus 1:7.

8 1 Cor. 2:9.

9 Luke 18:14.

10 Ps. 131:1–2, Douay Ps. 130:1–2.

they should rise with digestion complete.[1] The time remaining after Vigils should be for study of the Psalter and readings by brothers who need it. From Easter to the abovementioned first of November, the schedule should be regulated so that, Vigils complete, there is a very brief break during which the brothers may go out for the necessities of nature, then Matins follows immediately, at first light.

Chapter 9
How Many Psalms Should Be Said[2] at the Night Offices

During wintertime as defined above, first this verse is to be said three times: "Lord, you will open my lips, and my mouth will proclaim your praise."[3] To that should be added Psalm 3 and the Gloria.[4] After that, Psalm 94 with an antiphon,[5] or at least chanted. Then an Ambrosian hymn[6] should follow, and then six psalms with antiphons. That done, after the verse is said, the abbot should give a blessing, and with everyone sitting down on benches, three readings should be recited in turn by brothers from the books on the lectern, and three responsories[7] should be chanted in between the readings. Two responsories should be said without the Gloria, but after the third reading, the chanter should say the Gloria. When the chanter begins it, all should rise from their seats at once out of honor and reverence for the Holy Trinity. Books of divine authority should be read at Vigils, from both the Old and New Testaments, and also commentaries on them written by well-known orthodox Catholic Fathers. After these three readings with their responsories, there should follow the remaining six psalms, sung with an Alleluia. After those, there should follow a reading from the apostle, recited by heart, the verse, and the supplication of the litany that is, the Kyrie Eleison.[8] And Vigils should be concluded in this way....

Chapter 16
How Divine Works Should Be Done During the Day

As the prophet says, "I praised you seven times a day."[9] This sacred number seven will be completed by us if we fulfill the duties of our service at Matins, Prime, Terce, Sext, None, Vespers, and Compline, because he said concerning these daytime hours, "I praised you seven times a day."[10] Concerning nighttime Vigils, the same prophet says, "I rose in the middle of the night to confess your name."[11] Therefore at these times we should praise our creator "for the judgments of his justice,"[12] that is, at Matins, Prime, Terce, Sext, None, Vespers, Compline, and at night we should rise to profess his name....

Chapter 18
The Order in Which Psalms Should Be Said

... We urge this in particular: if this distribution of the psalms happens to displease someone, he should arrange it otherwise if he thinks it better, although in any case he must ensure that the entire Psalter is sung every week, the full complement of 150 psalms, and it is taken up again from the beginning, at Sunday Vigils. For those monks who sing less than the entire Psalter with the customary canticles in the course of a week show themselves lazy in the service of devotion, since what—as we read—our

---

[1] "Midnight" probably means "in the middle of the night," a time that varies according to the season.

[2] Benedict used verbs meaning "say," "sing," and "chant psalms" somewhat haphazardly, but it is likely that the psalms were sung rather than spoken. Certainly that was soon the case in most monasteries.

[3] Ps. 51:17; Douay Ps. 50:17. The "verses" that Benedict refers to are brief excerpts from scripture.

[4] That is, this short hymn of praise or doxology:
Glory to the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit
As it was in the beginning, is now, and will always be, forever. Amen.

[5] Here, "antiphon" probably means that Psalm 94 was to be sung interspersed with the repetition of a short phrase from scripture.

[6] I.e., a hymn by Saint Ambrose of Milan (d.397).

[7] Short, sung responses from scripture.

[8] Greek for "Lord, have mercy."

[9] Ps. 119:164; Douay Ps. 118:164.

[10] Ps. 119:164; Douay Ps. 118:164.

[11] Ps. 119:62; Douay Ps. 118:62.

[12] Ps. 119:164; Douay Ps. 118:164.

Holy Fathers energetically completed in a single day we, more lukewarm as we are, ought to manage in an entire week....

Chapter 22
How Monks Should Sleep

Each one should sleep in his own bed. They should get bedding suited to their monastic life according to their abbot's determination.[1] If possible, all monks should sleep in one place; if their number does not allow that, they should rest in tens or twenties with senior monks to take care of them. A candle should burn in that room continually until morning. They should sleep clothed, girded with belts or cords, so they do not have their knives at their sides when they sleep, lest by chance they wound another sleeper when dreaming and so that the monks are always ready and, arising immediately at the signal, may hasten to be the first to do the work of God, yet with all seriousness and modesty. Younger brothers should not have beds next to one another, but be interspersed among seniors. Rising for the work of God, they should gently encourage one another, to counter the excuses of the sleepy....

Chapter 33
Whether Monks Should Have Any Private Property

This vice in particular should be torn out at the roots in the monastery: no one should presume to give or receive anything without the abbot's permission, or have any private property, nothing at all, no book or tablets or stylus, but absolutely nothing, since the brothers my not have either their bodies or their wills under their own control. They should look to the father of the monastery for everything they need and not be allowed to have anything that the abbot has not given or permitted. "All things should be common to all," as it is written, "lest somebody say something is his,"[2] or presume it is. If anyone is caught indulging in this most wicked vice, let him be warned once, then a second time; if he does not amend, let him undergo correction.

Chapter 34
Whether Everyone Should Accept Necessities in Equal Measure

As it is written, "There was allotment to individuals according to their need."[3] By which I do not say that there should be favoritism,[4] God forbid, but consideration of weaknesses, so that he who needs less should thank God and not be upset, but he who needs more should be humbled by his weakness, not puffed up because of the mercy shown him, and in this way all members will be at peace. Most of all, the evil of grumbling should not show itself for any reason or in any word or sign whatsoever; anyone caught at it should be subjected to very severe discipline....

Chapter 39
The Measure of Food

For the daily meal, whether at the sixth or ninth hour, we believe that two cooked dishes for every table will suffice, taking into account individual weaknesses, so that he who cannot eat one may eat the other. Therefore, two cooked dishes should be enough for all the brothers, and if fruit or fresh vegetables are available, they may be added as a third course. A generous pound of bread should suffice for the day, whether there is one meal or both dinner[5] and supper.[6] If the brothers are to have supper, a third of the pound should be set aside by the cellarer for distribution at supper.

If the workload happens to be increased, the abbot will have the choice and the power to increase the portion somewhat, if it is expedient, but above all excess is to be avoided so that indigestion never steals up on a monk, because nothing is so inappropriate to every Christian as excess, our Lord says: "See to it that your hearts are not

[1] The meaning here is uncertain: does the abbot hand out bedding appropriate to the level of communal asceticism, or does he treat each individual differently?

[2] Acts 4:32.

[3] Acts 4:35.

[4] See Rom. 2:11.

[5] That is, the midday meal.

[6] The evening meal.

weighed down by overindulgence."[1] Younger boys should not be served the same amount, but less than their elders, frugality being maintained in all things. They should all abstain entirely from the consumption of the meat of quadrupeds, except the gravely ill.

Chapter 40
The Measure of Drink

"Everyone has his own gift from the Lord, one this, another that,"[2] and therefore it is with some uneasiness that we fix the portion of others' sustenance. Nevertheless, contemplating the frailty of the weak, we think that one *hemina*[3] of wine each per day is enough. Those to whom God gives the endurance to abstain should know that they will have their own reward. But if circumstances of the place or work or summer heat demand more, let it be up to the judgment of the superior, who must always take care lest excess or drunkenness creep in. Although we read that wine is not for monks at all, but since in our times monks cannot be persuaded of this, let us at least agree that we should not drink to excess but sparingly "because wine makes even the wise lose their way."[4] If the circumstances of the place are such that not even the aforementioned measure can be obtained, but much less or none at all, those who live there should bless God and not grumble. We caution this, above all: brothers should refrain from grumbling.

Chapter 41
At What Times the Brothers Should Eat

From holy Easter until Pentecost, the brothers should dine at the sixth hour and have supper in the evening.[5] From Pentecost through the summer, if the monks do not have work in the fields and excessive heat does not bother them, they should fast until the ninth hour on Wednesday and Friday. On other days they should dine at the sixth hour, and keep dinner at the sixth hour regularly if they have work in the fields or the summer heat is too great, according to the abbot's decision. The abbot must regulate and arrange everything so that souls are saved and what the brothers do they do without justifiable grumbling.

From the ides of September until the beginning of Lent, they should always eat at the ninth hour. But in Lent until Easter they should eat in the evening; Vespers should be done so that the monks do not need lamplight to eat, but everything should be finished in daylight. Both supper and dinner hours should always be adjusted so that everything may be done in daylight....

Chapter 48
Daily Manual Labor

Idleness is the enemy of the soul. Therefore, the brothers should be occupied at set times in manual labor, and again at other set times in divine reading. Therefore we think that the times for each should be established according to this arrangement, that is: from Easter until the [first] of October, brothers leaving Prime in the morning should work until almost the fourth hour at whatever is necessary; from the fourth hour until almost the sixth they should be free for reading. Rising from the table after Sext, they should rest in their beds in complete silence, and those who want to read to themselves should do so as not to disturb others; and None should be done a little early, at the middle of the eighth hour, and again they should work at whatever is needed until Vespers. They should not be upset if the circumstances of the place or poverty demand they do their own harvesting of produce, because then they are truly monks if they live by the work of their hands, like our Fathers and the apostles. Yet all tasks should be done in moderation out of consideration for the weak.

From the [first] of October until the beginning of Lent, they should be free for reading until the end of the second hour; Terce should be done at the second hour, and then all should work at the tasks assigned to them until None. At the first signal for None, each should set aside his work and be ready when the second signal sounds. After the meal, they should be free for their reading or psalms....

---

[1] Luke 21:34.

[2] 1 Cor. 7:7.

[3] The equivalent modern measure is unknown. Estimates generally range from a pint to a quart.

[4] Ecclus. 19:2.

[5] That is, the traditional Mediterranean pattern in which the largest meal is in the middle of the day.

Chapter 54
If a Monk Should Receive Letters or Anything Else

In no way should it be allowed for a monk to receive letters, gifts, or keepsakes, not from his relatives, any other person, or another monk, nor should he give them, without the abbot's permission. But if something has been sent to him by his relatives, he should not presume to receive it unless the abbot is informed beforehand. But if the abbot orders it to be received, it should be in his power to command to whom it should be given and the brother to whom it happened to have been sent should not be upset, lest "the Devil be given an opportunity."[1] Let anyone who presumes to do otherwise be subject to the discipline of the Rule.

Chapter 55
The Brothers' Clothing and Shoes

Clothing should be given to the brothers according to the nature and the climate of the place where they live, since more is required in colder regions, less in warmer ones. This consideration is the abbot's concern. However, we believe that in milder places, a cowl and a tunic for each monk will suffice—a woolen cowl in winter, a light or worn one in the summer—a scapular for work[2] and footwear: leggings and boots. Monks should not object to the color or coarseness of any of these items, but have what is available in the region where they live and can be purchased cheaply....

Chapter 58
The Discipline of Receiving Brothers

Easy entry to the religious life should not be granted to a newcomer, but as the apostle says, "Test the spirits to see if they are from God."[3] Therefore, if one comes knocking, perseveres, and, after four or five days, seems to suffer patiently ill-treatment directed at him and the difficulty of entry and persists in his request, let entry be granted him and let him stay in the guest quarters for a few days. After that, he should be in the novices' quarters, where they study, eat, and sleep. A senior monk should be assigned to them, someone suited to win souls, in order to watch over them very carefully.

The concern should be whether he truly seeks God, if he is attentive to the work of God, to obedience, and to reprimands. All the difficult and harsh things involved in the approach to God should be made clear to him. If he promises perseverance in his stability, after two months this Rule should be read to him straight through and let this be said to him: "This is the law under which you want to serve. If you can observe it, enter, but if you cannot, you are free to go." If he still stays, he should then be led into the abovementioned novices' quarters and have his patience thoroughly tested again. After six months, the Rule should be read to him so he knows what he is getting into. And if he still stays, after four months the same Rule should be read to him again. And if, after deliberating within himself, he promises to take care in all things and carry out every task given him, then let him be received into the community, knowing that it is stated in the law of the Rule that from that day forward it is not permitted to him to leave the monastery, nor shake his neck from the yoke of the Rule that he was free to reject or accept after such exacting deliberation.

Moreover, the one to be received should give assurances in the oratory, before everyone, concerning his stability, religious life and ways, and obedience. Before God and his saints, let him know that if ever he does otherwise, he will be damned by the one he mocks. He should make a petition concerning this promise of his in the name of the saints whose relics[4] are there and of the abbot who is present....

If he has any property, he should either distribute it to the poor beforehand or, having made a solemn donation, give it to the monastery, keeping none of it whatsoever for himself, since indeed he knows that from that day forward, he will not even have control over his own body. Right there in the oratory, let him be stripped of the clothes in which he is dressed and put on the monastery's clothes. Let the clothing he removed be put in the wardrobe for safekeeping, so that if ever he gives in to the Devil's urging that he should leave the monastery, God forbid, then let him be thrown out, stripped of the monastery's clothes. However,

[1] 1 Tim. 5:14.

[2] It is not clear exactly what this garment was. A plausible explanation is that it was an overshirt, smock, or apron-like garment meant to keep other clothes from getting dirty or torn during manual labor.

[3] 1 John 4:1.

[4] Bones or other remnants of a saint.

he should not get back the petition that the abbot took from the altar, which should be kept in the monastery.

Chapter 59
Sons of Nobles and the Poor Who Are Offered

If it happens that a nobleman offers his son to the monastery, if the boy is young, his relatives should make the petition we discussed above, and they should tie together the petition and the boy's hand in an altar cloth, with the oblation,[1] and offer him that way. Concerning his property, they should either promise under oath in this same petition that they will never give him anything themselves, nor through a third party nor by any means, nor offer him the opportunity to own anything. Of course, if they do not want to do that and desire to offer something to the monastery for their own reward, let them make a donation to the monastery of the property they wish to give, keeping usufruct[2] themselves if they so desire. In this way everything is closed off, so that the boy cannot harbor any hope by which, God forbid, he could be deceived and ruined, which we have learned through experience.

Let poorer people do likewise. Those who have no property at all should simply draw up the petition and offer their son before witnesses, with the oblation....

Chapter 73
Not Every Practice of Justice Is Set Out in This Rule

We have sketched this Rule so that those of us practicing it in monasteries may show that we have some honor in our ways and the rudiments of monastic life. But for one who hastens toward perfection in monastic life, there are the teachings of the Holy Fathers, observance of which should direct a man to the peak of perfection. For which page, which word of the divine authority of the Old and New Testament is not the most righteous guide for human life? And which book by the Holy Catholic Fathers does not resound with how we may arrive at our creator by a straight path? As for the *Conferences*, *Institutes*, and *Lives of the Fathers*, as well as the Rule of our holy father Basil,[3] what else are they but tools of virtue for good and obedient monks? For us, lazy, wicked, and neglectful, they cause a blush of shame.

Therefore, whoever you are, hastening toward your heavenly home, with Christ's help carry out this little Rule sketched as a beginning, and then at last you will reach those greater heights of learning and virtues we mentioned above, with God's protection. Amen.

SAINTLY MODELS

1.9 The virginal life: Jerome, *Letter 24 (To Marcella)* (384). Original in Latin.

St. Jerome (*c.*347–419/420) was born in the Roman province of Dalmatia, near present-day Ljubljana. As a youth he went to Rome to study rhetoric and philosophy, and there, increasingly ashamed of his reckless student ways, he converted to Christianity. He subsequently lived in Trier, Aquileia, Antioch, and again in Rome; he spent the last decades of his life in

[1] Apparently this means at the offering of the bread and wine during the Mass, an oblique indication of the circumstances of profession. Here as elsewhere, Benedict assumes his readers know a great deal already.

[2] Meaning that the gift is in trust; the donors receive any profit or return during their lifetimes, and then the property is transferred to the monastery.

[3] The *Conferences* and *Institutes* refer to the works of John Cassian (d.*c.*435), who spent the first part of his life as a monk in Bethlehem, Egypt, and Constantinople. Later he founded two monasteries, one for men and the other for women, at Marseille. *The Lives of the Fathers* is probably a reference to Athanasius, *The Life of St. Antony* (see below, p. 30), along with other monastic biographies. The Rule of Basil was a collection of precepts written by Basil (d.379) in Greek for Byzantine monks, but it was available to Western monks through a Latin translation made by Rufinus of Aquileia in 397.

a hermit's cell near Bethlehem. His most famous work is his translation of the entire Bible into Latin: the Old Testament from the original Hebrew and the New Testament from the original Greek. This so-called Vulgate Bible, completed around 405, was the standard in the Christian West for the next millennium. Jerome also wrote biblical commentaries, history, theological tracts, and more than a hundred letters. *Letter 24* dates to his second period in Rome, during which time he was surrounded by a circle of elite women, including Marcella, a well-educated and wealthy widow who had already begun a life of Christian asceticism before Jerome arrived. The letter describes the way of life of the virgin Asella, Marcella's sister (although Jerome never says so explicitly). As a girl, Asella exchanged a gold necklace for a humble dark garment. She lived in a tiny cell and devoted herself to prayer and self-denial amidst the hustle and bustle of Rome, probably on a patch of family property.

1. Jerome offers no specific rationale for why virginity is the ideal state for a Christian woman. What can you gather on this subject from the contents of the letter?
2. What were the joys of the ascetic life?

[Source: *Sancti Eusebii Hieronymi Epistulae pars 1: Epistulae I-LXX*, 2nd ed., ed. Isidorus Hilberg, Corpus Scriptorum Ecclesiasticorum Latinorum 54 (Vienna: Verlag der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1996), pp. 214–17. Translated and introduced by Bruce L. Venarde.]

To Marcella, concerning the life of Asella.

1. Nobody should find fault that I praise or carp at certain people in my letters, since in exposing the wicked there is a reproach to others and zeal for virtue is spurred by preaching the best deeds of good people. The day before yesterday we had spoken concerning a certain Lea of blessed memory; immediately it pricked my conscience and came to mind that it is not fitting for me, having spoken of the second order of chastity,[1] to keep silent concerning a virgin. Therefore I must briefly sketch the life of our Asella, to whom I ask you not read this letter, since she finds praise of herself burdensome. I ask instead that you deem it worthy to read to young women who, instructing themselves by her example, may think that her way of life is the standard of perfection.

2. I pass over the fact that before she was born, she was blessed in her mother's womb. She was presented to her father, in his sleep, as a virgin in a bowl of gleaming glass more pure than any mirror; still wrapped in infants' clothing, scarcely ten years old, she was consecrated with the honor of future blessedness.[2] May everything that was before her work be attributed to grace,[3] although God, knowing the future in advance, blessed Jeremiah in the womb and made John [the Baptist] leap in his mother's womb and before the creation of the world set [Saint] Paul apart to preach his son [Christ] [see Jer. 1:5, Luke 1:41, and Eph. 1:5]. I now come to the things that she, by the sweat of her brow, chose, took up, held onto, began, and completed after her twelfth year.

3. Shut up in one narrow cell, she enjoyed the expanse of paradise. Likewise, the soil of the earth was her place of prayer and peace. Fasting was her pleasure and hunger her refreshment. When the human condition, rather than the desire to eat, drew her to food she stirred up hunger more than she suppressed it on a diet of bread, salt, and cold water. And since I nearly forgot what I should have said in the beginning, when she first took up her plan for living, she sold a gold necklace that is commonly called a *murenula* (because, the metal being made supple in little

[1] I.e., Lea, however holy, was a chaste widow, not a virgin, and thus she belonged to the "second order" of chastity. She was a wealthy Roman widow who gave up her privileges for a life of asceticism and prayer, directing a community of Christian virgins.

[2] This means that she vowed herself virginity at age ten. The reference to swaddling clothes, the material in which Mary wrapped the infant Jesus, is poetic license that stresses Asella's innocence.

[3] That is, before her "adult" work starting at age twelve, mentioned at the end of the paragraph.

bars, a flexible sort of chain is woven together)[1] without her parents' knowledge. She put on a dark garment that she was unable to obtain from her mother; dressed in a pious portent of her undertaking, she quickly vowed herself to the Lord, so that all her kind would know that they would not be able to force anything out of one who had already condemned the world by means of her clothing.[2]

4. But, as I began to say, she always behaved with such restraint and guarded herself in the retreat of her room to the point that she never set foot in public, nor conversed with men. What is even more astonishing, she loved her virgin sister rather than seeing her.[3] She worked with her hands, knowing what is written: he who does not work does not eat [see 2 Thess. 3:10]. In prayer and psalm-singing she spoke to her bridegroom. She hastened nearly unseen to martyrs' shrines, and although she took joy in her plan, she was all the more greatly pleased that nobody recognized her. Not only fasting all year, eating every two or three days, in Lent she stretched out her sails to the fullest, nearly joining week to week in abstinence with a cheerful face. And because what is perhaps impossible for men to believe is possible with God's help, living this way she reached her fiftieth year, without stomach pain and free from bowel torments. The dry ground on which she lay did not harm her body, nor was her skin, roughened by sackcloth, subject to stench or abrasion. Sound in body and sounder still in mind, she thought her solitude a delight and found a monk's retreat in a busy city.

5. I have learned these few things from you, who know them better. Your eyes have also seen the hardness of camels' knees—the result of frequent prayer—on her holy little body. I offer what I can know. Nothing is more delightful than her seriousness or more serious than her delightfulness; nothing is sadder than her laugh or sweeter than her sadness. The paleness of her face, although it demonstrates continence, does not smack of ostentation. Her speech is silent and her silence speaks; her walk is neither fast nor slow; her bearing likewise. She gives no thought to neatness and her unstylish clothing is style without style. She has earned, by the quality of her life alone, that in a city of ostentation, lewdness, and pleasures, in which it is a misery to be humble, the good acclaim her and the wicked do not dare to disparage her. Let widows and virgins imitate her, married women cherish her, evil women fear her, and priests admire her.

1.10 The eremitical life: Athanasius, *The Life of St. Antony of Egypt* (357). Original in Greek.

Athanasius, bishop of Alexandria (d.373), a ferocious upholder of the Nicene—and therefore anti-Arian—view of the Trinity, saw St. Antony (or Anthony, d.*c.*356) as the living embodiment of his notion of salvation through Christ. His *Life of St. Antony*, which was translated into Latin in the later fourth century, was the first of what would become an enormously popular genre in the Middle Ages: the saint's biography, or hagiography. The virtues that Athanasius ascribed to Antony—seriousness of vocation even in childhood; resistance to all the temptations of the Devil; application to prayer, vigils, and fasts—were copied in nearly every subsequent saint's Life. This was not mechanical imitation, for Antony's Life was meant to be not just the story of one person but also the model for all Christians. At the same time, Antony's vocation as a solitary—a monk—became the ideal that even many Christians active in the hurly-burly of worldly life admired and strove to imitate.

[1] *Murenula* is a diminutive for *murena*, the moray eel. The necklace, made of many tiny pieces of metal joined together, has the supple character of an eel in motion.

[2] It is a commonplace in writing about holy people that families resisted the desires of individuals to "leave the world." Asella's mother did not, it seems, want to offer her virgin daughter something that was, in the Roman world, a mourning costume.

[3] This is almost certainly a reference to Marcella, the addressee of this letter, who would have stayed in the family home before her marriage. Although Asella did sometimes leave her cell, as noted below, apparently her only destinations were Christian shrines.

1. How did Antony's life compare with that of Asella (above, p. 28)?
2. In what ways might *The Life of St. Antony* have influenced Augustine's ideas about the City of God (above, p. 16)?

[Source: Athanasius of Alexandria, *Life of St. Antony of Egypt*, trans. David Brakke, in *Medieval Hagiography: An Anthology*, ed. Thomas Head (New York: Garland, 2000), pp. 7–12, 14 (notes modified).]

LETTER OF ATHANASIUS, ARCHBISHOP OF ALEXANDRIA, TO THE MONKS IN FOREIGN PLACES CONCERNING THE LIFE OF THE BLESSED ANTONY THE GREAT

(Preface.) It is a good competition that you have begun with the monks in Egypt by seeking either to equal or surpass them in your discipline in virtue.[1] For at last there are monasteries among you as well, and the reputation of the [Egyptian] monks is the basis of their organization: therefore, this plan [of yours] deserves praise; may God bring it to completion through your prayers.

Inasmuch as you have asked me about the blessed Antony's way of life and want to learn about how he began the discipline, who he was before this, what the end of his life was like, and if the things that have been said about him are true, so that you might guide yourselves by imitation of him, I have received your charge with great enthusiasm. Indeed, for me as well it is of great profit just to remember Antony, and I know that once you have heard about him, in addition to admiring the man, you too will want to imitate his determination, since monks have in Antony's lifestyle a sufficient pattern for their discipline.

Therefore, do not disbelieve what you have heard from those who have brought reports of him; rather, think that you have heard only a little from them, for even they scarcely can have completely related such great matters. And since I too, urged by you, am telling you what I can by letter, I am sending only a few of the things that I have remembered about him. You for your part should not stop questioning those persons who sail from here, for it is likely that after each person tells what he knows, the account concerning him will still hardly do him justice. Therefore, when I received your letter, I decided to send for certain monks, particularly those who had spent the most time with him, in the hope that I could learn more and send you the fullest possible account. But since the sailing season was coming to an end and the letter carrier was ready to go, I hurried to write to your piety what I know—for I saw him often—and what I was able to learn from the man who followed Antony no short period of time and who poured water on his hand.[2] I have in every place kept my mind on the truth, so that no one, having heard too much, would disbelieve it, or, having learned less than necessary, would look down on the man.

(1.) Antony was an Egyptian by birth, and his parents were well-born and possessed considerable wealth. Since they were Christians, he was raised in a Christian manner. As a child, he lived with his parents and was familiar with nothing other than them and their house. When he grew to become a boy and became older, he did not put up with learning letters because he wanted to be removed even from the companionship of children. It was his complete desire, as it is written, to live in his house as an unformed person.[3] He would go to church with his parents. As a boy, he was not lazy, nor did he become rude as he got older. Rather, he was obedient to his parents, and by paying attention to the readings,[4] he preserved in himself what was beneficial in them. Although as a boy he lived in moderate wealth, he did not trouble his parents for diverse and expensive foods, nor did he seek such pleasures. He was happy merely with whatever he found and asked for nothing more.

[1] Athanasius presents his biography in the form of a letter to monks in places outside Egypt, most likely in areas of the western Mediterranean, such as North Africa and southern Europe. Many of the sentences in this opening section appear complicated and obscure to us because we do not know the exact situation in which Athanasius writes and because such a style is typical of prefaces to ancient works, in which the writer hopes to impress his readers with his rhetorical skill.

[2] See 2 Kings 3:11.

[3] See Gen. 25:27.

[4] See 1 Tim. 4:13.

(2.) After the death of his parents, he was left alone with one small sister; he was about eighteen or twenty, and it was his responsibility to care for the house and his sister. Not six months after his parents' death, he was going to church as usual, and he was thinking to himself and considering all this: how the apostles abandoned everything and followed the Savior;[1] how the people in Acts [of the Apostles] sold their possessions and brought the proceeds and laid them at the feet of the apostles for distribution to the needy;[2] and how such a great hope was stored up for these people in heaven.[3] Considering these things, he entered the church, and it happened that just then the Gospel was being read, and he heard the Lord saying to the rich man, "If you wish to be perfect, go, sell all your possessions, and give the proceeds to the poor, and come, follow me, and you will have treasure in heaven."[4] And Antony, as if the remembrance of the saints had been placed in him by God and as if the readings had been made on his account, left the church immediately and gave to the villagers the possessions he had received from his ancestors—three hundred *arourae* of fertile and very beautiful land—so that they would no longer trouble him and his sister.[5] He sold all their other movable possessions, collecting a sizable sum of money, and gave it to the poor, although he kept a little for his sister's sake.

(3.) But when he again entered the church and heard in the Gospel the Lord saying, "Do not worry about tomorrow,"[6] he could not stay: he went out and gave even that [little money remaining] to the common people. When he had delivered his sister to known and faithful virgins in order to be brought up for virginity, he at last devoted himself to the discipline outside the house, attending to himself and guiding himself with patience. For there were not yet so many monasteries in Egypt, and no monk knew the great desert; rather, each of those who wanted to attend to himself practiced the discipline alone, not far from his own village. Now, at this time there was an old man in the neighboring village who had practiced the solitary life from his youth: when Antony saw him, he imitated him in virtue.[7] At first he too began by remaining in the places around the village; then if he heard of some zealous one somewhere, like the wise bee, he went and sought that person, and he did not return to his own place until he had seen the man and had received from him, so to speak, travel supplies for the road to virtue.

And so, spending time there at first, he strengthened his intention never to return to the things of his parents nor to remember his relatives, but he directed all his desire and all his zeal toward the effort required by the discipline. Therefore, he worked with his hands, since he had heard, "Let not the idle one eat,"[8] and he spent some of the money on bread and some for the needy. He prayed continuously since he knew that it is necessary to pray in secret without ceasing.[9] For indeed he so devoted himself to the reading that nothing of what is written fell from him to the ground,[10] but he retained everything, so that his memory replaced books for him.

(4.) Conducting himself in this way, then, Antony was loved by everyone. He sincerely submitted to the zealous ones whom he visited, and he learned thoroughly the advantage in zeal and discipline that each one possessed in comparison to himself. He contemplated the graciousness of one and the devotion to prayers of another; he observed one's lack of anger and another's love of people; he attended to the one who kept vigils and the other who loved to study; he admired one for his perseverance and another for his fasting and sleeping on the ground; he watched closely the gentle nature of one and the patience of another; but in all he noticed piety toward Christ and love for one another. And when he had been filled in this way, he returned to his own place of discipline, and then he gathered into himself the virtues of each and strove to display them all in himself. Indeed, he was not contentious with those of his own age, except only that

---

[1] See Matt. 4:20; 19:27.

[2] See Acts 4:35–37.

[3] See Col. 1:5.

[4] Matt. 19:21.

[5] Three hundred *arourae* may have been around two hundred acres; thus, Antony is portrayed as very wealthy by the standards of third-century Egypt.

[6] Matt. 6:34.

[7] See Gal. 4:18.

[8] See 2 Thess. 3:10.

[9] See Matt. 6:6; 1 Thess. 5:17.

[10] See 1 Sam. 3:19.

he should not appear to be second to them in the better things. And he did this in such a way that he did not hurt anyone's feelings; rather, they rejoiced in him. And so when the people of the village and the lovers of virtue with whom he associated saw that he was this kind of person, they all called him "Beloved of God"; some welcomed him as a son, others as a brother.

(5.) But the devil, who hates and envies the good, could not bear to see such resolution in a young man, but set out to do against Antony the kinds of things he usually does. First he tried to dissuade him from the discipline by suggesting the memory of possessions, the care of his sister, the intimacy of family, love of money, love of glory, the varied pleasure of food, and the other indulgences of life—and finally the difficulty of virtue and the great effort that it requires. He introduced the weakness of the body and the long duration of time. In short, he raised up a dust cloud of thoughts in Antony's mind, desiring thereby to separate him from his upright intention.

But the enemy saw that he himself was weak in the face of Antony's resolve and saw instead that he was defeated by the other's stubbornness, overthrown by his faith, and falling due to Antony's constant prayers. Then he took confidence in the weapons of the belly's navel[1] and, boasting in these—for they are his primary means of trapping the young—he advanced against the youth, troubling him at night and harassing him by day so that those who watched could sense the struggle that was going on between the two. The one would suggest dirty thoughts, and the other would turn them back with prayers; the one would titillate, and the other, as if seeming to blush, would fortify his body with faith and fasts. And the miserable devil dared at night to dress up like a woman and imitate one in every way merely to deceive Antony. But Antony, by thinking about Christ and the excellence one ought to possess because of him, and by considering the soul's rational faculty, extinguished the ember of the other's deception.

Once again the enemy suggested the ease of pleasure. But Antony, like someone fittingly angry or grieved, thought about the threat of fire and the torment of the worm, and by setting these thoughts against [those of the enemy], he passed through these things unharmed. All this was a source of shame for the enemy, for he who had considered himself to be like God[2] was now being mocked by a youth, and he who boasted over flesh and blood was being overthrown by a human being who wore flesh. For working with Antony was the Lord, the one who for our sake took flesh and gave to the body the victory over the devil, so that each of those who truly struggle says, "Not I, but the grace of God that is with me."[3]

(6.) At last, when the dragon could not defeat Antony in this way but instead saw himself thrust out of his heart, he gnashed his teeth, as it is written.[4] As if he were beside himself, he finally appeared to Antony in his form just as he is in his mind, as a black boy. And as though he had fallen down, he no longer attacked Antony with thoughts—for the crafty one had been tossed down—but finally he used a human voice and said, "Many people I have deceived, and most I have defeated, but now coming against you and your efforts as I have against others, I have been weakened." Antony asked, "Who are you who say such things to me?" Immediately he answered with a pitiful voice, "It is I who am fornication's lover. It is I who have been entrusted with its ambushes and its titillations against the youth, and I am called the spirit of fornication. How many persons who desired to be prudent I have deceived! How many persons who professed to be so I have persuaded to change by titillating them! It is I on whose account even the prophet blames those who have fallen, saying, 'You have been deceived by the spirit of fornication.'[5] For it was through me that they were tripped up. It is I who so often troubled you and who as often was overthrown by you." But Antony gave thanks to the Lord and took courage in him, and he said to him, "You are very despicable then, for you are black in your mind and as weak as a boy. From now on I will have no anxiety about you, 'for the Lord is my helper, and I will look down on my enemies.'"[6] When he heard this, the

---

[1] See Job 40:16.

[2] See Isa. 14:14; Ezek. 28:2.

[3] 1 Cor. 15:10.

[4] See Ps. 35:16; 37:12; 112:10; Douay Ps. 34:16; 36:12; 111:10.

[5] Hos. 4:12.

[6] Ps. 118:7; Douay Ps. 117:7.

black one immediately fled, cowering before these words and afraid even to approach the man.[1]

(7.) This was Antony's first struggle against the devil, or rather this was the achievement in Antony of the Savior, "who condemned sin in the flesh so that the righteousness of the Law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not according to the flesh, but according to the spirit."[2] But Antony did not, because the demon had fallen, now become negligent and take no thought of himself, nor did the enemy, because he had been defeated, stop lying in ambush. For the enemy went around again like a lion, looking for some opportunity against him.[3] But Antony, since he had learned from the Scriptures that the wiles of the enemy are numerous,[4] practiced the discipline intensely, figuring that, even if the enemy had been unable to deceive his heart through bodily pleasure, he would attempt to trap him by another method. For the demon is a lover of sin....

(8.) Having constrained himself in this way, Antony departed to the tombs, which happened to lie far outside the village. He commanded one of his acquaintances to bring him bread every several days, and he himself entered one of the tombs; when the other had shut the door, he remained inside by himself. Then, when the enemy could not bear this but was afraid that in a short time Antony would fill the desert with the discipline, he came one night with a crowd of demons and so cut Antony with wounds that he lay on the ground speechless from the tortures. For he used to maintain that the pains were so severe that he would say that blows inflicted by human beings could not have inflicted such torture. But by God's Providence—for the Lord does not neglect those who hope in him—his acquaintance came the next day to bring him the bread. When he opened the door and saw Antony lying on the ground as if dead, he lifted him up, carried him to the village church, and laid him on the ground. Many of his relatives and the villagers sat around Antony as if beside a corpse. But around midnight Antony came to himself and got up; when he saw everyone asleep and only his acquaintance keeping watch, he motioned with his head for him to approach and then asked him to pick him up again and carry him to the tombs without waking anybody.

(14.) For nearly twenty years he continued to discipline himself in this way, not going out himself and being seen by others only rarely. After this, when many eagerly desired to imitate his discipline, and others of his acquaintances came and were pulling down and wrenching out the door by force, Antony emerged, as if from some shrine, initiated into the mysteries and filled with God. Now for the first time he appeared outside the fort to those who had come to him. And they, when they saw him, were amazed to see that his body had its same condition: it was neither fat as if from lack of exercise nor withered as if from fasting and fighting demons, but it was such as they had known it before his withdrawal. The disposition of his soul was pure again, for it was neither contracted from distress, nor dissipated from pleasure, nor constrained by levity or dejection. Indeed, when he saw the crowd, he was not disturbed, nor did he rejoice to be greeted by so many people. Rather, he was wholly balanced, as if he were being navigated by the Word and existing in his natural state.

Therefore, through Antony the Lord healed many of the suffering bodies of those present, and others he cleansed of demons. He gave Antony grace in speaking, and thus he comforted many who were grieved and reconciled into friendship others who were quarreling, exhorting everyone to prefer nothing in the world to the love for Christ. While he discussed and recalled the good things to come and the love for humanity that has come to us from God, "who did not withhold his own son, but gave him up for all of us."[5] he persuaded many to choose the solitary life. And so at last there came to be monasteries even in the mountains, and the desert was made a city of monks, who left their homes and enrolled in the heavenly commonwealth.[6]

---

[1] The symbolism of this scene is on two levels. First, the appearance of the devil as a boy reflects the homoerotic interest in male adolescents pervasive in the ancient world and condemned by Christian leaders such as Athanasius. Second, the devil's black skin illustrates the prejudice based on skin color present in late antique Egypt, which was a multiethnic society. Most Alexandrians such as Athanasius were descendants of the Greeks who founded the city in the fourth century BCE and so were of lighter skin color than those of more sub-Saharan African descent.

[2] Rom. 8:3–4.

[3] See 1 Pet. 5:8.

[4] See Eph. 6:11.

[5] Rom. 8:32.

[6] See Phil. 3:20; Heb. 12:23. Compare with Augustine's idea of the City of God, above, p. 16.

1.11 The active life: Sulpicius Severus, *The Life of St. Martin of Tours* (397). Original in Latin.

Sulpicius Severus (*c.*360–*c.*420), a well-to-do and well-educated man of Aquitaine (southern Gaul), became a monk later in life. He met St. Martin (d.397) in 393 or 394 and, impressed by the holy man, wrote his *Life* shortly afterwards. It was a great success: St. Martin soon became the subject of a number of supplementary accounts—letters concerning his death; descriptions of his miracles—and was adopted as the patron saint of the Merovingian kings. Unlike St. Antony, Martin was a bishop, and thus Sulpicius needed to find a way to combine the model of the ascetic monk with that of the active life of a man in the world.

1. If you were a soldier in a fourth- or fifth-century army and you learned about Martin's life, what message would you take away from it?
2. What ideals of behavior did Martin's *Life* offer to bishops?

[Source: *Medieval Saints: A Reader*, ed. Mary-Ann Stouck (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1999), pp. 139–42, 144–49 (slightly modified).]

Martin, then, was born at Sabaria in Pannonia [modern Hungary], but was brought up at Ticinum [Pavia], which is situated in Italy. In terms of worldly dignity, his parents were not of the lowest rank, but they were pagans. His father was at first simply a soldier, but afterwards a military tribune. He himself took up a military career while a youth and was enrolled in the imperial guard, first under king Constantine,[1] and then under the Caesar Julian.[2] This, however, was not done of his own free will, for, almost from the earliest years of his holy childhood, this distinguished boy aspired rather to the service of God. For when he was ten years old, against the wish of his parents, he fled to a church and begged to become a catechumen [to begin instruction in Christianity]. Soon afterwards, in a wonderful manner he became completely devoted to the work of God, and when he was twelve years old, he longed for a life in the desert [to become a hermit]; and he would have made the necessary vows if his youthfulness had not been an obstacle. His mind, however, was always intent upon hermitages or the Church, and already meditated in his boyish years on what he later fulfilled as a religious. But since an edict was issued by the rulers of the state that the sons of veterans should be enrolled for military service, his father (who grudged his pious behavior) delivered him up when he was fifteen years old, and he was arrested and put in chains and was bound by the military oath. He was content with only one servant as his attendant, and then, reversing roles, the master waited on the servant to such a degree that, for the most part, it was he who pulled off his [servant's] boots and he who cleaned them with his own hand; and while they took their meals together, it was he who more often served them. For nearly three years before his baptism, he was a professional soldier, but he kept completely free from those vices in which that class of men become too frequently involved. He showed great kindness towards his fellow-soldiers, and wonderful affection, and his patience and humility surpassed what seemed possible to human nature. There is no need to praise the self-denial which he displayed: it was so great that, even at that date, he was regarded not so much as being a soldier as a monk. By all these qualities he had so endeared himself to the whole body of his comrades that they held him in extraordinary affection. Although not yet regenerated in Christ, by his good works he acted the part of a candidate for baptism.[3] This he did, for instance, by aiding those who were in trouble, by giving help to the wretched, by supporting the needy, by clothing the naked,

[1] Constantine I (r.306–337).

[2] Julian was at this time Caesar in Gaul. Later, when emperor (r.361–363), he was known as "the Apostate."

[3] In this era, infant baptism was unusual; most Christians were baptized in adulthood.

while he reserved nothing for himself from his military pay except what was necessary for his daily sustenance. Even then, far from being a senseless hearer of the Gospel, he took no thought for the morrow.[1]

So it happened one day when he had nothing except his weapons and his simple military dress, in the middle of a winter which had been very bitter and more severe than usual, so that the extreme cold had caused the death of many, he chanced to meet at the gate of the city of Amiens a poor naked man. He [the beggar] was entreating the passers-by to have pity on him, but all passed the wretched man without notice, when Martin, that man full of God, recognized that the beggar to whom others showed no pity was reserved for him. But what should he do? He had nothing except the cloak in which he was dressed, for he had already parted with the rest of his garments for similar purposes. Taking, therefore, his sword, which he was wearing, he divided his cloak in half, and gave one part to the beggar, and clothed himself again with what was left. At this, some of the bystanders laughed, because he was now an unsightly object in his mutilated clothing. Many, however, who were of sounder understanding, regretted deeply that they themselves had done nothing similar. They especially felt this because, possessing more than Martin, they could have clothed the poor man without reducing themselves to nakedness.

The following night while he slept Martin had a vision of Christ wearing the part of his cloak with which he had clothed the beggar. He was told to regard the Lord with the greatest care, and to recognize [the Lord's] robe as his own. Before long, he heard Jesus saying in a clear voice to the multitude of angels standing round, "Martin, who is still only a catechumen, clothed me with this robe." Truly the Lord remembered his own words, which he had spoken [while on earth]: "Inasmuch as ye have done these things to one of the least of these, ye have done them unto me,"[2] when he declared that he himself had been clothed in that beggar; and he confirmed the testimony he bore to such a good deed by condescending to show himself in that very garment which the beggar had received.

After this vision the sainted man was not puffed up with vainglory, but he acknowledged the goodness of God in his own action, and as he was now twenty years old he rushed off to receive baptism. However, he did not immediately retire from military service, but gave into the entreaties of his tribune, whom he served as one of his private staff. For the tribune promised that, after his term of office had expired, he too would retire from the world. Martin was held back by this expectation, and continued to act the part of a soldier (although only in name) for nearly two years after he had received baptism.

In the meantime, the barbarians were invading the two divisions of Gaul, and the Caesar [Julian] brought an army together at the city of Worms, and began to distribute a donative [bonus] to the soldiers. As the custom was, they were called forward, one by one, until it came to Martin's turn. Then, indeed, thinking it a good time to ask for his discharge—for he did not think it would be proper for him to receive a donative if he did not intend to continue as a soldier—he said to Caesar, "Until now I have served you as a soldier: permit me now to be a soldier for God. Let the man who is to fight for you receive your donative; I am a soldier of Christ: it is not lawful for me to fight." Then the tyrant began to rage at what he said, declaring that [Martin] was withdrawing from military service from fear of the battle which was to take place the next day, and not from any religious motive. But Martin, full of courage, and all the more resolute in the face of this attempt at intimidation, said, "If this is attributed to cowardice and not to faith, tomorrow I will confront the battle-line unarmed, and in the name of the Lord Jesus, protected by the sign of the cross and not by shield or helmet, I will advance unharmed into the ranks of the enemy." Then he was ordered to be thrown back into prison, so that he might keep his promise by exposing himself unarmed to the barbarians. But the next day, the enemy sent ambassadors to negotiate peace, surrendering themselves and everything they possessed. From these circumstances, who can doubt that this victory was indeed due to the saintly man? For it was granted him that he should not be sent unarmed into battle. And although the good Lord could have preserved his own soldier even from the swords and spears of the enemy, yet he removed all necessity for fighting so that [Martin's] blessed eyes might not have to witness the death of others. For Christ could not have granted any victory on behalf of his own soldier other than subduing the enemy without bloodshed or the death of anyone.

After leaving military service, [Martin] sought out blessed Hilary [d.*c*.367], bishop of the city of Poitiers whose proven faith in the things of God was highly regarded, and he stayed with him for some time.... [Later, Martin left Hilary in order to return home to convert his

[1] Matt. 6:34.

[2] Matt. 25:40.

parents. Hilary, meanwhile, was exiled and lived for a time in Italy. When he was allowed to return to Poitiers, Martin joined him there.]

After he [Martin] had been most joyfully welcomed by him [Hilary], he established for himself a monastery not far from the town [at Ligugé]. At this time he was joined by a certain catechumen who wished to have instruction in the teachings of the most holy man. Only a few days later, however, the catechumen fell suddenly ill, suffering from a high fever. It so happened that Martin was then away from home. He was absent for three days, and on his return he found the lifeless body; and death had been so sudden, that he had left this world without receiving baptism. The body had been laid out in public, and the grieving brethren were visiting it as their sad duty required, when Martin hurried up, weeping and lamenting. But with his soul completely filled with the Holy Spirit, he ordered the others to leave the cell in which the body was lying; and bolting the door, he stretched himself at full length on the dead limbs of the departed brother. After he had stayed lying there for some time in prayer, and had become aware through the Spirit that the power of God was present, he rose up for a short time, and fixing his gaze on the dead man's face he waited with confidence for the result of his prayer and the mercy of the Lord. And after scarcely two hours had passed he saw the dead man begin to move all his limbs little by little, and his eyes trembling and blinking as he recovered his sight. Then indeed he raised a loud voice to the Lord and gave thanks, filling the cell with cries. Hearing the noise, those who had been standing at the door immediately rushed inside. And truly a marvelous spectacle met them, for they beheld the man alive whom they had left for dead....

At about the same time, Martin was sought after to be bishop of the church at Tours,[1] but when he could not easily be persuaded to leave his monastery, a certain Rusticius, one of the citizens, pretended that his wife was ill, and by throwing himself down at [Martin's] knees, prevailed on him to leave. A crowd of citizens had previously been posted along the road on which he traveled, and in this way he was escorted to the city as if under guard. In an amazing manner, an incredible number of people not only from that town but also from the neighboring cities had assembled to give their votes. They all had only the same wish, the same desire, the same opinion: that Martin was most worthy of being bishop, and that the Church would be happy with such a priest....

And now it is beyond my power to describe completely what Martin was like after he became bishop, and how he distinguished himself. For with the utmost constancy he remained the same as he had been before. There was the same humility in his heart and the same simplicity of clothing. Filled with both authority and courtesy, he kept up the position of a bishop properly, yet in such a way as not to abandon the life and virtues of a monk. For some time he lived in a cell adjacent to the church; but afterwards, when he could not tolerate the disturbance caused by the numbers of visitors, he established a monastery for himself about two miles outside the city.

This spot [Marmoutier] was so hidden and remote that he no longer had to wish for the solitude of a hermit. For on one side it was surrounded by the steep rock of a high mountain, while the rest of the land had been enclosed in a gentle curve of the Loire river; there was only one means of access, and that was very narrow. Here, then, he inhabited a cell built of wood, and a great number of the brothers were housed in the same fashion, but most of them had made themselves shelters by hollowing caves out of the overhanging rock. There were about eighty disciples who were instructed by the example of their holy master. There, no one possessed anything of his own; everything was held in common. No one was allowed either to buy or to sell anything, as is the custom among many monks. No art was practiced there, except that of the scribes, and even this was assigned to the younger brothers while the elder spent their time in prayer. It was rare for any of them to leave his cell, except to gather at the place of prayer. After a period of fasting was over, they all ate their meals together. No one used wine, except when illness compelled them to do so. Most of them wore garments of camel's hair; softer clothing was considered a serious fault there. This must be considered all the more remarkable, because many of them were considered to be of high rank, brought up in a very different fashion, and yet they had forced themselves to accept humility and patience; and we have seen many of these afterwards made bishops. For what city or church would not want a priest from the monastery of Martin?[2] But let me go on to describe the other virtues that Martin displayed as a bishop....

[At this point, Sulpicius describes various miracles wrought by Martin.]

---

[1] In 371.

[2] Compare the standards at Marmoutier with those described in *The Benedictine Rule* (above, p. 20).

On another occasion, in a certain village he demolished a very ancient temple, and set about cutting down a pine-tree that stood close to the temple. The chief priest of that place and a crowd of other pagans began to oppose him. And although these people had, at the Lord's command, been quiet while the temple was being destroyed, they could not endure the cutting-down of the tree. Martin carefully impressed upon them that there was nothing sacred in the trunk of a tree, and urged them instead to honor God whom he himself served; the tree had to be cut down because it was dedicated to a demon.

Then one of them who was bolder than the others said, "If you have any trust in your God, whom you say you worship, we ourselves will cut down this tree, and you stand in its path; for if, as you say, your Lord is with you, you will not be hurt." Then Martin, courageously trusting in the Lord, promised to do so. Upon this, all that crowd of pagans agreed to the condition; for they held the loss of their tree a small matter, so long as they got the enemy of their religion buried under its fall. Since that pine-tree was leaning to one side, so that there could be no question as to which way it would fall when it was cut, Martin was bound to the spot where the tree would certainly fall, as the pagans had stipulated.

Then they began to cut down their own tree, with great delight and rejoicing. A wondering crowd stood some distance away. Little by little the pine-tree began to shake, and, on the point of falling, threatened its own ruin. The monks at a distance grew pale and, terrified by the approaching danger, they lost all hope and faith, expecting only Martin's death. But he, trusting in the Lord, waited courageously, even as the falling pine made a cracking noise, even as it was falling and as it rushed down upon him: simply lifting his hand against it, he held up the sign of salvation. Then, indeed—you would have thought it driven back like a spinning top—it swept round to the opposite side, so that it almost crushed the peasants, who had stood in what seemed to be a safe spot.

Then a shout went up to heaven: the pagans were amazed by the miracle while the monks wept for joy, and the name of Christ was proclaimed by them all together. And as it is well known, on that day salvation came to that region. For there was hardly one of that huge crowd of pagans who did not long for the laying-on of hands [to become a catechumen] and, abandoning their impious errors, they believed in the Lord Jesus. Certainly, before Martin's time, very few, indeed hardly any in those regions had received the name of Christ. Through his virtues and example that name has prevailed to such an extent that now there is no region that is not filled either with crowded churches or monasteries. For wherever he destroyed pagan temples, there immediately he used to build either churches or monasteries.

1.12 The cult of saints: Gregory of Tours, *The Life of Monegundis* (580s). Original in Latin.

Gregory, bishop of Tours (r.573–594), was the most prolific writer of sixth-century Francia and an important witness to the Merovingian period. When he set out to write an account of the saints of his own time, he stressed that all had followed but one "way of life" by giving his book the odd title, *The Life of the Fathers*, with the word "life" in the singular. Moreover, he included one woman, Monegundis, among the "Fathers." What particularly attracted Gregory to this saint was her devotion to St. Martin, the holy patron of Gregory's own see at Tours and the very model of a saint for many bishops (for Martin's *Life* see above, p. 35). Like a mirror reflecting a mirror, Monegundis became the focus of a cult, while she in turn was a pilgrim to Martin's tomb and a devotee of his relics.

1. How do Monegundis's acts and virtues compare with those of St. Antony (above, p. 30) and St. Martin (above, p. 35)?
2. How does Gregory justify including a woman among the Fathers?

[Source: *Gregory of Tours: Life of the Fathers*, trans. Edward James (2d ed., Liverpool: Liverpool University Press, 1991), pp. 118–24 (notes modified).]

About the Blessed Monegundis

The excellent gifts of divine favors that have been offered from heaven to mankind cannot be conceived by the senses nor expressed by words nor represented in writing, since the Savior of the world Himself, from the time of the creation, was seen by the patriarchs, announced by the prophets and in the end deigned to be enclosed in the womb of Mary, ever virgin and ever pure, and the omnipresent and immortal Creator suffered Himself to be clothed in mortal flesh, to go to death for the redemption of men, who were dead through sin, and to rise again victorious. Although we were gravely wounded by the arrows of our sins and covered with wounds received from brigands who had lain in wait, He mingled oil and wine, and led us to the tavern of celestial medicine, that is to say, to the dogma of the Holy Church. He exhorts us to live after the example of the saints and to fortify ourselves by His incessant precepts. He gives us as models not only men, but also the lesser sex, who fight not feebly, but with a virile strength; He brings into His celestial kingdom not only men, who fight as they should, but also women, who exert themselves in the struggle with success. This we can see now in the blessed Monegundis, who left her native land (just like that prudent queen who came to listen to the wisdom of Solomon)[1] and came to the church of Saint Martin to admire the miracles which took place there daily and to drink there as from a priestly well, by which she was able to throw open the door to the grove of Paradise.

1. The most blessed Monegundis was from the city of Chartres. She had been married according to her parents' wishes, and had two daughters, which brought her a profound joy, so that she used to say "God has made me fertile so that two daughters might be born to me." But the bitterness of this world soon dissipated this earthly joy, for both were brought to their death by a light fever. From that time the mother was desolate; mourning and lamenting for the death of her children she did not stop weeping, day and night, and neither her husband nor her friends nor any of her relations could console her. Finally she came to herself, and said, "If I do not receive any consolation for the death of my daughters I fear I may offend my Lord Jesus Christ. Thus forgetting these laments I shall sing with the blessed Job, consoling myself thus: The Lord gave, and the Lord taketh away; blessed be the name of the Lord (Job 1:21)." And saying that she took off her mourning clothes, and had a small room arranged for her, which only had one small window, by which she could see a little daylight. There, despising the vanities of the world and having nothing more to do with her husband, she devoted herself entirely to God, in whom she confided, praying for her sins and for the sins of the people. She had only one girl with her as her servant, to provide her with what was necessary. She took barley flour and ashes mixed with water, kneaded it all with care and made a dough from which she formed loaves with her own hands, and she baked them herself, and thus she comforted herself after long fasts. The rest of the food coming from her house she gave to the poor. It happened one day that the girl who used to serve her (I believe that she was seduced by the wiles of our enemy[2] who always wishes to harm the good) withdrew from her service, saying "I cannot remain with a mistress who practices such abstinence; I prefer to go into the world, where I can eat and drink as much as I like." Five days passed after the departure of this girl, and her devout mistress had not taken her accustomed flour and water; she remained motionless, with Jesus Christ in her heart, in Whom the one who trusts cannot be overthrown, not by any whirlwind or storm. Nor did she think to sustain her life by any mortal food, but only by the word of God, as it is written,[3] recalling the proverb of the wisdom of Solomon, "The Lord will not suffer the soul of the righteous to famish" (Prov. 10:3), and again "The just shall live by faith" (Rom. 1:17). But as the human body cannot survive without using earthly things, she asked by a humble prayer that He who produced manna from heaven for a people when it was hungry,[4] and water from a rock when it was thirsty, might deign to give her the food necessary to sustain her weak body. Immediately, at her prayer, snow fell from the sky and covered the ground. She thanked God, and reached out of her window and collected some snow from the wall, and with this water she made bread as usual, which gave her food for another five days.

She had, next to her cell, a small garden in which she used to walk for exercise. She entered it one day, and walked around looking at the plants. A woman who had put wheat on the roof of her house in order to dry it, because it was a high place, began to watch the saint in an

[1] The queen of Sheba; see 1 Kings 10.

[2] The Devil.

[3] Deut. 8:2; Matt. 4:4.

[4] See Exod. 16.

indiscreet way, filled with worldly thoughts. Soon her eyes darkened and she became blind. Recognizing her fault she came to find the saint, and told her what had happened. [Monegundis] hastened to pray, and said, "Woe on me, if for a small offence done against my humble person, someone could have their eyes closed." And when she had finished her prayer she put her hand on this woman. As soon as she had made the sign of the cross the woman recovered her sight. A man from the same region, who had long since lost his hearing, came full of devotion to the cell of the saint, and his relations begged her to deign to put her hands on him. But she said that she was not worthy that Christ should deign to work such things through her; nevertheless, she fell to the ground, as if she wished to kiss the traces of the feet of the Lord, and begged humbly for divine clemency for the man. While she was still lying on the ground the ears of the deaf man opened and he returned home joyfully, delivered from all sadness.

2. Glorified among her relations because of such prodigies, Monegundis, in order to avoid the trap of vainglory, left her husband, her family, her whole house, and went, full of faith, to the basilica of the holy bishop Martin. While on her way she came to a village of the Touraine called Esvres, where relics of the blessed confessor Medard of Soissons were preserved; that very night vigils were being celebrated. The saint [Monegundis] passed the night in attentive prayer, and then returned at the given time with the people to celebrate Mass. While the priests were in the midst of the service a young girl came up, swollen by the poison of a malignant pustule, and threw herself at her feet, saying, "Help me, for cruel death is going to snatch life from me." And she, prostrate in prayer in the usual fashion, prayed to God, the creator of all things, for this girl. Then she got up and made the sign of the cross. As a result, the tumor opened, split into four, and the pus came out: the young girl was saved from importunate death. After that the blessed Monegundis arrived at the basilica of St Martin, and there, on her knees in front of the tomb, she gave thanks to God for being able to see the holy tomb with her own eyes. She settled herself in a small room in which she gave herself every day to prayer, fasts and vigils. And indeed this place was made glorious by her miracles. The daughter of a certain widow came there with her hands all contracted, and she was besought to pray and make the sign of salvation, and then she began to rub the fingers of the girl with her own hands, straightening out the fingers and tendons and finally freeing the palms and leaving her hands healthy. While these things were happening, her husband, having heard of the reputation of the saint, assembled his friends and neighbors and came after her and brought her back with him and put her in that same cell in which she had lived before. But she did not cease from the work she was used to, and she gave herself over to continual prayer and fasting, so that in the end she might reach the place where she wanted to be. Again she began the path which she desired, begging for the help of St Martin, that he who gave her the desire might give her the means. She came to the basilica and returned to the same cell she had inhabited before; she stayed there without any trouble, without being sought for again by her husband. She gathered together a small number of nuns in that place, and stayed there, persevering in faith and in prayer, eating only bread made of barley and not drinking any wine, except a little on feast-days, and then only diluted with much water. She did not have a soft bed of hay or fresh straw, but only one of interlaced twigs, which are commonly called "mats"; she put this upon a bed-frame or on the ground, and it served her as a bench, a mattress, a pillow, a bed-spread, in a word all that she needed for a bed. She taught those whom she had brought to live with her how to make these mats. And living there, praising God, she gave to many sick people, after she had prayed, healing cures.

4. But already the time was approaching when God would call her to Him, and her strength began to desert her. Seeing this, the nuns who were with her wept bitterly and said "And to whom do you leave us, holy mother? To whom do you entrust your daughters whom you have assembled here to look on God?" She told them, weeping, "If you keep peace and holiness, God will protect you, and you will have the great bishop Saint Martin as shepherd. And I shall not be far from you, for if you invoke me I shall be in your hearts." But the nuns implored her, saying, "Many sick people will come to us, asking to receive your blessing, and what shall we do when they see that you are no more? We shall be confused, and send them away, since we shall no longer contemplate your face. We beg you, then, since you are going from our eyes, that you deign at least to bless some oil and salt that we can give to the sick who ask for a blessing." And she blessed some oil and salt for them, which they preserved with great care. And thus the blessed woman died in peace; she was buried in her cell, and she manifested herself thereafter by many miracles, for many sick people were cured, after her death, by the blessing which we have just mentioned.

1.13 Gothic Italy as Rome's heir: Cassiodorus, *Variae (State Papers)* (*c*.507–536). Original in Latin.

Theodoric and his successor kings of the Ostrogoths saw themselves as continuators of Roman traditions. Depending on classically educated men such as Cassiodorus (d.583) to work for them as writers and publicists, they issued edicts, gave orders, and negotiated with other rulers. The documents here were among the papers that Cassiodorus compiled into his twelve-book *Variae* (or *State Papers*) *c*.537, when the Ostrogothic king Witigis was at war with Emperor Justinian (r.527–565). In 2.27 (i.e., *Variae* book 2, document no. 27), Theodoric demonstrates his adherence to Roman law: even though he considers Jews "destitute of God's grace," he grants them the right, as enshrined in the laws of Theodosius II (see above, p. 4), to maintain their synagogues. In 2.40 he responds to the request of the Frankish king Clovis (r.481/482–511) to send a lyre-player, a symbol of classical refinement and rulership, by writing to Boethius (d.524/526). Trained in the classics like Cassiodorus, Boethius had just written a book on music theory. Writing in Theodoric's name, Cassiodorus borrows some of Boethius's ideas, thereby both flattering Boethius and burnishing the king's reputation for learning. In 3.1, Theodoric presents himself as a peaceful elder statesman mediating between the Frankish king Clovis and the Visigothic leader Alaric (whom Cassiodorus calls "king"). Theodoric's aims were frustrated, however, since Clovis soon attacked the Visigoths and defeated them at the battle of Vouillé (507).

1. Imagine that you were King Theoderic. What would be your "job description"?
2. Why would a barbarian king want to show off his knowledge of music?

[Source: *The* Variae *of Magnus Aurelius Cassiodorus Senator*, trans. S.J.B. Barnish (Liverpool: Liverpool University Press, 1992), pp. 34–35, 38–39, 45–46, 142–43 (notes modified).]

2.27 King Theodoric to All Jews Living at Genoa (507–12)

As it is my desire, when petitioned, to give a lawful consent, so I do not like the laws to be cheated through my favors, especially in that area where I believe reverence for God to be concerned. You, then, who are destitute of His grace, should not seem insolent in your pride.

Therefore, by this authority, I decree that you add only a roof to the ancient walls of your synagogue, granting permission to your requests just so far as the imperial decrees allow.[1] It is unlawful for you to add any ornament, or to stray into an enlargement of the building. And you must realize that you will in no way escape the penalty of the ancient ordinance if you do not refrain from illegalities. Indeed, I give you permission to roof or strengthen the walls themselves only if you are not affected by the thirty year limitation.[2] Why do you wish for what you ought to shun? I grant leave, indeed; but, to my praise, I condemn the prayers of erring men. I cannot command your faith, for no one is forced to believe against his will....

[1] This refers to a new law (a "Novel") by Emperor Theodosius II that prohibited Jews from building new synagogues but granted them the right to strengthen those already standing if they threatened to collapse.

[2] This probably means "if no one, for thirty years, has legally challenged the right of your synagogue to exist on that site, and in that form." Theodoric considered property arrangements in place before his conquest of Italy (489–493) to be valid.

2.40 King Theodoric to the Patrician Boethius (506)

Although the king of the Franks, tempted by the fame of my banquets, has earnestly requested a lyre-player from me, I have promised to fulfill his wishes for this reason only, that I know you to be skilled in musical knowledge. To choose a trained man is a task for you, who have succeeded in attaining the heights of that same discipline.

For what is more glorious than music, which modulates the heavenly system with its sonorous sweetness, and binds together with its virtue the concord of nature which is scattered everywhere? For any variation there may be in the whole does not depart from the pattern of harmony. Through [music] we think with efficiency, we speak with elegance, we move with grace. Whenever, by the natural law of its discipline, it reaches our ears, it commands song. The artist changes men's hearts as they listen; and, when this artful pleasure issues from the secret place of nature as the queen of the senses, in all the glory of its tones, our remaining thoughts take to flight, and it expels all else, that it may delight itself simply in being heard. Harmful melancholy he turns to pleasure; he weakens swelling rage; he makes bloodthirsty cruelty kindly, arouses sleepy sloth from its torpor, restores to the sleepless their wholesome rest, recalls lust-corrupted chastity to its moral resolve, and heals boredom of spirit which is always the enemy of good thoughts. Dangerous hatreds he turns to helpful goodwill, and, in a blessed kind of healing, drives out the passions of the heart by means of sweetest pleasures....

Among men all this is achieved by means of five *toni* [scales or modes], each of which is called by the name of the region where it was discovered.[1] Indeed, the divine compassion distributed this favor locally, even while it assuredly made its whole creation something to be praised. The Dorian *tonus* bestows wise self-restraint and establishes chastity; the Phrygian arouses strife, and inflames the will to anger; the Aeolian calms the storms of the soul, and gives sleep to those who are already at peace; the Iastian [Ionian] sharpens the wits of the dull, and, as a worker of good, gratifies the longing for heavenly things among those who are burdened by earthly desire. The Lydian was discovered as a remedy for excessive cares and weariness of the spirit: it restores it by relaxation, and refreshes it by pleasure....

3.1 King Theodoric to Alaric, King of the Visigoths (507)

Although the countless numbers of your clan gives you confidence in your strength, although you recall that the power of Attila yielded to Visigothic might,[2] nevertheless, the hearts of a warlike people grow soft during a long peace. Therefore, beware of suddenly putting on the hazard men who have assuredly had no experience in war for many years. Battle terrifies those who are unused to it, and they will have no confidence in a sudden clash, unless experience gives it in advance. Do not let some blind resentment carry you away. Self-restraint is fore-sighted, and a preserver of tribes; rage, though, often precipitates a crisis; and only when justice can no longer find a place with one's opponent, is it then useful to appeal to arms.

Wait, therefore, until I send my envoys to the Frankish king [Clovis], so that the judgment of friends may terminate your dispute. For I wish nothing to arise between two of my marriage kinsmen that may, perhaps, cause one of them to be the loser.[3] There has been no slaughter of your clansmen to inflame you; no occupied province is deeply incensing you; the quarrel is still trivial, a matter of words. You will very easily settle it if you do not enrage yourself by war. Though you are my relative, let me set against you the notable tribes allied to me, and justice too, which strengthens kings and quickly puts to flight those minds which it finds are so armed against it. And so, giving first the honor of my greeting, I have seen fit to send you X and Y[4] as my envoys. They will convey my instructions, as requisite, and, with your approval, will hasten on to my brother Gundobad and the other kings, lest you should be harassed by the incitements of those who maliciously rejoice in another's war. May Providence prevent that wickedness from overcoming you. I judge your enemy to be our common trouble. For he who strives against you will find in me his due opponent....

---

[1] Tones were a way to categorize melodic practices, and theorists differed on their number.

[2] The Visigoths, fighting as part of the Roman army, won a battle over Attila's Huns in 451.

[3] Theodoric's wife was the sister of Clovis, while Alaric's wife was Theodoric's daughter.

[4] The letters were drafted for specific situations but also for use as models for future correspondence. Here we have the form of the model.

1.14 The conversion of the Franks: Bishop Avitus of Vienne, *Letter to Clovis* (508?). Original in Latin.

This letter was written by the Catholic bishop of Vienne, advisor to the Burgundian kings, to congratulate Clovis, king of the Franks, on his conversion to Catholicism and his baptism. Historians have long been influenced by the *Histories* of Gregory of Tours (for which see an excerpt below, p. 48), which claimed that Clovis had been a pagan until 496, when he had a miraculous conversion to Catholic Christianity and turned all his energies to fighting the Arians. The letter from Avitus suggests a very different scenario. It begins by pointing out that Clovis had been interested in Arianism (one of the "schisms" that Avitus refers to) until he saw the light. It continues with effusive praise of Clovis, words that could probably not have been uttered by a close associate of Burgundian royalty until after that kingdom became allied with the Franks, in 508. Thus Avitus's letter suggests that Clovis's conversion was in 508. By then it is very likely that the Burgundian kings themselves had already given up Arianism for the Catholic faith. Key to Avitus's letter is the idea, which would be influential only later, that the king should send out missionaries to spread Catholicism to "more distant races."

1. For what reasons, according to Avitus, might a king hesitate to change his religion?
2. What benefits does Avitus see in store for Clovis now that he is baptized?

[Source: *Avitus of Vienne: Letters and Selected Prose*, trans. Danuta Shanzer and Ian Wood, Translated Texts for Historians 38 (Liverpool: Liverpool University Press, 2002), pp. 369–73 (notes modified).]

Avitus the bishop to Clovis the king

The chasers after various schisms,[1] by their opinions, different in nature, many in number, but *all* empty of truth, tried to conceal, under the cover of the name "Christian," the lies that have been uncovered by the keen intelligence of Your Subtlety. While we save such things (i.e., the lies) for eternity, while we reserve for future examination[2] the question of who is right on what, even in our present circumstances a ray of truth has shone through. Divine foresight has found a certain judge for our age. In making a choice for yourself, you judge on behalf of everyone. Your faith is our victory.

Many in this very situation, seeking true belief, if they are moved to the suggestion, encouraged by priests or their friends, usually invoke the custom of their race and the rites of ancestral observance as stumbling-blocks. Thus, to their own detriment, they prefer due reverence to salvation. While they maintain a token respect for their ancestors in continuing to be unbelievers, they demonstrate that they somehow do not know what to choose. Therefore let the dangerous [sense of] shame abandon this excuse after the miracle of your decision! You [alone] among your ancient clan, content with nobility alone,[3] wished whatever could adorn all your lofty ancestry to start from you for the benefit of your race. You have ancestors who did good [deeds], but you wished to be the author of better [ones]. You are the equal of your great-grandfathers in that you reign in the temporal world; for your descendants you have established your rule in heaven.

Therefore let Greece,[4] to be sure, rejoice in having an orthodox ruler, but she is no longer the only one to

[1] By schism here, Avitus means heresy.

[2] Presumably the Last Judgment.

[3] Avitus hints at the idea of the divine origin of German kings but suggests that Clovis has rightly given up this idea, and the glory reflected upon his descendants will start from his choice.

[4] I.e., Byzantium, the eastern half of the Roman Empire.

deserve so great a gift. Now her bright glory adorns *your* part of the world also, and in the West, in the person of a new king, the ray of an age-old light shines forth. It is fitting that it began to shine on the birthday of our Redeemer, so that the vivifying water appropriately gave birth to you in your salvation[1] on the very day when the world received the Lord of Heaven born for its redemption. On the day on which the birthday of our Lord is celebrated, let yours be too—the day on which Christ was born to the world, and you to Christ, the day on which you consecrated your soul to God, your life to those present, and your reputation to posterity.

What can be said about the glorious celebration of your regeneration? Even if I was not present at the rites in the flesh, I was not absent from communion in its joys—above all since divine kindness has added this further cause for thankfulness to our part of the world. Before your baptism a message came to me of the most sublime humility,[2] in which you stated that you were a candidate for baptism. Therefore after this waiting-period, Christmas Eve found me finally sure of you. I was turning things over in my mind and wondering how it would be when a large company of bishops united, striving in the sacred service, would lap the royal limbs in the life-giving waters, when he would bow before the servants of the Lord the head that should be so feared by pagans, when locks grown long beneath a helmet[3] would put on the helmet of the sacred chrism, when his spotless limbs, the breastplate removed, would shine as white as his baptismal clothes. Have no fear, O most prosperous of Kings! From now on the very softness of that clothing will cause the hardness of your armor to be all the more effective: whatever good luck has offered you in the past, holiness will now provide.

I would like to add some exhortation to my praise of you, were anything escaping either your knowledge or your watchfulness. Certainly I am not going to preach to you the faith that you saw without a preacher *before* your baptism once you have found it. Or should I preach humility perhaps? You had long ago paid it to me by your service, even though only now do you owe it to me through your profession of faith. Or perhaps I should preach the sense of pity that a people, up till recently captive, once released by you, by its joy conveys to the world and by its tears to God?

There is only one thing that I would like to be increased. Because God has made your race completely his own through you, please offer the seeds of faith from the treasure-house of your heart to more distant races too: since they still live in their natural ignorance, no seeds of heresy have corrupted. Do not be ashamed or find it troublesome even to take the step of sending missions for this purpose to build up the party of the God who has raised up yours so greatly. To the extent that whatever foreign pagan peoples there are, ready to serve you for the first time because of the rule of your religion, while they still seem to have some other distinctive quality, let them be distinguished by their race rather than through their ruler ... [Here the text of the letter breaks off.]

1.15 Gothic Spain converts: *The Third Council of Toledo* (589). Original in Latin.

In 589, sixty-three bishops and other clerics, abbots, and nobles met at Toledo in Spain at the request of King Reccared (r.586–601). They were there to "restore ecclesiastical discipline" by converting the kingdom from the Arian form of Christianity to the Catholic. In 587, Reccared had announced his own conversion, and even before that, in 580, an Arian council at Toledo had accepted part (though not all) of the Catholic Creed on the Trinity, agreeing that the Father and Son were equal and co-eternal, but not the Holy Spirit. The Third Council of Toledo added Catholic teaching on the Holy Spirit and instituted all the

[1] The "vivifying water" is that of Clovis's baptism.

[2] The implication seems to have been that Avitus was invited to the ceremony.

[3] Long hair was the identifying mark of the Merovingians.

canons (laws) of the Catholic Church. Since opposition to the conversion of 589 seems to have been very weak, it is likely that most Visigoths were happy to accept Catholicism, which brought them into agreement with the large Hispano-Roman population in Spain.

1. What was the role of the king at the council meeting?
2. How did the conversion to Catholicism affect the daily lives of people at all levels in Spain?

[Source: *Medieval Iberia: Readings from Christian, Muslim, and Jewish Sources*, ed. Olivia Remie Constable with the assistance of Damian Zurro, 2nd ed. (Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 2012), pp. 12–20. Translated by David Nirenberg.]

In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, in the fourth year of the reign of the most glorious, most pious and most faithful to God Lord Reccared, king, on the eighth day of the Ides of May, era 627 [589],[1] this sacred council was celebrated in the royal city of Toledo, by the bishops of all Spain and of the Gauls who are inscribed below.

This most glorious prince having commanded, because of the sincerity of his faith, that all the prelates of his kingdom should convene in one [council] in order that they might exult in the Lord, both for his conversion and for the renewal of the Gothic people, and that they should at the same time give thanks to the divine dignity for such an extraordinary gift, this same most blessed prince addressed the venerable council saying: "I do not believe that you are unaware of the fact, most reverend bishops, that I have summoned you into our serene presence for the restoration of ecclesiastical discipline. And because throughout past times the threatening heresy [of Arianism] did not allow a synod [council] of all the Catholic Church to be convened, God, whom it pleased to eliminate the said heresy through us, admonished us to repair the institutions of the customs of the church...."

Upon [hearing] this, the entire council, giving thanks to God and acclaiming the most religious prince, decreed in that instant a fast of three days. And all the bishops of God having come together again on the eighth day of the Ides of May, after the preliminary oration [prayer], each of the bishops was again seated in his proper place, when behold, among them appeared the most serene prince, having joined himself to the oration of the bishops of God, and filled thereafter with divine inspiration, he began to address [the bishops] saying: "We do not believe that your holinesses are unaware of how long a time Spain labored under the error of the Arians, and how, not long after our father's death, when it was known that we had associated ourselves with your holy Catholic faith, there [arose] everywhere a great and eternal rejoicing. And therefore, venerable fathers, we decided to unite you [in order] to celebrate this council, so that you yourselves may give eternal thanks to the Lord for the peoples newly come to Christ. The rest of the agenda that we present before your priestliness concerning our faith and hope which we profess, we have written down in this book. Read it, therefore, among yourselves. And [then] approved by the judgment of council and decorated with this testimony of faith, our glory shall shine throughout all times to come."

The... book the king offered was received, therefore, by all the bishops of God, and [it] being read in a clear voice by the clerk, the following was heard: Although the omnipotent God has, for the benefit of the populace, given us charge of the kingdom, and has delivered the governance of not a few peoples into our royal stewardship, nevertheless we remember that we too are of mortal condition, and that we cannot merit the happiness of future blessedness unless we esteem the cult of the true faith, and, at least, please our creator with the creed of which he is worthy. For which reason, the higher we are extolled above our subjects by royal dignity, the more we should provide for those things that pertain to God, both to increase our faith, and to take thought for the people God has entrusted to us....

[1] In the Spanish system of dating, used until the fourteenth century, the year 1 began in what is today 38 BCE. The calculation of the day of the month, however, followed the ancient Roman dating system: the eighth day of the Ides of May was the seventh day counting backwards from May 15, so May 8.

Therefore, most holy fathers, these most noble peoples, who have been brought near to the Lord by our diligence, I offer to the eternal God through your hands, as a holy and propitiating sacrifice. Truly it shall be for me an unfading crown and a delight in the reward of the just if these peoples, who because of our dexterity have rushed to the unity of the church, remain rooted and firm within it. And truly, just as it was [entrusted] to our care by the divine will to bring these peoples to the unity of the Church of Christ, it is your duty to instruct them in the dogmas of the Catholics so that, instructed in the full knowledge of the truth, they [shall] know [how] stolidly to reject the errors of the pernicious heresy, and to keep to the path of the true faith through love, embracing the communion of the Catholic Church with an ever more ardent desire....

To these my true confessions I added the sacred decrees of the abovementioned councils, and I signed them, with God [as my] witness, in all innocence of heart....

I, Reccared, king, faithful to this holy and true creed, which is believed by the Catholic Church throughout the world, holding it in my heart, affirming it with my mouth, signed it with my right hand, [under] God's protection.

I, Bado, glorious queen, signed with my hand and with all my heart this creed, which I believed and professed.

Then the entire council broke into acclamations, praising God and applauding the prince....

Here begin the decrees that, in the name of God, were established by the third holy synod in the city of Toledo.

1. THAT THE STATUTES OF THE COUNCILS AND THE DECREES OF THE ROMAN PONTIFFS BE MAINTAINED

After the condemnation of the Arian heresy and the exposition of the holy Catholic faith, the holy council decreed the following: that since in some Spanish churches, whether because of heresy or paganism, canonical discipline was passed over, license for transgression abounded, and the option of discipline was denied, so that any excess of heresy found favor and an abundance of evil made lukewarm the strictness of discipline, [because of these things,] the mercy of Christ having restored peace to the church, [we order that] all that which the authority of the ancient canons[1] prohibited, let it also be restricted by the revived discipline, and let that be performed which [the canons said] ought to be performed....

2. THAT IN ALL THE CHURCHES THE CREED[2] SHOULD BE RECITED ON SUNDAY...

4. THAT IT IS PERMITTED THE BISHOP TO CONVERT A CHURCH IN HIS PARISH INTO A MONASTERY...

5. THAT BISHOPS AND DEACONS SHOULD LIVE CHASTELY WITH THEIR WIVES

It has come to the attention of the holy council that the bishops, presbyters, and deacons who are coming out of heresy [i.e., Arians] copulate with their wives out of carnal desire. So that this shall not be done in the future, we decree what prior canons had already determined: that they are not allowed to live in libidinous union, but rather with the conjugal bond remaining between them they should mutually help each other, without living in the same room. Or if [his] virtue is strong enough, let him make his wife live in some other house, as good witness to [his] chastity, not only before God, but also before men. But if any should choose to live obscenely with his wife after this accord, let him be a lector.[3] [And concerning any of] those who have always been subjected to ecclesiastical canons [i.e., Catholics], if against ancient command they have had consort in their cells with women who could provoke a suspicion of infamy, let them be punished canonically, the women being sold [into slavery] by the bishop, their price being distributed to the poor....

9. THAT THE CHURCHES OF THE ARIANS SHALL BELONG TO THE CATHOLIC BISHOPS IN WHOSE DIOCESES THEY ARE LOCATED...

10. THAT NO ONE COMMIT VIOLENCE AGAINST THE CHASTITY OF A WIDOW, AND THAT NO ONE MARRY A WOMAN AGAINST HER WILL

In the interests of chastity (the increase of which the council should most avidly incite) and with the agree-

[1] Canons were the laws determined by Church councils.

[2] See *The Nicene Creed* (above, p. 11), to which was added the "filioque," which said that Holy Spirit proceeded from the Father *and* the Son.

[3] A demotion to minor orders.

ment of our most glorious lord king Reccared, this holy council affirms that widows who wish to maintain their chastity may not be forced with any violence into a second marriage. And if before taking a vow of chastity they wish to be married, let them marry him who of their own free will they wish to have as husband. The same should be maintained concerning virgins, [for] they should not be forced to take a husband against their parents' will or their own. If anyone impedes the desire of a widow or virgin to remain chaste, let him be held a stranger from holy communion and the thresholds of the church.

11. THAT PENITENTS DO PENANCE

[We are] aware of the fact that in some churches of Spain men do penitence for their sins, not in accordance with the canons, but in a disgusting way: as often as they wish to sin, they ask the presbyter to be reconciled. Therefore, in order to eliminate such an execrable presumption, the council decrees that penitence be given in accordance with the form of the ancient canons, that is: that he who repents should first be separated from communion, and he should avail himself often of the laying on of hands, along with the other penitents. Once his time of satisfaction is finished, he should be restored to communion as the bishop sees fit. But those who return to their old vice, whether during the time of penitence or afterwards, shall be condemned in accordance with the severity of the ancient canons....

14. CONCERNING THE JEWS

At the suggestion of the council, our most glorious lord has commanded [that the following] be inserted in the canons: It is not permitted for Jews to have Christian women as wives or concubines, nor to purchase slaves for their personal use. And if children are born of such a union, they should be taken to the baptismal font. They may not be assigned any public business by virtue of which they [might] have power to punish Christians. And if any Christians have been stained by them, [or] by Jewish ritual, or been circumcised, let them return to liberty and the Christian religion without paying the price [of their freedom]....

16. THAT BISHOPS ALONG WITH JUDGES DESTROY THE IDOLS, AND THAT LORDS FORBID THEIR SERVANTS IDOLATRY

Because the sacrilege of idolatry is taking root in nearly all of Spain and Gaul, the holy synod, with the consent of the glorious prince, commands the following: that each bishop in his respective area, along with the judge of that region, should diligently search out the aforesaid sacrilege, and should nor refrain from exterminating that which they find, and should correct those who participate in such error with any punishment available, save that which endangers life....

17. THAT THE BISHOPS AND THE JUDGES CORRECT WITH BITTER DISCIPLINE THOSE WHO MURDER THEIR OWN CHILDREN

Among the many complaints which have come to the ears of the holy council, there has been denounced to it a crime so great, that the ears of the present bishops cannot bear it, and this is that in some parts of Spain, parents kill their own children, [because they are] eager to fornicate, and know nothing of piety. Those to whom it is troublesome to have many children should first refrain from fornication. [For once] they have contracted marriage under the pretext of procreation, they make themselves guilty of parricide and fornication, who, by murdering their own children, reveal that they were married not for procreation but for libidinous union. Our most glorious lord king Reccared, having taken account of such evil, his glory has deigned to instruct the judges of those regions to inquire diligently concerning such a horrible crime, in conjunction with the bishops, and to forbid it with all severity. Therefore this sacred council sorrowfully urges the bishops of [those] regions that together with the judges they diligently inquire [about this crime], and forbid it with the most severe penalties, excepting death....

23. THAT DANCES BE PROHIBITED ON THE BIRTHDAYS OF THE SAINTS

That unreligious custom which the vulgar people practice on the feast days of the saints must be completely destroyed. That is, that the people who ought to attend to the divine offices instead dedicate themselves to unseemly songs and dances, injuring not only themselves, but also interfering with the offices of the religious. The holy council commends [this] to the care of the bishops and judges: that this custom may be banished from all of Spain.

HERE BEGINS THE EDICT OF THE KING IN CONFIRMATION OF THE COUNCIL

... We decree that all these ecclesiastical rules which we have summarized briefly above [should be] maintained with eternal stability as is amply explained in the canons. If any cleric or layperson does not wish to obey these decrees, [let them be punished as follows]: If they are a bishop, presbyter, deacon, or cleric, let them be subject

to excommunication by the entire council. If they are laypeople of substance in their region, let them give [as a fine] half of their possessions to the fisc,[1] and if they are people of inferior status in their region, let them lose [all] their possessions and be sent into exile.

I, Flavius Reccared, have signed as confirmation these decrees that we established with the holy synod.

[There follow the signatures of the bishops, etc.]

1.16 Merovingian Gaul's bishop-historian: Gregory of Tours, *Histories* (576–594). Original in Latin.

Bishop of Tours from 573 until his death in 594, Gregory, who also wrote *Lives* of many saints (e.g., see Monegundis, above, p. 38), began his *Histories* with the Creation itself but soon turned to Gaul and to his own day, which he chronicled in the Augustinian spirit (see *The City of God*, p. 16 above), with both good and bad people and events intermingled. As the successor of St. Martin as bishop of Tours (see *The Life of St. Martin*, above p. 35), Gregory was responsible for the well-being of his flock. But the authority of bishops like Gregory was checked and balanced by that of dukes, counts, and kings. In the excerpt below, Bishop Praetextatus of Rouen was hauled before the Merovingian king Chilperic (r.561–584) on charges of treason. In particular, he was made to answer for his actions regarding Merovech, Chilperic's disinherited son. Merovech had tried to win his father's throne by marrying Brunhild, the widow of Chilperic's rival (and brother) in Francia. Praetextatus was accused of helping further Merovech's plans. The incident illustrates the power of the Frankish king over the episcopacy. But it also shows the immense prestige and authority wielded by bishops.

1. What does Gregory report as his own role during these events?
2. How was Praetextatus punished and what was the justification for this punishment?

[Source: *Gregory of Tours: The Merovingians*, trans. and ed. Alexander Callander Murray (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2005), pp. 89–96 (slightly modified).]

Book 5

18. [King] Chilperic [r.561–584] heard that Praetextatus, bishop of Rouen, was giving people gifts contrary to the king's interests and had him summoned to his presence. He examined him and discovered that the bishop was in possession of property entrusted to him by Queen Brunhild.[2] This was confiscated, and the king ordered him kept in exile until the bishops could convene a hearing.

The council met, and Bishop Praetextatus was brought before it. The bishops who attended convened in the basilica of the holy apostle Peter in Paris.

"Bishop," said the king to Praetextatus, "why did you think to join in marriage my enemy Merovech,[3] who

[1] The fisc was the property or treasury of the state, in this case the king.

[2] Brunhild was the widow of Chilperic's half-brother and rival king, Sigibert (r.561–575). The events of this chapter take place in 577.

[3] Merovech was Chilperic's son by Audovera. When Chilperic married Fredegund, she made sure that Merovech would not gain the throne. Merovech tried to outwit her by marrying Queen Brunhild. He did not succeed.

ought to have acted as a son, with his aunt, that is, his uncle's wife? Or were you unacquainted with what the canons have established for such a case? Also, not only did you demonstrably go too far in this matter, but you even acted in conjunction with Merovech to give gifts to bring about my assassination. You have made a son an enemy of his father, you have led the people astray with money, so that none of them would maintain the loyalty they had for me, and you have tried to hand my kingdom into the hands of another."

When he said this, the crowd of Franks let out a roar and tried to break open the church doors, intending to drag the bishop out and stone him, but the king stopped this happening.

When Bishop Praetextatus denied having done what the king charged, false witnesses came forward who showed various valuable articles.

"These and these you gave us," they said, "on condition we pledge our loyalty to Merovech."

"You're right that you have often received gifts from me," he said in response to these charges, "but it was not for the purpose of driving the king from the kingdom. Since you furnished me with excellent horses and other things, what else could I do but pay you back at the same value?"

The king returned to his quarters, but we remained seated as a group in the sacristy of the basilica of the blessed Peter. As we were talking together, suddenly Aetius, archdeacon of the bishopric of Paris, came in and greeted us.

"Hear me, bishops of God, gathered here together," he said. "In this hour you shall either exalt your name and show that you deserve a glowing reputation, or instead, if you don't have the sense to stand up for yourselves or if you allow your brother to be destroyed, hereafter no one will take you for bishops of God."

When he said this, none of the bishops said anything in reply. For they feared the savage anger of the queen [Fredegund], at whose instigation these proceedings were being conducted.

As they considered these words, with their fingers on their lips, I said, "Please listen to what I have to say, most holy bishops, especially you who seem to be on quite friendly terms with the king; furnish him with advice as befits holy men and priests, so that he is not destroyed by God's anger, losing his kingdom and reputation in an outburst against a servant of God."

When I said this, all were silent.

Since no one spoke, I added, "My lord bishops, remember the word of the prophet: 'If the watchman sees the iniquity of a person and does not speak, he shall be guilty for a lost soul [cf. Ezek. 33:6].' Therefore do not remain silent, but speak out, and set this king's sins before his own eyes, in case some evil comes upon him, and you are held responsible for his soul. Surely you can't be unaware of what has happened in modern times? How Chlodomer[1] captured Sigismund[2] and threw him in prison, and Avitus, God's priest, said to him: 'Do not lay hands on him and when you go to Burgundy you will win the victory.' But he disregarded what was said to him by the priest and went ahead and killed him with his wife and sons. And Chlodomer went to Burgundy and was overcome by the enemy and killed. What about the emperor Maximus? When he forced the blessed Martin[3] to associate with a certain bishop who was a homicide, and Martin gave in to the impious king in order to help free those condemned to death, Maximus was pursued by the judgment of the eternal King and, driven from the imperial throne, was condemned to the vilest death."

When I said this, no one said anything in reply, but all stared in astonishment.

However, two flatterers among them—it is sad to have to say that of bishops—gave a report to the king, telling him that he had no greater opponent of his interests than me. Promptly a court attendant was sent to bring me before him.

When I arrived, the king was standing beside a bower made of branches; on his right stood Bishop Bertram and on his left Ragnemod. There was a table covered with bread and various dishes in front of them.

On seeing me, the king said, "Bishop, you are supposed to confer justice freely on all. But look now, I don't get justice from you. As I see it, you are giving in to iniquity: your actions are an example of the proverb that the crow does not tear out the eye of another crow."

"If any one of us, king, tries to leave the path of justice," I replied, "he can be corrected by you. But if you abandon it, who shall take you to task? We speak to you, but you pay attention only if you wish. And if you refuse

[1] King Chlodomer (r.511–524) was a son of King Clovis (r.481–511).

[2] Sigismund (r.516–524) was king of the Burgundians.

[3] St. Martin (d.397) was bishop of Tours. Maximus was a usurping emperor (r.383–388).

to listen, who will pass sentence on you if it is not He who has proclaimed that He is justice?"

He had been inflamed against me by his flatterers and replied, "I have found justice with everyone, but with you I cannot find it. I know what I shall do to disgrace you before the people and reveal to all that you are unjust. I shall assemble the people of Tours and tell them, 'You may cry out against Gregory that he is an unjust man and renders justice to no one.' And to those who shout this, I will reply, 'I who am king cannot get justice from him. Shall you who are less than I find it?'"

"You do not know whether I am unjust," I said. "He to whom the secrets of the heart are revealed knows my conscience. What people falsely cry out when you revile me means nothing, for everyone knows it is your doing. This is why not I but you will be the one disgraced by the outcries. But why go on with this? You have the law and the canons; search them carefully and then you will know that the judgment of God hangs over you if you do not follow their commands."

Thinking that I did not understand his artfulness, he turned to the broth that was set in front of him, as if this would soothe me.

"I had this broth prepared for you," he said. "There is nothing else in it but fowl and a few chickpeas."

Recognizing his flattery, I replied, "My food is doing the will of God, without at all overlooking whatever he commands, not partaking of the pleasures of these delicacies. As for you who find fault with others in matters of justice, promise first that you will not neglect the law and the canons. Then I shall believe that you follow justice."

Then he stretched out his right hand and swore by almighty God that he would in no way overlook the teaching of the law and the canons. After that I took bread and wine and departed.

That night, when the hymns for the night had been sung, I heard heavy knocking on the door of my lodging. From the servant I sent to answer it, I learned that messengers from Queen Fredegund were there. They were brought in, and I received greetings from the queen. Then her servants asked me not to take a position contrary to her interests and, at the same time, promised two hundred pounds of silver if I attacked Praetextatus, and he was convicted.

"We already have the word of all the bishops," they said. "Don't be the only one in opposition."

"Even if you were to give me a thousand pounds of silver and gold," I said to them, "what else can I do but what the Lord tells me to do? I will promise one thing only, that I will follow what the others agree to in accordance with the canons."

Not understanding what I was saying, they thanked me and went away. In the morning some of the bishops came to me bearing a similar message; to them I gave the same answer.

We met in the morning in Saint Peter's basilica, and the king was present.

"The authority of the canons provides that a bishop detected in theft should be removed from the office of bishop," he said.

We asked who the bishop might be against whom the charge of theft was made.

"You saw the articles of value which he stole from me," the king answered.

Three days before the king had shown us two bundles full of costly articles and treasures of different sorts, valued at more than three thousand solidi,[1] as well as a bag of coined gold, the weight of which suggested about two thousand pieces. The king said this had been stolen from him by the bishop.

The bishop answered, "I believe you remember that I came to you when Queen Brunhild left Rouen and told you that I was holding her property in trust, namely, five parcels, and that her servants came to me quite frequently to retrieve them but I would not release them without your advice. And king, you said to me, 'Rid yourself of this stuff and let the woman have her property back, in case hostility arises between me and my nephew Childebert[2] over these goods.' I went back to the city and gave one roll to the servants, as they could carry no more. They returned a second time and asked for the others. I again sought the advice of your magnificence. And you gave me orders, 'Get rid of this stuff, bishop, get rid of it, so it won't be the cause of a quarrel.' I again gave them two bundles and two more remained in my possession. Why now do you make a false charge and accuse me of theft, when this case should be considered one not of theft but of custody?"

"If this property was considered as being in your possession for safekeeping," responded the king, "why did you open one of these bundles, cut in pieces a belt woven of gold thread, and distribute it to men who were to drive me from the kingdom?"

---

[1] A *solidus* was a gold coin.

[2] Childebert (r.575–596) had succeeded his father, Sigibert, as king.

"I told you before," answered Praetextatus, "that I had received their gifts, and as I had nothing at hand to give, I therefore presumed to take this and give it in return for their gifts. It seemed to be my property because it belonged to my son Merovech, whom I received from the baptismal font."[1]

King Chilperic saw that he could not convict him with false charges, and being thoroughly confounded and disturbed by his conscience, he left us and summoned certain of his flatterers.

"I confess," he said to them, "I've been beaten by the bishop's replies and I know that what he says is true. What can I do now if the queen's will is to be done with regards to him?"

Then he said, "Go, approach him and say, as if giving your own advice, 'You know that King Chilperic is pious and tender-hearted and readily moved to mercy; humble yourself before him and say that you are guilty of the charges he laid. Then we will all throw ourselves at his feet and prevail on him to pardon you.'"

Bishop Praetextatus was deceived by them and promised he would do as they suggested.

In the morning we met at the usual place. The king approached the bishop.

"If you conferred gifts on these men in return for gifts," he said, "why did you ask them for oaths that they stay loyal to Merovech?"

"I confess," replied the bishop, "I did seek to gain their friendship for him; and I would have summoned to his aid not just a mere mortal but an angel from heaven, had it been right; for he was my spiritual son from the baptismal font, as I have often said."

When the dispute had gone on for a while, Bishop Praetextatus threw himself on the ground.

"I have sinned against heaven and against you, most merciful king," he said. "I am an unspeakable homicide; I wanted to kill you and raise your son to the throne."

When Praetextatus said this, the king fell at the feet of the bishops and said, "Most holy bishops, listen to the guilty confess his accursed crime."

In tears we raised the king from the ground, and he ordered Praetextatus to leave the basilica.

Chilperic himself went to his quarters and sent a book of canons, into which [new pages] had been added containing the so-called apostolic canons. The following was among them: "A bishop found to have committed homicide, adultery, or perjury shall be removed from office."

This was read, and while Praetextatus stood there in shock, Bishop Bertram said, "Pay heed, brother and fellow-bishop, that you do not have the king's favor. For that reason, you cannot benefit from our friendship until you win the king's pardon."

After these events, the king asked that Praetextatus's robe should be torn off him, or that Psalm 108, which contains the curses against [Judas] Iscariot, be read over his head, or at the least that judgment be entered against him, excommunicating him forever. These proposals I opposed on grounds that the king had promised that nothing would be done unauthorized by the canons. Then Praetextatus was taken from our sight and placed under guard. He was beaten severely trying to escape custody one night and was sent into exile on an island in the sea off the coast of the city of Coutances.

After this there was news that Merovech was trying to reach the basilica of Saint Martin [in Tours] for the second time. But Chilperic gave orders to guard the church and close every access. The guards left open one door for a few of the clergy to enter for services but kept all the rest closed. This was a cause of considerable inconvenience to people.

When I was staying in Paris signs appeared in the sky, that is twenty rays in the north part, rising in the east and moving to the west; one of these was more extended and rose above the rest and, when it reached a great height, soon faded away, and in the same way, the rest that followed disappeared. I believe they announced Merovech's death.

As for Merovech, he was lurking in the champaign country near Reims, fearing to entrust himself to the Austrasians openly, and was tricked by the people of Thérouanne, who said they would desert his father Chilperic and submit to him if he would come to them. He took his best fighting men and went quickly to them. They sprung the trap they had prepared: shutting him up in a certain villa, they surrounded him with armed men and sent messengers to his father. On hearing the news, Chilperic got ready to hurry there. But while Merovech was being forced to wait in some lodging-house, he began to fear that he would have to suffer many penalties to satisfy the vengeance of his enemies. He summoned Gailen his confidential servant.

"Up to now," said Merovech, "we have shared the same heart and mind. I ask you not to allow me to fall into the hands of my enemies. Take a sword and run me through."

[1] Merovech was thus the godson of Praetextatus.

Without hesitating, Gailen stabbed him with his blade. When the king came, he found his son dead.

20. Then disturbances sprang up against bishops Salonius and Sagittarius.

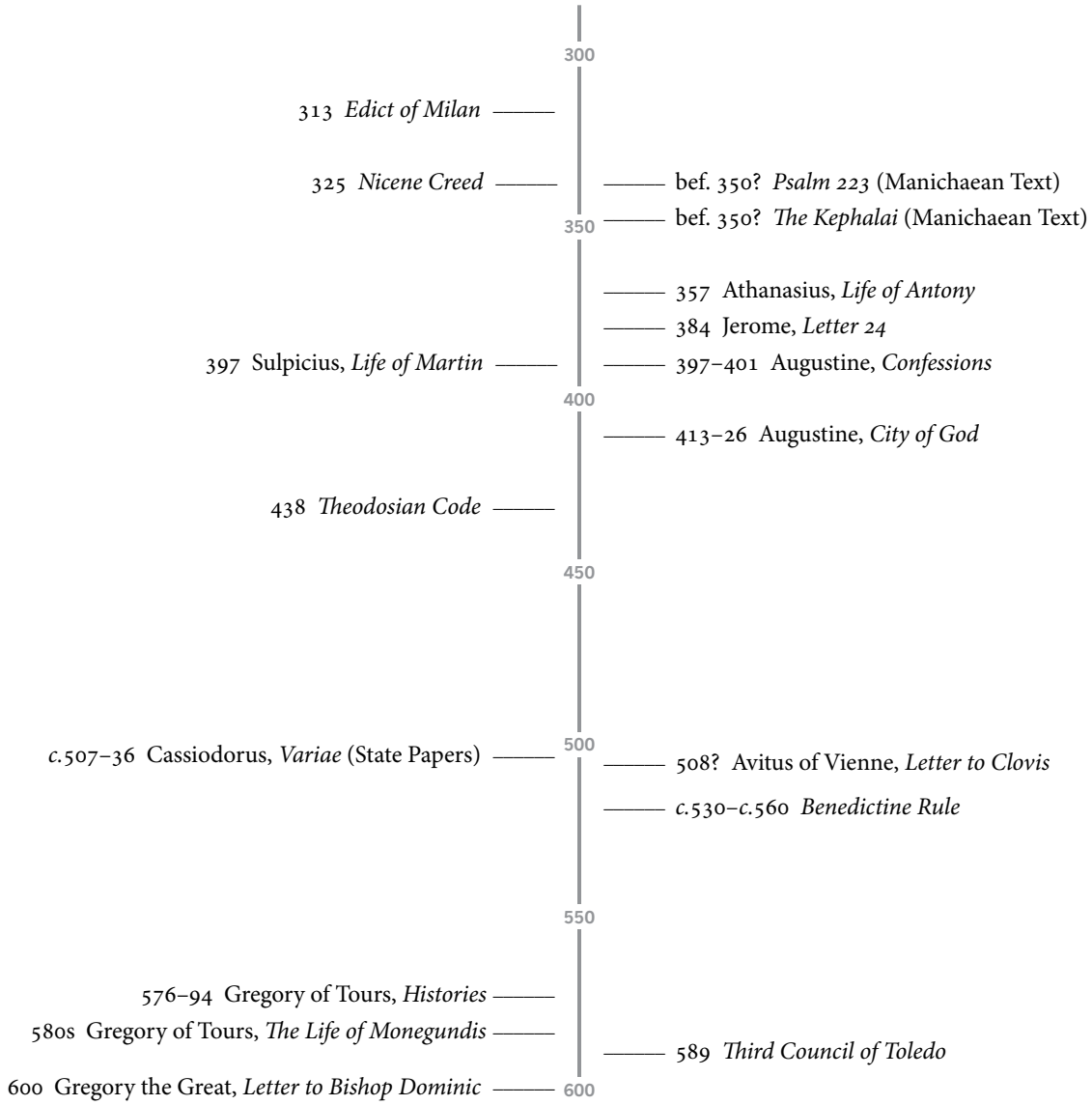
They had been raised by Saint Nicetius, bishop of Lyons [r.552–573], and appointed to the diaconate. During his episcopate, Salonius was made bishop of the city of Embrun and Sagittarius bishop of the church of Gap. But once they had received episcopal office, their true wilfulness took over; in a mad fury, they appropriated property and committed beatings, homicides, adulteries, and various crimes. At one point, when Victor, bishop of St-Paul-Trois-Châteaux, was celebrating his birthday, they attacked him, sending a force armed with swords and bows against him. The attackers ripped his clothes, struck down servants and took away vessels and all the utensils of the feast, leaving the bishop grossly insulted.

When King Guntram learned of it, he had a synod assemble at Lyons [*c.*570]. The bishops gathered along with the patriarch, blessed Nicetius, and matters were investigated; they found the accused clearly guilty of the crimes with which they were charged and commanded those who could commit such offenses to be deprived of the office of bishop. But since Salonius and Sagittarius knew the king was still well-disposed to them, they approached him, claiming that they had been unjustly removed from office and imploring him to give them permission to take the matter to the pope of Rome. The king granted their request, gave them letters, and allowed them to leave.

Coming before Pope John [III, 561–574] they explained how they were removed for no good reason. The pope sent letters to the king ordering them restored to their positions. Without delay, the king brought this about, chastising them first with a long lecture. Worse yet, what resulted was not improvement.

They did, however, seek peace with Bishop Victor, surrendering the men who had been involved in the disturbance. But he, mindful of the Lord's command not to return evil for evil against one's enemies, did nothing to these wicked men and let them go free. For this reason, he was later excommunicated because he had made a public charge but privately spared his enemies without the participation of the brothers before whom he had made the charge. Nevertheless, through the good will of the king, he was restored to communion again.

TIMELINE FOR CHAPTER ONE



To test your knowledge and gain deeper understanding of this chapter, please go to **www.utphistorymatters.com** for Study Questions.

This page intentionally left blank

II

The Emergence of Sibling Cultures (c.600–c.750)

THE RESILIENCE OF BYZANTIUM

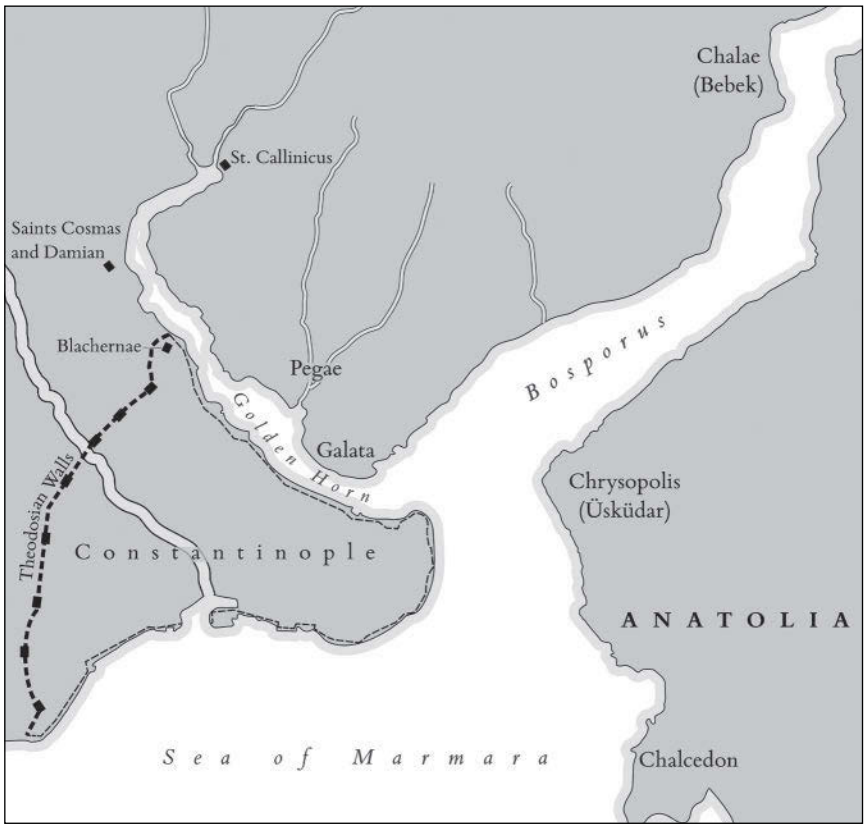
2.1 The Siege of Constantinople: *The Easter Chronicle* (630). Original in Greek.

Much like Gregory of Tours' *Histories* (see above, p. 48), so too the anonymous *Easter Chronicle* began with the creation of the world, presenting historical events as part of God's plan. Unlike histories, however, which could consider events in a variety of ways, chronicles were written like diary entries, with occurrences discussed by year. The year 626, reproduced here, merited a very long entry. In trying to explain the defeat of an attack on the nearly undefended Constantinople by a coalition of Persians, Slavs, and Avars, the chronicler demonstrated the close intermingling of politics, war, and religion in seventh-century Byzantine thought. Indeed, it seems that the chronicle was compiled shortly after this event to celebrate this and other victories that rolled back the Persian conquests by 628. See Map 2.1 to figure out the movements of each side.

1. What roles does religious belief play in the chronicler's account?
2. Put yourself in the place of the Avar Khagan. What would be your motives in attacking Constantinople?

[Source: *Chronicon Paschale, 284–628 AD*, trans. Michael Whitby and Mary Whitby (Liverpool: Liverpool University Press, 1989), pp. 169–81 (notes and some names and titles modified).]

[626] It is good to describe how now too the sole most merciful and compassionate God, by the welcome intercession of his undefiled Mother, who is in truth our Lady Mother of God and ever-Virgin Mary, with his mighty hand saved this humble city of his from the utterly godless enemies who encircled it in concert, and redeemed the people who were present within it from the imminent sword, captivity, and most bitter servitude; no-one



Map 2.1 The Siege of Constantinople

will find a means to describe this in its entirety. For the accursed Shahrbaraz, commander of the Persian army, while he was awaiting (as it seems and was indeed finally revealed by deeds) the arrival of the utterly godless Khagan of the Avars, had for these very many days past been at Chalcedon; he impiously burnt all the suburbs and palaces and houses of prayer, and thereafter remained, awaiting the advent of that man [the Avar Khagan].

And so on the 29th of the month June of the present indiction 14, that is on the day of the Feast of the holy and glorious chief apostles, Peter and Paul, a vanguard of the God-abhorred Khagan arrived, about 30,000. He had spread the rumor by means of reports that he would capture both the Long Wall and the area within it, and as a result, on the same day, which was a Lord's Day, the excellent cavalry who were present outside the city came inside the new Theodosian Wall of this imperial city. The same advance guard remained in the regions of Melantias,[1] while a few of them made sallies at intervals as far as the wall, and prevented anyone from going out or collecting provisions for animals at all.

In the meantime, when as many as ten days in succession had elapsed and none of the enemy appeared near the wall, soldiers went out with camp followers and civilians, with the intention of harvesting a few crops about ten miles distant; it happened that the enemy encountered them, that some fell on either side, and that some of the soldiers' camp followers and of the civilians who had gone out with them were also apprehended. For if it had not happened that the soldiers were diverted to the defence of their camp followers and the civilians, a considerable number of the enemy would have been slaughtered on that day.

Shortly afterwards some of the enemy, as many as 1,000, approached the venerated church of the Holy Maccabees on the far side at Galata; they made themselves

[1] The Long Wall was to the west of the Theodosian Walls, too far to the west to be included on Map 2.1. The Theodosian Walls, constructed in the early fifth century, consisted of both inner and outer walls separated by a terrace. Just to the west of the Theodosian Walls was a broad and deep moat. The wall was pierced by nine main gates, many of them mentioned in this text.

visible to the Persians, who had congregated in the regions of Chrysopolis, and they made their presence known to each other by fire signals.

In the meantime the accursed Khagan dismissed Athanasius, the most glorious patrician from the regions of Adrianopolis, after saying to him, "Go and see how the people of the city are willing to conciliate me, and what they are willing to give me to make me retire." And so when the same most glorious Athanasius entered and announced this to Bonus, the most glorious patrician and *magister*,[1] and to the other officials, they reproached him for having thus cringed before the accursed Khagan and for having promised that the people of the city would perform acts of conciliation for him. Then the most glorious Athanasius said that these had been his instructions from the most glorious officials at the time when he was dispatched on embassy; thereafter he had not learnt that the defenses had been strengthened thus and that an army was present here; however, he was ready to tell the Khagan without alteration the message given to him. Then, after the same most glorious Athanasius requested that he first wished to inspect the army that was in the city, a muster was held and about 12,000 or more cavalry resident in the city were present. And then the officials gave him a response that was intended by every means to cause the accursed Khagan [not] to approach the wall, that is the city. Then, after the most glorious Athanasius had reached the vicinity of that man, he was not received, but the cursed Khagan said that he would not give way at all unless he obtained both the city and those who were in it.[2]

On the 29th of the month July the same God-abhorred Khagan reached the wall with the whole of his horde, and showed himself to those in the city.[3] After one day, that is on the 31st of the same month July, he advanced, arrayed for battle, from the gate called Polyandrion as far as the gate of the Pempton and beyond with particular vigor: for there he stationed the bulk of his horde, after stationing Slavs within view along the remaining part of the wall. And he remained from dawn until hour 11 fighting first [along] with unarmored Slav infantry, and in the second rank with infantry in corslets. And towards evening he stationed a few siege engines and mantelets from Brachialion as far as Brachialion.[4]

And again on the following day he stationed a multitude of siege engines close to each other against that part which had been attacked by him, so that those in the city were compelled to station very many siege engines inside the wall. When the infantry battle was joined each day, through the efficacy of God, as a result of their superiority our men kept off the enemy at a distance. But he bound together his stone-throwers and covered them outside with hides; and in the section from the Polyandrion gate as far as the gate of St. Romanus he prepared to station 12 lofty siege towers, which were advanced almost as far as the outworks, and he covered them with hides.[5] And as for the sailors who were present in the city, even they came out to assist the citizens.[6] And one of these sailors constructed a mast and hung a skiff on it, intending by means of it to burn the enemies' siege-towers. Bonus, the all-praiseworthy *magister*, gave commendation to this sailor for having dismayed the enemy not inconsiderably.

But the same most renowned *magister*, after the enemy's approach to the wall, did not cease from urging him to take not only his agreed tribute but also any other condition for the sake of which he had come as far as the

---

[1] Emperor Heraclius, who was in Anatolia fighting the Persians, left Bonus in charge of the administration of Constantinople. The Avar attack was deliberately timed to take advantage of the city's relative defenselessness.

[2] It seems that Athanasius had been sent to the Avar Khagan to dissuade him from approaching Constantinople. In the meantime, unknown to Athanasius, Heraclius had sent extra defenders to the city. Further reinforcements, which arrived at the end of the siege, were brought by Heraclius' brother. However, the city's defenders relied primarily on the strength of the walls of Constantinople, along with their superior naval power. They did not try to engage the main Avar army outside the walls and repeatedly attempted to persuade the Khagan to retire.

[3] The Khagan apparently thought that by showing himself personally, he would intimidate the defenders. But the Patriarch of Constantinople, Sergius, counteracted the effect by parading on the walls himself.

[4] Corselets were body armor. For siege engines, see "Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages," in "Reading through Looking," pp. X–XXIV. Mantelets—wooden frames covered with animal hides—were set up to protect the archers. The meaning of "from Brachialion as far as Brachialion" is unclear.

[5] The hides reduced the risk of fire.

[6] These were not the crews of the Byzantine warships (who had to be ready to oppose the canoes of the Slavs) but rather of trading vessels in the Byzantine harbor. Heraclius had sent instructions for everyone to be involved in the defense.

wall. And he did not accept, but said, "Withdraw from the city, leave me your property, and save yourselves and your families." He was anxious to launch to sea the canoes which he had brought with him, and was prevented by the cutters.[1] Finally he prepared for these to be launched at the bridge of St. Callinicus after a third day of the fighting.[2] It was for this reason that he prepared for the canoes to be launched there, because the area was shallow and the cutters were unable to approach there. But the cutters remained within sight of the canoes from St. Nicholas as far as St. Conon on the far side at Pegae, preventing the canoes from going past.[3]

On Saturday in the evening, that is on the second of the month August, the Khagan asked for officials to converse with him. And there went out to him George the most glorious patrician, and Theodore the most glorious *commerciarius* for woad, and Theodosius the most glorious patrician and logothete, and Theodore *syncellus* most dear to God, and Athanasius the most glorious patrician.[4] And when they had set out, the Khagan brought into their sight three Persians dressed in pure silk who had been sent from Shahrbaraz. And he arranged that they should be seated in his presence, while our ambassadors should stand. And he said, "Look, the Persians have sent an embassy to me, and are ready to give me 3,000 men in alliance. Therefore, if each of you in the city is prepared to take no more than a cloak and a shirt, we will make a compact with Shahrbaraz, for he is my friend: cross over to him and he will not harm you; leave me your city and property. For otherwise it is impossible for you to be saved, unless you can become fish and depart by sea, or birds and ascend to the sky. For look—as the Persians themselves say—neither has your emperor invaded Persia nor is your army arrived." But the most glorious George said to him, "These men are imposters and do not speak a word of truth, since our army is arrived here and our most pious lord is in their country, utterly destroying it." Then one of the Persians was infuriated and in the presence of the Khagan insulted the said most glorious George, and he himself replied to him, "It is not you who insult me, but the Khagan." But the most glorious officials who had come out to him also said this to the Khagan, "Although you have such great hordes, you need Persian help." And he said, "If I wish, they will provide me with men in alliance, for they are my friends." And again our officials said to him, "'We will never relinquish the city, for we came out to you in the expectation of discussing something material. So if you do not wish to discuss with us peace proposals, dismiss us." And he dismissed them.

Straightway, during the night preceding the Lord's Day, through the efficacy of the good and mercy-loving God, the same Persians who had been on the embassy to the Khagan, while they were crossing over to Chrysopolis by way of Chalae, encountered our skiffs, in which there were also some of those from the orphanage.[5] And one of these Persians was found after he had thrown himself into a small skiff known as a *sandalos*, face down and beneath the coverings, and was crossing over to Chrysopolis thus; but the sailor who was in this skiff and was steering it, adroitly signaled to those from the orphanage who pulled back and removed the coverings, and found this Persian unharmed and lying face down; they slew him and removed his head. They overpowered the other two Persians along with the sailor as well, while they were crossing over in another boat, and these they brought at dawn to the wall. Our men chopped off the two hands of one of the surviving Persians, tied round his neck the head of the man slain in the skiff, and sent him to the Khagan.

The other was thrown into a skiff and taken off alive to Chalcedon; when he had been exhibited to the Persians our men beheaded him just as he was in the skiff, and threw his head onto land with a message that read like this: "The Khagan, after making terms with us, sent us the

[1] A cutter is a type of boat designed for speed.

[2] For St. Callinicus see Map 2.1.

[3] The Slavs launched their canoes at the head of the Golden Horn, to the northwest of Constantinople. The Byzantine fleet was deployed all across the Golden Horn, from the Blachernai to Galata.

[4] Theodore *commerciarius* was a customs officer; Theodosius was the official responsible for military finances; Theodore *syncellus* lived with the patriarch; Athanasius had already (see above) served on an embassy to the Khagan.

[5] There were several orphanages in Constantinople; it is not clear which one is referred to here. It seems that in 626 the beneficiaries of the orphanage had been commandeered to assist in the defense of the city by patrolling the Bosporus to intercept communications between Persians and Avars. Chalae, today Bebek, is located along the west coast of the Bosporus, to the north of Constantinople. Chrysopolis, today Üsküdar, is near Chalcedon, which, in 626, was in Persian hands. It seems that the Persians did not cross the Bosporus in force because they had a weak navy; the Byzantines controlled the waters.

ambassadors who were dispatched to him by you; two of them we have beheaded in the city, while look! you have the head of the other."

On the same Lord's Day the accursed Khagan set out for Chalae and put to sea canoes which were intended to set out for the opposite side and bring the Persians to him, in accordance with their promise. When this was known, in the evening about 70 of our skiffs sailed up towards Chalae, even though the wind was against them, so as to prevent the canoes from crossing over. And towards evening the accursed Khagan retired to the vicinity of the wall, and some food and wine were sent to him from the city. Hermitzis, commander of the Avars, came to the gate, saying, "You have committed a grave deed in killing those who ate with the Khagan yesterday, and furthermore in sending him the head and the other with his hands cut off." But they said, "We are not concerned about him." In the night then, as Monday was dawning, their canoes were able to escape our watch and cross to them....[1]

... They sank them and slew all the Slavs found in the canoes.[2] And the Armenians too came out from the wall of Blachernae and threw fire into the portico which is near St. Nicholas.[3] And the Slavs who had escaped by diving from the canoes thought, because of the fire, that those positioned by the sea were Avars, and when they came out there they were slain by the Armenians. A few other Slavs who had escaped by diving, and who came out in the region where the godless Khagan was positioned, were slain at his injunction. And at God's command through the intercession of our Lady the Mother of God, in a single instant, calamity at sea came to him. Our men drove all the canoes onto the land, and after this had happened, the accursed Khagan retired to his rampart, took away from the wall the siege engines which he had set beside it and the palisade which he had constructed, and began to dismantle the siege towers which he had constructed: by night he burnt his palisade and the siege towers and the mantelets, after removing the hides, and retreated.

Some people said that the Slavs, when they saw what had happened, withdrew and retreated, and for this reason the cursed Khagan was also forced to retreat and follow them.

And this is what the godless Khagan said at the moment of the battle: "I see a woman in stately dress rushing about on the wall all alone."[4] When he was on the point of retreating, he declared, "Do not imagine that I am retreating because of fear, but because I am constrained for provisions and did not attack you at an opportune moment. I am departing to pay attention to supplies, and will return intending to do to you whatever you have accomplished against me."

On the Friday a rearguard of cavalry remained in the vicinity of the wall, setting fire to many suburbs on the same day up till hour 7; and they withdrew. They burnt both the church of Saints Cosmas and Damian at Blachernae and the church of St. Nicholas and all the surrounding areas. However, after approaching the church of our Lady the Mother of God and the Holy Reliquary, the enemy were completely unable to damage any of the things there, since God showed favor, at the intercession of his undefiled Mother. And [the Khagan] requested the most glorious *commerciarius* to converse with him,[5] and Bonus the all-praiseworthy *magister* declared this to him: "Until the present I had the power to talk and make terms with you. But now the brother of our most pious lord has arrived together with the God-protected army. And look! he is crossing over and pursuing you as far as your territory. And there you can talk with one another."[6]

---

[1] The manuscript is missing a page at this point. The Avars were so unskilled in nautical matters that they had to await the arrival of Slav canoes before attempting to slip across the Bosporus by night.

[2] The narrative picks up with a slightly later Slav naval attack along the Golden Horn. Meanwhile, the Khagan was preparing for a concerted land and sea attack.

[3] Emperor Heraclius sent the Armenians to help defend Constantinople. The Avars hoped that the appearance of the Slav flotilla would cause confusion within the city and allow them to overrun the walls. But the Byzantines had advance knowledge of the plan of attack and organized their fleet accordingly. The Slav boats were destroyed; survivors who struggled ashore near Blachernae (where they expected to find Avar besiegers) were killed by both the Byzantines and the enraged Khagan.

[4] The chronicler inserts this to confirm the divine intervention of the Virgin Mary.

[5] This was probably Theodore, who participated in an earlier embassy to the Khagan.

[6] The "brother of our most pious lord" was Theodore, brother of Heraclius.

2.2 Purifying practice: *The Quinisext Council* (691/692). Original in Greek.

As it became clear that Islam and its conquests were going to be a permanent challenge to Byzantium, Emperor Justinian II (r.685–695; 705–711) called a council of bishops to meet in Constantinople to hammer out the rules of Christian discipline. The council divided its canons (102 in all) among the three categories of persons traditional in the east: the secular clergy (e.g., bishops and priests); monks and nuns; and laypeople. Justinian meant for the council to be ecumenical and to include the pope at Rome. But the pope, Sergius I (687–701) did not attend and later refused to sign the document. Sergius objected to two canons, one permitting priests to have wives if their marriage had taken place before their ordination, the other prohibiting certain days of fasting. Later popes, however, approved the council canons, though with reservations.

The canons included here cover some lay practices and new attitudes toward icons.

1. What pastimes did the canons condemn, and why?
2. How separate do the lives of clergy and laypeople seem to have been according to the evidence of the canons?

[Source: R.H. Percival, trans., *The Canons of the Council in Trullo, often called The Quinisext Council* (https://legacy.fordham.edu/halsall/basis/trullo.asp, slightly modified and notes added.]

CANON 50.

No one at all, whether cleric or layman, is from this time forward to play at dice. And if any one hereafter shall be found doing so, if he be a cleric he is to be deposed, if a layman let him be cut off.[1]

CANON 51.

This holy and ecumenical synod altogether forbids those who are called "players [actors]," and their "spectacles," as well as the exhibition of hunts, and the theatrical dances. If anyone despises the present canon, and gives himself to any of the things which are forbidden, if he be a cleric he shall be deposed, but if a layman let him be cut off.

CANON 61.

Those who give themselves up to soothsayers [fortune-tellers] or to those who are called *hecatontarchs* or to any such, in order that they may learn from them what things they wish to have revealed to them, let all such, according to the decrees lately made by the Fathers concerning them, be subjected to the canon of six years.[2] And to this [penalty] they also should be subjected who carry about she-bears or animals of the kind for the diversion and injury of the simple; as well as those who tell fortunes and fates, and genealogy, and a multitude of words of this kind from the nonsense of deceit and imposture. Also those who are called expellers of clouds, enchanters, amulet-givers, and soothsayers.

And those who persist in these things, and do not turn away and flee from pernicious and Greek pursuits of this kind, we declare are to be thrust out of the Church, as also the sacred canons say. "For what fellowship hath light with darkness?" as the Apostle says, "or what agreement is there between the temple of God and idols? or what part hath he that believeth with an infidel? And what concord hath Christ with Belial?" [2 Cor. 6:14–16].

[1] Deposition means that the cleric is removed from office. The layman is "cut off" from communion, i.e., from the body of the faithful. No provision is offered for penance and reintegration.

[2] *Hecatontarchs* were old people, mainly women, reputed to have special knowledge. They sold medicines or amulets made of the hair of the female bears or other animals referred to in the next sentence. The "canon of six years" refers to a penance of six years.

CANON 62.
The so-called Calends [first day of the month], and what are called Bota [feasts in honor of Pan] and Brumalia [feasts in honor of Bacchus], and the full assembly which takes place on the first of March, we wish to be abolished from the life of the faithful. And also the public dances of women, which may do much harm and mischief. Moreover, we drive away from the life of Christians the dances given in the names of those falsely called gods by the Greeks whether of men or women, and which are performed after an ancient and un-Christian fashion; decreeing that no man from this time forth shall be dressed as a woman, nor any woman in the garb suitable to men. Nor shall he assume comic, satyric, or tragic masks;[1] nor may men invoke the name of the execrable Bacchus when they squeeze out the wine in the presses; nor when pouring out wine into jars, practicing in ignorance and vanity the things which proceed from the deceit of insanity. Therefore, those who in the future attempt any of these things which are written, having obtained a knowledge of them, if they be clerics we order them to be deposed, and if laymen to be cut off.

CANON 65.
The fires that are lighted on the new moons by some before their shops and houses, upon which (according to a certain ancient custom) they are wont foolishly and crazily to leap, we order henceforth to cease. Therefore, whosoever shall do such a thing, if he be a cleric, let him be deposed; but if he be a layman, let him be cut off.

For it is written in the Fourth Book of the Kings: "And Manasses built an altar to the whole host of heaven, in the two courts of the Lord, and made his sons to pass through the fire, he used lots and augurs and divinations by birds and made ventriloquists and multiplied diviners, that he might do evil before the Lord and provoke him to anger." [2 Kings 21:5–6]

CANON 66.
From the holy day of the Resurrection of Christ our God until the next Lord's day, for a whole week,[2] in the holy churches the faithful ought to be free from labor, rejoicing in Christ with psalms and hymns and spiritual songs; and celebrating the feast, and applying their minds to the reading of the holy Scriptures, and delighting in the Holy Mysteries; for thus shall we be exalted with Christ and together with him be raised up. Therefore, on the aforesaid days there must not be any horse races or any public spectacle.

CANON 71.
Those who are taught the civil laws must not adopt the customs of the Gentiles, nor be induced to go to the theatre, nor to keep what are called Cylestras,[3] nor to wear clothing contrary to the general custom; and this holds good when they begin their training, when they reach its end, and, in short, all the time of its duration. If anyone from this time shall dare to do contrary to this canon he is to be cut off.

CANON 73.
Since the life-giving cross has shown to us Salvation, we should be careful that we render due honor to that by which we were saved from the ancient fall. Wherefore, in mind, in word, in feeling giving veneration (*proskynesis*)[4] to it, we command that the figure of the cross, which some have placed on the floor, be entirely removed therefrom, lest the trophy of the victory won for us be desecrated by the trampling under foot of those who walk over it. Therefore, those who from this present represent on the pavement the sign of the cross, we decree are to be cut off.

CANON 76.
It is not right that those who are responsible for reverence to churches should place within the sacred bounds an eating place, nor offer food there, nor make other sales. For God our Savior teaching us when he was tabernacling [i.e., living] in the flesh commanded not to make his Father's house a house of merchandise. He also poured out the small coins of the money-changers, and drove out all those who made common the temple. If, therefore, anyone shall be taken in the aforesaid fault let him be cut off.

CANON 77.
It is not right that those who are dedicated to religion, whether clerics or ascetics, should wash in the bath with

[1] These were the masks worn by actors in tragedy, comedy, and satyr plays in ancient Greece. The Quinisext canons are the last extant references to these ancient practices.

[2] I.e., the whole week after Easter.

[3] Uncertain meaning.

[4] Bowing or prostrating oneself to show honor to something.

women, nor should any Christian man or layman do so. For this is severely condemned by the heathens. But if anyone is caught in this thing, if he is a cleric let him be deposed; if a layman, let him be cut off.

CANON 78.
No one may drive any beast into a church except perchance a traveler, urged there by the greatest necessity, in default of a shed or resting-place, may have turned aside into said church. For unless the beast had been taken inside, it would have perished, and he, by the loss of his beast of burden, and thus without means of continuing his journey, would be in peril of death. And we are taught that the Sabbath was made for man: wherefore also the safety and comfort of man are by all means to be placed first. But should anyone be detected without any necessity such as we have just mentioned, leading his beast into a church, if he be a cleric let him be deposed, and if a layman let him be cut off.

CANON 82.
In some pictures of the venerable icons, a lamb is painted to which the Precursor[1] points his finger, which is received as a type of grace, indicating beforehand through the Law, our true Lamb, Christ our God. Embracing therefore the ancient types and shadows as symbols of the truth, and patterns given to the Church, we prefer "grace and truth," receiving it as the fulfillment of the Law. In order therefore that "that which is perfect" may be delineated to the eyes of all, at least in colored expression, we decree that the figure in human form of the Lamb who taketh away the sin of the world, Christ our God, be henceforth exhibited in images, instead of the ancient lamb, so that all may understand by means of it the depths of the humiliation of the Word of God, and that we may recall to our memory his conversation in the flesh, his passion and salutary death, and his redemption which was wrought for the whole world.

CANON 91.
Those who give drugs for procuring abortion, and those who receive poisons to kill the fetus, are subjected to the penalty of murder.

CANON 92.
The holy synod decrees that those who in the name of marriage carry off women and those who in any way assist the ravishers, if they be clerics, they shall lose their rank, but if they be laymen they shall be anathematized.

CANON 96.
Those who by baptism have put on Christ have professed that they will copy his manner of life which he led in the flesh. Those therefore who adorn and arrange their hair to the detriment of those who see them, that is by cunningly devised intertwinings [elaborate hairstyles or wigs] and by this means put a bait in the way of unstable souls, we take in hand to cure paternally with a suitable punishment: training them and teaching them to live soberly, in order that having laid aside the deceit and vanity of material things, they may give their minds continually to a life which is blessed and free from mischief, and have their conversation in fear, pure [and holy]; and thus come as near as possible to God through their purity of life; and adorn the inner man rather than the outer, and that with virtues, and good and blameless manners, so that they leave in themselves no remains of the left-handedness of the adversary [the Devil]. But if any shall act contrary to the present canon let him be cut off.

2.3 The iconoclastic argument: *The Synod of 754*. Original in Greek.

Byzantine emperor Leo III (r.717–741) may have launched iconoclasm, but he treated icons as an abuse, not a heresy. His son, Constantine V (r.741–775), took the next step, calling a Church council in 754 to declare the veneration of icons a violation of "the fundamental doctrine of our salvation." The synod, whose proceedings survive only because they were included in the account of the later iconodule (pro-icon) synod of 787, compared

[1] John the Baptist. In John 1:29 he sees Jesus and says "Behold the Lamb of God."

"unlawful art" to the great heresies of Nestorius and Arius, who challenged the orthodox view concerning the nature of the persons of the Trinity. No representation of Christ, the iconoclastic bishops argued, could accurately portray the correct union of His two natures, man and God. The synod included no patriarch or papal representative, but it did involve over 300 bishops—a very large number.

1. Why do the bishops of the synod argue that artists who depict Christ "introduce a fourth person into the Trinity"?
2. How might you argue that iconoclasm was more popular in its day than later iconodule propaganda might suggest?

[Source: *A Select Library of Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers of the Christian Church*, 2nd ser., ed. Philip Schaff and Henry Wace, vol. 14: *The Seven Ecumenical Councils* (Grand Rapids, MI: Wm. B. Eerdmans, 1971), pp. 543–45 (slightly modified and notes added).]

The holy and Ecumenical synod, which by the grace of God and most pious command of the God-beloved and orthodox Emperors, Constantine and Leo[1] now assembled in the imperial residence city, in the temple of the holy and inviolate Mother of God and Virgin Mary, surnamed in Blachernai[2] have decreed as follows.

Satan misguided men, so that they worshiped the creature instead of the Creator. The Mosaic law and the prophets co-operated to undo this ruin; but in order to save mankind thoroughly, God sent his own Son, who turned us away from error and the worshiping of idols and taught us the worshiping of God in spirit and in truth. As messengers of his saving doctrine, he left us his Apostles and disciples, and these adorned the Church, his Bride, with his glorious doctrines. This ornament of the Church the holy Fathers and the six Ecumenical Councils have preserved inviolate. But the before-mentioned demiurgos of wickedness [i.e., Satan] could not endure the sight of this adornment and gradually brought back idolatry under the appearance of Christianity. As then Christ armed his Apostles against the ancient idolatry with the power of the Holy Spirit and sent them out into all the world, so has he awakened against the new idolatry his servants our faithful Emperors and endowed them with the same wisdom of the Holy Spirit. Impelled by the Holy Spirit they could no longer be witnesses of the Church being laid waste by the deception of demons and summoned the sanctified assembly of the God-beloved bishops, that they might institute at a synod a scriptural examination into the deceitful coloring of the pictures which draws down the spirit of man from the lofty adoration of God to the low and material adoration of the creature, and that they, under divine guidance, might express their view on the subject.

Our holy synod therefore assembled, and we, its 338 members, follow the older synodal decrees and accept and proclaim joyfully the dogmas handed down, principally those of the six holy Ecumenical Synods. In the first place the holy and ecumenical great synod assembled at Nicaea, etc.[3]

After we had carefully examined their decrees under the guidance of the Holy Spirit, we found that the unlawful art of painting living creatures blasphemed the fundamental doctrine of our salvation—namely, the Incarnation of Christ—and contradicted the six holy synods. These condemned Nestorius because he divided the one Son and Word of God into two sons, and on the other side, Arius, Dioscorus, Eutyches, and Severus, because they maintained a mingling of the two natures of the one Christ.[4]

[1] Constantine V (r.741–775); his son Leo was only four years old when the Synod of 754 met; he eventually ruled as Leo IV (r.775–780).

[2] A church at Constantinople, the shrine of the Virgin at the west end of the Theodosian Walls.

[3] A shorthand way to refer to the other synods.

[4] Nestorius, Arius, Dioscorus, Eutyches, and Severus represent the heresiarchs (the originators of the heresies) of early Christianity. Each had a different view of the nature of the persons of the Trinity.

Wherefore we thought it right to make clear with all accuracy in our present definition the error of such as make and venerate these, for it is the unanimous doctrine of all the holy Fathers and of the six Ecumenical Synods that no one may imagine any kind of separation or mingling in opposition to the unsearchable, unspeakable, and incomprehensible union of the two natures in the one hypostasis or person. What avails, then, the folly of the painter, who from sinful love of gain depicts that which should not be depicted—that is, with his polluted hands he tries to fashion that which should only be believed in the heart and confessed with the mouth? He makes an image and calls it Christ. The name *Christ* signifies *God and man*. Consequently, it is an image of God and man, and consequently he has in his foolish mind, in his representation of the created flesh, depicted the Godhead which cannot be represented and thus mingled what should not be mingled. Thus, he is guilty of a double blasphemy—the one in making an image of the Godhead and the other in mingling the Godhead and manhood. Those fall into the same blasphemy who venerate the image, and the same woe rests upon both, because they err with Arius, Dioscorus, and Eutyches, and with the heresy of the Acephali.[1] When, however, they are blamed for undertaking to depict the divine nature of Christ, which should not be depicted, they take refuge in the excuse: We represent only the flesh of Christ which we have seen and handled. But that is a Nestorian error.[2] For it should be considered that that flesh was also the flesh of God the Word, without any separation, perfectly assumed by the divine nature and made wholly divine. How could it now be separated and represented apart? So is it with the human soul of Christ which mediates between the Godhead of the Son and the dullness of the flesh. As the human flesh is at the same time flesh of God the Word, so is the human soul also soul of God the Word, and both at the same time, the soul being deified as well as the body, and the Godhead remained undivided even in the separation of the soul from the body in his voluntary passion. For where the soul of Christ is, there is also his Godhead; and where the body of Christ is, there too is his Godhead. If then in his passion the divinity remained inseparable from these, how do the fools venture to separate the flesh from the Godhead and represent it by itself as the image of a mere man? They fall into the abyss of impiety since they separate the flesh from the Godhead, ascribe to it a subsistence of its own, a personality of its own, which they depict, and thus introduce a fourth person into the Trinity. Moreover, they represent as not being made divine that which has been made divine by being assumed by the Godhead. Whoever, then, makes an image of Christ either depicts the Godhead which cannot be depicted and mingles it with the manhood (like the Monophysites),[3] or he represents the body of Christ as not made divine and separate and as a person apart, like the Nestorians.

The only admissible figure of the humanity of Christ, however, is bread and wine in the holy Supper. This and no other form, this and no other type, has he chosen to represent his incarnation. Bread he ordered to be brought, but not a representation of the human form, so that idolatry might not arise. And as the body of Christ is made divine, so also this figure of the body of Christ, the bread, is made divine by the descent of the Holy Spirit; it becomes the divine body of Christ by the mediation of the priest who, separating the oblation [offering] from that which is common, sanctifies it.

The evil custom of assigning names to the images does not come down from Christ and the Apostles and the holy Fathers; nor have these left behind them any prayer by which an image should be hallowed or made anything else than ordinary matter.

If, however, some say we might be right in regard to the images of Christ on account of the mysterious union of the two natures, but it is not right for us to forbid also the images of the altogether spotless and ever-glorious Mother of God, or of the prophets, apostles, and martyrs, who were mere men and did not consist of two natures; we may reply, first of all: If those fall away, there is no longer need of these. But we will also consider what may be said against these in particular. Christianity has rejected the *whole* of heathenism, and so not merely heathen sacrifices, but also the heathen worship of images. The Saints live on eternally with God, although they have died. If anyone thinks to call them back again to life by a dead art, discovered by the heathen, he makes himself guilty of blasphemy. Who dares attempt with heathenish art to paint the Mother of God, who is exalted above all heavens and the Saints? It is not permitted to Christians, who have

[1] The Acephali was another name for the followers of Eutyches.

[2] The "error of Nestorius" was to stress the independence of the two natures—divine and human—of Christ.

[3] The Monophysites, like the followers of Eutyches, rejected both the Orthodox assertion of the hypostatic (or "underlying") union of the "two natures" of Christ and the Nestorian assertion of a union that was not hypostatic but rather accidental.

the hope of the resurrection, to imitate the customs of demon-worshipers and to insult the Saints, who shine in so great glory, by common dead matter....

Supported by the Holy Scriptures and the Fathers, we declare unanimously, in the name of the Holy Trinity, that there shall be rejected and removed and cursed out of the Christian Church every likeness which is made out of any material and color whatever by the evil art of painters.

Whoever in future dares to make such a thing, or to venerate it, or set it up in a church, or in a private house, or possesses it in secret, shall, if bishop, presbyter, or deacon, be deposed; if monk or layman, be anathematized[1] and become liable to be tried by the secular laws as an adversary of God and an enemy of the doctrines handed down by the Fathers. At the same time, we ordain that no incumbent of a church shall venture, under pretext of destroying the error in regard to images, to lay his hands on the holy vessels in order to have them altered because they are adorned with figures. The same is provided in regard to the vestments of churches, cloths, and all that is dedicated to divine service. If, however, the incumbent of a church wishes to have such church vessels and vestments altered, he must do this only with the assent of the holy Ecumenical patriarch and at the bidding of our pious Emperors. So also no prince or secular official shall rob the churches, as some have done in former times, under the pretext of destroying images. All this we ordain, believing that we speak as does the Apostle, for we also believe that we have the spirit of Christ; and as our predecessors who believed the same thing spoke what they had synodically defined, so we believe and therefore do we speak and set forth a definition of what has seemed good to us following and in accordance with the definitions of our Fathers.

(1) If anyone shall not confess, according to the tradition of the Apostles and Fathers, in the Father, the Son and the Holy Ghost one godhead, nature and substance, will and operation, virtue and dominion, kingdom and power in three subsistences, that is in their most glorious Persons, let him be anathema.[2]

(2) If anyone does not confess that one of the Trinity was made flesh, let him be anathema.

(3) If anyone does not confess that the holy Virgin is truly the Mother of God, etc.

(4) If anyone does not confess one Christ both God and man, etc.

(5) If anyone does not confess that the flesh of the Lord is life-giving because it is the flesh of the Word of God, etc.

(6) If anyone does not confess two natures in Christ, etc.

(7) If anyone does not confess that Christ is seated with God the Father in body and soul, and so will come to judge, and that he will remain God forever without any grossness, etc.

(8) If anyone ventures to represent the divine image of the Word after the Incarnation with material colors, let him be anathema!

(9) If anyone ventures to represent in human figures by means of material colors by reason of the incarnation, the substance or person of the Word, which cannot be depicted, and does not rather confess that even after the Incarnation he [i.e., the Word] cannot be depicted, let him be anathema!

(10) If anyone ventures to represent the hypostatic union of the two natures in a picture and calls it Christ and thus falsely represents a union of the two natures, etc.

(11) If anyone separates the flesh united with the person of the Word from it and endeavors to represent it separately in a picture, etc.

(12) If anyone separates the one Christ into two persons and endeavors to represent Him who was born of the Virgin separately and thus accepts only a relative union of the natures, etc.

(13) If anyone represents in a picture the flesh deified by its union with the Word, and thus separates it from the Godhead, etc.

(14) If anyone endeavors to represent by material colors God the Word as a mere man, who, although bearing the form of God, yet has assumed the form of a servant in his own person, and thus endeavors to separate him from his inseparable Godhead so that he thereby introduces a quaternity into the Holy Trinity, etc.

(15) If anyone shall not confess the holy ever-virgin Mary, truly and properly the Mother of God, to be higher than every creature whether visible or invisible and does not with sincere faith seek her intercessions as of one having confidence in her access to our God, since she bore him, etc.

(16) If anyone shall endeavor to represent the forms of the Saints in lifeless pictures with material colors which are of no value (for this notion is vain and introduced by

[1] I.e., excommunicated from the Church.

[2] I.e., excommunicated from the Church.

the devil) and does not rather represent their virtues as living images in himself, etc.

(17) If anyone denies the profit of the invocation of Saints, etc.

(18) If anyone denies the resurrection of the dead and the judgment and the condign [appropriate] retribution to everyone, endless torment and endless bliss, etc.

(19) If anyone does not accept this our Holy and Ecumenical Seventh Synod, let him be anathema from the Father and the Son and the Holy Ghost and from the seven holy Ecumenical Synods!

[At this point the making or teaching of any other faith is prohibited, and the penalties for disobedience are enumerated.]

The divine Kings Constantine and Leo said: Let the holy and ecumenical synod say, if with the consent of all the most holy bishops the definition just read has been set forth.

The holy synod cried out: Thus we all believe, we all are of the same mind. We have all with one voice and voluntarily subscribed. This is the faith of the Apostles. Many years to the Emperors! They are the light of orthodoxy! Many years to the orthodox Emperors! God preserve your Empire! You have now more firmly proclaimed the inseparability of the two natures of Christ! You have banished all idolatry! You have destroyed the heresies of Germanus [of Constantinople], George and Mansur.[1] Anathema to Germanus, the double-minded, and worshiper of wood! Anathema to George, his associate, to the falsifier of the doctrine of the Fathers! Anathema to Mansur, who has an evil name and Saracen[2] opinions! To the betrayer of Christ and the enemy of the Empire, to the teacher of impiety, the perverter of Scripture, Mansur, anathema! The Trinity has deposed these three!

THE FORMATION OF THE ISLAMIC WORLD

2.4 The sacred text: *Qur'an Suras* 1, 53:1–18, 81, 87, 96, 98 (*c.*610–622). Original in Arabic.

Muhammad (*c.*570–632), born in Mecca, orphaned, raised by an uncle, married to Khadija, heard (*c.*610) what he understood to be revelations from God. He recited them (Qur'an means "recitation"), scribes wrote them down, and they became the foundation of a new religion, Islam. New research suggests that somewhat variant editions of Qur'an may have been compiled as early as during Muhammad's lifetime. It begins with a prayer (the *fatihah*, or "Opening"), followed by chapters (suras) that gradually diminish in length. While different from the odes of the pre-Islamic period, the verses of the Qur'an are poetry, and they often take up the traditional themes: remembrance of the beloved (who is now God), a journey (turned into a spiritual quest), and a boast (a celebration of God's generosity and justice). The earliest suras generally are found toward the end of the book. Muhammad's first vision is described in Sura 53, "The Star"; his first auditory revelation was probably "Recite in the name of your lord who created...," which is found in Sura 96, "The Embryo." Other suras come from the period after Muhammad made the *hijra*, or emigration, to Medina (622; the year 1 in the Islamic calendar). Most of those presented here are from Muhammad's earliest Meccan period. Note that there is relatively little punctuation (mirroring the Arabic); this is the translator's way of suggesting the open and multiple meanings of the verses.

[1] Germanus I (r.715–730) was the Patriarch of Constantinople. He opposed iconoclasm and was sent into exile. Mansur ("Victorious") was the Arabic surname of John of Damascus, a Syrian monk and saint, who also opposed iconoclasm.

[2] I.e., Arab.

1. What are the characteristics of God as they emerge from these texts?
2. What is the proper attitude and behavior of the believer?

[Source: *Approaching the Qur'an: The Early Revelations*, trans. Michael Sells (Ashland, OR: White Cloud Press, 1999), pp. 42, 44, 48, 50, 72, 96, 104, 106.]

1: The Opening

In the name of God
the Compassionate the Caring
Praise be to God
lord sustainer of the worlds
the Compassionate the Caring
master of the day of reckoning
To you we turn to worship
and to you we turn in time of need
Guide us along the road straight
the road of those to whom you are giving
not those with anger upon them
not those who have lost the way

53: 1–18 The Star

In the Name of God the Compassionate the Caring
By the star as it falls
Your companion[1] has not lost his way nor is he deluded
He does not speak out of desire
This is a revelation
taught him by one of great power
and strength that stretched out over
while on the highest horizon—
then drew near and came down
two bows' lengths or nearer
He revealed to his servant what he revealed
The heart did not lie in what it saw
Will you then dispute with him his vision?
He saw it descending another time
at the lote tree of the furthest limit
There was the garden of sanctuary
when something came down over the lote tree, enfolding
His gaze did not turn aside nor go too far
He had seen the signs of his lord, great signs

81: The Overturning

In the Name of God the Compassionate the Caring
When the sun is overturned
When the stars fall away
When the mountains are moved
When the ten-month pregnant camels are abandoned
When the beasts of the wild are herded together
When the seas are boiled over
When the souls are coupled
When the girl-child buried alive
is asked what she did to deserve murder
When the pages are folded out
When the sky is flayed open
When Jahim[2] is set ablaze
When the garden is brought near
Then a soul will know what it has prepared
I swear by the stars that slide,
stars streaming, stars that sweep along the sky
By the night as it slips away
By the morning when the fragrant air breathes
This is the word of a messenger ennobled,
empowered, ordained before the lord of the throne,
holding sway there, keeping trust
Your friend[3] has not gone mad
He saw him on the horizon clear
He does not hoard for himself the unseen
This is not the word of a satan struck with stones
Where are you going?
This is a reminder to all beings
For those who wish to walk straight

[1] "Your companion" is ordinarily interpreted as referring to Muhammad.

[2] A term for the Day of Reckoning.

[3] "Your friend" refers to Muhammad.

Your only will is the will of God
lord of all beings

87: The Most High

In the Name of God the Compassionate the Caring
Holy be the name of your lord most high
Who created then gave form
Who determined then gave guidance
Who made the meadow pasture grow
then turned it to a darkened flood-swept remnant

We will make you recite. You will not forget
except what the will of God allows
He knows what is declared
and what lies hidden
He will ease you to the life of ease
So remind them if reminder will succeed[1]
Those who know awe will be brought to remember
He who is hard in wrong will turn away
He will be put to the fire
neither dying in it nor living
He who makes himself pure will flourish
who remembers the name of his lord and
performs the prayer

But no. They prefer the lower life
Better is the life ultimate, the life that endures
As is set down in the scrolls of the ancients
the scrolls of Ibrahim and Musa[2]

96: The Embryo

In the Name of God the Compassionate the Caring
Recite in the name of your lord who created—
From an embryo created the human
Recite your lord is all-giving
who taught by the pen
Taught the human what he did not know before

The human being is a tyrant
He thinks his possessions make him secure
To your lord is the return of every thing

Did you see the one who stopped a servant
from performing his prayer?
Did you see if he was rightly guided
or commanded mindfulness?
Did you see him call lie and turn away?
Did he not know God could see?

But no. If he does not change
we will seize him by the forelock
the lying, wrongful forelock
Let him call out his gang
We will call out the Zabaniya[3]
Do not follow him
Touch your head to the earth in prayer
Come near

98: The Testament[4]

In the Name of God the Compassionate the Caring
Those who denied the faith—
from the peoples of the book
or the idolaters—
could not stop calling it a lie
until they received the testament

A messenger of God
reciting pages that are pure
Of scriptures that are sure

Those who were given the book
were not divided one against the other
until they received the testament

And all they were commanded
was to worship God sincerely
affirm oneness, perform the prayer

[1] Muhammad is to "remind" people about God and justice. There is no notion of "original sin" in Islam, but people "forget" the purpose of human life and the Day of Reckoning.

[2] Ibrahim is Abraham in the Bible; Musa is Moses.

[3] The Zabaniya are probably a species of *jinn*, half-spirit creatures.

[4] This sura is from a later period in Muhammad's career, after he experienced the rejection of not only polytheists but also the "peoples of the book"—Christians and Jews—he had expected to join him.

and give a share of what they have
That is the religion of the sure

Those who deny the faith—
from the peoples of the book
or the idolaters—
are in Jahannam's fire,[1]
eternal there
They are the worst of creation

Those who keep the faith
and perform the prayer
they are the best of creation
As recompense for them with their lord—
gardens of Eden
waters flowing underground
eternal there forever
God be pleased in them
and they in God

That is for those who hold their lord in awe

2.5 Muslim conquests: John of Nikiu, *Chronicle* (*c*.690). Original in Ethiopic.

Probably by "John bishop of Nikiu," who is otherwise known to have been active at the end of the seventh century, this universal chronicle has 123 chapters. Starting with creation, it ends with the Muslim conquest of Egypt, which had previously been under Byzantine rule. John of Nikiu was an adherent of the patriarch of Alexandria, whose brand of Christianity ("Miaphysite" or "Monophysite," later known as Coptic) deviated from the form (called "Chalcedonian") practiced at Constantinople. The *Chronicle* presents numerous problems of interpretation. It survives only in a seventeenth-century Ethiopic translation of an Arabic paraphrase of a Coptic original, and this original in turn depended on various Greek sources, and included various Greek loanwords. The process of transmission has therefore introduced many confusions, omissions, and mistakes. It is evident, for example, that the Arabic translator has misunderstood various words or phrases in Coptic, and that some words (in particular proper nouns) have been transcribed incorrectly or incompletely from Coptic into Arabic and/or Arabic into Ethiopic. Various details, therefore, remain uncertain. But the *Chronicle* is nevertheless our earliest, most reliable, and most important witness to the Muslim conquest of Egypt (640–642).

The identifiable places mentioned in the *Chronicle* are on Map 2.2 below.

1. What evidence can you cite for individuals and groups living in Egypt who supported the Islamic conquest, and what might have been their reasons?
2. What, for John of Nikiu, are the most important causes of the Muslim conquest?

[Source: H. Zotenberg, *Chronique de Jean, évêque de Nikiou, texte éthiopien publié et traduit* (Paris, 1883), 197–214. Introduced and translated by Phil Booth.]

[1] The fire of eternal punishment.

Map 2.2 The Muslim Conquest of Egypt

Chapter 111[1]

Now Theodore was head of the leading generals of Egypt. When the messengers of Theodosius the dux [Byzantine military leader] of Arcadia informed him of the death of John, head of the forces,[2] he thereafter turned back with all the men of Egypt and the troops who were helping him, and he went to Loqyun, which is an island.[3] He feared the rebellion of the people of that region, lest the Muslims come and seize the riverbank at Lukyun, and cause the congregation of God's servants who were loyal to the Roman [i.e., Byzantine] empire to depart. And his grief was greater than the grief of David over Saul, when he said, "How the mighty have fallen, and the weapon of war perished!"[4] For not only had John head of the forces died, but also John the general from the city of Maros[5] was killed in battle, and the fifty troops who were with him. I will acquaint you in brief with what happened to the leading men of the Fayyum.

For John and the troops who were with him, the forces whom we mentioned before, were appointed by the Romans to watch over the region. They then stationed another guard near the rock of the city of Lahun[6] in order that they stand on permanent guard and report to the leader of the forces the movements of their enemies. After that they prepared a few horses and an assembly of troops and archers and they went for battle with the Muslims, thinking that they might hold them back. But thereafter the Muslims went into the desert and seized many sheep and goats from the mountains, and indeed the men of Egypt were unaware of it. When they arrived at the city of Bahnasa,[7] all the troops who were on the riverbank came with John. And they were not able to come at that time to the region of Fayyum.

Indeed Theodosius the general heard of the arrival of the Ishmaelites [Muslims]. He began to go from place to place in order to see what might happen at the hands of those enemies. But the same Ishmaelites came and killed without pity the leader of the troops and all those who were with him. Immediately they took the region by assault and killed everyone who came out to them, and they did not spare anyone, not the old, not the young, not women. Then they came against the general John. He seized every horse and they hid themselves in the farms and plantations lest their enemies become aware of them. During the night they rose up and came to the great river of Egypt near 'Abuyet,[8] in order that they might be safe. For this was the will of God. But the robber chief who was with Jeremias[9] informed the Muslim troops about

[1] The table of contents summarizes this chapter thus: "Concerning the appearance of the Muslims at the edge of the Fayyum and the defeat of the Romans who were living there."

[2] John was perhaps the otherwise attested North African general, John of Barca.

[3] The location is not clear.

[4] 2 Sam. 1:27.

[5] Perhaps a town to the south of Hermopolis.

[6] An ancient irrigation work at the mouth of the Fayyum.

[7] Bahnasa is the Greek Oxyrhynchus.

[8] To the northeast of the Fayyum (and later called "Boyt").

[9] Otherwise unknown.

the Roman men who were hidden, and they seized them and put them to death.

This news came to the ears of the official Theodosius and Anastasius. These two were far from the city of Nikiu at a distance of twelve miles. Immediately they went to the citadel of Babylon [Old Cairo] and remained there, and sent the official Domentianus to the city of ʾAbuyet. This man was obese, powerless and ignorant in matters of war. When he arrived he found the troops of Egypt and Theodore fighting the Muslims, and continually coming from the region of Fayyum in order that they might take the region. He took half of the troops and they went to Babylon in order to inform the lords,[1] and the other half of the troops remained with Theodore.

Theodore sought with great diligence for the body of John who had been drowned in the river. With much grief he fetched it with a net, placed it in a coffin and sent it to the lords. The lords for their part sent it to [Byzantine emperor] Heraclius. Those were present in Egypt sought shelter in the citadel of Babylon, and furthermore they were awaiting Theodore the general in order that they might join in the killing of the Ishmaelites before the rise of the water of the river, and the arrival of the time for sowing, when they would not be able to do battle lest their seeds perish and they die through famine with their children and livestock.

Chapter 112[2]

On account of the accusation of the emperor[3] there was much indignation between the leader Theodore and the lords. Theodosius and Anastasius both went out to the city of ʾAwn,[4] on horseback with a large number of infantry in order that they might do battle with ʾAmr b. al-ʾAs.[5] The Muslims did not know the region of Misr before now.[6] They left alone the fortified cities and came to the place which is called Tendunyas,[7] and went in ships on the [Nile] river. ʾAmr with great diligence and with strong mind began to seize the region of Misr. He became distressed of heart concerning his separation from the Muslim troops, and they were separated into two divisions, one division to the east of the river, and one division to the west of the river, and they went to the city which is called ʾAynshems, that is, ʾAwn, which is on top of a mountain.

ʾAmr b. al-ʾAs sent a letter to ʾUmar b. al-Khattab[8] in the region of Palestine in which he said, "If you do not send me reinforcement from the Muslims I will not be able to take Egypt." And he sent to him 4,000 Muslim warriors; and the name of their general was Walwarya, and he was of barbarian descent. He divided the warriors who were with him into three divisions: one of the divisions he established at Tendunyas; the second division he established to the north of Babylon of Egypt; and he for his part made preparations with one division at the city of ʾAwn. He ordered them thus and said, "Watch out, and if the Roman army come out to kill us, you rise up behind them, and we moreover will be in front of them, and we will bring them between us and kill them." When the Roman troops in ignorance came from the citadel to fight the Muslims, thereafter these Muslims came from behind them as they had planned, and there was a great battle between them. When the Muslim numbers increased against them the Roman troops fled and went in ships. The Muslim soldiers seized the city of Tendunyas. For the forces which were within it were destroyed, and did not survive except a force of 300. These for their part fled and entered into the fortress and shut the gate against them. When they saw the great battle which was happening, they were afraid and fled in ships to Nikiu in much sadness and grief.

Then Domentianus of the city of Fayyum rose up at night without telling the people of Boyt[9] that he was fleeing from the Muslims. They went in a ship to Nikiu.

---

[1] I.e., Theodosius and Anastasius.

[2] The table of contents summarizes thus: "Concerning the first battle of ʾAmr with the Romans at the city of ʾAwn."

[3] One presumes that the accusation was the failure to mount an effective counter-campaign against the Muslims.

[4] The Greek Heliopolis, or Arabic ʿAin-Shams, near the apex of the Delta.

[5] The famous Arab conqueror of Egypt.

[6] Here "region of Misr" must mean not "region of Egypt" as elsewhere (*misr* being the Arabic for Egypt) but rather, from John's later perspective, the area around the Arab capital at Fustat (also called *misr* in Arabic, perhaps after the word for "garrison town").

[7] Perhaps identical with the Umm Dunayn of the Arabic historiographical tradition. It must have been near Heliopolis.

[8] I.e., the second caliph.

[9] See above, p. 70, n. 8.

When the Muslims learnt that Domentianus had fled they went in joy and seized the region of the Fayyum and of Boyt, and they spilled much blood there.

Chapter 113[1]

Indeed when the Muslims seized the Fayyum with all its environs 'Amr sent to Apa Cyrus of the city of Delas[2] in order that they might bring the ships of Rif[3] in order that they might bring the Ishmaelites who were present on the west of the river across to the east. He gathered all the troops to him in order to wage a great battle. He sent a letter to the official George[4] in order that he might make for him a bridge near the river of the city of Qalyub,[5] in order that he might capture all of the cities of Egypt and also, moreover, the city of 'Atrib and of Kyrdis.[6] And they undertook to help the Muslims. They seized the cities of 'Atrib and Manuf[7] and all of their environs. Moreover he made a great bridge over the river near Babylon[8] lest the ships pass through to Nikiu and Alexandria and Upper Egypt and in order that horses might cross without effort from the west of the river to the east. They subdued the entire region of Misr.

But 'Amr was not satisfied with what he ['Amr] had done, and seized the Roman officials and bound their hands and feet with fetters of iron and wood. He forcibly pillaged much property and he doubled the taxes on the labourers and compelled them to carry their horses' food. He perpetrated many innumerable evils.

Those who were present in the city of Nikiu amongst the lords[9] fled and went to the city of Alexandria, and they left Domentianus with a small force in order that they might protect the city. Furthermore they sent to Dars,[10] head of the generals of the city of Samnud, in order that he might protect the region of the two rivers.[11] Thereafter there was fear in all the cities of Misr. All the men of the region began to flee and enter into the city of Alexandria, and they cast aside all of their properties, treasuries and livestock.

Chapter 114[12]

When those Muslims came with those Egyptians who had renounced the Christian faith and joined the faith of the beast, the Muslims seized all the properties of those Christians who had fled, and they began to call the servants of God the enemies of God. 'Amr for his part left many of his companions at the citadel of Babylon of Egypt and he himself went eastwards to Theodore the general, in the direction of the two rivers. He sent Yaqbari and Satfari[13] in order to capture the city of Samnud and give battle with the Muslims.[14] When they reached the assembly of partisans, all the partisans refused to fight the Muslims. Indeed they joined battle and killed many

---

[1] The table of contents summarizes thus: "How the Jews all gathered in the city of Manuf through fear of Islam and the annoyance of 'Amr and the seizure of their properties, until they left open the gate of Misr and fled to Alexandria; and how oppressors multiplied at the beginning of oppression, and began to help him in the destruction of the men of Egypt."

[2] The Greek Nilopolis in central Egypt. Apa Cyrus is perhaps the same as the Apa Cyrus who was a Roman official at Herakleopolis Magna and who appears in Greek and Arabic documents from the earliest period of occupation.

[3] In the *Chronicle* this designates Upper Egypt.

[4] Otherwise unknown.

[5] To the northwest of Cairo.

[6] 'Atrib is the Greek Athribis; Kyrdis is the Arabic Busir Quredis/Abusir al-Malaq. These towns were situated to the north and south of Cairo.

[7] The Greek Onouphis Ano in the southern Delta.

[8] Not the Babylon of Mesopotamia but rather a town and fortress now part of Cairo.

[9] See above, p. 71, n. 1.

[10] The original name of this person is not clear.

[11] "The region of the two rivers"—used throughout the *Chronicle* to describe the river-locked area around Samnud, the Greek Sebennytos in the central Delta.

[12] The table of contents summarizes thus: "How the men of Samnud so despised 'Amr as not to receive him, and the return of Kaladji to the Romans. And how they seized his mother and wife and concealed them in Alexandria, because he had participated in helping Islam."

[13] The names are corrupted.

[14] Perhaps the text here is corrupted. It is hard to see why 'Amr would want to battle Muslims.

of the Muslims who were with them. The Muslims were not able to perpetrate evil against the cities which were in the two rivers since the water was a wall for them, and the horses were not able to enter it on account of the great waters which were surrounding them.

They [the Muslims] abandoned them [the Romans in the Delta] and went to the region of Rif and came to the city of Budir.[1] They fortified the city and the roads which they had earlier seized. At that time Theodore the general came to Kaladji[2] and petitioned him and said, "Return to us, return to the Romans." Kaladji for his part gave Theodore much money, fearing that they might kill his mother and wife, for they had been hidden in Alexandria. And Theodore the general prevailed over the mind of Kaladji. The latter rose up in the night while the Muslims were asleep, and he went on foot with his companions and reached Theodore the general, and from there he went to the city of Nikiu and joined with Domentianus to do battle with the Muslims. Thereafter Sebendis[3] devised a virtuous plan and fled from the hands of the Muslims during the night. He came to the city of Damietta to John the official, and the latter then sent him to the city of Alexandria with a letter confessing his sin before the lords with many tears in which he said, "This act I have committed because of the slap in the face and the disgrace which I experienced at the hands of John, without shame for my old age. It was for this reason that I joined with Islam. Indeed previously I had led a very quiet life with the Romans."

Chapter 115[4]

Indeed 'Amr leader of the Muslims spent twelve months warring against the Christians who were present in the north of Egypt, but he was not able to take their region. In the fifteenth year of the cycle when it was summer he went to the city of Saka[5] and Nuhu Dumsay,[6] being impatient to kill the Egyptians before the water of the river overflowed.[7] But he was not able to do them any evil. At the city of Damietta, moreover, they did not receive him, and he wanted to burn their plantations with fire. But marching back to his troops who were present at the citadel of Babylon in Egypt, he gave them all the plunder which he had taken from the region of Alexandria. He destroyed the houses of the Alexandrians who had fled, and he took their timbers and iron, and ordered them to construct a road from the citadel of Babylon until they reached that region of the two rivers in order that they might burn the same region with fire. When the people of that region heard this they took their possessions and fled, and left their region a desert. Indeed the Muslims burnt that region. But the people of that region came in the night and extinguished the fire. The Muslims then went to the two cities[8] in order to wage war on them, and they plundered the property of the Egyptians and perpetrated evil against them. The general Theodore and Domentianus were not able to perpetrate evil with the men of the region on account of the Muslims who were between them.

Indeed 'Amr abandoned the coastal region of Egypt and went to Rif in order to wage war on them; and he sent a few Muslims to the city of Antinoe. When the Muslims saw the Romans' weakness and their hatred towards the Emperor Heraclius on account of the persecution which visited upon all of the region of Egypt on account of the orthodox faith, through Cyrus the Chalcedonian patriarch [of Alexandria], they took heart and were strengthened in war. The men of the city took counsel with John their dux in order to wage war upon the Muslims. But he refused and rose up suddenly with his troops and gathered all the tax revenue from the city and went to the city of Alexandria. For he knew that he would not be able to overcome the Muslims, and feared lest the same fate befall him as befell the people of Fayyum. For all the people of the region were subject to the Muslims and paid them taxes. All the Roman troops whom they

---

[1] This designates Busir in Upper Egypt.

[2] Otherwise unidentified. Probably the Coptic name Koloje.

[3] Perhaps an original "Senouthios" or "Senouthes." Otherwise unknown.

[4] The table of contents summarizes thus: "How the Muslims seized Misr in the fourteenth year of the cycle; and in the fifteenth year they seized the fortress of Babylon." The cycle referred to here seems to be Alexandrian lunar cycle. The fifteenth year thus began in April 641.

[5] The Greek Xois in the central Delta.

[6] Perhaps a corrupted combination of the Arabic names for Greek Leontopolis and Damsis, both in the central Delta.

[7] The flood of the Nile began in June.

[8] One suspects a mistake for "rivers."

encountered they killed. The Roman troops were in a citadel. The Muslims besieged them and took their siege engines and destroyed their towers and expelled them from the citadel.[1] They fortified the citadel of Babylon and took the city of Nikiu and were established in it.

Chapter 116[2]

Heraclius was grieved of heart concerning the death of John head of the forces and John the official, whom the Muslims killed, and concerning the defeat of the Romans who were present in the region of Misr. Through the will of God who rules over the souls, officials and armies of kings, Heraclius fell ill with a fever and died in the thirty-first year of his reign, in the month of Yakatit of the Egyptians, and in the months of the Romans February, in the fourteenth year of the lunar cycle, the 357th year of Diocletian.[3]

But people began to say, "Truly, the death of Heraclius has happened because of the striking of gold coins with the image of three emperors, that is, one image of him and two of his sons, one to his right and one to his left, and they did not find a place where they might write the name of the Roman empire." After the death of Heraclius those three images were removed.

When Heraclius the Elder died, Cyrus, the patriarch of Constantinople,[4] disregarded his sister Martina[5] and her children, and he appointed Constantine who was born of the Empress Eudocia[6] and established him as head of the empire after his father. And the two kings were settled with honour and glory. But David and Martin[7] arrested Cyrus the Roman Chalcedonian patriarch and exiled him to an island in the west of the region of Africa without anyone knowing what had been done.

It happened as Severus the Great, patriarch of Antioch, wrote to the patrician Caesarea, saying, "No son of a Roman emperor will sit upon the throne of his father while the Chalcedonian sect has power in the world."[8]

Constantine the son of Heraclius after he became emperor gathered together a large number of ships and entrusted them to Kiryos and to Salakeryos,[9] and sent them to the patriarch Cyrus in order that they might bring him to him and he might take counsel with him and give tribute to the Muslims—if he were able to fight or not[10]—and he might meet him in the imperial city during the Feast of the Holy Resurrection, and all the people of Constantinople would join with him and perform this act. Thereupon he sent to Anastasius that he should come to him and leave Theodore to protect Alexandria and the cities which were situated on the coastline. He promised Theodore that he would send to him to him in the summer a large force of soldiers so that they might fight the Muslims. But when at the emperor's command they prepared the ships for setting out, the emperor Constantine then fell ill, and contracted a serious illness, and vomited blood from his mouth. When there was no more of that blood he then died. He remained in this illness for one hundred days, that is, his entire reign, he who became emperor after his father Heraclius.[11] People began to mock the emperor Heraclius and his son Constantine.

Men of the Gaianites[12] for their part gathered in their church in the city of Dafasher, near the bridge of the

---

[1] For siege engines, see "Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages," in "Reading through Looking," pp. XII–XIV.

[2] The table of contents summarizes thus: "On the death of the emperor Heraclius and the return of Cyrus the patriarch from exile, and his coming to Misr in order to give tribute to the Muslims."

[3] The synchronism is precise for February 641. Scholars disagree as to whether Heraclius died on the 11th January or the 11th February, 641.

[4] The text should here read "Pyrrhus, the patriarch of Constantinople."

[5] Martina was the niece of Heraclius, not his sister, and his second wife.

[6] I.e., Heraclius Constantine/Constantine III, son of Heraclius's first wife, Eudocia.

[7] The young Caesars, sons of Heraclius and Martina.

[8] The passage appears in an extant letter by Severus of Antioch (d.538). A branch of the Miaphysite form of Christianity was sometimes called Severan.

[9] Perhaps a corruption of "Philagrius the Sakellarios," a high-ranking official at Heraclius's court.

[10] The meaning of the text is here obscure.

[11] Since the *Chronicle* places Heraclius's death in February it therefore places Constantine III's death in May or June. Most scholars place the emperor's death in April.

[12] The Gaianites are a sect named after the anti-Chaledonian counter-patriarch Gaianus, who held the Alexandrian see for a brief period in 565.

apostle St Peter.[1] Cyrus the patriarch had despoiled much of the church's wealth during the time of persecution,[2] without the order of officials. But when the men of the Gaianites wished to raise their hands again Cyrus the patriarch, at that time Eudocianus the brother of the dux Domentianus sent troops against them in order to shoot them with arrows, and prevent them for carrying out their purpose. There were some amongst them whom they beat to death, and others whose hands they cut off, without legal sanction. A herald began to cry out in the city saying, "Let every man amongst you go to his church, and let no one do evil against another illegally."

But God who preserves justice did not forsake the world, and exacted vengeance on the oppressors. He did not pity them, for they had acted treacherously against him, and he delivered them into the hands of the Ishmaelites. Thereupon the Muslims rose up and captured the entire region of Misr. After Heraclius died and at the return of Cyrus, he did not abandon the defeat and persecution of the people of God, but began to heap evil upon evil.

Chapter 117[3]

'Amr the head of the Muslim troops remained outside the citadel of Babylon and besieged the troops who were present inside it. Those same men received word from him that he would not kill them, and they for their part that they would leave for him all the instruments of war, for they were much tormented. Thereupon he ordered them to depart from the citadel. They took a small amount of gold and went. At this the Muslims seized the citadel of Babylon in Egypt on the second day after the Resurrection.[4] God punished them because they did not honor the life-giving passion of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, who gives life to all those who believe in him. Because of this God delivered them before them.

On the same day of the Feast of the Holy Resurrection, some orthodox prisoners were released. But those enemies of Christ did not leave them without evil, but beat them and cut off their hands. They began to weep, and tears flowed upon their cheeks on that day, and they [the orthodox] reviled them [the heretics].[5] [...][6]

Chapter 118[7]

When the Muslims seized the fortress of Babylon and also Nikiu, there was great sadness amongst the Romans. When 'Amr concluded the business of war he entered into the fortress of Babylon and prepared many ships, great and small, and tied them up at the fortress which he was in.

For his part, Menas, who became head of the Greens, and Cosmas, son of Samuel who was commander of the Blues,[8] besieged the city of Misr and tormented the Romans in the time of the Muslims.

Warriors embarked on ships to the west of the river in pride and pomp and they set out during the night. Indeed 'Amr and an army of Muslims on horseback went by land until they reached the region of Keberyas of 'Abadya.[9] For this reason they waged war against the general Domentianus. When he understood that the Muslim army were approaching his position he climbed into a ship and fled on the ship and abandoned the troops with their ships. He wanted to pass over into a small canal which Heraclius had dug during his reign. But when he discovered that it had been closed off he went and entered the city

---

[1] Dafasher was near Alexandria.

[2] Later Coptic texts also remember the 630s, under the Chalcedonian patriarch Cyrus, as a time of persecution.

[3] The table of contents summarizes thus: "How God delivered the Romans into the hands of the Muslims on account of their division and schism, and the persecution which they visited upon the Christians of Egypt."

[4] I.e., April 10, 641.

[5] In chapter 119 below we discover that the "enemies of Christ" here described were Chalcedonians, and not the Muslims.

[6] I omit an extended quotation, from an unidentified source, comparing its unnamed targets (namely, the Chalcedonians) to pagans, barbarians, and Arians, and bemoaning their persecution.

[7] The table of contents summarizes thus: "How 'Amr subdued 'Abshadi, that is, Nikiu, and the flight of Domentianus the general and the death of his troops in the waters. And the great massacre which occurred in the city of Nikiu, and in all the remaining cities, until 'Amr came to the city of Sawna, which is under the rule of Nikiu and its island, on the 18th of the month of Genbot, in the fifteenth year of the cycle."

[8] These "Greens" and "Blues" refer in the first place to the two "sides" in Byzantine games and entertainments at the hippodrome, but they were also often involved in political conflicts.

[9] Unidentified.

of Alexandria. When the troops saw that their general had fled they abandoned their weapons and entered into the river before their enemies. Then the Muslim troops slew them with the sword in the river, and none survived except one man alone, whose name was Zacharias, who was a champion and a warrior. When the men on the ships saw the flight of the troops they too fled and entered their city. Thereupon the Muslims entered into Nikiu and seized it, and did not encounter any warriors. They began to kill everyone whom they encountered in the street and the churches—men, women and children—and they did not have mercy on anyone.

After they seized the city they went to other places and they pillaged and killed everyone whom they found. They came to the city of Da'[1] and they found 'Esqutaws[2] and those with him, who were in a vineyard, and thereupon the Muslims seized and killed them. They were from the family of Theodore the official.

Let us now be silent, for it is not possible to relate the evils which the Muslims perpetrated when they captured the island of Nikiu on Sunday the 18th of the month of Genbot in the fifteenth year of the cycle,[3] and furthermore the evil which occurred in the city of Caesarea in Palestine.

Theodore the general, commander of the city of Kilunas,[4] left that city and went to Egypt, and left Stephen with the troops who were protecting the city, and they did battle with the Muslims. There was a Jew with the Muslims and he went to the region of Egypt. But with much blood and toil they destroyed the wall of the city and immediately seized it, and killed thousands from the people of the city, and they went and seized much plunder and took the women and children captive, and they divided them between them and left the city desolate. A short time after the Muslims went to the region of Cyprus and killed Stephen and those with him.

Chapter 119[5]

Misr moreover was enslaved to Satan. There was a great quarrel among them with the men of the coast and they were divided in two. One side allied with Theodore and the other wanted to join with the Muslims. Thereupon one side rose up against the other and plundered their possessions, and burnt their cities with fire. Indeed the Muslims began to fear them.

'Amr then sent many Muslims to Alexandria, and they seized Keryun,[6] which is outside the city. Theodore with his troops who were present in that place fled and entered into the city of Alexandria. The Muslims undertook to wage war on them, and were not able to approach the city's citadel, for they were pelted with stones from atop the citadel, and they were forced outside the city.

The men of Misr began to wage war upon the men of the coast, and there was great strife. But after a short time they made peace. But when their opposition came to an end Satan stirred up another opposition in the city of Alexandria. For Domentianus the official and Menas the general were opposed to each other on account of love of office and other reasons. Theodore the general allied with Menas and opposed Domentianus on account of his flight from Nikiu and abandonment of the troops. Menas was very much angry with Eudocianus the elder brother of Domentianus the official, for the reason that he sinned against the people of the Christians during the Holy Passion, on account of the faith. Domentianus gathered a large number of Blues; and when Menas heard this, he for his part gathered many Greens and the troops who were present in the city. They remained in mutual opposition. Thereupon came Philiades the dux of the region of Arcadia. Domentianus began to oppose the patriarch Cyrus and showed him no honor. For he was his son-in-law, and before had loved him, but thereafter opposed him for no reason. But Menas moreover began to protect Philiades, and he did not despise spiritual love, and he called him to him all the time on account of the honor of the priesthood. For he was the brother of the patriarch George, and was charitable and a lover of God, and had a care for the oppressed.[7] But Philiades did not preserve the love, but began secretly to injure and to preserve evils.

In the time of Theodore the general, a discussion arose concerning the city which is called Mamuna,[8] and

[1] Perhaps the Greek Sais in the Delta.

[2] The name of this person is unclear. Greek Isakios?

[3] I.e., the 13th May. This fell on a Sunday in 641, suggesting that the "cycle" is the Alexandrian lunar cycle.

[4] Perhaps a corruption of Greek Askalon, in modern Israel.

[5] The table of contents for chapters 119 and 120 do not correspond to the text.

[6] The Greek Chaireon, southeast of Alexandria.

[7] The patriarch George replaced Cyrus as Chalcedonian patriarch for a brief period in late 640 to September 641.

[8] Unidentified.

concerning the pay of the troops and also the land on which they were established. At that time that wicked man took counsel and said, "Instead of twelve men, one is better. For there will be one man to receive the pay of twelve, and the matter of food and the pay of the troops will have been reduced." For this reason, Menas found cause against Domentianus. All the troops loved him, and believed in him. Menas indeed loved the honor of all men, not because he received a vain glory, but on account of his wisdom and humility.

For the same man was present in the great Church of Caesarion with all the people.[1] All the people of the city gathered against Philiades and wanted to kill him. The same man fled and hid in a church. At that time they went into his house and burnt it with fire, and pillaged all his possessions. But they had pity on the persons whom they found in that church and did not kill them. But when Domentianus discovered this he sent the men of the Blues in order to wage war on them. There was a great battle between them and six men of them died, and many were injured. But with much blood and sweat Theodore established peace between them. He deposed the general Domentianus and established 'Artana as master of the ten grades, who is called Furyans.[2] They returned all the possessions of Philiades which they plundered from his house. For it was said that this battle and quarrel were on account of the faith. [...][3]

Chapter 120

[...] [Theodore] entered the city of Alexandria during the night on the 17th of Maskaram, on the day of the Feast of the Holy Cross.[4] All the people of Alexandria—men and women, old and young—gathered to the patriarch Cyrus, rejoicing and giving praise on account of the return of the patriarch of the city of Alexandria.[5]

But Theodore departed in secret and went to a church of the Theodosians[6] with the patriarch, and closed the doors. He sent for and brought into his presence Menas, and appointed him general, and he chased Domentianus from the city. All of the people began to cry out, "Be gone from the city!" After the arrival of the patriarch Cyrus, George was held in honour by the lord Anastasius. For he had taken office from Heraclius the Younger,[7] and when he had grown older he had received power over all. The patriarch, furthermore, also granted him power.

When the patriarch Cyrus came to the great Church of Caesarion, people strewed all the ground with carpets and sang songs for him, until man trampled on man. Thereafter, with much effort, they brought him to the church. He extolled the pit which contained the holy cross which he had received from the official John before his exile. Moreover he took the glorious cross from a monastery of the Theodosians. But when they began the liturgy on the day of the holy Resurrection, the deacon omitted the psalm sung on the day of the Resurrection, that is: "This is the day which the Lord has made, let us rejoice and be glad at it."[8] In this he wanted to honor the patriarch and to praise him on account of his return, but he introduced another psalm which was not fitting. When the people heard this they said, "This psalm which is not fitting is not a good sign for the patriarch Cyrus, and he will not see again a Feast of the Resurrection in the city of Alexandria." All the congregation of the church and the monks predicted thus in public: "He did what has not been established in the canons." But no-one who heard their words believed them.

Thereafter the patriarch Cyrus rose up and went to Babylon to the Muslims, wanting to make peace and give them tribute in order that they put an end to the war in the region of Egypt. 'Amr welcomed his arrival and said, "You have done well in coming to us." Cyrus answered him and said, "God has given this land to you. Henceforth let there be no enmity between you and the Romans. Before this no quarrel abided with you." They determined the matter of the tribute which he would give. On their side the Ishmaelites would in no way exchange

---

[1] The Caesarion was the main cathedral church of Alexandria.

[2] The name and the role of this person are not clear, although it is possible that Furyans is a corruption of an original *decuriones*, hence "master of the ten grades."

[3] I omit a section of text detailing the restoration of the Chalcedonian patriarch of Alexandria Cyrus, which seems to derive from an independent source, and also a section on Theodore's attempt to reach Libyan Pentapolis.

[4] I.e., the 14th September [641].

[5] Note that John uses here a positive source on Cyrus, and has not altered its tone.

[6] The "Theodosians" designates a Christian sect named after their patriarch Theodosius (536–566).

[7] "Heraclius the Younger" should designate Heraclius's son Heraclonas, who ruled in the central months of 641.

[8] Ps. 118:24.

words but would remain alone for eleven months. The Romans troops who were in Alexandria would take up their weapons and treasures and go by sea. And none of the Roman troops would return again. Those who wanted to go by land would pay tribute each month. The Muslims would seize 150 troops and 50 men of the city as security, and they would make peace. The Romans would put an end to waging war upon the Muslims, and the Muslims to taking churches, and the Muslims would not be involved in any of the affairs of the churches. The Hebrews [i.e., the Jews] they would allow to live in the city of Alexandria.

When the patriarch had finished, he went to the city of Alexandria and told Theodore and the official Constantine in order that they relate this to the emperor Heraclius[1] and confirm it with him. Thereafter all the troops, Alexandrians, and Theodore the official gathered together and paid homage to Cyrus the patriarch. He related to them everything which he had agreed in treaty with the Muslims, and he persuaded them all in this matter. While he was there, thereafter the Muslims came to receive the tribute, of which the men of Alexandria were ignorant. When they saw them, the Alexandrians prepared for war. The troops and the generals took counsel, and said, "We are not able to fight the Muslims, let it be as the patriarch Cyrus says." But the people of the city rose up against the patriarch, and wanted to stone him. But he said to them, "I have done this that I might save you, along with your children." And he besought them with much weeping and sorrow. After that the Alexandrians were ashamed before him, and they gave to much gold to give to the Ishmaelites along with the tribute which they had determined for them. The men of Egypt who fled and entered the city of Alexandria for fear of the Muslims besought the patriarch and said to him, "Get an assurance for us from the Muslims that we might return to our cities, and we will submit to them." And he did for them as they said. The Muslims seized all of the region of Egypt, north and south, and they increased the amount of tax over them threefold.

There was a man whose name was Menas, and who was appointed by the emperor Heraclius over the coastal region. He was proud of heart, ignorant of letters, and he very much hated the Egyptians. After the Muslims had seized the whole region of Egypt they maintained him in his office. They appointed a man called Senuthius[2] over the region of Rif; and they also appointed someone called Philoxenus[3] over the region of Arcadia, that is, the Fayyum. These three loved the pagans [i.e., the Muslims] and hated the Christians, and they forced the Christians to bear fodder for cattle and compelled them to bear milk, honey, fruit, leeks, and many other things. And all this was in addition to grain. They did this through unceasing fear.

They also appointed them to excavate the canal of Hadrian, which had for a long time disappeared, in order that water might flow through it from Babylon in Egypt to the Red Sea. The yoke with which they burdened the Egyptians was greater than that with which Pharaoh had burdened Israel, whom God judged with a righteous judgement and submerged in the Red Sea, he along with all his army, after the great plague with which he plagued them, from man to beast. When God's judgment has come over these Ishmaelites, may he act towards them as he acted towards Pharaoh before. But it is on account of our sins that he has allowed them to act thus towards us. But in the breadth of our lord and saviour Jesus Christ's spirit, he will watch us and protect us. We have faith moreover that he will destroy the enemies of the Cross, as the book which does not lie says.

2.6 Umayyad diplomacy: *The Treaty of Tudmir* (713). Original in Arabic.

Although the Islamic conquests seemed to take place with lightning speed, they were at times piecemeal and even non-violent. Five years after Islamic forces entered Spain in 711, almost the entire peninsula was under the rule of the caliph. Yet documents such as the *Treaty of Tudmir* (713) suggest that in some cases the take-over was peaceful, accomplished

[1] I.e., Heraclonas. This indicates that the negotiation took place in or before November 641, the usual date for Heraclonas's fall.

[2] He is probably identical with the *dux* of Antinoe Senuthius who appears in several documents and texts of the period.

[3] This Philoxenus "dux of the province of Arcadia" also appears in a contemporaneous document.

via agreements with local rulers. In this case 'Abd al-'Aziz (d.716), son of Musa (the governor of much of North Africa and a leader in the conquest of Spain), came to an agreement with Theodemir, the local Visigothic commander of the region of Murcia (in the southeast corner of Spain). The Murcians were not to aid any enemies of the Muslims, and they had to pay a modest tax in money and kind. In return, they were offered local autonomy and permission to practice their Christian religion. The Arabic for Theodemir was Tudmir, which for years afterwards was the Arabic name for the region of Murcia.

1. What is the meaning of peace in this document?
2. Who will enforce the peace?

[Source: *Medieval Iberia: Readings from Christian, Muslim, and Jewish Sources*, ed. Olivia Remie Constable (Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1997), pp. 37–38. Translated by Olivia Remie Constable.]

In the name of God, the merciful and the compassionate.

This is a document [granted] by 'Abd al-'Aziz ibn Musa ibn Nusair to Tudmir, son of Ghabdush, establishing a treaty of peace and the promise and protection of God and his Prophet (may God bless him and grant him peace). We ['Abd al-'Aziz] will not set special conditions for him or for any among his men, nor harass him, nor remove him from power. His followers will not be killed or taken prisoner, nor will they be separated from their women and children. They will not be coerced in matters of religion, their churches will not be burned, nor will sacred objects be taken from the realm, [so long as] he [Tudmir] remains sincere and fulfills the [following] conditions that we have set for him. He has reached a settlement concerning seven towns: Orihuela, Valentilla, Alicante, Mula, Bigastro, Ello, and Lorca. He will not give shelter to fugitives, nor to our enemies, nor encourage any protected person to fear us, nor conceal news of our enemies. He and [each of] his men shall [also] pay one dinar every year, together with four measures of wheat, four measures of barley, four liquid measures of concentrated fruit juice, four liquid measures of vinegar, four of honey, and four of olive oil. Slaves must each pay half of this amount.

[Names of four witnesses follow, and the document is dated from the Muslim month of Rajab, in the year 94 of the *hijra* (April 713).]

2.7 Administration: *Letters to 'Abd Allah b. As'ad* (*c.*730–750). Original in Arabic.

Islamic conquerors made use of many of the institutions and professional personnel that they found in the regions they took over. In Egypt, the breadbasket of the Roman world, they found a ready-made tax and requisitioning system that they used for their own benefit. The many administrative documents from this region—papyrus sheets preserved underground in the dry Egyptian climate—allow us to glimpse a well-organized command system designed to carry out orders and respond to problems on the ground. At the top of the hierarchy was the *amir*, the governor of Egypt. Under him were regional officials, pagarchs, and under the pagarchs were various still more local officials and their underlings. All the documents here concern the Fayyum, a region (like so many others in Egypt) made up of small agricultural communities. (See Map 2.2 on p. 70 above.)

The administration of Egypt was no doubt largely carried out through oral directives, but the written word was very important to this society, and many directives were written out by scribes (who sometimes gave their names), in the form of letters. Fayyum's pagarch was Najid b. Mulim, and most of the letters reproduced here were sent by him to ʿAbd Allah b. Asʿad, an administrative underling who occupied a position somewhere between the pagarch and a village headsman. The final letter here, however, is from one al-Salt b. al-Muhajir (otherwise unknown) to ʿAbd Allah. Its elaborate opening and blessing are characteristic of private—rather than official—letters.

Many of the letters are fragmentary. Unreadable or lost passages are indicated by ellipses (...). Often you must use your imagination to fill in the blanks, but sometimes, because many phrases are formulaic, the missing words may be supplied from other documents.

1. Why were the opening greetings, however formulaic, important for the functioning of the administration?
2. What sorts of goods and services did the letters talk about?

[Source: Petra M. Sijpesteijn, *Shaping a Muslim State: The World of a Mid-Eighth-Century Egyptian Official* (Oxford: University of Oxford Press, 2013), pp. 285–86, 292–93, 299, 315–16, 344–45, 353, 417. (Editorial interventions silently removed and notes added.)

Letter 1: Request for Deliveries in Kind

Side A:
In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful.
From Najid b. Muslim to ʿAbd Allah b. Asʿad.
Peace be upon you and I praise for you God, besides Whom there is no god but He.[1]
Further, and the *amir*, may God preserve him, wrote me urging me with what I owe from what is imposed on the people of the Fayyum in their instalment of this year ... of the ... and the garments[2] and the ... So send it to ... send to me what we are obliged to and what is incumbent upon us of that.... For you know that I assigned to you and the term that I imposed on you. So write to me about the collection of that. And let there not be for anything you owe obstruction and no delay. And may you make your assistance beneficial to us concerning the work that you were put in charge of and may you be reliable. Then do it quickly! And I hope that you will be of the best of my assistants in terms of assisting me, God willing. For you are the most entitled of them to that. And peace be upon you and God's mercy. Humran[3] wrote [it] on Thursday.

Side B:
From Najid b. Muslim [to] ʿAbd Allah b. Asʿad

Letter 2: Collecting Taxes in Kind

Side A:
In the name of God the Merciful, the Compassionate.
From Najid b. Muslim to ʿAbd Allah b. Asʿad.
Peace be upon you and I praise for you God besides Whom there is no god but He.
Further, the *amir*, may God make him prosper, wrote to me with what he has calculated for me, of the amount in coin of the people of the province of their taxes in kind. So pay this to him and ... self to me the amount in coin of that ... So hurry to me the amount in money and write me (so) that I pay in coin what you have paid of that and collect their taxes in kind ... of the scribes and we have calculated what the people of every village have to pay of the taxes in kind and its (different) sorts and what has to be paid in coin of it. So inform the people of each village what fell on them in coin and let them give it to the solvent amongst

[1] This is a standard greeting and blessing. Compare it to the opening of Letter 2, for example.
[2] Garments: this means that clothes were collected as taxes.
[3] Humran was the scribe for this letter.

them. And write ... and the quota of the tax in kind in its entirety so that your scribe transfers (it) to us, God willing, that which has fallen on the men, of wheat and barley and beans and what was assigned to them of this in coin. And inform your scribe that he is your instrument concerning the execution of this in ..., God willing. And peace be upon you and God's mercy. And ʿAbd al-Rahman wrote it.

Side B:
From Najid b. Muslim to ʿAbd Allah b. As'ad

Letter 3: Order from the Amir Concerning the Delivery of Grapes

Side A:
In the name of God the Compassionate, the Merciful.
From Najid b. Muslim to ʿAbd Allah b. As'ad.
Peace be upon you and I praise for you God besides Whom there is no god but He.
Further, the *amir* (may he be made to prosper by God) wrote me concerning the grapes ordering me to send these and to (take care of it?) myself. Thus hand over to him what the people of each village ... deposited with you. And as for whom you appointed over the execution ... that of your scribes over the *amir*'s business which he ordered me (to do), if God wills it. And write me how you acted concerning my letter and concerning the grapes.

Side B:
From Najid h. Muslim to ʿAbd Allah b. As'ad

Letter 4: Instructions to collect sadaqa and zakat

Side A:
In the name of God, the Compassionate the Merciful.
From Najid b. Muslim to ʿAbd Allah b. As'ad.
Peace be upon you and I praise for you God besides Whom there is no god but He.
Further, God sent His prophet Muhammad, may God praise him, with the guidance and the true religion and everything which God was contended with for his worshippers. Those belonging to the people of the religion of Islam, of the right religion, God has imposed *sadaqa* on their property in order to purify them.... from ... God through what ... Islam ... and the prayers and the *zakat* payments.... through the *zakat* and on ... and through *zakat* on their possessions ... purification of the people of Islam until you have received from them the ... what God imposed upon them of its *zakat*.[1] Then seal what you have received of it with the seal which has been brought to you. And whoever agrees from amongst the collectors of the tax-levy to hand over the *sadaqa* according to what you wrote, give it to him after you have sealed it from this, *dinars* and carry the free-grazing goats and sheep. And give a document (containing) what you gathered to him from this all together and what was due from everyman of that and what you have received from him with his name and the name of his father and his tribe and the village ... to whom ... lives ... of all that you have received from every village so that it will be all together combining it with the *sadaqa* of another village. And do not delay from the *sadaqa* of the village anything so that it is in one payment. Then hurry instalment upon instalment of the *sadaqas* of the villages according to what you used to calculate and collect before. And peace be upon you and the mercy of God.

Side B:
From Najid b. Muslim to ʿAbd Allah b. Asa'd
Concerning the remainders.

Letter 5: Organization of the Delivery of Oil

Side A:
In the name of God the Merciful the Compassionate.
From Najid b. Muslim to ʿAbd Allah b. As'ad.
Peace be upon you and I praise for you God besides Whom there is no god but He.
I have sent you Peter, the *symmachos*[2] to collect what the people of your district owe in oil. When this letter of mine comes to you, send with him your *symmachoi* for the collection of that. For I have ordered him, that, in case you delay for him its collection and transport, he should come to me with your scribe and your *symmachoi* so that I may give through them other scribes belonging to your colleagues and their *symmachoi*. So hurry to carry out what I have ordered you of that. And be trustworthy in what you have to do. And let him not use you as a reason for delay in anything of what I assigned to him of the collection of the oil and the coins. And peace be upon you and the mercy of God.

[1] The gist of these fragmentary lines is that the *zakat* and *sadaqa* are both godly and purifying.

[2] The *symmachos* (pl. *symmachoi*) was a low-level official who went on site to gather the taxes, in this case oil. He was paid by the Islamic bureaucracy, not by Najid. Byzantine taxes had also been collected by *symmachoi*.

Side B:
From Najid b. Muslim to ʿAbd Allah b. Asʿad

Letter 6: Assigning Water to Narmuda

Side A:
In the name of God the Compassionate, the Merciful.
From Najid b. Muslim to ʿAbd Allah b. Asʿad.
Peace be upon you and I praise for you God besides Whom there is no god but He.
Further, your letter has reached me, mentioning that the people of Narmuda do not have any water. I have sent Juzayy and Rashid, the two managers of water, ordering them to give them water whatever is appropriate and to water their land. And I have written to Qarina,[1] the one in charge of Nuwayra, about this. And spare me what is your affair, and be trustworthy concerning it. Peace be upon you and the mercy of God.

Side B:
From Najid b. Muslim to ʿAbd Allah b. Asʿad

Letter 7: Purchase of Various Commodities

Side A:
In the name of God the Merciful, the Compassionate.
From al-Salt b. al-Muhajir to ʿAbd Allah b. Asʿad.
Peace be upon you and I praise for you God, besides Whom there is no God but He.
Further, may God be satisfied with us and with you in all things in His mercy and may He make us and you of the people of paradise through His strength and His power. As I am writing to you we are, thanks to God, in complete wellbeing and health, we ask God for the best for us and you. Your letter has reached me mentioning your health and that has pleased me. And I wrote to so-and-so concerning the ... to you and ... from ... the letter but for a shortage of messengers. And you wrote me that I buy you for two *dinars* a Himsi overcoat and I have indeed done so and I have sent it through Zayd, your servant. And you wrote me that I send you the ten *dinars* with Zayd; he has come to me and I counted what I have but no more than five *dinars* were counted out to him. And I have sent with him three *dinars* and I paid two *dinars* as the price for the overcoat.[2] And I will send to you, God willing, the five remaining ones after gold has given me a profit in Lower Egypt and I will send them to you with Abu Zayd the ... to your credit. And I did not hope that my collection ... and do not order him to do this. And upon my life, if I did not owe you them (the *dinars*), you would not have written to me that I lend you money (and) I would have made you pleased.[3] Do write me about your state, your condition and any need you may have. For you are amongst the people I would like to cherish and have a friendly relation with. And peace be upon you and God's mercy.

Side B:
From al-Salt b. al-Muhajir to ʿAbd Allah b. Asʿad

2.8 Praising the caliph: Al-Akhtal, *The Tribe Has Departed* (*c.*692). Original in Arabic.

When Caliph ʿAbd al-Malik (r.685–705) suppressed a major rebellion, and established his rule, he needed a way to legitimize his authority and assert its roots in Arabic tradition.

[1] Qarina was the headman of a village near Narmuda, which was suffering from a water shortage. Water allocation in the region was under Najid's supervision, and, as here, he had to make sure that part of the scarce supply available reached every village. Juzayy and Rashid were water managers; Najid sent them to ensure that the villagers of Narmuda would have enough water for their personal needs and to irrigate their lands.

[2] The purchase of just one overcoat likely means that ʿAbd Allah ordered it for his personal use.

[3] Al-Salt possibly got the overcoat on credit. He certainly owed money to ʿAbd Allah, who was obliged in this letter to put pressure on him to get it back. But al-Salt could render only the overcoat and some of the money; he was hoping to obtain more money during a trip north to the Nile Delta (Lower Egypt).

This he did largely by patronizing poets, for poetry was both highly valued and adaptive to a variety of purposes. In Syria, where the Umayyads established their capital, most of the population was Christian, but that did not prevent the Christian al-Akhtal (*c.*640–*c.*710) from becoming one of the caliph's most important poetic eulogists. In *The Tribe Has Departed*, al-Akhtal drew on traditional forms: a departure, a journey, and a boast. The parts are labeled here by your editor.

1. What are the virtues and the powers of the "Caliph of God" in this poem?
2. What does the poet say about himself, his feelings, and his role in the events that his poem recounts?

[Source: Suzanne Pinckney Stetkevych, *The Poetics of Islamic Legitimacy: Myth, Gender, and Ceremony in the Classical Arabic Ode* (Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 2002), pp. 89–94, 96–97 (notes added).]

[The Departure]

1. Those that dwelt with you have left in haste,
   departing at evening or at dawn,
   Alarmed and driven out by fate's caprice,
   they head for distant lands.

2. And I, on the day fate took them off,
   was like one drunk
   On wine from Hims or Gadara
   that sends shivers down the spine,

3. Poured generously from a brimming wine-jar
   lined with pitch and dark with age,
   Its clay seal broken
   off its mouth,

4. A wine so strong it strikes
   the vital organs of the reveler,
   His heart, hungover, can barely
   sober up

5. I was like that, or like a man
   whose limbs are racked with pain,
   Or like a man whose heart is struck
   by charms and amulets,

6. Out of longing for them and yearning
   on the day I sent my glance after them
   As they journeyed in small bands
   on Kawkab Hill's two slopes.[1] ...

[The Journey]

17. They alighted in the evening,
    and we turned aside our noble-bred camels:
    For the man in need, the time had come
    to journey

[The Boast]

18. To a man whose gifts do not elude us,
    whom God has made victorious,
    So let him in his victory
    long delight!

19. He who wades into the deep of battle,
    auspicious his augury,
    The Caliph of God
    through whom men pray for rain

20. When his soul whispers its intention to him
    he resolutely sends it forth,
    His courage and his caution
    like two keen blades.

21. In him the common weal resides,
    and after his assurance
    No peril can seduce him
    from his pledge.

22. Not even the Euphrates when its tributaries

[1] Kawkab Hill is southwest of Damascus.

pour seething into it
And sweep the giant swallow-wort from its two banks
into the middle of its rushing stream,

23. And the summer winds churn it
until its waves
Form agitated puddles
on the prows of ships,

24. Racing in a vast and mighty torrent
from the mountains of Byzance[1]
Whose foothills shield them from it
and divert its course,

25. Is ever more generous than he is
to the supplicant
Or more dazzling
to the beholder's eye.

26. They did not desist from their treachery and cunning
against you
Until, unknowingly, they portioned out
the maysir players' flesh.[2] ...

29. Like a crouching lion, poised to pounce,
his chest low to the ground,
For a battle in which there is
prey for him,

30. [The caliph] advances with an army
two hundred thousand strong,
The likes of which no man or jinn[3]
has ever seen.

31. He comes to bridges which he builds
and then destroys,
He brands his steeds with battle scars,
above him fly banners and battle dust,

32. Until at al-Taff
they wreaked carnage,
And at al-Thawiyyah
where no bowstring twanged.[4]

33. The tribesmen saw clearly
the error of their ways,
And he straightened out the smirk
upon their faces....

44. O Banu Umayyah, your munificence
is like a widespread rain;
It is perfect,
unsullied by reproach.

45. O Banu Umayyah, it was I
who defended you
From the men of a tribe
that sheltered and aided [the Prophet].

46. I silenced the Banu Najjar's endless braying
against you
With poems that reached the ears
of every chieftain of Ma'add,

47. Until they submitted,
smarting from my words—
For words can often pierce
where sword points fail.

48. O Banu Umayyah, I offer you
sound counsel:
Don't let Zufar dwell secure
among you,[5]

49. But take him as an enemy:
for what you see of him
And what lies hid within
is all corruption.

50. For in the end you'll meet
with ancient rancor
That, like mange,[6] lies latent for a while

[1] Byzantium.

[2] Maysir means gambling; pre-Islamic maysir players would gamble for the parts of a sacrificed animal. Here the enemies of the caliph are likened to maysir players, but the flesh they gamble for and cut apart is their own.

[3] Jinn are half-spirit creatures.

[4] Al-Taff is where an enemy leader was slain, while al-Thawiyyah was the burial site of another enemy leader.

[5] Zufar was initially an enemy of Caliph al-Malik, but by the time of this poem, he rivaled al-Akhtar and his clan, the Banu Taghlib, for the caliph's favors.

[6] Mange is a skin disease.

only to spread the more.

51. Through us you were victorious,
O Commander of the Faithful,
When the news reached you
within al-Ghutah [of Damascus],

52. They identified for you the head
of Ibn al-Hubab,
Its nose bridge now marked
by the sword.

53. Ears deaf, never will he
hear a voice;
Nor will he talk till stones
begin to speak.[1]...

78. And remember the Banu Ghudanah
like herds of young slit-eared goats,
Runty ones, for whom
corrals are built,

79. That pee on their forelegs
when they're hot,
And shiver with cold
when wet with rain.[2] ...

THE IMPOVERISHED BUT INVENTIVE WEST

2.9 The private penitential tradition: *Penitential of Finnian* (late 6th cent.). Original in Latin.

The purpose of penance is to achieve reconciliation with God after sinning. In early Christian practice, penance was public, dramatic, and humiliating. But within the Celtic, Anglo-Saxon, and Frankish worlds a different sort of penance became popular: the "tariffed" penance of the penitentials. Drawing on biblical passages, canons (decisions or laws) of early church councils, monastic practices, and perhaps secular laws, these penitentials listed sins and the penances due for them (the tariffs) as a matter of regular religious discipline. The penitential of Finnian, drawn up in the late sixth century in either Ireland or Brittany, is one of the earliest of these books. Although it was probably created in a monastic context, it was directed mainly to clerics and the laity rather than monks. Since clerics were considered "secular" (worldly) because of their pastoral duties, and laypeople were ordinary men and women—not in orders, not of clerical or monastic status, and normally married—the audience at whom this is aimed is itself evidence of the monastic desire to make an impact on the behavior of those "in the world."

1. In what ways is the monastic life itself (as, for example, exemplified by *The Benedictine Rule*) a model for this penitential?
2. What sorts of sins does this penitential focus on?

[Source: *The Irish Penitentials*, ed. Ludwig Bieler (Dublin: Dublin Institute for Advanced Studies, 1963), pp. 75, 77, 79, 81, 87 (notes added).]

[1] Al-Akhtar here boasts that his clan defeated and beheaded al-Hubab, the leader of an enemy clan, while the caliph himself relaxed in the park of al-Ghutah.

[2] For a society that values camels above all other animals, it is a great slur to liken the Ghudanah to runty goats.

In the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Ghost.

1. If anyone has sinned by thought in his heart and immediately repents, he shall beat his breast and seek pardon from God and make satisfaction, and [so] be whole.

2. But if he frequently entertains [evil] thoughts and hesitates to act on them, whether he has mastered them or been mastered by them, he shall seek help from God by prayer and fasting day and night until the evil thought departs and he is whole.

3. If, however, he has thought evil and intended to do it and has not been able to do it, since opportunity has failed him, it is the same sin but not the same penance; for example, if he intended fornication or murder, he has, by his intention, already committed the sin in his heart which he did not complete by a deed; but if he quickly does penance, he can be helped. His penance is this: half a year he shall do penance on an allowance of bread and water, and he shall abstain from wine and meat for a whole year.

4. If anyone has sinned in word by inadvertence and immediately repented and has not said any such thing of set purpose, he ought to submit to penance, but he shall keep [only] one special fast; but thereafter let him be on his guard throughout his life, lest he commit further sin.

5. If one of the clerics or ministers of God makes strife, he shall do penance for a period of seven days with bread and water and salt, and seek pardon from God and his neighbor, with full confession and humility; and thus can he be reconciled to God and his neighbor.

6. If anyone has decided on a scandalous deed and plotted in his heart to strike or kill his neighbor, if [the offender] is a cleric, he shall do penance for half a year with an allowance of bread and water and for a whole year abstain from wine and meat, and thus he will be reconciled to the altar; 7. but if he is a layman, he shall do penance for a period of seven days; since he is a man of this world, his guilt is lighter in this world and his reward less in the world to come.

8. But if he is a cleric and strikes his brother or his neighbor and sheds blood, it is the same as if he had killed him, but the penance is not the same: he shall do penance with bread and water and salt and be deprived of his clerical office for an entire year, and he must pray with weeping and tears, that he may obtain mercy of God, since Scripture says: "Whosoever hateth his brother is a murderer";[1] how much more he who strikes him. 9. But if he is a layman, he shall do penance forty days and give some money to him whom he has struck, according as some priest or arbiter determines. A cleric, however, ought not to give money to either man or woman.

10. But if one who is a cleric falls miserably through fornication and loses his crown,[2] if it happens once [only] and it is concealed from men but known before God, he shall do penance for an entire year with an allowance of bread and water and for two years abstain from wine and meat, but he shall not lose his clerical office. For, we say, sins can be absolved in secret by penance and by very diligent devotion of heart and body.

11. If, however, they have long been in the habit of sin and it has not come to the notice of men, he shall do penance for three years with bread and water and lose his clerical office, and for three years more he shall abstain from wine and meat, since it is not a smaller thing to sin before God than before men.

12. But if one of the clerical order falls to the depths of ruin and begets a son and kills him, great is the crime of fornication with homicide, but it can be expiated through penance and God's mercy. He shall do penance three years with an allowance of bread and water, in weeping and tears and prayers by day and night, and he shall implore the mercy of the Lord to perchance have remission of sins;[3] and he shall abstain for three more years from wine and meat, deprived of his clerical office; and for the forty-day periods[4] in the last three years he shall fast with bread and water; and [he shall] be an exile from his own country, until a period of seven years is completed, and so by the judgment of a bishop or a priest he shall be restored to his office.

13. If, however, he has not killed the child, the sin is less, but the penance is the same.

14. But if one of the clerical order is on familiar terms with any woman and he has himself done no evil with her, neither by cohabiting nor by lascivious embraces, this is his penance: For such time as he has her he shall withdraw from the communion of the altar and do penance for forty days and nights with bread and water and tear out of his heart his fellowship with the woman, and so be restored to the altar.

---

[1] 1 John 3:15.

[2] The crown of virginity.

[3] "Remission" of sins means "forgiveness" of sins.

[4] In the penitentials, three forty-day periods of fasting were prescribed in the course of the Church year: before Easter (Lent), before Christmas, and after Pentecost.

15. If, however, he is on familiar terms with many women and has given himself to association with them and to their lascivious embraces, but has, as he says, preserved himself from ruin, he shall do penance for half a year with an allowance of bread and water, and for another half year he shall abstain from wine and meat, but he shall not lose his clerical office; and after an entire year of penance, he shall join himself to the altar.[1]

16. If any cleric lusts after a virgin or any woman in his heart but does not speak with his lips, if he sins thus but once he ought to do penance for seven days with an allowance of bread and water.

17. But if he continually lusts and is unable to indulge his desire, since the woman does not admit him or since he is ashamed to speak, still he has committed adultery with her in his heart—yet it is in his heart, and not in his body; it is the same sin whether in the heart or in the body, yet the penance is not the same. This is his penance: let him do penance for forty days with bread and water.

18. If any cleric or woman who practices magic have led astray anyone by their magic, it is a monstrous sin, but it can be expiated by penance. [Such an offender] shall do penance for six years, three years on an allowance of bread and water, and during the remaining three years he shall abstain from wine and meat.

19. If, however, such a person has not led astray anyone but has given [a potion] for the sake of wanton love to someone, he shall do penance for an entire year on an allowance of bread and water.

20. If a woman by her magic destroys the child she has conceived of somebody, she shall do penance for half a year with an allowance of bread and water, and abstain for two years from wine and meat and fast for the six forty-day periods with bread and water.

21. But if, as we have said, she bears a child and her sin is manifest, [she shall do penance] for six years [with bread and water], as is the judgment in the case of a cleric, and in the seventh year she shall be joined to the altar, and then we say her crown can be restored and she may don a white robe and be pronounced a virgin. So a cleric who has fallen ought likewise to receive the clerical office in the seventh year after the labor of penance, as Scripture says: "Seven times a just man falleth and ariseth,"[2] that is, after seven years of penance he who fell can be called "just" and in the eighth year evil shall not lay hold on him, but for the remainder [of his life] let him preserve himself carefully lest he fall, since, as Solomon says, as a dog returning to his vomit becomes odious, so is he who through his own negligence reverts to his sin."[3] ...

32. We prescribe and urge contributing for the redemption of captives. By the teaching of the Church, money is to be spent fruitfully on the poor and needy.

33. We are also obliged to serve the churches of the saints and, within our means, have pity on all who are in need; pilgrims are to be received into our houses, as the Lord has commanded; the infirm are to be visited; those who are in chains are to be ministered to; and all commandments of Christ are to be performed, "from the least unto the greatest."[4]

34. If any man or woman is nigh unto death, although he [or she] has been a sinner, and asks for the communion of Christ, we say that it is not to be denied to such a person if that person promise God to take the vow, and do well and be received by Him. If he is restored to this world, let him fulfil that which he has vowed to God; but if he does not fulfil the vow which he has vowed to God, [the consequences] will be on his own head, and we will not refuse what we owe to him: we are not to cease to snatch prey from the mouth of the lion or the dragon, that is of the devil, who ceases not to snatch at the prey of our souls, even though we may have to follow up and strive [for his soul] at the very end of a man's life.

35. If one of the laity is converted from his evil-doing unto the Lord, and if he has wrought every evil deed—by committing fornication, that is, and shedding blood—he shall do penance for three years and go unarmed except for a staff in his hand, and shall not live with his wife, but in the first year he shall fast on an allowance of bread and water and salt and not live with his wife; after a penance of three years he shall give money for the redemption of his soul and the fruit of his penance[5] into the hand of the priest and make a feast for the servants of God, and in the feast [his penance] shall be ended and he shall be received to communion; he may then resume relations with his wife after his entire and complete penance, and if it is so decided he shall be joined to the altar....

---

[1] Laypeople, too, may be "joined to the altar" (e.g., see § 21 below), and thus "he shall join himself to the altar" seems to mean that the person will rejoin the congregation.

[2] Prov. 24:16.

[3] See Prov. 26:11.

[4] Heb. 8:11.

[5] "The fruit of his penance" refers to the savings that accrue from fasting.

2.10 A royal saint: *The Life of Queen Balthild* (*c.*680). Original in Latin.

The Merovingians based their power on land, treasure, prowess in battle, and alliances with major lay aristocrats and ecclesiastics (including monks) in Francia. Merovingian queens added to the prestige of the dynasty by cultivating often exceptional piety. Queen Balthild (d.*c.*680), wife of King Clovis II (r.639–657), was particularly devoted to the religious life. Although reported by her biographer to have risen from slavery, emphasizing her humility, she may well have belonged to a noble Anglo-Saxon family. In any event, once married, she quickly produced three sons, began distributing alms, and, as her biographer wrote, "prayed daily, ... fed the hungry, [and] clothed the naked with garments." After Clovis died, she took over as regent, acting in the name of her son Clothar III, who was around six-years-old at the time. She also lavished money and attention on the monasteries of the realm, founding Corbie and Chelles (to which she herself retired), and richly donating to others. Her biography was written shortly after her death by an anonymous writer, quite possibly a woman.

1. What Church reforms does Balthild's biographer credit her with, and why might these have seemed important at the time?
2. Comparing Balthild's virtues with those of Monegundis (above, p. 38), consider the different models of Merovingian female sanctity.

[Source: *Late Merovingian France: History and Hagiography (640–720)*, ed. and trans. Paul Fouracre and Richard A. Gerberding (Manchester: Manchester University Press, 1996), pp. 119–27, 129–32.]

Chapter 1

[The author declares his unworthiness to write about Queen Balthild, but he trusts that Christ will guide him and that his "straightforward words" will reveal the truth.]

Chapter 2

HERE BEGINS THE LIFE OF BLESSED QUEEN BALTHILD

Blessed be the Lord, "who wishes all men to be saved and to come to the recognition of truth,"[1] and "who causes them to will and to complete all in all."[2] And therefore His praise must be deservedly sung first in the merits and miracles of the saints, He "who makes great men out of those of low station, indeed, He who raises the poor man out of the dunghill and makes him to sit with the princes of His people,"[3] just as He has raised the present great and venerable woman, Lady Balthild, the queen. Divine providence called her from lands across the sea[4] and this precious and best pearl of God arrived here, having been sold at a low price. She was acquired by the late Erchinoald, the leader of the Franks and a man of illustrious standing, in whose service she dwelt as an adolescent most honorably so that her admirable and pious religious way of life pleased both the leader and all his servants. She was indeed kind in her heart, "temperate and prudent"[5] in her whole character, and provident. She contrived evil against no one. She was neither frivolous in her fine expression nor presumptuous in speaking, but most honorable in all her acts. And although she was from the race of the Saxons, the form of

[1] 1 Tim. 2:4.

[2] See Phil. 2.13, 1 Cor. 12:6 and Eph. 1:23.

[3] 1 Kings 2:8; Ps. 112:7–8.

[4] England.

[5] 1 Tim. 3:11.

her body was pleasing, very slender, and beautiful to see. Her expression was cheerful and her gait dignified. And, since she was thus, "she was exceedingly pleasing to the prince and she found favor in his eyes."[1] He engaged her to serve him the goblets in his chamber, and as a most honorable cupbearer she stood quite often present in his service. Nonetheless, from the favor of her position she derived no haughtiness but, based in humility, was loving and obedient to all her equals. With fitting honor she so served her seniors that she removed the shoes from their feet and washed and dried them. She fetched water for washing and promptly prepared their clothes. And she performed this service for them without muttering and with a good and pious heart.

Chapter 3

And from her noble way of life, greatest praise and love among her companions accrued to her, and she earned such a favorable reputation that, when the wife of the above-mentioned prince Erchinoald died, he decided to join the most honorable virgin, Balthild, to himself in the matrimonial bed. And, having learned this thing, she secretly and earnestly withdrew herself from his sight. And when she was called to the bedchamber of the prince, she hid herself in an out-of-the way corner and threw cheap rags over herself so that no one would have thought anyone to be hiding there. Indeed, she was then still a shrewd and prudent virgin fleeing empty high positions and seeking humility. She tried, as she was able, to avoid human marriage so that she might deserve to come to her spiritual and heavenly groom. But indeed, beyond doubt, it was accomplished by divine providence that the prince did not find her, whom he sought, and then joined another matron to himself in marriage. And then the girl Balthild was finally found so that, by the true will of God who had shunned the nuptials of the prince, she would later have Clovis [II], son of the late King Dagobert [I], in marriage so that He could thus raise her to a higher station through the merit of her humility. And in this station divine dispensation decided to honor her so that, seeing that she had refused a follower of the king, she might obtain union with the king and, from her, royal progeny might come forth. And this has now come to pass, as it is obvious to everyone that the royal offspring reigning now is hers.

Chapter 4

But as she had the grace of prudence conferred upon her by God, with watchful eagerness she obeyed the king as her lord, and to the princes she showed herself a mother, to the priests as a daughter, and to the young and the adolescents as the best possible nurse. And she was friendly to all, loving the priests as fathers, the monks as brothers, the poor as a faithful nurse does, and giving to each generous alms. She preserved the honor of the princes and kept their fitting counsel, always exhorting the young to religious studies and humbly and steadfastly petitioning the king for the churches and the poor. While still in secular dress, she desired to serve Christ; she prayed daily, tearfully commending herself to Christ, the heavenly king. And the pious king [Clovis], taking care of her faith and devotion, gave his faithful servant, Abbot Genesius, to her as support, and through his hands she served the priests and the poor, fed the hungry, clothed the naked with garments, and conscientiously arranged the burial of the dead. Through him she sent most generous alms of gold and silver to the monasteries of men and women. And this servant of Christ, Lord Genesius, was later ordained bishop of Lyon at Christ's command. He was at that time regularly in the court of the Neustrians. And through him, as we said, the lady Balthild, along with the authority of King Clovis and at the petition of this servant of God [Genesius], provided the generous alms of the king to all the poor throughout many places.

Chapter 5

What more is there to say? At God's command, her husband, King Clovis, went forth from his body, leaving a lineage of sons with their mother. In his place after him, his son, the late King Clothar [III], took the throne of the Franks and then also with the excellent princes, Chrodbert, bishop of Paris, Lord Audoin, and Ebroin, mayor of the palace, along with the other great magnates and very many of the rest [of the aristocracy]. And, indeed, the kingdom of the Franks was maintained in peace. Then indeed, a little while ago, the Austrasians peacefully received her son Childeric [II] as king in Austrasia by the arrangement of Lady Balthild and, indeed, through the advice of the great magnates. But the Burgundians and the Neustrians were united. And we believe that, with God guiding, and in accordance with the great faith of

[1] Esther 7:3; 2:4; 9; and 5:8. Esther was also a royal spouse of low origins.

Lady Balthild, these three kingdoms kept the harmony of peace among themselves.

Chapter 6

At that time it happened that the heresy of simony stained the Church of God with its depraved practice in which they received the rank of bishop by paying a price for it.[1] By the will of God [acting] through her, and at the urging of the good priests, the above-mentioned Lady Balthild stopped this impious evil so that no one would set a price on the taking of holy orders. Through her, the Lord also arranged for another very evil and impious practice to cease, one in which many men were more eager to kill their offspring than to provide for them in order to avoid the royal exactions which were inflicted upon them by custom, and from which they incurred a very heavy loss of property. This the lady prohibited for her own salvation so that no one presumed to do it. Because of this deed, truly a great reward awaits her.

Chapter 7

Who, then, is able to say how many and how great were the sources of income, the entire farms and the large forests she gave up by donating them to the establishments of religious men in order to construct cells or monasteries? And she also built as God's own and private houses a huge nunnery for women consecrated by God at Chelles, near Paris where she placed the religious handmaiden of God, the girl Bertila, in the position of the first mother. And in this place the venerable Lady Balthild in turn decided to dwell under the pure rule of religion and to rest in peace. And in truth she fulfilled this with a devoted will.

Nor must we pass over what pertains to the praise of God, whatever God marvelously performs in his saints and elect, because as Scripture says, "God is miraculous in His saints,"[2] and His spirit, the Paraclete, works within through goodwill, as it is written: "God is the helper of each willing good."[3] And it is known that it was truly thus with this great woman. As we said above, neither our tongue nor that of anyone, no matter how erudite, I do think, is able to relate all her good deeds. How many means of comfort and support did she give to the houses of God or to His poor for the love of Christ? And of what quality was the monastery called Corbie which she constructed at her own expense in the parish of Amiens? And here the venerable man, Lord Theudofred, who is now a bishop but who was then abbot, had charge of a large flock of brothers which the above-mentioned Lady Balthild sought from Luxeuil, from the late most reverend Lord Abbot Waldebert, and which she wonderfully directed to this monastery of brothers, and this is still known and praised.

Chapter 8

[She gave property to numerous monasteries including her own foundation at Chelles.]

Chapter 9

We certainly must not pass over [the fact] that throughout the senior basilicas of Lord Denis, Lord Germanus, Lord Medard, Saint Peter, Lord Anian, and Saint Martin[4] or wherever her precept reached, she ordered the bishops and abbots, by persuading them for the zeal of Christ, and sent them letters to this effect, that the monks dwelling in these places ought to live under a holy regular order.[5] And in order that they would freely acquiesce in this, she ordered a privilege to be confirmed for them and she also conceded them immunities[6] so that she might better entice them to exhort the clemency of Christ, the highest king, for the king and for peace. And this must be called to mind, because it pertains to the increase of her reward, that she forbade Christian men to become captives, and she issued precepts, throughout each region [ordering] that absolutely no one ought to transfer a captive Christian in the kingdom of the Neustrians. And in

[1] The word simony derives from a person, Simon Magus, who in Acts 8:9–24 tries to buy Peter's holy powers. It refers to the practice of "buying" ecclesiastical offices. Although considered an abuse in the *Life of Balthild*, it did not become a focus of Church reform until the eleventh century.

[2] Ps. 67:36; Douay Ps. 68:36.

[3] Rom. 8:28.

[4] These are the saints to whom "the senior basilicas"—the holiest places in the kingdom—were dedicated: the churches of Denis and Germanus were at Paris, that of Medard was at Soissons, Peter's at Sens, Anian's at Orléans, and Martin's at Tours.

[5] In other words, under a rule, though not necessarily that of Benedict (for which see above, p. 20).

[6] Immunities were documents that granted monasteries freedom from royal interference.

addition she paid the price and ordered many captives to be bought back and she released them as free. Others of them, especially from her own [Anglo-Saxon] race, men and also many girls, she sent into the monasteries as her own charges. However many she was able to attract, these she entrusted to the holy monasteries, and she ordered them to pray for her. She even often sent many generous gifts to Rome, to the basilicas of blessed Peter and Paul and to the Roman poor.

Chapter 10

It was, however, her holy vow that she ought to dwell in the monastery of religious women which we mentioned above, that is, at Chelles, which she herself built. But the Neustrians, for love of her, delayed in this especially, nor would they have permitted it to come about had not an insurrection arisen because of the wretched Bishop Sigobrand [of Paris] whose haughtiness among the Franks earned him mortal ruin. And from this a dispute arose because they killed him against her will. Fearing that the lady would hold it gravely against them and wish to vindicate his cause, they straightway permitted her to go into the monastery. And there is no probable doubt that it was not with a good heart that these princes then permitted this. But the lady considered it God's will that it was not so much their decision as a dispensation of God that her holy desire had been fulfilled, through whatever means, with Christ as her guide. And, having been escorted by certain noblemen, she came to her above-mentioned monastery at Chelles, and there, as is fitting, she was honorably and very lovingly received into the holy congregation by the holy maidens. Then, however, she had a complaint of no mean size against those whom she had kindly nurtured,[1] because they had erroneously considered her suspect and even repaid her with evil for her good deeds. But, discussing this quickly with the priests, she kindly forgave them everything and asked them to forgive her this disturbance of her heart. And thus, with the Lord as provider, peace was fully restored among them.

Chapter 11

Indeed, with a most pious affection she loved her sisters as her own daughters, she obeyed their holy abbess as her mother, and rendered service to them as the lowest of handmaidens out of holy desire, just as [she had done] when she still ruled the royal palace and often visited her holy monastery. So strongly did she exhibit the example of great humility that she even served her sisters in the kitchen, and the lowest acts of cleaning, even the latrines, she herself did. All this she undertook with joy and a cheerful heart, in such humble service for Christ. For who would believe that the height of such power would serve in such lowly things if her most abundant and great love of Christ had not demanded it of her in every way? She remained incessantly in faithful prayer with tears and she very often attended divine reading; indeed, she occasioned constant consolation through her holy prayer and her frequent visitation of the infirm. For she grieved with the grieving through the eagerness of her love, she rejoiced with the joyful, and for the slaves she very often humbly beseeched the lady abbess that they might be consoled. And she [the abbess], as her mother, lovingly granted all things to her petition because there was truly for them, in the manner of the Apostles, "one heart and one soul"[2] because they loved each other tenderly and most fully in Christ....

Chapter 14

But when the lady sensed that her end was near, her holy heart was raised up toward heaven. And being informed of her great reward, of blessed repayment, she strongly prohibited those staying with her from notifying the other sisters or the lady abbess, who herself was gravely ill, lest she should also be endangered on account of the magnitude of her grief. There was at that time a certain child, her goddaughter, whom she wished to go with her, and she [the child] suddenly went out from her body and preceded her to the grave. Then, making the sign of the cross in faith, and with her faithful eyes and holy hands raised toward heaven, her holy soul was loosed from the chain of her body in peace. And suddenly a splendor from on high glistened most brightly in the little room. And without doubt this holy soul was gloriously received by a chorus of angels, and her very faithful friend, the late Lord Bishop Genesius, came out to meet her, as her great reward demanded.

---

[1] The noblemen who forced her to retire to Chelles.

[2] Acts 4:32.

Chapter 15

For a little while, those sisters, with the sigh of grief as their companion, kept this hidden under silence, just as she had ordered. so that it was reported only to the priests who were to commend her most blessed soul to the Lord. And when the abbess and the whole congregation later learned of the matter, with great weeping they demanded how [it had happened] so suddenly and unexpectedly, as the hour of her departure was not known to them. It was as if this gem which everybody wanted had been snatched from them. All were stunned and likewise lay prostrate there on the ground. There was a great profusion of tears: weeping with an immense groan of grief, giving thanks to the faithful Lord, and praising Him together, they commended her holy soul to Christ, the faithful king, that He might guide it to Saint Mary in the chorus and company of the saints. Then, as was fitting for her, they buried her with great honor and much reverence. Then the Lady Abbess Bertila, taking care because of the eagerness of her piety, requested the holy priests that her holy memory should be preserved constantly throughout many churches in holy sacrifices. And throughout many places deservedly her [memory] is still steadfastly celebrated....

Chapter 18

Indeed, we recall that other queens in the kingdom of the Franks have been noble and worshippers of God: Clothild, queen of the late King Clovis of old and niece of King Gundobad,[1] who, by her holy exhortations, led both her very brave and pagan husband and many of the Frankish nobles to Christianity and brought them to the Catholic faith. She also was the first to construct the churches in honor of Saint Peter at Paris and Saint George in the little monastery for virgins at Chelles, and she founded many others in honor of the saints in order to store up her reward, and she enriched them with many gifts. The same is said of Ultrogoda, queen of the most Christian King Childebert,[2] because she was a comforter of the poor and a helper of the servants of God and of monks. And [it is said] also of Queen Radegund, truly a most faithful handmaiden of God, queen of the late elder King Clothar,[3] whom the grace of the Holy Spirit had so inflamed that she left her husband while he was still alive and consecrated herself to the Lord Christ under the holy veil, and, with Christ as her spouse, accomplished many good things. These things are read in her Acts.[4]

Chapter 19

But it is pleasing, nevertheless, to consider this about her whom it here concerns: the Lady Balthild. Her many good deeds were accomplished in our times, and that these things were done by her herself we have learned in the best manner. Concerning these things, we have here commemorated a few out of the many, and we do not think her to be the inferior in merits of those earlier [queens]; rather we know her to have outdone them in holy striving. After the many good things which she did before her evangelical perfection, she gave herself over to voluntary holy obedience and as a true nun she happily completed her blessed life under complete religious practice.

HERE ENDS THE LIFE OF SAINT BALTHILD, QUEEN

2.11 Reforming the continental Church: *Letters to Boniface* (723–726). Original in Latin.

Born in Wessex, England, Boniface (672/675–754) entered a monastery at the age of seven, where he received an excellent education. In 716 he undertook the first of his missionary efforts by going to Frisia, where he followed in the footsteps of earlier English evangelists. In 717 he traveled to Rome, changing his name from the Anglo-Saxon "Wynfrith" to the

[1] The references are to the Merovingian king Clovis I (r.481/482–511) and the Burgundian king Gundobad (r.480–516).

[2] The Merovingian king Childebert I (r.511–558).

[3] The Merovingian king Clothar I (r.511–661).

[4] A reference to the hagiographical accounts of Radegund's life.

Latinate "Boniface" and receiving a commission from Pope Gregory II (715–731) to evangelize the people living east of the Rhine—in Bavaria and Thuringia. In fact, these regions had already been Christianized, and Boniface spent most of his time reforming churches already established rather than preaching the Word to pagans. In all of his work he was avidly supported by Charles Martel (d.741), the powerful mayor of the palace in Francia (as we may now call Gaul). After Charles's death, Boniface focused on reforming the Frankish Church itself, which he did through a series of Church councils that he called between 742 and 744. A year later he became archbishop of Mainz, but not long thereafter he returned to Frisia, which had not yet been Christianized, and there suffered a martyr's death in 754. The letters below come from Boniface's earliest period in Germany. In the first, Charles Martel offers him protection. In the second, Gregory II commends him to the Thuringians, whose Christianization he does not recognize. In the third, the pope instructs Boniface on particular matters of Christian practice.

1. Why did Gregory II support Boniface's missionary work?
2. What might explain Charles Martel's support of Boniface?

[Source: *The Letters of Saint Boniface*, trans. Ephraim Emerton (New York: W.W. Norton, 1940), pp. 47, 52–56.]

[CHARLES MARTEL COMMENDS BONIFACE TO ALL FRANKISH OFFICIALS, 723]

To the holy and apostolic bishops, our fathers in Christ, and to the dukes, counts, vicars, palace officials, all our lower agents, our circuit judges [*missi*] and all who are our friends, the noble Charles, mayor of the palace, your well-wisher, sends greeting.

Be it known to you that the apostolic man in Christ, Father Boniface, a man of apostolic character and a bishop, came to us with the request that we should take him under our guardianship and protection. Know that we have acquiesced with pleasure and, hence, have granted his petition before witnesses and commanded that this written order signed by our own hand be given him, that wheresoever he may choose to go, he is to be left in peace and protected as a man under our guardianship and protection to the end that he may render and receive justice. If he shall be in any need or distress which cannot be remedied according to law, let him and those dependent upon him come in peace and safety before our presence, so that no person may hinder or do him injury, but that he may rest at all times in peace and safety under our guardianship and protection.

And that this may the more surely be given credit, I have signed it with my own hand and sealed it with our ring.

[POPE GREGORY II COMMENDS BONIFACE TO THE THURINGIANS, DECEMBER 724]

Gregory, servant of the servants of God, to all the people of the Thuringians.

The Lord Jesus Christ, Son of God and very God, descended from Heaven, was made man, deigned to suffer and be crucified for us, was buried, rose from the dead on the third day, and ascended into Heaven. To His holy Apostles and disciples He said: "Go forth and teach all peoples, baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit (Matt. 28:19)"; and He promised those who believed in Him eternal life.

We, therefore, desiring that you may rejoice with us forever where there is no ending, neither sorrow nor any bitterness, but eternal glory, have sent to you our most holy brother, Bishop Boniface, that he may baptize you and teach you the doctrine of Christ and lead you out of error into the way of safety, that you may win salvation and life eternal. But do you be obedient unto him in all things, honor him as your father, and incline your hearts to his instruction, for we have sent him to you, not for any temporal gain, but for the profit of your souls. Therefore love God and receive baptism in his name, for the Lord our God has prepared for those who love him things which the eye of man hath not seen, and which have never entered into the heart of man. Depart from evil doing, and do what is right. Worship not idols, neither sacrifice offerings of flesh to them, for God does not

accept such things, but observe and do as our brother Boniface shall direct, and you and your children shall be in safety forever.

Build also a house where this your father and bishop may live and churches where you may offer up your prayers, that God may forgive your sins and grant you eternal life.

[REPLIES OF POPE GREGORY II TO QUESTIONS OF BONIFACE, NOVEMBER 22, 726]

Gregory, servant of the servants of God, to his most reverend and holy brother and fellow bishop Boniface.

Your messenger, the pious priest Denuald, has brought us the welcome news that you are well and prospering, with the help of God, in the service for which you were sent. He also brought a letter from you showing that the field of the Lord which had been lying fallow, bristling with the thorns of unbelief, has received the plowshare of your instruction, plowing in the seed of the word, and is bringing forth an abundant harvest of true belief.

In this same letter you inserted several paragraphs of inquiries as to the faith and teaching of this Holy and Apostolic Roman Church. And this was well done; for the blessed apostle Peter stands as the fountainhead of the apostolate and the episcopate. And to you who consult us about ecclesiastical matters we show what decision you have to take according to the teaching of apostolic tradition, and we do this not as if by our own personal authority, but by the grace of Him who opens the mouth of the dumb and makes eloquent the tongues of infants.

You ask first within what degrees of relationship marriage may take place. We reply: strictly speaking, in so far as the parties know themselves to be related they ought not to be joined together. But since moderation is better than strictness of discipline, especially toward so uncivilized a people, they may contract marriage after the fourth degree.

As to your question, what a man is to do if his wife is unable, on account of disease, to fulfill her wifely duty: it would be well if he could remain in a state of continence. But, since this is a matter of great difficulty, it is better for him who cannot refrain to take a wife. He may not, however, withdraw his support from the one who was prevented by disease, provided she be not involved in any grievous fault.

In regard to a priest or any cleric accused by the people: unless the evidence of the witnesses to the charge against him is positive, let him take oath before the assembly, calling as witness of his innocence Him to whom all things are plain and open; and so let him keep his proper standing.

In the case of one confirmed by a bishop, a repetition of this rite is prohibited.

In the celebration of the Mass, the form is to be observed which our Lord Jesus Christ used with his disciples. He took the cup and gave it to them, saying: "This cup is the new testament in my blood; this do ye as oft as ye take it." Wherefore it is not fitting that two or three cups should be placed on the altar when the ceremony of the Mass is performed.

As to sacrificial foods: You ask whether, if a believer makes the life-giving sign of the cross above them, it is permitted to eat them or not. A sufficient answer is given in the words of the blessed apostle Paul: "If any man say unto you, This is offered in sacrifice unto idols, eat not for his sake who showed it, and for conscience' sake."[1]

You ask further, if a father or mother shall have placed a young son or daughter in a cloister under the discipline of a rule, whether it is lawful for the child after reaching the years of discretion to leave the cloister and enter into marriage. This we absolutely forbid, since it is an impious thing that the restraints of desire should be relaxed for children offered to God by their parents.

You mention also that some have been baptized by adulterous and unworthy priests without being questioned whether they believe, as it is in the ritual. In such cases you are to follow the ancient custom of the Church. He who has been baptized in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit may on no account be baptized again; for he has received the gift of His grace not in the name of the one who baptizes, but in the name of the Trinity. Let the word of the Apostle be observed: "One God, one faith, one baptism."[2] We require you to convey spiritual instruction to such persons with especial zeal.

As to young children taken from their parents and not knowing whether they have been baptized or not, reason requires you to baptize them, unless there be someone who can give evidence in the case.

Lepers, if they are believing Christians, may receive the body and blood of the Lord, but they may not take food together with persons in health.

---

[1] 1 Cor. 10:28.

[2] Eph. 4:5.

You ask whether, in the case of a contagious disease or plague in a church or monastery, those who are not yet attacked may escape danger by flight. We declare this to be the height of folly; for no one can escape from the hand of God.

Finally, your letter states that certain priests and bishops are so involved in vices of many sorts that their lives are a blot upon the priesthood and you ask whether it is lawful for you to eat with or to speak with them, supposing them not to be heretics. We answer, that you by apostolic authority are to admonish and persuade them and so bring them back to the purity of church discipline. If they obey, you will save their souls and win reward for yourself. You are not to avoid conversation or eating at the same table with them. It often happens that those who are slow in coming to a perception of the truth under strict discipline may be led into the paths of righteousness by the influence of their table companions and by gentle admonition. You ought also to follow this same rule in dealing with those chieftains who are helpful to you.

This, my dear brother, is all that need be said with the authority of the Apostolic See. For the rest we implore the mercy of God, that He who has sent you into that region in our stead and with apostolic authority and has caused the light of truth to shine into that dark forest by means of your words may mercifully grant the increase, so that you may reap the reward of your labors and we may find remission for our sins.

God keep you in safety, most reverend brother.

Given on the tenth day before the Kalends of December, in the tenth year of our most pious and august Lord Leo, by God crowned emperor, in the tenth year of his consulship and the seventh of the Emperor Constantine his son, in the tenth indiction.[1]

2.12 Creating a Roman Christian identity for England: Bede, *The Ecclesiastical History of the English People* (731). Original in Latin.

A child of the cloister—he entered the monastery of Wearmouth-Jarrow in the north of England at the age of seven—Bede (673–735) was among the best-educated men of his day in the Roman, papal tradition and the expertise in Latin that went with it. Because his monastery was extraordinarily well stocked with books—brought back from the Continent (mainly Rome) by Wearmouth and Jarrow's founder, Benedict Biscop—Bede was able to consult a wide range of sources for his numerous writings. These included biblical commentaries, the lives of saints, liturgical works, sermons, scientific texts (his *Computation of Time* was particularly important for calculating the date of Easter and other movable feasts), and histories, including a *History of the Abbots of Wearmouth and Jarrow* and *The Ecclesiastical History*. Although Christianity came to England in a variety of ways, Bede emphasized the Roman contribution.

1. Why did Bede include letters from Gregory the Great in his *History*?
2. Why was the Council of Whitby held, and what was decided there?

[Source: Bede, *The Ecclesiastical History of the English People*, ed. Judith McClure and Roger Collins (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1994), pp. 37–41, 55–57, 65, 70, 152–59, 370–75, 397 (notes modified).]

[1] The letter is thus dated by the reign of Byzantine emperor Leo III (r.717–741) and his son Constantine, for whom see *The Synod of 754* (above, p. 62).

Book 1

CHAPTER 23

In the year of our Lord 582 Maurice,[1] the fifty-fourth from Augustus, became emperor; he ruled for twenty-one years. In the tenth year of his reign, Gregory,[2] a man eminent in learning and in affairs, was elected pontiff of the apostolic see of Rome; he ruled for thirteen years, six months, and ten days. In the fourteenth year[3] of this emperor and about 150 years after the coming of the Angles to Britain, Gregory, prompted by divine inspiration, sent a servant of God named Augustine[4] and several more God-fearing monks with him to preach the word of God to the English race. In obedience to the pope's commands, they undertook this task and had already gone a little way on their journey when they were paralyzed with terror. They began to contemplate returning home rather than going to a barbarous, fierce, and unbelieving nation whose language they did not even understand. They all agreed that this was the safer course; so forthwith they sent home Augustine whom Gregory had intended to have consecrated as their bishop if they were received by the English. Augustine was to beg St. Gregory humbly for permission to give up so dangerous, wearisome, and uncertain a journey. Gregory, however, sent them an encouraging letter in which he persuaded them to persevere with the task of preaching the Word and trust in the help of God. The letter was in these terms:

Gregory, servant of the servants of God, to the servants of our Lord.

My dearly beloved sons, it would have been better not to have undertaken a noble task than to turn back deliberately from what you have begun: so it is right that you should carry out with all diligence this good work which you have begun with the help of the Lord. Therefore do not let the toilsome journey nor the tongues of evil speakers deter you. But carry out the task you have begun under the guidance of God with all constancy and fervor. Be sure that, however great your task may be, the glory of your eternal reward will be still greater. When Augustine your prior returns, now, by our appointment, your abbot, humbly obey him in all things, knowing that whatever you do under his direction will be in all respects profitable to your souls. May Almighty God protect you by His grace and grant that I may see the fruit of your labors in our heavenly home. Though I cannot labor with you, yet because I should have been glad indeed to do so, I hope to share in the joy of your reward. May God keep you safe, my dearly loved sons.

Given on July 23, in the fourteenth year of the reign of our most religious emperor Maurice Tiberius, and the thirteenth year after his consulship, and the fourteenth indiction.[5] [July 23, 596]

CHAPTER 24

The venerable pontiff at the same time also sent a letter to Etherius of Arles,[6] asking him to receive Augustine kindly on his return to Britain. This is the text:

To his most reverend and holy brother and fellow bishop Etherius, Gregory, servant of the servants of God.

Although religious men stand in need of no recommendation with those bishops who have that love which is pleasing to God, yet because a suitable occasion for writing presents itself, we think fit to send this letter to you our brother, informing you that we have directed thither the bearer of this document, Augustine, the servant of God, of whose zeal we are assured, together with other servants of God devoted to winning souls with the Lord's help. It is essential that your holiness should assist him with episcopal zeal and hasten to provide him with what he needs. And in order that you may be the more

---

[1] Emperor Maurice Tiberius (r.582–602).

[2] Pope Gregory the Great (590–604).

[3] August 595 to August 596.

[4] Augustine—who should not be confused with St. Augustine (d.430), the bishop of Hippo—had been prior (just below the abbot in administrative status) of the monastery that Gregory founded on his own family property on the Caelian Hill in Rome.

[5] "Indiction" was a regular cycle of fifteen years, used initially for tax-assessment purposes, but which remained a conventional way of dating documents in the late Roman Empire.

[6] Etherius was actually bishop of Lyon (r.586–602), not of Arles. Bede adopts the term "archbishop" used in the Anglo-Saxon Church, but the Frankish equivalents were called metropolitan bishops. Similar letters were sent to the bishops of Marseille, Arles, and Tours to secure assistance and safe passage for the mission.

prompt with your help, we have specially enjoined him to tell you of his mission. We are sure that when you know this you will be prepared with all zeal to afford him your help for the Lord's sake as the occasion requires. We also commend to your charity the priest Candidus,[1] a son of both of us, whom we have sent to take charge of a small patrimony of our church. God keep you safe, most reverend brother.

Given on July 23, in the fourteenth year of the reign of our most religious emperor, Maurice Tiberius, and the thirteenth year after his consulship and the fourteenth indiction. [July 23, 596]

CHAPTER 25

So Augustine, strengthened by the encouragement of St. Gregory, in company with the servants of Christ, returned to the work of preaching the word, and came to Britain. At that time Ethelbert, king of Kent [d.616], was a very powerful monarch. The lands over which he ruled stretched as far as the great river Humber, which divides the northern from the southern Angles. Over against the eastern districts of Kent there is a large island called Thanet which, in English reckoning, is 600 hides[2] in extent. It is divided from the mainland by the river Wantsum, which is about three furlongs wide,[3] can be crossed in two places only, and joins the sea at either end. Here Augustine, the servant of the Lord, landed with his companions, who are said to have been nearly forty in number. They had acquired interpreters from the Frankish race according to the command of Pope St. Gregory. Augustine sent to Ethelbert to say that he had come from Rome bearing the best of news, namely the sure and certain promise of eternal joys in heaven and an endless kingdom with the living and true God to those who received it. On hearing this the king ordered them to remain on the island where they had landed and be provided with all things necessary until he had decided what to do about them. Some knowledge about the Christian religion had already reached him because he had a Christian wife of the Frankish royal family whose name was Bertha.[4] He had received her from her parents on condition that she should be allowed to practice her faith and religion unhindered, with a bishop named Liudhard whom they had provided for her to support her faith.

Some days afterwards the king came to the island and, sitting in the open air, commanded Augustine and his comrades to come there to talk with him. He took care that they should not meet in any building, for he held the traditional superstition that, if they practiced any magic art, they might deceive him and get the better of him as soon as he entered. But they came endowed with divine not devilish power and bearing as their standard a silver cross and the image of our Lord and Savior painted on a panel.[5] They chanted litanies and uttered prayers to the Lord for their own eternal salvation and the salvation of those for whom and to whom they had come. At the king's command they sat down and preached the word of life to himself and all his officials and companions there present. Then he said to them: "The words and the promises you bring are fair enough, but because they are new to us and doubtful, I cannot consent to accept them and forsake those beliefs which I and the whole people of the Angles have held so long. But as you have come on a long pilgrimage and are anxious, I perceive, to share with us things which you believe to be true and good, we do not wish to do you harm; on the contrary, we will receive you hospitably and provide what is necessary for your support; nor do we forbid you to win all you can to your faith and religion by your preaching." So he gave them a dwelling in the city of Canterbury, which was the chief city of all his dominions; and, in accordance with his promise, he granted them provisions and did not refuse them freedom to preach. It is related that as they approached the city in accordance with their custom carrying the holy cross and the image of our great King and Lord, Jesus Christ, they sang this litany in unison: "We beseech Thee, O Lord, in Thy great mercy, that Thy wrath and anger may be turned away from this city and from Thy holy house, for we have sinned. Alleluia."

---

[1] Candidus was being sent as Rector of the papal Patrimony, to take charge of the running of the estates owned by the Roman Church in southern Gaul.

[2] The "hide" was theoretically the amount of land that supported one family, its extent varying from place to place.

[3] A furlong is one-eighth of a mile.

[4] Bertha was the daughter of the Merovingian king Charibert I (r.561–567), whose short-lived realm had been centered on Paris. As Bede points out, she was a Catholic Christian who brought her own bishop, Liudhard, with her.

[5] How might Bede's emphasis on this image be an indirect critique of Byzantine iconoclasm? Bede was writing at the very beginning of that movement (see above, p. 62).

CHAPTER 26

As soon as they had entered the dwelling-place allotted to them, they began to imitate the way of life of the apostles and of the primitive church. They were constantly engaged in prayers, in vigils and fasts; they preached the word of life to as many as they could; they despised all worldly things as foreign to them; they accepted only the necessaries of life from those whom they taught; in all things they practiced what they preached and kept themselves prepared to endure adversities, even to the point of dying for the truths they proclaimed. To put it briefly, some, marveling at their simple and innocent way of life and the sweetness of their heavenly doctrine, believed and were baptized. There was nearby, on the east of the city, a church built in ancient times in honor of St. Martin,[1] while the Romans were still in Britain, in which the queen who, as has been said, was a Christian, used to pray. In this church they first began to meet to chant the psalms, to pray, to say mass, to preach, and to baptize, until, when the king had been converted to the faith, they received greater liberty to preach everywhere and to build or restore churches.

At last the king, as well as others, believed and was baptized, being attracted by the pure life of the saints and by their most precious promises, whose truth they confirmed by performing many miracles. Every day more and more began to flock to hear the Word, to forsake their heathen worship, and, through faith, to join the unity of Christ's holy Church. It is related that the king, although he rejoiced at their conversion and their faith, compelled no one to accept Christianity; though nonetheless he showed greater affection for believers since they were his fellow citizens in the kingdom of heaven. But he had learned from his teachers and guides in the way of salvation that the service of Christ was voluntary and ought not to be compulsory. It was not long before he granted his teachers a place to settle in, suitable to their rank, in Canterbury, his chief city, and gave them possessions of various kinds for their needs....

CHAPTER 29

Since Bishop Augustine had advised him that the harvest was great and the workers were few, Pope Gregory sent more colleagues and ministers of the word together with his messengers. First and foremost among these were Mellitus, Justus, Paulinus, and Rufinianus; and he sent with them all such things as were generally necessary for the worship and ministry of the Church, such as sacred vessels, altar cloths and church ornaments, vestments for priests and clerks, relics of the holy apostles and martyrs, and very many manuscripts....

CHAPTER 30

When these messengers had departed, St. Gregory sent after them a letter which is worth recording, in which he plainly showed his eager interest in the salvation of our race. This is what he wrote:

To my most beloved son, Abbot Mellitus, Gregory, servant of the servants of God.

Since the departure of our companions and yourself I have felt much anxiety because we have not happened to hear how your journey has prospered. However, when Almighty God has brought you to our most reverend brother Bishop Augustine, tell him what I have decided after long deliberation about the English people, namely that the idol temples of that race should by no means be destroyed, but only the idols in them. Take holy water and sprinkle it in these shrines, build altars and place relics in them. For if the shrines are well built, it is essential that they should be changed from the worship of devils to the service of the true God. When the people see that their shrines are not destroyed they will be able to banish error from their hearts and be more ready to come to the places they are familiar with, but now recognizing and worshiping the true God. And because they are in the habit of slaughtering many cattle as sacrifices to devils, some solemnity ought to be given them in exchange for this. So on the day of the dedication or the festivals of the holy martyrs, whose relics are deposited there, let them make themselves huts from the branches of trees around the churches which have been converted out of shrines, and let them celebrate the solemnity with religious feasts. Do not let them sacrifice animals to the devil, but let them slaughter animals for their own food to the praise of God, and let them give thanks to the Giver of all things for His bountiful provision. Thus while some outward rejoicings are preserved, they will be able more easily to share in inward rejoicings. It is doubtless impossible to

[1] The western section of the chancel (the space around the altar) of the extant church of St. Martin in Canterbury is thought to have formed part of the church of Queen Bertha. This reference, like that to Liudhard, hints at the survival of Christian worship in post-Roman lowland Britain prior to the arrival of Augustine.

cut out everything at once from their stubborn minds, just as the man who is attempting to climb to the highest place, rises by steps and degrees and not by leaps. Thus the Lord made Himself known to the Israelites in Egypt, yet he preserved in his own worship the forms of sacrifice which they were accustomed to offer to the devil and commanded them to kill animals when sacrificing to him. So with changed hearts they were to put away one part of the sacrifice and retain the other; even though they were the same animals as they were in the habit of offering, yet since the people were offering them to the true God and not to idols, they were not the same sacrifices. These things then, dearly beloved, you must say to our brother so that in his present position he may carefully consider how he should order all things. May God keep you in safety, most beloved son.

Given July 18 in the nineteenth year of the reign of our most religious emperor Maurice Tiberius, and in the eighteenth year after his consulship and in the fourth indiction. [July 18, 601]

Book 2

CHAPTER 1

About this time, in the year of our Lord 605,[1] Pope St. Gregory, who had reigned in great glory over the apostolic Roman see for thirteen years, six months, and ten days, died and was taken up to reign forever in the kingdom of heaven. Well indeed may we, the English nation converted by his efforts from the power of Satan to the faith of Christ, give a somewhat full account of him in this *History*. We can and should by rights call him our apostle, for though he held the most important see in the whole world and was head of Churches which had long been converted to the true faith, yet he made our nation, till then enslaved to idols, into a Church of Christ, so that we may use the apostle's words about him, "If he is not an apostle to others yet at least he is to us, for we are the seal of his apostleship in the Lord (see 1 Cor. 9:2)." [At this point, Bede relates Gregory's life and virtues.]

We must not fail to relate the story about St. Gregory which has come down to us as a tradition of our forefathers. It explains the reason why he showed such earnest solicitude for the salvation of our race. It is said that one day, soon after some merchants had arrived in Rome, a quantity of merchandise was exposed for sale in the market place. Crowds came to buy and Gregory too among them. As well as other merchandise, he saw some boys put up for sale, with fair complexions, handsome faces, and lovely hair. On seeing them he asked, so it is said, from what region or land they had been brought. He was told that they came from the island of Britain, whose inhabitants were like that in appearance. He asked again whether those islanders were Christians or still entangled in the errors of heathenism. He was told that they were heathen. Then with a deep-drawn sigh he said, "Alas that the author of darkness should have men so bright of face in his grip, and that minds devoid of inward grace should bear so graceful an outward form." Again he asked for the name of the race. He was told that they were called *Angli*. "Good," he said, "they have the face of angels [*angeli* in Latin], and such men should be fellow heirs of the angels in heaven." "What is the name," he asked, "of the kingdom from which they have been brought?" He was told that the men of the kingdom were called *Deiri*. "*Deiri*," he replied. "*De ira!* [=From anger!] good! snatched from the wrath of Christ and called to his mercy. And what is the name of the king of the land?" He was told that it was Ælle;[2] and playing on the name, he said, "Alleluia! the praise of God the Creator must be sung in those parts." So he went to the bishop of Rome and of the apostolic see, for he himself had not yet been made pope, and asked him to send some ministers of the word to the race of the Angles in Britain to convert them to Christ. He added that he himself was prepared to carry out the task with the help of the Lord provided that the pope was willing. But he was unable to perform this mission, because although the pope was willing to grant his request, the citizens of Rome could not permit him to go so far away from the city. Soon after he had become pope, he fulfilled the task which he had long desired. It is true that he sent other preachers, but he himself helped their preaching to bear fruit by his encouragement and prayers. I have thought it proper to insert this story into this Church *History*, based as it is on the tradition that we have received from our ancestors....

[1] Gregory died on March 12, 604; otherwise Bede is right about the length of his pontificate. But Bede's facts and dates are not always accurate.

[2] Ælle was king of the Deirans (in England) 559–588.

Book 3

CHAPTER 25

Meanwhile, after Bishop Aidan's death,[1] Finan succeeded him as bishop,[2] having been consecrated and sent over by the Irish. He constructed a church on the island of Lindisfarne suitable for an episcopal see, building it after the Irish method, not of stone but of hewn oak, thatching it with reeds; later on the most reverend Archbishop Theodore[3] consecrated it in honor of the blessed apostle Peter. It was Eadberht,[4] who was bishop of Lindisfarne, who removed the reed thatch and had the whole of it, both roof and walls, covered with sheets of lead.

In those days there arose a great and active controversy about the keeping of Easter. Those who had come from Kent or Gaul declared that the Irish observance of Easter Sunday was contrary to the custom of the universal church. One most violent defender of the true Easter was Ronan[5] who, though Irish by race, had learned the true rules of the church in Gaul or Italy. In disputing with Finan he put many right or at least encouraged them to make a more strict inquiry into the truth; but he could by no means put Finan right. On the contrary, as he was a man of fierce temper, Ronan made him the more bitter by his reproofs and turned him into an open adversary of the truth. James, once the deacon of the venerable Archbishop Paulinus, as we have already said,[6] kept the true and catholic Easter with all those whom he could instruct in the better way. Queen Eanfleda[7] and her people also observed it as she had seen it done in Kent, having with her a Kentish priest named Romanus who followed the Catholic observance. Hence it is said that in these days it sometimes happened that Easter was celebrated twice in the same year, so that the king had finished the fast and was keeping Easter Sunday, while the queen and her people were still in Lent and observing Palm Sunday. This difference in the observance of Easter was patiently tolerated by all while Aidan was alive, because they had clearly understood that although he could not keep Easter otherwise than according to the manner of those who had sent him, he nevertheless labored diligently to practice the works of faith, piety, and love, which is the mark of all the saints. He was therefore deservedly loved by all, including those who had other views about Easter. Not only was he respected by the ordinary people but also by bishops, such as Honorius of Kent and Felix of East Anglia.

When Finan, Aidan's successor, was dead and Colman,[8] who had also been sent from Ireland, had become bishop, a still more serious controversy arose concerning the observance of Easter as well as about other matters of ecclesiastical discipline. This dispute naturally troubled the minds and hearts of many people who feared that, though they had received the name of Christian, they might have done so in vain. All this came to the ears of the rulers [of Northumbria] themselves, Oswiu [d.670] and his son Alhfrith. Oswiu, who had been educated and baptized by the Irish and was well versed in their language, considered that nothing was better than what they had taught. But Alhfrith had as his instructor in the Christian faith one Wilfrid, a most learned man who had once been to Rome to study church doctrine and had spent much time at Lyon with Dalfinus,[9] archbishop of Gaul, having received there his ecclesiastical tonsure in the form of a crown. So Alhfrith rightly preferred his teaching to all the traditions of the Irish and had therefore given him a monastery of forty hides in the place called Ripon. He had presented the site, a short time before, to those who followed Irish ways, but because, when given the choice, they preferred to renounce the site rather than

---

[1] Aidan (d.651) was the bishop of Lindisfarne (in northern England). He had come from Ireland to teach the Christian faith at the request of Oswald, king of Northumbria (d.642).

[2] Finan (d.661).

[3] Theodore was archbishop of Canterbury 668–690.

[4] Eadberht was bishop of Lindisfarne 688–698.

[5] Nothing else is known of Ronan. The Church in the south of Ireland had by this time largely adopted Continental practices with respect to the dating of Easter.

[6] Paulinus (d.644) was bishop of York and Rochester.

[7] Eanfleda (d.*c.*704) was the daughter of Edwin, king of Deira, and Ethelburg Tata, daughter of Ethelbert and Bertha of Kent. She married Oswiu, king of Bernicia (r.642–670).

[8] Colman was bishop of Lindisfarne 661–664.

[9] Bede confused Dalfinus, who was the prefect (secular ruler) of Lyon, with his brother Aunemundus, the bishop of Lyon (*c.*650–658). Wilfrid (d.709), bishop of York and Hexham, was the chief proponent of the Roman date for Easter.

change their customs, he gave it to one who was worthy of the place both by his doctrine and his way of life. At that time there had come to the kingdom of Northumbria Agilbert, bishop of the West Saxons, whom we have mentioned before, a friend of Alhfrith and of Abbot Wilfrid; he stayed some time with them and, at the request of Alhfrith, he ordained Wilfrid priest in his own monastery. Agilbert had with him a priest called Agatho.

When this question of Easter and of the tonsure and other ecclesiastical matters was raised, it was decided to hold a council [in 664] to settle the dispute at a monastery called *Streanæshealh* (Whitby), a name which means the bay of the lighthouse; at this time Hild, a woman devoted to God, was abbess.[1] There came to the council the two kings, both father and son, Bishop Colman with his Irish clergy, and Agilbert with the priests Agatho and Wilfrid. James and Romanus were on their side while the Abbess Hild and her followers were on the side of the Irish; among these also was the venerable Bishop Cedd, who, as has been mentioned, had been consecrated long before by the Irish and who acted as a most careful interpreter for both parties at the council.

First King Oswiu began by declaring that it was fitting that those who served one God should observe one rule of life and not differ in the celebration of the heavenly sacraments, seeing that they all hoped for one kingdom in heaven; they ought therefore to inquire as to which was the truer tradition and then all follow it together. He then ordered his bishop Colman to say first what were the customs which he followed and whence they originated. Colman thereupon said, "The method of keeping Easter which I observe, I received from my superiors who sent me here as bishop; it was in this way that all our fathers, men beloved of God, are known to have celebrated it. Nor should this method seem contemptible and blameworthy seeing that the blessed evangelist John, the disciple whom the Lord specially loved, is said to have celebrated it thus, together with all the churches over which he presided." When he had said all this and more to the same effect, the king ordered Agilbert to expound the method he observed, its origin, and the authority he had for following it. Agilbert answered, "I request that my disciple, the priest Wilfrid, may speak on my behalf, for we are both in agreement with the other followers of our church tradition who are here present; and he can explain our views in the English tongue better and more clearly than I can through an interpreter." Then Wilfrid, receiving instructions from the king to speak, began thus: "The Easter we keep is the same as we have seen universally celebrated in Rome, where the apostles St. Peter and St. Paul lived, taught, suffered, and were buried. We also found it in use everywhere in Italy and Gaul when we traveled through those countries for the purpose of study and prayer. We learned that it was observed at one and the same time in Africa, Asia, Egypt, Greece, and throughout the whole world, wherever the Church of Christ is scattered, amid various nations and languages. The only exceptions are these men and their accomplices in obstinacy, I mean the Picts and the Britons, who in these, the two remotest islands of the Ocean, and only in some parts of them, foolishly attempt to fight against the whole world."

Colman answered, "I wonder that you are willing to call our efforts foolish, seeing that we follow the example of that apostle who was reckoned worthy to recline on the breast of the Lord; for all the world acknowledges his great wisdom." Wilfrid replied, "Far be it from me to charge John with foolishness: he literally observed the decrees of the Mosaic law when the Church was still Jewish in many respects, at a time when the apostles were unable to bring to a sudden end the entire observance of that law which God ordained in the same way as, for instance, they made it compulsory on all new converts to abandon their idols which are of devilish origin. They feared, of course, that they might make a stumbling-block for the Jewish proselytes dispersed among the Gentiles. This was the reason why Paul circumcised Timothy, why he offered sacrifices in the temple, and why he shaved his head at Corinth in company with Aquila and Priscilla; all this was of no use except to avoid scandalizing the Jews. Hence James said to Paul, 'Thou seest, brother, how many thousands there are among the Jews of them which have believed; and they are all zealous for the law (Acts 21:20).' But in these days when the light of the Gospel is spreading throughout the world, it is not necessary, it is not even lawful for believers to be circumcised or to offer God sacrifices of flesh and blood. So John, in accordance with the custom of the law, began the celebration of Easter Day in the evening of the fourteenth day of the first month, regardless of whether it fell on the sabbath or any other day. But when Peter preached at Rome, remembering that the Lord rose from the dead and brought to the world the hope of the resurrection on the first day of the week, he realized that Easter ought to be kept as follows: he

[1] Under Hild, Whitby was a double monastery with both men and women (in separate quarters). Hild presided over both.

always waited for the rising of the moon on the evening of the fourteenth day of the first month in accordance with the custom and precepts of the law, just as John did, but when it had risen, if the Lord's Day, which was then called the first day of the week, followed in the morning, he proceeded to celebrate Easter as we are accustomed to do at the present time. But if the Lord's Day was due, not on the morning following the fourteenth day of the moon but on the sixteenth or seventeenth or any other day until the twenty-first, he waited for it, and began the holy Easter ceremonies the night before, that is, on the Saturday evening; so it came about that Easter Sunday was kept only between the fifteenth day of the moon and the twenty-first. So this evangelical and apostolic tradition does not abolish the law but rather fulfils it, by ordering the observance of Easter from the evening of the fourteenth day of the moon in the first month up to the twenty-first of the moon in the same month. All the successors of St. John in Asia since his death and also the whole church throughout the world have followed this observance. That this is the true Easter and that this alone must be celebrated by the faithful was not newly decreed but confirmed afresh by the Council of Nicaea as the history of the Church informs us.[1] So it is plain, Colman, that you neither follow the example of John, as you think, nor of Peter, whose tradition you knowingly contradict; and so, in your observance of Easter, you neither follow the law nor the Gospel. For John who kept Easter according to the decrees of the Mosaic law, took no heed of the Sunday; you do not do this, for you celebrate Easter only on a Sunday. Peter celebrated Easter Sunday between the fifteenth and the twenty-first day of the moon; you, on the other hand, celebrate Easter Sunday between the fourteenth and the twentieth day of the moon. Thus you very often begin Easter on the evening of the thirteenth day of the moon, which is never mentioned in the law. This was not the day—it was the fourteenth, in which the Lord, the author and giver of the Gospel, ate the old passover in the evening and instituted the sacraments of the new testament to be celebrated by the church in remembrance of his passion. Besides, in your celebration of Easter you utterly exclude the twenty-first day, which the law of Moses specially ordered to be observed. So, as I have said, in your celebration of the greatest of the festivals you agree neither with John nor Peter, neither with the law nor the Gospel."

Colman replied, "Did Anatolius, a man who was holy and highly spoken of in the history of the Church to which you appeal, judge contrary to the law and the Gospel when he wrote that Easter should be celebrated between the fourteenth and the twentieth day of the moon? Or must we believe that our most reverend father Columba and his successors,[2] men beloved of God, who celebrated Easter in the same way, judged and acted contrary to the holy scriptures, seeing that there were many of them to whose holiness the heavenly signs and the miracles they performed bore witness? And as I have no doubt that they were saints, I shall never cease to follow their way of life, their customs, and their teaching."

Wilfrid replied, "It is true that Anatolius was a most holy and learned man, worthy of all praise; but what have you to do with him since you do not observe his precepts? He followed a correct rule in celebrating Easter, basing it on a cycle of nineteen years, of which you are either unaware or, if you do know of it, you despise it, even though it is observed by the whole Church of Christ. He assigned the fourteenth day of the moon to Easter Sunday, reckoning after the Egyptian manner that the fifteenth day of the moon began on the evening of the fourteenth. So also he assigned the twentieth day to Easter Sunday, reckoning that after evening it was the twenty-first day. But it appears that you are ignorant of this distinction, in that you sometimes clearly keep Easter Day before full moon, that is on the thirteenth day of the moon. So far as your father Columba and his followers are concerned, whose holiness you claim to imitate and whose rule and precepts (confirmed by heavenly signs) you claim to follow, I might perhaps point out that at the judgment, many will say to the Lord that they prophesied in His name and cast out devils and did many wonderful works, but the Lord will answer that He never knew them. Far be it from me to say this about your fathers, for it is much fairer to believe good rather than evil about unknown people. So I will not deny that those who in their rude simplicity loved God with pious intent, were indeed servants of God and beloved by Him. Nor do I think that this observance

[1] This is a reference to the account of the First Council of Nicaea of 325 in Rufinus' translation and in the continuation in Eusebius' *History of the Church*.

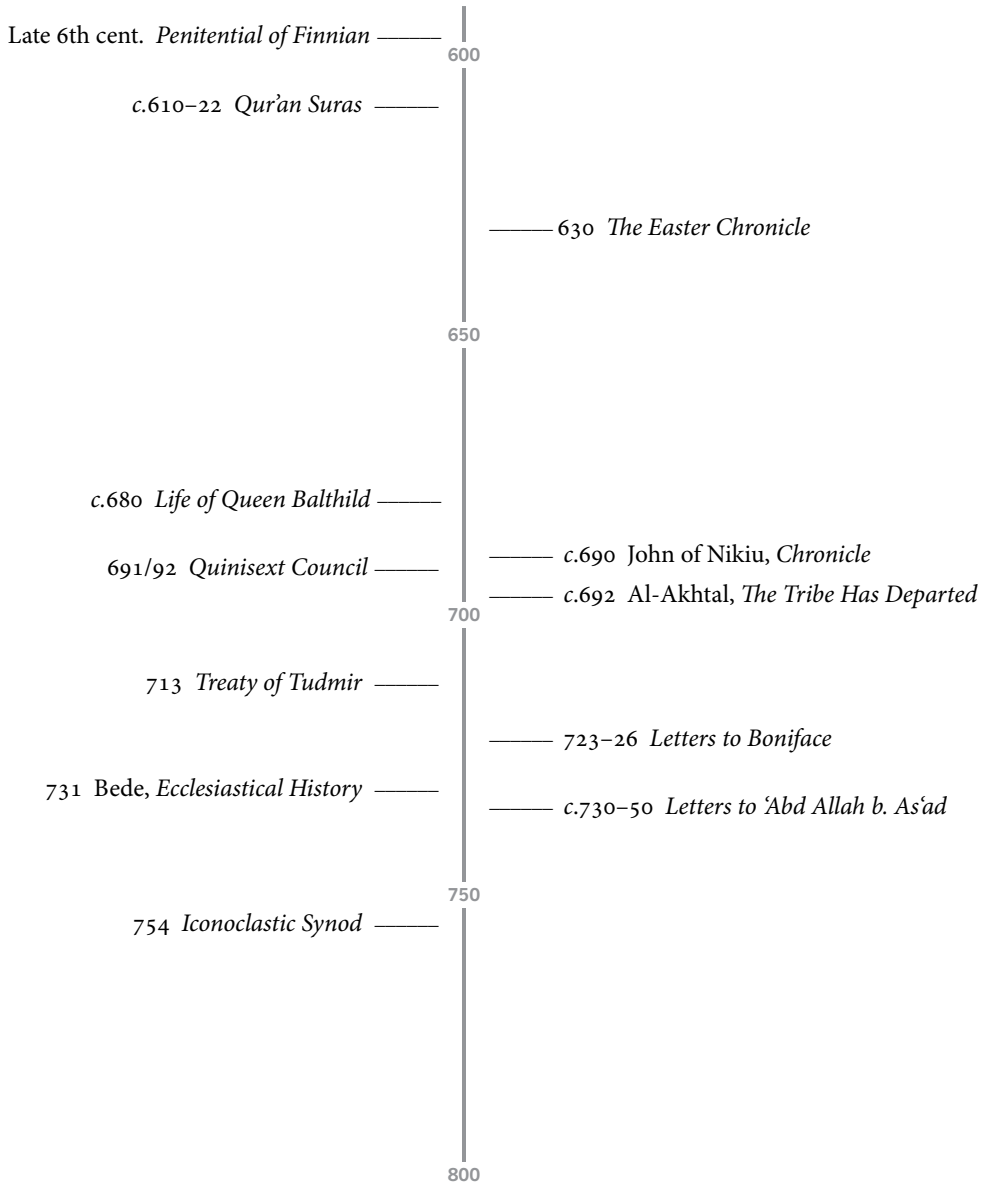
[2] Columba (d.597) was an Irish monk who left his homeland to found the monastery of Iona (in Scotland), which he used as a base for missionary work. Though he was highly praised in the Irish world, Wilfrid seems to have known very little about him—or, at least, so Bede implies.

of Easter did much harm to them while no one had come to show them a more perfect rule to follow. In fact I am sure that if anyone knowing the Catholic rule had come to them they would have followed it, as they are known to have followed all the laws of God as soon as they had learned of them. But, once having heard the decrees of the apostolic see or rather of the universal Church, if you refuse to follow them, confirmed as they are by the holy Scriptures, then without doubt you are committing sin. For though your fathers were holy men, do you think that a handful of people in one corner of the remotest of islands is to be preferred to the universal Church of Christ which is spread throughout the world? And even if that Columba of yours—yes, and ours too, if he belonged to Christ—was a holy man of mighty works, is he to be preferred to the most blessed chief of the apostles, to whom the Lord said, 'Thou art Peter and upon this rock I will build my Church and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it, and I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom of heaven'?"[1]

When Wilfrid had ended, the king said, "Is it true, Colman, that the Lord said these words to Peter?" Colman answered, "It is true, O King." Then the king went on, "Have you anything to show that an equal authority was given to your Columba?" Colman answered, "Nothing." Again the king said, "Do you both agree, without any dispute, that these words were addressed primarily to Peter and that the Lord gave him the keys of the kingdom of heaven?" They both answered, "Yes." Thereupon the king concluded, "Then, I tell you, since he is the doorkeeper I will not contradict him, but I intend to obey his commands in everything to the best of my knowledge and ability. Otherwise, when I come to the gates of the kingdom of heaven, there may be no one to open them, because the one who on your own showing holds the keys has turned his back on me." When the king had spoken, all who were seated there or standing by, both high and low, signified their assent, gave up their imperfect rules, and readily accepted in their place those which they recognized to be better.

[1] Matt. 16:18.

TIMELINE FOR CHAPTER TWO



To test your knowledge and gain deeper understanding of this chapter, please go to **www.utphistorymatters.com** for Study Questions.

III

Creating New Identities (c.750–c.900)

THE MATERIAL BASIS OF SOCIETY

3.1 Manors in the West: *Polyptyque of the Church of Saint Mary of Marseille* (814–815). Original in Latin.

In the very year that Charlemagne died (814), an enterprising clerical scribe began to make an inventory of thirteen of the estates (*villae*; sing. *villa*) held by the cathedral of Marseille—Saint Mary, the seat of the bishop—and the monastery of Saint-Vincent of Marseille. Since the properties of Saint-Vincent were administered by the bishop of Marseille, there tended to be some overlap. The resulting register, called a *polyptyque*, provides a partial snapshot of some peasant households and the products and taxes that they owed. Each villa consisted of tenements, or small landholdings. In this polyptyque they are called *colonicae* (sing. *colonica*); in other regions they were called *mansi* (sing. *mansus*).

The entries (which are labeled A, B, and so on) follow a predictable pattern. First the villa is named, and then there are entries for each holding (*colonica*). First comes the holding's location, followed by the name and status of the male tenant (*colonus, mancipium*), the name of his wife and children, the age of the children (if under fourteen or fifteen) or indication that the child is grown (here translated as "adult"). Sometimes the entry indicates which of the children are in school (precious evidence of village schooling in the period) and which are in holy orders, that is, ordained as priests, deacons, and so on. The adult children's husbands and wives are sometimes named, and sometimes we learn whether they were "foreigners"—that is, from outside the village. Dues are mentioned occasionally, but sometimes not.

1. How does this document compare with a modern census?
2. What evidence does it provide for the size and composition of peasant households in early-ninth-century Provence?

[Source: *Carolingian Civilization: A Reader*, ed. Paul Edward Dutton, 2nd ed. (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2004), pp. 214–18 (slightly modified).]

B: Description of the Dependents of Saint Mary of Marseille from the Villa Domado of that Third Part, Made in the Time of the lord bishop Waldus [r.814–818], from the seventh indiction [814]

1. Holding [colonica] at Nemphas. Martinus, colonus. Wife Dominica. Bertemarus, an adult son. Desideria, an adult daughter. It pays the tax: 1 pig, 1 suckling [pig]; 2 fattened hens; 10 chickens; 40 eggs. Savarildis, an adult woman. Olisirga, a daughter 10 years old. Rica, a daughter 9 years old.
2. Holding of a colonus in vineyards. Ingoaldus, a dependent [mancipium]. Wife Unuldis. Martinus, a son; wife Magna. Onoria, a daughter, with a foreign husband. Deda, a daughter. Danobertus, an adult son. Ingolbertus, an adult son. Arubertus, an adult son.
3. Holding at Code: 1 lot without tenant.
4. Holding at Ruinolas: 1 lot without tenant.
5. In total these make 4 holdings.
6. Holding at Ursiniangas: 1 lot without tenant.

F. Description of the Dependents of Saint Mary of Marseille from the Villa of Betorrida,[1] Made in the Time of the lord bishop Waldus, from the seventh indiction

1. Holding in Cenazello. Ructaldus, tenant (*accola*); with his foreign wife. Ructomus, a son. Dutberta, an adult daughter. Drueterigus, a son at school. Sinderaldus, a son at school. Joannis. For pasturage: 1 denarius.[2]
2. Holding in Albiosco. Teodorus, colonus. Wife Eugenia. Marius, a deacon. Teobaldus, an adult son. Teodericus, a cleric. Ing... dus, a son 7 years old. Teodesia, a daughter 7 years old. For pasturage: 1 denarius.
3. Therein a holding: 1 lot without tenant. 2 denarii.[3]
4. Holding in Asaler. Candidus, colonus. Wife Dominica. Celsus, a son: information required. Mariberta, an adult daughter. Regitrudis, an adult daughter. Gennarius, a son, shepherd. Saviniana, a daughter: information required. It pays in tax: 1 pig, 1 sucking [pig]; 2 fattened hens; 10 chickens; 40 eggs; for pasturage: 1 castrated ram; in tribute: 1 denarius.
5. Holding without tenant in Nonticlo, which Bertarius, priest, holds in benefice. It pays tax and tribute similarly: [plus] a castrated ram.
6. Holding in the same place: 1 lot without tenant. Paulus and Valeriana, with their infants: information required. It pays tax and tribute similarly; for pasturage: 1 castrated ram.
7. Holding in Albiosco: information required.
8. Holding in Curia. Calumniosus, colonus, with a foreign wife. It pays tax: 1 denarius and similarly in tribute. Saumo, with his infants: information required.
9. Holding in the same place. Colonus Martinus. Wife Primovera. Felicis, an adult son. Deidonus, an adult son. Leobertga, an adult daughter. Martina, a daughter 6 years old. An infant at the breast. It pays tax and tribute similarly; for pasturage: 1 denarius.
10. Holding [in] Cusanulas, which Nectardus holds in benefice. It pays tax and tribute similarly.
11. Holding in Carmillo Sancto Promacio, held by the priest of the local church. It pays for pasturage: 1 denarius.
12. Holding in Cumbis: 1 lot without tenant, which Ructebertus has. For pasturage: 2 denarii.
13. Holding in Massimana. Donaldus, dependent. Wife Dominica. Domnildis, daughter. Bertarius, an adult son. Bertulfus, an adult son. Bertelaicus, an adult son. Saisa, an adult daughter. It pays for pasturage: 2 denarii.
14. Holding in Asinarius: 1 lot without tenant. For pasturage: 1 castrated ram.
15. Holding in Terciago, which Martinus holds in benefice. For pasturage: 2 denarii.
16. Holdings in Cenazellis: 2 lots without tenants. For pasturage: 1 castrated ram.
17. Holding in Tullo: 1 lot without tenant. For pasturage: 1 castrated ram. Vuarmetrudis, with her infants: information required.
18. Holding in Galiana. Cannidus, colonus. Wife Inguildis. An infant at the breast. Domecianus, a cleric. Laurada, a daughter 8 years old. It pays tax and tribute similarly. For pasturage: 2 denarii.

[1] Today Bezaudun, near Grasse.

[2] A denarius (pl. denarii) was a silver penny.

[3] Presumably this means that it pays two denarii when occupied by a tenant.

19. Holding in Cleo. Aquilo, an equitarius [a serf performing messenger duty on horseback]. Wife Vumiberga. Candidus, a son 6 years old. An infant at the breast. For pasturage: 1 denarius.
20. Holding in Gencianicus. Ursius, cleric. The dependent Lubus, son, with foreign wife, who ought to manage that holding.... Gencuonca, an adult daughter. Teodo, an adult son.
21. Holding in Nidis: 1 lot without tenant. Bernarius, cotidianus [owing daily service to the lord]. Wife Dominica. Magnildis, daughter: information required. Dominico, son. Bernardus, son. Teodranus, son: information required. In tribute: 1 denarius. Montigla, a female [serf], with foreign husband. Cenazello, son: information required.
22. Holding in Vencione. Ildebertus, a dependent. Wife Luborfolia. It pays tax: 2 denarii.
23. Holding in Cumbis: 1 lot without tenant. It pays for pasturage: 2 denarii.
24. Holding in Tasseriolas: 1 lot without tenant. For pasturage: 1 denarius.
25. Holding in Massimiana Sancto Promacio: belonging to the office of the local priest. Donobertus, Babilda: information required.
26. Holding in Camarjas, which Bertaldus, priest, holds.
27. We have a holding in Sugnone, a third part of that small village, and there are 10 holdings [there].
28. Holding in Camarja: 1 lot without tenant.
29. We have in Salo a third part of that small village, and there are three holdings without tenants.
30. Holding in Puncianicus: 1 lot without tenant.
31. Holding in Campellis: 1 lot without tenant.
32. Holding in Rosolanis: 1 lot without tenant.
33. Holding in Speluca: 1 lot without tenant.
34. Vualdebertus, Guirbertus, Ragnebertus: information required.
35. In total that makes 49 holdings.

3.2 The Byzantine countryside: Niketas, *The Life of Saint Philaretos* (821/822). Original in Greek.

Philaretos, a wealthy eighth-century Byzantine landowner, lost most of what he had and gave away the rest. His *Life* was composed by his grandson Niketas. It has many elements in common with Byzantine folktales, while Niketas himself made clear that it was modeled on the Bible's *Book of Job*. Just as the devil made a bargain with God to test the good man Job, so he did with Philaretos. Unlike most hagiographies, the *Life of Saint Philaretos* does not talk about the childhood of the saint nor his ascetic devotions (compare it with the *Life of St. Antony*, above, p. 30, which spends much time on both). Philaretos was a family man, and his eventual material success came with the marriage of Emperor Constantine VI (r.780–797) to Philaretos's granddaughter Maria, in a variant of the Cinderella story. In the course of his account, Niketas reveals much about the rural life of the eighth- and ninth-century Byzantine Empire.

1. What does the *Life* suggest were the resources held by a great Byzantine landowner?
2. What does the *Life* reveal about family life in rural Byzantium?

[Source: Lennart Rydén, ed. and trans., *The Life of St. Philaretos the Merciful Written by His Grandson Niketas* (Uppsala, 2002), pp. 61–89 (Greek omitted and notes modified).]

The Life and Conduct of Our Father Philaretos the Merciful Now among the Saints

1. PHILARETOS' WEALTH, FAMILY AND WAY OF LIFE

In the land of the Paphlagonians there was a man called Philaretos, and this man was the most noble of the men in Pontos and the Galatian region, the son of George, a farmer as the name says.[1] He was very rich and had many livestock: six hundred head of cattle, one hundred yoke of oxen, eight hundred mares in the pastures, eighty saddle horses and mules, twelve thousand sheep and he had forty-eight estates abounding in land, all separate, very beautiful and of great value, for in front of each one of them there was a well gushing forth from a hilltop, capable of watering everything that needed water from it in abundance.[2] And he had many slaves and very great possessions.

He also had a wife called Theosebo, who was likewise of noble birth and feared the Lord. They also had children, one very beautiful young boy called John and two daughters, one called Hypatia and the other Euanthia, they too very beautiful.

The man was very compassionate. When a beggar came to him asking for something, whatever it was, he first gladly offered him what he wanted from his table in satiety and then gave him what he was looking for, sending him away in peace, truly resembling the hospitable Abraham and Jacob.[3] Thus Philaretos did during many years. His compassion became famous in that region as well as in the whole East. And if through an accident somebody lost his ox or horse or some other beast, he went to the blessed man with confidence as if going to his own herd, and each man got what he needed. And whatever one lost from one's herd one could go to him and receive what one wanted. And the more he gave away, the more his possessions multiplied.

2. PHILARETOS TESTED BY THE DEVIL

When the devil saw the man's virtuous conduct, he became jealous of him as he once had been jealous of Job and demanded to have him, that he might make him poor and then see if he would show the same generosity. For, the devil said, the man does nothing marvellous when he gives to the poor out of his abundance.[4] He then obtained authority from God—for it was not possible for him to do this without God's permission, since the Lord makes poor, and makes rich; He brings low, and lifts up. He lifts up the poor from the earth, and raises the needy from the dunghill, according to the utterance of the prophetess Anna,[5] and while the man continued to distribute among the poor his cattle and the other things in which he abounded, God ceased to repay a hundredfold. At last, using his open-handedness, the cattle-lifting of the Ishmaelites[6] and numerous other methods, the devil managed to drive him to utter poverty so that he was left with no more than one yoke of oxen and one horse and one ass and one cow with its calf and one slave and one slave-girl, while all his farms were plundered by the neighbouring mighty and farmers, for, seeing that he was poor and unable to keep them and till his own soil, they divided his land among themselves, some using force, others entreating him, leaving him the property on which he lived and the house that he had inherited from his father.

Then, although he suffered all this, he never grieved nor blasphemed nor became angry, but as when a man who suddenly becomes rich is filled with joy, so this man rejoiced when he became poor, throwing off his wealth like a great burden, especially as he had in mind the utterance of the Lord: "It will be hard for those who have riches to enter the kingdom of God," and again: "It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God."[7] Dispassionate and innocent wealth manifests itself in that we use it well when at hand and when lacking bear the loss without grieving, as it has been written: wealth is an asset to those who know how to handle it, while poverty is an asset to those who can endure it.[8]

---

[1] Paphlagonia was a region in northern Anatolia, on the coast of the Black Sea.

[2] It was important for the estates to be separate because of the limited water supply. That also explains the importance of the gushing wells.

[3] For Abraham, see Gen. 18:2–8. The reference to Jacob in this context is unclear.

[4] See Job 1:6–12.

[5] 1 Sam. 2:7–8.

[6] The Ishmaelites was another word for Muslims.

[7] The passages are from Mark 10:23 and 10:25.

[8] Perhaps quoting John Chrysostom, *De eleemosyna [On Almsgiving]*.

3. PHILARETOS GIVES AWAY HIS LAST PROPERTY, HIS HOUSE EXCEPTED

a. The yoke of oxen

One day he took his yoke of oxen and his plough and went himself to his field to plough. Ploughing and thanking God that he had been counted worthy of observing God's first penalty clause: "With difficulty and sweat you shall eat your bread,"[1] and the word of the Apostle: "By so toiling one must help the weak,"[2] and again: "If anyone will not work, let him not eat,"[3] respecting God's commands and becoming filled with complete joy, he drove his yoke beyond measure without growing weary himself because of his great joy. But as he saw his yoke being exhausted, he also remembered that it is written: "Blessed is he who has pity for the lives of his cattle,"[4] stopped the yoke and prayed to God, thanking Him for such poverty.

A poor peasant was also ploughing his field when suddenly his ox fell down and died. Not bearing the loss he began to grieve and cry. Under much wailing and lamenting he spoke to God: "Lord, I had nothing but this yoke, yet you deprived me of this too. With what shall I feed my wife and my nine small children? How shall I also be able to pay taxes to the emperor? With what shall I pay my debts? Lord, you know that the ox that died had been bought on credit. and I am at a loss what to do. Therefore, I shall leave home and run away to a far country before my creditors find out and fall upon me like wild beasts. O Lord, would that you had not impoverished Philaretos the Amnian, the friend of the poor, otherwise I would have gone to him with confidence and received another ox and put it under my yoke, forgetting about the death of my ox. But now he has also become dependent on others."

Absorbed in these thoughts he said to himself: "I shall go to him all the same and at least tell him, the onetime supporter of the strangers, of my disaster, so that he can at least share my sorrow and I may get some comfort in my distress (although I know that he cannot give me anything), since he has certainly not forgotten his old compassion. For when people notice that their friends share their distress when they are hit by disaster they usually get some consolation, and when they see those who share their joy when they are successful they feel even more joy and are inspired with more love for them. Therefore the apostle says, 'Rejoice with those who rejoice, weep with those who weep; live in harmony with one another; do not be haughty, but assist the lowly;'[5] that is, to be poor with the poor, to weep with those who weep, to help the weakly, to assist the sick, and not to set one's hope on uncertain wealth." Taking his ox-goad he went away to the once rich man, the real lover of virtue,[6] who had not yet forgotten his virtues.

Then when the peasant had gone away and found the righteous man ploughing he began in tears to tell him of the death of his ox. No sooner had the righteous man heard the beginning of the story of the ox than he at once hastily gave the peasant one from his own yoke, considering it better to make up for his loss with this gift than to weep with him. The peasant hesitated and said, "My lord, one thing I know, that you have no other ox, how then will you till your field?" He said to him. "At home I have another ox, very strong and big, that can support all my family. Only take this animal and hurry home, lest your other ox should be idle and your household should know and your wife start crying even more than you." The peasant took the ox and went his way with joy, praising God and blessing Philaretos.

The honourable and righteous man took his last and only ox and the yoke on his shoulder and returned home rejoicing. When his wife saw only one ox and the yoke on the old man's[7] shoulder, she said to him, "My lord, where is the other ox?" He answered, "I became giddy in the scorching heat of the sun and unharnessed the oxen so that they could graze. I rested a little, and as I fell asleep, the ox broke loose and ran away to the field."

His son went out to the field to look for the ox. As he searched he found the peasant ploughing with Philaretos' ox. Infuriated he began to abuse the peasant, saying, "How did you dare to put another man's ox under your yoke? Truly you have reckoned us among the dead, who from such wealth have been reduced to such poverty!" The peasant answered him, "My good son, your

---

[1] Gen. 3:19.

[2] Acts 20:35.

[3] 2 Thess. 3:10.

[4] See Prov. 12:10.

[5] See Rom. 12:15–16.

[6] The name "Philaretos" means "lover of virtue."

[7] The term does not necessarily mean literally "old" but rather expresses respect.

father gave me the ox." And he also told him of his own misfortune.

When the lad heard that his father had given away the ox he went home in sorrow and told his mother what had happened to it. When she heard this, she threw her kerchief from her head and began to tear her hair. She went to her husband, upbraided him and said, "You who have got a heart of steel. certainly you have no pity on me who was unlucky enough to make your acquaintance, but at least have pity on your children, who do not know how they shall be able to live without a yoke of oxen. But you, idler, grew tired of driving your team of oxen, and wanting to lie down in the shadow, for this reason you gave it to him, for it was certainly not for the sake of God."

But he listened meekly to his wife's reproaches with a smile on his face and made no answer, lest he would be carried away by anger and destroy what he had done out of charity. So admirable was the man that he not only devoted himself to charity but also, being full of discerning and humbleness, mixed his charity with these virtues. As she continued to reproach him in the bitterness of her soul, he answered her and said, "God is very rich and I hear Him saying: 'Look up to the birds in the sky: they neither sow nor reap nor gather into a barn, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. How much more shall He not nourish us, who are superior to the birds?'[1] And further: 'Do not be anxious about tomorrow, what you shall eat or what you shall drink or what you shall put on, for the gentiles do all these things. but seek the kingdom of heavens, and all these things shall be yours as well.'[2] But I say: 'He promised to give a hundredfold to those who for His sake and for the Gospel distributed their riches, and to make them heirs of eternal life.'[3] Do you become distressed if for one ox we receive one hundred?" This he said not because he longed to receive a hundredfold in this world but to encourage the faintheartedness of his wife.[4] When the woman heard this, she became silent.

Then after five days, as the ox that had belonged to the peasant from the beginning was grazing, it did not escape the dangerous poison called the wolf's herb, but swallowed it and suddenly fell to the ground with a tremble and died. Taking the ox that he had received from the merciful man he went to him and said, "Because of the sin I committed against your children when I took the ox from you and starved them on purpose, for this reason God did not bear with my lack of concern but killed the other ox also."

But the man, being a real friend of God and a lover of virtue, got up at once and fetched his other and only ox, which he gave to the peasant, saying, "Take this as well and go and till your own soil, for I am going on a long journey so that the ox will be idle anyway." This he said, lest the peasant hesitate to accept the ox. But he took also this one and went his way filled with joy and praising God, marvelling at the man's generosity, that he had not forgotten his compassion, although he had lapsed into such poverty.

His children began to wail together with their mother, saying to each other. "It was to our misfortune that we made this man's acquaintance, for even if we had become poor, we could have consoled ourselves with our yoke of oxen and been spared from dying of hunger." But when the holy old man saw the moaning of his children and his wife, he started to assure them under oath, "My children, do not grieve, for I have money hidden in a certain place in such abundance that if you do not die but live one hundred years, it will suffice completely to feed and clothe you. For the cattle that you know we had in plenty, this I have sold in secret, since I foresaw this poverty and the spells of hunger to come, for I had learned from my parents that livestock is nothing worth: it disappears quickly, either because of the spells of winter weather or because of illness or because of robbery. When I heard this I decided that it would be better to sell it piecemeal and hide the payment in an uncorruptible chest. I often went there to make an estimate but could never count it."

When they heard this from their father. especially as he spoke under oath, they cheered up. For in his spirit the old man foresaw God's inexhaustible riches, and believing in the hundredfold reward in this age, he calculated that everything that he had distributed and given to the poor he carried in his bosom together with the eternal life. It was for this reason he had sworn without hesitating.

---

[1] See Matt. 6:26.

[2] See Matt. 6:34, 25, 32, 33.

[3] See Matt. 19:21.

[4] See 1 Thess. 5:14.

b. The horse

After a time there came imperial reinforcement[1] to the local troops for the purpose of a campaign against the Ishmaelites. As the commander of a thousand and the commander of a hundred and the commander of fifty mustered carefully the multitude of soldiers, scrupulously requiring their pairs of horses and their weapons,[2] there was one soldier, Mouselios by name, who was very poor, possessing only one horse and his weapon and nothing else; moreover, as the muster became urgent, his horse got the gripes, trembled and suddenly fell to the ground and died. The soldier got into trouble. As he could not afford another horse and the captain of hundreds refused to let him pass but rather threatened him with punishment and no little suffering, he hastened in despair to the great Philaretos and told him of his plight, asking him to give him his horse just for a moment so that he could get through the muster and escape disaster. The holy old man said to him, "Then after you have got through the muster and returned the horse to me, what do you plan to do?" He answered, "To begin with let me get through this day without being beaten by the captain of thousands; then I shall run away and go to a far country as fast as my legs can carry me, for I do not know what to do." As the venerable man heard this he immediately took out his horse with joy—it was both beautiful to look at and a good worker—and gave it to the soldier, saying, "Brother, take it as a gift and the Lord will be with you in every place and protect you from danger in the war." The soldier took the horse and went to the muster with joy, praising God and blessing the old man. But the truly God-fearing wife of the merciful man, believing with her children that he had plenty of money laid away, was no longer angry but sat silent.

c. The calf and the cow

Then only the heifer with its calf remained and the ass and his beehives, 250 in number. Another poor man came to Philaretos to beg, saying, "Servant of God, give me just one calf that I too may get a new start from your blessed gift, for your gift makes [people] cheerful, and where it entered into a man's house your blessed gift multiplied and made it rich." Philaretos took the calf and gave it to the poor man with joy. The man tied it and went his way, rejoicing. But the mother of the calf came to the door of the cattle shed, crying with a loud voice that even aroused the pity of the old man. When his wife heard the heifer crying her heart softened, since she knew what it means to give birth and to suckle. She said to her husband, "Even if you have surely taken no pity on your children, why don't you at least have pity on the heifer when it laments? How did you dare to separate it from its own offspring? Evidently, you will not even hesitate to separate me from you or from my own children." The man embraced his wife, blessed her and said, "Blessed be you by the Lord, because you rightly said this to me! I am truly merciless and pitiless, since I severed the calf from its mother. For this God will also be grieved with me." And he began to run after the poor man and cry with a loud voice, "Man, return the calf, for its mother is crying at the door of my house!" The poor man turned back with the calf, thinking that the old man no doubt repented so great a gift. When the mother saw her offspring, she ran to meet it, greeted it affectionately and began to give it suck. The God-fearing woman rejoiced greatly. Philaretos said to the poor man, "Brother, since my wife says that I committed a sin when I separated the calf from its mother, take its mother too and go your way, and the Lord shall bless you and make it multiply in your house as He once multiplied my herd." Which also came to pass, for so many cattle did the poor man receive from this blessed gift and so rich did he become, that his herd became even greater than the herd of the old man had been. But the woman blamed herself and said, "This served me right! If I had remained silent, I would not also have deprived my children of the mother of the calf."

d. The donkey

Then only the ass remained and the beehives. There was famine, and as the man did not know how to feed his children, he took his donkey and went into a far country and borrowed six bushels of grain, which he put on the donkey and carried home. At the same time as he unloaded the animal, a poor man appeared asking for one handful of grain. The merciful man said to his wife, who was sifting the grain together with her maid, "Woman, give one bushel of the grain to the poor man." She said to him, "Give this bushel to me, and one each to your children. and one to my daughter-in-law and the same to my maid, and if there is anything left, give it to whom it

[1] This refers to the *tagmata*, the mobile troops at the command of the emperor.

[2] The officer was trying to muster irregular troops because of the emergency. Note that the men were expected to provide their own horse and weaponry.

pleases you." He asked, "And what about my share?" She answered, "You are an angel and not a human being and do not need food, for if you had needed it, you would not have carried the grain you borrowed so many miles only to give it to others." And getting simply furious with him she said, "As far as Theosebo is concerned, give him two bushels."[1] The old man said, "Blessed be you by the Lord!" And he measured out two bushels and gave them to the poor man. But she became cross with him, as it were, and said, "If it had been me, I would have given him half of the load." He measured out the third bushel and gave him. As the poor man had no vessel in which to put the grain, he wanted to take off his garment but did not know how, since he had only one tunic, and became worried, being at a loss what to do. When the God-fearing woman noticed the poor man's perplexity and the venerable man's hurry to see him off, she said ironically to her husband, "If it had been me, I would have given him the sack as well." And he did so. But she threw the sieve on the ground, got up and said to her husband, "As far as Theosebo is concerned, give him also the other full sack." And he did so. As the poor man was leaving but was unable to carry all the six bushels he cried to the new Job,[2] "My Lord, let the grain stay here while I carry two bushels at a time to my home, for I cannot carry it all at once." When the God-fearing woman heard this, she sighed and said to her husband, "Give him also the donkey, lest the man makes his back ache." He blessed her, saddled and loaded the donkey, gave it to the poor man and sent him away gladly. And he began to cite the popular country saying, "A poor man should not worry; I myself came forth naked from my mother's womb, and naked shall I return thither."[3]

Then the mother sat hungry with her children, having no flour with which to bake bread to feed them, but since she could not stand seeing them starving, she got up and went to the neighbours, looking for bread to borrow. And having found one loaf she collected wild vegetables and brought it to her children. In the evening they ate and went to bed, but they did not invite the old man. He did not become angry but also went to their neighbour's house and ate and went to bed with gratitude.

4. THE BRIDE SHOW

a. The arrival of the envoys

At this time, when the Christ-loving *augusta* Irene reigned with her son the emperor Constantine, the empress was searching the whole land of the Romans from east to west for a girl to be chosen as consort for her son, the emperor.[4] Having in vain searched the whole west, south and north her men came to the region of Pontos. During their search they came to the merciful man's village, situated in inland Paphlagonia. The name of the village is Amnia, and it belongs to the jurisdiction of the city of Gangra. When the imperial envoys noticed the old man's house, which was old and very large and wholly pleasant, they thought that one of the great men lived in it and commanded their servants and billet-officers to make them lodge there. The elders of the village said to the imperial envoys, "No, Sirs, do not go to that house, for even if it looks great and honourable from the outside, it has nothing inside." But the imperial envoys, who thought that they said this by order of the master of the house, lest they take up their quarters there because he was rich and powerful, angrily told their servants, "Just go ahead, let us go to this house."

b. Philaretos' hospitality

The truly hospitable man and lover of God took his stick and met the imperial envoys outside his house, embraced them with great joy and said, "Welcome, my Lordships, whom God led to their servant's house! What made you do a poor man the honor of coming to his hut?" And he began anxiously to give instructions to his wife, saying, "Woman, make us a good meal, lest we be put to shame before such noble men!" But she answered, "The way you have run your house you have not left a single hen to me; now you can prepare wild plants and entertain the emperors' men with them!" But the man said to her, "Just make fire, put the great dining-room in order, wipe the old ivory table, and God will send food for their meal."[5] And she did so.

And look, the elders of the village came to the compassionate old man through the side door bringing him

[1] Theosebo is the name of Philaretos' wife. So, in effect she is saying, "As far as I am concerned, give him two bushels."

[2] The "new Job" is, of course, Philaretos.

[3] See Job 1:21, but apparently it was also a common saying.

[4] Irene was regent for her son Constantine VI (r.780–797) between 780 and 790 and ruled as emperor in her own name 797–802. The wedding between Constantine VI and Philaretos's granddaughter Maria took place in 788.

[5] It was unusual for Byzantine peasant families to have an ivory table; by mentioning it here, Niketas emphasizes how very rich the saint had been.

rams and lambs and hens and pigeons and choice wine and, in short, all that was needed. And from all this his wife prepared the most delicious dishes, as she had used to do earlier when they were rich. When the table had been laid in the great dining-room the imperial envoys entered, and when they saw that the dining-room was very beautiful and also that the table was of ivory, old, gilded all over, of round form, and so large that it could seat thirty-six men, and when they further saw that the food put on it was like that of a king and that the man was venerable and very handsome—for he was truly not only the very image of Abraham in hospitality but also like him in appearance—they were very pleased with him. When they had sat down at the table, the old man's son, John by name, entered. He was very handsome, for in his stature he was like Saul, and he had the hair of Abessalom and the beauty of Joseph.[1] His other offspring also came in, the sons of his sons, seven in number, all adorned with beauty. When the imperial envoys saw them, they were delighted by their beauty. They said to the merciful old man, "Venerable Father, have you got a wife?" He answered, "Yes, gentlemen, I have, and these young boys are my children and grandchildren." They said to him, "May your wife come here too and give us her blessing!" He called his wife, and she came out to the men. She was also handsome and so beautiful in appearance that her equal was not to be found in the whole region of Pontos. Seeing that she, too, was shining all around with such beauty, although she was in her old age, the imperial envoys said to them, "Do you have daughters?" The old man answered, "I have two daughters, mothers of the boys whom you see." The imperial envoys said, "Surely these boys also have sisters?" The old man answered, "My elder daughter has three daughters." The emperors's men said, "May the girls come out, that we may have a look at them according to the divine command of our great emperors, crowned by God, for they commanded us, their unworthy servants, that no girl in the whole land of the Romans should escape being seen by us." The old man said to the imperial envoys, "Gentlemen, let us eat and drink of what God has given us and be merry! And then, being tired after a long journey, go to sleep in tranquillity and let God's will be done tomorrow!" And it was so.

c. Maria qualifies for the competition. Departure for Constantinople

When they got up in the morning they asked for the girls again with great zest. But the old man said to them, "Gentlemen, even if we are poor, our daughters never left their chamber.[2] But if you like, my Lordships, go into their chamber and look at them!" The men got up and eagerly went into the chamber, and the old man's daughters met them together with their daughters. And when they saw the mothers and the daughters modestly dressed but radiating beauty more ravishing than the appearance of any other woman, they were amazed, and in their delight they were unable to distinguish the mothers from the daughters because of the equal beauty of their appearance and said to the old man, "Which are your daughters and which are your granddaughters?" He separated them, and at once they measured the size of the first with the imperial measure and found that it corresponded to what they were looking for. Comparing with the model portrait[3] they found that this also corresponded, and likewise measuring her foot by the shoe[4] they found that it fitted. And with great joy they took them with their mother and the venerable man and their whole household and left for Byzantium with joy, altogether thirty persons in number.

[Philaretos's granddaughter Maria is brought to Constantinople and is chosen by the emperor and his mother to be the imperial bride. Her whole family is honored and showered with gifts: jewels, lands, and houses. Philaretos persists in his generosity. Before he dies, he blesses his children and grandchildren, especially his grandson Niketas, the author of the *Life*. Niketas has a vision in which he sees Philaretos sitting on a golden throne in heaven, transformed into Abraham himself, the model of faith and trust in God.]

[1] For Saul, see 1 Sam. 9:2, for Abessalom (or Absalom), see 2 Sam. 4:26, and for Joseph, see Gen 39:6.

[2] Wealthy households had areas reserved to women, the *gynaikonitis*. Though poor, Philaretos claims to have clung to this practice.

[3] The imperial officials carried a laurel-wreathed portrait of the ideal empress.

[4] Unlike Cinderella's glass slipper, this was probably an imperial purple shoe.

3.3 The sale of a slave in Italy: *A Contract of Sale* (725). Original in Latin.

This is an absolutely ordinary record of a sale, much like many others drawn up at the same time in the Lombard kingdom of Italy for land and animals. In this case, however, the item sold was a boy.

1. To what degree did the female purchaser in this transaction have freedom to do business?
2. What does the document mean when it says that the seller will protect Satrelano "on behalf of the buyer"?

[Source: *Medieval Trade in the Mediterranean World*, trans. and ed. Robert S. Lopez and Irving W. Raymond (New York: Columbia University Press, 2001), pp. 45–46 (notes modified).]

Milan, June 6, 725
In the thirteenth year of the reign of our lord, most excellent man, King Liutprand,[1] on the eighth day before the Ides of June, eighth indiction; good fortune. I, Faustino, notary by royal authority, wrote this document of sale, invited by Ermedruda, honorable woman, daughter of Lorenzo, acting jointly with consent and will of that parent of hers, and being the seller. And she acknowledges that she has received, as indeed she at the present time is receiving from Totone, most distinguished man, 12 new gold solidi [coins] as the full price for a boy of the Gallic people named Satrelano, or by whatever other name the boy may be called. And she declared that it[2] had come to her from her father's patrimony. And she, acting jointly with her aforesaid father, promises from this day to protect that boy against all men on behalf of the buyer. And if the boy is injured or taken away and they [Ermedruda and Lorenzo] are in any way unable to protect it against all men, they shall return the solidi in the double to the buyer, [including all] improvements in the object.[3] Done in Milan, in the day, reign, and in the eighth indiction mentioned above.

The sign[4] of the hand of Ermedruda, honorable woman, seller, who declared that she sold the aforesaid Frankish boy of her own good will with the consent of her parent; and she asked this sale to be made.

The sign of the hand of Lorenzo, honorable man, her father, consenting to this sale.

The sign of the hand of Theoperto, honorable man, maker of cuirasses, son of the late Giovannace, relative of the same seller, in whose presence she proclaimed that she was under no constraint, giving consent.

The sign of the hand of Ratchis, honorable man, Frank, witness.

Antonino, devout man, invited by Ermedruda, honorable woman, and by her father giving his consent, undersigned as a witness to this record of sale.

I, the above Faustino, writer of this [record] of sale, after delivery gave [this record].

---

[1] Liutprand, king of the Lombards 712–744, ruled over much of northern Italy.

[2] A slave in Lombard as well as in Roman law was not considered as a person but as a thing (*res*); hence the document uses the neuter pronoun when referring to the boy.

[3] Again, the boy is considered as a thing. He may learn some skill and hence become more valuable.

[4] Ermedruda could not write her name, but she indicated her assent to the terms of the contract with a cross or other sign, recorded by the notary as her "sign." He himself supplied her name.

A MULTIPLICITY OF HEROES

3.4 Charlemagne as Roman emperor: Einhard, *Life of Charlemagne* (825–826?). Original in Latin.

Born to an elite Frankish family, Einhard (*c.*770–840) received a good education in biblical studies and Latin classics at the monastery of Fulda, which was founded in 744 by Saint Sturm, a disciple of Boniface, a religious reformer closely tied to the early Carolingians (see above, p. 92). Einhard was probably in his early twenties when he started to serve at the court of Charlemagne (r.768–814). There he was known by the other courtiers as "little Nard"—probably to rhyme with the "hard" of his name and to stress his tiny stature—and also as "Bezaleel," Moses' wonderful craftsman (see Exod. 31:1–5). But Einhard's expertise extended beyond the arts to elegant writing. This allowed him to serve as an ambassador and administrator under Charlemagne and also, for a time, under Charlemagne's heir, Louis the Pious (r.814–840). He did not produce any major writings while living at court, but later, after retiring with his wife, Emma, to the estates that he received for his service to the king, he began to write books. He was so taken with classical Latin models that his *Life of Charlemagne* was, to some degree, patterned on *The Lives of the Caesars*, portraits of the first Roman emperors written by the Roman writer and imperial official Suetonius (69–after 122).

1. What are the ways in which Einhard's good king is unlike a saint?
2. What is Einhard's attitude toward warfare?

[Source: *Charlemagne's Courtier: The Complete Einhard*, ed. and trans. Paul Edward Dutton (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1998), pp. 15–21, 23–24, 37, 39 (notes added).]

[Preface]

After I decided to describe the life and character, and many of the accomplishments, of my lord and foster father, Charles, that most outstanding and deservedly famous king, and seeing how immense this work was, I have expressed it in as concise a form as I could manage. But I have attempted not to omit any of the facts that have come to my attention, and [yet I also seek] not to irritate those who are excessively critical by supplying a long-winded account of everything new [I have learned]. Perhaps, in this way, it will be possible to avoid angering with a new book [even] those who criticize the old masterpieces composed by the most learned and eloquent of men.

And yet I am quite sure that there are many people devoted to contemplation and learning who do not believe that the circumstances of the present age should be neglected or that virtually everything that happens these days is not worth remembering and should be condemned to utter silence and oblivion. Some people are so seduced by their love of the distant past, that they would rather insert the famous deeds of other peoples in their various compositions, than deny posterity any mention of their own names by writing nothing. Still, I did not see why I should refuse to take up a composition of this sort, since I was aware that no one could write about these things more truthfully than me, since I myself was present and personally witnessed them, as they say, with my own eyes. I was, moreover, not sure that these things would be recorded by anyone else.

I thought it would be better to write these things down [that is, his personal observations], along with other widely known details, for the sake of posterity, than to allow the splendid life of this most excellent king, the greatest of all the men in his time, and his remarkable deeds, which people now alive can scarcely equal, to be swallowed up by the shadows of forgetfulness.

There is still another reason, an understandable one, I believe, which even by itself might explain why I felt compelled to write this account; namely, the foster care [Charlemagne] bestowed on me and the constant friendship [I had] with him and his children after I began living at his court. Through his friendship he so won me over to him and I owed him so much both in life and death, that I might both seem and be fairly criticized as ungrateful if I forgot the many kindnesses he conferred upon me. Could I keep silent about the splendid and exceedingly brilliant deeds of a man who had been so kind to me and could I allow his life to remain without record and proper praise, as if he had never lived? But to write and account [for such a life] what was required was [an almost] Ciceronian eloquence,[1] not my feeble talent, which is poor and small, indeed almost non-existent.

Thus [I present] to you this book containing an account of the most splendid and greatest of all men. There is nothing in it that you should admire but his accomplishments, except perhaps that I, a German with little training in the language of Rome, should have imagined that I could write something correct and even elegant in Latin. Indeed, it might seem [to you] that my headlong impudence is very great and that I have willfully spurned the advice of Cicero [himself], since in the first book of his *Tusculan* [*Disputations*], when speaking of Latin authors, he had said: "for people to set their thoughts down in writing when they cannot organize them, make them clear, or charm their readers with any style is a complete waste of time and energy."[2] Indeed, this opinion of the famous orator might have stopped me from writing [this book, at all], if I had not decided in advance that it was better to risk the criticisms of people and to endanger my own small reputation by writing [this book], than to neglect the memory of so great a man and [instead] say myself.

[The Life of Charlemagne]

1. The family of the Merovingians, from which the Franks used to make their kings, is thought to have lasted down to King Childeric [III], whom Pope Stephen [II] ordered deposed. His [long] hair was shorn and he was forced into a monastery. Although it might seem that the [Merovingian] family ended with him, it had in fact been without any vitality for a long time and [had] demonstrated that there was nothing of any worth in it except the empty name of 'king'. For both the [real] riches and power of the kingdom were in the possession of the prefects of the palace, who were called the mayors of the palace [*maiores domus*], and to them fell the highest command. Nothing was left for the king [to do] except sit on his throne with his hair long and his beard uncut, satisfied [to hold] the name of king only and pretending to rule. [Thus] he listened to representatives who came from various lands and, as they departed, he seemed to give them decisions of his own, which he had [in fact] been taught or rather ordered [to pronounce]. Except for the empty name of 'king' and a meager living allowance, which the prefect of the court extended to him as it suited him, he possessed nothing else of his own but one estate with a very small income. On that estate, he had a house and servants who ministered to his needs and obeyed him, but there were few of them. He traveled about on a cart that was pulled by yoked oxen and led, as happens in the countryside, by a herdsman to wherever he needed to go.[3] In this way he used to go to the palace and so also to the public assembly of his people, which was held annually for the good of the kingdom, and in this manner he also returned home. But it was the prefect of the court [the mayor of the palace] who took care of everything, either at home or abroad, that needed to be done and arranged for the administration of the kingdom.

2. When Childeric was deposed, Pepin [III, the Short], the father of King Charles, held the office [of mayor of the palace], as if by hereditary right. For his father Charles [Martel] had brilliantly discharged the same civil office, which had been laid down for him by his father Pepin [II, of Herstal]. This Charles overthrew those oppressors who claimed personal control over all of Francia and he so completely defeated the Saracens,[4] who were attempting to occupy Gaul, in two great battles—the first in Aquitaine near the city of Poitiers [in 732] and the

[1] In fact, Cicero (106–43 BCE), a Roman orator and writer whose Latin style was (and continues to be) greatly admired, was a major influence on Einhard. Note his reference to Cicero's *Tusculan Disputations* in the next paragraph.

[2] Cicero, *Tusculan Disputations*, 1.3.6.

[3] Although Einhard presents the Merovingians as ridiculous, in fact the cart as well as their right to wear long hair and beard had been signs of their royal and religious status.

[4] Muslims.

second near Narbonne on the River Berre [in 737]—that he forced them to fall back into Spain. For the most part, the people [that is, the Frankish nobles] only granted the office [of mayor of the palace] to those men who stood out above others because of the nobility of their birth and the magnitude of their wealth.

For a few years Pepin, the father of King Charles, had held, as if under that [Merovingian] king, the office [of mayor of the palace], which was left to him and his brother Carloman by his grandfather and father. He shared that office with his brother in splendid harmony. [Then in 747] Carloman walked away from the oppressive chore of governing an earthly kingdom. It is not clear why he did this, but it seems that he was driven by a desire to lead a contemplative life. [Hence] he went to Rome in search of a quiet life and there changed his way [of dress and life] completely and was made a monk. With the brothers who joined him there, he enjoyed for a few years the quiet life he so desired in the monastery [he] built on Mount Soracte near the church of St-Sylvester. But since many nobles from Francia frequently visited Rome in order to fulfill their solemn vows and did not wish to miss [seeing] the man who had once been their lord, they interrupted the peaceful life he so loved by constantly paying their respects and so forced him to move. For when he realized that this parade [of visitors] was interfering with his commitment [to the monastic life], he left Mount [Soracte] and retreated to the monastery of St. Benedict located on Monte Cassino in the province of Samnium. There he spent what was left of his earthly life [until 755] in religious contemplation.[1]

3. Moreover, Pepin, who had been mayor of the palace, was established as king [in 751] by the decision of the Roman pope [Zacharias] and he ruled the Franks by himself for fifteen years or more. When the Aquitainian war, which Pepin waged against Waifar, the duke of Aquitaine, for nine straight years, was over, he died of edema in Paris [in 768]. He was survived by two sons, Charles and Carloman, and upon them, by divine will, fell the succession of the kingdom. Indeed, the Franks at a general assembly solemnly established both of them as their kings, but on the condition, agreed to in advance, that they should divide up the entire territory of the kingdom equally. Charles was to take up and govern that part [of the kingdom] which their father Pepin had held and Carloman that part which their uncle Carloman had [once] governed. Both of them agreed to these conditions and each of them received the portion of the kingdom allotted to him by the plan. That peaceful agreement of theirs held fast, but with the greatest strain, since many on Carloman's side sought to drive the brothers apart. Some went so far as to plot to turn them [against each other] in war. But the outcome of things proved that the threat [of war] was more suspected than real in this case, and when Carloman died [in 771] his wife and sons, along with some of his chief nobles, took refuge in Italy. For no reason at all, she spurned her husband's brother and placed herself and her children under the protection of Desiderius, the king of the Lombards. In fact, Carloman had died [naturally] from disease after ruling the kingdom for two years with his brother. After his death, Charles was established as king by the agreement of all the Franks.

4. I believe it would be improper [for me] to write about Charles's birth and infancy, or even his childhood, since nothing [about those periods of his life] was ever written down and there is no one still alive who claims to have knowledge of these things. Thus, leaving aside the unknown periods [of his life], I have decided to pass straight to the deeds, habits, and other aspects of his life that should be set forth and explained. Nevertheless, so that I might not skip anything either necessary or worth knowing, I shall first describe his deeds inside and outside [the kingdom], then his habits and interests, and finally his administration of the kingdom and his death.

5. Of all the wars he waged, [Charles] began first [in 769] with the one against Aquitaine, which his father had started, but left unfinished, because he thought that it could be quickly brought to a successful conclusion. His brother [Carloman] was [still] alive at the time and [Charles] even asked for his help. And despite the fact that his brother misled him [by not delivering] the promised help, he pursued the campaign with great energy. He refused to back away from a war already in progress or to leave a job undone, until he had by sheer determination and persistence completely achieved the goal he had set for himself. For he forced Hunold, who had tried to take possession of Aquitaine after Waifar's death and to revive a war that was almost over, to give up Aquitaine and seek [refuge in] Gascony. But [Charles], unwilling to allow him to settle there, crossed the River Garonne and through messengers commanded Lupus, the duke

[1] For the Rule that St. Benedict wrote for this monastery, see above, p. 20.

of the Gascons, to hand over the fugitive. If he did not do this quickly, [Charles] would demand his surrender by waging war. Lupus not only gave way to wiser counsel and returned Hunold, but he even entrusted himself and the territory he governed to [Charles's] power.

6. With things settled in Aquitaine and the war over, and since the co-ruler [of Francia, his brother Carloman] was now also dead, [Charles] took up war against the Lombards [in 773]. Hadrian [I], the bishop of the city of Rome, [had] asked and appealed to him to do this. Indeed, his father had previously taken up this war at the request of Pope Stephen [II], [but] with great trouble, since some of the chief Franks, whom he regularly consulted, were so opposed to his plan that they openly stated that they would abandon the king and return home. Despite that [threat], [Pepin] took up the war against King Haistulf and quickly finished it at that time. But, although [Charles] and his father seem to have had a similar or, rather, identical reason for taking up this war, all agree that the [actual] fighting and conclusion [of the two conflicts] were different. For in fact, after laying siege to King Haistulf for a short time [in 756] in Pavia, Pepin forced him to surrender hostages, to restore the cities and fortified places seized from the Romans, and to swear that he would not try to regain the things he had returned. But Charles after he had begun the war did not stop until he had, by means of a long siege [in 774], worn King Desiderius down and had accepted his complete surrender. He forced [Desiderius's] son Adalgis, on whom the hopes of all [the Lombards] seemed to rest, to depart not only from the kingdom, but also from Italy. [Charles] restored everything that had been seized from the Romans. He also overcame Rotgaud, the duke of Friuli, who was plotting new [uprisings in 776], and brought all Italy under his control. He set up his own son Pepin as the king of this conquered land.

I would relate here how difficult it was for one to enter Italy across the Alps and what a struggle it was for the Franks to overcome unmarked mountain ridges, upthrust rocks, and rugged terrain, were it not my intention in this book to record the manner of his life, rather than the details of the wars which he waged. Nevertheless, the end result of this war [against the Lombards] was that Italy was conquered, King Desiderius was sent into permanent exile, his son Adalgis was driven out of Italy, and the properties stolen by the Lombard kings were returned to Hadrian, the head of the Roman church.

7. At the conclusion of this campaign, the Saxon war, which had seemed merely postponed, was begun again. No war taken up by the Frankish people was ever longer, harder, or more dreadful [than this one], because the Saxons, like virtually all the peoples inhabiting Germany, were naturally fierce, worshiped demons, and were opposed to our religion. Indeed, they did not deem it shameful to violate and contravene either human or divine laws. There were underlying causes that threatened daily to disturb the peace, particularly since our borders and theirs ran together almost everywhere in open land except for a few places where huge forests or mountain ridges came between our respective lands and established a clear boundary. Murder, theft, and arson constantly occurred along this border. The Franks were so infuriated by these [incidents], that they believed they could no longer respond [incident for incident], but that it was worth declaring open war on the Saxons.

Thus, a war was taken up against them, which was waged with great vehemence by both sides for thirty-three straight years [772–804]. But the damage done to the Saxons was greater than that suffered by the Franks. In fact, the war could have been brought to a close sooner, if the faithlessness of the Saxons had [but] allowed it. It is almost impossible to say how many times they were beaten and pledged their obedience to the king. They promised [on those occasions] to follow his orders, to hand over the hostages demanded without delay, and to welcome the representatives sent to them by the king. At different times, they were so broken and subdued that they even promised to give up their worship of demons and freely submit themselves to Christianity. But though they were on occasion inclined to do this, they were always so quick to break their promises, that it is not possible to judge which of the two ways [of acting] can be said to have come more naturally to them. In fact, since the start of the war with the Saxons there was hardly a single year in which they did not reverse themselves in this way. But the king's greatness [of spirit] and steadfast determination—both in bad times and good—could not be conquered by their fickleness or worn down by the task he had set himself. Those perpetrating anything of this sort were never allowed to go unpunished. He took vengeance on them for their treachery and exacted suitable compensation either by leading the army [against them] himself or by sending it under [the charge of] his counts. Finally, when all those who were in the habit of resisting had been crushed and brought back under his control, he removed ten thousand men who had been living with their wives and children along both sides of the Elbe river and he dispersed them here and there throughout Gaul and Germany in various [small] groups.

Thus, that war which had lasted for so many years ended on the terms laid down by the king and accepted by the Saxons, namely that they would reject the worship of demons, abandon their ancestral [pagan] rites, take up the Christian faith and the sacraments of religion, and unite with the Franks in order to form a single people....

13. Aside from the war against the Saxons, the greatest of all the wars waged by [Charles] was the one against the Avars or Huns, which came next [in 791]. He managed that war with greater attention and preparation than his other wars. Even then, he still led one campaign himself into Pannonia, a province then occupied by the Avars. He turned the other campaigns over to his son Pepin, to the governors of the provinces, and to the counts and even their representatives. These men very vigorously conducted this war and finally brought it to a close in its eighth year [it actually ended in 803]. How many battles occurred in that war and how much blood was spilled is indicated by the utter depopulation of Pannonia and the desertion of the khan's palace; in fact, there is hardly a trace [now] that people once lived there. All the nobility of the Huns died out in this war and all their glory vanished. All the wealth and treasure they had collected over many years was seized. No one can recall any war against the Franks that left them richer or better stocked with resources. Until then they had seemed almost impoverished. So much gold and silver was found in the [khan's] palace and so many precious objects were taken in this war, that it might be fairly said that the Franks had justly seized from the Huns what the Huns had unjustly seized from other peoples. Only two Frankish leaders died in that war: Eric, the duke of Friuli, who was ambushed by the people of Tersatto, a seaside city in Liburnia and Gerold, the governor of Bavaria....

14. Charles's final war was the one taken up against the Northmen who are called Danes. First they had operated as pirates, but then they raided the coasts of Gaul and Germany with larger fleets. Their king, Godefrid, was so filled with vain ambition, that he vowed to take control of all Germany. Indeed, he already thought of Frisia and Saxony as his own provinces and had [first] brought the Abodrites, who were his neighbors, under his power and [then] made them pay tribute to him. He even bragged that he would soon come to Aachen, where king [Charles] held court, with a vast army. Some stock was put in his boast, although it was idle, for it was believed that he was about to start something like this, but was suddenly stopped by death. For he was murdered by one of his own attendants and, thus, both his life and the war he had begun came to a sudden end [at the same time].

15. These [then] were the wars that that mighty king waged with great skill and success in many lands over the forty-seven years he reigned. In those wars he so splendidly added to the Frankish kingdom, which he had received in great and strong condition from his father Pepin, that he nearly doubled its size....

16. He also increased the glory of his kingdom by winning over kings and peoples through friendly means. In this way he so completely won over Alfonso [II], the king of Galicia and Asturias, that when he sent letters or emissaries to Charles, he ordered that in Charles's presence he was only to be referred to as his subject. By his generosity he had so impressed the Irish kings with his goodwill, that they publicly declared that he was certainly their lord and they were his subjects and servants. Some letters they sent to [Charles] still survive and testify to this sort of feeling toward him.

He had such friendly relations with Harun-al-Raschid, the king of the Persians,[1] who held almost all the east except India, that [Harun] counted the favor of his friendship as more valuable than that of all the kings and rulers in the world and thought that only [Charles] was worthy of receiving his honor and generosity. Indeed, when [Charles's] representatives, whom he had sent loaded with gifts for the most Holy Sepulcher of our Lord and Savior [in Jerusalem] and for the place of his resurrection, came before [Harun] and informed him of their lord's wishes, he not only allowed them to complete their mission, but even handed over that sacred and salvific place, so that it might be considered as under Charles's control.[2] [Harun] sent his own representatives back with [Charles's] and he sent magnificent gifts for him, among which were robes, spices, and other riches of the east. A few years before this he had sent an elephant, the only one he then possessed, to Charles who had asked him [for such an animal].

---

[1] Harun (r.786–809) was the caliph at Baghdad.

[2] One of Charlemagne's ambassadors had obtained the keys of the Holy Sepulcher from the Patriarch of Jerusalem in 799. Harun had nothing to do with this, and Jerusalem was never under Charlemagne's control.

The emperors of Constantinople, Nicephorus [I], Michael [I], and Leo [V], who were also voluntarily seeking friendship and an alliance with Charles, sent many representatives to him. But when he took up the title of emperor, [it seemed] to them that he might want to seize their empire. Thus, [Charles] struck a very strong treaty [with them], so that no [potential] source of trouble of any sort might remain between them. For the Romans and Greeks were always suspicious of Frankish power; hence that Greek proverb which still circulates: "Have a Frank as a friend, never as a neighbor."

17. Despite being so committed to increasing the size of the kingdom and to subduing foreign peoples and being so constantly preoccupied with business of this kind, [Charles] still took up many projects in different places to improve and beautify the kingdom. He achieved some of them, but not all. Probably the most outstanding of these [projects] are the church of the Holy Mother of God in Aachen, which is a remarkable edifice, and the bridge spanning the Rhine River at Mainz, which was half a mile long, the width of the river at that point. But that bridge burned down the year before Charles died. Although he thought of rebuilding it, this time in stone rather than wood, his sudden death prevented that. He also began [to build two] splendid palaces, one not far from the city of Mainz, on the [royal] estate of Ingelheim, and the other at Nijmegen on the River Waal, which passes along the south side of the island of the Batavians. Even then, if he learned that sacred churches had fallen into ruin because of their age anywhere in his kingdom, he ordered the bishops and priests responsible for them to repair them and charged his representatives with insuring that his orders had been followed.

He [also] constructed a fleet for use against the Northmen. Ships were built for this purpose near the rivers that flow from Gaul and Germany into the North Sea. Since the Northmen were constantly raiding and ravaging the coasts of Gaul and Germany, fortifications and guards were set up at all the ports and at the mouth of every river that seemed large enough to accommodate ships. With such fortifications he stopped the enemy from being able to come and go [freely]. He took the same [precautions] in the south, along the coasts of the province of Narbonne and Septimania and along the whole coast of Italy up to Rome, where the Moors[1] had recently taken to plundering. Through these measures, Italy suffered no great harm from the Moors while [Charles] lived, nor did Gaul and Germany suffer from the Northmen. The Moors did, however, through betrayal capture and pillage Civitavecchia, a city of Etruria, and the Northmen raided some islands in Frisia not far from the German coastline.

18. It is widely recognized that, in these ways, [Charles] protected, increased the size of, and beautified his kingdom. Now I should begin at this point to speak of the character of his mind, his supreme steadfastness in good times and bad, and those other things that belong to his spiritual and domestic life.

After the death of his father [in 768], when he was sharing the kingdom with his brother [Carloman], he endured the pettiness and jealousy of his brother with such great patience, that it seemed remarkable to all that he could not be provoked to anger by him. Then [in 770], at the urging of his mother [Bertrada], he married a daughter of Desiderius, the king of the Lombards, but for some unknown reason he sent her away after a year and took Hildegard [758–783], a Swabian woman of distinct nobility. She bore him three sons, namely Charles, Pepin, and Louis, and the same number of daughters, Rotrude, Bertha, and Gisela. He had three other daughters, Theoderada, Hiltrude, and Rothaide, two by his wife Fastrada, who was an eastern Frank (that is to say, German), and a third by some concubine, whose name now escapes me. When Fastrada died [in 794], [Charles] married Liutgard, an Alemannian woman, who bore no children. After her death [in 800], he took four concubines: Madelgard, who gave birth to a daughter by the name of Ruothilde; Gersvinda, a Saxon, by whom a daughter by the name of Adaltrude was born; Regina, who bore Drogo and Hugh; and Adallinda who gave him Theoderic.

[Charles's] mother, Bertrada, also spent her old age in great honor with him. He treated her with the greatest respect, to the point that there was never any trouble between them, except over the divorce of King Desiderius's daughter, whom he had married at her urging. She died [in 783], not long after Hildegard's death, but [had lived long enough] to have seen three grandsons and the same number of granddaughters in her son's house. [Charles] saw to it that she was buried with great honor in St-Denis, the same church where his father lay.

He had only one sister, whose name was Gisela. She had devoted herself to the religious life from the time she was a girl. As he had with his mother, he treated her with

[1] Muslims.

the greatest affection. She died a few years before him [in 810] in the monastery [that is, the convent of Chelles where she was abbess] in which she had spent her life.

19. [Charles] believed that his children, both his daughters and his sons, should be educated, first in the liberal arts, which he himself had studied. Then, he saw to it that when the boys had reached the right age they were trained to ride in the Frankish fashion, to fight, and to hunt. But he ordered his daughters to learn how to work with wool, how to spin and weave it, so that they might not grow dull from inactivity and [instead might] learn to value work and virtuous activity.

Out of all these children he lost only two sons and one daughter before he himself died: Charles, his eldest son [who died in 811], Pepin, whom he had set up as king of Italy [died in 810], and Rotrude, his eldest daughter, who [in 781] was engaged to Constantine, emperor of the Greeks [she died in 810]. Pepin left behind only one surviving son, Bernard [who died in 818], but five daughters: Adelhaid, Atula, Gundrada, Berthaid, and Theoderada. The king displayed a special token of affection toward his [grandchildren], since when his son [Pepin] died he saw to it that his grandson [Bernard] succeeded his father [as king of Italy] and he arranged for his granddaughters to be raised alongside his own daughters. Despite the surpassing greatness [of his spirit], he was deeply disturbed by the deaths of his sons and daughter, and his affection [toward his children], which was just as strong [a part of his character], drove him to tears.

When he was informed of the death of Hadrian, the Roman pontiff [d.795], he cried so much that it was as if he had lost a brother or a deeply loved son, for he had thought of him as a special friend. [Charles] was, by nature, a good friend, for he easily made friends and firmly held on to them. Indeed, he treated with the greatest respect those he had bound closely to himself in a relationship of this sort.

He was so attentive to raising his sons and daughters, that when he was home he always ate his meals with them and when he traveled he always took them with him, his sons riding beside him, while his daughters followed behind. A special rearguard of his men was appointed to watch over them. Although his daughters were extremely beautiful women and were deeply loved by him, it is strange to have to report that he never wanted to give any of them away in marriage to anyone, whether it be to a Frankish noble or to a foreigner. Instead he kept them close beside him at home until his death, saying that he could not stand to be parted from their company. Although he was otherwise happy, this situation [that is, the affairs of his daughters] caused him no end of trouble. But he always acted as if there was no suspicion of any sexual scandal on their part or that any such rumor had already spread far and wide.

20. Earlier I chose not to mention with the others [Charles's] son Pepin [the Hunchback] who was born to him by a concubine [named Himiltrude]. He was handsome in appearance, but hunchbacked. When his father had taken up the war against the Huns [in 792] and was wintering in Bavaria, [Pepin] pretended to be sick and entered into a conspiracy against his father with certain leading Franks who had enticed him with the false promise of a kingdom [of his own]. After the plot was uncovered and the conspirators were condemned, [Pepin] was tonsured and allowed to pursue the religious life he had always wanted in the monastery of Prüm [where he died in 811].

Another powerful conspiracy against Charles had arisen even earlier [in 785–786] in Germany, but all its perpetrators [led by Hardrad] were sent into exile; some blinded, others unharmed. Only three conspirators lost their lives, since to avoid arrest they had drawn their swords to defend themselves and had even killed some men [in the process]. They were cut down themselves, because there was [simply] no other way to subdue them. But it is [widely] believed that the cruelty of Queen Fastrada was the cause and source of these conspiracies, since in both cases these men conspired against the king because it looked as if [Charles] had savagely departed from his usual kind and gentle ways by consenting to the cruel ways of his wife. Otherwise, [Charles] passed his whole life with the highest love and esteem of everyone, both at home and abroad, and not the least charge of cruelty or unfairness was ever brought against him by anyone....

22. [Charles] had a large and powerful body. He was tall [at slightly over six feet or 1.83 meters], but not disproportionately so, since it is known that his height was seven times the length of his own foot. The crown of his head was round, his eyes were noticeably large and full of life, his nose was a little longer than average, his hair was grey and handsome, and his face was attractive and cheerful. Hence, his physical presence was [always] commanding and dignified, whether he was sitting or standing. Although his neck seemed short and thick and his stomach seemed to stick out, the symmetry of the other parts [of his body] hid these [flaws]. [When he walked] his pace was strong and the entire bearing of his body powerful. Indeed, his voice was distinct, but not as

[strong as might have been] expected given his size. His health was good until four years before he died, when he suffered from constant fevers. Toward the very end [of his life] he also became lame in one foot. Even then he trusted his own judgment more than the advice of his physicians, whom he almost loathed, since they urged him to stop eating roast meat, which he liked, and to start eating boiled meat [which he did not].

He kept busy by riding and hunting frequently, which came naturally to him. Indeed, there is hardly a people on earth who can rival the Franks in this skill. [Charles] also liked the steam produced by natural hot springs and the exercise that came from swimming frequently. He was so good at swimming that no one was considered better than him. For this reason [that is, the existence of the hot springs], he built his palace in Aachen and lived there permanently during the final years of his life until he died. He invited not only his sons to the baths, but also his nobles and friends. Sometimes he invited such a crowd of courtiers and bodyguards, that there might be more than a hundred people bathing together.

23. He normally wore the customary attire of the Franks. [Closest] to his body he put on a linen shirt and underwear, then a silk-fringed tunic and stockings. He wrapped his lower legs with cloth coverings and put shoes on his feet. In winter he covered his shoulders and chest with a vest made of otter or ermine skin, above which he wore a blue cloak. He was always armed with a sword, whose handle and belt were made of gold or silver. On occasion he bore a jeweled sword, but only on special feast days or if the representatives of foreign peoples had come [to see him]. He rejected foreign clothes, however gorgeous they might be, and never agreed to be dressed in them, except once in Rome when Pope Hadrian had requested it and, on another occasion, when his successor Leo had begged him to wear a long tunic, chlamys [a Greek mantle], and shoes designed in the Roman [that is to say, Greek] fashion. On high feast days he normally walked in the procession dressed in clothes weaved with gold, bejeweled shoes, in a cloak fastened by a golden clasp, and also wearing a golden, gem-encrusted crown. But on other days his attire differed little from people's usual attire.

24. [Charles] was moderate when it came to both food and drink, but he was even more moderate in the case of drink, since he deeply detested [seeing] anyone inebriated, especially himself or his men. But he was not able to abstain from food, and often complained that fasting was bad for his health. He seldom put on [large] banquets, but when he did it was for a great number of people on special feast days. His dinner each day was served in four courses only, not including the roast, which his hunters used to carry in on a spit. He preferred [roast meat] over all other food. While eating, he was entertained or listened to someone read out the histories and deeds of the ancients. He was fond of the books of Saint Augustine, particularly the one called the *City of God*.[1]

He was so restrained in his consumption of wine and other drinks, that he seldom drank more than three times during a meal. After his midday meal in the summertime, he would eat some fruit and take a single drink. Then, after he had removed his clothes and shoes, just as he did at night, he would lie down for two or three hours. While sleeping at night, he would not only wake four or five times, but would even get up. [In the morning] while putting on his shoes and dressing, he not only saw friends, but if the count of the palace informed him that there was some unresolved dispute that could not be sorted out without his judgment, he would order him to bring the disputing parties before him at once. Then, as if he were sitting in court, he heard the nature of the dispute and rendered his opinion. He not only looked after cases such as this at that time, but also matters of any sort that needed to be handled that day or to be assigned to one of his officials.

25. [Charles] was a gifted and ready speaker, able to express clearly whatever he wished to say. Not being content with knowing only his own native tongue [German], he also made an effort to learn foreign languages. Among those, he learned Latin so well, that he spoke it as well as he did his own native language, but he was able to understand Greek better than he could speak it. Indeed, he was such a fluent speaker, that [at times] he actually seemed verbose.

He avidly pursued the liberal arts and greatly honored those teachers whom he deeply respected. To learn grammar, he followed [the teaching of] Peter of Pisa, an aged deacon. For the other disciplines, he took as his teacher Alcuin of Britain, also known as Albinus, who was a deacon as well, but from the [Anglo-]Saxon people. He was the most learned man in the entire world. [Charles] invested a great deal of time and effort studying

[1] See the excerpt from this book above, p. 16.

rhetoric, dialectic, and particularly astronomy with him. He learned the art of calculation [arithmetic] and with deep purpose and great curiosity investigated the movement of the stars. He also attempted to [learn how to] write and, for this reason, used to place wax-tablets and notebooks under the pillows on his bed, so that, if he had any free time, he might accustom his hand to forming letters. But his effort came too late in life and achieved little success.

26. With great piety and devotion [Charles] followed the Christian religion, in which he had been reared from infancy. For this reason he constructed a church of stunning beauty at Aachen and adorned it with gold and silver, with lamps, grillwork, and doors made of solid bronze. When he could not obtain the columns and marble for this building from any place else, he took the trouble to have them brought from Rome and Ravenna. As long as his health allowed him to, [Charles] regularly went to church both morning and evening, and also to the night reading and to the morning Mass. He was particularly concerned that everything done in the church should be done with the greatest dignity and he frequently warned the sacristans that nothing foul or unclean should be brought into the church or left there. He made sure that his church was supplied with such an abundance of sacred vessels made of gold and silver and with such a great number of clerical vestments, that, indeed, in the celebration of the Mass not even those looking after the doors, who hold the lowest of all ecclesiastical orders, found it necessary to serve in their normal clothes. He very carefully corrected the way in which the lessons were read and the psalms sung, for he was quite skilled at both. But he himself never read publicly and would only sing quietly with the rest of the congregation.

27. [Charles] was so deeply committed to assisting the poor spontaneously with charity, which the Greeks call alms, that he not only made the effort to give alms in his own land and kingdom, but even overseas in Syria, Egypt, and Africa. When he learned that the Christians in Jerusalem, Alexandria, and Carthage were living in poverty, he was moved by their impoverished condition and used to send money. It was chiefly for this reason that he struck up friendships with kings overseas, so that the poor Christians living under their rule might receive some relief and assistance.

He loved the church of St. Peter the Apostle in Rome more than all other sacred and venerable places and showered its altars with a great wealth of gold, silver, and even gems. He [also] sent a vast number of gifts to the popes. During his whole reign he regarded nothing as more important than to restore through his material help and labor the ancient glory of the city of Rome. Not only did he protect and defend the church of St. Peter, but with his own money he even embellished and enriched it above all other churches. Despite holding it in such high regard, he only traveled there four times during the twenty-seven years he reigned [in 774, 785, 787, and 800–801] to fulfill his vows and pray.

28. The reasons for his last visit [to Rome] were not just those [that is, his religious vows and for prayer], but rather because residents of Rome had attacked Pope Leo [III]. They had inflicted many injuries on him, including ripping out his eyes and cutting off his tongue.[1] This [attack] forced him to appeal to the loyalty of the king [in 799 at Paderborn]. Thus, [Charles] traveled to Rome to restore the state of the church, which was extremely disrupted, and he spent the whole winter there [until April 801]. It was at that time that he received the title of emperor and augustus, which at first he disliked so much that he stated that, if he had known in advance of the pope's plan, he would not have entered the church that day, even though it was a great feast day [Christmas 800]. But he bore the animosity that the assumption of this title caused with great patience, for the Roman [that is, Greek] emperors were angry over it. He overcame their opposition through the greatness of his spirit, which was without doubt far greater than theirs, and by often sending representatives to them and by calling them his brothers in his letters.

29. After assuming the imperial title, [Charles] realized that there were many deficiencies in the laws of his own people, for the Franks have two sets of laws that differ tremendously at a number of points. He decided, therefore, to fill in what was lacking, to reconcile the disagreements, and also to set right what was bad and wrongly expressed. He did nothing more about this than to add a few items to these laws, but even those were left in an imperfect state. But he did direct that the unwritten laws of all the peoples under his control should be gathered up and written down.

[1] The attackers attempted to mutilate the pope, but they did not in fact succeed.

[Charles] also [ordered] that the very old Germanic poems, in which the deeds and wars of ancient kings were sung, should be written down and preserved for posterity. He began [as well] a grammar of his native language. He even gave [German] names to the months, since before then the Franks were used to referring to them by a mix of Latin and Germanic names. He also assigned individual names to the twelve winds, since until then scarcely more than four of them had been named....

33. [Charles had] decided to draw up a will, so that he might make his daughters and illegitimate children heirs to some part of his estate. But the will was left too late and could not be completed. Nevertheless, three years before he died, he divided up his precious possessions, money, clothes, and other moveable goods in the presence of his friends and officials. He called on them to insure that, with their support, the division he had made would remain fixed and in force after his death. He described in a charter what he wanted done with the goods he had [so] divided....

After examining this same charter his son Louis, who succeeded by divine right, saw to it that [this division of properties] was fulfilled as quickly and faithfully as possible after his [father's] death.

3.5 An Abbasid victory in verse: Abu Tammam, *The sword gives truer tidings* (838). Original in Arabic.

Poetry, so important in pre-Islamic and Umayyad Arabic culture, continued to be a preeminent form of expression in the Abbasid period. Poets flourished even under Caliph al-Mu'tasim (r.833–842), who was renowned as a warrior, not a thinker. One of the most refined, subtle, and prolific of those poets was Abu Tammam (804–846).

The attack on Amorium, so highly praised in this poem, was justified as vengeance for an earlier assault by the Byzantines on the Muslim fortress of Zibatra. The poem (line 46) speaks of a "Zibatran woman's cry"; Islamic commentators explained that a captive Zibatran woman called on al-Mu'tasim for help. When he heard her call, he abandoned his wine cup and immediately began to prepare for battle. His destination was Amorium because, as lines 15–19 make clear, it was thought to be especially dear to the Byzantines.

The poem bears some resemblance to a Qur'anic warning story. It begins with a veiled threat: the sword speaks louder than words. It continues with the enemy's pride and God's sudden justice. The end brings triumph on earth and at the Last Judgment. Stark opposites of good (al-Mu'tasim's army) against evil (the Byzantines) are at play. The various parts of the poem's argument are indicated in brackets.

Arabic poems were not read silently but rather were part of an oral performance. This one may well have been declaimed not so much to praise the taking of Amorium—the obvious topic—but to justify the caliph's mass executions carried out right after the victory in the wake of a conspiracy against him. There is a very vague allusion to the conspirators' treachery in line 62.

1. What is the poem referring to when it talks about fallacy, lies, and slander in lines 4–5?
2. Which passages reveal the poet's view of the Byzantines and their emperor?

[Source: Julia Bray, "Al-Mu'tasim's 'bridge of toil' and Abu Tammam's Amorium *qasida*," in *Studies in Islamic and Middle Eastern Texts and Traditions in Memory of Norman Calder*, ed. G.R. Hawting, J.A. Mojaddedi, and A. Samely, Journal of Semitic Studies Supplement 12 (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2000), pp. 49–55 (notes modified).]

[Signs]

1. *The sword gives truer tidings than do scriptures*;[1]
its edge is what tells *zeal* from *vanity*;[2]

2. White blades, not the black letters on the
page—these
reveal misguided doubts for what they are;

3. And knowledge flashes from the starry spears
when armies meet, not from the Pleiades.[3]

4. Where now the oracle, where now the stars
invoked to trump up fallacy and *lies*—

5. A slanderous tissue of apocrypha
that's fit for nothing when all's said and done.

6. Such marvels as they claimed! saying Fate itself
in that doomed month (which one?) would bolt from
them,

7. Scaremongers who declared the western comet
would usher in a dark catastrophe,

8. Who said stability and revolution
are ordered by the zodiacal spheres,

9. *Indifferent* as they are, fixed or revolving;
yet from them they determine destiny!

10. *The idols and the cross and what befell them,*
if stars predict, this could not have been hid;[4]

11. A victory of victories, so sublime
prose cannot speak nor verse can utter it;

12. A victory at which Heaven threw wide its gates,
which Earth put on new dress to celebrate:[5]

13. O battle of Amorium, from which
our hopes returned engorged with milk and honey,

14. *The Muslims hast thou fixed in the ascendant*,
pagans and pagandom fixed in decline!

[The city in her pride]

15. This was their dear mother city; mothers
and fathers all they would have given for her;

16. Too bold she was for Chosroes to tame her,
and Abu Karib, King of Yemen, she shunned;[6]

17. A virgin undeflowered by misfortune,
whom mishap never ventured to approach

18. Since before Alexander; and thus Time
grew white-haired; but not so Amorium.

19. *So God with jealous parsimony churned*
the years, and she the cream of aeons was,

20. Till, dazzled, black disaster came upon them
whose city had been called Deliverer.

[The city warned and destroyed]

---

[1] Here as elsewhere, Abu Tamman's lines have more than one meaning. In this first line, he reverses the conventional "pen is mightier than the sword" antithesis. He also makes sly allusion to a letter sent by the Byzantines to al-Mu'tasim saying that Amorium would be taken only when the figs and grapes ripen. The siege took place during July and August, during Ramadan; apparently, the Byzantines had a different time of year in mind. More profoundly, the line seems to suggest that the sword is mightier than the Qur'an. Is this blasphemy? The rest of the poem progressively provides the answer: it is the Byzantines who misread Scripture and whose "doubts" about its true meaning are made clear by the Islamic victory at Amorium.

[2] "Vanity" translates an Arabic word that is related to those who deny the truth of God's Book.

[3] The Pleiades is a star cluster. Astrologers for the caliph predicted that the attack on Amorium would fail. That explains the next verse, which ridicules the "oracle" and the "scaremongers" who spoke it.

[4] Here the poem skips in time to the end of the siege, when the Muslims burned down a church (hence the reference to the idols and the cross) to which the Byzantine army had retreated, killing all inside.

[5] This implies rain and flowers, but in fact the siege was plagued by drought.

[6] Chosroes was the Persian ruler who fought with the Byzantines at the beginning of the seventh century. Abu Karib was a pre-Islamic Arab hero.

21. *Amorium drew an unlucky lot*
at Ankara, her courts left desolate,

22. And when she saw her sister now in ruins,
the rot spread to her faster than the mange.[1]

23. Within the city's battlements, how many
brave horsemen, red-locked with hot-flowing blood!

24. The sword prescribed that their own blood should be
their dye, not henna as Islam prescribes.

25. Commander of the Faithful, there you gave
defeated stone and wood up to *the flames*;

26. You left there *darkest night as broadest daylight*,
driven from the city's heart by a dawn of fire,

27. As if the cloak of darkness had forsworn
its color, and the sun had never set;

28. Brightness of burning in the clinging gloom,
and murk of smoke amid a sickly daylight,

29. Here the sun rises after it has set;
there the sun sinks away before its setting.

[The city in Muslim hands]

30. Clear as if clouds had parted over it,
Fate shows the battle both pure and uncleansed:

31. For on that day the sun did rise upon
no man but chaste, nor set upon a virgin.[2]

32. The city in her ruins looked as lovely
as Mayy's haunts in their heyday to Ghaylan,[3]

33. Her cheek, though streaked with grime, appeared as tempting
as cheeks aflush with maiden modesty.

34. Gazing on her disfigurement, no need
had we of beauty or of pleasant sights,

35. Seeing so smiling a reverse of fortune
follow upon such foul adversity.

[Destiny and history]

36. *Had it but known it, heathendom's deserts*
lay in wait down the ages in our weapons:

37. *Such was God's supplicant's, His devotee's*,
His champion's, al-Mu'tasim's, grand design.

38. With victory his daily bread, his spearheads,
undulled, beg audience of no shielded soul;

39. Wherever he campaigns, in holy warfare,
a host of terrors is his harbinger;

40. Were he not leader of a mighty squadron,
he alone would stand legion in the field.

41. God flung thee at the city's towers and razed her—
none but God casts with such unerring aim;[4]

42. With bristling garrison, in her they trusted,
but God unlocks the best-manned citadel.[5]

43. "They'll find no pasture for their beasts," their captain
declared, "nor water to sustain their siege"—[6]

---

[1] Before attacking Amorium, al-Mu'tasim's forces besieged the Byzantine city of Ankara, whose inhabitants fled, leaving the city empty. Mange is a skin disease common in camels.

[2] The sun did not "set upon a virgin" refers, among other things, to the rape of the Amorian women. From sunrise to sunset, the Muslim soldiers were required to remain chaste; after sunset, they raped their captives, thus becoming ritually (but not morally) unclean. This also explains the phrase "both pure and uncleansed," which refers to the Muslim warriors.

[3] Ghaylan was an Umayyad poet. He and Mayya were a proverbial pair of romantic lovers.

[4] This line recalls the Qur'an verse that speaks of the battle of Badr, which the poem refers to directly in line 70. In fact, the various siege engines that the Muslim army brought were ineffective. The walls were breached by a betrayal: a renegade Muslim married to an Amorian woman told the besiegers where the wall was weakest. See "Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages," in "Reading through Looking," pp. XII–XIV.

[5] In other words, the inhabitants of Amorium trusted in their fortifications.

[6] These were the vain taunts of the Byzantines.

44. Fond hopes of which our swords' edges despoiled them,
our spoiling lances made them all in vain.

45. For steel and javelins are twofold vessels,
of death, and of the wells and herbs of life.[1]

46. *Summoned by the Zibatran woman's cry*,
you poured away the wine of sleep and love,

47. In hot pursuit, cool lips, refreshing kisses,
spurned, in the teeth of your realm's frontier's wrongs,[2]

48. Your answer, with drawn sword and battle-cry—
only the sword can answer such a summons—

49. To fell the mainstay of the pagan tent,
not swerving to undo its pegs and guys.[3]

50. Now when Theophilus had looked on war,
which signifies wrath and expenditure,

51. With moneys he attempts to turn its course,
but cannot stem the ocean's heaving billows.[4]

52. Rather, *the very earth beneath his feet*
quaked at no plunderer's onslaught, but *a Reckoner's*,[5]

53. Who not for lack of golden coin had lavished
a store of gold beyond all measuring:

54. The lions, yea, the lions of the thicket
spoil for the kill alone, not for its spoils.[6]

55. The emperor fled. The spears had tied his tongue;
beneath his speechlessness his guts were clamouring;

56. He left his retinue to die, urged on
his fastest steed of cowardly desertion,

57. Seeking the trusty vantage of the hills
with fearful not with joyous nimbleness.

58. Though he runs like an ostrich from the heat,
the *hellish flames* you set spread with much kindling:

59. The ninety thousands like the fabled lions,
whose lifespan "*ripened ere the fig and grape*."[7]

[The city in Muslim hands (ii)]

60. The Romans' root has been plucked out, and ah!
how sweet to Muslim souls no musk could sweeten,

61. Their anger dead, and by the sword restored
to lively satisfaction, the foe slain.

62. Our war stands firm, and holds the narrow pass
which brings all else who stand there to their knees.[8]

63. How many dazzling beauties in its glare,
embraces in its scowling gloom were taken;[9]

64. How many neck-cords there slit open, that

---

[1] In the pre-Islamic period, the spear was said to be a rope and bucket. In fact, the Muslim army carried water (in leather and goatskins), and it camped in places that had water and grass for the animals.

[2] For the Zibatran woman and the "wrongs" that the Byzantines had committed against the Muslims, see the introduction to this poem.

[3] The usual way to collapse a tent is to pull up its ground pegs and loosen the guy ropes.

[4] Theophilus was the Byzantine emperor (r.829–842). He tried to negotiate a peace—offering money, the poet says—but al-Mu'tasim would not meet with him until Amorium was taken.

[5] Al-Mu'tasim is here said to be the opposite of a plunderer; he is a Reckoner. This may be understood in three overlapping ways: he is settling scores with the emperor; he is dealing out God's reckoning; he is anticipating his own reward on the Day of Reckoning.

[6] Later Islamic commentators said that this line, which has the caliph reject money, made an impression on al-Mu'tasim, who used it to taunt a rebel who tried to bargain with gold for his life.

[7] The "fabled lions" refer to al-Shara, a proverbial place in Arabia once known for its many lions. The reference to the fig and grape recalls the false Byzantine prophecy (see p. 125, n. 1 above).

[8] A reference to the breach in the wall and the humbling of the Amorians. Rivalries over fighting in the breach brought to light a plot to murder al-Mu'tasim and to put another caliph on the throne.

[9] Many captives were taken; those who were salable were sold and the rest were burned.

the gently-nurtured virgin might be had;

65. How many a shapely form with quivering flanks
won by the quivering rapiers ready drawn.

66. White arms that, bared from out their sheaths,
proved fitter
fellows to white-armed maidens than their veils![1]

[The true meaning of events]

67. Caliph of God! may God reward your labours
for faith's true stock, for Islam and renown;

68. *You looked upon the Peace of God and saw that*
to reach it you must cross a bridge of toil.

69. If it be that the haps of time bear kinship
in an unbroken line, or stand allied,

70. *Then surely this your triumph that God gave you*
is of the noble lineage of Badr;[2]

71. Whereby *the Paleface, yellow as his name*,[3]
is downcast, and the Arabs are exalted!

3.6 Mothers and fathers: Dhuoda, *Handbook for Her Son* (841–843). Original in Latin.

A precious document for the values of the Carolingian laity—or, more precisely, for aristocratic lay women of the time—Dhuoda's *Handbook for Her Son* was written in the time of crisis just before the Treaty of Verdun (843). Her husband, Bernard, count of the Spanish March (Septimania), had once been an important courtier under Louis the Pious, but, accused of adultery with the queen, he was expelled from the court by Louis's sons. Her son William, to whom she wrote, was being held hostage at the court of Charles the Bald, partly to guarantee his father's "good behavior" and partly to ensure William's own advancement at court. Dhuoda herself remained in the south of the Frankish kingdom, attempting, as she put it, "to defend the interests of my lord and master, Bernard." She had just given birth to another son. In her *Handbook*, motherhood, politics, and religion mingle as she tries to define a righteous and honorable rule of conduct for this life and the next. Just as Carolingian court scholars wrote "Mirrors of Princes" for kings to model themselves upon (see Einhard, p. 115 above), so Dhuoda wrote a "mirror" for her son in which he could "contemplate the health" of his soul, measuring it against the mirror's standard. We have no idea how William responded to Dhuoda's advice. Bernard was executed by the king shortly after she wrote, and William was executed in 850. Dhuoda may have died before she knew about these sad events.

1. What duties did Dhuoda think her son owed to his father and mother?
2. What does Dhuoda's writing suggest about place of women in the Carolingian empire?

[Source: *Handbook for William: A Carolingian Woman's Counsel for Her Son*, trans. Carol Neel (Washington, DC: Catholic University of America Press, 1991), pp. 1, 5–6, 21–23, and corresponding notes (notes slightly modified).]

[1] Many women were raped.

[2] "Haps of time" refers to the fortunes of the caliph, who is here said to be of the lineage of the Prophet Muhammad.

[3] The "Paleface" is the Byzantine, stereotyped as "sallow."

The little book before you branches out in three directions. Read it through and, by the end, you will understand what I mean. I would like it to be called three things at once, as befits its contents—rule, model, and handbook.[1] These terms all mirror each other. The rule comes from me, the model is for you, and the handbook is as much from me as for you—composed by me, received by you....

Here Begins the Prologue.

Things that are obvious to many people often escape me. Those who are like me lack understanding and have dim insight, but I am even less capable than they.[2] Yet always there is he at my side who "opened the mouths of the dumb, and made the tongues of infants eloquent."[3] I, Dhuoda, despite my weakness of mind, unworthy as I am among worthy women—I am still your mother, my son William, and it is to you that I now address the words of my handbook. From time to time children are fascinated by dice more than all the other games that they enjoy. And sometimes women are absorbed in examining their faces in mirrors, in order then to cover their blemishes and be more beautiful for the worldly intention of pleasing their husbands. I hope that you may bring the same care, burdened though you may be by the world's pressures, to reading this little book addressed to you by me. For my sake, attend to it—according to my jest—as children do to their dice or women to their mirrors.

Even if you eventually have many more books, read this little work of mine often. May you, with God's help, be able to understand it to your own profit. You will find in it all you may wish to know in compact form. You will find in it a mirror in which you can without hesitation contemplate the health of your soul, so that you may be pleasing not only in this world, but to him who formed you out of dust.[4] What is essential, my son William, is that you show yourself to be such a man on both levels that you are both effective in this world and pleasing to God in every way.

My great concern, my son William, is to offer you helpful words. My burning, watchful heart especially desires that you may have in this little volume what I have longed to be written down for you, about how you were born through God's grace. I shall best begin there.

Preface.

In the eleventh year of the imperial rule of our lord Louis, who then reigned by Christ's favor—on the twenty-ninth of June 824—I was given in marriage at the palace of Aachen to my lord Bernard, your father, to be his legitimate wife.[5] It was still in that reign, in its thirteenth year on the twenty-ninth of November,[6] that with God's help, as I believe, you were born into this world, my firstborn and much-desired son.

Afterward, as the wretchedness of this world grew and worsened, in the midst of the many struggles and disruptions in the kingdom, that emperor followed the path common to all men. For in the twenty-eighth year of his reign, he paid the debt of his earthly existence before his time.[7] In the year after his death, your brother was born on the twenty-second of March in the city of Uzès.[8] This child, born after you, was the second to come forth from my body by God's mercy. He was still tiny and had not yet received the grace of baptism when Bernard, my lord and the father of you both, had the baby brought to him in Aquitaine in the company of Elefantus, bishop of Uzès, and others of his retainers.

Now I have been away from you for a long time, for my lord [Bernard] constrains me to remain in this city. Nonetheless I applaud his success. But, moved by longing

---

[1] Dhuoda begins by describing her own work as threefold, reflecting the Trinity of the one Christian God—Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. In doing so, she affirms her adherence to this central element in Catholic doctrine.

[2] See 2 Cor. 11:23.

[3] Wisd. of Sol. 10:21.

[4] See Gen. 1:7.

[5] The marriage of Bernard and Dhuoda at the Carolingian capital, Aachen, suggests that they were children of families of great importance.

[6] The year was 826.

[7] Louis the Pious died in 840, in his late sixties, so Dhuoda's comment is polite.

[8] The year was 841. It is possible, given the long period between the births of Dhuoda's two sons, that she saw little of her husband in the interim. Bernard was heavily involved in politics and warfare across the Frankish dominions throughout their marriage.

for both of you, I have undertaken to have this little book—a work on the scale of my small understanding—copied down and sent to you. Although I am besieged by many troubles, may this one thing be God's will, if it please him—that I might see you again with my own eyes. I would think it certain that I would, if God were to grant me some virtue. But since salvation is far from me, sinful woman that I am,[1] I only wish it, and my heart grows weak in this desire.[2]

As for you, I have heard that your father, Bernard, has given you as a hostage to the lord king Charles.[3] I hope that you acquit yourself of this worthy duty with perfect good will. Meanwhile, as Scripture says, "Seek ye therefore the kingdom of God ... and all these things shall be added unto you,"[4] that is all that is necessary for the enjoyment of your soul and your body.

So the preface comes to an end.

[In Book One, Dhuoda expounds on William's primary task: to love God. In Book Two, she discusses the Trinity, the trinity of virtues (faith, hope, and charity), and the importance of prayer.]

Book Three

1. ON THE REVERENCE YOU SHOULD SHOW YOUR FATHER THROUGHOUT YOUR LIFE.

Now I must do my best to guide you in how you should fear, love, and be faithful to your lord and father, Bernard, in all things, both when you are with him and when you are apart from him. In this, Solomon is your teacher and your wisest authority. He chastises you, my son, and says to you in warning, "For God hath made the father" who flourishes in his children "honorable."[5] And likewise: "He that honoreth his father shall have joy in his own children"[6] and "shall enjoy a long life. He that obeyeth the father shall be a comfort to his mother."[7] "As one that layeth up good things,"[8] so is he who honors his father. "He that feareth the Lord, honoreth his parents."[9] "So honor thy father," my son, and pray for him devotedly, "that thou mayest be longlived upon the land,"[10] with a full term of earthly existence. "Remember that thou hadst not been born" but through him.[11] In every matter be obedient to your father's interest and heed his judgment.[12] If by God's help you come to this, "support the old age of thy father and grieve him not in his life."[13] "Despise him not when thou art in thy strength."[14]

May you never do this last, and may the earth cover my body before such a thing might happen. But I do not believe that it will. I mention it not because I fear it but rather so that you may avoid it so completely that such a crime never comes to your mind, as I have heard that it indeed has done among many who are not like you.[15] Do not forget the dangers that befell Elias's sons, who disobediently scorned the commands of their father and for this met with a bitter death.[16] Nor should I fail to mention the tree of Absalom, who rebelled against his father and whom a base death brought to a sudden fall. Hung from an oak and pierced by lances, he ended his earthly life in the flower of his youth, with a groan of anguish. Lacking as he did an earthly kingdom, he never reached that highest of kingdoms promised to him.[17]

What of the many more who behave as he did? Their path is perilous. May those who perpetrate such evil suffer

[1] See Ps. 119:155; Douay Ps. 118:155.

[2] See Job 30:16.

[3] William had been entrusted to Charles the Bald after the battle of Fontenoy in 841.

[4] Matt. 6:33.

[5] Ecclus. 3:3. Dhuoda here assumes a traditional attribution of this Old Testament book to David's son Solomon.

[6] Ecclus. 3:6.

[7] Ecclus. 3:7.

[8] Ecclus. 3:5.

[9] Ecclus. 3:8.

[10] Exod. 20:12.

[11] Ecclus. 7:30.

[12] See Ecclus. 3:2.

[13] Ecclus. 3:14.

[14] Ecclus. 3:15.

[15] Dhuoda here clearly refers to the conflict among Louis the Pious and his sons.

[16] 1 Sam. 4:11.

[17] See 2 Sam 18:15.

accordingly. It is not I who condemn them, but Scripture that promises their condemnation, threatening them terribly and saying, "Cursed is he that honoreth not his father."[1] And again, "He who curseth his father, dying let him die"[2] basely and uselessly. If such is the punishment for harsh, evil words alone, what do you think will happen to those who inflict real injury upon their parents and insult the dignity of their fathers? We hear of many in our times who, thinking their present circumstances unjust, consider such crimes without taking into account the past. On them and on those like them fall hatred, jealousy, disaster, and calamity, and "nourishment to their envy."[3] They lose rather than keep those goods of others that they seek, and they are scarcely able even to keep their own property. I say these things not because I have seen them happen, but because I have read about such matters in books. I have heard of them in the past, you hear about them yourself, and I am hearing them even now. Consider what will happen in the future to those who treat others in this fashion. But God has the power to bring even these people—if there are such—to lament their evil ways and, in their conversion, to do penance and be worthy of salvation. May anyone who behaves so ill stay away from you, and may God give him understanding.

Everyone, whoever he may be, should consider this, my son: if the time comes that God finds him worthy to give him children of his own, he will not wish them to be rebellious or proud or full of greed, but humble and quiet and full of obedience, so that he rejoices to see them. He who was a son before, small and obedient to his father, may then be fortunate in his own fatherhood. May he who thinks on these things in the hope that they will happen consider too what I have said above. Then "all his limbs" will work "in concert, peacefully."[4]

Hear me as I direct you, my son William, and "listen carefully," follow the "instructions ... of a father."[5] Heed the words of the holy Fathers, and "bind them in thy heart"[6] by frequent reading so that "years of life may be multiplied to thee"[7] as you grow continually in goodness. For "they that wait upon"[8] God, blessing him, obeying the Fathers and complying freely with their precepts—such men "shall inherit the land."[9] If you listen to what I say above and if you put it into worthy practice, not only will you have success here on this earth, but also you will be found worthy to possess with the saints what the Psalmist describes: "I believe to see the good things of the Lord in the land of the living."[10] So that this other land may be your inheritance, my son, I pray that he who lives eternally may deign to prepare you to dwell there.

2. ON THE SAME TOPIC, ON REVERENCE FOR YOUR FATHER.

In the human understanding of things, royal and imperial appearance and power seem preeminent in the world, and the custom of men is to account those men's actions and their names ahead of all others, as though these things were worthy of veneration and as though worldly power were the highest honor. This attitude is testified in the words of him who said, "whether it be to the king as excelling, or to the governors."[11] But despite all this, my wish is as follows, my son. In the smallness of my understanding—but also according to God's will—I caution you to render first to him whose son you are special, faithful, steadfast loyalty as long as you shall live. For it is a fixed and unchangeable truth that no one, unless his rank comes to him from his father, can have access to another person at the height of power.

So I urge you again, most beloved son William, that first of all you love God as I have written above. Then love, fear, and cherish your father. Keep in mind that your worldly estate proceeds from his. Recognize that from the most ancient times, men who have loved their fathers and have been truthfully obedient to them have been found worthy to receive God's benediction from those fathers' hands....

---

[1] Deut. 27:16.

[2] Lev. 20:9.

[3] Gen. 37:8.

[4] See *The Benedictine Rule*, chap. 34 above, p. 25: "all the members will be at peace." See as well 1 Cor. 12:12–30.

[5] Here Dhuoda recalls the opening words of *The Benedictine Rule*. See above, p. 21.

[6] Prov. 16:21.

[7] Prov. 4:10.

[8] Ps. 37:9; Douay Ps. 36:9.

[9] Ibid.

[10] Ps. 27:13; Douay Ps. 26:13.

[11] 1 Pet. 2:13–14.

3.7 A Christian hero in northern Iberia: *The Chronicle of Alfonso III* (early 880s). Original in Latin.

Although probably not the author of this text, King Alfonso III of Asturias (r.866–910) may have been involved in its composition. The *Chronicle* positions itself as a continuation of the story of the Visigoths. It starts with the seventh-century Visigothic king, Wamba (r.672–680), who, the chronicler claims, successfully parried a naval attack by the Muslims (there is no other evidence for this) and went on to numerous other victories. It traces the fall of the Visigothic kingdom to the wickedness of King Witiza (r.698–710), whose immorality offends God. Finally, it takes up the renewal of the Visigoths—although, in fact, there is little tying the new king of Asturias to the old Visigothic kings—and their gradual "reconquest" of the Iberian peninsula by the grace of God. The excerpt here begins with the reign of Witiza.

1. What does the chronicler see as the relationship between political success, human morality, and God's favor?
2. What sorts of names does the chronicler use for Muslims and what might be their significance?

[Source: *Conquerors and Chroniclers of Early Medieval Spain*, trans. Kenneth Baxter Wolf (Liverpool: Liverpool University Press, 1990), pp. 162–69 (notes modified).]

5. In the era 739 (701), after the death of Egica, Witiza returned to Toledo to the royal throne.[1] He was a reprobate and was disgraceful in his habits. He dissolved the councils. He sealed the canons. He took many wives and concubines. And so that no council would be convened against him, he ordered the bishops, priests, and deacons to take wives.[2] This, then, was the cause of Spain's ruin. Thus says the scripture, "Because iniquity abounded, charity grew cold."[3] And another passage from scripture says, "If the people sin, the priest prays, but if the priests sin, there will be a plague upon the people."[4] They withdrew from the Lord so that they did not walk in the paths of his precepts or attentively observe how the Lord prohibited priests from acting evilly when he said to Moses in Exodus, "Let the priests who come to the Lord God be sanctified lest the Lord forsake them."[5] And again: "When they approach to serve at the holy altar, let them not bring along any sin within them lest perchance they die."[6] And because the kings and priests forsook the Lord, all of the armies of Spain perished. Meanwhile, after the tenth year of his reign, Witiza passed away with a natural death in Toledo, in the era 749 (711).

7. After Witiza died, Roderic [r.710–711/12] was anointed as king. In his time Spain grew even worse in its iniquity. In the third year of his rule, the Saracens entered Spain on account of the treachery of the sons of Witiza.[7] When the king became aware of their invasion, he immediately went out with his army to fight against them. But, weighed down by the quantity of their sins and exposed by the treachery of the sons of Witiza, the Goths were

[1] The *Chronicle* used a dating system by "era" that does not quite correspond to modern dates.

[2] The chronicler considered this the worst of Witiza's sins, but the king may simply have been trying to implement the canons of the Quinisext Council (see p. 60) allowing clergymen to keep their wives if they had been married before their ordination.

[3] Matt. 24:12.

[4] Num. 8:19, 16, 46–48.

[5] Exod. 19:22.

[6] Lev. 12:33; Matt. 5:23.

[7] "Saracens" refer to Muslims.

put to flight.[1] The army, fleeing to its destruction, was almost annihilated. Because they forsook the Lord and did not serve him in justice and truth, they were forsaken by the Lord so that they could no longer inhabit the land that they desired. Concerning the aforementioned King Roderic, we know nothing certain about his death. But in our own unrefined times, when the city of Viseo and its suburbs were being settled by our order,[2] a monument was found in a certain basilica there, upon which was inscribed an epitaph in this manner: "Here lies Roderic, the last king of the Goths." But let us return to that time when the Saracens entered Spain on the third day before the Ides of November, era 752 (November 11, 714).

8. The Arabs, after oppressing the region along with the kingdom, killed many with the sword and subjugated the rest to themselves by mollifying them with a covenant of peace. The city of Toledo, victor over all peoples, succumbed, vanquished by the victories of the Ishmaelites; subjected, it served them.[3] They placed prefects throughout all the provinces of Spain and paid tribute to the Babylonian king for many years until they elected their own king and established for themselves a kingdom in the patrician city of Córdoba.[4] At almost the same time, in this region of the Asturians, there was in the city of Gijón a prefect by the name of Munnuza, a companion of Tariq.[5] While he held the prefecture, a certain Pelayo, the swordbearer of the kings Witiza and Roderic, oppressed by the dominion of the Ishmaelites, had come to Asturias along with his sister. On account of her, Munnuza sent Pelayo to Córdoba as his envoy.[6] Before Pelayo returned, Munnuza married his sister through some strategem. When Pelayo returned he by no means consented to it. Since he had already been thinking about the salvation of the church, he hastened to bring this about with all of his courage. Then the evil Tariq sent soldiers to Munnuza, who were to apprehend Pelayo and lead him back to Córdoba, bound in chains. When they came to Asturias, seeking to apprehend him treacherously in a village called Brece, the plan of the Chaldeans was made known to Pelayo by a friend.[7] Seeing that it would be impossible for him to resist the Saracens because they were so numerous, Pelayo escaped from among them, rushed off and came to the edge of the river Piloña.[8] He found it overflowing its banks, but by swimming with the help of the horse upon which he sat, he crossed to the opposite side and climbed a mountain. The Saracens stopped pursuing him. As he was heading into the mountains, Pelayo joined himself to as many people as he found hastening to assemble. He climbed a high mountain called Auseva and headed for a cave on the side of the mountain which he knew to be very safe.[9] From this great cave flows a stream called the Enna. After Pelayo sent an order to all of the Asturians, they gathered together in one group and elected him their leader.[10] Hearing this, the soldiers who had come to apprehend him returned to Córdoba and related everything to their king, saying that Pelayo, as Munnuza had suggested, was clearly a rebel. Hearing this, the king, moved by an insane fury, ordered a very large army from all over Spain to go forth and he placed Alqamah, his companion, in charge of it. He ordered Oppa, a certain bishop of the see of Toledo and son of King Witiza—on account of whose treachery the Goths had perished—to go with Alqamah and the army to Asturias. Alqamah was advised by his colleague Tariq that if Pelayo refused to come to terms with the bishop, he should be taken by force in battle and brought to Córdoba. Coming

[1] The "Goths" are the "Visigoths."

[2] The phrase "settled by our order" seems to imply that King Alfonso himself was the author of the *Chronicle*. Viseo is in northwest Spain, at that time part of the Kingdom of Asturias.

[3] The "Ishmaelites" are the Muslims.

[4] The "Babylonian king" refers to the caliph in Damascus. "Their own king" refers to Umayyad prince Abd al-Rahman I, who escaped the Abbasid revolution of 750 and established an independent Umayyad emirate in 756. In fact, the Muslims had no king; the chronicler is using a term borrowed from his own culture.

[5] Tariq led the original Islamic conquest of Spain.

[6] That is, as the text subsequently clarifies, on account of Munnuza's romantic interest in Pelayo's sister. Arab sources, however, claim that Pelayo was sent to Córdoba as a hostage in an effort to forestall unrest in Asturias.

[7] The "Chaldeans" refers to the Muslims. The precise location of Brece is not known.

[8] A location nearly on the northern coast of Asturias.

[9] Today Covadonga (cave of the lady), a few miles east of the river Piloña. The name reflects the presence of a shrine to the Virgin Mary in the cave.

[10] Pelayo ruled 718–737.

with an army of almost 187,000 soldiers, they entered Asturias.

9. Pelayo was on Mt. Auseva with his allies. The army advanced to him and set up countless tents before the mouth of the cave. Bishop Oppa ascended the hill in front of Covadonga and spoke to Pelayo, saying, "Pelayo, Pelayo, where are you?"

Pelayo, responding from an opening, said, "I am here."

The bishop said to him, "I think that it is not unknown to you, brother and son, how all of Spain a short time ago was organized according to one order under the rule of the Goths, and that it outshone all other lands in learning and knowledge. If when the entire army of the Goths was assembled, it was unable to sustain the attack of the Ishmaelites, how much better will you be able to defend yourself on this mountain top? To me it seems difficult. Rather, heed my warning and recall your soul from this decision, so that you may take advantage of many good things and enjoy the partnership of the Chaldeans."

To this Pelayo responded, "Have you not read in the divine scriptures that the church of God is compared to a mustard seed and that it will be raised up again through divine mercy?"[1]

The bishop responded, "It is indeed written thus."

Pelayo said, "Christ is our hope that through this little mountain, which you see, the well-being of Spain and the army of the Gothic people will be restored. I have faith that the promise of the Lord which was spoken through David will be fulfilled in us: "I will visit their iniquities with the rod and their sins with scourges; but I will not remove my mercy from them."[2] Now, therefore, trusting in the mercy of Jesus Christ, I despise this multitude and am not afraid of it. As for the battle with which you threaten us, we have for ourselves an advocate in the presence of the Father, that is, the Lord Jesus Christ, who is capable of liberating us from these few."

And the bishop turned to the army and said, "Go forth and fight. You heard how he responded to me. I can see by his determination that you will never have a covenant of peace with him unless it be achieved through the vengeance of the sword."

10. Then Alqamah ordered his men to engage in battle. They took up arms. The catapults were set up. The slings were prepared. Swords flashed. Spears were brandished. Arrows were shot incessantly. But on this occasion the power of the Lord was not absent. For when stones were launched from the catapults and they neared the shrine of the holy virgin Mary, which is inside the cave, they turned back on those who shot them and violently cut down the Chaldeans. And because the Lord does not count spears, but offers the palm of victory to whomsoever he will, when the Asturians came out of the cave to fight, the Chaldeans turned in flight and were divided into two groups. There Bishop Oppa was immediately captured and Alqamah was killed. In that same place 124,000 of the Chaldeans were killed. But the 63,000 who were left alive ascended to the summit of Mt. Auseva and came down to Liébana through Amuesa.[3] But they could not escape the vengeance of the Lord. For when they had reached the summit of the mountain, which is over the bank of a river called the Deva, next to a village called Cosgaya, it happened, by a judgement of God, that the mountain, quaking from its very base, hurled the 63,000 men into the river and crushed them all. There even now, when this river fills beyond its limit, it reveals many visible signs of these events. Do not think this to be unfounded or fictitious. Remember that he who parted the waters of the Red Sea so that the children of Israel might cross, also crushed, with an immense mass of mountain, the Arabs who were persecuting the church of God.[4]

11. When Munnuza learned what had happened, he sprang from the same coastal city of Gijón and fled. In a certain village called Olalies he was captured and killed along with his men. Then the country was populated, the church restored, and everyone together gave thanks to God, saying, "Blessed be the name of the Lord who strengthens those who believe in him and destroys wicked peoples." Within a short time, Alfonso, the son of Peter, who was the leader of the Cantabrians and was from the royal line, came to Asturias.[5] He received in marriage the daughter of Pelayo named Ermesinda and he brought about many victories with his father-in-law and also afterward. Finally, peace was restored to the land. To the extent that the dignity of the name of Christ grew, the derisive calamity of the Chaldeans wasted away. Pelayo lived as king for nineteen years. His life came to

[1] For the reference to the mustard seed, see Matt. 17:20.

[2] Ps. 89:32–33; Douay Ps. 88:33–34.

[3] The army apparently fled through the heart of the mountainous Picos de Europa region of eastern Asturias.

[4] The reference to the Red Sea is in Exod. 14:21–22. The chronicler equates the Arabs to the ancient Egyptians.

[5] The Cantabrians were just to the east of Asturias.

an end with a natural death at Cangas de Onís in the era 775 (737).

12. Afterwards, Favila [r.737–739], Pelayo's son, succeeded in the place of his father. He constructed, with marvellous workmanship, a basilica in honour of the Holy Cross. He lived only a short time. On a certain occasion of levity, he is reported to have been killed by a bear in the second year of his reign, in the era 777 (739).

13. After the death of Favila, Alfonso [r.739–757] was elected king by all the people, receiving the royal sceptre with divine grace. He always crushed the audacity of his enemies. Together with his brother, Fruela, he took many cities in battle, moving his army frequently. Specifically, he took: Lugo, Tuy, Oporto, Anegia, the metropolitan city of Braga, Viseo, Chaves, Ledesma, Salamanca, Numancia, which is now called Zamora, Avila, Astorga, León, Simancas, Saldaña, Amaya, Segovia, Osma, Sepúlveda, Arganza, Clunia, Mave, Oca, Miranda, Revenga, Carbonárica, Abeica, Cenicero, and Alesanco, with their fortresses, villas and villages.[1] Killing all the Arabs with the sword, he led the Christians back with him to his country.

3.8 Celebrating local leaders: Abbo of Saint-Germain-des-Prés, *Battles of the City of Paris* (late 9th cent.). Original in Latin and Greek.

The Viking invasions into Carolingian Europe necessitated immediate responses from local leaders, giving them new prestige and power. Abbo, a young monk at the monastery of Saint-Germain-des-Prés, at that time just outside Paris, composed a poem about the attacks on the city in the years 885–896, writing perhaps a decade later. Mingling Greek words with his mainly Latin text, Abbo enhanced his expressive choices, showed off his learning, and emphasized his major points. It was clear that Charles the Fat (r.881–887) was not going to revive the empire of Charlemagne. Attacked on every side, he did not have the forces to deal with all the challenges to his power, and thus he chose to negotiate rather than fight. Not he but Odo (*c*.860–898), count of Paris and duke of France, along with Gozlin, bishop of Paris (r.884–885), were the worldly heroes not only of the *Battles of the City of Paris* but also of the West Frankish nobility, who elected Odo king in 888. The heavenly heroes of Abbo's poem were Saint Germain and Sainte Genevieve, both associated with the city of Paris during their lifetimes. Moreover, Germain was the patron saint of Abbo's monastery, where his relics were housed.

1. How (in Abbo's view) were the attacks of the Vikings part of God's plan and what outcome did God have in mind?
2. How did the role of the Virgin Mary in Abbo's poem compare with her role in saving Constantinople against the Muslims in *The Easter Chronicle* (above, p. 55)?

[Source: *Viking Attacks on Paris: The* Bella parisiacae urbis *of Saint-Germain-des-Prés*, ed. and trans. Nirmal Dass (Peeters: Paris, 2007), pp. 23, 25, 27, 29, 31, 33, 35, 37, 39, 45 (notes modified).]

[1] This list of towns in the Duero and upper Ebro valleys reflects the geographical range of Asturian raids in the wake of the Berber rebellion and exodus from northern Spain in 740–741. Actual Asturian control over these areas probably dates from the next century, when the chronicle was written.

A Letter of Dedication by Abbo, the Most Humble, to His Beloved Brother Gozlin

Abbo, the least of God's creatures, unworthy deacon, embraces his brother Gozlin, with an affection that is pure, sincere, and higher than any found on earth, and wishes for him, in Christ, all the happiness that we are able to obtain both in this life and the next.[1] Your brotherly love, most dear to me, has impelled me, time and again, to dedicate to you this little work, devoted to the battles of Paris and to Odo, the most notable prince, the foremost of all the leaders of men that this kingdom has produced down to the present day;[2] this little work, as you well know, is born of our labor, and greatly testifies to your deep interest in my most meager talent, and demonstrates that you have not forgotten our brotherly love. Know then, O happiest of brothers, that a similar emotion urged me to address to you these simple pages, not only to ensure that so precious a love may not be disappointed on my account, but also to satisfy the very best friend among readers, so that these pages may fulfill to the very end the precious task for which they are being sent forth, and above all that your wise hand may clear up the imperfections found in them. Indeed, being preoccupied with my studies, to which I have devoted myself entirely, I have not found the leisure necessary to revise these pages. Thus, they are presented to you for the first time, such pages as now follow; only the parchment has changed. Skim through them with your wise judgment, like another Apollo.[3]

Having laid bare the purpose of this narration, it is good, I think, to make known the two reasons for which I decided to undertake this little work. The first was to embark on a literary exercise (for I was but a simple student of letters and had read the *Eclogues* of Virgil for the first time).[4] The second was my intention of leaving behind an enduring example to those who are guardians over other cities. As for the rest, I leave it to your benevolent love, and to that of other readers. Know that though I have undertaken to write this volume of verse, it is not meant to make me into a poet. Here you will see none of those fabrications often found in the work of grand poets. Indeed, nowhere have I gathered Fauns and wild animals dancing, singing, or frolicking, after the example of Silenus.[5] Nowhere have I forced rigid oak trees to rustle their tops. For the sake of charm, my song shall have neither forests, nor birds, nor even high walls, to keep company with my meters. None of my verses shall follow the example of Orpheus and seek to snatch away from Orcus, or from other infernal deities, the souls of those plunged into the darkness of Tartarus.[6] It is perfectly obvious that I have never had such a desire, nor do I have the ability to accomplish such an undertaking. Therefore, I do not take on the name of poet, and these are not fictions that I present. Rather, I have used the means available to me to complete my task.

I have divided these books into three, which are ornamented solely by those things that I saw and heard. Two of these books are notable for their account of the battles fought around Paris and those fought by King Odo, and also for the miracles, otherwise unknown, performed during the siege by my dear and most benevolent master Germain, who was once the bishop, without equal, of this city.[7] As for the third book, which completes the trinity, it is manifestly different from the story of the siege. Therefore, it takes up very little room, and it seeks to provide clerics with methods of effective literary adornment. It will be suitable for students who search for terms for their compositions. Allegory will also very briefly shine forth for those who admire such things. But, because allegory often works by way of obscure words, I have written the glosses on top with my own hand.[8] ...

---

[1] Perhaps this Gozlin was a fellow monk at Saint-Germain. He should not be mistaken for Bishop Gozlin.

[2] Odo, count of Paris and later king of the West Frankish Kingdom.

[3] Apollo was, among many other things, the patron of music and poetry and was known for his wise judgment. He was also the sun god, and is invoked as such in line 77.

[4] The Roman poet Virgil (d.19 BCE) was a model throughout the Middle Ages and indeed, into our own time.

[5] Here Abbo pokes fun at poems that describe wild parties; Silenus, while a Greek god, was also a notable drunkard.

[6] More fun at the expense of pagan Greek and Latin poetry. But Abbo is also making the point that his poem is serious history, not fanciful story-telling. Nevertheless, the *Battles of the City of Paris* includes some mythic elements, such as exaggerating the forces of the enemy in order to point up the heroism of the Christian defenders.

[7] Saint Germain (496–576) became bishop of Paris in 555. His bones were held as precious relics at Abbo's monastery, and (the poem claims) he continued to intervene in worldly affairs even after his death.

[8] Abbo's poem exists in full in only one manuscript, which is kept at the Bibliothèque nationale de France (MS lat. 13833); it may possibly be in his own hand.

May your joys and honors be many as the rays of Phoebus;
And may you come to find your end with God, who is without end.
HERE ENDS THE LETTER.

HERE BEGINS THE FIRST BOOK OF THE BATTLES OF THE CITY OF PARIS.

In the year 885.[1]
Shout with joy, Lutetia, you who were saved by God on high.
This is how you were known in days long ago, but now you take
Your name from Isia city that sat on the Danaan plain,[2]
Whose harbor shone forth as the brightest embellishment of all;
That same Isia for whose treasures the greedy Argives yearned.[3]
A bastard name, indeed, a sort of metaplasm for you,
Isia's rival, but which describes you well, O Lutetia.
It is by this new name, that is Paris, that the world knows you;
This means you are Isia's twin; no difference between you both.

Now, in the region of Sequanus[4] is found the rich kingdom
Of the Franks. Raise yourself up high, now, so that you may sing forth:
"I am that city, dazzling like a queen over all cities."
And you too are renowned for your harbor, much praised by others.
Those that covet the wealth of the Franks come to pay you homage.
An island rejoices in you, and a river stretches out
Around you in a perfect embrace that caresses your walls.[5]
To your right, to your left, on your banks are bridges that hold back
The waves. Here and there are towers that guard the bridges;
Some of these face the city; others face out to the river.

Speak, most wondrous of cities, of the gift the Danes brought for you,
Those friends of Pluto, in the time when Gozlin, the Lord's bishop,
The sweetest of heroes, the mildest of shepherds, governed you.[6]
"Astonished am I," she said, "that no one has spoken of this.
Did you not see with your own eyes what came to pass? Speak of that."[7]
Indeed, I saw everything, and gladly I obey your will.

[1] Like a chronicle, the poem covers events year by year.

[2] Lutetia is the Roman name for Paris. Abbo thought that the name Paris derived from Isia (Hysia) a town in ancient Greece.

[3] Just as the Argives wanted the wealth of Hysia, so the Danes will lust after the riches of Paris. Abbo is right to call the Viking invaders of France "Danes," since they mainly came from what is Denmark today. The word "metaplasm" in the next line shows off Abbo's knowledge of Greek.

[4] Sequanus is the Gallo-Roman name for the Seine, which flowed (and flows) through Paris.

[5] The "island" is the Ile-de-la-Cité, today right in the middle of Paris and the Seine River, and in Abbo's time constituting the heart of the city itself. In his battles with the Danes, Odo took advantage of its defensive walls.

[6] The "gift" of the Danes is meant to be ironic; if they are the "friends of Pluto," they come from Hell and are minions of the Devil. Bishop Gozlin (also known as Gauzlin) was related to the royal family. Chancellor for Emperor Charles the Bald (r.843–877), he was at the same time lay abbot of four monasteries including Saint-Germain itself. In 884 he became bishop of Paris; he died a year later.

[7] The city of Paris here asks Abbo to "speak"; she takes the role of his patron and audience.

Now, here are the gifts the cruel ones brought to offer you:
Seven hundred high-prowed ships and very many smaller ones,
Along with an enormous multitude of smaller vessels
The very ones that in the vulgar tongue are often called barques.[1]
The deep waters of Sequanus were so overly crowded,
For a distance that extended more than two leagues downriver,
That one asked in amazement, Where had the river vanished?
It could not be seen, hidden, as though by a veil of fir, oak,
Elm, and alder, each one entirely drenched by the water.
And when in two days these ships made landfall hard by the city,
Siegfried did make his way to the great hall of the famed shepherd;
Though king in name only, he still commanded many warriors.[2]
After bowing his head, he addressed the bishop in these words:
"O Gozlin, show mercy to yourself and the flock given you.
That you may come not to ruin, grant our plea, we ask you.
Give us your consent that we might go our way, well beyond
This city. Nothing in it shall we then touch, but shall preserve
And safeguard all the honors that belong to you and Odo,
Who is the noblest of all counts and who is the future king.
Guardian of this city, he shall become the kingdom's rampart."[3]

Then the Lord's bishop, in greatest loyalty, offered these words:
"By our king, Charles,[4] have we been given this city to guard;
By him, whose majestic realm spreads almost over the whole earth,
By the Lord's will, and who is King and Master of the mighty.
The realm must not suffer by the destruction of this city;
But rather this city must save the realm and preserve the peace.
Now, if by chance, these walls were entrusted to you, as they are
To us, and you were asked to do all that you have asked of us,
Would you deem it right and agree?" Siegfried said: "By my honor,
Rather my head were lopped off by a sword and thrown to the dogs.
However, if you do not agree to my requests, we shall
Have our siege engines, at daybreak, hurl poisoned darts at you;
With sunset you shall know hunger's curse. It shall go on for years."
Thus having spoken, he went his way and assembled his men.

Now, when dawn had nearly faded away, the battle began.
Jumping into their boats, the Danes headed for the tower,
And began to hurl stones at it and riddled it with arrows.
The city grew noisy; people grew fearful. Bridges swayed.
Everyone rushed about, trying to help defend the tower.
It was then that Count Odo did shine, along with his brother
Rotbert, as well as Count Ragenar. Then it was also that

[1] Abbo exaggerates the numbers of ships.

[2] Abbo picks up on the impermanence of Viking leadership. Siegfried was not a king but simply a leader of a group of raiders. Note that the raiders traveled with their families, as line 126, when the wives call out, makes clear.

[3] Here the wicked and pagan Siegfried is depicted as showing honor to the bishop and predicting Odo's future kingship.

[4] The reference is to Charles the Fat.

Ebolus, stalwart abbot, the bishop's nephew, proved worthy.[1]
At that place, the prelate was hit by a sharp-pointed arrow,
And at the same place, a young warrior, Frederick, was struck down
By a sword. The young warrior died, but the old man recovered,
Thanks to divine medicine, administered to him by God.
For many there, this was the last moment of their lives;
But others dealt out bitter wounds, and forced the Danes to fall back,
Who carried away with them many of their lifeless friends.
By now, Apollo, and all of Olympus, had veered westwards,
Soon sinking between ultimate Thule and the southern regions.[2]

Now the tower did not shine forth with all its magnificence,
For it was far from finished. But its foundations were solid
And stood firmly grounded. Proudly it rose; its crenels were sound.[3]
During the night that followed, after the battle had ended,
A wooden tier was built all the way around the tower,
Raised atop the old bastion, and half as high as before.
Thus, together, the sun and the Danes beheld this new tower.
The latter were soon locked in a frightful fight with the faithful.
Arrows flew here, there through the air; blood gushed and flowed;
Darts, stones, and javelins were hurled by ballistae and slingshots.[4]
Nothing was seen, between heaven and earth, but these projectiles.
The many arrows made the tower, built in the night, groan out;
It was the night that gave it birth, as I have chanted above.
Fear seized the city—people screamed, battle horns resounded
Calling everyone to come and protect the trembling tower.
Christians fought and ran about, trying to resist the assault.
Among all the warriors, there were two most outstanding
For their valor: one was a count, the other an abbot.
Victorious Odo was one, never routed in battle;
He fortified those who were exhausted; revived their strength,
And rushed about on the tower, striking down the enemy.
As for those who sought to dig beneath the walls with iron picks,
He served them up with oil and wax and pitch, which was all mixed up
Together and made into a hot liquid on a furnace,
Which burned the hair of the Danes; made their skulls split open.
Indeed, many of them died, and the others went and sought out
The river. And then our men, with one voice, loudly exclaimed:
"Right badly scorched are you! Run now quickly to the Sequanus.
Its current will allay your pain and restore your flowing manes."
Dauntless Odo struck down many. But what of the other one?
This other was Ebolus, his companion and his equal—

[1] Rotbert (also known as Robert) was Odo's younger brother. Ragenar (also known as Regnier) was the count of Hainault. Ebolus, nephew of Bishop Gozlin, was the abbot of Saint-Germain-des-Prés.

[2] That is, the sun set in the west, the "ultimate Thule" being a cliché for the far north.

[3] A crenel is a thin opening in a fortress, from which missiles or arrows can be fired.

[4] The Viking ballistae were "throwing engines" used to hurl either stones or javelins (heavy spears). Unlike traction and counterweight trebuchets (see "Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages," in "Reading through Looking," pp. XII–XIV), ballistae were torsion catapults. They released projectiles by using the pulling force of a rope stretched between bow-shaped staves.

With a single spear, he pierced seven Danes all at once,
And in jest he said to his own to take them to the kitchen.[1]
In battle none outshone, equaled, or compared with these two men.
However, many did fight most courageously and scorned death.
But indeed what is a single drop for a thousand fires?

Among the faithful were no more than two hundred warriors;
The grim ones were a thousand times forty, or forty thousand;
They sent fresh troops dashing to the tower. O most horrid sight!
They only fought fiercely. A great, quaking clamor arose;
It could be heard on both sides—a mighty chorus of voices
Filled the air, as hurtling rocks thudded into painted shields.
These shields let forth groans and helmets clattered as swift arrows fell.
Some horsemen, returning from their pillaging, rode forward
To join the fight at the tower—well-rested and fed were they.
But many among them got no chance to hurtle their stones,
For they were struck down and killed; the rest ran back to their ships.
Before drawing their last anguished breath, the dying Danes tore
At their hair and shed tears. Then their wives cried out:
"So, you have run back from that furnace! I know, you Devil's son!
But not even one among you shall chance upon victory.
Was it all for nothing I gave you Ceres, Bacchus, boar meat?[2]
Why are you so quickly exhausted that you seek our shelter?
Were you hoping to have a second meal? Glutton! Is this why
The others return, too? A fine welcome they will also get!"[3]
These rude mouths drove them to make their own domed furnace near
The bottom of the tower, whose very name they greatly scorned.
The hard Danes ardently sought to breach the tower's foundations;
An immense breach appeared—wide-gaping beyond description.
As was readily seen, there appeared, at the bottom,
Those gallant warriors, whose names have already been mentioned,
With helms on their heads. They and the Danes beheld each other,
But the Danes held back, gripped by an insurmountable horror.
Suddenly, a huge wheel was thrown from the top of the tower
Right upon the Danes, laying low six, whose souls were sent to Hell;
They were dragged off by their feet and joined the throngs of the dead.
Then they set the gate alight with fire guarded by Vulcan,
By which they hoped to burn our men and destroy the tower.[4]
A dreadful pyre formed and smoke billowed up in ghastly clouds
That enveloped the warriors. And then, within an hour,
The fortress vanished completely in a great gloom, black as pitch.
Not wishing that we, who know Him, should suffer further torment,
Our Lord, filled with mercy for us, ordained that the dreadful
Smoke should fall upon the very ones that had created it.

[1] The joke is that the Danes were, so to speak, on a spit, ready to be roasted.

[2] Abbo has the wives complain that they have fed the best food to their husbands (Ceres is the god of grain, Bacchus of wine), but they have received only cowardice in return.

[3] In Viking sagas, too, the women often incite their men to violent deeds.

[4] Vulcan was the Roman god of fire.

Then Mars bestirred himself and aroused heated battle frenzy:[1]
And then, two standard-bearers rushed out of the good city.
Each one carried a lance, and they climbed up the tower, holding
The standards, tinted golden with saffron, that frightened the Danes;
A hundred of them were struck down by a hundred quick arrows—
The life of the Danes spurted away along with their blood—
Dragged off by the hair, to their ships—their last abode.
Thus was the surging of Lemnos overcome by the great might
Of Neptune—for the water soaked what the fire had ravaged.[2]
And there fell Rotbert, ever happy, joyful, struck down by
A cruel stroke, delivered by this most pernicious people;[3]
By God's grace, only some of our people perished with him.
Now, just as an overconfident wolf that is filled with shame,
For it seized no prey, seeks out the depths of the forest, thus did
The foe fall back and scurry away in great and furtive flight;
They mourned three hundred of their own, left lifeless for Charon.[4]
The night passed in fixing the damage done to the tower.
These two battles were fought just a few days before November
Grew frosty and ran its complete course, and just as December
Stood ready to wane and yield to the last days of the year.

Now as the sun began to fill the sky with reddening beams,
Over the See of the holy Dénis,[5] up along the banks
Of the Sequanus, indeed not far from Saint-Germain-le-Rond,[6]
The Danes assembled that they might set up their encampment,
Fashioning stakes, gathering stones and earth to pile in one heap.
Then, the cruel ones, both on horseback and on foot overran
The hills, the fields, forests, open pastures and the villages.
All infants, boys and girls, youths, and even those hoary with age,
The father and the sons and even mothers—they killed them all.
They slaughtered the husband before the very eyes of his wife;
Before the eyes of the husband, the wife fell prey to carnage.
The children perished right before the eyes of their parents.
The bondsman was set free, while the freeman was made a bondsman;
The slave was made the master, and the master became the slave.
Both the wine-grower and also the farmer, together with
The vineyards and the fields suffered the pitiless weight of death.
Then did the land of the Franks know grief, for masters and servants
Were gone; and gone the joy of heroes; only tears remained.
No more houses were left ruled over by a living master.
Alas! A rich land stripped of its treasures, left with bloody wounds,
Fully robbed, filled with grim murder—a frenzy beyond compare.

[1] Mars was the god of war.

[2] Lemnos was the Greek island where Vulcan kept his fiery forge; Neptune was the god of the sea.

[3] Not the Rotbert who was Odo's younger brother.

[4] Charon was the boatman who ferried the dead to the underworld.

[5] The See of the holy Dénis is a reference to Saint Denis, patron saint of Paris.

[6] Saint-Germain-le-Rond, today Saint-Germain-l'Auxerrois, was a church near Paris where the Vikings pitched their camp and set up fortifications. Today, like Saint-Germain-des-Prés, it is within the city of Paris.

The Danes ransacked and despoiled, massacred, and burned and ravaged;
They were an evil cohort, a deadly phalanx, a grim horde.
Nor did they tarry for long to do all that they sought to do,
Being driven by some blood-filled vision that was before them.
Valleys were worn down, befouled, that were once splendid as the Alps.
The men in arms, in their keenness to flee, sought out the woods.

No one stayed to be found; everyone fled. Alas! None fought back.
Ah, the Danes took away on their ships, all that was splendid
In this good realm, all that was the pride of this famous region!
Throughout this horrible conflict, Paris stood firm, fearless;
It remained cheerful, despite all the darts that fell around it.
...
Now when morning began to shine, the weapons of these hard men [the Danes]
Again clashed; they advanced, hard-packed, underneath a *testudo*.[1]
Many of them fought; others commenced to deal with the ditches
That encircled the tower; took to filling in the trenches:
They threw in clods of earth, and leaves torn from well-wooded forests,
And stalks that they had taken and stripped utterly of all grain.
Also, they flung in hay from meadows, scrub, and vines, grapes torn off;
Then they pushed in old oxen, and even lovely cows and calves;
And lastly, alas, they slaughtered the luckless captives they held;
All this they took and piled into the trenches to fill them in.[2]
This is what they did the whole day through on the field of battle.
Seeing everything, the holy bishop then shed bright tears.
In a loud voice, he besought the Mother of our Lord and
Savior: "Blessed Mother of our Redeemer—sole hope
Of this world, bright Star of the Sea, brighter far than all the stars—
Bend thine ear, in mercy, to my prayers and to my pleas.
If it is thy pleasure that I again celebrate the Mass,
Grant that this foe—impious, fierce, cruel and most wicked,
That has slain the captives—be led, I pray, into death's grim noose."
Then swiftly the bishop, Gozlin, with a tearful prayer,
From the high tower, let loose an arrow at a Dane below,
Sending that wretch, who had dispatched others, into death's dark bonds—
The luckless man held up his shield; sought to rush to his friends;
His mouth slackened and he fell heavily; gone was all courage;
He breathed out his soul, born of evil, and stretched out on the earth,
Filling the ditch just like the very victims of his cruel sword.

The city has honor through its love for Mary, most holy,
By whose grace we spend the days of our lives in harmony.
It is most fitting, while we are able, to render her thanks;
With our hymns of peace let us sing to her glory divine;
Let our voices ring on high; it is mere for so to do:

"O Mother most fair of our Savior. Hail, Queen of Heaven...."

[1] *Testudo:* a military formation that used shields above and on all sides to form a protected unit.

[2] The Parisians had built defensive trenches before the walls of the city.

RELIGION AND POLITICS

3.9 An early view of the Prophet: Muhammad ibn Ishaq, *Life of Muhammad* (754–767). Original in Arabic.

Writing under the patronage of the Abbasid Caliph al-Mansur, Ibn Ishaq (*c*.704–767), who was born in Medina, wrote the first extant life of Muhammad. It was soon attacked for including spurious poetry and for lacking sufficient *isnad*—the chains of named sources that were, by the end of the eighth century, considered essential to prove the authenticity of any narrative about the Prophet (hadith). (For hadith considered authoritative, see al-Bukhari, *On Fasting*, below, p. 147). Ibn Ishaq was also accused of Shi'ite sympathies. It is thus not surprising that his original work is lost. The version that we have today is an edition by Ibn Hisham (d.833), a scholar who, though somewhat critical of the original, also considered it of great value.

1. How and why does Ibn Ishaq show Muhammad, "the apostle of God," fulfilling the Christian and Jewish prophecies?
2. In what ways were the mission, virtues, and lifestyle of Muhammad in Ibn Ishaq's account similar to—and different from—those of saints in Christian hagiography, such as the *Life of St. Antony*, above, p. 30?

[Source: *The Life of Muhammad: A Translation of Ishaq's* Sirat Rasul Allah, trans. and ed. Alfred Guillaume (London: Oxford University Press, 1955), pp. 81–83, 104–7 (slightly modified).]

The apostle of God grew up, God protecting him and keeping him from the vileness of heathenism because he wished to honor him with apostleship, until he grew up to be the finest of his people in manliness, the best in character, most noble in lineage, the best neighbor, the most kind, truthful, reliable, the furthest removed from filthiness and corrupt morals through loftiness and nobility, so that he was known among his people as "The trustworthy" because of the good qualities which God had implanted in him. The apostle, so I was told, used to tell how God protected him in his childhood during the period of heathenism, saying, "I found myself among the boys of Quraysh[1] carrying stones such as boys play with; we had all uncovered ourselves, each taking his shirt and putting it round his neck as he carried the stones. I was going to and fro in the same way, when an unseen figure slapped me most painfully saying, 'Put your shirt on'; so I took it and fastened it on me and then began to carry the stones upon my neck wearing my shirt alone among my fellows." ...

The Apostle of God Marries Khadija

Khadija was a merchant woman of dignity and wealth. She used to hire men to carry merchandise outside the country on a profit-sharing basis, for Quraysh were a people given to commerce. Now when she heard about the prophet's truthfulness, trustworthiness, and honorable character, she sent for him and proposed that he should take her goods to Syria and trade with them, while she would pay him more than she paid others. He was to take a lad of hers called Maysara.

The apostle of God accepted the proposal, and the two set forth until they came to Syria. The apostle stopped in the shade of a tree near a monk's cell, when the monk came up to Maysara and asked who the man was who was resting beneath the tree. He told him that he was of Quraysh, the people who held the sanctuary; and the monk exclaimed: "None but a prophet ever sat beneath this tree."

[1] The tribe at Mecca to which Muhammad also belonged.

Then the prophet sold the goods he had brought and bought what he wanted to buy and began the return journey to Mecca. The story goes that at the height of noon, when the heat was intense as he rode his beast, Maysara saw two angels shading the apostle from the sun's rays. When he brought Khadija her property she sold it and it amounted to double or thereabouts. Maysara for his part told her about the two angels who shaded him and of the monk's words. Now Khadija was a determined, noble, and intelligent woman possessing the properties with which God willed to honor her. So when Maysara told her these things, she sent to the apostle of God and—so the story goes—said: "O son of my uncle I like you because of our relationship and your high reputation among your people, your trustworthiness and good character and truthfulness." Then she proposed marriage. Now Khadija at that time was the best born woman in Quraysh, of the greatest dignity and, too, the richest. All her people were eager to get possession of her wealth if it were possible.

Khadija was the daughter of Khuwaylid b. Asad b. 'Abdu'l-'Uzza b. Qusayy b. Kilab b. Murra b. Ka'b b. Lu'ayy b. Ghalib b. Fihr.[1] Her mother was Fatima bt. Za'ida b. al-Asamm b. Rawaha b. Hajar b. 'Abd b. Malis b. 'Amir b. Lu'ayy b. Ghalib b. Fihr. Her mother was Hala bt. 'Abd Manaf b. al-Harith b. 'Amr b. Munqidh b. 'Amr b. Ma'is b. 'Amir b. Lu'ayy b. Ghalib b. Fihr. Hala's mother was Qilaba bt. Su'ayd b. Sa'd b. Sahm b. 'Amr b. Husays b. Ka'b b. Lu'ayy b. Ghalib b. Fihr.

The apostle of God told his uncles of Khadija's proposal, and his uncle Hamza b. 'Abdu'l-Muttalib went with him to Khuwaylid b. Asad and asked for her hand and he married her.

She was the mother of all the apostle's children except Ibrahim, namely al-Qasim (whereby he was known as Abu'l-Qasim); al-Tahir, al-Tayyib, Zaynab, Ruqayya, Umm Kulthum, and Fatima.

Al-Qasim, al-Tayyib, and al-Tahir died in paganism. All his daughters lived into Islam, embraced it, and migrated with him to Medina.

Khadija had told Waraqa b. Naufal b. Asad b. 'Abdu'l-'Uzza, who was her cousin and a Christian who had studied the scriptures and was a scholar, what her slave Maysara had told her that the monk had said and how he had seen the two angels shading him. He said, "If this is true, Khadija, then truly Muhammad is the prophet of this people. I knew that a prophet of this people was to be expected. His time has come," or words to that effect. Waraqa was finding the time of waiting wearisome and used to say "How long?" Some lines of his on the theme are:

I persevered and was persistent in remembering
An anxiety which often evoked tears. And
Confirmatory evidence kept coming from Khadija.
Long have I had to wait, O Khadija,
In the vale of Mecca in spite of my hope
That I might see the outcome of thy words.
I could not bear that the words of the monk
You told me of should prove false
That Muhammad should rule over us
Overcoming those who would oppose him.
And that a glorious light should appear in the land
To preserve men from disorders.
His enemies shall meet disaster
And his friends shall be victorious.
Would that I might be there then to see,
For I should be the first of his supporters,
Joining in that which Quraysh hate
However loud they shout in that Mecca of theirs.
I hope to ascend through him whom they all dislike
To the Lord of the Throne though they are cast down.
Is it folly not to disbelieve in Him
Who chose him Who raised the starry heights?
If they and I live, things will be done
Which will throw the unbelievers into confusion.
And if I die, 'tis but the fate of mortals
To suffer death and dissolution....

The Prophet's Mission

When Muhammad the apostle of God reached the age of forty, God sent him in compassion to mankind, "as an evangelist to all men."[2] Now God had made a covenant with every prophet whom he had sent before him that he should believe in him, testify to his truth, and help him against his adversaries. He required His prophets to transmit that to everyone who believed in them, and they carried out their obligations in that respect. God

[1] The abbreviation b. means "ibn," son of, while bt. means "bint," daughter of. Through this string of names, the author is authenticating Khadija's lineage. Compare a similar concern with genealogy in the case of Jesus, in Matt. 1:1–11.

[2] Sura 34:27.

said to Muhammad, "When God made a covenant with the prophets, [He said], 'This is the scripture and wisdom which I have given you; afterwards an apostle will come confirming what you know that you may believe in him and help him.' He said, 'Do you accept this and take up my burden?' i.e., the burden of my agreement which I have laid upon you. They said, 'We accept it.' He answered, 'Then bear witness and I am a witness with you.'"[1] Thus God made a covenant with all the prophets that they should testify to his truth and help him against his adversaries, and they transmitted that obligation to those who believed in them among the two monotheistic religions.

Al-Zuhri related from 'Urwa b. Zybayr that 'A'isha[2] told him that when Allah [God] desired to honor Muhammad and have mercy on His servants by means of him, the first sign of prophethood granted to the apostle was true visions, resembling the brightness of daybreak, which were shown to him in his sleep. And Allah, she said, made him love solitude so that he liked nothing better than to be alone.

'Abdu'l-Malik b. 'Ubaydullah b. Abu Sufyan b. al-'Ala' b. Jariya the Thaqafite, who had a retentive memory, related to me from a certain scholar that the apostle at the time when Allah willed to bestow His grace upon him and endow him with prophethood would go forth for his affair and journey far afield until he reached the glens of Mecca and the beds of its valleys where no house was in sight; and there was no stone or tree that he passed that didn't say, "Peace unto thee, O apostle of Allah." And the apostle would turn to his right and left and look behind him and he would see nothing but trees and stones. Thus he stayed seeing and hearing so long as it pleased Allah that he should stay. Then Gabriel came to him with the gift of God's grace while he was on Hira'[3] in the month of Ramadan.

Wahb b. Kaisan, a client of the family of al-Zubayr, told me: I heard 'Abdullah b. al-Zubayr say to 'Ubayd b. 'Umayr b. Qatada the Laythite, "O 'Ubayd tell us how began the prophethood which was first bestowed on the apostle when Gabriel came to him." And 'Ubayd in my presence related to 'Abdullah and those with him as follows: The apostle would pray in seclusion on Hira' every year for a month to practice *tahannuth* as was the custom of Quraysh in heathen days. *Tahannuth* is religious devotion. Abu Talib said:

> By Thaur and him who made Thabir firm in its place
> And by those going up to ascend Hira' and coming down.[4]

Wahb b. Kaisan told me that 'Ubayd said to him: Every year during that month the apostle would pray in seclusion and give food to the poor that came to him. And when he completed the month and returned from his seclusion, first of all before entering his house he would go to the Ka'ba[5] and walk round it seven times or as often as it pleased God; then he would go back to his house until, in the year when God sent him, in the month of Ramadan in which God willed concerning him what He willed of His grace, the apostle set forth to Hira' as was his custom, and his family with him. When it was the night on which God honored him with his mission and showed mercy on His servants thereby, Gabriel brought him the command of God. "He came to me," said the apostle of God, "while I was asleep, with a coverlet of brocade whereon was some writing, and said, 'Read!' I said, 'What shall I read?' He pressed me with it so tightly that I thought it was death; then he let me go and said, 'Read!' I said, 'What shall I read?' He pressed me with it again so that I thought it was death; then he let me go and said 'Read!' I said, 'What shall I read?' He pressed me with it the third time so that I thought it was death and said 'Read!' I said, 'What then shall I read?'—and this I said only to deliver myself from him, lest he should do the same to me again. He said:

> Read in the name of thy Lord who created,
> Who created man of blood coagulated.
> Read! Thy Lord is the most beneficent,
> Who taught by the pen,
> Taught that which they knew not unto men.[6]

---

[1] Sura 3:75.

[2] One of Muhammad's wives.

[3] A nearby mountain.

[4] Thaur and Thabir are mountains near Mecca.

[5] This was Mecca's holy site. At this time, before Mecca became Muslim, it was filled with images of many gods.

[6] Sura 96:1–5. For a different translation, see "The Embryo" above, p. 68.

So I read it, and he departed from me. And I awoke from my sleep, and it was as though these words were written on my heart. When I was midway on the mountain, I heard a voice from heaven saying, 'O Muhammad! thou art the apostle of God and I am Gabriel.' I raised my head towards heaven to see (who was speaking), and lo, [there was] Gabriel in the form of a man with feet astride the horizon, saying, 'O Muhammad! thou art the apostle of God and I am Gabriel.' I stood gazing at him, moving neither forward nor backward; then I began to turn my face away from him, but towards whatever region of the sky I looked, I saw him as before. And I continued standing there, neither advancing nor turning back, until Khadija sent her messengers in search of me and they gained the high ground above Mecca and returned to her while I was standing in the same place; then he parted from me and I from him, returning to my family. And I came to Khadija and sat by her thigh and drew close to her. She said, 'O Abu'l-Qasim,[1] where have you been? By God, I sent my messengers in search of you, and they reached the high ground above Mecca and returned to me.' Then I told her of what I had seen; and she said, 'Rejoice, O son of my uncle, and be of good heart. Truly, by Him in whose hand is Khadija's soul, I have hope that you will be the prophet of this people.'" Then she rose and gathered her garments about her and set forth to her cousin Waraqa b. Naufal b. Asad b. 'Abdu'l-'Uzza b. Qusayy, who had become a Christian and read the scriptures and learned from those that follow the Torah and the Gospel. And when she related to him what the apostle of God told her he had seen and heard, Waraqa cried, "Holy! Holy! Truly, by Him in whose hand is Waraqa's soul, if you have spoken the truth to me, O Khadija, then the greatest Namus [i.e., Gabriel], who came to Moses in the past, has come to him [Muhammad], and lo, he is the prophet of this people. Bid him be of good heart." So Khadija returned to the apostle of God and told him what Waraqa had said. And when the apostle of God had finished his period of seclusion and returned [to Mecca], in the first place he performed the circumambulation of the Ka'ba, as was his custom. While he was doing it, Waraqa met him and said, "O son of my brother, tell me what you have seen and heard." The apostle told him, and Waraqa said, "Surely, by Him in whose hand is Waraqa's soul, you are the prophet of this people. Unto you has come the greatest Namus, who came unto Moses. You will be called a liar, and they will use you spitefully and cast you out and fight against you. Truly, if I live to see that day, I will help God in such ways as He knows." Then he brought his head near to him and kissed his forehead; and the apostle went to his own house.

Isma'il b. Abu Hakim, a freedman[2] of the family of al-Zubayr, told me on Khadija's authority that she said to the apostle of God, "O son of my uncle, are you able to tell me about your visitor, when he comes to you?" He replied that he could, and she asked him to tell her when he came. So when Gabriel came to him, as he was wont, the apostle said to Khadija, "This is Gabriel who has just come to me." "Get up, O son of my uncle," she said, "and sit by my left thigh." The apostle did so, and she said, "Can you see him?" "Yes," he said. She said, "Then turn round and sit on my right thigh." He did so, and she said, "Can you see him?" When he said that he could she asked him to move and sit in her lap. When he had done this she again asked if he could see him, and when he said yes, she disclosed her form and cast aside her veil while the apostle was sitting in her lap. Then she said, "Can you see him?" And he replied, "No." She said, "O son of my uncle, rejoice and be of good heart, by God he is an angel and not a satan."

I told 'Abdullah b. Hasan this story and he said, "I heard my mother Fatima, daughter of Husayn, talking about this tradition from Khadija, but as I heard it she made the apostle of God come inside her shift, and thereupon Gabriel departed, and she said to the apostle of God, 'This truly is an angel and not a satan.'"

[1] Abu'l-Qasim means "Father of Qasim," and Muhammad was so called because Qasim was the name of his first-born son. It was Muhammad's "name of honor."

[2] I.e., a former slave who has been freed.

3.10 Muhammad's words in the hadith: Al-Bukhari, *On Fasting* (9th cent.). Original in Arabic.

The hadith are the traditions about the Prophet handed down by authoritative transmission. There are two parts to every hadith: the first consists in the chain of oral transmitters (*isnad*), with the most recent one listed first; the second part consists in the text of the tradition, which is always about the Prophet, his family, and his close associates. (Shi'ite hadith also include traditions about the imams—those few leaders who possessed the "Muhammadan light.") Numerous questions occurred to Muslims after the time of Muhammad; they attempted to answer them by recourse to "what the Prophet would do in such-and-such situation," for that was the guide to "right behavior" (*sunna*). By the early Abbasid period, numerous, sometimes conflicting, answers to these questions were circulating. Al-Bukhari (810–870) and other scholars who followed him attempted in their collections (though not entirely successfully) to include only the "authentic" hadith. The *isnad*—which should be unbroken and come from reliable sources close to Muhammad—were an important element in their winnowing process. The section below, on fasting, illustrates their attempt to account for every possible situation.

1. Why are there sometimes a variety of answers to a question?
2. What are the uses and benefits of fasting according to the hadith of al-Bukhari?

[Source: *A Reader on Islam: Passages from Standard Arabic Writings Illustrative of the Beliefs and Practices of Muslims*, ed. Arthur Jeffery ('S-Gravenhage: Mouton & Co., 1962), pp. 88–90, 92–94, 98–101.]

1. ON THE NECESSITY OF THE FAST OF RAMADAN, AND ON THE VERSE (II, 183/179): "O YOU WHO HAVE BELIEVED, FASTING IS PRESCRIBED FOR YOU, JUST AS IT WAS PRESCRIBED FOR THOSE WHO WERE BEFORE YOU. MAYBE YOU WILL SHOW PIETY."

Qutaiba related to us, saying: Isma'il b. Ja'far related to us from[1] Abu Suhail, from his father, from Talha b. 'Ubaidallah, that a nomad Arab came to the Apostle of Allah—on whom be Allah's blessing and peace—with dishevelled head, saying: "O Apostle of Allah, inform me of what Allah has laid on me as incumbent duty in the matter of saying prayers." He answered: "The five prayer-services, unless you would voluntarily add thereto." Then [the Arab] said: "O Apostle of Allah, inform me of what Allah has laid on me as incumbent duty in the matter of fasting." He answered: "The month of Ramadan, unless you would voluntarily add thereto." Said [the Arab]: "Inform me of what Allah has laid on me as incumbent duty in that matter of alms [i.e., charity]." So the Apostle of Allah informed him of the legal prescriptions of Islam [with regard to alms]. Said he: "By Him who has honored you with the truth, I will not voluntarily add anything, but neither will I come short of what Allah has prescribed as incumbent duties for me." Then the Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—said: "He will be one of the fortunate ones, if he means that." Or [according to another version, he said]: "He will be brought into Paradise, if he means that."

Musaddad related to us, saying: Isma'il related to us from Ayyub, from Nafi', from Ibn 'Umar, who said: "The Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—fasted 'Ashura'[2] and bade it be kept as a fast, but when Ramadan was made an incumbent duty [on the

[1] The particle *'an* used in these *isnads* really means "on the authority of," but as the transmission of the Tradition was "from" one authority to another, it is translated throughout by "from" for brevity's sake. The b. in names means "son of."

[2] A fast said to have been observed by the Jews and some of the Arabs in the pre-Islamic days as commemoration of their deliverance from their enemies.

Muslims], it was abandoned. 'Abdallah[1] used not to fast therein save when it happened to coincide with his [voluntary] fasts."

Qutaiba b. Sa'id said: al-Laith has related to us from Yazid b. Abi Habib, that 'Irak b. Malik related to him that 'Urwa informed him from 'A'isha[2] that the Quraysh[3] used to fast the Day of "Ashura" in the pre-Islamic days, and then the Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—bade it be kept as a fast, [which it was] till Ramadan was made an incumbent duty. Said the Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—: "If anyone so wishes, let him still keep it as a fast, but if anyone so wishes, let him eat thereon."

2. ON THE MERITS OF THE FAST.

'Abdallah b. Maslama related to us from Malik, from Abu'z-Zinad, from al-A'raj, from Abu Huraira,[4] that the Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—said: "Fasting is a protective covering [from the fires of Hell], so let there be no unseemly speech, no foolish acting [during it]. If a man is attacked or vilified [during it], let him say twice: 'I am fasting;' for by Him in whose hand is my soul, the odor from the mouth of him who fasts is sweeter to Allah than the perfume of musk. [Allah says to Himself]: 'He is giving up his food and his drink and his body lusts for My sake when he is fasting unto Me, so I shall reward him, and for each good deed [that he does] grant him the merit of ten.'"

3. ON FASTING AS AN EXPIATION.

'Ali b. 'Abdallah related to us, saying: Sufyan related to us, saying: several have related to us from Abu Wa'il, from Hudhaifa, who said: "Umar once asked: 'Who is there who has memorized a Tradition from the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—about discord?' Hudhaifa answered: 'I heard him say that discord arises for a man from [three sources: from] his family, from his property, and from his neighbor; but prayer, fasting and gifts of charity may be its expiation.' Said ['Umar]: 'I am not asking about this [general matter of discord arising among men], but about that [which will come at the Last Days] billowing like the billows of the sea.' 'Facing that,' said [Hudhaifa], 'there is a gate shut.' 'Will it be opened,' asked ['Umar], 'or broken down?' 'It will be broken down,' answered [Hudhaifa]. 'Then,' said he, 'it is not likely to be shut again until the Day of Resurrection.'" We said to Masruq: "Ask him if 'Umar knew who the 'Gate' would be?"[5] So he asked him, and he answered: "Yes, [he knew that] just as he knew that night is before morning." ...

8. ON HIM WHO DOES NOT GIVE UP SAYING FALSE WORDS AND DOING FALSE DEEDS DURING RAMADAN.

Adam b. Abi Iyas related to us, saying: Ibn Abi Dhi'b related to us, saying: Sa'id al-Maqburi related to us from his father, from Abu Huraira, who said: Said the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—: "If one does not give up saying false words and doing false deeds in Ramadan, his giving up eating and drinking means nothing to Allah."

9. ON WHETHER, IF ONE IS REVILED, HE SHOULD SAY: "I AM FASTING."

Ibrahim b. Musa related to us, saying: Hisham b. Yusuf informed us from Ibn Juraij, who said: 'Ata' informed me from Abu Salih az-Zayyat, that he heard Abu Huraira say: The Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—said: "Allah, mighty and majestic is He, has said: 'Every deed of a child of Adam is his [and will be recorded and rewarded in due measure] save fasting, which is Mine, and which I will reward [in My own measure].' Fasting is a protective covering, so when the day comes for anyone of you to fast, let there be no unseemly speech, no clamoring. If anyone reviles such a person, or attacks him, let him say: 'I am fasting.' By Him in whose hand is my soul, the odor from the mouth of him who fasts is sweeter to Allah than the perfume of musk. He who fasts has two occasions of rejoicing. He will have joy when he breaks his fast, and when he meets his Lord he will have joy because of his fasting."

---

[1] Probably the companion of the Prophet 'Abdallah ibn 'Abbas.

[2] The Prophet's youngest wife, who is quoted as the source for a vast number of Traditions.

[3] The ruling Arab tribe in Mecca in the days of the Prophet.

[4] Abu Huraira was a highly celebrated "Companion" of the Prophet. Thousands of hadith named him as the final transmitter in the *isnad*.

[5] The technical word in this Tradition is *fitna*, "dissension," "discord," and in Muslim accounts of the events of the Last Days preceding the great Day of Judgment there are innumerable stories about the dissensions that will arise among the people. The "gate" (*bab*) is the individual who will usher in any particular dissension.

10. ON FASTING [AS A HELP] FOR ONE WHO FEARS [THE TEMPTATIONS OF ONE WHO REMAINS] CELIBATE.

'Ubdan related to us from Abu Hamza, from al-A'mash, from Ibrahim, from 'Alqama, [who said]: While I was walking with 'Abdallah he said: "I was once with the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—when he said: 'Let him who is able to marry take a wife, for it is the best way of averting lascivious glances and of providing chaste enjoyment, but let him who is not able [to marry] fast, for it will be a remover [of unseemly passions] for him.'"

11. ON THE SAYING OF THE PROPHET—UPON WHOM BE ALLAH'S BLESSING AND PEACE—: "WHEN YOU SEE THE NEW MOON, FAST, AND WHEN YOU SEE IT, BREAK YOUR FAST."

Sila quoted from 'Ammar: "Whosoever fasts on a doubtful day is disobeying Abu'l-Qasim,[1]—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace.

'Abdallah b. Maslama related to us from Malik, from Nafi', from 'Abdallah b. 'Umar, that the Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—mentioned Ramadan, and said: "Do not fast until you see the new moon, and do not break the fast until you see it, and if it is cloudy make a computation for it."

'Abdallah b. Maslama related to us, saying: Malik related to us from 'Abdallah b. Dinar, from 'Abdallah b. 'Umar, that the Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—said: "The month is twenty-nine nights, so do not fast till you see it (i.e., the new moon), and if it is cloudy then compute the number to thirty."

Abu'l-Walid related to us, saying: Shu'ba related to us from Jabala b. Suhaim, who said: "I heard Ibn 'Umar say that the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—said: 'The month is so-and-so,' and he tucked in [his] thumb the third time."

Adam related to us, saying: Shu'ba related to us, saying: Muhammad b. Ziyad related to us, saying: I heard Abu Huraira say that the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—said:—or maybe he said: Abu'l-Qasim, upon whom be, etc. said:—"Fast when it (i.e., the moon) becomes seeable, and break your fast when it becomes seeable, and if it is cloudy then complete the number of Sha'ban,[2] [i.e.,] thirty."

Abu 'Asim related to us from Ibn Juraij, from Yahya b. 'Abdallah b. Saifi, from 'Ikrima b. 'Abd al-Rahman from Umm Salama, that the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—took an oath to abstain from his women for a month. When twentynine days had elapsed be came in the morning—or maybe it was in the evening—[to 'A'isha]. Someone objected, "But you swore that you would not enter for a month," and he replied: "A month has twentynine days."

'Abd al-'Aziz b. 'Abdallah related to us, saying: Sulaiman b. Bilal related to us from Humaid, from Anas, who said: "The Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—took an oath to abstain from his women. As his foot was injured he stayed in an upper chamber for twenty-nine nights. Then he came down, but they said: 'O Apostle of Allah, you took an oath for a month', whereat he said: 'The month is twenty-nine [days].'"

12. ON HOW THE TWO MONTHS OF FESTIVAL MAY NOT BE CURTAILED.

Musaddad has related to us, saying: Mu'tamir related to us, saying: I heard Ishaq b. Suwaid [quoting] from 'Abd al-Rahman b. Abi Bakra, from his father, from the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—[or according to another *isnad*], Musaddad related to me, saying: Mu'tamir related to us from Khalid al-Hadhdha', who said: 'Abd al-Rahman b. Abi Bakra related to me from his father, from the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—who said: "There are two months which may not be curtailed, the two months of festival, Ramadan and Dhu'l-Hijja."[3] Said Abu 'Abdallah: "Ishaq said: 'Twenty-nine complete days.' Ahmed b. Jundub said: 'If Ramadan is curtailed, complete Dhu'l-Hijja, and if Dhu'l-Hijja is curtailed, complete Ramadan.' Abu'l-Hasan said: 'Ishaq b. Rahuwaih used to say, 'Let neither be curtailed in [their] meritoriousness, whether it is twenty-nine or thirty [days].'" ...

22. ON THE FASTER WHO AWAKES IN THE MORNING IN A STATE OF SEXUAL POLLUTION.

---

[1] Abu'l-Qasim means "Father of Qasim," and Muhammad was so called because Qasim was the name of his first-born son. It was Muhammad's "name of honor."

[2] Sha'ban is the month that precedes the fasting month of Ramadan.

[3] Ramadan, the month of fasting, is the ninth month in the Islamic calendar, and Dhu'l-Hijja is the twelfth month, the month during which the annual pilgrimage to Mecca—the *hajj*—takes place.

'Abdallah b. Maslama related to us from Malik, from Sumayy, a client of Abu Bakr b. 'Abd al-Rahman b. al-Harith b. Hisham b. al-Mughira, that he heard Abu Bakr b. 'Abd al-Rahman say: "I was with my father when we entered to 'A'isha and Umm Salama," [or as another *isnad* has it], Abu'l-Yaman related to us, saying: Shu'aib informed us from al-Zuhri, who said: Abu Bakr b. 'Abd al-Rahman b. al-Harith b. Hisham informed me that his father 'Abd al-Rahman informed Marwan that 'A'isha and Umm Salama had both informed him, that the Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—would be overtaken by the dawn while he was still in a state of pollution from [sexual contact with] his wives, but he would bathe and then fast. Marwan said to 'Abd al-Rahman b. al-Harith: "I swear by Allah you shall surely [go and] disturb Abu Huraira by that [information]." Marwan was at that time [Governor] over Medina. Said Abu Bakr: "'Abd al-Rahman, however, disliked [the idea of doing] that, so it was decided among us that we would gather together at Dhu'l-Hulaifa, where Abu Huraira had some land. Then 'Abd al-Rahman said to Abu Huraira: 'I am about to mention to you a matter that I should never have mentioned to you had not Marwan sworn that I should.' Then he mentioned what 'A'isha and Umm Salama had said. Said [Abu Huraira]: 'That is so. Al-Fadl b. 'Abbas related [it] to me, and no one would know better than him.'" Said Hammam and Ibn 'Abdallah b. 'Umar [quoting] from Abu Huraira: "The Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—used to order [in such a case that] the fast be broken," but the first [version] has the better *isnad*.

23. ON THE [RESTRICTIONS OF] SEX RELATIONS FOR ONE WHO IS FASTING.

'A'isha said: "It is her vulva which is forbidden to him."

Sulaiman b. Harb related to us from Shu'ba, from al-Hakam, from Ibrahim, from al-Aswad, from 'A'isha, who said: "The Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—used to kiss and handle [his wives] while he was fasting, but he had more control over his *irb* than any of you." [As to this word *irb*], Ibn 'Abbas said that [the derivative from it] *ma'arib* means "need," and Tawus used to use the phrase "one who possesses no *irba*" for a defective who has no need of women. Jabir b. Zaid said: "If one looks [at a woman] and has an emission let him go on with his fast."

24. ON THE [LEGITIMACY OF] KISSING FOR ONE WHO IS FASTING.

Muhammad b. al-Muthanna related to us, saying: Yahya related to us from Hisham, who said: My father informed me from 'A'isha—with whom may Allah be pleased—from the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—[or by another *isnad*], 'Abdallah b. Maslama related to us from Malik, from Hisham, from his father, from 'A'isha—with whom may Allah be pleased—who said: "There were times when the Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—would kiss certain of his wives while he was fasting." Then she laughed.

Musaddad related to us, saying: Yahya related to us from Hisham b. Abi 'Abdallah, who said: Yahya b. Abi Kathir related to us from Abu Salama, from Zainab daughter of Umm Salama, from her mother,[1] who said: "While I was with the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—in bed, my menses started, so I slipped out and put on my menstrual clothes. He asked: 'What is the matter with you? has your period come on?' 'Yes,' I replied, and I entered the bed with him again." Now she and the Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—used both to bathe at the same [water] vessel, and he used to kiss her when he was fasting.

25. ON THE BATHING OF ONE WHO IS FASTING.

Ibn 'Umar soiled his garment with urine but put it on him while he was fasting. Ash-Sha'bi entered the [public] baths while he was fasting. Ibn Abbas said: "There is no harm in tasting [what is in] the cooking pot [while fasting] or [any other] thing." Al-Hasan said: "There is no harm in the faster gargling or cooling himself off" (i.e., provided he does not drink the water). Ibn Mas'ud said: "When the day comes around for any one of you to fast he may, as he rises in the morning, use oil and comb." Anas said: "I had a copper wash-basin in which I used to plunge even while I was fasting, and Ibn 'Umar used to brush his teeth at the beginning and at the end of the day [while he was fasting]." Ibn Sirin said: "There is no harm in the use of the tooth-brush if it is fresh." The objection was raised: "But it has taste," and [he replied]: "and so does the water have taste when you gargle with it, [yet that is not considered to be breaking the fast]. Anas, al-Hasan and Ibrahim also saw no harm in the faster making use of kohl [for the eyes].

Ahmad b. Salih related to us, saying: Ibn Wahb related to us, saying: Yunus related to us, from Ibn Shihab, from 'Urwa

[1] Her mother was one of the Prophet's wives.

and Abu Bakr, who said: 'A'isha—with whom may Allah be pleased—said: "The dawn used to overtake the Prophet in Ramadan when he was polluted—and not from an [erotic] dream—but he would bathe and [then commence the] fast."

Isma'il related to us, saying: Malik related to me from Sumayy, a client of Abu Bakr b. 'Abd al-Rahman b. al-Harith b. Hisham b. al-Mughira, that he heard Abu Bakr b. 'Abd al-Rahman say: "I was with my father and went along with him till we entered to 'A'isha—with whom may Allah be pleased—who said: 'I bear witness of the Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—that he used to wake up in the morning polluted [by sperm] from intercourse, not from dreaming, and then he would fast [that day].' Then we entered to Umm Salama, who said the same thing."

26. ON THE FASTER WHO EATS AND DRINKS FROM FORGETFULNESS.

'Ata' said: "If one snuffs up water and some of it enters the throat so that one is not able to reject it, no harm is done [thereby to one's fast]." Also al-Hasan said: "If a fly should get into one's throat, that is nothing," and al-Hasan and Mujahid both said: "If one should have sexual intercourse forgetfully, that is nothing."

'Abdan related to us [saying], Yazid b. Zurai' informed us, saying, Hisham related to us, saying: Ibn Sirin related to us from Abu Huraira, from the Prophet—upon whom be blessing and peace—that he said: "If anyone forgets and eats or drinks, let him complete his fast, for it was Allah who caused him thus to eat or drink."

27. ON THE FRESH AND THE DRY TOOTHBRUSH FOR HIM WHO IS FASTING.

It is reported from 'Amir b. Rabi'a, who said: "I have seen the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—using the toothbrush while he was fasting more times than I can reckon or count." 'A'isha said, quoting the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—: "The toothbrush is a purifier for the mouth and a thing well-pleasing to the Lord." 'Ata' and Qatada said: "One may swallow one's saliva [without thereby breaking one's fast]." Abu Huraira said, quoting the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—: "Were it not that I might be causing distress to my community I should bid them use the toothbrush at every ablution." The like of this Tradition is transmitted from Jabir and Zaid b. Khalid from the Prophet—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—who [in this matter] did not particularize the one fasting from anyone else.

'Abdan related to us, saying: 'Abdallah informed us, saying: Ma'mar informed us, saying: al-Zuhri related to us from 'Ata' b. Yazid, from Humran, who said: "I saw 'Uthman [i.e., the third Caliph] performing ablutions. He poured [the water out] over his hands three times. Then he gargled and snuffed up [the water]. Then he washed his face three times. Then he washed his right arm up to the elbow three times. Then he washed his left arm up to the elbow three times. Then he rubbed his head [with his moist hands]. Then he washed his right foot three times. Then he washed his left foot three times. Then he said: 'I have seen the Apostle of Allah—upon whom be Allah's blessing and peace—performing ablution just like this ablution of mine, after which he [i.e., the Prophet] said: Whosoever performs [his] ablutions as I have done here, and prays a two-bow prayer, not allowing anything to distract him during them, will have all his past sins forgiven him.'"

3.11 The pope and the Carolingians: Pope Stephen II, *Letters to King Pippin III* (755–756). Original in Latin.

The letters from Pope Stephen II (752–757) to King Pippin III (r.752–768) are crucial sources for the commencement and early years of the Franco-papal alliance, the emergence of the Papal States, the development of the papal administration in and around Rome, and the political history of central Italy in the eighth century. Contained in the so-called *Codex Carolinus* (or "Charlemagne's Book"), these letters form part of a collection of ninety-nine letters sent by a series of popes to the Carolingian mayors of the palace and kings from 739 to about 791. The *Codex* survives in a single late-ninth-century manuscript prepared on the order of Archbishop Willibert of Cologne, but not all of the papal letters survive in the *Codex*. The excerpt here represents only some of the letters that Pope Stephen sent to Pippin.

1. Why did the pope put great emphasis on the role of Saint Peter?
2. What, exactly, did the pope want from the Carolingians?

[Source: *Codex Carolinus*, *Epistolae* 6–10, ed. Wilhelm Gundlach, Monumenta Germaniae Historica, Epistolae 3, Epistolae Merovingici et Karolini Aevi 1 (Berlin: Weidmann, 1892), pp. 488–503. Translated and introduced by Thomas F.X. Noble.]

1 (6): Stephen II to Pippin III (755)

Pope Stephen to the most excellent lords and sons, Pippin, king and our spiritual co-father,[1] and Charles and Carloman, likewise kings and all of them Patricians of the Romans.[2]

So long as your realm's reputation for sincere faith in blessed Peter will shine brilliantly among other peoples because of your sincere faith in the blessed Peter, prince of the apostles, it is crucial to pay particular attention that, even as all Christians declare that you are more glorious than other peoples in the service of blessed Peter, you should in the same way please the almighty Lord, "who gives salvation to kings,"[3] more perfectly in the defense of his holy church, so that you might have as a helper in all things the faith which you cherish for that same prince of the apostles.

Indeed, we had hoped, most exceptional sons, to delay a while longer amplifying our discourse, but because our heart is terribly worn down by sadness and our spirit grieves because of the many trials borne upon us by the wicked King Aistulf of the Lombards, so we have turned away from the wordiness of many speeches and we have been keen to bring one thing, because it is necessary, to the attention of your most excellent Christianity.

Our spiritual co-father, protected by God, and you, our sweetest sons, for the benefit of your souls, just as our merciful God has deigned to bestow victories upon you from heaven, you have been diligent to demand, as far as you could, the rights of blessed Peter, and through a charter of donation your goodness has confirmed that restitution should be made.[4] Now, however, just as we previously instructed your Christianity about the malice of this same wicked king, behold how his deceit and wicked perversity and perjury have been proclaimed recently. Indeed, the devil, the ancient enemy of the human race, has invaded his wicked heart and what was affirmed by the bond of an oath he has been seen to render worthless, and he has not suffered to return one hand's-breadth of land to blessed Peter and to his holy church, the Republic of the Romans.[5] Indeed, since that day when we [the pope and Pippin] parted from one another, he has attempted to afflict us and to hold the holy church of God in great disgrace to such an extent that the tongues of men cannot describe it, since the very stones themselves, if it may be said, cry out with great lamentation at our tribulation.[6] And he has been seen to afflict us to such a degree that our weakness has been renewed in us once again. For I deeply lament, most excellent sons, that not hearing the words of our unhappiness, you, deceiving yourselves and mocking, have chosen to believe falsehood [spread by Aistulf] rather than truth. Whence even without having achieved the justice of blessed Peter we have returned to our own flock and to the people committed to us.

Finally, all Christians used to believe so firmly that blessed Peter, the prince of the apostles, would now have received his justice through your most potent right arm, since through the intercession of his prince of the apostles

[1] Stephen anointed Pippin's sons Charles and Carloman as kings of the Franks and thus entered a spiritual relationship that made Stephen and Pippin "co-fathers" of the two boys. Compaternity was normally associated with baptismal sponsorship.

[2] "Patrician" was a Roman honorific title that conferred no specific rights. In principle, only the Roman (i.e., Byzantine) emperor could confer this title, but the popes began conferring it on the Carolingians.

[3] Ps. 144:10; Douay Ps. 143:10.

[4] Stephen refers to the so-called "Quierzy Document" (754), which spelled out the lands that Pippin would make Aistulf restore to the pope.

[5] Historically only the Roman Empire could be designated this way; the pope is calling the lands assigned to him by Pippin the "Republic" of the Romans.

[6] See Luke 19:40.

the Lord God and Savior Jesus Christ has displayed such a great and resplendent miracle in your most blessed times and has deigned to bestow such an immense victory upon you for the defense of his holy church. But nevertheless, good sons, trusting that same wicked king in what he promised through the bond of an oath, by your own will you have confirmed by a charter of donation that the cities and localities of blessed Peter and of the republic of the holy church of God ought to be restored. But he, having forgotten the Christian faith and the God who ordered him to be born, has been seen to have rendered empty what was confirmed by an oath. Wherefore "his iniquity falls upon his own head";[1] indeed, the trap that he has dug has been revealed, and he is caught in it for his mendacity and perjury.

I implore you most excellent and God-protected sons, through the Lord our God and his holy, glorious and ever virgin mother Mary, our lady, and all the powers of heaven, and through blessed Peter the prince of the apostles, who anointed you as kings, that you grieve for the holy church of God, and that according to that donation which you ordered to be offered to your very protector, our lord, the blessed Peter, you eagerly restore and hand over everything to the holy church of God, and that by no means would you now trust the seductive words or lying illusion of that most wicked king, or his representatives. Behold, his mendacity is indeed manifest such that it ought not by any means to have any further capacity to attract belief but rather, his wicked spirit and wicked will being known, his treachery is uncovered. Indeed, what you once promised blessed Peter, and what was confirmed through a donation in your own hand, for the good of your soul, hasten to restore and hand over to blessed Peter. Finally, the blessed apostle Paul says "It is better not to make a vow than, having made a vow, not to fulfill it."[2]

For truly we commend to your heart all the causes of the holy church of God, and you will render account to God and to blessed Peter on the day of the fearful judgment for exactly how you struggled in the cause of that same prince of the apostles and for the restoration his cities and localities. For ultimately this good work has been reserved for you already for a long period of time now, so that through you the holy church might be exalted, and the prince of the apostles might obtain his justice. None of your ancestors merited such a magnificent gift, but God chose and foreknew you before all time, just as is written "Those whom he foreknew and predestined, those he also called; and those whom he called, he also justified."[3] You have been called. Attend with all haste to effect the justice of this very prince of the apostles because it is written "Faith is justified by works."[4]

Concerning all our tribulations, which we have suffered or are yet suffering, with God's help, let our son Fulrad,[5] your counselor, and his associates inform you. And so act then in the cause of blessed Peter so that in this life you may be victorious with the Lord's favor and, in the future life, through the intercession of that very same prince of the apostles, blessed Peter, you may possess eternal joys.

Farewell, most excellent sons.

3 (8) Stephen II to Pippin (c.Feb. 24, 756)

Pope Stephen to his most excellent lord son and spiritual co-father Pippin, king of the Franks and patrician of the Romans.

We believe that the very creation of the whole universe would declare by what great, mournful, and extremely bitter sadness we are on every side surrounded, and by what great anxiety and difficulty we are hemmed in, and what great tears our streaming eyes pour forth as unceasing evils increase. Who, seeing these tribulations, would not mourn? Who, hearing of the calamities weighing upon us, would not wail? Wherefore we speak in the words of a certain good and modest woman, Susannah: "Difficulties lie upon our every side and we do not know what to do."[6] O, most excellent and Christian sons, just as the almighty creator of all things, the Lord, in former times had sent the prophet Habakkuk, carried thence suddenly by an angel to revive and console the distinguished prophet Daniel who was concealed in the lion's den, so also now, if I may say so, if only his most merciful

[1] Ps. 7:17; Douay Ps. 6:17.

[2] Actually, not Paul but Eccles. 5:4.

[3] A paraphrase of Rom. 8:29–30.

[4] James 2:24.

[5] Abbot of Saint-Denis and key adviser to Pippin and later to his son Charlemagne.

[6] Dan. 13:22.

patience had made your God-preserved excellence present here even for the space of a single hour so that you might behold the miserable and mournful hardships and tribulations which we are suffering helplessly at the hands of the Lombard people and their wicked king! Behold, the days of hardship have come upon us. Days of weeping and bitterness, the day of anxiety and groans of grief are at hand, for what we feared is happening, and what we dreaded is coming to pass. And so, attacked, afflicted, and overwhelmed and surrounded on every side by their most wicked king and their Lombard people, shedding tears and beating our breast we say, calling upon the Lord with the prophet "Help us, Lord of our salvation, and for the honor of your name, deliver us."[1] And again "Take up arms and a shield and rise up in our assistance; Lord, condemn those who are harming us and defeat those who are attacking us."[2] Indeed, though we seem often to bring our tribulations to the attention of your goodness, now however we have taken care to relate the perils of the evils that we have suffered from that same shameless king and his Lombard people, since the magnitude of the danger compels us.

We believe, most Christian and excellent son, and spiritual co-father, that everything is already known to your nobility: How the peace treaty has been overthrown by the wicked King Aistulf and his people; and how we have been able to obtain nothing in the way that he agreed to and which was confirmed through the bond of an oath; and even that no gain has come to us but instead after the desolation of our whole region even more murders have been perpetrated by that same people. And now may you recognize what we are saying with great tears and sorrow in our heart, most excellent son and spiritual co-father. On the very first of January the entire army of that same King Aistulf of the Lombards mustered from the area of Tuscany against this Roman city and camped right at the gate of Saint Peter, and the gate of Saint Pancras, and the gate of Portuensis. Indeed Aistulf himself joined with other troops from a different area and pitched his tents at the Salarian gate and at other gates too and he sent to us, saying "Open the Salarian Gate to me that I might enter the city, and hand over to me your pontifical office, and I might have mercy on you.[3] Otherwise, overturning the walls, I shall kill you with a single sword and we shall see who can rescue you from my hands." And indeed all the Beneventans as a whole mustering against this Roman city have taken up a position at the gate of blessed John the Baptist, at the gate of blessed Paul the apostle, and at the rest of the gates of this Roman city.

To be sure, they have laid waste with fire and sword all the estates far and wide outside the city and, burning up all the houses, they have razed them almost to their foundations. They have set fire to the churches of God, and, casting the most holy images of the saints into the fire, they have destroyed them with their swords. And as for the holy gifts, that is the body of our Lord Jesus Christ, they have put them in their foul vessels that they call bags, and stuffed with abundant food of flesh, they eat those same gifts.[4] Carrying off the veils or all the ornaments of the churches of God, which it is too cruel to have to relate, they have used them for their own purposes. Beating the monks, the servants of God who live in monasteries for the sake of the divine office,[5] with immense blows, they have mutilated quite a few. They have dragged away and polluted with great cruelty the nuns and recluses who, for the love of God, handed themselves over to be cloistered from infancy or the age of puberty, and they seem in that same contamination even to have killed some of them. They have put to the torch all the *Domuscultae*[6] of blessed Peter or, as is reported, they have utterly destroyed by fire the houses of all the Romans outside the city, stolen all the flocks, cut the vines almost to the roots, and completely destroyed the crops by grinding them down. Neither to the house of our holy church nor to anyone living in this Roman city has there remained any hope of surviving because, as it is reported, they have destroyed everything with fire and sword and have killed many. And they have also slain the abundant family[7] of blessed Peter and of all the Romans, both men and women, and they have led away many others as captives. These same

[1] Ps. 78:9; Douay Ps. 77:9 (slightly paraphrased).

[2] See Ps. 34:2; Douay Ps. 33:2.

[3] The Latin is tortured here but it seems that Aistulf was asking Stephen to resign.

[4] This is a reference to the consecrated bread of the altar, the Eucharist.

[5] Monks gathered several times each day to pray the *Opus Divinum*, the Divine Office. See *The Benedictine Rule* above, p. 20.

[6] Beginning with Pope Zachary (741–752) the papacy began reorganizing some of its scattered rural estates into large-scale farms called *Domuscultae*.

[7] *Familia* means household more than a small group of related people. The word here relates to the peasants who worked the lands of the Roman Church.

wicked Lombards have killed the innocent little children whom they have snatched from their mothers' breasts as well as the mothers themselves, whom they have polluted by force. Indeed they have committed such evils in this Roman province as certainly not even the pagan peoples ever before perpetrated so that, as one could say, even the very stones, seeing our losses, cry out with us.[1]

Besieging this suffering Roman city and surrounding it on every side for five and fifty days, they have waged the fiercest battles against us at the walls of this Roman city incessantly, day and night, and they do not stop attacking us with the aim of subjecting all the people to his power—may God prevent it!—so that wicked king Aistulf may kill them with a single sword. For in such a way, mocking us with great fury, they were proclaiming: "Behold, you are surrounded by us and you will not escape our hands. Let the Franks come now and save you from our hands."

Now they have seized the city of Narni, which your Christianity conceded to us, and they have taken certain cities of ours. Afflicted in such a way, we have barely been able, through great cleverness and by using a sea route, to send our envoys and our present letter, which we have written with great tears, to your excellent Christianity. We even—we speak with the truth bearing us out—would express through each and every letter tears mixed with blood; and if only the Lord would grant it to us, at the moment when you read our mournful exhortation a tear filled with blood might flow in your presence through every letter of this message.

Whence, most excellent son and spiritual co-father, I ask you, and as though appearing in your very presence bowed down upon the ground and prostrating myself at your feet, with the divine mysteries, I adjure you before the living and true God and blessed Peter his prince of the apostles, that you come to our assistance with all possible haste and the greatest speed, lest we perish, for after God, it is in your hands that we have placed all our souls, those of all the Romans. Do not abandon us; so also may the Lord not abandon you in all your works and deeds. Do not spurn us; so also may the Lords not spurn you when you call upon his power. Do not withdraw your aid from us, most Christian son and spiritual co-father; so also may the Lord not withdraw his aid and protection from you and your people when you have marched out to fight against your enemies. Come to our assistance and help us with great speed, most Christian one: Thus may you receive support from almighty God who anointed you into kingship above all the masses of the peoples through the disposition of blessed Peter. Hasten, hasten, son, hasten to help us before the enemy's sword reaches our heart; I plead with you, lest we perish, lest the peoples who are in all the earth have occasion to say "What has become of the trust of the Romans which they used to place, after God, in the kings and people of the Franks?" Do not suffer us to perish and do not hold back or delay to relieve us or cut us off from your support; thus may you not be a stranger from the kingdom of God and be cut off by force from your dearest wife, the most excellent queen and our spiritual co-mother. Do not permit us to be worried and endangered any further and to continue in mourning and weeping, fine excellent son and spiritual co-father; in the same way, may sorrow not come upon you over your and my sweetest sons, the lords Charles and Carloman, most outstanding kings and patricians. Do not shut your ear from hearing us and do not turn your face from us lest we be disappointed in our petitions and we be imperiled to the very extremity. In the same way, may the Lord not shut his ear from hearing your prayers and may he not turn his face from you on that day of judgment to come when, with the blessed Peter and with the rest of his apostles, he shall sit to judge through fire every order, both sexes, and every human and worldly power and—God forbid it!—may he not say to you "I do not know you because you have not helped to defend the church of God and you scarcely took any care to rescue his special people in their time of danger."

Hear me, son, hear me and come to our assistance. Behold, the time for saving us has arrived. Save us, before we perish, most Christian king. For what could be better, or finer, or more outstanding than to save those who are in grave danger and caught in dire straits? For it is written: "He who saves is like he who builds up."[2] On this point indeed the eminent prophet Isaiah said: "Relieve the oppressed."[3] For all peoples who are located all around you and have sought protection from your people of the Franks, most mighty through the power of God, have been made safe, and if you do not hesitate to bestow assistance upon all peoples and they are made safe by you, you ought much more to have freed the holy church of God and his people from the attack of their

[1] See Luke 19:40.

[2] Although reminiscent of passages in Psalms and Proverbs, this quotation cannot be identified.

[3] Isa. 1:17.

enemies. O how much confidence there was in our heart when we were worthy to behold your honeyed countenance and we were bound and connected in a bond of love that we would remain in great peace and comfort! But while we were expecting to see the light from you, darkness burst forth[1] and our new situation became worse than the former one. Consider, son, consider and reflect deeply, I adjure you through the living God, how our soul and the souls of all the Roman people, committed to you by God, depend, after God and his prince of the apostles, upon your God-protected excellence and the people of the Franks, for as has already been related, we have committed our souls into your keeping. And if it should happen that we perish—let it not be so and may divine mercy prevent it—weigh carefully, I beseech you, and in every way consider upon whose soul the sin shall lie. Believe with all certainty, most Christian one, that if some perilous disaster shall befall us—may it not happen—you, of all people, protected by God, and most beloved to us, will be destined to give account before the tribunal of God with all your officials because, as has been related, we have, through the precept of God and of blessed Peter, committed the holy church of God and our people of the republic of the Romans for protection to no one else but only to your most beloved excellence and to your sweetest sons and to the whole people of the Franks.

Behold, we have made known all our sorrows and anxieties and difficulties to your God-protected goodness. As for you, most excellent son and spiritual co-father, act, and after God, free those who are fleeing to you so that, bearing good fruit, on the day of future judgment you shall be worthy to say "My lord, blessed Peter, prince of the apostles, behold I, your unworthy servant, having run the race, having kept faith with you, having defended the church of God commended to you by heavenly mercy, I freed it from the hands of its persecutors and, standing unblemished before you, I offer you the sons whom you committed to me for the purpose of rescuing them from the hands of enemies, standing here now unharmed and safe." Then, both holding the helm of the kingdom in this present life and also reigning with Christ in the world to come, you would deserve to obtain the joys of heavenly rewards, hearing without doubt that longed-for fatherly voice of the one who says "Come, blessed of my father, and receive the kingdom that has been prepared for you from the beginning of the world."[2]

May heavenly grace keep your Excellency safe and sound.

4 (9) Pope Stephen II to Pippin, Charles, and Carloman (c.Feb. 24, 756)

To the most excellent lords Pippin, Charles, and Carloman, three kings and our patricians of the Romans, and also to all the bishops, abbots, priests and monks, and to the glorious dukes, counts, and to the entire army of the kingdom and provinces of the Franks, Pope Stephen and all the bishops, priests, deacons, and dukes, soldiers, counts, tribunes, and the whole people and army[3] of the Romans, all placed in affliction.

[The rest of this letter repeats the previous one almost verbatim. What is different is the address to all the officials of the Frankish world and the letter's dispatch from all the religious and secular officials of Rome.]

5 (10) Pope Stephen II writes in the name of Saint Peter to Pippin, Charles, and Carloman (c.Feb. 24, 756)

Peter, called to be an apostle by Jesus Christ the son of the living God who, reigning before all time with the Father in the unity of the Holy Spirit, in the last days became incarnate and was made a man for the salvation of us all and redeemed us by his precious blood through the will of the Father's glory, just as he ordained through his holy prophets in the holy scriptures; and through me the entire catholic and apostolic Roman church of God, the head of all the churches of God, founded by the blood of our very redeemer upon a solid rock, and Stephen, prelate of that same nourishing church: May Grace, peace, and strength for rescuing from the hands of its persecutors that same holy church of God and its Roman people committed to me, be bestowed fully upon you by our Lord God, most excellent men, Pippin, Charles, and Carloman, all three kings, and also upon the most holy bishops, abbots, priests and all the religious monks, as well as upon the

[1] See Job 30:26.

[2] Matt. 25:34.

[3] The presence of these military figures may be surprising, but the popes seem to have retained something of the military establishment of the formerly Byzantine Duchy of Rome. They were neither numerous nor effective, as these letters make clear.

dukes, counts, and all the rest of the armies and people living in Francia.

I, Peter the Apostle, when I was called by Christ, the son of the living God, by the will of divine clemency, was foreordained as the teacher of the whole world by his power, as that very same Lord our God confirmed: "Go, teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit";[1] and again "Receive the Holy Spirit; whose sins you shall remit, they are remitted for them."[2] And commending his sheep in particular to me, his meager servant yet called as an apostle, he said: "Feed my sheep, feed my lambs." And again "You are Peter and upon this rock I shall build my church, and the gates of Hell will not prevail against it, and I shall give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven; whatever you will have bound on earth will also be bound in heaven and whatever you will have loosed on earth will also be loosed in heaven."[3] Wherefore, let all those who, hearing my teaching, fulfill it, believe with certainty that in this world their sins are forgiven by the precept of God and they shall proceed clean and without blemish into that life. Thus, because the inspiration of the Holy Spirit has shone forth in your gleaming hearts and you have been made lovers of his unique and holy Trinity by receiving the word through the preaching of the Gospel, your hope of future reward is held bound up in this holy Roman church of God that has been committed to us.

Therefore, I, Peter, the apostle of God, who regard you as adopted sons, appealing to the love of all, I implore you to defend from the hands of its enemies this Roman city and the people committed to me by God, and also to rescue the house where I lie at rest according to the flesh from the defilement of the nations, and bearing witness I warn you to liberate the church of God commended to me by the divine power of God because they are suffering immense afflictions and oppressions from the awful nation of the Lombards. May you by no means believe otherwise, most beloved, but instead trust in it as a certainty: Through my very own self, just as if I were standing alive in the flesh before you, we constrain and bind with mighty adjurations through this exhortation because, according to the promise which we received from that same Lord God, our redeemer, we consider all you peoples of the Franks to be a special people among all the nations. So I bear witness and I warn you as if through a mysterious vision and with firm obligation I adjure you, most Christian kings Pippin, Charles, and Carloman, and also all the archbishops, bishops, abbots, priests, and all the religious monks, and all the officials, and the dukes, counts, and the whole people of the kingdom of the Franks, and believe, all of you, just as firmly that the words of the exhortation are addressing you as you would if I, Peter, the apostle of God, were standing before you alive in the flesh in person, because, even if I am not there in the flesh, I am not absent from you spiritually, for it is written: "He who receives a prophet in the name of a prophet, receives the prophet's reward."[4]

And also our mistress, the mother of God, the ever-virgin Mary, bears witness, warns, and commands you, along with us, adjuring by great obligations, likewise also thrones and dominions, and all the troops of the heavenly host, not to mention the martyrs and confessors of Christ, and everyone wholly pleasing to God. And these, urging and imploring along with us, testify to how much you grieve for this Roman city committed to us by the Lord God, and for the Lord's flocks dwelling within it, and also for the holy church of God commended to me by the Lord. So, defend and free it, with great haste, from the hands of the persecuting Lombards, lest—may it never be!—my body which suffered torments for the sake of the Lord Jesus Christ, and my house, where by God's command it lies at rest, be contaminated by them and lest my special people be further maimed or they be butchered by that very people of the Lombards who stand guilty of such a great crime of treachery and are proven to be transgressors of the divine scriptures. Offer therefore to my Roman people, committed to me by God in this life, your own brothers, protection with all your strength, with the Lord assisting you, so that I, Peter, called to be an apostle of God, may extend in turn patronage to you in this life and on the day of future judgment, so that in the kingdom of God the most shining and distinguished tents may be prepared for you and that I, giving my word, may bestow upon you in turn the rewards of eternal recompense and the endless joys of paradise, provided that you will have defended my Roman city and my special people, your brothers, the Romans, with great swiftness, from the hands of the wicked Lombards.

Hasten, hasten, I urge and protest by the living and true God, hasten and assist, before the living font whence you

[1] Matt. 28:19.

[2] John 20:22–23.

[3] Matt. 16:18–19.

[4] Matt. 10:41.

were nourished and reborn dries up; before that little spark that remains from the most blazing flame, from which you have known your light, is extinguished; before your spiritual mother, the holy church of God, in which you hope to receive eternal life, is humiliated, overwhelmed, and is violated and contaminated by the impious. I witness before you, my most beloved adoptive sons, through the grace of the Holy Spirit, I bear witness and I greatly urge and admonish before God the terrible creator of all, I, the apostle of God, Peter, and together with me the holy, catholic, and apostolic church of God, which the Lord committed to me: Do not suffer this Roman city to perish in which the Lord laid my body and which he commended to me and established as the foundation of the faith.

Free it and its Roman people, your brothers, and in no way permit it to be invaded by the people of the Lombards; thus may your provinces and possessions not be invaded by peoples of whom you know nothing. Let me not be cut off from my Roman people; thus may you not be foreign and cut off from the kingdom of God and eternal life. In whatever you have demanded of me, I shall come to your aid, that is to say, I shall also bestow my patronage. Come to the aid of my Roman people, your brothers, and struggle more perfectly and achieve final success in freeing them. For no one receives the crown except he who has genuinely struggled. And you, struggle bravely for the liberation of the holy church of God lest you perish for eternity. I adjure you, I adjure you, most beloved, as I have already said, by the living God, and I stand true witness: Do not in the slightest permit this my Roman city and the people living in it to be mutilated any further by the people of the Lombards; thus may your bodies and souls not be slashed and tormented in the eternal and inextinguishable fire of Tartarus with the devil and his stinking angels. And let not the sheep of the Lord's flock, committed to me by God, that is the Roman people, be further scattered; may the Lord not scatter and drive you out just as the Israelite people has been scattered.

For it has been declared that your people of the Franks is devoted to me, to the apostle of God, Peter, beyond all peoples who are under heaven; thus I have commended to you through the hand of my vicar the church, which the Lord handed to me, so that you might free it from the hands of its enemies. Believe most confidently that I, the servant of God, called to be an apostle, have lent my aid in all your needs when you have called on me, and I have bestowed victory upon you, through the power of God, over your enemies, and in the future I shall bestow no less, believe me, if you make haste with great dispatch to free this my Roman city. Remember this as well: How I also caused the enemies of the holy church of God to be struck down by you when they threatened battle against you who were few in number against them. Therefore, struggle; fulfill this warning of mine quickly, that you may more perfectly deserve to obtain my help through the grace that has been given to me by Christ, our Lord God.

Behold, dearest sons, for in preaching I have warned you. If you shall have obeyed quickly it will lead to great reward for you and assisted by my intercession you will overcome your enemies in the present life and you will endure to a great age, and you will have the goods of the earth at your disposal and beyond doubt you will enjoy eternal life. If not, however, which we do not believe, you will have made some delay or excuse for making no haste to fulfill this our exhortation to defend this Roman city of mine and the people living in it and the holy apostolic church of God committed to me by the Lord, and likewise his prelate, then know this: That by the authority of the holy and unique Trinity, through the grace of the apostolic office, a grace that has been given to me by the Lord Christ, we disinherit you from the kingdom of God and from eternal life for your transgression of our exhortation.

But may our God and Lord Jesus Christ who, redeeming us by his precious blood, has led us to the light of truth and established us as preachers and teachers for the whole world, grant it to you to judge these things wisely, and to understand and to make arrangements concerning them exceedingly quickly so that you may more swiftly hasten to rescue this Roman city and its people and the holy church of God committed to me by the Lord and, with my intercession intervening on your behalf, may he keep you safe and victorious with the mercy he shows to those who are faithful to his power, and in the world to come may he make you worthy many times over of the gifts of his reward with his saints and chosen ones.

Farewell.[1]

[1] Soon after this letter Pippin mustered his army, marched into Italy, defeated Aistulf, and drew up the Second Peace of Pavia, better known as the "Donation of Pippin."

3.12 Modeling the state on Old Testament Israel: *The Admonitio Generalis* (789). Original in Latin.

Eleven years before he was crowned emperor, King Charlemagne drew up a set of general instructions, *The Admonitio Generalis*, for the great men of his realm, both lay and ecclesiastical, "to lead the people of God to the pastures of eternal life." He took as his model the biblical King Josiah, who discovered a copy of "the book of the law," realized how badly his people deviated from what was written therein, and immediately took steps to reform his kingdom (see 2 Kings 22–23). In effect, the many laws set forth by *The Admonitio Generalis*, only some of which are excerpted here, were Charlemagne's attempts to govern his kingdom according to the laws of God.

1. What must the clergy have been doing that needed reform?
2. Why are weights and measures included in the *Admonitio*'s reforms?

[Source: *Christianity through the Thirteenth Century*, ed. Marshall W. Baldwin (New York: Harper and Row, 1970), pp. 115–19.]

Our Lord Jesus Christ ruling forever.

I, Charles by the grace of God and the gift of His mercy, king and ruler of the kingdom of the Franks, devout defender and humble supporter of holy church, give greetings of lasting peace and beatitude to all grades of the ecclesiastical order and to all ranks of the secular power, in Christ our Lord, eternal God. Reflecting with dutiful and calm consideration, along with our priests and councilors, on the abundant mercy of Christ the King toward us and our people, we have considered how necessary it is not only with our whole heart and voice to offer thanks for His goodness unceasingly, but also to persist in the continuous exercise of good works in His praise so that He who has given our kingdom such honors may deign to preserve and protect us and our kingdom forever. Accordingly it has pleased us to solicit your efforts, O pastors of the churches of Christ and leaders of His flock and distinguished luminaries of the world, to strive to lead the people of God to the pastures of eternal life by watchful care and urgent advice and stir yourselves to bring back the wandering sheep within the walls of ecclesiastical constancy on the shoulders of good example or exhortation, lest the wolf, plotting against anyone who transgresses the canonical laws or evades the fatherly traditions of the ecumenical councils—which God forbid!—find him and devour him. Thus they must be admonished, urged, and even forced by the great zeal of piety, to restrain themselves within the bonds of paternal sanctions with staunch faith and unrelenting constancy. Therefore, we have sent our missi who by the authority of our name are to correct along with you what should be corrected. And we append herewith certain chapters from canonical ordinances which seem to us to be particularly necessary.

Let no one judge this admonition to piety, by which we endeavor to correct errors, remove superfluous matter, and condense those things which are right, to be presumptuous. I entreat him rather to accept it with a benevolent spirit of charity. For we read in the book of Kings how the holy Josiah, traveling around the kingdom bestowed on him by God, correcting and admonishing, labored to recall it to the worship of the true God: not that I hold myself equal to his holiness, but because the examples of the saints are always to be followed by us, and we must bring together whomsoever we can to a devotion to the good life in the praise and glory of our Lord Jesus Christ....

Chapter 70, to the Clergy

Bishops should carefully see to it that throughout their dioceses (*parochiae*) the priests observe their Catholic faith and baptism and understand well the prayers of the mass; and that the psalms are chanted properly according to the divisions of the verses and that they understand the Lord's Prayer and preach that it is to be understood by all, so that each person may know what he is asking of

God; and that the "Glory be to the Father" be sung with all dignity by everyone and that the priest himself with the holy angels and all the people of God with one voice intone the "Holy, Holy, Holy." And it should in every way be made clear to priests and deacons that they should not bear arms but trust in the protection of God rather than in arms.

Chapter 71, Something to the Priest, Something to People

It is likewise our will to urge your reverences that each throughout his diocese see that the church of God is held in His honor and the altars venerated with suitable dignity, and that the house of God is not used as a pathway for dogs and that the vessels consecrated to God are kept with great care or used with honor; and that secular or mundane affairs are not transacted in churches because the house of God must be a house of prayer and not a den of thieves;[1] and that the people when they come to the solemnities of the mass are attentive and do not leave before the completion of the priest's blessing.

Chapter 72, to the Clergy

And we also demand of your holiness that the ministers of the altar of God shall adorn their ministry by good manners, and likewise the other orders who observe a rule and the congregations of monks. We implore them to lead a just and fitting life, just as God himself commanded in the Gospel. "Let your light so shine before men that they may see your good works and glorify your Father which is in heaven,"[2] so that by their example many may be led to serve God; and let them join and associate to themselves not only children of servile condition, but also sons of free men. And let schools be established in which boys may learn to read. Correct carefully the Psalms, the signs in writing (*notas*), the songs, the calendar, the grammar in each monastery or bishopric, and the catholic books; because often some desire to pray to God properly, but they pray badly because of the incorrect books. And do not permit your boys to corrupt them in reading or writing. If there is need of writing the Gospel, Psalter, and Missal, let men of mature age do the writing with all diligence.

Chapter 73, to the Clergy

We have likewise taken pains to ask that all, wherever they are, who have bound themselves by the vow of a monastic life live in every way regularly in a monastic manner according to that vow. For it is written, "Render your vows to the Lord God";[3] and again, "it is better not to vow than not to fulfill."[4] And let those coming to monasteries according to the regular manner be first tested in the examination room and so accepted. And let those who come to the monastery from the secular life not be sent immediately on monastic tasks outside before they are well educated within. And monks are not to seek worldly pleasures. Likewise, those who are admitted to that clerical state which we call the canonical life, we desire that they live such a life canonically and in every way according to its rule; and the bishop should govern their life as the abbot does the monks.

Chapter 74, to All

Let all have equal and correct weights and just and equal measures, whether in the towns or in the monasteries, whether in giving in them or in receiving, as we have the command in the law of the Lord,[5] and likewise in Solomon, when the Lord says, "[Different] weight and [different] measure, my soul abhors."[6] ...

Chapter 80, to All the Clergy

Let them teach fully the Roman chant and let the office be followed according to the direction of the nocturnal or gradual as our father Pepin, of blessed memory, ordered

[1] See Matt. 21:13.

[2] Matt. 5:16.

[3] Deut. 23:21.

[4] Eccles. 5:4.

[5] See Lev. 19:35–36.

[6] Prov. 20:10.

done when he suppressed the Gallican use for the sake of unity with the apostolic see and the peaceful harmony of the holy church of God.[1]

Chapter 81, to All

And we also decree, according to what the Lord ordained in the law,[2] that there be no servile work on Sundays, as my father, of good memory, ordered in the edicts of his synods, that is: that men do no farm work, either in plowing fields or in tending vineyards, in sowing grain or planting hedges, in clearing in the woods or in cutting trees, in working with stone or in building houses, or in working in the garden; nor are they to gather for games or go hunting. Three tasks with wagons may be performed on Sunday, the arms' cart or the food wagon, or if it is necessary to bear someone's body to the grave.

Likewise, women are not to work with cloth nor cut out clothes, nor sew or embroider; nor is it permissible to comb wool or crush flax or wash clothes in public, or shear sheep, to the end that the honor and quiet of the Lord's day be kept. But let people come together from all places to the church for the solemnities of the mass and praise God on that day for all the good things He has done for us.

Chapter 82, to All

And you are to see to it, O chosen and venerable pastors and rulers of the church of God, that the priests whom you send through your dioceses (*parochiae*) for ruling and preaching in the churches to the people serving God, that they rightly and justly preach; and you are not to allow any of them to invent and preach to the people new and unlawful things according to their own judgment and not according to Holy Scripture. And you too are to preach those things which are just and right and lead to eternal life, and instruct others that they are to preach these same things.

3.13 The Slavic conversion: Constantine-Cyril, *Prologue to the Gospel* (863–867). Original in Old Church Slavonic.

In 863 the brothers Constantine and Methodius were sent to Moravia at the behest of the Byzantine Patriarch Photius and at the invitation of the Moravian ruler Ratislav. They stayed about four years, translating the Scriptures into the Slavic dialect they had learned in Macedonia, which was not the language of Moravia but was nevertheless comprehensible to the people living there. Today this language is called Old Church Slavonic. In the *Prologue* to his translation of the Gospels, Constantine speaks of the importance of literacy: "The soul lacking letters / Grows dead in human beings."

1. How does the *Prologue* make the conversion of the Slavs seem inevitable?
2. How does the *Prologue* employ the five senses to make its point?

[Source: Roman Jakobson, "St. Constantine's Prologue to the Gospel," *St. Vladimir's Seminary Quarterly* 7 (1963): 16–19.]

[1] The "Gallican use" refers to the words and melodies used in Church liturgy in Francia under the Merovingians. Although Charlemagne here attributes the suppression of this liturgy to his father, Pippin III (d.768), in fact it was Charlemagne himself who was most instrumental in reforming the chants used in his kingdom along Roman models.

[2] See Exod. 20:8–10.

I am the Prologue to the Holy Gospels:
As the prophets prophesied of old—
"Christ comes to gather the nations and tongues,
Since He is the light of the world"[1]—
So it has come to pass in this seventh millennium.
Since they have said, "The blind shall see,
The deaf shall hear the Word of the Book,
For it is proper that God be known."[2]
Therefore hearken, all ye Slavs!
For this gift is given by God,
The gift on God's right hand,
The incorruptible gift to souls,
To those souls that will accept it.
Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John
Teach all the people, saying:
"If you see and love the beauty of your souls,
And hence are striving
To dispel the darkness of sin,
And to repel the corruptness of this world,
Thus to win paradise life
And to escape the flaming fire,
Then hear now with your own mind,
Since you have learned to hear, Slavic people,
Hear the Word, for it came from God,
The Word nourishing human souls,
The Word strengthening heart and mind,
The Word preparing all to know God."
As without light there can be no joy—
For while the eye sees all of God's creation,
Still what is seen without light lacks beauty—
So it is with every soul lacking letters,
Ignorant of God's law,
The sacred law of the Scriptures,
The law that reveals God's paradise.
For what ear not hearing
The sound of thunder, can fear God?
Or how can nostrils which smell no flower
Sense the Divine miracle?
And the mouth which tastes no sweetness
Makes man like stone;
Even more, the soul lacking letters
Grows dead in human beings.
Thus, considering all this, brethren,
We speak fitting counsel
Which will divide men
From brutish existence and desire,
So that you will not have intellect without intelligence,
Hearing the Word in a foreign tongue,
As if you heard only the voice of a copper bell.
Therefore St. Paul has taught:
"In offering my prayer to God,
I had rather speak five words
That all the brethren will understand
Than ten thousand words which are
incomprehensible."[3]
What man will not understand this?
Who will not apply the wise parable,
Interpreting to us the true message?
As corruption threatens the flesh,
Decaying and rotting everything worse than pus
If there is no fit nourishment,
So each soul no longer lives
Deprived of Divine Life,
Hearing not the Divine Word.
Let another very wise parable
Be told, ye men that love each other
And wish to grow toward God!
Who does not know this true doctrine?
As the seed falls on the field,
So it is upon human hearts
Craving the divine shower of letters
That the fruit of God may increase.
What man can tell all the parables
Denouncing nations without their own books
And who do not preach in an intelligible tongue?
Even one potent in all tongues
Lacks power to tell their impotence.
Let me add my own parable
Condensing much sense into few words:
Naked indeed are all nations without their own books
Who being without arms cannot fight
The Adversary of our souls
And are ripe for the dungeon of eternal torments.
Therefore, ye nations whose love is not for the Enemy
And who truly mean to fight him:
Open eagerly the doors of your intelligence—
You who have now taken up the sturdy arms
That are forged through the Lord's Books,
And who mightily crush the head of the Enemy.
Whoever accepts these letters,

[1] See Isa. 66:8 and John 8:12.

[2] See Isa. 29:18.

[3] See 1 Cor. 14:19.

To him Christ speaks wisdom,
Feeds and strengthens your souls,
And so do the Apostles with all the Prophets.
Whoever speak their words
Will be fit to slay the Foe,
Bringing God good victory,
Escaping the suppurant corruption of flesh—
Flesh that lives as in a sleep;
These will not fall but hold fast,
And come forth before God as men of valor,
Standing on the right hand of God's throne,
When He judges the nations with fire,
And rejoicing throughout the ages with the angels,
Eternally praising God the merciful,
Always with songs from the holy books,
Singing to God who loves man:
To Him befits all glory,
To the Son of God, honor and praise forever,
With the Father and the Holy Ghost,
Unto the ages of ages, from all creatures!

3.14 The Bulgarian khan in Byzantine guise: *Seal of Boris-Michael* (864–889).

The Bulgars established themselves in Bulgaria in the 670s, as Byzantine control over the region south of the Danube weakened. The Bulgar khans and nobles subjected both Slavs and Greek-speaking Byzantines to their rule, employing the Greek speakers in their administration. Influenced by Byzantine practices, these administrators affixed seals to official documents sent out in the name of the seal's owner. The seals were made of lead, a common metal. They were locally stamped and decorated with monograms or inscriptions or even human heads. Lead was used not only because it was malleable but also to indicate the low-level and routine nature of the correspondence involved. Use of the inferior metal also acknowledged the lower status of the Bulgarian ruler within the Byzantine political hierarchy. Only the Byzantine emperor had the right to use gold seals, while notables with the highest titles were allowed, in exceptional circumstances, to use silver. Lower-ranking rulers who recognized the superior position of the emperors used lead.

When Khan Boris (r.852–889) converted to the Christian religion and adopted the name Michael and the title of "prince," he had lead seals made to advertise his new faith. On the seal shown here, the "obverse"—or "heads," as in "heads or tails"—side of the seal has a circle with the inscription, "Christ help your servant Michael ruler of Bulgaria." Inside the circle is the head of a long-haired and bearded Christ with a cross nimbus (halo) behind him. His right hand gives a sign of blessing, while his left hand holds the Gospels. On the "reverse"—or tails—side is, again, a circle with an inscription, this time reading: "Mother of God help your servant Michael ruler of Bulgaria." Inside the circle is the head of Mary, mother of God, wearing a *maphorion* (a mantel with a hood), her hands upraised in prayer. Note that, influenced by Byzantine notions of rulership, the seal presents Boris-Michael as a territorial ruler (over "Bulgaria") rather than ruler of the Bulgar people (the "Bulgarians").

See Plate 1, "Reading through Looking," p. II, for a color reproduction of the seal.

1. How did seals such as this function as political advertisements?
2. How did the seal suggest the role of religion in Boris-Michael's administrative decisions?

[Kiril Petkov, ed. and trans., *The Voices of Medieval Bulgaria, Seventh–Fifteenth Century: The Records of a Bygone Culture* (Leiden: Brill, 2008), p. 33. Images courtesy of Dr. Ivan Jordanov.]

3.15 The Bulgarians adopt Christianity: Pope Nicholas I, *Letter to Answer the Bulgarians' Questions* (866). Original in Latin.

Christians mingled with Bulgars in the Bulgar state, and more arrived gradually in the course of the ninth century via Greek captives and deserters. In *c.*864 Khan Boris converted to the Byzantine form of Christianity, taking the baptismal name of Michael, after Emperor Michael III (r.842–867). (See one of his seals in Plate 1, "Reading through Looking," p. II.) But Boris-Michael did not intend to be subservient to the emperor. Thus in 866, seeking to reconcile Bulgar with Christian practices, he turned to Pope Nicholas I to clarify various points of the faith and how they should apply to the Bulgarians. His original questions have been lost, but the pope's advice suggests what they were.

1. What daily religious practices did the pope prescribe?
2. What did Nicholas think of Boris-Michael's treatment of the people who "rose up against" him?

[Source: Nicholas I, *Epistola* 99, in *Epistolae* 6, ed. Ernest Perels, Monumenta Germaniae Historica (Berlin, 1925), pp. 568–600. Translated by William L. North.]

Not much needs to be said in response to your inquiries nor have we considered it necessary to pause long over each question, since we, with God's aid, are going to send to your country and to your glorious king,[1] our beloved son, not only the books of divine law but also suitable messengers of ours[2] who will instruct you concerning

[1] Boris-Michael. Note that the pope bestows the title of king on him.

[2] Paul, bishop of Populonia, and Formosus, bishop of Porto.

the details insofar as time and reason dictate; to them, as well, we have committed books that we thought they would need.

Chapter I.

Now then, at the very beginning of your questions, you state in excellent and praiseworthy fashion that your kind seeks the Christian law. If we tried to explain this law fully, countless books would have to be written. But in order to show briefly in what things it chiefly consists, you should know that the law of Christians consists in faith and good works....

Chapter IV.

We do not think we need to explain to you, who are rough and in some ways children in the faith, how many times or days in the course of a year one should abstain from meat. For the time being, on the days of fasting when one should especially supplicate the Lord through abstinence and the lamentation of penance, one should completely abstain from meat. For, although it is fitting to pray and abstain at all times, one should nevertheless be even more of a slave to abstinence during times of fasting. This is to say that he who recalls that he has committed illicit deeds, should abstain on these days even from licit things in accordance with the sacred decretals, namely during Lent, which is before Easter, on the fast before Pentecost, at the fast before the assumption of the holy mother of God and the ever virgin Mary, our Lady, as well as on the fast before the feast of the birth of our Lord Jesus Christ: these are the fasts which the holy Roman church received in antiquity and maintains. But on the sixth day of every week, and on all the vigils of famous feasts one should cease from eating meat and should apply oneself to fasting....

Chapter VII.

You further inquire, whether a clean or unclean person is allowed to kiss or carry the cross of the Lord when he holds it. [We answer] that for the person who is clean, it is completely permissible; for what is indicated in a kiss if not the love with which someone burns for these things? And in carrying it, what else is expressed if not the mortification or fellow-suffering of the flesh? Indeed, the Lord also ordered him to carry this cross, but in his mind; but when it is performed with the body, one is more easily reminded that it should also be performed in the mind....

Chapter IX.

You ask whether you should partake of the body and blood of the Lord every day during greater Lent.[1] We humbly pray to omnipotent God and exhort you all most vehemently that you do so, but not if your mind is disposed towards sin, or if your conscience—because it is unrepentant or unreconciled perhaps—accuses your mind of criminal sins; or if one of you is not reconciled to a brother through his own fault....

Chapter X.

You wish to know if anyone is permitted to perform any labor on Saturday or Sunday. Concerning this matter the oft-remembered holy Pope Gregory said, while addressing the Romans: "It has come to my attention that certain men of a perverse spirit have sowed some depraved things among you which are contrary to the holy faith, so that they forbid anything to be done on Saturday. What else should I call such people except preachers of the Antichrist, who shall, when he comes, make Saturday and Sunday be kept free from any work? ... But on Sundays one should cease from earthly labor and devote oneself to prayers in every way, in order that whatever act of negligence has been committed during the other six days, may be expiated with prayers throughout the day of the Lord's resurrection.[2]

Chapter XI.

You ask whether you should cease from earthly work on the feast days of these apostles, martyrs, confessors, and virgins. Yes, [you should cease from work] on the feasts of the blessed virgin Mary, of the twelve apostles, of the evangelists and of their precursor, the lord John, of St. Stephen the Protomartyr as well as on the birthdays of those

[1] The forty days preceding Easter.

[2] Here Nicholas is thinking of a letter of Gregory the Great to the citizens of Rome.

saints whose celebrated memory and feast day shall be held among you by God's favor. You should know clearly, that worldly work should cease on feast days in order for Christians to attend church more easily; to engage in psalms, hymns, and spiritual songs; to spend time in prayer; to offer oblations; to share in the remembrance of the saints; to rise to imitate them; to concentrate on divine scriptures, and to distribute alms to the needy....

Chapter XII.

Because you ask whether it is permitted to carry out judgment on the feasts of the saints, and whether the person, if he deserves it, should be sentenced to death on this same day, you should know that on those feasts when, as we have shown, one should cease from all worldly labor, we think that one should abstain all the more from secular affairs and especially from executions ...

Chapter XIII.

Among your questions and inquiries, you said that you are requesting secular laws.[1] Regarding this matter, we would willingly have sent the volumes that we thought you might need at present, if we had learned that one among you could interpret them for the rest; if we have given some books concerning secular law to our messengers, we do not want them to be left [with you] when they return, lest by chance someone interpret them for you in a perverse way or violate them with some falsehood....

Chapter XVII.

Now then, you have told us about how you received the Christian religion by divine clemency and made your entire people be baptized, and how these people, after they had been baptized, fiercely rose up against you with one spirit, claiming that you had not given them a good law and wishing to kill you and establish another king. [You then recounted] how you, prepared to oppose them with the help of divine power, conquered them from the greatest to the least and held them captives in your hands, and how all the leaders and magnates along with every one of their children were slaughtered by the sword, though the mediocre and lesser persons suffered no evil. Now you desire to know whether you have contracted any sin on account of those who were deprived of their lives. Clearly what did not escape sin nor could have happened without your fault was that a child who was not privy to their parents' plot nor is shown to have born arms against you, was slaughtered along with the guilty, even though he was innocent.... You also should have acted with greater mildness concerning the parents who were captured, that is, [you should have] spared their lives out of love for the God Who delivered them into your hands. For thus you might be able to say to God without hesitation in the Lord's Prayer: "Forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors."[2] But you also could have saved those who died while fighting, but you did not permit them to live nor did you wish to save them, and in this you clearly did not act on good advice; for it is written: "There shall be judgment without mercy for the person who does not exercise mercy."[3] ... But because you erred more because of your zeal for the Christian religion and your ignorance than because of any other vice, with subsequent penance seek mercy and indulgence for these sins through the grace of Christ....

Chapter XXVI.

With regard to those who have slaughtered their kinsman, that is, someone related by blood such as a brother, cousin, or nephew, the venerable laws [of the Bulgarians] should be properly enforced. But if they have fled to a church, they should be saved from the laws of death but they should also submit without hesitation to the penance which the bishop or priest of the place has decided. "I do not want the death of the sinner," says the Lord, "but rather wish that he be converted and live."[4] ...

---

[1] Note the close association that newly converted kings made between becoming Christian and gaining written lawbooks and codes. See, for example, King Stephen's *Laws* for Hungary (below, p. 213). But the Bulgarians, who (as Nicholas implies) were more familiar with Greek than with Latin, did not write down a law code until the ninth century. It was based on an eighth-century Byzantine code that in turn depended on the law codes sponsored by Justinian.

[2] Matt. 6:12.

[3] James 2:3.

[4] Ezek. 33:11.

Chapter XXXIII.

When you used to go into battle, you indicated that you carried the tail of a horse as your military emblem, and you ask what you should carry now in its place. What else, of course, but the sign of the cross? ...

Chapter XXXIV.

You also asked, if, when a messenger arrives, you should set off immediately in order to get to the fighting or whether there are any days when it is not fitting to go forth into battle. On this matter we answer: there is no day which should be kept completely free from beginning or carrying out any kind of business, except (if too great a necessity does not compel you) the most celebrated days mentioned above, which are venerated by all Christians. But this is not because it is forbidden to do such things on these days. For our hope should be placed not in days nor determined by days, but all salvation should be expected absolutely from the true and living God alone. Rather it is because on these days, if the necessity is not unavoidable, one should spend time in prayer and the mysteries of so great a festival should be attended more zealously than usual....

Chapter XXXV.

You say that when you went forth into battle, you used to watch the days and hours and perform incantations, games, songs and some auguries, and you wish to be instructed on what you should do now. Regarding this matter, we would of course instruct you, if we did not think that you have been divinely instructed on this matter; for atop the divine foundation, we cannot build anything. Therefore, when you decide to go forth into battle, do not fail to do what you yourselves have recalled, i.e. go to the churches, carry out prayers, forgive sinners, be present at the solemnities of the Mass, offer oblations, make a confession of your sins to the priests, receive the reconciliation and communion, open the jails, loose the fetters and grant liberty to servants and especially to those who are broken and weak and captives, and distribute alms to the needy, so that you may fulfill what the Apostle admonishes when he says: "Do everything, whether it be in word or deed, do it all in the name of the Lord Jesus."[1] For the things that you mentioned, that is, the observations of days and hours, the incantations, the games, iniquitous songs, and auguries are the pomp and workings of the devil, which you already renounced, thank God, in baptism and you cast off all these things completely along with the old man and his actions, when you put on the new....

Chapter XLI.

With regard to those who refuse to receive the good of Christianity but instead sacrifice to and bow down before idols, we can write nothing more to you than that you win them over to the correct faith with warnings, exhortations, and reason rather than with force. For they have knowledge but it is in vain: although they are people with capable intellects, they adore the products of their own hands and senseless elements, or to speak more truly, they bend their necks and sacrifice to demons....

Chapter XLVII.

You ask whether it is permitted to play games during Lent. Christians are not permitted to do this not only during Lent but also at any other time. But you are weak and are not yet strong enough to climb to the mountain to receive the highest commandments of God but instead have been placed in the flatlands like the former children of Israel, so that you may at least receive some of the simpler, lesser commandments. Therefore, because we cannot yet to convince you to refrain from games at all times, you should at least abstain from games, from the vain conversation and scurrility that do not befit the occasion, and idle chatter during the time of Lent and fasting when you should be spending more time and be more intent on prayer, abstinence, and every kind of penance....

Chapter XLIX.

Furthermore, you ask whether you are permitted to show your wives gold, silver, cattle, horses, etc. as dowry just as [you did] before. Because it is no sin and the laws do not forbid it, we, too, do not forbid this from occurring;

[1] Col. 3:17.

and not only this, but also whatever else you did before baptism, you are now clearly permitted to do....

Chapter LI.

You ask if you are permitted to have two wives at the same time; if this is not permitted, you know what the person in this situation should do at this point. Neither the origin of the human condition nor any Christian law allows a man to have two wives at once. For God, Who made the human being, made one male and one female at the very beginning. Of course, he could have given him two wives, if he wished but he did not want to do so....

Chapter LVII.

You claim that the Greeks forbid eunuchs to kill your animals, so that they assert that anyone who has eaten [meat] from animals killed by them has committed a grave sin. This sounds truly strange and silly to us. But because we have not heard the reasoning of the people who say these things, we cannot decide anything definitive concerning their assertion, since it is not yet fully known....

Chapter LXIV.

The number of days after a woman gives birth to a child that a man should abstain from [having intercourse] with her is proclaimed not by the products of our own wit but by the words of the Roman Pope and apostle of the English nation, Gregory [the Great] of blessed memory. Among other things, he says when he writes to Bishop Augustine, whom he had sent to [the Anglo-Saxons]: "A woman's husband should not come to lie with her until the infants to whom she has given birth, have been weaned...."[1]

Chapter XCV.

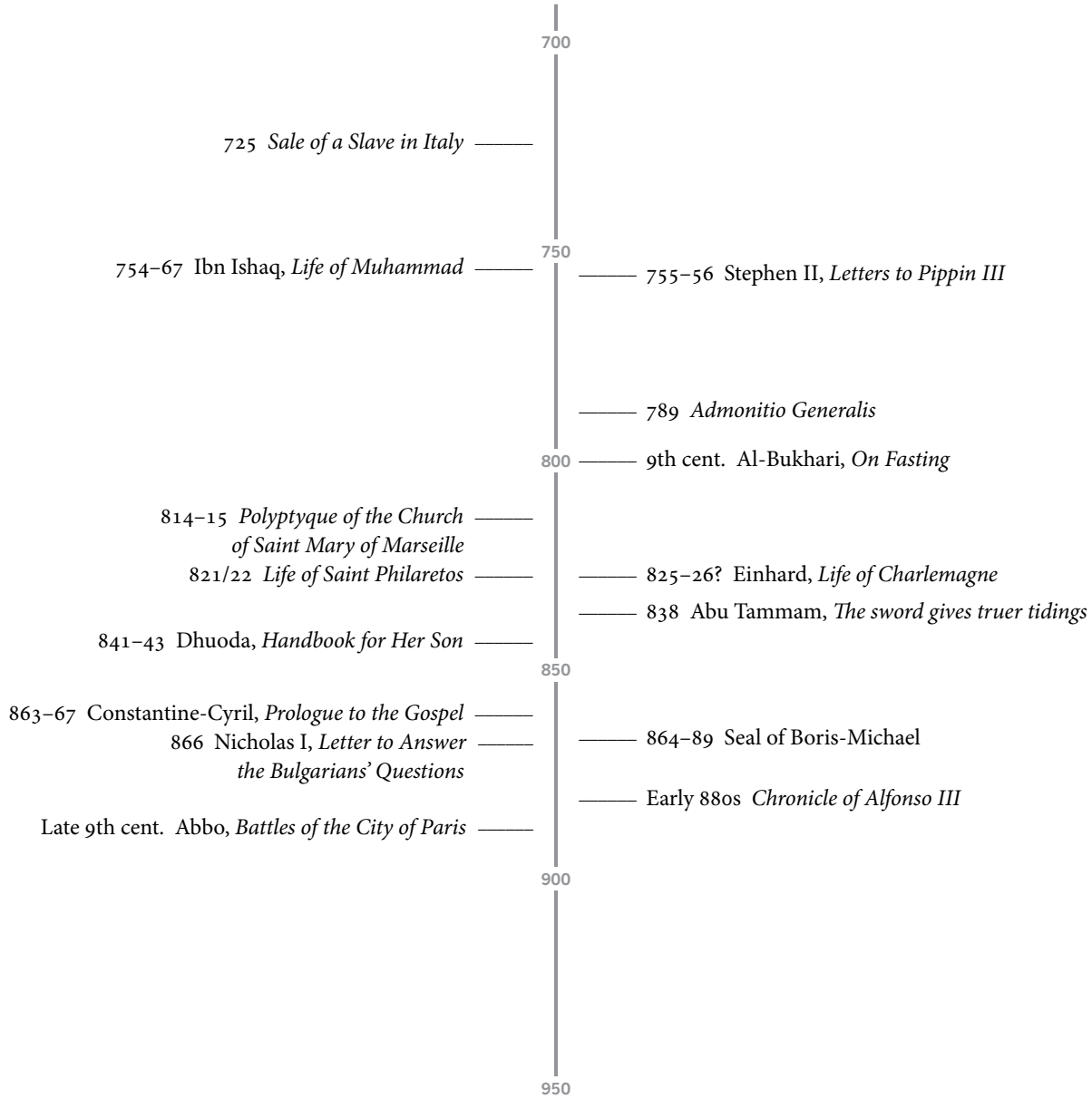
You ask what we think should be done about those who flee to a church because of certain crimes. Now then, although the sacred canons require that the decrees of the worldly laws be upheld and these laws appear to be without mercy towards certain persons, we who do not accept the spirit of this world nevertheless say that if someone flees to a church, he should not be removed unless he wishes [to come out] voluntarily. For if long ago robbers and those guilty of various crimes fled to the Temple of Romulus for asylum and received protection from harm, so much more should those who flee to the Temple of Christ receive remission for their sins and be restored to their original state of complete safety, once the suspect has offered an oath on his own behalf.

[Closing]

... We have given these responses to your questions and proposals, insofar as the Lord has given them to us. It is not as much as we could say but rather as much as we thought could satisfy you for the time being. But when, by God's concession, you shall possess a bishop through the ministry of our prelacy, he shall teach you everything that pertains to his office. And if there are things that he does not understand, he shall receive them again from the authority of the apostolic see. May God, who has worked the greatest salvation among you, bring this to completion, make it solid, and give it stability and strength to the end [of time]. Amen.

[1] Gregory the Great, in a set of letters transmitted by Bede (see above, pp. 96–99).

TIMELINE FOR CHAPTER THREE


700
725 Sale of a Slave in Italy
750
754–67 Ibn Ishaq, Life of Muhammad
755–56 Stephen II, Letters to Pippin III
789 Admonitio Generalis
800
9th cent. Al-Bukhari, On Fasting
814–15 Polyptyque of the Church of Saint Mary of Marseille
821/22 Life of Saint Philaretos
825–26? Einhard, Life of Charlemagne
838 Abu Tammam, The sword gives truer tidings
841–43 Dhuoda, Handbook for Her Son
850
863–67 Constantine-Cyril, Prologue to the Gospel
866 Nicholas I, Letter to Answer the Bulgarians' Questions
864–89 Seal of Boris-Michael
Early 880s Chronicle of Alfonso III
Late 9th cent. Abbo, Battles of the City of Paris
900
950

To test your knowledge and gain deeper understanding of this chapter, please go to **www.utphistorymatters.com** for Study Questions.

This page intentionally left blank

IV

Political Communities Reordered (c.900–c.1050)

REGIONALISM: ITS ADVANTAGES AND ITS DISCONTENTS

4.1 Fragmentation in the Islamic world: Al-Tabari, *The Defeat of the Zanj Revolt* (*c.*915). Original in Arabic.

Al-Tabari (839–923) was born in Amul, on the southern shore of the Caspian Sea. His education took him to Baghdad, Basra, and Egypt before he returned to Baghdad (*c.*870) to write and teach. He was a prolific author, producing works on jurisprudence, the Qur'an, and history. His universal history, from which the excerpt below comes, began with Creation and continued to 915. He modestly called this extremely long work *The Short Work on the History of Messengers, Kings, and Caliphs*. The section printed here covers the last part of the reign of Caliph al-Mu'tamid (r.870–892), a period through which al-Tabari himself lived. Key to the events of this period was the revolt of the Zanj, black slaves who were put to work removing the salt from the marshes formed by the Tigris and Euphrates rivers. Led by 'Ali b. Muhammad, whom al-Tabari calls "the abominable" and "the traitor," the Zanj pillaged the cities around Basra and incited some local groups to challenge the caliph's authority. In response, al-Mu'tamid called on his brother al-Muwaffaq Abu Ahmad and Abu Ahmad's son Abu al-'Abbas (later Caliph al-Mu'tadid) to wage war against the Zanj. The passage here begins in 880 with a victory by Abu al-'Abbas. Although ruthlessly killing all the captives in this instance, father and son also offered amnesty and "robes of honor" to those who deserted the Zanj cause, severely dividing and weakening the opposition. They ultimately won the war against the Zanj in 883, but al-Tabari hints of other local defections from the caliphate, presaging its eventual decline.

Let us use this document to discuss how to read a primary source. Al-Tabari's account of the Zanj revolt is a very different kind of source from *The Edict of Milan* in Chapter 1, which was earlier used to explore reading methods. Nevertheless, it should be subjected to the same series of questions. The answers lead to new questions that work just for

al-Tabari (and perhaps for a small cluster of similar documents as well), in the same way as the answers to the questions about *The Edict of Milan* led to questions largely pertinent to it alone.

Who wrote it, and for what audience was it written? In this case, the answer is quite simple: the author was al-Tabari, and you know a bit about his career from the introductory note above. You can easily guess that his audience was meant to be his students and other educated readers in the Islamic world.

When was it written? Your editor has given you the date *c.*915. At this point in your studies, you need not worry much about how this date was arrived at. It is more important to consider the circumstances and historical events in the context of which a date such as 915 takes on meaning. Here you should be considering how, even as the caliphate was weakening, the Islamic world was open to scholars keenly interested in the causes and effects of its decline.

Where was it written? The answer is, no doubt, Baghdad. But you should not be content with that. You should consider Baghdad's significance at the time. Was it still the capital of the Islamic world? If not, why do you suppose al-Tabari settled there?

Why was it written? Al-Tabari begins this voluminous history with an extended passage in praise of God. He then says that he intends to begin with the Creation of the world and to continue by chronicling all the kings, messengers, and caliphs that he has heard about. But the first topic that he addresses in some detail is philosophical: "What is Time?" Thus, although al-Tabari does not say precisely why he wrote, he clearly wished to produce both a comprehensive chronicle about the powerful men in the world and a reflective work on the nature of history itself. But you should go beyond this answer to ask what other motives might have been at work. For example, might al-Tabari have thought that there were moral, practical, and religious—even doctrinal—lessons to be learned from history? Might he have been interested in legitimizing the Abbasids or other dynasties?

What is it? Clearly it is a history; the word is in the title. But what sort of history? Al-Tabari was careful to document many of his facts by citing the chain of sources (*isnad*) that attested to them. This technique was important in Islamic hadith (see above, p. 147) and legal works as well. Al-Tabari's work thus assimilates history with the scholarly traditions of other disciplines. Moreover, his history might be called "universal," given its huge time frame. On the other hand, it is not a history of everything but rather of certain key figures.

What does it say? This is the most important question of all. To answer it, you need to analyze the text (or, here, the excerpt) carefully, taking care to understand what the author is describing and seeking further information (if necessary) about the institutions that he takes for granted.

What are the implications of what it says? This requires you to ask many questions about matters that lie behind the text. Important questions to ask are: *What does the document reveal about such institutions as family, power, social classes and groups, religion, and*

education and literacy in the world that produced it? What are its underlying assumptions about gender; about human nature, agency, and goals; about the nature of the divine?

How reliable is it? Certainly al-Tabari's citations of his sources suggest that he was interested in reliability. On the other hand, you may ask if al-Tabari included everything that he knew, or if he had a certain "slant" on the events.

Are there complicating factors? In the Middle Ages authors often dictated their thoughts and then reworked them over time. Al-Tabari apparently finished lecturing on his *History* in about 915, but he continued to rework it. After his death, the work was copied numerous times—by hand. Paper was prevalent in the Islamic world, and it was cheaper and more abundant than parchment, which the West and the Byzantine Empire relied on. Nevertheless, today we have no complete manuscript of al-Tabari's history, and scholars have had to reconstruct the full text from the various parts that are extant.

If you compare the questions and answers here with those introducing the *Edict of Milan*, you should be convinced that reading primary sources is both complex and fascinating.

[Source: *The History of al-Tabari*, vol. 37: *The 'Abbasid Recovery*, trans. Philip M. Fields, annotated by Jacob Lassner (Albany: State University of New York Press, 1987), pp. 24–27, 65–66, 132–36.]

Abu Ahmad remained in al-Firk for several days to permit his troops, and any others who wanted to proceed with him, to join on. He had prepared the barges, galleys, ferries and boats. Then, on Tuesday, the second of Rabi' I [October 11, 880], he and his clients, pages, cavalry and infantry reportedly left al-Firk, bound for Rumiyat al-Mada'in. From there they journeyed on, stopping at al-Sib, Dayr al-'Aqul, Jarjaraya, Qunna, Jabbul, al-Silh and a place one *farsakh* [about four miles] from Wasit.[1] He remained at the latter for one day and one night and was met by his son Abu al-'Abbas and a squadron of cavalry including his leading officers and men. Abu Ahmad inquired about the state of his men, and getting from his son a picture of their gallantry and devotion in fighting, he ordered that robes of honor be bestowed upon them and Abu al-'Abbas. Thereupon, the son returned to his camp at al-'Umr where he remained throughout the day. In the early morning of the next day, Abu Ahmad took to the water where he was met by his son, Abu al-'Abbas, and all his troops in military formation, as fully equipped as they would be when confronting the traitor's forces. Abu Ahmad sailed on until he reached his camp on the waterway called Shirzad, where he stopped. On Thursday, the twenty-eighth of Rabi' I [November 6, 880], he departed from there and stopped at the canal called Nahr Sindad, opposite the village called 'Ab-dallah. He instructed his son Abu al-'Abbas to halt on the eastern side of the Tigris, opposite the mouth of the Barduda, and put him in charge of the vanguard. Then he allotted the soldiers' allowances and paid them. Following that, he instructed his son to advance in front of him with the equipment that he had in his possession, toward the mouth of the Bar Musawir Canal.

Abu al-'Abbas set out with the best of his officers and troops, including Zirak al-Turki, the commander of his vanguard, and Nusayr Abu Hamzah, the commander of the barges and galleys. After this it was Abu Ahmad who set out with his selected cavalry and infantry, leaving the bulk of his army and many of his horsemen and foot soldiers behind in his place of encampment.

His son Abu al-'Abbas met him with a show of captives, heads and bodies of slain enemies from among the troops of al-Sha'rani. For, on that same day, before the arrival of his father Abu Ahmad, Abu al-'Abbas had been attacked by al-Sha'rani who came upon the former's camp. Abu al-'Abbas dealt him a severe blow,

[1] The places mentioned in this document are in or near Iraq.

killing a great many of his men and taking captives. Abu Ahmad ordered that the captives be beheaded, which was done. Then Abu Ahmad descended to the mouth of the Bar Musawir, where he stayed for two days. From there, on Tuesday, the eighth of Rabi' II [November 17, 880], he departed from Suq al-Khamis with all his men and equipment bound for the city which the leader of the Zanj had named al-Mani'ah bi-Suq al-Khamis. He proceeded with his ships along the Bar Musawir while the cavalry marched before him along the eastern side of the waterway until they reached the waterway called Baratiq, which led to Madinat al-Sha'rani. Abu Ahmad preferred to begin fighting against Musa al-Sha'rani before he fought Sulayman b. Jami' because he feared that al-Sha'rani, who was to his rear, might attack and thus divert him from the adversary in front of him. That is why he set out against al-Sha'rani. He ordered the cavalry to cross the canal and proceed along both banks of the Baratiq. Abu Ahmad also instructed his son Abu al-'Abbas to advance with a flotilla of barges and galleys, and he himself followed with barges along with the bulk of his army.

When Sulayman, his Zanj troops and others noticed the cavalry and infantry proceeding on both banks of the canal and the ships advancing along the waterway—this was after Abu al-'Abbas had met them and engaged them in a skirmish—they fled and scattered. The troops of Abu al-'Abbas climbed the walls killing those who opposed them. When the Zanj and their supporters scattered, Abu al-'Abbas and his forces entered the city, killed a great many of its people, took many prisoners and laid hold of whatever was there. Al-Sha'rani and the others who escaped with him fled; they were pursued by Abu Ahmad's men up to the marshes where many drowned. The rest saved themselves by fleeing into the thickets.

Thereupon, Abu Ahmad instructed his troops to return to their camp before sunset of that Tuesday, and he withdrew. About five thousand Muslim women and some Zanj women, who were taken in Suq al-Khamis, were saved. Abu Ahmad gave instructions to take care of all the women, to transfer them to Wasit and return them to their families.

Abu Ahmad spent that night opposite the Baratiq Canal and in the early morning of the next day, he entered the city and gave the people permission to take all the Zanj possessions there. Everything in the city was seized. Abu Ahmad ordered the walls razed, the trenches filled, and the remaining ships burned. He left for his camp at Bar Musawir with booty taken in the districts and villages previously possessed by al-Sha'rani and his men; this included crops of wheat, barley and rice. He ordered that the crops be sold and the money realized from the sale be spent to pay his mawla's pages,[1] the troops of his regular army, and other people of his camp.

Sulayman al-Sha'rani escaped with his two brothers and others, but he lost his children and possessions. Upon reaching al-Madhar he reported to the traitor [that is, the leader of the Zanj] what had befallen him and that he had taken refuge in al-Madhar.

According to Muhammad b. al-Hasan—Muhammad b. Hisham, known as Abu Wathilah al-Kirmani: I was in the presence of the traitor—he was having a discussion—when the letter from Sulayman al-Sha'rani arrived with the news of the battle and his flight to al-Madhar. As soon as he had the letter unsealed and his eye fell on the passage describing the defeat, his bowel muscles loosened and he got up to relieve himself, then he returned. As his Assembly came to order, he took the letter and began reading it again, and when he reached the passage which had disturbed him the first time, he left once more. This repeated itself several times. There remained no doubt that the calamity was great, and I refrained from asking him questions. After some time had elapsed, I ventured to say, "Isn't this the letter from Sulayman b. Musa?" He replied, "Yes, and a piece of heartbreaking news, too. Indeed, those who fell upon him dealt him a crushing blow 'that will not spare nor leave unburned.' He has written this letter from al-Madhar, and he has barely saved his own skin."

I deemed this news momentous and only God knows what a joy filled my heart, but I concealed it and refrained from rejoicing at the prospect of the approaching relief. However, the traitor regained self-control in face of vicissitude, and showed firmness. He wrote to Sulayman b. Jami', cautioning him against al-Sha'rani's fate and instructing him to be vigilant and watchful concerning what might lie before him....

On Tuesday, the first day of al-Muharram [August 12, 881], Ja'far b. al-Ibrahim, who was known as al-Sajjan, sought safe-conduct from Abu Ahmad al-Muwaffaq. It is mentioned that the reason for this was Abu Ahmad's battle at the end of Dhu al-Hijjah 267 [July 3–31, 881], to which we have referred above, as well as the flight of Rayhan b. Salih al-Maghribi and his men from the camp

[1] A mawla could mean either master or servant. Here it undoubtedly refers to a servant or dependent.

of the deviate, and their linking up with Abu Ahmad. The abominable one became completely discouraged at this; al-Sajjan was, reportedly, one of his trustworthy associates.

Abu Ahmad conferred on this al-Sajjan robes of honor, various gifts, as well as a military allotment, and a place of lodging. Al-Sajjan was assigned to Abu al-'Abbas, who was ordered to transport him in a barge to a position in front of the abominable one's fortress so his [former] compatriots could see him. Al-Sajjan addressed them and told them that they were misled by the abominable one; he informed them what he had experienced because of the latter's lies and immoral behavior. The same day that al-Sajjan was placed in front of the abominable one's camp, a great many Zanj officers and others sought guarantees of safety; all of them were treated kindly. One after another the enemy sought safety and abandoned the abominable one.

After that battle which I have mentioned as having taken place on the last day of Dhu al-Hijjah of the year 267 [July 31, 881], Abu Ahmad did not cross over to fight the abominable one, thus giving his troops a respite until the month of Rabi' II [November 9–December 7, 881].

In this year, 'Amr b. al-Layth went to Fars to fight Muhammad b. al-Layth, his own governor in this province. 'Amr routed Muhammad b. al-Layth and auctioned off the spoils of his camp; the latter escaped with a small group of his men. 'Amr entered Istakhr, which was looted by his troops, and then sent a force to chase after Muhammad b. al-Layth. They seized him, and then delivered him to 'Amr as a prisoner. Thereupon, 'Amr went to Shiraz where he remained....

Now [August 883] Abu Ahmad was sure of victory, for he saw its signs, and all the people rejoiced at what God had granted—namely, the rout of the profligate and his men. They rejoiced as well at God's having made it possible to expel the enemy from their city, and seize everything in it, and distribute what had been taken as booty—that is the money, treasures and weapons. Finally there was the rescue of all the captives held by the rebels. But Abu Ahmad was angry at his men because they disobeyed orders and abandoned the positions in which he had placed them. He ordered that the commanders of his mawlas and pages and the leading men among them be gathered together. When they were assembled for him, he scolded them for what they had done, judging them weak and castigating them in harsh language. Then they made excuses; they supposed that he had returned, and they had not known about his advance against the profligate, nor about his having pressed so far into the rebel's camp. Had they known this, they would have rushed toward him. They did not leave their places until they had taken a solemn oath and covenant that, when sent against the abominable one, none of them would withdraw before God had delivered him into their hands; and should they fail, they would not budge from their positions until God had passed judgment between them and him. They requested of al-Muwaffaq that, after they had left al-Muwaffaqiyyah to fight, he order the ships transporting them to return and, thus, eliminate any temptation to those who might seek to leave the battle against the profligate.

Abu Ahmad accepted their apologies for their wrongdoing and again took them into his favor. Then he ordered them to prepare for crossing and to forewarn their troops just as they themselves had been forewarned. Abu Ahmad spent Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday preparing whatever he would need. When this was completed, he sent word to his entourage and the officers of his pages and mawlas, instructing them as to their tasks when crossing [into combat]. Friday evening he sent word to Abu al-'Abbas and the officers of his pages and mawlas to set out for places which he, that is, Abu Ahmad, had specified.

Al-Muwaffaq instructed Abu al-'Abbas and his troops to set a course for a place known as 'Askar Rayhan, which lay between the canal known as Nahr al-Sufyani and the spot where the rebel sought refuge. He and his army were to follow the route along the canal known as Nahr al-Mughirah, so that they would exit where the canal intersects the Abu al-Khasib and reach 'Askar Rayhan from this direction. He forwarded instructions to an officer of his black pages to reach the Nahr al-Amir and cross at its center. At the same time, he ordered the rest of his officers and pages to pass the night on the eastern side of the Tigris, opposite the profligate's camp, and be prepared to attack him in the early morning.

During Friday night, al-Muwaffaq made the rounds among the officers and men in his barge. He divided amongst them key positions and locations which he had arranged for them in the profligate's camp. According to the assigned plan, they were to march towards these places in the morning. Early Saturday morning, on the second of Safar, 270 [August 11, 883], al-Muwaffaq reached the Abu al-Khasib Canal in his barge. He remained there until all his men had crossed [the waterway] and disembarked from their vessels, and the cavalry and infantry had assumed their positions. Then, after giving instructions for the vessels and ferries to return to the eastern side, he gave the troops the go-ahead to march against the profligate. He himself preceded them until

he reached the spot where he estimated the profligates would make a stand in an attempt to repel the government army. Meanwhile, on Monday, after the army had withdrawn, the traitor and his men returned to the city and stayed there, hoping to prolong their defense and repel the attack.

Al-Muwaffaq found that the fastest of his cavalry and infantry among the pages had preceded the main force of the army and had attacked the rebel and his companions, dislodging them from their positions. The enemy force fled and dispersed without paying attention to one another, and the government army pursued them, killing and capturing whomever they managed to catch. The profligate, with a group of his fighting men, was cut off from [the rest] of his officers and troops—among them was al-Muhallabi. Ankalay, the rebel's son, had abandoned him, as had Sulayman b. Jami'. Moving against each of the contingents which we have named was a large force of al-Muwaffaq's mawlas, and cavalry and infantry drawn from his pages. Abu al-'Abbas's troops, assigned by al-Muwaffaq to the place known as 'Askar Rayhan, met the rebel's fleeing men and put them to the sword. The officer assigned to the Amir Canal also arrived there, and having blocked the rebels' path he attacked them. Encountering Sulayman b. Jami', he took the fight to him, killing many of his men and seizing Sulayman. He made Sulayman a captive and delivered him to al-Muwaffaq without conditions. The people were glad to learn of Sulayman's capture, and there were many cries of "God is Great!" and great clamor. They felt certain of victory, since Sulayman was known to be the most able of the rebel's companions. After him, Ibrahim b. Ja'far al-Hamdani, one of the field commanders of the rebel's army, was taken captive; then Nadir al-Aswad, the one known as al-Haffar, one of the earliest companions of the rebel, was captured.

Upon al-Muwaffaq's order, precautionary measures were taken, and the captives were transferred in barges to Abu al-'Abbas.

Following this, those Zanj who had separated from the main body, together with the profligate, assaulted the government force, dislodging them from their positions and causing them to lose the initiative. Al-Muwaffaq noticed the loss of initiative, but he pressed on with the search for the abominable one, advancing quickly in the Abu al-Khasib Canal. This bolstered his mawlas and pages, who hastened to pursue (the enemy) with him. As al-Muwaffaq reached the Abu al-Khasib Canal, a herald arrived with the good news of the rebel's death; before long another herald arrived carrying a hand, and claimed that this was the hand of the rebel. This seemed to lend credence to the report of the rebel's demise. Finally a page from Lu'lu"s troops arrived, galloping on a horse and carrying the head of the abominable one. Al-Muwaffaq had the head brought closer, and then showed it to a group of former enemy officers who were in his presence. They identified it, and al-Muwaffaq prostrated himself in adoration to God for both the hardships and bounties He had conferred upon him. Abu al-'Abbas, the mawlas and the officers of al-Muwaffaq's pages then prostrated themselves, offering much thanks to God, and praising and exalting Him. Al-Muwaffaq ordered the head of the rebel raised on a spear and displayed in front of him. The people saw it and thus knew that the news of the rebel's death was true. At this, they raised their voices in praise to God.

It is reported that al-Muwaffaq's troops surrounded the abominable one after all his field commanders had abandoned him save al-Muhallabi; the latter now turned away from him and fled, thus betraying the rebel. The rebel then set off for the canal known as Nahr al-Amir and plunged into the water, seeking safety. Even before that, Ankalay, the son of the abominable one, had split off from his father and fled in the direction of the canal known as Nahr al-Dinari, where he entrenched himself in the swampy terrain.

Al-Muwaffaq retired, with the head of the abominable one displayed on a spear mounted in front of him on a barge. The vessel moved along the Abu al-Khasib Canal, with the people on both sides of the waterway observing it. When he reached the Tigris, he took his course along the river and gave the order to return the vessels, with which he had crossed to the western side of the Tigris at daylight, to the eastern side of the river. They were returned to ferry the troops [back] across the river.

Then al-Muwaffaq continued his trip, with the abominable one's head on the spear before him, while Sulayman b. Jami' and al-Hamdani were mounted for display. When he arrived at his fortress in al-Muwaffaqiyyah, he ordered Abu al-'Abbas to sail the barge, keeping the rebel's head and Sulayman b. Jami' and al-Hamdani in place, and to take his course to the Jatta Canal where the camp of al-Muwaffaq began. He was to do this so that all the people of the camp could have a look at them. Abu al-'Abbas did this, and then returned to his father, Abu Ahmad, whereupon the latter imprisoned Sulayman b. Jami' and al-Hamdani and ordered that the rebel's head be properly prepared and cleaned.

4.2 The powerful in the Byzantine countryside: Romanus I Lecapenus, *Novel* (934). Original in Greek.

In Byzantine legal terms, a "novel" is a "new law." Emperor Romanus I Lecapenus (r.920–944) issued one such law on behalf of the poor in the countryside in 934. Newly powerful provincial landowners, known as *dynatoi*, were taking advantage of a recent famine to buy up whole villages, enhancing both their economic and social positions. Romanus tried to set back the clock—he wanted the land to stay in the hands of the original peasant families or at least in the hands of their village neighbors. He insisted that the powerful "return [the land] without refund to the owners."

1. What reasons did Romanus give for issuing his *Novel*?
2. What benefits might the emperor himself have gained from this new law?

[Source: *The Land Legislation of the Macedonian Emperors*, trans. and ed. Eric McGeer (Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 2000), pp. 53–56, 59–60 (notes modified).]

Novel of the Lord Emperor Romanus the Elder

PROLOGUE

To dispose the soul in imitation of the Creator is the desire and ardent endeavor of those for whom it is a great and blessed thing to regard and to call themselves the work of the all-creating hand. As for those by whom this has not been accounted great and holy, they have the task of denying the Creation and the reckoning of Judgment, and, as with persons wholly content with life on earth and who choose to live their lives upon the earth alone, the display of their choice has been left in their wake.[1] Hence the great confusion of affairs, hence the great tide of injustices, hence the great and widespread oppression of the poor, and the great sighing of the needy, for whose sake the Lord rose from the dead. For He says, "For the oppression of the poor, for the sighing of the needy, now will I arise, saith the Lord."[2] If God, our Creator and Savior, Who made us emperor, rises in retribution, how will the poor man, who awaits only the eyes of the emperor for intercession, be neglected and altogether forgotten by us? Therefore, not only upon examination of the actions taken against them in the recent past or attempts to make amends, but also administering a common and lasting remedy to the matter, we have issued the present law to avenge them, having prepared this as a purgative and a cleansing of the predilection of greed. We have considered it advantageous that now no longer will anyone be deprived of his own properties, nor will a poor man suffer oppression, and that this advantage is beneficial to the common good, acceptable to God, profitable to the treasury, and useful to the state. Careful attention to this subject, for the sake of which decrees and judgments restraining the wickedness of the will and curtailing the reach of the grasping hand have streamed down to all the officials under our authority, has not been long neglected, nor has [our concern] arisen inappropriately. But since evil is versatile and multifarious, and all evils—not least greed, if indeed not even more so—contrive to evade the grip of laws and edicts and to regard the inescapable eye of divine justice as of no account, these measures, ejecting and excising the crafty workings of the will of the evildoers, have as a result now warranted more secure and rigorous codification.

[1] The general sense seems to be this: people who see themselves as part of God's Creation try to act in accordance with God's ways, while people who do not venerate the Creation will have to reckon with the Last Judgment; such people have left ample evidence behind them of their choice to ignore divine justice and to lead their lives in pursuit of earthly, not eternal, rewards.

[2] Ps. 12:5; Douay Ps. 11:6.

1.1. We ordain therefore that those living in every land and district, where after God our rule extends, are to keep the domicile which has come down to them free and undisturbed. If time continues to preserve this arrangement, let the subsequent acquisition by the offspring or relatives through testamentary disposition, or the intention of the owner's preference, be fulfilled. If, though, given the course of human life and the ebb and flow of time, the pressure of necessity or even the prompting of the will alone, be it as it may, the owner embarks on the alienation of his own lands either in part or in whole, the purchase must first be set before the inhabitants of the same or adjacent fields or villages. We do not introduce this legislation out of animosity or malice towards the powerful; but we issue these rulings out of benevolence and protection for the poor and for public welfare. Whereas those persons who have received authority from God, those risen above the many in honor and wealth, should consider the care of the poor an important task, these powerful persons who regard the poor as prey are vexed because they do not acquire these things more quickly. Even if such impious conduct is not true of all, let adherence to the law be common to all, lest the tare [weeds] brought in with the wheat escape notice.[1]

1.2. As a result, no longer shall any one of the illustrious *magistroi*[2] or *patrikioi*,[3] nor any of the persons honored with offices, governorships, or civil or military dignities, nor anyone at all enumerated in the Senate,[4] nor officials or ex-officials of the themes nor metropolitans most devoted to God, archbishops, bishops, *higoumenoi* [abbots], ecclesiastical officials, or supervisors and heads of pious or imperial houses,[5] whether as a private individual or in the name of an imperial or ecclesiastical property, dare either on their own or through an intermediary to intrude into a village or hamlet for the sake of a sale, gift, or inheritance—either whole or partial—or on any other pretext whatsoever. As this sort of acquisition has been ruled invalid, the acquired properties, along with the improvements since added, are to return without refund to the owners or, if they or their relatives are no longer alive, to the inhabitants of the villages or hamlets. For the domination of these persons has increased the great hardship of the poor, bringing upheavals, persecutions, coercion, and other concomitant afflictions and difficulties through the multitude of their servants, hirelings or other attendants and followers, and, to those able to see it, will cause no little harm to the commonwealth unless the present legislation puts an end to it first. For the settlement[6] of the population demonstrates the great benefit of its function—the contribution of taxes and the fulfillment of military obligations—which will be completely lost should the common people disappear. Those concerned with the stability of the state must eliminate the cause of disturbance, expel what is harmful, and support the common good.

2.1. Let time hereafter maintain these measures for the common benefit and settled order of our subjects; but it is necessary to apply the approved remedy not only to the future, but also to the past. For many people seized upon the indigence of the poor—which time bringer of all things brought, or rather, which the multitude of our sins, driving out divine charity, caused—as the opportunity for business instead of charity, compassion, or kindness; and when they saw the poor oppressed by famine, they bought up the possessions of the unfortunate poor at a very low price, some with silver, some with gold, and others with grain or other forms of payment. Harsher than the duress at hand, in those times which followed they were like a pestilential attack of disease to the miserable inhabitants of the villages, having entered like gangrene into the body of the villages and causing total destruction....

EPILOGUE It is our desire that these regulations remain in force for the safety of our subjects for whose sake great and constant care is our concern. For if we have expended so much care for those under our authority, so as to spare nothing that contributes to freedom, on account of which lands, towns, and cities have, with the help of God, come into our hands from the enemy, some as the result of war, while others have passed over to us by the example [of the conquered towns] or through fear of capture and were taken before the trumpet's call to battle; and if we have

[1] Echoing the parable of the wheat and the tares related in Matt. 13:24–30; 36–43.

[2] Those holding the highest possible dignity conferred on non-imperial family members.

[3] Those who hold a high dignity conferred on governors of themes (military districts) or military leaders.

[4] The Byzantine Senate was an advisory body whose members were high civil officials and dignitaries.

[5] Philanthropic foundations administered by crown officials.

[6] The Greek word for "settlement" also embraces the notions of stability and prosperity among the rural populace.

striven, with the help of God, to provide our subjects with such great freedom from enemy attack, setting this as the goal of our prayers and exertions, how will we, after accomplishing so much against the onslaught of external enemies, not rid ourselves of our own enemies within, enemies of the natural order, of the Creation, and of justice, by reviling and repressing insatiety [endless desire], by excising the greedy disposition, and by liberating our subjects from the yoke of the tyrannical, oppressive hand and mind with the righteous intention to free them with the cutting sword of the present legislation? Let each of those to whom judicial authority has fallen see to it that these provisions remain in force in perpetuity [forever], for the service of God and for the common benefit and advantage of our empire received from Him.

In the Month of September of the eighth indiction in the year 6443 from the creation of the world, Romanus, Constantine, Stephanus, and Constantine, emperors of the Byzantines and faithful to God.

4.3 Evanescent centralization in al-Andalus: Ibn ʿAbd Rabbihi, *Praise Be to Him* (929–940). Original in Arabic.

Al-Andalus (Islamic Spain) was politically independent long before Abbasid power diminished elsewhere. In the ninth century, like so many other polities of the day, al-Andalus broke up into regional lordships. That situation was reversed by ʿAbd al-Rahman III (r.912–961), who took the title of "caliph" in 929. When he first came to the throne, his power, like that of most Western rulers, extended only locally, around Córdoba. He had to contend not only with regional Islamic lords but also with the threat of the Shiʿite Fatimids to the south and Christian kingdoms to the north. ʿAbd al-Rahman waged constant wars during the first twenty years of his reign, working to unify al-Andalus under his rule and to turn the Christian kingdoms into vassals. His ambitions were largely realized—although they proved evanescent, as regional rulers reasserted themselves in the next century. The new caliph took Baghdad as a model, and his poets and writers cast a glowing light on him. One of these, Ibn ʿAbd Rabbihi (860–940), wrote a grand encyclopedia, *The Unique Necklace*, in which he included a long epic poem, *Praise Be to Him*. Much as Abu Tammam had celebrated the ninth-century Abbasid Caliph al-Muʿtasim (see above, p. 124), so Ibn ʿAbd Rabbihi glorified an Islamic leader's military campaigns. Like a chronicle in that it recounted events year by year (compare it to *The Easter Chronicle*, above p. 55, for example), *Praise Be to Him* was also a work of art, written in rhyming couplets and full of color, sound, and feeling.

1. What qualities does Ibn ʿAbd Rabbihi invoke to prove that ʿAbd al-Rahman was rightfully called caliph?
2. What sorts of forces did the Islamic leader command and what tactics did he use to fight his wars?

[Source: James T. Monroe, "The Historical Arjuza of Ibn ʿAbd Rabbihi, a Tenth-Century Hispano-Arabic Epic Poem," *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, 91:1 (1971): 80–81, 86–88, 89–90 (some notes added from James T. Monroe, "[Reading 1:] Ibn ʿAbd Rabbihi," in *Hispano-Arabic Poetry: A Student Anthology* [Berkeley: University of California Press, 1974], pp. 74–128).]

1. Praise be to Him who is not contained in any region nor reached by any vision;

2. Before whose countenance all faces are lowered in submission, for He has no rival or equal;

3. Praise be to Him for He is a mighty Creator, well informed about His creation; far-seeing.

4. [He is] a first principle having no beginning and a last one having no end.

5. His kindness and excellence have favored us, while it would be impossible to find His like,

6. Since He is far too illustrious for eyes to perceive or imagination and opinion to grasp,

7. Although He may be perceived by the mind, the intellect and by rational proofs,

8. Since these are the most solid means of knowing subjects that are abstruse and fine.

9. The knowledge grasped by man's intellect is more solid than that gained from ocular evidence,

10. Therefore may God be praised most plentifully for His blessings and favors;

11. And after praising and glorifying God, and thanking the Creator and Quickener of the dead,

12. I shall speak about the battle-days of the best of men; one who has been adorned with generosity and courage;

13. One who has destroyed unbelief and rebellion and sundered sedition and schism.

14. For we were experiencing a moment of darkness intense as the night, as well as a civil war; being like the scum and rubbish [swept] by the torrent,

15. Until that worshipper of the Clement who is the most eminent of the Banu Marwan[1] was invested with power.

16. Being supported [by God] he appointed a sword from the edges of which death flowed, to judge over his enemies.

17. While he saluted royal power at dawn along with the new moon, so that they both arose in the morning like two rivals in beauty.

18. He bore [signs of] piety on his forehead and religious and secular authority upon his right hand.

19. The land was illuminated by his light and the stirring up of evil and mischief was interrupted,

20. During a time rife with rebellion when the breaking of alliances as well as apostasy were rampant,

21. And the earth had straitened its inhabitants while war had kindled the blaze of its fires,

22. When we were enfolded in a pitch-black night-blindness and a gloom without equal,

23. Such that every day we were attacked by mourning so that no eye could enjoy sleep.

24. Thus during 'Id we have even had to pray under the protection of guards out of fear for an enemy intent upon revenge,[2]

25. Until we were given in rescue, like a light putting heaven and earth next to each other,

26. The Caliph of God, whom He elected and chose over all creation ...

The Year 308 [920–921]

192. Then the Imam campaigned against the land of the infidel and what a momentous affair that was![3]

[1] The Banu Marwan: i.e., the Umayyads.

[2] 'Id refers to an Islamic festival.

[3] The Imam (signifying a religious leader) refers to the caliph, 'Abd al-Rahman III. The "land of the infidel" is the land of the Christians. The campaign of Muez, which this section of the poem narrates, was 'Abd al-Rahman's first foray into Christian territory.

193. To this end the chiefs of the provinces were mustered around him as well as those who enjoyed honor and rank among men,

194. Including ministers, generals, all those who were connected to marks of distinction,

195. Everyone who sincerely obeyed [the law of] the Clement both in secret and in public,

196. And everyone determined to wage a Holy War or whom a saddle could hold on a generous steed.

197. So what a troop it was!—One made up of every free-born man among us as well as every slave.

198. Thus you would have thought that the people were "locusts scattered abroad" as our Lord says of those who will be assembled [at Doomsday].[1]

199. Then the one rendered victorious, aided [by God], upon whose forehead lies [the imprint of] the Message and the Light, set forth

200. While before him went troops of angels seizing or sparing for their Lord's sake,

201. Until, when he went in among the enemy, the Clement made him avoid all harm,

202. While he was able to impose the poll-tax and dire misfortunes upon those who had associated partners to God.[2]

203. Thus their feet quaked in terror and they were scared away out of fear for the blaze of war,

204. Rushing blindly through mountain passes and into places of concealment, surrendering fortresses and towns,

205. So that no church or monastery belonging to any Christian monk remained in any of the provincial districts

206. But that he made it go up in smoke like a fire that has come in contact with [dry] stubble,

207. While the cavalry of the Sultan knocked down all the buildings in them.

208. One of the first fortresses they knocked down and [one of the first] enemies within it whom they attacked, was

209. A town known as Osma which they left behind like a blackened piece of charcoal.

210. Then they ascended from there to certain towns which they left behind like a yesterday that has elapsed.

211. Then they moved forward with the infidel following them with his army, fearing and imitating their [movements].

212. Until they came directly to the river Dayy[3] where orthodoxy effaced the paths of error,

213. When they met in *Majma' al-Jawzayn*, for the squadrons of the two unbelievers had been collected

214. From the people of León and Pamplona, and those [of] Arnedo and Barcelona.[4]

215. The infidels were helping one another in spite of their unbelief, having gathered together from various lands;

216. Yet they were milling around at the foot of a lofty mountain, forming their ranks for battle

217. So [our] vanguard, raised high on their raiding horses, ran up to them,

218. And its swell was followed by another swell stretching out like an ocean of vast expanse.

219. In this way the two infidels were put to flight in the company of [their] infidels, having donned a robe of dust.

---

[1] A reference to Qur'an 54:7: "They will come forth, their eyes humbled, from their graves, [torpid] like locusts scattered abroad."

[2] "Those who had associated partners to God" are those who believed in the Trinity rather than God's oneness.

[3] The river Dayy is the Duero River.

[4] Majmaʿ al-Jawzayn has not been identified. The "two unbelievers" were Ordoño II (d.924), king of Galicia and later king of Galicia and León; and Sancho I (d. by 925), king of Pamplona.

220. Each of the two looks back at times, yet in every face he sees his death,

221. Fine white [swords] and tawny [lances] are on their track, while killing and capturing penetrate deeply into their [ranks].

222. There is no fleeing for them, and heads were carried [aloft] on spears,

223. Because the Amir[1] gave orders for putting to rout and [our] army was swift to rush against [the enemy].

224. It came upon their multitude when they had been put to flight, and watched as their commanders were destroyed.

225. For when they wished to enter their fortress, they entered one of death's enclosures.

226. O, what an enclosure, O!—In it their souls paid up the debt to death which had fallen due.

227. When they saw the waves [of our army] before them, they entrenched themselves in a stronghold which became a tether for them;

228. A rock which became a dire misfortune for them, since they turned from it to Hellfire;

229. They fell one by one asking for water, yet their souls were taken from them while they were still athirst.

230. Therefore, how many a man was present at the feast of the crows and vultures, who had fallen prey to God's sword!

231. And how many priests who summon [their followers] to crosses and bells were killed by it!

232. Then the Amir departed, while all around him shouts of "There is no God but one God!" and "God is very great!" could be heard,

233. For he was determined to wage war on the land of the infidels, and [moved forward] preceded by squadrons of Arab cavalry.

234. Hence he trampled it underfoot as well as imposing on it ignominy, disgrace, bloodshed and a smashing destruction.

235. Moreover they burned down and destroyed fortresses, and afflicted their inhabitants,

236. So look right and left and all you will see is the fierce blaze of fire;

237. In the morning their habitations appeared devastated and all you could see was a spreading pall of smoke,

238. While in the midst of them all, the Imam, [God's] elect, was granted victory, for he had quenched [his thirst for vengeance] upon the enemy and could rejoice at the evil lot that had befallen them....

The Year 312 [924–925]

269. Afterwards the campaign of the year twelve took place. How many misfortunes and warning examples occurred during its course!

270. The Imam campaigned with his squadrons around him, like the full moon surrounded by its stars;

271. He campaigned with the sword of victory in his right hand and the rising star of good fortune on his forehead,

272. While the officer in charge of the army and the government was the eminent Musa, the Amir's chamberlain.

273. He destroyed the fortresses of Todmir and made the wild animals descend from the rocky peaks.[2]

274. So that the people unanimously agreed [to obey] him and the leaders of the rebellion acknowledged him as chief,

[1] The Amir (signifying a secular leader) is 'Abd al-Rahman III, as is the Sultan referred to in line 207. By using these various epithets for 'Abd al-Rahman, the poet indirectly argues for both his religious and secular authority.

[2] Todmir (or Tudmir), a province more-or-less corresponding to present-day Murcia (in Spain's southeast), was the region won by the Islamic conquerors through diplomacy in *The Treaty of Tudmir* (above, p. 78).

275. Until, when he had taken all of their fortresses and inscribed the truth elegantly on their texts,

276. There set forth, travelling in the shadow of the army, under the banner of the great lion,

277. The men of Todmir and their kinfolk, of every tie that could trace back its lineage to them.

278. Until, when he occupied Tudela, it was mourning over its blood that had gone unavenged;[1]

279. Over the magnitude of what it had suffered at the hands of the enemy, and over the constant warring, evening and morning.

280. Therefore he became anxious to humiliate the land of the infidel and that supporting [troops] should occupy the mountain pass.

281. Next he consulted those of his friends and of the frontiersmen who were endowed with wisdom and intelligence,

282. But they all advised him not to invade [the enemy territory] through the mountain pass, nor to cross through the densely-tangled mountain,

283. For he was accompanied by an army weakened by the loss of all the officers and [main] troops,

284. And they spread the rumor that fifty thousand of the infidel's men were stationed beyond the ravine.

285. Yet he declared: "I will most definitely enter [the pass], there being no road for me but the one leading to it,

286. And to my subduing the territory of Pamplona and the plain of that accursed city."

287. Yet no one but the chamberlain supported him in this decision.

288. Thus he asked God for assistance, set his troops in battle formation and entered, following which a victory without equal ensued.

289. Once he had set out and was crossing the mountain passes, wearing the breastplate of war,

290. A certain infidel placed his squadrons of cavalry in battle formation to attack him, and they plunged over the ravines.

291. Therefore the Imam asked for the assistance of the Lord of mankind, after which he sought the help of generosity and courage.

292. Then he took refuge in both private oration and prayer, to bring victory down from heaven.

293. Next he put the commanders at the head of the [main] troops, making auxiliaries follow one after another.

294. In this way the infidel was put to rout, while a slaughter took place in which the rearguard outdid the vanguard,

295. So that they were massacred in such a way as to be reduced to nought; moreover the white [swords] were abundantly watered with blood.

296. Then he turned toward Pamplona and the army rushed blindly upon the city

297. Until, when "they entered to search the very inmost parts of its homes"[2] and ruin rushed into the flourishing state of its civilization,

298. Onlookers wept over what befell it, when hooves first began to pound on it,

299. For the loss of its men who were slaughtered, and for the abasement of its children who were orphaned.

300. How many uncircumcised ones [lie dead] in and around it, over whom the eye of the bishop sheds [bitter] tears:[3]

301. And how many churches in it have been held in contempt, while their bells have been replaced by the muezzin's call;

[1] The poem here moves back to the north; Tudela was claimed by the Christians of Navarre/Pamplona.

[2] Qur'an 17:5.

[3] The "uncircumcised ones" are the Christians.

302. Both bell and cross weep over [Pamplona], for to each of them weeping is a [last remaining] duty!

303. Meanwhile the Imam departed with success, victory, divine support and prosperity;

304. Then, while on his way back, he turned the banners in the direction of the Banu Dhi n-Nun, because of his success,[1]

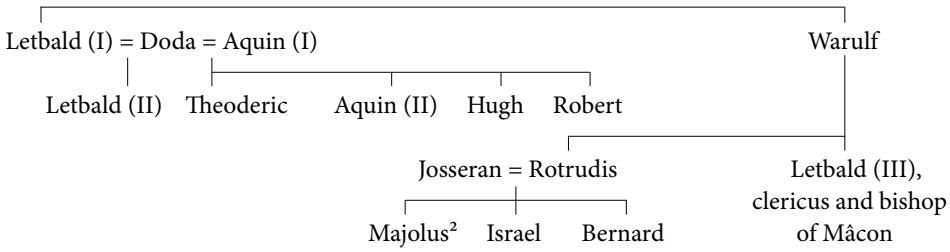
305. So that after a period of prosperity, the latter entered one of hardship, while their cheeks were glued to the ground,

306. Until they appeared before him with hostages consisting of both the eldest of the parents and of the offspring.

307. Therefore let there be great praise to God for supporting him and giving him right guidance!

4.4 Donating to Cluny: Cluny's *Foundation Charter* (910) and various charters of donation (10th–11th cent.). Originals in Latin.

William, duke of Aquitaine (875–918), and his wife Ingelberga, anxious to ensure their eternal salvation, founded the monastery of Cluny on family property in the region of Mâcon (Burgundy, France). Soon the monastery gained an astonishing reputation for piety, and the prayers of its monks were praised for sending souls to heaven. Local donors, ranging from small peasants to rich aristocrats, gave land to Cluny in order to associate themselves with the monks' redemptive work. The donations were recorded in charters. Those below are, first, the original donation made by William and Ingelberga; and, second, a group of charters drawn up for one family, later known as the Grossi (see Genealogy 4.1).



Genealogy 4.1 The Grossi

1. What reasons did people give for donating to the monastery of Cluny?
2. What roles did women have in supporting the monastery?

[Source: Patrick J. Geary, ed., *Readings in Medieval History*, 4th ed. (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2010), pp. 315–22 (slightly modified).]

[1] The Banu Dhi n-Nun were lords of Toledo, in the heart of al-Andalus.

[2] The Majolus of this family was not the same person as the Majolus who was abbot of Cluny 954–994.

[The Foundation Charter of Cluny: Charter # 112 (September 11, 910)]

To all right thinkers it is clear that the providence of God has so provided for certain rich men that, by means of their transitory possessions, if they use them well, they may be able to merit everlasting rewards. As to which thing, indeed, the divine word, showing it to be possible and altogether advising it, says: "The riches of a man are the redemption of his soul."[1] I, William, count and duke by the grace of God, diligently pondering this, and desiring to provide for my own salvation while I am still able, have considered it advisable—nay, most necessary, that from the temporal goods which have been conferred upon me I should give some little portion for the gain of my soul. I do this, indeed, in order that I who have thus increased in wealth may not, perchance, at the last be accused of having spent all in caring for my body, but rather may rejoice, when fate at last shall snatch all things away, in having reserved something for myself. Which end, indeed, seems attainable by no more suitable means than that, following the precept of Christ: "I will make his poor my friends"[2] and making the act not a temporary but a lasting one, I should support at my own expense a congregation of monks. And this is my trust, this my hope, indeed, that although I myself am unable to despise all things, nevertheless, by receiving despisers of the world, whom I believe to be righteous, I may receive the reward of the righteous. Therefore be it known to all who live in the unity of the faith and who await the mercy of Christ, and to those who shall succeed them and who shall continue to exist until the end of the world, that, for the love of God and of our Savior Jesus Christ, I hand over from my own rule to the holy apostles, Peter, namely, and Paul, the possessions over which I hold sway, the villa[3] of Cluny, namely, with the court and demesne *mansus*,[4] and the chapel in honor of St. Mary the mother of God and of St. Peter the prince of the apostles, together with all the things pertaining to it, the villas, indeed, the chapels, the serfs of both sexes, the vines, the fields, the meadows, the woods, the waters and their outlets, the mills, the incomes and revenues, what is cultivated and what is not, all in their entirety. Which things are situated in or about the county of Mâcon, each one surrounded by its own bounds. I give, moreover, all these things to the aforesaid apostles—I, William, and my wife Ingelberga—first for the love of God; then for the soul of my lord king Odo;[5] of my father and my mother; for myself and my wife—for the salvation, namely, of our souls and bodies;—and not least for that of Ava who left me these things in her will;[6] for the souls also of our brothers and sisters and nephews, and of all our relatives of both sexes; for our faithful ones who adhere to our service; for the advancement, also, and integrity of the catholic religion. Finally, since all of us Christians are held together by one bond of love and faith, let this donation be for all,—for the orthodox, namely, of past, present or future times.

I give these things, moreover, with this understanding, that at Cluny a regular monastery shall be constructed in honor of the holy apostles Peter and Paul, and that there the monks shall congregate and live according to the rule of St. Benedict,[7] and that they shall possess, hold, have and order these same things unto all time, provided that the venerable house of prayer which is there shall be faithfully filled with vows and supplications, and that celestial converse shall be sought and striven after with all desire and with the deepest ardor; and also that there shall be diligently directed to God prayers, beseechings and exhortations both for me and for all, according to the order in which mention has been made of them above. And let the monks themselves, together with all the aforesaid possessions, be under the power and dominion of the abbot Berno, who, as long as he shall live, shall preside over them according to the Rule and consistent with his knowledge and ability. But after his death, those same monks shall have power and permission to elect any one

---

[1] See Prov. 13:8.

[2] Luke 16:9.

[3] In this instance, the word *villa* means an estate, which included an enclosed area (the "court"), land, waste, meadow and various other appurtenances. In many of the other charters of Cluny, however, the word *villa* refers to a small district in which many landowners held land.

[4] A *mansus* (pl. *mansi*) was a farming unit. A "demesne *mansus*" was an outsize farming unit belonging to the lord (in this case William, and soon the monastery of Cluny), which included the *mansi* of dependent peasants.

[5] Odo, related to the later Capetians, was king of the west Franks 888–898.

[6] Ava was a sister of the donor.

[7] For *The Benedictine Rule* see above, p. 20.

of their order whom they please as abbot and rector, following the will of God and the rule promulgated by St. Benedict,—in such a way that neither by the intervention of our own or of any other power may they be impeded from making a purely canonical election. Every five years, moreover, the aforesaid monks shall pay to the church of the apostles at Rome ten *solidi*[1] to supply them with lights; and they shall have the protection of those same apostles and the defense of the Roman pontiff; and those monks may, with their whole heart and soul, according to their ability and knowledge, build up the aforesaid place. We will, further, that in our times and in those of our successors, according as the opportunities and possibilities of that place shall allow, daily, works of mercy towards the poor, the needy, strangers, and pilgrims will be performed with the greatest zeal. It has pleased us also to insert in this document that, from this day, those same monks there congregated shall be subject neither to our yoke, nor to that of our relatives, nor to the sway of any earthly power. And, through God and all his saints, and by the awful day of judgment, I warn and abjure that no one of the secular princes, no count, no bishop whatever, not the pontiff of the aforesaid Roman see, shall invade the property of these servants of God, or alienate it, or diminish it, or exchange it, or give it as a benefice to any one, or constitute any prelate over them against their will. And that such unhallowed act may be more strictly prohibited to all rash and wicked men, I subjoin the following, giving force to the warning. I adjure you, oh holy apostles and glorious princes of the world, Peter and Paul, and you, oh supreme pontiff of the apostolic see, that, through the canonical and apostolic authority which you have received from God, you remove from participation in the holy church and in eternal life, the robbers and invaders and alienators of these possessions which I do give to you with joyful heart and ready will; and be protectors and defenders of the aforementioned place of Cluny and of the servants of God abiding there, and of all these possessions—on account of the clemency and mercy of the most holy Redeemer. If anyone—which Heaven forbid, and which, through the mercy of the God and the protection of the apostles I do not think will happen—whether he be a neighbor or a stranger, no matter what his condition or power, should, through any kind of wild attempt to do any act of violence contrary to this deed of gift which we have ordered to be drawn up for the love of almighty God and for reverence of the chief apostles Peter and Paul; first, indeed, let him incur the wrath of almighty God, and let God remove him from the land of the living and wipe out his name from the book of life, and let his portion be with those who said to the Lord God: Depart from us; and, with Dathan and Abiron whom the earth, opening its jaws, swallowed up, and hell absorbed while still alive, let him incur everlasting damnation.[2] And being made a companion of Judas let him be kept thrust down there with eternal tortures, and, lest it seem to human eyes that he pass through the present world with impunity, let him experience in his own body, indeed, the torments of future damnation, sharing the double disaster with Heliodorus and Antiochus, of whom one being coerced with sharp blows and scarcely escaped alive; and the other, struck down by the divine will, his members putrefying and swarming with worms, perished most miserably.[3] And let him be a partaker with other sacrilegious persons who presume to plunder the treasure of the house of God; and let him, unless he come to his senses, have as enemy and as the one who will refuse him entrance into the blessed paradise, the key-bearer of the whole hierarchy of the church,[4] and, joined with the latter, St. Paul; both of whom, if he had wished, he might have had as most holy mediators for him. But as far as the worldly law is concerned, he shall be required, the judicial power compelling him, to pay a hundred pounds of gold to those whom he has harmed; and his attempted attack, being frustrated, shall have no effect at all. But the validity of this deed of gift, endowed with all authority, shall always remain inviolate and unshaken, together with the stipulation subjoined. Done publicly in the city of Bourges. I, William, commanded this act to be made and drawn up, and confirmed it with my own hand.

---

[1] A *solidus* was a coin, in this case silver.

[2] For Dathan and Abiron, Hebrews who challenged Moses in the desert and were swiftly swallowed up by the earth, see Num. 16:12–15, 25–34.

[3] Judas is the betrayer of Christ. In 2 Macc. 3:7–27, Heliodorus, minister of King Seleusis of Syria, is sent to plunder the Temple at Jerusalem but is beaten up by mysterious persons sent by divine will. In 2 Macc. 9:7–9, King Antiochus of Syria falls from a chariot and suffers horribly thereafter.

[4] The "key-bearer of the whole hierarchy of the church" is Saint Peter.

[Here follow the names of Ingelberga and 42 other people, mainly bishops, nobles, and members of William's family.]

[Charters of the Grossi Family: Charter # 802 (March 951)]

To all who consider the matter reasonably, it is clear that the dispensation of God is so designed that if riches are used well, these transitory things can be transformed into eternal rewards. The Divine word showed that this was possible, saying "Wealth for a man is the redemption of his soul," and again, "Give alms and all things will be clean unto you."[1]

We, that is, I, Doda, a woman, and my son Letbald [II], carefully considering this fact, think it necessary that we share some of the things that were conferred on us, Christ granting, for the benefit of our souls. We do this to make Christ's poor our friends, in accordance with Christ's precept and so that He may receive us, in the end, in the eternal tabernacle.

Therefore, let it be known to all the faithful that we—Doda and my son Letbald—give some of our possessions, with the consent of lord Aquin [I], my husband, for love of God and his holy Apostles, Peter and Paul,[2] to the monastery of Cluny, to support the brothers [i.e., monks] there who ceaselessly serve God and His apostles. [We give] an allod[3] that is located in the *pagus*[4] of Mâcon, called Nouville.[5] The serfs [*servi*] that live there are: Sicbradus and his wife, Robert, Eldefred and his wife and children, Roman and his wife and children, Raynard and his wife and children, Teutbert and his wife and children, Dominic and his wife and children, Nadalis with her children, John with his wife and children, Benedict with his wife and children, Maynard with his wife and children, another Benedict with his wife and children, and a woman too ...[6] with her children.

And we give [land in] another *villa*[7] called Colonge and the serfs living there: Teotgrim and his wife and children, Benedict and his wife and children, Martin and his children, Adalgerius and his wife and children, [and] Sicbradus.

And [we give] a *mansus*[8] in Culey and the serfs there: Andrald and his wife and children, Eurald and his wife and children. And [we give] whatever we have at Chazeux along with the serf Landrad who lives there. We also give a little harbor on the Aar river and the serfs living there: Agrimbald and Gerald with their wives and children.

In addition, we give an allod in the *pagus* of Autun, in the *villa* called Beaumont and the serfs living there, John, Symphorian, Adalard and their wives and children, in order that [the monks] may, for the love of Christ, receive our nephew, Adalgysus, into their society.[9]

[We give] all the things named above with everything that borders on them: vineyards, fields, buildings, serfs of every sex and age, ingress and egress, with all mobile and immobile property already acquired or to be acquired, wholly and completely. We give all this to God omnipotent and His apostles for the salvation of our souls and for the soul of Letbald [I], the father of my son, and for the salvation of Aquin [I], my husband, and of all our relatives and finally for all the faithful in Christ, living and dead.

Moreover, I, the aforesaid Letbald, uncinch the belt of war, cut off the hair of my head and beard for divine love, and with the help of God prepare to receive the monastic habit in the monastery [of Cluny]. Therefore, the property that ought to come to me by paternal inheritance I now give [to Cluny] because of the generosity of my mother and brothers. [I do so] in such a way that while [my mother and brothers] live, they hold and possess it. I give a *mansus* in Fragnes, along with the serf Ermenfred and his wife and children, to [my brother] Theoderic, *clericus*,[10] and after his death let it revert to [Cluny]. And I give another *mansus* at Verzé with the serf Girbald and

[1] Prov. 13:8 and Luke 11:41.

[2] As William's foundation charter stipulated, Cluny had been handed over to the apostles Saints Peter and Paul.

[3] An allod in this region was land that was owned outright, in contrast to land held in fief, for example.

[4] A *pagus* was a Roman administrative subdivision.

[5] Almost all the places mentioned in these charters are within about ten miles of the monastery of Cluny.

[6] Effaced in the manuscript.

[7] Here the word *villa* refers to a district.

[8] The reference here is no doubt to a demesne *mansus*.

[9] Possibly Adalgysus is to become a monk; but it is more likely that he is to become a special "friend" of the monastery for whom prayers will be said.

[10] I.e., a priest.

his wife and children to my brother Hugo. In the *pagus* of Autun I give to [my brother] Aquin [II] the allod that is called Dompierre-les-Ormes, and the serf Benedict and his wife and their son and daughter. [I give Aquin also] another allod in Vaux, and the serfs Teutbald and his wife and children and Adalgarius. [I give all this] on condition that, if these brothers of mine [Hugh and Aquin], who are laymen, die without legitimate offspring, all these properties will go to the monastery as general alms.

If anyone (which we do not believe will happen) either we ourselves (let it not happen!) or any other person, should be tempted to bring a claim in bad faith against this charter of donation, let him first incur the wrath of God, and let him suffer the fate of Dathan and Abiron and of Judas, the traitor of the Lord. And unless he repents, let him have the apostles [Peter and Paul] bar him from the celestial kingdom. Moreover, in accordance with earthly law, let him be forced to pay ten pounds. But let this donation be made firm by us, with the stipulation added. S[ignum][1] of Doda and her son Letbald, who asked that it be done and confirmed. S. of Aquin, who consents. S. of Hugo. S. of Evrard. S. of Walo. S. of Warembert. S. of Maingaud. S. of Giboin. S. of Leotald. S. of Widald. S. of Hemard. S. of Raimbald. Dated in the month of March in the 15th year of the reign of King Louis.[2] I, brother Andreas, *levite*,[3] undersign at the place for the secretary.

[Charter # 1460 (November 12, 978–November 11, 979)[4]]

I, Majolus, humble abbot [of Cluny] by the will of God, and the whole congregation of brothers of the monastery of Cluny. We have decided to grant something from the property of our church to a certain cleric, named Letbald [III] for use during his lifetime, and we have done so, fulfilling his request.

The properties that we grant him are located in the *pagus* of M,con, in the *ager*[5] of Grevilly, in a *villa* called Collonge: *mansi*, vineyards, land, meadows, woods, water, and serfs of both sexes and whatever else we have in that place, which came to us from Raculf.[6] And we grant two *mansi* at Boye and whatever we have there. And in Massy, one *mansus*. And in "Ayrodia" [not identified], in a place called Rocca, we give *mansi* with vineyards, land, woods, water, and serfs of every sex and age; and we grant all the property of Chassigny [a place near Lugny that has disappeared]: vineyards, land, meadows, woods, water, mills and serfs and slaves. And at "Bussiacus" [near Saint-Huruge], similarly [we grant] *mansi*, vineyards, lands, meadows, and woods. And at "Ponciacus" [not identified] [we give] *mansi*, vineyards, and land. Just as Raculf gave these things to us in his testament, so we grant them to [Letbald] on the condition that he hold them while he lives and after his death these things pass to Cluny. And let him pay 12 dinars every year to mark his taking possession.

We also grant to him other property that came from lord Letbald [I], his uncle: a *mansus* at La Verzé and another at Bassy and another at Les Légères, and again another in Fragnes and another in Chazeux. And again a *mansus* in the *pagus* of Autun, at Dompierre-les-Ormes and another in Vaux and the serfs and slaves of both sexes that belong to those *mansi*. Let him hold and possess these properties as listed in this *precaria*[7] for as long as he lives. And when his mortality prevails—something no man can avoid—let this property fall to [Cluny] completely and without delay. [Meanwhile] let him pay 12 dinars every year, on the feast day of Apostles Peter and Paul.

I have confirmed this decree with my own hand and have ordered the brethren to corroborate it, so that it will have force throughout his lifetime. S. of lord Majolus, abbot. S. of Balduin, monk. S. of Vivian. S. of John. S. of Arnulf. S. of Costantinus. S. of Tedbald. S. of Joslen. S.

---

[1] Usually laypeople did not sign charters; rather they made a mark or sign (their *signum*) that was indicated by the scribe in front of their name. The S refers to this sign.

[2] This was King Louis D'Outremer (r.936–954), one of the last of the Carolingians.

[3] A *levite* was a deacon.

[4] This charter has this range of dates because the scribe dated it in the twenty-fifth year of the reign of King Lothar, the son of King Louis, whose rule began on November 12, 954.

[5] The *pagus* of Mâcon was divided into subdivisions called *agri* (sing. *ager*). There were perhaps ten or more *villae* in each *ager*.

[6] Raculf was probably a member of the Grossi family.

[7] This document is a "precarial" donation. A *precaria* was a conditional grant of land *by* a monastery to someone outside of the monastery for his or her lifetime.

of Grimald. S. of Hugo. S. of Rothard. S. of Ingelbald. S. of Achedeus. S. of Vuitbert. S. of Ingelman. Dated by the hand of Rothard, in the 25th year of the reign of King Lothar.

[Charter # 1577 (Nov. 12, 981–Nov. 11, 982)]

To this holy place, accessible to our prayers [et cetera].[1] I, Rotrudis, and [my husband] Josseran, and my sons, all of us give to God and his holy Apostles, Peter and Paul and at the place Cluny, half of a church[2] that is located in the *pagus* of Mâcon, named in honor of St. Peter, with everything that belongs to it, wholly and completely, and [property in] the *villa* that is called Curtil-sous-Buffières. There [we give] a field and a meadow that go together and have the name *ad Salas*. This land borders at the east on a *via publica*[3] and a manmade wall; at the south on a meadow; at the west on a *via publica*, and similarly at the north. [I make this gift] for the salvation of the soul of my husband Josseran, and [for the soul of my son] Bernard. Done at Cluny. Witnesses: Rotrudis, Josseran, Bernard, Israel, Erleus, Hugo, Odo, Raimbert, Umbert. Ingelbald wrote this in the 28th year of the reign of King Lothar.

[Charter # 1845 (990–991)]

By the clemency of the Savior a remedy was conceded to the faithful: that they could realize eternal returns on His gifts if they distributed them justly. Wherefore, I, Majolus,[4] in the name of God, give to God and his holy apostles Peter and Paul and at the place Cluny some of my property which is located in the county of Lyon, in the *villa* "Mons" [not identified]. It consists of a demesne *mansus* with a serf named Durannus and his wife, named Aldegard, and their children, and whatever belongs or appears to belong to this *mansus*, namely fields, vineyards, meadows, woods, pasturelands, water and water courses, that is already acquired or will be acquired, whole and complete. I make this donation first for my soul and for my burial [in Cluny's cemetery] and for the soul of my father Josseran and of my mother Rotrudis and of my brothers, and for the souls of my *parentes*[5] and for the salvation of all the departed faithful, so that all may profit in common. [I give it] on the condition that I may hold and possess it while I live, and that every year I will pay a tax of 12 dinars on the feast day of the Prince of the Apostles [i.e., St. Peter]. After my death, let [the property] go to Cluny without delay.

But if anyone wants to bring any bad-faith claim against this donation, let him first incur the wrath of the Omnipotent and all His saints; and unless he returns to his senses, let him be thrust into Hell with the devil. As in the past, let this donation remain firm and stable, with the stipulation added. Done publicly at Cluny. S. of Majolus, who asks that it be done and confirmed. S. of Bernard, S. of Israel, S. of Arleius, S. of Bernard, S. of Hubert. Aldebard, *levita*, wrote this in the 4th year of the reign of Hugh [Capet].

[Charter # 2508 (994–1030?)[6]]

Notice of a quitclaim[7] that took place at Cluny in the presence of lord Rainald, venerable prior at that place; and of other monks who were there, namely Walter, Aymo, Amizon, Warner, Lanfred, Locerius, Giso; and of noblemen: Witbert, Robert, Ildinus, Gislebert, Bernard, and Hugo. In the first place, let all, present and future, know that a long and very protracted quarrel between the monks of Cluny and Majolus[8] finally, by God's mercy, came to this

[1] This charter began with a formula considered so commonplace that it did not need to be fully written out.

[2] Churches could be given in whole or in part—since the revenues could be divided—and with or without their tithes (which often belonged not to the holder of the church but to the local bishop).

[3] In this region, a *via publica* was a dirt road. There was a very extensive network of roads in the area around Cluny left over from the Roman period.

[4] Not the Cluniac abbot but rather a member of the Grossi family.

[5] The *parentes* were much broader than the nuclear family but perhaps not quite as large as a clan.

[6] The scribe did not give a date. But we know that Rainald was prior at Cluny beginning in 994 and that Majolus died *c.*1030. These give us, respectively, the *terminus post quem* [time after which] and the *terminus ante quem* [the time before which] the document must have been drawn up.

[7] That is, this gives notice that a claim has been dropped ("quit").

[8] The donor from the Grossi family.

end result: first that he [Majolus] quit his claim to the land which Oddo and Teza [Oddo's] daughter[1] destined for us and handed over by charter: the woods in *Grandi Monte* with its borders [as follows]: on the east [it borders on] its own inheritance [namely] passing between mountains and through wasteland and across the castle of Teodoric; on the south [it borders on] *terra francorum*;[2] on the west and north [it borders on] land of St. Peter. [Majolus] draws up this notice at this time so that he may reunite himself with the favor of St. Peter and the brothers, and so that he may persevere in future as a faithful servant in the service of St. Peter. S. Hugo, S. Witbert, S. Robert, S. Ildinus, S. Gislebert, S. Bernard.

[Charter # 2946 (1018–1030?)[3]]

In the name of the incarnate Word. I, Raimodis, formerly the wife of the lord Wichard, now dead, and now joined in matrimony to lord Ansedeus, my husband; with the consent and good will [of Ansedeus], I give or rather give again some land which is called Chazeux to St. Peter and Cluny. [I give it] for the soul of my husband Wichard. This land once belonged to St. Peter and Cluny. But the abbot and monks gave it as a precarial gift to lord Letbald [III], a certain cleric who afterwards became bishop of Mâcon. Letbald, acting wrongly, alienated [the land] from St. Peter and gave it to Gauzeran to make amends for killing Gauzeran's relative, Berengar.

Therefore I give it again to St. Peter for the soul of my husband Wichard, and for Gauzeran, Wichard's father. I also give a slave named Adalgarda and her children, and [I give] the whole inheritance for the soul of my husband Wichard, and of my daughter Wiceline, and for my own soul.

If anyone wants to bring false claim against this donation, let him not prevail, but let him pay a pound of gold into the public treasury. S. of Raimodis, who asked that this charter be done and confirmed. S. of Ansedeus. S. of another Ansedeus. S. of Achard. S. of Walter. S. of Costabulus. S. of Ugo.

4.5 Love and complaints in Angoulême: *Agreement between Count William of the Aquitainians and Hugh IV of Lusignan* (1028). Original in Latin.

This document of a series of disputes and their eventual settlement is written from the point of view of Hugh, who was the castellan (the lord of a castle and its garrison) of Lusignan, although he here calls himself Chiliarch—"leader of one thousand." The events described may be dated between about 1022 and 1028. The chief protagonists of Hugh's drama are Hugh himself and William, whom he calls "count of the Aquitainians" but who was, more importantly, count of Poitou (he ruled from *c.*995–1030). The center of his county was Poitiers, which included Lusignan (about fifteen miles southwest of Poitiers) and many of the other locations mentioned in this document. Other characters who appear are mainly laymen, laywomen, and a few bishops. The *Agreement* presents an admittedly one-sided picture of the activities of the French aristocracy in the early eleventh century. As you read this document, consider what it meant to be the "man" of a lord.

1. In what ways were legal and quasi-legal proceedings essential institutions in the Poitou?

[1] Oddo and Teza were probably relatives of Majolus.

[2] This probably refers to land of free peasants.

[3] This date, which is quite uncertain, is suggested on the basis of other charters that tell us at what date Raimodis, the donor in this charter, became a widow.

2. What are the meanings of "love," "anger," and "sorrow" in this early eleventh-century account?

[Source: Jane Martindale, "Conventum inter Guillelmum Aquitanorum comitem et Hugonem Chiliarchum," *English Historical Review* 84/332 (1969): 528–48. Translated by Thomas Greene and Barbara H. Rosenwein from the Latin text, in consultation with translations by George Beech, "Hugh of Lusignan: Agreement between Lord and Vassal," in *Readings in Medieval History*, ed. Patrick J. Geary, 4th ed. (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2010), pp. 377–81; Martindale, "Conventum," pp. 541–48; and Paul Hyams and others, "Agreement between Duke William V of Aquitaine and Hugh IV of Lusignan" at http://falcon.arts.cornell.edu/prh3/436/texts/conventum.htm.]

William, called count of the Aquitainians, had an agreement with Hugh the Chiliarch that when Viscount Boso died, William would give Boso's honor in commendation to Hugh.[1] Bishop Roho saw and heard this and kissed the arm of the count.[2] But Viscount Savary seized from Hugh land which Hugh held from Count William.[3] When the viscount died the count promised Hugh that he would make no agreement or accord with Ralph, the brother of the dead viscount, until the land had been restored. He said this in the presence of all, but afterwards he secretly gave the land to Ralph. For that land itself, or for a larger one, or for other things, Hugh had an agreement with Viscount Ralph that he would accept Ralph's daughter as his wife. When the count heard this, he was greatly angered and he went humbly to Hugh and said to him, "Don't marry Ralph's daughter. I will give to you whatever you ask of me, and you will be my friend before all others except my son." Hugh did what the count ordered, and out of love and fidelity for the count he secretly rejected the woman.

At that time it happened that Joscelin of Parthenay castle died.[4] The count said that he would give Joscelin's honor and wife to Hugh, and if Hugh refused to accept them, he would no longer have confidence in him. Hugh did not entreat or request this from the count, either for himself or for anyone else. Thinking it over, he said to the count, "I will do all that you have ordered." The count, however, after holding a public meeting with Count Fulk,[5] promised to give Fulk something from his own benefices, and Fulk promised that he would give Hugh what belonged to him. At the meeting, the count called for Viscount Ralph and said to him: "Hugh will not keep the agreement he has with you because I forbid him to. But Fulk and I have an agreement that we will give to Hugh the honor and wife of Joscelin. We do this to mess up your life, because you are not faithful to me." When he heard this, Ralph was very hurt and he said to the count, "For God's sake do not do that." So the count said, "Pledge to me that you will not give Hugh your daughter, nor keep your agreement with him, and in turn I will arrange that he not possess the honor and wife of Joscelin." And they so acted that Hugh got neither the one nor the other. Ralph went to Count William, who was at Montreuil castle, sending a message to Hugh that they should talk together. That was done. And Ralph said to Hugh, "I tell you this in confidence so that you will not give me away. Pledge to me that you will help me against Count William, and I will keep your agreement for you and will aid you against all men." But Hugh refused all of this out of his love for Count William. Hugh and Ralph

[1] Boso (d. by 1033) was viscount of Chatellerault, twenty miles northeast of Poitiers. An "honor" referred to property.

[2] Roho was bishop of Angoulême (r.1020–1036). Formal agreements were often concluded by a kiss of peace; sometimes witnesses participated in this gesture of concord and, as here, the kiss might function as well as a sign of deference.

[3] Savary was viscount of Thouars.

[4] The "castles" that this document refers to were not luxurious chateaux but rather strongholds or fortresses. Some of them were thrown up haphazardly and minimally fortified; others were built more solidly and sometimes included a stone tower. Armed garrisons of horsemen guarded the castles and were important players—as victims, hostages, and guarantors—in the disputes and negotiations between regional lords. Included in the notion of the castle was the surrounding district that it dominated.

[5] Fulk was count of Anjou (r.987–1040).

parted unhappily. Then Ralph began to prosecute a public dispute with Count William, while Hugh, out of love for the count, started one with Ralph. And Hugh suffered great harm.

When Ralph died, Hugh asked the count to restore to him the land which Ralph had seized from him. Moreover, the count said to Hugh, "I will not make an agreement with Viscount Josfred, the nephew of Ralph, nor with the men of Thouars castle, until I return your land." Yet none of this was done, and the count went and made an agreement with Viscount Josfred and with the men of Thouars castle. He never made an agreement with Hugh, and Hugh did not get his land. And because of the misdeeds which Hugh committed on the count's behalf, Josfred got into a dispute with Hugh, and he burned Mouzeuil castle and captured Hugh's horsemen and cut off their hands and did many other things. The count did not help Hugh at all nor did he broker a good agreement between Josfred and Hugh, but Hugh even now has lost his land, and for the sake of the count he has lost still other land that he was holding peacefully. And when Hugh saw that he was not going to get his land he took forty-three of the best horsemen of Thouars. He could have had peace and his land and justice for the wrongdoing; and if he had been willing to accept a ransom he could have had 40,000 *solidi*.[1]

When the count heard this, he should have been glad, but he was sad and sent for Hugh, saying to him, "Give me back the men." Hugh answered him, "Why do you ask these things of me, Lord? I am a loser only because of my loyalty to you." Then the count said, "I do not ask this of you to hurt you, but in fact because you are mine to do my will. And as all will know by our agreement, I will take over those men on condition that I make a settlement with you that your lands will be secured and the wrongdoing compensated, or I will return the men to you. Do this without doubting my credibility and good faith, and if anything should turn out badly for you, you can be sure that I will hand them over to you." Hugh put his trust in God and the count and handed the men over to the count according to this agreement. Later on Hugh got neither the men nor justice, and he lost his land.

The count of the Poitevins[2] and Bishop Gilbert[3] had an agreement among themselves with Joscelin, Hugh's uncle.[4] It was about the castle at Vivonne, and it said that after the death of Bishop Gilbert it was to be Joscelin's castle. During his lifetime, the bishop made the men of that castle commend themselves to Joscelin, and he gave Joscelin the tower. And after the death of both men, the count made an agreement between Hugh and Bishop Isembert[5] that Hugh would get half of the castle and half of the demesne and two shares of the vassals' fiefs.[6] Then the count made Hugh commend himself to Bishop Isembert—but now he has taken the better estate from them.

A certain official named Aimery seized the castle called Civray from Bernard, his lord, but this castle was rightly Hugh's, as it had been his father's. Because of his anger at Aimery, Count William urged Hugh to become the man[7] of Bernard for the part of the castle that had belonged to his father, so that together they might wage a dispute with Aimery. But it seemed wrong to Hugh that he become Bernard's man, and he did not want to do it. The count persisted in this admonition for a year, and the more he got angry, the more he urged Hugh to become the man of Bernard. After a year passed, the count came to Hugh as if in anger and said to him, "Why don't you make an agreement with Bernard? You owe so much to me that if I should tell you to make a peasant into a lord you should do it. Do what I say, and if it should turn out badly for you, come and see me about it." Hugh believed him and became the man of Bernard for the fourth part of Civray castle. But Bernard made the count a guarantor to Hugh, as well as four hostages. The count said to Hugh, "Commend those hostages to me under such conditions that if Bernard does not faithfully keep your agreements, I will turn them over to your custody and I will faithfully aid you." How strongly the count promised this to Hugh he himself knows very well. Hugh trusted in his lord and

---

[1] A *solidus* (pl. *solidi*) is here a silver coin.

[2] That is, Count William.

[3] Gilbert was bishop of Poitiers (r.975–1023/1024).

[4] This is presumably a different Joscelin from the one of Parthenay.

[5] Isembert was Gilbert's successor as bishop of Poitiers.

[6] It was possible to have "half a castle" because what was at stake were the revenues due to the castle, not the stronghold itself. The "demesne" was land belonging to the fortress directly; other land pertaining to it was granted out in fief.

[7] The word used here is *homo*, which may be translated as "man" or "vassal," depending on one's view of the relations among these aristocrats and the implications of these words.

began a fierce dispute on account of Civray castle and suffered great losses in men and many other things. The count started to build a castle, which he called Couhé, but he did not finish it for Hugh. Instead, he talked it over with Aimery, abandoned the castle, and in no way aided Hugh.

Afterwards the count grew even more unhappy with Aimery on account of the castle called Chizé, which Aimery had seized, and Hugh and the count joined together in a dispute against Aimery. The count besieged the castle called Mallevault because of the injuries that Aimery had done to him and captured it, and Hugh aided him as best he could. Before Hugh left the count, the count promised him—just as a lord ought rightly to promise to his man—that he would make no agreement or alliance with Aimery without Hugh, and that Mallevault would not be rebuilt without his advice. But the count did make an agreement with Aimery and allowed him to rebuild Mallevault without the advice of Hugh. As long as Aimery lived, none of the property mentioned above came to Hugh.

After the death of Aimery a great dispute began between his son Aimery and Hugh. At the same time, Hugh went to the count and said to him, "Things are going badly for me now, my Lord, because I have none of the property that you acquired for me." The count answered him, "I am going to hold a public hearing with them so that if they act well, good; if not, I will turn over to you the castle which I started." And the castle was constructed on the advice of Bernard, who thus far had helped Hugh in the dispute. When they saw the heavy demands Hugh was making on them, the men of Civray were not able to hold out, and they made an agreement with Bernard and returned the castle to him. He received it without the advice of Hugh. Now both Bernard and Aimery were in dispute with Hugh, and he was alone against them. Coming to the count, Hugh said to him, "Lord, I am doing very badly because the lord whom I got upon your advice has just taken away my property. I beg and urge you by the faith which a lord owes to aid his man: either let me have a proper public hearing or my property, just as you pledged to me; or return to me the hostages which I commended to you; and above all help me as you pledged to me." The count, however, neither aided him, nor made an agreement with him, nor returned the hostages but released them and gave them back to Bernard. And after that the dispute between Bernard and Aimery and Hugh increased.

And since Hugh saw that the count aided him in no way, he went to seek the advice of Gerald, the bishop of Limoges. Gerald and Hugh went together into La Marche against Bernard and built a castle. But the count, who ought to have aided Hugh, seized the castle from him and burned it. And the count and his son ordered all their men not to help Hugh unless they wished to die. Then Bernard accepted the council of his men that they should do harm to Hugh on the advice of the count, and they appointed a deadline fifteen days away. During those fifteen days the count arranged a truce between Bernard and Hugh. Three days into the truce the count took Hugh along with his army to Apremont castle, and a meeting was held in his castle. From there the count went to Blaye, where he was to have a meeting with Count Sancho, and he told Hugh that he should come along. And Hugh responded, "Lord, why do you ask me to go with you? You yourself know how short the truce is which I have with Bernard, and he himself is threatening to do me harm." The count said to him: "Do not fear that they will do anything to you as long as you are with me." And the count took Hugh with him by force and against Hugh's will.

While they were staying at the meeting place, Hugh's men heard that Bernard was coming against him; they sent a message to Hugh to come. Then Hugh said to the count, "Bernard is attacking me." And the count said, "Don't be afraid that they will dare attack you; and, besides, you need them to attack so that I can destroy them and aid you." In that same hour the count sent orders through his men, and he told Hugh to go on ahead, and he followed him. When Hugh reached Lusignan, Bernard was at Confolens castle. He had captured the suburb and the outskirts and burned everything; he had taken spoils, captured men, and done plenty of other evil deeds. A messenger ran up to Hugh and said to him, "Bernard has your wife besieged in the old castle which survived the fire." Hugh came to the count and said to him: "My lord, help me now, because my wife is now being besieged." But the count gave him no aid or advice at all. And Bernard turned back, and he and his men did so much harm to Hugh and his men that 50,000 *solidi* would not have paid for it. And Hugh suffered this damage during the truce that the count offered to him at Blaye.

Not long after this Hugh went to Gençay castle and burned it and seized the men and women and took everything with him. Hastening to the count, he said to him, "Lord, give me permission to build the castle which I burned." And the count said to him, "You are the man of Fulk, how can you build the castle? Fulk will demand it of you, and you will not be strong enough to keep it from him." Hugh said, "Lord, when I became Fulk's man I told

him that his men were seizing what was my right and that if I was able to regain possession of them, I would do it, but I would only hold it in his fealty, which is what I want to do. And Fulk said to me, 'If you take anything from them, don't take from me.'" When the count heard that Fulk and Hugh had such an agreement, he was pleased. And the count said to Hugh: "Build the castle under such an agreement that if I am able to negotiate with Count Fulk about my price and yours, one part will be mine and the other yours."

And Hugh built the castle. Then Fulk asked the count for it. The count responded to him, "Ask Hugh for it." And Fulk did that. Hugh answered him, "When I became your man, I said to you that if I would be strong enough to take castles from my enemies, I should take them and hold them in your fealty, and I wanted to do that because the castle which you are demanding belonged to my relatives, and I have a better right to it than those who were holding it." But Fulk said, "You who are mine, how can you hold against my will something I didn't give to you?" And Hugh sought advice from the count. The count told him, "If he is willing to give you guarantees that your enemies will not have the castle, then you cannot keep it. If not, keep it, because he will not be able to accuse you of anything." Hugh asked that Fulk give hostages to him, and Fulk gave him nothing, but said, "I will make my demands known to the count and give hostages to him and he will give you some of his own." Then the meeting turned angry. Fulk demanded Hugh's castle from the count. Hugh said, "I will not give it up without assurances." The count said to him, "I will give an assurance, and he has told me what sort to give." Hugh said, "Take what you want from Count Fulk and give me what I'm asking for. Give me the man who has custody of the tower at Melle, so that if Aimery should get the castle without my advice, and harm should befall me, that man will turn the tower over to me." The count said to him, "I will not do this, because I cannot." Hugh said, "If you don't want to do this with Melle, make the same agreement with regard to Chizé." But the count didn't want to do either.

It seemed to Hugh and his men that the count was treating him badly. And they parted in anger. Then Hugh sent all kinds of necessities into the castle and intended to hold it against all comers if they would not give him assurances. The count came out of the city,[1] asked Hugh to come to him, and commanded through Count William of Angoulême that he submit himself to the mercy of the count, because the count could not change the fact that he had to aid Fulk; and he was afraid to lose either Fulk or Hugh. Then Hugh committed himself to the trust and friendship of the count his lord, and he did this out of love for him because he was assured that he would not suffer harm at Fulk's hands. And the count said: "Let Hugh do this for me and I will keep the faith with him that a lord ought to keep with his man. If he suffers harm, he will know that I have betrayed him, and he will never trust me again." And Hugh said, "My lord has spoken similarly to me about many things by which he has deceived me." And not a single one of Hugh's men would advise him to trust the count. But the count reminded Hugh of all the good things which he had done for him, and Hugh, holding back the count by his love and entreaties—that is by their common oath—said to the count, "I will put all my trust in you, but watch out that you do not do me wrong, for if you do, I will not be faithful to you nor will I serve you, nor will I render fidelity to you. But, on account of the fact that I will be separated from you and you are not able to give me guarantees, I want you to give me my fief as a pledge that then I will no longer serve you, and release me from the oath which I have made to you." The count answered, "Gladly."

Hugh returned the castle to the count, against the wishes of his men, on condition that Aimery would not have it without Hugh's advice and that Hugh would suffer no harm. On account of hearing those lies, Hugh accepted his fief as a pledge, and the count gave it to him on condition that if he should suffer harm because of the agreement about Gençay, Hugh would never again serve him. And the count released him from his oaths, so that he would no longer do anything for the count on account of them, but not out of ill will. [But] the count handed over Gençay without the advice of Hugh and got money and some demesne land. It went very badly for Hugh, with men killed, houses burned, booty taken, land seized and many other things which in truth cannot be enumerated. When this had ended, the count gave Hugh a respite and promised that he would give him a benefice either of something that was his by right or something that would be pleasing to him. But when this period passed the count did nothing for Hugh. He sent an order to him: "Don't wait, because I am not going to do anything for you. Even if the whole world were mine I would not give you as much as a finger could lift with regard to this matter."

[1] Presumably Poitiers.

When Hugh heard this, he went to the court of the count and made the case for his rights, but it did him no good. This saddened Hugh, and in the hearing of all he renounced his fealty[1] to the count, except what he owed for the city [of Poitiers] and his own person. Before either Hugh or his men did any harm, the men of the count seized a benefice from Hugh's men in the name of war. When Hugh saw this, he went to Chizé castle, which had been his uncle's but which Peter[2] was holding unjustly, and from which much harm was being done to Hugh. He seized the tower and threw out Peter's men. Hugh did this because he thought he had the right—because it had belonged to his father or others of his relatives—which he was losing. When the count heard of this he was greatly saddened and sent an order to Hugh that he turn over the tower that he had taken away from Peter. Hugh demanded that the count return the honor of his father and the other things which belonged to his relatives and to which he had right, and he would surrender the tower and all the things that he had taken within it, and in addition the entire honor which had belonged to Joscelin[3] and which the count had given him. The count thought this over and they arranged for a hearing. And the count said to Hugh, "I will not give you those honors which you ask of me, but I will give you that honor which was your uncle's—the castle, the tower and the entire honor—on condition that you no longer demand of me that honor which was your father's, or others of your relatives, nor anything which you claim as your right."

When he heard this Hugh greatly mistrusted the count, because through evil trickery in the past the count had deceived Hugh in many things. He said to the count, "I don't dare do this, because I fear that you will threaten me with harm, as you have done with regard to many other things." The count said to Hugh, "I will give such assurances to you that you will no longer distrust me." Hugh said to him, "What kind of assurances?" The count said, "I will produce a serf who will undergo an ordeal for you so that you will not doubt that the agreement which we make among ourselves will be good and firm. And with regard to all the affairs of the past, no harm will ever again be done to you, but the agreement will be kept firmly without any evil trickery." When Hugh heard what the count was saying in this way, he said, "You are my lord. I will not take a guarantee from you, but I will simply rely on the mercy of the Lord and yourself." The count said to Hugh, "Give up all those claims that you have demanded from me in the past and swear fidelity to me and my son, and I will give you your uncle's honor or something else of equal value in exchange for it." And Hugh said, "Lord, I beg you by God and this blessed crucifix which is made in the figure of Christ that you do not make me do this if in future you and your son intend to threaten me with evil trickery." The count said, "My son and I will do this in faith and without evil trickery." Hugh said, "And when I have sworn fidelity to you, you will ask me for Chizé castle, and if I should not turn it over to you, you will say that it is not right that I deny you the castle which I hold from you; but if I should turn it over to you, you and your son will take it away from me because you will have given me no guarantee except the mercy of God and yourself." The count said, "We will not do that, but if we should demand it of you, don't turn it over to us."

They received Hugh as their man in faith and trust under the terms of the agreement as it was finally pronounced: that the count and his son should bear faith to Hugh without evil trickery. And they made Hugh give up everything that he claimed from the past. And he swore fidelity to them, and they gave him the honor of his uncle Joscelin, just as Joscelin held it one year before he died.

Here end the agreements between the count and Hugh.

---

[1] The Latin word here is *defidavit*, which means defied. The root of the word is "faith"; a man declares his faith (*fides*=fidelity) to his lord, but if he formally renounces that fealty, as here, he "defies"—"de-fealties"—him.

[2] Peter has not been identified.

[3] This Joscelin was Hugh's uncle.

4.6 The Peace of God at Bourges: Andrew of Fleury, *The Miracles of St. Benedict* (1040–1043). Original in Latin.

The Peace of God was a movement initiated by bishops, and eventually declared by kings as well, to protect unarmed people (including clerics) and property (including Church property) from armed predators. At Church synods, laypeople and churchmen alike met to proclaim the Peace. Those who fought (the *bellatores* or *milites*: the knights) swore oaths not to violate the Peace. In the late 1030s, at one such synod, Aimon, the archbishop of Bourges from 1030 to 1070, organized a militia consisting of clergy, peasants, and a few nobles that succeeded in forcing most of the nobility of the region to take the oath. The militia even enforced the Peace by going to war against breakers of the oath. But it ran into opposition from one holdout, Odo, lord of Déols, who defeated it soundly. Andrew, a monk at the monastery of Fleury, recounted the incident in the course of his work on the *Miracles of St. Benedict*, written 1040–1043. He praised the militia's initial promise but berated it for its "ambition" and confidence in its own power rather than God's.

1. Why were common people enthusiastic about the Peace of God?
2. How might the sorts of disputes described in the *Agreement between Count William and Hugh* (above, p. 190) have contributed to the Peace of God movement?

[Source: *The Peace of God: Social Violence and Religious Response in France around the Year 1000*, ed. Thomas Head and Richard Landes (Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1992), pp. 339–42.]

5.1 In the 1038th year after the incarnation of the Lord, on the eighth day of August, in the middle of the day, the sun was darkened and hid the rays of its splendors for a space of almost two hours. Again the following morning it remained under the same appearance for the entire day and unremittingly gave off bloody flames.

5.2. At this very same time, Archbishop Aimon of Bourges wished to impose peace in his diocese through the swearing of an oath. After he had summoned the fellow bishops of his province and had sought advice from these suffragans, he bound all men of fifteen years of age and over by the following law: that they would come forth with one heart as opponents of any violation of the oath they had sworn, that they would in no way withdraw secretly from the pact even if they should lose their property, and that, what is more, if necessity should demand it, they would go after those who had repudiated the oath with arms. Nor were ministers of the sacraments excepted, but they often took banners from the sanctuary of the Lord and attacked the violators of the sworn peace with the rest of the crowd of laypeople. In this way they many times routed the faithless and brought their castles down to the ground. With the help of God they so terrified the rebels that, as the coming of the faithful was proclaimed far and wide by rumor among the populace, the rebels scattered. Leaving the gates of their towns open, they sought safety in flight, harried by divinely inspired terror. You would have seen [the faithful] raging against the multitude of those who ignore God, as if they were some other people of Israel. Presently they trampled [the rebels] underfoot so that they forced them to return to the laws of the pact which they had ignored.

We thought it fitting to insert in writing that which was agreed to in the pact which the archbishop himself, along with various fellow bishops, promised under oath in the following way: "I Aimon, by the gift of God archbishop of Bourges, promise with my whole heart and mouth to God and to his saints that I shall discharge with my whole spirit and without any guile or dissimulation everything that follows. That is, I will wholeheartedly attack those who steal ecclesiastical property, those who provoke pillage, those who oppress monks, nuns, and clerics, and those who fight against holy mother church, until they repent. I will not be beguiled by the enticement

of gifts, or moved by any reason of bonds of kinship or neighborliness, or in any way deviate from the path of righteousness. I promise to move with all my troops against those who dare in any manner to transgress the decrees and not to cease in any way until the purpose of the traitor has been overcome."

He swore this over the relics of Stephen, the first martyr for Christ, and urged the other [bishops] to do likewise. Obeying with one heart, his fellow bishops made among everyone age fifteen or older (as we already said) in their separate dioceses subscribe [the pact] with the same promise. Fear and trembling then struck the hearts of the unfaithful so that they feared the multitude of the unarmed peasantry as if it were a battle line of armored men. Their hearts fell so that, forgetting their status as knights and abandoning their fortified places, they fled from the humble peasants as from the cohorts of very powerful kings. The prayer of David fitted the situation most aptly: "For thou dost deliver a humble people, but the haughty eyes thou dost bring down, for who is God but the Lord?"[1] ... Odo of Déols remained alone among the whole multitude [of rebels], reserved by the judgment of God for the punishment of evil doers.

5.3. When by the will of God they had, trusting in the help of divine strength, established peace in every direction, ambition (the root and aid of all evil) began to seep along the stalks of such good works. They forgot that God is the strength and rampart of his people and ascribed the power of God to their apostate power.... Thus the aforementioned bishop was touched by the sting of mammon[2] and raged around and around in blind ambition. Unmindful of his episcopal dignity, he attacked Beneciacum, the castle of one Stephen, along with a multitude of the people of Bourges. He reproached Stephen for the fault of having ignored the peace, he tried to burn the castle with flames and ordered it to be leveled to the ground, as if he were exacting the vengeance of God upon it. They burned the castle, which was hemmed in on all sides by the siege, with more than one thousand four hundred people of both sexes inside. Stephen alone of that great number escaped, although his brothers, wife, and sons were all consumed by the fire, and he placed the laurel wreath of his great victory on their wretched heads. The inhabitants of that region for a radius of fourteen miles had fled to this castle and, since they feared the theft of their possessions, they had brought them along. The cruel victors were hardly moved by the laments of the dying, they did not take pity on women beating their breasts; the crowd of infants clinging to their mothers' breasts did not touch any vein of mercy.... And so the just bore responsibility for the crime of the iniquitous and the just perished in place of the impious. Having been granted this great triumph, the people returned to their homes dancing with a pitiable joy. Stephen was placed under guard in a prison in Bourges.

5.4. Almighty God wished to avenge the blood of his servants and, not long after this, set the aforesaid bishop against Odo, the sole rebel. The bishop sought to force Odo to join in the pact common to all, but he would not delay in making an armed attack. Discovering that Odo's spirit remained inflexible, as was God's will, Aimon began—while the blood of the innocents was not yet dry—to collect allies together from all sides, including a large contingent of God's ministers. Confiding in lesser things, he directed his battleline against the enemy. When both armies stood almost at grips, a sound was made heavenward [indicating that Aimon's forces should] retreat, since they no longer had the Lord with them as a leader. When they made no sign of following this advice, an enormous globe of flashing light fell in their midst. Thus it came to pass, as it is said, "Flash forth the lightning and scatter them, send out the arrows and rout them!"[3] Then the people perceived that they were much inferior to their adversaries, since those exceeded in number the sands of the sea. They decided that some foot soldiers should be mounted on various animals and mixed into the cohorts of mounted warriors [*milites*] so that they would be judged mounted warriors by their opponents, more because of the appearance of their being mounted than because of the setting of their weapons. Without delay up to two thousand of the plebeian rabble were mounted on asses and arrayed as knights among the order of knights. But these men were terrified and they took flight along the banks of the Cher. They were killed in such numbers that they blocked the river in such a way that they made a bridge out of the bodies of the dying over which their enemies proceeded. More fell by their own swords than by those of their pursuers.... The number of the dying could not be comprehended: in one valley seven hundred clerics fell. Thus the most tempered

[1] Ps. 18:27, 31; Douay Ps. 17:28, 32.

[2] The false god personifying riches and avarice.

[3] Ps.144:6; Douay Ps. 143:6.

judgment of God made those people—who had refused obedience to any requests for mercy, and had not been moved by the smell of their brothers' being burned, and had rejoiced more than was just to have their hands in an unfortunate victory—lost their lives along with that victory.

BYZANTIUM IN ASCENDANCE

4.7 Patronage of the arts: "Theophanes Continuatus," *Constantine VII Porphyrogenitus* (before 963). Original in Greek.

Although Constantine VII (r.945–959) was known as the Porphyrogenitus because he was born in the purple porphyry-paneled imperial bed chambers, he was shunted aside by Romanus I Lecapenus (whose *Novel* appears above, p. 177). Constantine ascended to the throne by deposing Romanus's sons. To ensure his power and reputation, he hired the most able military generals and patronized the finest scholars and artists. "Theophanes Continuatus" is the name given to a collection of imperial biographies written by various writers. The one for Constantine—whose real author is much disputed—includes an admiring assessment of the emperor's artistic and architectural achievements, excerpted here.

1. What did "Theophanes" admire most about Constantine's patronage of the arts?
2. What role did the emperor himself have in the art and architecture produced during his reign, at least according to "Theophanes"?

[Source: *The Art of the Byzantine Empire, 312–1453*, ed. Cyril Mango (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1986), pp. 207–9 (notes modified).]

15. Furthermore, he restored the imperial vestments as well as the crowns and diadems that had been damaged for a long time. He also embellished the Bucoleon[1] with statues which he gathered from different places, and he installed a fish-pond there.... 20. We ought also to mention the roof of [the hall of] the Nineteen Couches.[2] For perceiving it to be rotten, altogether unsightly and about to collapse, he restored it, and chose to make new and splendid the gilded ceiling which had fallen apart with the passage of time. He contrived in it octagonal cavities which he embellished with perforations and various carved shapes resembling the tendrils and leaves of the vine and the form of trees, and these he sprinkled with gold, making [the ceiling] so beautiful as to amaze the beholder. 21. And for his son, the Emperor Romanus, he built more palaces than previous emperors had done.... At the Tetraconch of the apostle Paul[3] which had lost its ancient beauty, he, with a view to instilling a new beauty into it, set up various golden figures and images.

22. This man [Constantine] was, I believe, more thoroughly versed in the art of painting than anyone before him or after him. He often corrected those who labored

[1] Enclosed within the complex of the Great Palace, the Bucoleon was a group of buildings comprising a harbor, a quay, and a palace overlooking the Sea Walls.

[2] A ceremonial dining hall in the Great Palace.

[3] A tetraconch is a church with a central bay framed by four walled "conches"—semicircular lobes.

at it and appeared to be an excellent teacher—indeed, he not only appeared as such, but was universally admired as a prodigy in an art that he had never learned. Who could enumerate all the instances in which the Porphyrogenitus set craftsmen right? He corrected stone carvers and builders, workers in gold leaf, silver-smiths and iron-smiths and in every case he showed his excellence.
23. Being a lover of beautiful things, the same Constantine constructed the silver doors of the Chrysotriklinos;[1] furthermore, with much industry, he made a silver table for the reception of guests and the adornment of the dining-room, which table, in addition to its natural color, he beautified with materials and plaques of various other hues, thus affording a greater pleasure to his guests than they would have derived [solely] from the savor of the repast.

24. He also built a guardhouse of porphyry[2] in front of his chamber, wherein he contrived a receptacle of water surrounded by marble columns shining smooth. And what else did his noble mind [invent]? He set upon the water pipe a silver eagle, looking not ahead but sideways, his neck high and proud as if he had caught a prey, while stifling a serpent that was coiled round his feet. In the vestibule or the imperial chamber he also put up artful mosaic images, a spectacle of diverse colors, materials, and forms....

28. Who would be able to describe the sacred objects and hangings which he presented to the common propitiatorium (I mean the great and admirable one)?[3] Each time he came, he wished not to appear empty-handed in the sight of God, and so repaid his debt by lavish offerings of objects wrought in gold, of pearls, precious stones and cloths. These adorn the holy of holies and proclaim [the name of] Constantine who offered them....

33. It is also fitting that we should speak of the Chrysotriklinos which the ingenious Emperor turned into a blooming and sweet-smelling rose-garden by means of minute, variegated mosaic cubes imitating the colors of freshly opened flowers. Enclosed by spiral convolutions and shaped by the composition itself, these [cubes?] are altogether inimitable. He girded [the hall] with silver, encompassing it as with a border (*antux*),[4] and so offered the spectator a source of inexhaustible delight.

4.8 The toils of war: *The Epitaph of Basil II* (1025). Original in Greek.

Powerful provincial families known as *dynatoi* confronted the Byzantine emperor Basil II (r.976–1025). His harsh measures against them culminated in 988, when he defeated a revolt led by some *dynatoi* and confiscated their estates. Meanwhile, on Byzantium's frontiers, Basil pursued expansionist policies in every direction. These wars created the image of himself that he most valued, as his epitaph makes clear. The epitaph was placed, along with Basil's sarcophagus, in a church in the Hebdomon Palace, just outside Constantinople.

1. What activities did Basil want remembered?
2. What role did God play in Basil's conception of himself?

[Source: Paul Stephenson, *The Legend of Basil the Bulgar-Slayer* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2003), p. 49 (notes added).]

[1] The Chrysotriklinos was the main reception hall of the imperial palace at Constantinople.

[2] Purple marble. Porphyry was the imperial color.

[3] Hagia Sophia, the great church constructed by Emperor Justinian in the sixth century.

[4] This probably refers to a decorative silver molding running along the entire interior of the hall.

Other past emperors
previously designated for themselves other burial places.
But I Basil, born in the purple chamber,[1]
place my tomb on the site of the Hebdomon[2]
and take sabbath's rest from the endless toils
which I fulfilled in wars and which I endured.[3]
For nobody saw my spear at rest,
from when the Emperor of Heaven called me
to the rulership of this great empire on earth,[4]
but I kept vigilant through the whole span of my life
guarding the children of New Rome[5]
marching bravely to the West,
and as far as the very frontiers of the East.
The Persians and Scythians bear witness to this
and along with them Abasgos, Ismael, Araps, Iber.[6]
And now, good man, looking upon this tomb
reward it with prayers in return for my campaigns.

4.9 Imperial rule under two sisters: Michael Psellus, *Zoe and Theodora* (before 1063). Original in Greek.

Michael Psellus (1018–1078), probably born and certainly educated in Constantinople, was a teacher, a prolific writer, and a courtier in the service of many of the emperors and empresses during the second half of the eleventh century. Among his many writings was the *Chronographia*, a book containing the biographies of Byzantine emperors and empresses from the time of Basil II (r.976–1025) to Michael VII (r.1071–1078). The first and longest part of the text was written before 1063; later, Psellus added a section that took the story to 1078. He knew Zoe and Theodora, and his "take" on them has influenced historians ever since. Only recently have some tried to understand these two sisters apart from the very male point of view of their biographer. They were daughters of Basil II's older brother Constantine, who took the emperorship after Basil, ruling as Constantine VIII (r.1025–1028). Brought up at the imperial palace, both were at first pliant tools of imperial ambition. Zoe, the eldest of the two (a still older sister had entered a monastery), was married (at the age of fifty) to her father's designated heir, Romanus, who gained the throne as her husband. But, unable to have children, Zoe and Romanus III (r.1028–1034) became estranged, and Zoe took up with an ambitious courtier, Michael, who eventually drowned Romanus in his private pool, perhaps with Zoe's assent. In any event, Zoe quickly married Michael, who became Michael IV (r.1034–1041). Ill and fearful that Zoe would betray him in turn, Michael stepped down and handed the throne to his nephew, Michael V (r.1041–1042), who could claim the emperorship because Zoe had earlier adopted him as her son. The new emperor had Zoe's hair cut (a disfigurement that religious women usually chose voluntarily) and sent her into exile. But a popular rebellion on her behalf in Constantinople (including

[1] "Born in the purple chamber" means that he was born after his father became emperor and refers to the imperial bedchamber, the walls of which were lined with purple (porphyry) marble.

[2] A palace just outside Constantinople, a place for imperial retreats.

[3] A Sabbath is meant to be a day of rest.

[4] God is the "Emperor of Heaven," and the Byzantine emperor is his counterpart on earth.

[5] The first Rome was in Italy; Constantinople was the "New (or Second) Rome."

[6] Byzantine authors used "the Persians" for a variety of people to the east of the empire, while the Scythians referred to any northern barbarian. The emphasis here is on Basil's conquests to the east: Abasgos and Iber referred to peoples living along the eastern shore of the Black Sea; the Ismael were the Ismaelites, the Muslims; the Araps were the Arabs.

even noble women!) forced Michael to bring her back. Ultimately, he was blinded and Zoe and her sister Theodora became joint rulers. The excerpt from Psellus below picks up the story from this point.

1. Why could Zoe and Theodora not have remained rulers in their own right?
2. If Zoe had written her own story, what would she have said about her rulership and her marriages?

[Source: Michael Psellus (1018–after 1078) *Chronographia*, trans. Edgar R.A. Sewter (New Haven: Yale University Press, 1953), Book 6, pp. 113–25, at https://sourcebooks.fordham.edu/basis/psellus-chrono06.asp (excerpted and some notes added or modified).]

Book 6

1. So the Empire passed into the hands of the two sisters, and for the first time in our lives we saw the transformation of a *gynaeconitis*[1] into an emperor's council chamber. What is more, both the civilian population and the military caste were working in harmony under empresses, and more obedient to them than to any proud overlord issuing arrogant orders. In fact, I doubt if any other family was ever so favored by God as theirs was—a surprising thing, when one reflects on the unlawful manner in which the family fortune was, so to speak, rooted and planted in the ground, with murder and bloodshed.[2] Yet the plant blossomed out and sent forth such mighty shoots, each with its royal fruit, that no others could be compared with it, either in beauty or grandeur.[3] But this is a mere digression from my main story.

2. For a while the sisters preferred to govern alone. The Empire was administered without the appointment of new officials, and no immediate reforms were brought in to affect the constitution already established. After dismissing only the members of the rebel family, Zoe and Theodora maintained in their position of authority the other ministers of state, who were men of proved loyalty and known for their traditional allegiance to themselves. These men, because they were afraid lest at some future time they should be accused of introducing new ideas into the constitution, or of making foolish decisions, or of acting illegally, were meticulously careful in their conduct of state affairs, both military and civil, and as far as possible, they treated the empresses with all due honor.

3. Court procedure, in the case of the sisters, was made to conform exactly to the usual observance of the sovereigns who had ruled before them. Both of them sat in front of the royal tribunal, so aligned that Theodora was slightly behind her sister. Near them were the Rods and Sword-bearers and the officials armed with the *rhomphaia*.[4] Inside this circle were the special favorites and court officials, while round them, on the outside of the circle, was the second rank of the personal bodyguard, all with eyes fixed on the ground in an attitude of respect. Behind them came the Senate and the privileged class, then persons of the second class and the tribes, all in ranks and drawn up at proper intervals. When all was ready, the other business was carried on. There were lawsuits to be settled, questions of public interest, or contributions of money, audiences with ambassadors, controversies or agreements, and all the other duties that go to fill up an emperor's time. Most of the talking was done by the officials concerned, but sometimes, when it was necessary, the empresses also gave their instructions in a calm voice or made their replies, sometimes being

[1] Women's quarters.

[2] "Murder and bloodshed": When Basil I (r.867–886) came to the throne as the first Macedonian emperor, he did so by ordering the murder of the reigning emperor. His successors variously gained and lost the emperorship until Basil II (r.976–1025) secured it and defeated the powerful *dynatoi* (regional aristocrats) who challenged his rule. When Basil died without heirs, there was further foul play, as discussed in the introduction above.

[3] Psellus's patron was Constantine IX, the third husband of Zoe, which helps explain why, for Psellus, he was a "mighty shoot" of the Macedonian dynasty.

[4] A large sword or scimitar.

prompted and taking their cue from the experts, sometimes using their own discretion.

4. For those who did not know them it may be instructive if I give here some description of the two sisters. The elder, Zoe, was the quicker to understand ideas, but slower to give them utterance. With Theodora, on the other hand, it was just the reverse in both respects, for she did not readily show her inmost thoughts, but once she had embarked on a conversation, she would chatter away with an expert and lively tongue. Zoe was a woman of passionate interests, prepared with equal enthusiasm for both alternatives—death or life, I mean. In that she reminded me of sea-waves, now lifting a ship on high and then again plunging it down to the depths. Such characteristics were certainly not found in Theodora: in fact, she had a calm disposition, and in one way, if I may put it so, a dull one. Zoe was open-handed, the sort of woman who could exhaust a sea teeming with gold-dust in one day; the other counted her *staters*[1] when she gave away money, partly, no doubt, because her limited resources forbade any reckless spending, and partly because inherently she was more self-controlled in this matter.

5. To put it quite candidly (for my present purpose is not to compose a eulogy, but to write an accurate history) neither of them was fitted by temperament to govern. They neither knew how to administer nor were they capable of serious argument on the subject of politics. For the most part they confused the trifles of the harem with important matters of state. Even the very trait in the elder sister which is commended among many folk today, namely, her ungrudging liberality, dispensed very widely over a long period of time, even this trait, although it was no doubt satisfactory to those who enjoyed it because of the benefits they received from her, was after all the sole cause, in the first place, of the universal corruption and of the reduction of Roman fortunes to their lowest ebb.[2] The virtue of well-doing is most characteristic of those who govern, and where discrimination is made, where the particular circumstances and the fortune of the recipients and their differing personal qualities are taken into account, there the distribution of largess is to be commended. On the contrary, where no real discernment is exercised in these questions, the spending of money is wasted.

6. Such were the differences that marked the sisters in character. In personal appearance there was an even greater divergence. The elder was naturally more plump, although she was not strikingly tall. Her eyes were large, set wide apart, with imposing eyebrows. Her nose was inclined to be aquiline, without being altogether so. She had golden hair, and her whole body was radiant with the whiteness of her skin. There were few signs of age in her appearance: in fact, if you marked well the perfect harmony of her limbs, not knowing who she was, you would have said that here was a young woman, for no part of her skin was wrinkled, but all smooth and taut, and no furrows anywhere. Theodora, on the other hand, was taller, more taper [slender] of form. Her head was small, and out of proportion with the rest of her body. She was more ready with her tongue than Zoe, as I have said, and quicker in her movements. There was nothing stern in her glance; on the contrary, she was cheerful and smiling, eager to find any opportunity for talk.

7. So much for the character and physical appearance of the two empresses. I will return to the government. In those days, it seems to me, a peculiar magnificence and an added prestige attached itself to the executive power. The majority of the officials underwent a sudden change, as if they were playing parts on a stage and had been promoted to a role more glorious than any they had acted before. Largess was poured out as never in the past. Zoe, in particular, opened the coffers of the imperial treasury. Any trifles hidden away there were distributed by her with generous abandon. These monies had not been contributed voluntarily, but were the fruits of robbery and plunder. In fact, all this squandering, together with the high standard of living, was the beginning of the utter decline in our national affairs and the cause of our subsequent humiliation. But that was clear only to the prophets: only the wise saw what was really happening.

8. The prize-money for the soldiers and the revenues devoted to army expenditure were quite unnecessarily diverted and put aside for the use of other persons—a crowd of sycophants and those who at that time were deputed to guard the empresses—as if the emperor Basil [II] had filled the imperial treasuries with wealth for this very purpose.

9. Most men are convinced that the nations around us have made their sudden incursions against our borders, these wild unexpected inroads, for the first time in our day, but I myself hold a different view. I believe the

[1] Coins.

[2] The Byzantines called themselves Romans, and Byzantium was the New Rome.

house is doomed when the mortar that binds its bricks together becomes loose, and although the start of the trouble passed unnoticed by the majority, there is no doubt that it developed and gathered strength from that first cause. In fact, the gathering of the clouds in those days presaged the mighty deluge we are suffering today. But I must not speak of that yet.

THE AUGUSTA ZOE DELIBERATES WHOM TO PROMOTE TO THE THRONE

10. In the description of the events that follow I will speak with greater authority and more personal knowledge. The affairs of state urgently demanded vigorous and skillful direction. The country needed a man's supervision—a man at once strong-handed and very experienced in government, one who not only understood the present situation, but also any mistakes that had been made in the past, with their probable results. We wanted a man who would make provision for the future and prepare long beforehand against all possible attacks or likely invasions from abroad.[1] But the love of power, or the lack of power, the apparent freedom and the absence of supervision and the desire for ever greater power—these were the things that made the emperor's apartment into a *gynaeconitis*.

11. Even so, most people had no settled convictions. One rumor after another was bruited abroad, either favorable or otherwise to Zoe (for there were some who thought that Theodora should rightly be empress, on the ground that she had championed the cause of the people; moreover, they said, she had never married; others, again, believed the elder sister was more suited to rule, because she had previous experience of power, and power exercised a peculiar fascination on her). While these rumors were spreading, first one way, then another, among the people, Zoe anticipated their decision and seized all power for herself a second time.[2] The next move was to search for and decide on the man of the most illustrious descent and of the most distinguished fortune, whether he held a seat in the senate or served in the army....

14. Fate, indeed, decreed that the new master of the Empire should be Constantine, the son of Theodosius.[3] He was the last scion of the ancient family of the Monomachi, in the male line. A long account of him will be given by me later, when I launch out into the description of his reign—a long account, because he was emperor for more years than any of Basil's successors, and because there was more to relate. Constantine was more active than his predecessors, although it must be admitted that he was not uniformly more successful. Indeed, in some ways he was greatly inferior. There is no reason why I should not be candid about this and tell the true story. Immediately after his accession I entered his service, served throughout his reign, was promoted to the Senate, entrusted with the most honorable duties. Thus there was nothing that I did not know, no overt act, no secret diplomacy. Naturally, therefore, I shall devote more space to him than to the other emperors.

THE MANNER IN WHICH AUGUSTA INTRODUCED THE EMPEROR CONSTANTINE INTO THE PALACE

15. But this is not the time to speak of these things. Our present task is to describe how, and for what reasons, and by what turn of fate, he came to power. Because of his family this man held very high rank in the Empire. He had the additional advantage of great wealth, and his personal appearance was singularly charming. Beyond all doubt, he seemed a fit person to marry into the most illustrious families. In the first place, he became son-in-law to the most prominent member of court society, but his wife fell ill and died. He was forced into a second alliance. At the time Romanus, the future emperor,[4] was still a private citizen, although high hopes were entertained that he would eventually be promoted and the people treated him with the greatest respect, because of his position. Romanus had conceived a deep affection for Constantine—a young man in the flower of his manhood and scion of a most noble family—and he grafted this fine young cutting on his own rich fertile olive. The lady in question was none other than the daughter of his sister Pulcheria, who in the past had been married to Basil Sclerus (he had the misfortune later to be deprived of his sight) and she had become the mother of this one child, a daughter. Alliance with this family conferred on the young man extraordinary brilliance, but he still held no important office. Basil's advisers, because of the hatred they nursed for the father, vented their spite on the son, and Sclerus's revolutionary designs had an unfortunate

[1] The use of "we" here implies that Psellus and other courtiers were pushing Zoe to find a suitable military man to wed.

[2] Zoe ousted her sister only temporarily.

[3] Theodosius Monomachus (d.1029) had been an important official under Basil II. Constantine would become Constantine IX (r.1042–1055).

[4] He was to become Emperor Romanus III (r.1028–1034).

effect on the emperor's relations with Constantine.[1] That was the reason why neither Basil [II] nor Constantine [VIII], his brother, ever promoted him to any responsible post in the government. Actually, they did him no harm, but he was slighted, and they certainly never dreamed that the man had a glorious future.

16. Even the accession of Romanus did little to help Constantine in his career, so mistaken was the new emperor in his estimate of the young man's qualities. However, Romanus did at least keep him at the imperial court, and if for no other reason, he was very much in the public eye through his near relationship with the emperor. His fresh complexion (to the men of our generation he was as unspoiled as spring fruit) and his graceful manners and his conversation, in which he excelled all others, these were the things that won the heart of the empress. She delighted in his company again and again. He for his part made himself thoroughly agreeable to her, and by cleverly adapting himself to please her on all occasions, he captivated her completely. By these arts he obtained favors from her, but at the same time both he and she were assailed with calumny from the court. There were times when their clandestine meetings were not much to the liking of most courtiers.

17. At any rate, these activities made him a likely candidate for promotion to the throne, and Michael,[2] who succeeded Romanus, viewed him with suspicion. In fact, Michael, even after his own accession, remained stubbornly jealous, although not unfriendly at first. Later he trumped up false accusations, suborning witnesses unjustly, and Constantine was driven from the city. His punishment was relegation to a certain determined area, in this case the island of Mitylene, and there for seven years—the exact length of Michael's reign—he endured his misfortune. Michael Calaphates, like Paphlagon, inherited the emperors' hatred of the young man.

18. Zoe's first reaction, when for the second time she found herself at the head of the Empire, was, as I have already said, to protect herself against any sudden reversal of fortune in the future. To strengthen her position, she proceeded to look for a husband, not a man from abroad, but someone in the court circle. However, as one had been discredited through misfortune, another rejected because of his ignoble lineage, a third suspected as dangerous, and stories had been invented one after another to bring into disrepute her various suitors, she renounced all of them and again considered the claims of Constantine. She spoke openly on the subject to her personal bodyguard and household staff, and when she saw that they were unanimous in their support of Constantine as the future emperor—their agreement seemed almost preconcerted—she informed the senate also of her designs. There too her plan was greeted as an inspiration from God. So Constantine was recalled from his exile, and he set out, still a private citizen and without the paraphernalia of his new dignity.

19. When he drew near the city, however, a more sumptuous lodging was prepared for his reception and an imperial tent was pitched for him, surrounded by an imperial guard. In front of the palace there met his eyes a vision of magnificent splendor. People of all ages and conditions poured out in a flood to meet him. There were salutations and addresses of congratulation and good wishes. The city wore all the appearance of a popular festival; perhaps it would be nearer the mark to say that there were two cities, for beside the Queen of Cities there had been hastily erected a second city and the townsfolk had poured out right up to the walls, with markets, and fairs. When all was ready and the preparations for his official entry had been completed, the signal to go forward was given, and with great magnificence Constantine entered the courts of the palace.

20. Since the common laws respecting marriage could hardly be flouted, the patriarch Alexius settled the question of the wedding.[3] He made concessions to expediency—or shall we say that he bowed to the will of God in the whole affair? Certainly he did not himself lay his hands upon them in blessing at the coronation, but he did embrace them after the marriage ceremony and the act of crowning had been performed. Whether this was done in accordance with priestly tradition, or was a bit of flattery and done to suit the occasion, I do not know.

21. For the empresses, these events marked the end of their authority and personal intervention in the affairs of state; for Constantine, the beginning of his reign. His power was now for the first time established. So, after a joint rule of three months, the sisters retired from public life and the emperor—but we must not speak of him yet.

---

[1] Basil Sclerus led a revolt against Emperor Basil II. This is why there were strained relations between Basil and Constantine, who was married to the daughter of Sclerus and Pulcheria.

[2] Michael IV, Zoe's second husband.

[3] Third marriages were prohibited by the Byzantine Church. This would be the third marriage for both Zoe and Constantine.

First I have some brief remarks to make, for the benefit of those who may be interested.

22. Several persons, on more than one occasion, have urged me to write this history. Among them were not only men in authority and leaders in the senate, but also students of theology, who interpret the mysteries of Holy Writ, and men of great sanctity and holiness. Through the passing of time the historical evidence has already proved inadequate for the writing of a proper record. There is a danger that events may be hidden in the remote past, so forgotten that our knowledge of bygone days rests on no sure foundation.

These gentlemen, therefore, asked me to do what I could to remedy those deficiencies: it was not right, they argued, that our own contemporary history should be concealed and utterly obscured, while events that took place before our time were thought worthy of record by succeeding generations. Such was the pressure and such the arguments with which they urged me to take up this task, but for myself I was not particularly enthusiastic for the undertaking. It was not that I was lazy, but I was afraid of two alternatives, either of which could not be disregarded: I might pass over, for reasons which I will explain later, things done by certain individuals, or distort my account of them, and so be convicted not of writing a history, but of mere fabrication, as if I were composing a play. That was one alternative. The other was that I might go to extreme lengths in hunting down the truth, and so become a laughing-stock to the critics. They would think me, not a lover of history, but a scandalmonger.

23. For these reasons I was not very eager to tackle the history of our times, especially as I knew that in many things I would clash with the emperor Constantine, and I would be ashamed of myself if I did not seize every opportunity of commending him. I should be ungrateful and altogether unreasonable if I did not make some return, however small, for his generosity to me, a generosity which showed itself not only in positive acts, but in the indirect ways in which he helped me to better my condition. It would be shameful if I did not prove my gratitude in my writings. It was therefore because of this man that I consistently refused to compose the history. I was most anxious to avoid imputing any blame to him. I did not want to reveal by my words any actions not to his credit and things it is better to keep dark. I was loath to put before the public a dishonest story, yet at the same time I was unwilling to shame the hero of my former eulogy. In my opinion, it was wrong to exercise literary talents, which I had perfected because of his encouragements to do him harm....

28. Naturally, I would have wished that my favorite emperor had been perfect, even if such a compliment was impossible for all the others, but the events of history do not accommodate themselves to our desires. So, divine soul, forgive me, and if sometimes in describing your reign I speak immoderately, concealing nothing and telling the truth, pardon me for it. Not one of your nobler deeds shall be passed over in silence. They shall all be revealed. Likewise, whatever derives not from the same nobility, that too shall be made manifest in my history. And there we must leave the matter and return to our narrative.

[At this point, Psellus takes up the story of Constantine.]

SCHOLARSHIP AND THE ARTS ACROSS THE ISLAMIC WORLD

4.10 Political theory: Al-Farabi, *The Perfect State* (*c*.940–942). Original in Arabic.

Abu Nasr al-Farabi (872–950) was born in Turkestan, spent most of his adulthood in Baghdad, where he made a very modest living as a philosopher and writer, and joined the court of the emir of Aleppo in Syria toward the end of his life. His *Perfect State* engaged a long tradition of Greek thought on a great variety of spiritual, biological, and social topics; al-Farabi wanted to show their importance for a Muslim audience. His work thus began with God, angels, the heavens, the "bodies below the heavens," and so on, leading to the chapters below, which deal with human societies and their different degrees of excellence.

1. How does al-Farabi's view of the "excellent and ignorant cities" compare with Augustine's notion of the "cities of God and Man" in *The City of God*, above, p. 16?
2. What, in the view of al-Farabi, justified social and political hierarchies?

[Source: *Al-Farabi on the Perfect State*, ed. and trans. Richard Walzer (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1985), pp. 231, 235, 239, 241, 253, 255, 257, 259.]

Chapter 15
Perfect Associations and Perfect Ruler; Faulty Associations

... §3. The most excellent good and the utmost perfection is, in the first instance, attained in a city, not in a society which is less complete than it. But since good in its real sense is such as to be attainable through choice and will and evils are also due to will and choice only, a city may be established to enable its people to cooperate in attaining some aims that are evil. Hence felicity is not attainable in every city. The city, then, in which people aim through association at cooperating for the things by which felicity in its real and true sense can be attained, is the excellent city, and the society in which there is a cooperation to acquire felicity is the excellent society; and the nation in which all of its cities cooperate for those things through which felicity is attained is the excellent nation. In the same way, the excellent universal state will arise only when all the nations in it cooperate for the purpose of reaching felicity.

§4. The excellent city resembles the perfect and healthy body, all of whose limbs cooperate to make the life of the animal perfect and to preserve it in this state. Now the limbs and organs of the body are different and their natural endowments and faculties are unequal in excellence, there being among them one ruling organ, namely the heart, and organs which are close in rank to that ruling organ, each having been given by nature a faculty by which it performs its proper function in conformity with the natural aim. So, too, the parts of the city are by nature provided with endowments unequal in excellence which enable them to do one thing and not another. But they are not parts of the city by their inborn nature alone but rather by the voluntary habits which they acquire such as the arts and their likes; to the natural faculties which exist in the organs and limbs of the body correspond the voluntary habits and dispositions in the parts of the city.

§5. The ruling organ in the body is by nature the most perfect and most complete of the organs in itself and in its specific qualification, and it also has the best of everything of which another organ has a share as well; beneath it, in turn, are other organs which rule over organs inferior to them, their rule being lower in rank than the rule of the first and indeed subordinate to the rule of the first; they rule and are ruled. In the same way, the ruler of the city is the most perfect part of the city in his specific qualification and has the best of everything which anybody else shares with him; beneath him are people who are ruled by him and rule others.

The heart comes to be first and becomes then the cause of the existence of the other organs and limbs of the body, and the cause of the existence of their faculties in them and of their arrangement in the ranks proper to them, and when one of its organs is out of order, it is the heart which provides the means to remove that disorder. In the same way the ruler of this city must come to be in the first instance, and will subsequently be the cause of the rise of the city and its parts and the cause of the presence of the voluntary habits of its parts and of their arrangement in the ranks proper to them; and when one part is out of order he provides it with the means to remove its disorder.

The parts of the body close to the ruling organ perform of the natural functions, in agreement—by nature—with the aim of the ruler, the most noble ones; the organs beneath them perform those functions which are less noble, and eventually the organs are reached which perform the meanest functions. In the same way the parts of the city which are close in authority to the ruler of the city perform the most noble voluntary actions, and those below them less noble actions, until eventually the parts are reached which perform the most ignoble actions. The inferiority of such actions is sometimes due to the inferiority of their matter, although they may be extremely useful—like the action of the bladder and the action of the lower intestine in the body; sometimes it is due to their being of little use; at other times it is due to their being very easy to perform. This applies equally to the city and equally to every whole which is composed by nature of well-ordered coherent parts: they have a

ruler whose relation to the other parts is like the one just described.

§6. This applies also to all existents.[1] For the relation of the First Cause to the other existents is like the relation of the king of the excellent city to its other parts.[2] For the ranks of the immaterial existents are close to the First [Cause]. Beneath them are the heavenly bodies, and beneath the heavenly bodies the material bodies. All these existents act in conformity with the First Cause, follow it, take it as their guide and imitate it; but each existent does that according to its capacity, choosing its aim precisely on the strength of its established rank in the universe: that is to say the last follows the aim of that which is slightly above it in rank, equally the second existent, in turn, follows what is above itself in rank, and in the same way the third existent has an aim which is above it. Eventually existents are reached which are linked with the First Cause without any intermediary whatsoever. In accordance with this order of rank all the existents permanently follow the aim of the First Cause. Those which are from the very outset provided with all the essentials of their existence are made to imitate the First [Cause] and its aim from their very outset, and hence enjoy eternal bliss and hold the highest ranks; but those which are not provided from the outset with all the essentials of their existence, are provided with a faculty by which they move towards the expected attainment of those essentials and will then be able to follow the aim of the First [Cause]. The excellent city ought to be arranged in the same way: all its parts ought to imitate in their actions the aim of their first ruler according to their rank.

§7. The ruler of the excellent city cannot just be any man, because rulership requires two conditions: (a) he should be predisposed for it by his inborn nature, (b) he should have acquired the attitude and habit of will for rulership which will develop in a man whose inborn nature is predisposed for it. Nor is every art suitable for rulership, most of the arts, indeed, are rather suited for service within the city, just as most men are by their very nature born to serve. Some of the arts rule certain [other] arts while serving others at the same time, whereas there are other arts which, not ruling anything at all, only serve. Therefore the art of ruling the excellent city cannot just be any chance art, nor due to any chance habit whatever. For just as the first ruler in a genus cannot be ruled by anything in that genus—for instance the ruler of the limbs cannot be ruled by any other limb, and this holds good for any ruler of any composite whole—so the art of the ruler in the excellent city of necessity cannot be a serving art at all and cannot be ruled by any other art, but his art must be an art towards the aim of which all the other arts tend, and for which they strive in all the actions of the excellent city....

[Al-Farabi now explores the qualities of the ruler of the excellent city: his Passive Intellect (the only sort of intellect that human beings have) learns all the intelligibles—all that can be understood by the intellect alone—from the Active Intellect, which is God.]

§15. In opposition to the excellent city are the "ignorant" city, the wicked city, the city which has deliberately changed its character and the city which has missed the right path through faulty judgment. In opposition to it are also the individuals who make up the common people in the various cities.

§16. The "ignorant" city is the city whose inhabitants do not know true felicity, the thought of it never having occurred to them. Even if they were rightly guided to it they would either not understand it or not believe in it. The only good things they recognize are some of those which are superficially thought of as good among the things which are considered to be the aims in life such as bodily health, wealth, enjoyment of pleasures, freedom to follow one's desires, and being held in honor and esteem. According to the citizens of the ignorant city each of these is a kind of felicity, and the greatest and perfect felicity is the sum total of all of them. Things contrary to these goods are misery such as deficiency of the body, poverty, no enjoyment of pleasures, no freedom to follow one's desires, and not being held in honor.

§17. The ignorant city is divided into a number of cities. One of them is the city of necessity, that is the city whose people strive for no more food, drink, clothes, housing and sexual intercourse than is necessary for sustaining their bodies, and they cooperate to attain this. Another is the city of meanness; the aim of its people is to cooperate in the acquisition of wealth and riches, not in order to enjoy something else which can be got through wealth, but because they regard wealth as the sole aim in life. Another is the city of depravity and baseness; the aim of its people is the enjoyment of

[1] I.e., that which exists, whether thing, action, or quality.

[2] The First Cause is God. The term "First Cause" is found in Aristotle's *Physics*, book 8, and his *Metaphysics*, book 12. However, the hierarchy of being that al-Farabi describes here is neo-Platonic.

the pleasure connected with food and drink and sexual intercourse, and in general of the pleasures of the senses and of the imagination, and to give preference to entertainment and idle play in every form and in every way. Another is the city of honor; the aim of its people is to cooperate to attain honor and distinction and fame among the nations, to be extolled and treated with respect by word and deed, and to attain glory and splendor either in the eyes of other people or among themselves, each according to the extent of his love of such distinction or according to the amount of it which he is able to reach. Another is the city of power; the aim of its people is to prevail over others and to prevent others from prevailing over them, their only purpose in life being the enjoyment which they get from power. Another is the "democratic" city: the aim of its people is to be free, each of them doing what he wishes without restraining his passions in the least.

§18. There are as many kings of ignorant cities as there are cities of this kind, each of them governing the city over which he has authority so that he can indulge in his passion and design.

We have herewith enumerated the designs which may be set up as aims for ignorant cities.

§19. The wicked city is a city whose views are those of the excellent city; it knows felicity, God Almighty, the existents of the second order, the Active Intellect and everything which as such is to be known and believed in by the people of the excellent city; but the actions of its people are the actions of the people of the ignorant cities.

The city which has deliberately changed is a city whose views and actions were previously the views and actions of the people of the excellent city, but they have been changed and different views have taken their place, and its actions have turned into different actions.

The city which misses the right path [the "erring" city] is the city which aims at felicity after this life, and holds about God Almighty, the existents of the second order, and the Active Intellect pernicious and useless beliefs, even if they are taken as symbols and representations of true felicity. Its first ruler was a man who falsely pretended to be receiving "revelation"; he produced this wrong impression through falsifications, cheating and deceptions.

§20. The kings of these cities are contrary to the kings of the excellent cities: their ways of governing are contrary to the excellent ways of governing. The same applies to all the other people who live in these cities.

4.11 A Jewish poet in al-Andalus: Dunash ben Labrat, *There Came a Voice* (mid-10th cent.). Original in Hebrew.

Born in Fez (today Morocco), Dunash ben Labrat (*fl.* mid-10th cent.) became a rabbi in Spain (perhaps at Córdoba). He was one of many scholars and writers to flourish under the patronage of Hasdai ibn Shaprut, the first Jew to be an important figure at the Islamic Spanish court. Under these favorable conditions, Dunash ben Labrat and others debated Hebrew grammar, compiled Hebrew dictionaries, and created a new, secular form of Hebrew poetry. Mastering the traditions of Arabic poetic meter and rhyme, Dunash ben Labrat took up many of the same themes as the Arabic poets while invoking a very specific Jewish identity.

1. What is Dunash ben Labrat's attitude toward sensual pleasures?
2. What lines of this poem articulate the anxieties of an unwelcome minority?

[Source: *Wine, Women, & Death: Medieval Hebrew Poems on the Good Life*, trans. and ed. Raymond P. Scheindlin (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1986), pp. 41–42.]

There came a voice: "Awake!
Drink wine at morning's break.
'Mid rose and camphor make
A feast of all your hours,

'Mid pomegranate trees
And low anemones,
Where vines extend their leaves
And the palm tree skyward towers,

Where lilting singers hum
To the throbbing of the drum,
Where gentle viols thrum
To the plash of fountains' showers.

On every lofty tree
The fruit hangs gracefully.
And all the birds in glee
Sing among the bowers.

The cooing of the dove
Sounds like a song of love.
Her mate calls from above—
Those trilling, fluting fowls.

We'll drink on garden beds
With roses round our heads.
To banish woes and dreads
We'll frolic and carouse.

Dainty food we'll eat.
We'll drink our liquor neat,
Like giants at their meat,
With appetite aroused.

When morning's first rays shine
I'll slaughter of the kine[1]
Some fatlings; we shall dine
On rams and calves and cows.

Scented with rich perfumes,
Amid thick incense plumes,
Let us await our dooms,
Spending in joy our hours."

I chided him: "Be still!
How can you drink your fill
When lost is Zion hill[2]
To the uncircumcised.

You've spoken like a fool!
Sloth you've made your rule.
In God's last judgment you'll
For folly be chastised.

The Torah, God's delight
Is little in your sight,
While wrecked is Zion's height,
By foxes vandalized.

How can we be carefree
Or raise our cups in glee,
When by all men are we
Rejected and despised?"

[1] Cows of every sort.

[2] A reference to the land of Israel, "lost" to the Jews of the Diaspora.

4.12 Education: Al-Qabisi, *A Treatise Detailing the Circumstances of Students and the Rules Governing Teachers and Students* (before 1012). Original in Arabic.

Abu al-Hasan Ali ibn Khalaf al-Qabisi (935–1012) was an important leader of one school of Islamic legal thought, the Maliki, named after its founder, Malik ibn Anas (d.796). After studying with scholars at Mecca and Cairo, al-Qabisi settled in Tunisia. Among his many writings were collections of hadith (traditions about the Prophet: see above, p. 147) and commentaries on the Qur'an. Above all, al-Qabisi was interested in law, and his treatise on students, parents, and teachers, some of which is presented here, formed part of his legal corpus.

Teachers were under contract to parents and students, so al-Qabisi was concerned to clarify their mutual obligations and to justify payments for instruction. (In the thirteenth century, western scholastics would take up similar issues.) His treatise was written in the form of a response to "an urgent questioner"; the views of al-Qabisi and other authorities were given in the third person embedded in chains of transmission in the same way that the hadith were transmitted by *isnad*. In al-Qabisi's view, it was the obligation of parents and guardians to teach their children (usually by sending them to a teacher), and if they could not do that, it was up to the state to educate the young.

1. What made education of the young an essential part of Islamic upbringing?
2. How did al-Qabisi restrict the kinds of education girls should have?

[Source: *Classical Foundations of Islamic Education Thought*, ed. Bradley J. Cook with Fathi H. Malkawi (Provo, UT: Brigham Young University Press, 2010), pp. 45–51, 54. Translated by Michael Fishbein. (Notes modified.)]

In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate; God Bless Muhammad.

25. Abu al-Hasan [al-Qabisi] said: What I have told you about the merit a father can be expected to acquire from teaching his child the Qur'an should serve to encourage the father to teach his young child who, being unable to help or harm himself and unable to distinguish for himself what to take up and what to turn away, has only his father as a refuge, whose duty it is to provide his means of support....

27. Muslims throughout their history have diligently taught their children the Qur'an and provided them with teachers. This is something that no father refrains from doing for his child if he has the means to do so, unless he is following his soul's avarice. The latter is no excuse for him, for God, who is praised, has said: "Souls are very prone to avarice."[1] And, "whosoever is guarded against the avarice of his own soul—they are the prosperers."[2] Not one father would leave off doing this, deeming its omission trivial and insignificant, except a coarse father with no desire for good....

28. A child's religious status, as long as he is a minor, is the status of his father. Will the father then leave his minor child, not teaching him religion, when his teaching him the Qur'an will make his knowledge of religion firm?

[1] Qur'an 4:128.

[2] Qur'an 64:16.

Has he not heard the words of the Messenger of God, on whom be peace? "Every infant is born in a state of nature; then his parents make him a Jew or a Christian. It is just as camels are brought forth as beasts intact. Do you discern any that are mutilated?"[1] ...

29. If the children of unbelievers experience harm from their parents, it behooves the children of believers to benefit religiously from their parents. The first generations of believers had no need to trouble themselves arguing about this; they made do with the desire that had been placed in their hearts; they acted according to it, and they left it as customary practice that each generation passed on from the previous one. No father was ever reproved regarding this, nor did any father ever turn out to have omitted to do so from desire or from negligence. That is no attribute of a believing Muslim! Had it ever become evident that someone had omitted to teach his child the Qur'an out of negligence, his condition would have been deemed one of ignorance, ugliness, and deficiency, beneath that of people of contentment and satisfaction. Sometimes, however, lack of means causes parents to lag behind in this matter; then their behavior is excusable—depending on how sound their excuse turns out to be.

30. If the child has property, his father or his guardian (if his father has died) should not leave him. Let him enter the primary school and engage the teacher to teach him the Qur'an from his wealth, as is due. If the orphan has no guardian, the ruler[2] of the Muslims should oversee his affairs and proceed with his instruction as the father or guardian would have proceeded. If the child is in a town where there is no ruler, oversight would be exercised for him in a matter such as this if the town's righteous people came together to oversee the interests of the town's people, for overseeing this orphan is one of those interests.

31. If the orphan has no property, his mother or next of kin should be encouraged to take charge of teaching him the Qur'an. If someone else volunteers to bear the burden for them, that person shall have his reward. If the orphan has no kin to care for him, any Muslim who cares for him shall have his reward. If the teacher, reckoning on a heavenly reward, teaches him solely for God's sake, bearing it patiently, his reward for it, God willing, shall be doubled, especially since it is his craft from which he supports himself....

32. As for teaching a female the Qur'an and learning, it is good and of benefit to her. However, her being taught letter-writing or poetry is a cause for fear. She should be taught only things that can be expected to be good for her and protect her from temptation. It would be safer for her to be spared learning to write. When the Prophet (may God bless him and grant him peace) permitted women to attend the festival, he commanded them to bring out adolescent girls and those who normally are secluded behind a curtain.[3] At the same time he commanded menstruating women to avoid the place where people pray. He said, "Let women be present where there is blessing and at the prayers of Muslims." On this basis it is acceptable to teach them good things that are safe for them; as for things from which harm to them can be feared, it is preferable that such things be kept away from them, and this is the duty of their guardian. Understand what I have explained to you. Seek guidance from God, and He will guide: He is a sufficient guide and helper for you.

33. Know that God, who is mighty and exalted, has imposed certain duties on believing women, just as He has imposed certain duties on believing men. This may be inferred from God's words: "It is not for any believer, man or woman, when God and His Messenger have decreed a matter, to have the choice in the affair."[4] And, "The believers, the men and the women."[5] In more than one verse of His Book He has joined men and women together in being well rewarded. For example, "God has promised the believers, men and women, gardens underneath which rivers flow, forever therein to dwell, and goodly dwelling-places in the Gardens of Eden; and greater God's good pleasure, that is the mighty triumph."[6] And He commanded the wives of His Prophet (on whom be peace) to remember what they had heard from the Prophet: "And remember that which is recited in your houses of the signs of God and the Wisdom."[7] How should they not

[1] After they were born, the ears of camels were notched (and thus mutilated) to brand them.

[2] The word used here was *hakim*, which could refer to a leader of any sort, from the ruler of a country to a judge to a community official.

[3] An "adolescent girl" (*awatiq*) had begun puberty and was kept behind the curtain in the tent of her family, but she was not yet married.

[4] Qur'an 33:36.

[5] Qur'an 9:71.

[6] Qur'an 9:72.

[7] Qur'an 33:34.

be taught the good and what helps to its attainment? But whoever is in charge of them should turn from them anything of which one should beware on their behalf, since he is their protector and responsible for them....

37. Know that there was not one of the religious leaders[1] of the Muslims in the first days of this community but who gave thought to what would be of benefit to Muslims in all their affairs, private and public. We have never heard that any of them appointed teachers to teach people's children in elementary schools[2] during their childhood or gave such teachers a share from the public treasury, as they did for anyone they charged to serve the Muslims either by judging between them in lawsuits, calling them to prayer in the mosque, or anything else that they established to protect Muslims and guard their affairs. They could not have neglected the business of teachers for young children. However—and God only knows—they thought it was a matter that concerned each individual personally, inasmuch as what a person taught his child was part of his own welfare that was of special concern to him. They therefore left it as one of the tasks of fathers, something that it was not fitting for someone else to do for them if they were able to do it themselves. Since the religious leaders of the Muslims had made no provision for the matter and it was one that Muslims had to carry out for their children and without which they would not feel at ease, they got themselves a teacher for their children, someone to devote himself to them on a regular basis and to care for them as he would care for his own young children. Since it was unlikely that anyone could be found to volunteer for the Muslims, teach their children for them, devote himself entirely to them, and give up seeking his own livelihood and his profitable activities and other needs, it was appropriate for Muslims to hire someone to take care of teaching their children on a constant basis, to the exclusion of any other business. Such a teacher would relieve the children's parents of the burden of educating them; he would make them understand how to live upright lives, and he would increase their understanding of the good and turn them away from evil.

38. This is an occupation that few people volunteer to perform free of charge. If one had waited for people to volunteer to teach young children the Qur'an, many children would have been neglected and many people would not have learned the Qur'an. This would necessarily have led to loss of the Qur'an from people's hearts. It would have caused Muslim children to be confirmed in ignorance.

39. Yet there is no good reason to cause a shortage where there is no scarcity, and no injunction to abstain [from being paid to teach the Qur'an] has been confirmed as coming from the Messenger of God (may God bless him and grant him peace).

40. Al-Harith ibn Miskin,[3] in a report dated to the year [789–90], said: "Ibn Wahb gave us the following report: 'I heard Malik say, "None of the scholars I have known saw anything wrong with paying teachers—teachers of the Qur'an school."'"[4]

41. The following is also attributed to Ibn Wahb in his *Muwatta* from 'Abd al-Jabbar ibn 'Umar: "No one I asked in Medina sees anything wrong in teachers teaching for pay." ...

53. The aforementioned people disagreed only about paying the teacher to teach something other than the Qur'an and writing. They did not disagree about subjects meant to reinforce the Qur'an, such as writing and penmanship.

54. Ibn Sahnun[5] mentioned: "It is fitting for the teacher to teach his students [the correct reading of] the case-endings of [the words of] the Qur'an—it is his duty to do so—and vocalization, spelling, good handwriting, good reading, when to pause [in recitation], and how to articulate clearly; it is his duty to do so. It is his duty to teach them the good reading that has become well-known, namely the reading of Nafi',[6] but there is no harm in his having them read according to another [authority] if [the reading] is not considered disagreeable. There is no harm in his teaching them homilies, if they desire.

55. "He should teach them good manners, for it his duty toward God to give good advice, protect them, and care for them. The teacher should command them to

[1] The word used here was *a'immah*, the plural of *imam*, a religious scholar and especially the founder of a legal school.

[2] The word used here was *katatib*, the plural of *kuttab*, a school in which students learned to read the Qur'an.

[3] Al-Harith ibn Miskin was an earlier scholar of the Maliki school.

[4] Because ibn Wahb (743–812) here transmitted the words of Malik ibn Anas, founder of the Maliki school, this passage and others like it linked al-Qabisi himself to the founder.

[5] Ibn Sahnun (817–870) was an earlier scholar of the Maliki school and a student of ibn Wahb. Al-Qabisi was much influenced by ibn Sahnun's writings on education and quoted him extensively.

[6] The Maliki school considered the reading of Nafi', i.e., the Qur'anic text cited as correct by Nafi' of Medina, to be best.

perform the ritual prayer when they are seven years old and beat them for [omitting to pray] when they are ten. That is what Malik said...."

56. [Malik also said:] "Let him take care to teach them supplications,[1] that they may make their humble petitions to God; and let him teach them God's greatness and majesty, that they may magnify Him for it. If the people suffer from drought and the imam leads them in prayers for rain, I would have the teacher bring the children out [those of them who know how to pray], and let them beseech God with supplications and make their humble petitions to Him, for I have been told that when the people to whom Jonah was sent (may God's blessing be upon our Prophet and upon him) saw the chastisement with their own eyes, they brought out their children and entreated God by means of them, and the chastisement was lifted. He should teach them arithmetic, but it is not his duty unless it has been stipulated for him; and likewise poetry, obscure words, Arabic language, and the whole of grammar—in these matters he acts voluntarily. There is no harm in his teaching them poetry—words and reports of the [ancient] Arabs that contain nothing indecent—but it is not incumbent upon him." According to Sahnun there is nothing wrong if the person who teaches Qur'an and writing teaches all this, whether voluntarily or by stipulation. However, as for paying the teacher to teach these things with no intent to teach the Qur'an and writing, Sahnun, as mentioned previously, rejects it based on Malik's saying that he did not like payment for the teaching of poetry.

57. Ibn Habib, on the other hand, said: "There is nothing wrong with paying a teacher to teach poetry, grammar, letter-writing, the Days of the Arabs, and similar things, such as the knowledge of famous men and of chivalrous knights: there is nothing wrong with paying for the teaching of all this. I, however, am opposed to the teaching, learning, or recitation by an adult or child of any poetry containing accounts of unbridled violence, obscenity, or foul satire."

KINGDOMS IN EAST CENTRAL EUROPE

4.13 Hungary as heir of Rome: King Stephen, *Laws* (1000–1038). Original in Latin.

The Bulgarians entered a largely Byzantine orbit when they settled in the region just south of the Danube. By contrast, the Magyars (called Hungarians in the rest of Europe), entered a region contested by both the Byzantines and the Germans. When they arrived in the Pannonian plains (north of the Danube), they contributed to the dismantling of the formerly powerful Moravian empire, which had kept its independence from Germany, in part by converting to Christianity under the aegis of the Byzantines (it was for the Moravians that Constantine-Cyril and Methodius—see above, p. 161—first made their translations). The Hungarians, by contrast, eventually allied themselves with Germany and with the Catholicism that its emperor represented. Hungarian prince Géza (r.972–997) converted under the auspices of German churchmen and invited German priests to spread the religion, using Christianity to enforce his rule. His son Stephen (r.997–1038), married to the sister of Duke Henry IV of Bavaria (who later became Emperor Henry II), defeated his chief rival for rule with the help of German warriors, and around the year 1000, with the approval of Emperor Otto III, received a royal crown and a blessing from Pope Sylvester II. As king, Stephen adopted many of the institutions of the post-Roman successor states, including written laws. Those excerpted below are from the oldest of the laws that he promulgated.

[1] That is, prayers on various occasions that were not part of the five obligatory times of ritual prayers.

1. Compare the justifications for and provisions of Stephen's *Laws* with Charlemagne's *Admonitio Generalis* (above, p. 159).
2. What were the various classes of Hungarian society that are revealed by these laws?

[Source: *The Laws of the Medieval Kingdom of Hungary*, vol 1: 1000–1301, trans. and ed. János M. Bak, György Bónis, and James Ross Sweeney (Bakersfield, CA: Charles Schlacks, Jr. Publisher, 1989), pp. 1, 3–8, 80–83 (slightly modified).]

Preface to the Royal Law

The work of the royal office subject to the rule of divine mercy is by custom greater and more complete when nourished in the Catholic faith than any other office. Since every people use their own law, we, governing our monarchy by the will of God and emulating both ancient and modern caesars, and after reflecting upon the law, decree for our people too the way they should lead an upright and blameless life. Just as they are enriched by divine laws, so may they similarly be strengthened by secular ones, in order that as the good shall be made many by these divine laws so shall the criminals incur punishment. Thus we set out below in the following sentences what we have decreed....

6. ROYAL CONCESSIONS OF FREE DISPOSITION OF GOODS.

We, by our royal authority have decreed that anyone shall be free to divide his property, to assign it to his wife, his sons and daughters, his relatives, or to the church;[1] and no one should dare to change this after his death.

7. THE PRESERVATION OF ROYAL GOODS.

It is our will that just as we have given others the opportunity to master their own possessions, so equally the goods, warriors,[2] bondmen,[3] and whatever else belongs to our royal dignity should remain permanent, and no one should plunder or remove them, nor should anyone dare to obtain any advantage from them.

8. THE OBSERVANCE OF THE LORD'S DAY.

If a priest or *ispán* [local lord], or any faithful person find anyone working on Sunday with oxen, the ox shall be confiscated and given to the men of the castle to be eaten;[4] if a horse is used, however, it shall be confiscated, but the owner, if he wishes, may redeem it with an ox which should be eaten as has been said. If anyone uses other equipment, this tool and his clothing shall be taken, and he may redeem them, if he wishes, with a flogging.

9. MORE ON THE SAME.

Priests and *ispánok* shall enjoin village reeves[5] to command everyone both great and small, men and women, with the exception of those who guard the fire, to gather on Sundays in the church. If someone remains at home through their negligence let them be beaten and shorn.

10. THE OBSERVANCE OF EMBER DAYS.[6]

If someone breaks the fast known to all on the Ember day, he shall fast in prison for a week.

---

[1] The king seems to have wanted to transform the undivided property of clans into the personal property of freemen and nobles, as was the case in western European societies of the time. But he was not successful.

[2] The Latin word used here was *milites* (sing. *miles*), the same word for "fighters" or "warriors" that was used in the Peace Movement (see above, Andrew of Fleury, *Miracles of St. Benedict*, p. 196). In the *Laws of Hungary*, the *milites* seem to have been armed servants of the king and magnates.

[3] The Latin word used here was *servi*, (sing. *servus*), which could mean either "slave" or "serf." Since the meaning here is not clear, the neutral term "bondmen" is used.

[4] The "men of the castle" (*cives* in Latin) were dependent men attached to the castles of the royal *ispánok* (the plural of *ispán*) for their defense and maintenance, much like the garrisons that guarded the castles in the document about Hugh of Lusignan and his lord (above, p. 190).

[5] In this period, the reeves (*villici* in Latin) were free peasants in charge of enforcing some laws.

[6] The observance of three days' fast during the weeks following Ash Wednesday, Pentecost, the Exaltation of the Holy Cross, and the feast of St. Lucy was widespread in the Carolingian realm and, as we see here, adopted in Hungary.

11. THE OBSERVANCE OF FRIDAY.
If someone eats meat on Friday, a day observed by all Christianity, he shall fast incarcerated during the day for a week.

12. THOSE WHO DIE WITHOUT CONFESSION.
If someone has such a hardened heart—God forbid it to any Christian—that he does not want to confess his faults according to the counsel of a priest, he shall lie without any divine service and alms like an infidel. If his relatives and neighbors fail to summon the priest, and therefore he should die unconfessed, prayers and alms should be offered, but his relatives shall wash away their negligence by fasting in accordance with the judgment of the priests. Those who die a sudden death shall be buried with all ecclesiastical honor, for divine judgment is hidden from us and unknown.

13. THE OBSERVANCES OF CHRISTIANITY.
If someone neglects a Christian observance and takes pleasure in the stupidity of his negligence, he shall be judged by the bishops according to the nature of the offense and the discipline of the canons.[1] If he rebelliously objects to suffer the punishment with equanimity, he shall be subject to the same judgment seven times over. If, after all this, he continues to resist and remains obdurate, he shall be handed over for royal judgment, namely to the defender of Christianity.[2]

14. ON HOMICIDE.
If someone driven by anger and arrogance, willfully commits a homicide, he should know that according to the decrees of our [royal] council he is obliged to pay one hundred ten gold *pensae*,[3] from which fifty will go to the royal treasury, another fifty will be given to relatives, and ten will be paid to arbiters and mediators. The killer himself shall fast according to the rules of the canons.

MORE ON THE SAME.
If someone kills a person by chance, he shall pay twelve *pensae* and fast as the canons command.

THE KILLING OF SLAVES.
If someone's slave kills another's slave, the payment shall be a slave for a slave, or he may be redeemed and do penance as has been said.

MORE ON THE SAME.
If a freeman kills the slave of another, he shall replace him with another slave or pay his price, and fast according to the canons.

15. THOSE WHO KILL THEIR WIVES.
If an *ispán* with a hardened heart and a disregard for his soul—may such remain far from the hearts of the faithful—defiles himself by killing his wife, he shall make his peace with fifty steers[4] to the kindred of the woman, according to the decree of the royal council, and fast according to the commands of the canons. And if a warrior or a man of wealth commits the same crime he shall pay according to that same council ten steers and fast, as has been said. And if a commoner has committed the same crime, he shall make his peace with five steers to the kindred and fast.

16. DRAWING THE SWORD.
In order that peace should remain firm and unsullied among the greater and the lesser of whatever station, we forbid anyone to draw the sword with the aim of injury. If anyone in his audacity should put this prohibition to the test, let him be killed by the same sword.

17. ON PERJURY.
If a powerful man of stained faith and defiled heart be found guilty of breaking his oath by perjury, he shall atone for the perjury with the loss of his hand; or he may redeem it with fifty steers. If a commoner commits perjury, he shall be punished with the loss of his hand or may redeem it by twelve steers and fast, as the canons command.

18. ON MANUMISSION.
If anyone, prompted by mercy, should set his male and female slaves free in front of witnesses, we decree that no one out of ill will shall reduce them to servitude after his

[1] This chapter in fact authorizes the introduction of canon (Church) law into Hungary.

[2] The "defender of Christianity" was Stephen himself.

[3] The *pensa auri* was a gold coin equivalent to the contemporary Byzantine gold *solidus*.

[4] Steers were valued at one gold *pensa* each; hence fifty oxen, that is fifty *pensa*, here reflect the cost of legal compensation for the death of a woman by a man of the *ispán* class.

death. If, however, he promised them freedom but died intestate, his widow and sons shall have the power to bear witness to this same manumission and to render *agape*[1] for the redemption of the husband's soul, if they wish.

19. GATHERING AT CHURCH AND THOSE WHO MUTTER OR CHATTER DURING MASS.

If some persons, upon coming to church to hear the divine service mutter among themselves and disturb others by relating idle tales during the celebration of mass and by being inattentive to Holy Scripture with its ecclesiastical nourishment, they shall be expelled from the church in disgrace if they are older, and if they are younger and common folk they shall be bound in the narthex of the church[2] in view of everyone and punished by whipping and by the shearing off of their hair.

20. INADMISSIBILITY OF ACCUSATIONS AND TESTIMONY OF BONDMEN OR BONDWOMEN AGAINST THEIR MASTERS OR MISTRESSES.

In order that the people of this kingdom may be far removed and remain free from the affronts and accusations of bondmen and bondwomen, it is wholly forbidden by decree of the royal council that any servile person be accepted in accusation or testimony against their masters or mistresses in any criminal case.

21. THOSE WHO PROCURE LIBERTY FOR BONDMEN OF OTHERS.

If anyone thoughtlessly brings the bondman of another, without the knowledge of his master, before the king or before persons of higher birth and dignity in order to procure for him the benefits of liberty after he has been released from the yoke of servitude, he should know that if he is rich, he shall pay fifty steers of which forty are owed to the king and ten to the master of the bondman, but if he is poor and of low rank, he shall pay twelve steers of which ten are due to the king and two to the master of the bondman.

22. THOSE WHO ENSLAVE FREEMEN.

Because it is worthy of God and best for men that everyone should conduct his life in the vigor of liberty, it is established by royal decree that henceforth no *ispán* or warrior should dare to reduce a freeman to servitude. If, however, compelled by his own rashness he should presume to do this, he should know that he shall pay from his own possessions the same composition, which shall be properly divided between the king and the *ispánok*, as in the other decree above.

SIMILARLY ON THE SAME.

But if someone who was once held in servitude lives freely after having submitted to a judicial procedure[3] held to consider his liberty, he shall be content with enjoying his freedom, and the man who held him in servitude shall pay nothing.

23. THOSE WHO TAKE THE WARRIORS OF ANOTHER FOR THEMSELVES.

We wish that each lord have his own warriors and no one shall try to persuade a warrior to leave his longtime lord and come to him, since this is the origin of quarrels.

24. THOSE WHO TAKE GUESTS OF ANOTHER FOR THEMSELVES.[4]

If someone receives a guest with benevolence and decently provides him with support, the guest shall not leave his protector as long as he receives support according to their agreement, nor should he transfer his service to any other.

25. THOSE WHO ARE BEATEN WHILE LOOKING FOR THEIR OWN.

If a warrior or a bondman flees to another and he whose warrior or man has run away sends his agent to bring him back, and that agent is beaten and whipped by anyone, we decree in agreement with our magnates that he who gave the beating shall pay ten steers.

---

[1] The *agape* was a memorial meal shared by the manumitted (those released from slavery) or an offering made in memory of the dead.

[2] The entrance hall or porch.

[3] The "judicial procedure" refers to the ordeal by hot iron: the subject (in this case a person claiming to be free) must carry a hot iron for a few paces, and then put it down. His hand is bandaged. After three days, the wound is inspected. If "clean," he is judged to have told the truth (or, in criminal cases, he is judged not guilty); if discolored or infected, he is judged to have lied.

[4] The "guests" were foreigners, most of whom were Western clerics and knights.

26. WIDOWS AND ORPHANS.

We also wish widows and orphans to be partakers of our law in the sense that if a widow, left with her sons and daughters, promises to support them and to remain with them as long as she lives, she shall have the right from us to do so, and no one should force her to marry. If she has a change of heart and wants to marry and leave the orphans, she shall have nothing from the goods of the orphans except her own clothing.[1]

MORE ABOUT WIDOWS.

If a widow without a child promises to remain unmarried in her widowhood, she shall have the right to all her goods and may do with them what she wishes. But after her death her goods shall go to the kin of her husband, if she has any, and if not, the king is the heir.

27. THE ABDUCTION OF GIRLS.

If any warrior debased by lewdness abducts a girl to be his wife without the consent of her parents, we decree that the girl should be returned to her parents, even if he raped her, and the abductor shall pay ten steers for the abduction, although he may afterwards have made peace with the girl's parents. If a poor man who is a commoner should attempt this, he shall compensate for the abduction with five steers.

28. THOSE WHO FORNICATE WITH BONDWOMEN OF ANOTHER.

In order that freemen preserve their liberty undefiled, we wish to warn them. Any transgressor who fornicates with a bondwoman of another, should know that he has committed a crime, and he is to be whipped for the first offense. If he fornicates with her a second time, he should be whipped and shorn; but if he does it a third time, he shall become a slave together with the woman, or he may redeem himself. If, however, the bondwoman should conceive by him and not be able to bear but dies in childbirth, he shall make compensation for her with another bondwoman.

THE FORNICATION OF BONDMEN.

If a bondman of one master fornicates with the bondwoman of another, he should be whipped and shorn, and if the woman should conceive by him and dies in childbirth, the man shall be sold and half of his price shall be given to the master of the bondwoman, the other half shall be kept by the master of the bondman.

29. THOSE WHO DESIRE BONDWOMEN AS WIVES.

In order that no one who is recognized to be a freeman should dare commit this offense, we set forth what has been decreed in this royal council as a source of terror and caution so that if any freeman should choose to marry a bondwoman of another with her master's consent, he shall lose the enjoyment of his liberty and become a slave forever.

30. THOSE WHO FLEE THEIR WIVES BY LEAVING THE COUNTRY.

In order that people of both sexes may remain and flourish under fixed law and free from injury, we establish in this royal decree that if anyone in his impudence should flee the country out of loathing for his wife, she shall possess everything which her husband rightfully possessed, so long as she is willing to wait for her husband, and no one shall force her into another marriage. If she voluntarily wishes to marry, she may take her own clothing leaving behind other goods, and marry again. If her husband, hearing this, should return, he is not allowed to replace her with anyone else, except with the permission of the bishop.

31. THEFT COMMITTED BY WOMEN.

Because it is terrible and loathsome to all to find men committing theft, and even more so for women, it is ordained by the royal council, that if a married woman commits theft, she shall be redeemed by her husband, and if she commits the same offense a second time, she shall be redeemed again; but if she does it a third time, she shall be sold.

32. ARSON OF HOUSES.

If anyone sets a building belonging to another on fire out of enmity, we order that he replace the building and whatever household furnishings were destroyed by the fire, and also pay sixteen steers which are worth forty *solidi*.[2]

---

[1] Here women apparently did not have a right to their dower—the gift that a husband gave his new wife—after the death of their husbands, though in later laws that right was recognized.

[2] In this particular case, Bavarian silver *solidi* are meant; twenty-five of them were equal to a Byzantine gold *solidus*.

33. ON WITCHES.
If a witch is found, she shall be led, in accordance with the law of judgment into the church and handed over to the priest for fasting and instruction in the faith. After the fast she may return home. If she is discovered in the same crime a second time, she shall fast and after the fast she shall be branded with the keys of the church in the form of a cross on her bosom, forehead, and between the shoulders. If she is discovered on a third occasion, she shall be handed over to the judge [of the secular court].

34. ON SORCERERS.
So that the creatures of God may remain far from all injury caused by evil ones and may not be exposed to any harm from them—unless it be by the will of God who may even increase it—we establish by decree of the council a most terrible warning to magicians and sorcerers that no person should dare to subvert the mind of any man or to kill him by means of sorcery and magic. Yet in the future if a man or a woman dare to do this he or she shall be handed over to the person hurt by sorcery or to his kindred, to be judged according to their will. If, however, they are found practicing divination as they do in ashes or similar things, they shall be corrected with whips by the bishop.

35. THE INVASION OF HOUSES.
We wish that peace and unanimity prevail between great and small according to the Apostle: Be ye all of one accord, etc.,[1] and let no one dare attack another. For if there be any *ispán* so contumacious that after the decree of this common council he should seek out another at home in order to destroy him and his goods, and if the lord of the house is there and fights with him and is killed, the *ispán* shall be punished according to the law about drawing the sword.[2] If, however, the *ispán* shall fall, he shall lie without compensation. If he did not go in person but sent his warriors, he shall pay compensation for the invasion with one hundred steers. If, moreover, a warrior invades the courtyard and house of another warrior, he shall pay compensation for the invasion with ten steers. If a commoner invades the huts of those of similar station, he shall pay for the invasion with five steers.

4.14 Coming to terms with Catholic Poland: Thietmar of Merseburg, *Chronicle* (1013–1018). Original in Latin.

Poland, like Hungary, became a state in the wake of Moravia's collapse. Mieszko I (r.*c*.960–992) was the first leader to unite a region that was (roughly speaking) between the Oder and Vistula rivers. Baptized in 966, he expanded his duchy by taking advantage of Bohemian and German rivalries. In 990 or 991 he placed Poland under the direct protection of the pope. Mieszko's son and successor, Boleslaw the Brave (r.992–1025), maintained good relations with Emperor Otto III (r.996–1002) and helped him destabilize Bohemia, which was in the interest of both rulers. The major sources for this early history come not from Poland but from Germany. An example is the *Chronicle* of Thietmar of Merseburg (975–1018). Thietmar came from a prominent Saxon family. Educated in the classics and Christian texts at Magdeburg, Thietmar was (like Ruotger and his hero Bruno of Cologne, see below, p. 224) a product of the Ottonian Renaissance, groomed to serve the king as well as to preside in a high Church office. In 1009, he became bishop of Merseburg, a key bishopric created by the Ottonians to strengthen the empire's control over its eastern border. Thietmar wrote mainly about events in Germany, but he was well aware of what was happening in Poland and had strong opinions about it.

[1] See Phil. 2:2–4.

[2] See above, chapter 16 of this law code.

The passage below begins with the arrival in Poland of the body of Saint Adalbert (956–997). Born in Bohemia but educated, like Thietmar, at Magdeburg, Germany, Adalbert was made bishop of Prague in 983 but, clashing with factions there in 988, fled to Rome. After a stint in a monastery there, he made trips to Germany, Hungary, and Poland, benefiting from his excellent relations with the rulers in each place. In 997 he went as a missionary to Prussia, where he was martyred. His body was eagerly purchased as a precious relic by Boleslaw. When in the year 1000 Otto III came on pilgrimage to see those relics at Gniezno, Poland's capital city, Boleslaw orchestrated a synod that raised Gniezno to an archbishopric.

1. Why was a German bishop like Thietmar interested in Poland?
2. Why might you not believe Thietmar's description of the customs of Poland?

[Source: *Ottonian Germany: The Chronicon of Thietmar of Merseburg*, trans. David A. Warner (Manchester: Manchester University Press, 2001), pp. 171–72, 191–93, 361–63 (notes modified).]

4.28 In the beginning of the summer, Adalbert, bishop of the Bohemians, arrived. He had received the name Woyciech at his baptism, the other name, at his confirmation, from the archbishop of Magdeburg. He was educated in letters, in that same city.... As he was unable to separate his flock from the ancient error of wickedness through godly teaching, he excommunicated them all and came to Rome to justify himself before the pope. For a long time, with the pope's permission, he lived an exemplary life according to the strict rule of Abbot Boniface.[1] With the same pope's permission, he later tried to subdue the Prussians, their thoughts still estranged from Christ, with the bridle of holy preaching. On 23 April, pierced by a spear and beheaded, he alone received the best martyrdom, without a groan. This occurred just as he himself had seen it in a dream and had predicted to all the brothers, saying: "I thought I saw myself celebrating mass and communicating alone." Seeing that he had now died, the authors of this wicked crime increased both their wickedness and the vengeance of God by throwing the blessed body in the water. His head, however, they scornfully transfixed with a stake. They returned home in great joy. After learning of this, Boleslaw, Mieszko's son, immediately purchased both the martyr's celebrated body and his head. In Rome, after the emperor [Otto III] had been informed, he humbly offered praises to God because, during his lifetime, he had taken such a servant for himself through the palm of martyrdom....

4.55 I cannot place in its correct order everything that ought to be treated within the context of this book. In what follows, therefore, I will not be embarrassed to add a few recollections. Indeed, I rejoice in the change of pace much as the traveler who, because of its difficulty or perhaps from ignorance, leaves the course of the more direct road and sets out on some winding secondary path. Hence, I will relate the remaining deeds of Mieszko [I], the celebrated duke of the Poles, who has already been treated in some detail in the previous books. He took a noble wife from the region of Bohemia, the sister of Boleslaw the Elder. Her life corresponded to her name—she was called Dobrawa in Slavic, which, in German, means 'the good'. For this one, faithful to Christ, and realizing that her husband was mired in various heathen errors, turned her humble spirit to the task of binding him to the faith as well. She tried in every way to conciliate him, not because of the threefold appetite of this evil world but rather for the sake of the admirable and, to all the faithful, desirable fruit of future salvation.[2]

4.56 She sinned willingly for a while, that she might later be good for a long time. For during Lent, which closely followed her marriage, though she intended to offer an acceptable tithe to God by abstaining from meat and through the affliction of her body, her husband asked and tried to coax her into giving up her plan. She consented, thinking that he might therefore be more willing to listen

[1] That is, Adalbert spent time at the monastery of Santi Bonifacio e Alessio in Rome. That Boniface was a martyr saint of the early Church, not the English missionary of the eighth century.

[2] For the "three-fold" appetites, see 1 John 2:16.

to her on some other occasion. Some say that she only ate meat during a single Lenten period, others say three. Now, O reader, you have heard her sin, now also consider the attractive fruit of her pious will. She labored for the sake of her husband's conversion and was heard by the Creator in his kindness; and through his infinite goodness that most zealous persecutor came to his senses. After being admonished frequently by his beloved wife, he vomited out the poison of his unbelief and, in holy baptism, wiped away the stain of his birth. Immediately, members of his hitherto reluctant people followed their beloved head and lord and, after accepting the marriage garments, were numbered among the wards of Christ. Jordan, their first bishop, labored much with them, while he diligently invited them by word and deed to the cultivation of the heavenly vineyard. Then the couple rightly rejoiced, namely the man and the noble woman, and all who were subject to them rejoiced at their marriage in Christ. After this, the good mother gave birth to a son who was very different from her and the misfortune of many mothers. She named him Boleslaw [the Brave], after her brother. He first revealed his innate evil to her and then raged against his own flesh and blood, as I will reveal in the following.

4.57 But when his mother died [977], his father married Margrave Dietrich's daughter, a nun at the convent called Calbe, without the approval of the church. Oda was her name and great was her presumption. She rejected her celestial spouse in favor of a man of war, which displeased all the pastors of the church but most of all her own bishop, the venerable Hildeward.[1] But the welfare of the land, and the need to strengthen the peace, kept this from leading to a break; rather it provided a healthy and continuous incentive for reconciliation. For she increased the service of Christ in every way: many captives were returned to their homeland, prisoners were released from their chains, and the prisons of those who had been accused were opened. I hope that God will forgive her the magnitude of her sin, since such love of pious deeds was revealed in her. We read, however, that he who does not entirely abandon the evil he has begun, will try in vain to placate the Lord. She bore her husband three sons: Mieszko, Swentepulk and [...]. She passed her life there, highly honored, until her husband's death. She was beloved among those with whom she lived and useful to those from whom she had come.

4.58 But on 25 May, in the year of the Incarnation 992, in the tenth year of Otto III's kingship,[2] the aforementioned duke [Mieszko], now old and feverish, went from this place of exile to his homeland,[3] leaving his kingdom to be divided among many claimants. Yet, with fox-like cunning, his son Boleslaw unified it once more in the hands of one ruler, after he had expelled his stepmother and brothers, and had their familiars Odilien and Przibiwoj blinded. That he might be able to rule alone, he ignored both human and divine law. He married the daughter of Margrave Rikdag, but later sent her away and took a Hungarian woman as his wife. She bore him a son, named Bezprym, but he also sent her away. His third wife was Emnilde, a daughter of the venerable lord, Dobromir. Faithful to Christ, she formed her husband's unstable character completely for the better and strove unceasingly to wash away both of her sins through the generous dispersal of alms and abstinence. She bore two sons, Mieszko and another one whom the father named after his beloved lord.[4] She also produced three daughters of whom one was an abbess, the second married Count Herman, and the third the son of King Vladimir. I will say more about them later....

8.1 In the year 1018 of the Incarnation, in the second indiction, in the sixteenth year of Lord Henry's reign, and his fourth as emperor, the same Henry celebrated the Circumcision and Epiphany of the Lord in Frankfurt, with great solemnity.[5] On 25 January, Ezzelin the Lombard was granted his liberty. He had been held in custody for four years. Afterwards, on 30 January, Bishops Gero and Arnulf, the counts Herman and Dietrich, and the emperor's chancellor Frederick agreed to a sworn peace at the burg Bautzen. The agreement was made at the emperor's order and in response to Boleslaw's constant supplications. This was not as it should have been, however. Rather, it was the best that could be accomplished under the circumstances. In the company of a select group of hostages, the aforesaid lords returned. After four days,

[1] A nun was supposed to be married to Christ and thus could not take another husband.

[2] In fact, the ninth year.

[3] I.e., he died.

[4] Referring to Otto III.

[5] Thietmar here refers to Emperor Henry II (r.1014–1024), the successor of Otto III.

Oda, Margrave Ekkehard's daughter, whom Boleslaw had long desired, was escorted to Zützen by Otto, the duke's son.[1] When they arrived, they were greeted by a large crowd of men and women, and by many burning lamps, since it was night-time. Contrary to the authority of the canons, Oda married the duke after Septuagesima.[2] Until now, she has lived outside the law of matrimony and thus in a manner worthy only of a marriage such as this one.

8.2 In her husband's kingdom, the customs are many and varied. They are also harsh, but occasionally quite praiseworthy. The populace must be fed like cattle and punished as one would a stubborn ass. Without severe punishment, the prince cannot put them to any useful purpose. If anyone in this land should presume to abuse a foreign matron and thereby commit fornication, the act is immediately avenged through the following punishment. The guilty party is led on to the market bridge, and his scrotum is affixed to it with a nail. Then, after a sharp knife has been placed next to him, he is given the harsh choice between death or castration. Furthermore, anyone found to have eaten meat after Septuagesima is severely punished, by having his teeth knocked out. The law of God, newly introduced in these regions, gains more strength from such acts of force than from any fast imposed by the bishops. There are also other customs, by far inferior to these, which please neither God nor the inhabitants, and are useful only as a means to inspire terror. To some extent, I have alluded to these above. I think that it is unnecessary for me to say any more about this man whose name and manner of life, if it please Almighty God, might better have remained concealed from us. That his father and he were joined to us, through marriage and great familiarity, has produced results so damaging that any good preceding them is far outweighed, and so it will remain in the future. During false periods of peace, Boleslaw may temporarily regard us with affection. Nevertheless, through all kinds of secret plots, he constantly attempts to sow dissension, diminish our inborn freedom, and, if time and place permit, rise up and destroy us.

8.3 In the days of his father,[3] when he still embraced heathenism, every woman followed her husband on to the funeral pyre, after first being decapitated. If a woman was found to be a prostitute, moreover, she suffered a particularly wretched and shameful penalty. The skin around her genitals was cut off and this 'foreskin', if we may call it that, was hung on the door so that anyone who entered would see it and be more concerned and prudent in the future. The law of the Lord declares that such a woman should be stoned, and the rules of our ancestors would require her beheading.[4] Nowadays, the freedom to sin dominates everywhere and to a degree that is not right or normal. And so it is not just a large number of frustrated girls who engage in adultery, having been driven by the desire of the flesh to harmful lust, but even some married women and, indeed, with their husbands still living. As if this were not enough, such women then have their husbands murdered by the adulterer, inspiring the deed through furtive hints. After this, having given a wicked example to others, they receive their lovers quite openly and sin at will. They repudiate their legal lord in a most horrible fashion and prefer his retainer, as if the latter were sweet Abro or mild Jason.[5] Nowadays, because a harsh penalty is not imposed, I fear that many will find this new custom more and more acceptable. O you priests of the Lord, forcefully rise up and let nothing stop you! Take a sharp ploughshare and extirpate this newly sprouted weed, down to the roots! You also, lay people, do not give aid to such as these! May those joined in Christ live innocently and, after these supplanters have been rooted out, forever groan in shame. Unless these sinners return to their senses, may our helper, Christ, destroy them with a powerful breath from his holy mouth and scatter them with the great splendor of his second coming.[6]

---

[1] This Oda was Boleslaw's fourth wife.

[2] Septuagesima was supposed to inaugurate a period of fasting before Easter and was therefore not an appropriate time to celebrate a marriage.

[3] I.e., in the days of Mieszko I.

[4] For the "law of the Lord," see John 8:5.

[5] Abro was a rich ancient Greek proverbially known for high living; Jason was the mythological leader of the Argonauts.

[6] For the image of the Lord slaying sinners with his breath, see 2 Thess. 2:8.

4.15 Poland's self-image: *Boleslaw's Coin* (992–1000).

Although we have few written sources from tenth-century Poland, we do have material sources, including this coin, which was issued by Boleslaw the Brave (r.992–1025) either right after 992, when he ousted his half brothers and ascended to rulership, or around the year 1000, when Emperor Otto III met Boleslaw at Gniezno and the city was established as an archbishopric. In the emperor's eyes, Boleslaw was subservient to Germany. But Boleslaw clearly had other ideas about himself. His coin shows him (on the obverse) in profile, like a Roman emperor. He wears a helmet with earflaps, cultivating a martial image. On the other side of the coin (reverse) is a cross, proclaiming his Christian religion, and the Latin inscription reads "Gnezdun civitas" (City of Gniezno), elevating the status of his chief city to a Christian center (whether or not the coin was struck after Gniezno was declared an archbishopric by Otto).

See Plate 2, "Reading through Looking," p. III, for a color reproduction of the coin.

1. Why is a coin a good way for a ruler to advertise himself?
2. Why did a Polish king consider a Roman emperor to be a good model for his own self image?

[From the collection of the National Museum in Kraków]

4.16 Kievan Rus': *The Russian Primary Chronicle* (*c.*1113, incorporating earlier materials). Original in Russian.

The Russian Primary Chronicle is one of the earliest sources that we have for Russian history. Composed *c.*1113 by an anonymous monk of the Crypt Monastery near Kiev, it was clearly tied to the history of the princes of Kiev. In the excerpt below, Kievan Prince Yaroslav the Wise (r.1019–1054) is portrayed as following the model of the Christian ruler, especially the Byzantine emperor, even to the point of naming the church that he founded "St. Sophia," after Hagia Sophia, the church built by Justinian at Constantinople. Russian dates counted the years from the time of the Creation, a system that followed the Byzantine dating system. In parentheses are the corresponding dates CE.

1. In what ways did Rus' imitate Byzantium?
2. In what ways was Rus' like Poland and Hungary, even though its Christianity did not come from Rome?

[Source: *The Russian Primary Chronicle: Laurentian Text*, trans. and ed. Samuel Hazzard Cross and Olgerd P. Sherbowitz-Wetzor (Cambridge, MA: Medieval Academy of America, 1953), pp. 136–38 (slightly modified).]

6544 (1036) Thereafter Yaroslav assumed the entire sovereignty, and was the sole ruler in the land of Rus'. Yaroslav went to Novgorod, where he set up his son Vladimir as prince, and appointed Zhidyata bishop.[1] At this time, a son was born to Yaroslav, and he named him Vyacheslav. While Yaroslav was still at Novgorod, news came to him that the Pechenegs were besieging Kiev.[2] He then collected a large army of Varangians[3] and Slavs, returned to Kiev, and entered his city. The Pechenegs were innumerable. Yaroslav made a sally from the city and marshaled his forces, placing the Varangians in the center, the men of Kiev on the right flank, and the men of Novgorod on the left. When they had taken position before the city, the Pechenegs advanced, and they met on the spot where the metropolitan church of St. Sophia now stands. At that time, as a matter of fact, there were fields outside the city. The combat was fierce, but toward evening Yaroslav with difficulty won the upper hand. The Pechenegs fled in various directions, but as they did not know in what quarter to flee, they were drowned, some in the Setoml',[4] some in other streams, while the remnant of them disappeared from that day to this. In the same year, Yaroslav imprisoned his brother Sudislav in Pskov because he had been slanderously accused.

6545 (1037). Yaroslav built the great citadel at Kiev, near which stands the Golden Gate. He founded also the metropolitan Church of St. Sophia, the Church of the Annunciation over the Golden Gate, and also the Monastery of St. George and the convent of St. Irene. During his reign, the Christian faith was fruitful and multiplied, while the number of monks increased, and new monasteries came into being. Yaroslav loved religious establishments and was devoted to priests, especially to monks. He applied himself to books, and read them continually day and night. He assembled many scribes, and translated from Greek into Slavic. He wrote and collected many books through which true believers are instructed and enjoy religious education. For as one man plows the land, and another sows, and still others reap and eat food in abundance, so did this prince. His father Vladimir[5] plowed and harrowed the soil when he enlightened Rus' through baptism, while this prince sowed the hearts of the faithful with the written word, and we in turn reap the harvest by receiving the teaching of books. For great is the profit from book-learning.

Through the medium of books, we are shown and taught the way of repentance, for we gain wisdom and continence from the written word. Books are like rivers that water the whole earth; they are the springs of wisdom. For books have an immeasurable depth; by them we are consoled in sorrow. They are the bridle of self-restraint. For great is wisdom. As Solomon said in its praise, "I (wisdom) have inculcated counsel; I have summoned reason and prudence. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom. Mine are counsel, wisdom, constancy, and strength. Through me kings rule, and the mighty decree justice. Through me are princes magnified and the oppressors possess the earth. I love them that love me, and they who seek me shall find grace."[6] If you seek wisdom attentively in books, you obtain great profit for your

[1] The first bishop of Novgorod died in 1030 after designating his successor. Yaroslav, however, insisted on Luka Zhidyata, who presided over the see from 1036 to 1055.

[2] The Pechenegs were a Turkic nomadic people who in the tenth century occupied the region between the Don and the Danube but, squeezed by other nomadic groups and the expanding Byzantines and Rus, raided into Rus' only to be repulsed by Yaroslav.

[3] The Varangians were the Scandinavian settlers of Rus'.

[4] The Setoml' was a small stream in Kiev.

[5] Saint Vladimir I (r.*c.*980–1015) converted to Christianity under the influence of Byzantine emperor Basil II, took the baptismal name of Basil, and married Basil's sister.

[6] Prov. 8:12, 13, 14–17.

spirit. He who reads books often converses with God or with holy men. If one possesses the words of the prophets, the teachings of the evangelists and the apostles, and the lives of the holy fathers, his soul will derive great profit therefrom. Thus Yaroslav, as we have said, was a lover of books, and as he wrote many, he deposited them in the Church of Saint Sophia which he himself had founded. He adorned it with gold and silver and churchly vessels, and in it the usual hymns are raised to God at the customary seasons. He founded other churches in the cities and districts, appointing priests and paying them out of his personal fortune. He bade them teach the people, since that is the duty which God has prescribed them, and to go often into the churches. Priests and Christian laymen thus increased in number. Yaroslav rejoiced to see the multitude of his churches and of his Christian subjects, but the devil was afflicted, since he was now conquered by this new Christian nation.

6546 (1038). Yaroslav attacked the Yatvingians.[1]
6547 (1039). The Church of the Blessed Virgin, which had been founded by Vladimir, Yaroslav's father, was consecrated by the Metropolitan Theopemptos.
6548 (1040). Yaroslav attacked Lithuania.
6549 (1041). Yaroslav attacked the Mazovians by boat.

NORTHERN EUROPE

4.17 An Ottonian courtier-bishop: Ruotger, *Life of Bruno, Archbishop of Cologne* (late 960s). Original in Latin.

Bruno (925–965) was the youngest of the three sons of King Henry I of Saxony (r.919–936). Destined from an early age for the Church, Bruno first studied in Utrecht, a city in the present-day Netherlands. In the tenth century Utrecht was part of Lotharingia, a turbulent territory that Henry occupied the year Bruno was born. In his teens, Bruno was summoned by his brother, Henry's successor Otto I (r.936–973), to be a member of the royal court. The court had no fixed capital; rather, the king and his entourage were constantly on the move. In effect, the king ruled on horseback! Bruno continued his studies as he met learned people across his brother's realm. At age twenty-eight, he became archbishop of Cologne, in Lotharingia, and a few months later Otto made him duke of Lotharingia, the highest civilian authority there, amidst a rebellion against Otto. Bruno served his brother as general and chief administrator of Lotharingia while he served the Church as archbishop of Cologne, pastor, and reformer, until his death at the age of forty.

By contrast, little is known about Bruno's biographer Ruotger. He was a monk in Cologne; from comments in the *Life of Bruno*, it is clear that he knew Bruno personally. Certainly, Ruotger was staggeringly learned, likely a member of Bruno's intellectual circle, and perhaps his student. Besides more than twenty biblical citations or echoes, the excerpts from the *Life of Bruno* below include allusions to eight pagan Roman authors, nine Latin Christian authors, mentions of the pagan Roman orator and statesman Cicero (106–43 BCE) and Christian Latin poet Prudentius (348–after 405), and a paraphrase of the Roman historian Sallust (86–35/34 BCE). Highly conscientious, Ruotger produced a reliable account of a prince who was unique: at one and the same time a courtier, a warrior, and an archbishop.

[1] The Yatvingians were a Lithuanian people. Attacks on them and on Lithuania and the Mazovians (below) were evidently designed both to protect the northwest flank of Rus' and to keep open access to eastern Poland, on which Yaroslav made claim.

1. What was the nature of Bruno's education and how did it compare with the education of a Muslim child described by al-Qabisi (above, p. 210)?
2. How did Ruotger justify the warlike activities of Bishop Bruno?

[Source: *Ruotgers Lebensbeschreibung des Erzbischofs Bruno von Köln* (*Ruotgeri Vita Brunonis Archiepiscopi Coloniensis*), ed. Irene Ott, Monumenta Germaniae Historica, Scriptores rerum Germanicarum, Nova series, 10 (Cologne: Böhlau-Verlag, 1958), pp. 3–4, 5–7, 11, 20–21, 23–24, 31–32, 33–34, 38–39, 55. Translated and introduced by Bruce L. Venarde.]

2. ... He was born in the time when his father, the glorious king Henry, was very zealously rebuilding what had been destroyed after he had quelled the ferocity of the barbarians and subdued the menace of civil strife.[1] Now at last Henry ruled a willing people with the reins of justice and, now at last, amidst a most secure and long-awaited peace. Thus the time of Bruno's birth already heralded, as it were, the future signs of his good will. For since he always approached every good thing very vigorously, he very carefully sought out the gift of peace as the nourishment and adornment of other virtues, because he knew it would benefit all good things. In tranquil times, virtues can be nourished and strengthened. Then in any disturbance, they will not allow a man to be weakened in the force of his power....

4. When he was about four years old, the noble progeny of kings was sent to Utrecht and to the venerable Bishop Baldric (who still survives) to be steeped in study of the liberal arts.[2] There, while he progressed as befits a boy of good character, with excellent discipline and according to a wise nature, at long last, as if by a considerable siege on the hateful tyranny of the Normans,[3] churches and other buildings of which scarcely ruins had survived were restored on this occasion.

Thus he passed through no stage of his life without benefit to the holy Church of God. Through him, although he did not know it yet, the Christian populace, freed from its enemies, rejoiced in the praise of God. When he had learned the first rudiments of grammar—as we often heard from him as he meditated on the glory of the almighty God—next he began to read the poet Prudentius as taught by his master.[4] Because Prudentius is catholic in faith and purpose, outstanding in eloquence and truth, and most elegant in the variety of his meters and his books, such sweetness was so immediately pleasing to the taste of Bruno's heart that he drank in with greater eagerness than can be described not only knowledge of the external words but also the marrow of inner meaning and its purest nectar, if I may put it that way.

After that there was nearly no type of liberal study in Greek or Latin that escaped the vitality of his genius. Never, which is unusual, did great riches or the abundance of clamoring crowds or the approach of any other bother turn his spirit from this noble leisure. Perpetual meditation and tireless eagerness for mental exercise testified to the purity of his heart, since already nearly all disposition of this sort became habit, as it is written: "A boy is known from his inclinations, if his behavior is pure and righteous" [Prov. 20:11]. It reached the point that just as he did not allow the fire of his soul to be put out by the idleness and frivolity of others nor be corrupted by empty and unnecessary conversation, he bore it very sorrowfully if the books he was studying or any that were in his sight were carelessly handled or creased or treated in any way with too little attention. Indeed, he considered that nothing that pertained to him should be neglected since indeed, as Solomon says, "He who neglects the small things dies little by little" [Eccles. 19:1].

[1] The "barbarians" are the Vikings, who had frequently raided Utrecht and its vicinity. A less partisan description of civil strife would emphasize the struggles King Henry had in establishing full authority in Lotharingia.

[2] Bishop Baldric of Utrecht, a relative of Bruno's mother, lived for several years after the composition of Ruotger's account; he was bishop from 918 to 975! Utrecht was a center of learning.

[3] I.e., the Vikings (Norsemen).

[4] The Spanish poet Prudentius was a highly placed imperial official who withdrew to the ascetic life in his forties. It was during this period that he wrote the Christian epics for which he was best known, including the *Psychomachia*, an allegory of the duels between personified virtues and vices.

5. After his father, Henry, who had founded and pacified his realm to the last detail, went the way of all flesh, his first-born son Otto, blessed by the Lord and anointed with the oil of happiness, with the full will and consent of his chief men began to reign in the 188th lustrum and the 63rd cycle of the indiction since the birth of our lord Jesus Christ.[1] Otto was a man on whom the spirit of God had conferred a gift of singular truthfulness and faithfulness. If I promised that I would catalogue his virtues, I would take too much on myself and be tolerated little, for praise and glory owed him exceed whatever eloquence Cicero himself might offer. Otto honorably called his brother Bruno, dedicated to God, still a youth but as if an equal, from the schools to his court, a place fitting for such a bright mirror where whatever was unseemly in almost the whole world showed itself more clearly through studies.[2] From all of Otto's borders came everything that seemed important. Likewise, all harassed by any accusation sought this sole refuge [Otto's court]. For there presided a model of wisdom, piety, and justice beyond human memory. Returning from the court, those who just before had seemed to themselves very learned, blushingly approached the rudiments of the liberal arts as if saying, "Now I begin." When nothing stirred on the left side of the breast, he thereafter modestly abstained from that high tribunal, so to speak.[3] The Lord filled this his vessel with the spirit of wisdom and thoughtfulness. It did not suffice to him to gather what he had ready at hand in the treasury of his own heart; he additionally considered foreign puzzles, and whatever philosophic matter he thought remote from earthly understanding he drew forth from wherever it came. He unveiled the seven liberal arts long forgotten. Whatever historians, orators, poets, and philosophers trumpeted was the great new thing he examined with great diligence along with teachers of whatever language it was in, and there where a master exceled in genius, he humbly offered himself as a student....

11. Then Wicfrid,[4] shepherd of the holy church of Cologne, for a long time quite feeble, yet faithful to the majesty of the kingdom and fatherland, at last returning his exhausted body to earth, was joined with heavenly spirits. The people, deprived of a shepherd, in grief chose for consolation, neither ambivalently nor wavering among candidates, the one solely hoped for: Lord Bruno, a splendid and most experienced man, following the counsel of great men and the whole clergy.[5] Youthful in body, he was mature in habits, humble and gentle despite the greatest nobility, at the height of his wisdom, which had taught him not to think himself wiser than is fitting to think, but wise in measure. Sparing of himself in his royal affluence, he was a rich man to his friends....

20. The emperor, disturbed about this event,[6] so sudden and unforeseen, and grieving more for the misery of its citizens than his own loss, lifted the siege of Mainz, having finally gotten the treaty he wanted. Turning from his camp toward the east along with those he knew to be loyal, Otto decided quickly to make a plan for the region he was leaving [i.e., Lotharingia] and made his brother [Bruno] the guardian and supervisor in the west, an archduke, so to speak, in such dangerous times. He gave him these orders. [The king said to Bruno,] "How much I rejoice, my dearest brother, that we have always understood matters as one and the same, and that it cannot be said we ever had different desires in any matter. It is the thing that greatly comforts me most of all in bitter times: I see royal priesthood, by the grace of almighty God, come into our kingdom. Both priestly religion and royal power are mighty in you, in that you know how to give everyone his due, which is justice, and you are able to withstand the dread and deceit of enemies, which is power and justice. For a long time now you have investigated the very mother of the liberal arts and truly its virtue, philosophy, which has trained you in modesty and greatness of spirit...."

---

[1] Ruotger's dating method, which derived from ancient Rome, refers only to a range of years. The precise date is July 2, 936.

[2] The summons was in 939 or 940, when Bruno was a teenager. Otto's itinerant court allowed Bruno to travel widely during the next dozen or so years. The unseemliness here apparently refers to poor Latin, since the rest of the paragraph focuses on Bruno's intellectual pursuits, as teacher and learner, while a member of his brother's entourage.

[3] The right side of the breast is the seat of wisdom; here Ruotger is paraphrasing the Latin poet Juvenal. The meaning appears to be that if a line of study did not seem fruitful for him, he left it to others.

[4] Archbishop of Cologne (r.924–953).

[5] Bruno became archbishop of Cologne in 953.

[6] Bruno was elected amidst a rebellion against Otto I led by his son Liudolf and Duke Conrad (duke since 944 and also Otto's son-in-law), as described in chapters 18 and 19, omitted here. Chapter 20 picks up with Otto besieging rebels in Mainz. Although Otto did not take the title of emperor until 962, Ruotger calls him such retrospectively.

23. Some people ignorant of divine will may object: why did a bishop assume public office and the dangers of war when he had undertaken only the care of souls? If they understand any sane matter, the result itself will easily satisfy them, when they see a great and very unaccustomed (especially in their homelands) gift of peace spread far and wide through this guardian and teacher of a faithful people, lest in this matter those objecting further stumble around in darkness where there is no light. Nor was governing this world new or unusual for rectors of the holy Church, previous examples of which, if someone needs them, are at hand. But we, moving on to other things, leave it to the judgment of each what he wants to say concerning this pious man, in the knowledge that nobody of sound mind would strive to blacken the most evident blessing with the curse of reproach. Everything that Bruno did was honorable and useful for our republic.[1] In his deeds he by no means had as object that by gaining favor, news of his actions should fly through the mouths of men, but rather he lived this way: he regulated all his works before men so that they would be a horror to the worst and a reward for the best. He made it clear to all that in the episcopate he sought a good work, in which he could not easily be censured by the hostile and jealous, but that it worked even more to his credit that he displeased such people. Therefore, engaged in this wonderful occupation, the ever watchful manager of the highest head of the household and chief priest, bearing in his hands a burning lamp, namely an example of good work, he led some willing and dragged others unwilling to the ways of God....

31. Bruno gathered from everywhere the bodies of the saints and relics and other kinds of monuments in order to increase protection for his people and by means of this glory spread the glory of the Lord among peoples near and far. He arranged places and service for them very copiously, at great expense and in great sumptuousness, concerning each of which many things could be said if my promised brevity would allow it. These are signs of invincible faith, through which he sought not what was his but what was Jesus Christ's. Everyone knows with what care, fervor, and joy he brought the staff and chain of St. Peter to Cologne, the former from Metz and the latter from Rome. In honor of St. Peter, he wondrously expanded his most honorable house, which he changed from beautiful to very beautiful.[2] ...

33. Meanwhile, in many places in the parishes of his diocese, this faithful and wise servant of the Lord built churches, monasteries and other buildings suited for the service of his one lord God and in honor of God's saints. Certain other structures already founded he enlarged and others long ruined he restored. With the foreseeing skill of his nature, he placed in each one those who would serve almighty God by the rule of canonical life, and in so doing generously provided for them, lest anything be lacking to carry out this way of life.[3] The memorials of his work and most salutary zeal, lasting as the air, remain fixed in place where he put them, so that for the praise and glory of Jesus Christ the memory of such a great man never suffer a time of obscurity. He poured out the same effort for foreign people; in the kingdom entrusted to his wisdom he provided sometimes by example, sometimes through his works, sometimes through qualities in other people and in repeated exhortation.[4] He did not allow any of his people to be occupied in vain or be inactive in lazy leisure, specifying, as he often said, that a lazy beast ought to be blocked from the trough and that according to the apostle [Paul], he who does not work does not eat [see 2 Thess. 3:10]. All the good things he did, taught, and loved cannot be written out one by one. So much material would remain for those attending to it that they would quickly leave off in exhaustion before finishing what they had undertaken. In preaching the word of God and in the subtlety of his debates concerning the truth of the scriptures, we can marvel at such and so great a man, but we cannot sum him up....

37. The merciful shepherd Bruno, champion of truth, sower of the Gospel, with the greatest care sought out zealous and diligent men who would keep watch over the republic, in loyalty and strength, each in his own place. He took great care that neither advice nor resources would be lacking to them. At Bruno's most beneficial urgings, all the princes and regional chiefs and others who had to do with the interests of the kingdom agreed to treaties in full

[1] Ruotger does not distinguish between kingdom and republic, which in the Roman tradition he knew so well meant simply "public sphere."

[2] That is, the cathedral of Cologne, which was dedicated to St. Peter. The chain was from Peter's imprisonment in Rome before his execution.

[3] The canonical rule was *The Benedictine Rule*, for which see p. 20.

[4] Bruno's rebuilding, reforming, and evangelizing efforts, then, went beyond his diocese and into other parts of Lotharingia.

faith for the common good of the property of all people. He considered them among the highest men and his intimates, and especially won over his brother the emperor to them, thinking—not foolishly—about a maxim of a wise man: "A good man gets slower when you ignore him, but a bad one is made more wicked." He cherished above all with great honor Archbishop Henry of Trier, a man of great merit and the highest integrity, who succeeded the great prelate Ruotbert, who died during a serious epidemic at Cologne when the emperor, too, was there; and also William of Mainz, an archbishop of most brilliant and agreeable excellence, Bruno's nephew and successor to Frederick: both of them outstanding men, both wholly trained in the Lord's law, both closely connected in friendship, the one through blood relation to the emperor, the other for his integrity.[1] Bruno often turned for advice to these two very illustrious men, so wise and religious and learned in all the good arts, lest he alone chance to stray anywhere off the path of truth, as is the way in human affairs. We saw them together with him not only in reading, counsel, and debate, but even in the line of battle, caring for good not only before God but before men. For there was in the western parts of Lotharingia a nearly untamable barbarism, which seemed a race of the church, begrudging the salvation of others no less than their own, scornful of gentle paternal admonition, nearly without fear of power.[2] Had they been allowed their own judgment, they would have seemed evil to their own and the worst thing for themselves. Bruno before all things practiced a forethoughtful way of governing, so that according to the nature of times and places, he pondered the rule of our very wise emperor in the elevation of shepherds for the peace and harmony of the Lord's flock.[3] He preferred those who understood several matters fully: a shepherd's duty, the vice of hirelings, the taking up of ministry, and what should be done or hoped for in this service. Some, like richly dyed curtains, would adorn the interiors of the Lord's house and others, like hair shirts, would guard against the violence of external storms....

49. [A lament for the now deceased Bruno]

Hearts, pour out prayers, send forth tearful words
Behold the father of his fatherland shut up in stone.
Royal stock to be remembered in all lands,
Bruno the peacemaker, a good and pious man.
Archbishop whose seat was famed Cologne,
He seemed dear to all good people everywhere.
His long-lasting light struck out against foul darkness.
The envious tongue falls silent; only true praise satisfies.
This world was not worthy of so rare a gift:
Taken from this world's shortcomings, he now rejoices in the company of the Lord.
On the ides of October in his twelfth year as bishop[4]
He gave up this life, hope his loving companion.

4.18 Law: King Æthelred II, *Law Code* (1008). Original in Old English.

Written law codes were, among other things, a way for early medieval kings to signal that their realms were part of the "Roman" tradition. That is why *The Theodosian Code* (see above, p. 4) was of enduring importance. Although these codes were drawn up to seem timeless, they were very much products of local conditions and circumstances. Æthelred II the Unready's reign (978–1016) was beset by Viking invasions (see *The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* below, p. 233) and internal feuds. The nickname "Unready" came from the

[1] Cologne, Trier, and Mainz were the seats of the three archbishops of Lotharingia. Ruotbert was Bruno and Otto's uncle, and William was the natural son of Otto and thus Bruno's nephew. Frederick was archbishop of Mainz from 937 to 954, not unstintingly loyal to Otto, which explains why Otto's son succeeded him.

[2] That is, they were nominally Christians but so savage and destructive to themselves and others as to be Christians in name only.

[3] This sentence refers to Bruno's consultation with Otto about the appointment of bishops in the cities of western Lotharingia.

[4] I.e., October 15, 965.

Anglo-Saxon word *unræd*, meaning "no-counsel." Despite the disorder, Æthelred's code was, as it says, issued with the approval of his "ecclesiastical and lay councilors." In fact, one of those councilors was the most distinguished churchman of his age, Archbishop Wulfstan of York (r.1002–1023), whose handwriting may be detected in several of the entries in the manuscripts of this code. Inspired by Roman legal models, this law code was written up in two languages: Latin and Old English (or Anglo-Saxon). This, too reflected local conditions: on the Continent, such codes were written only in Latin, but in the British Isles, the spoken language had prestige as well.

1. What evidence can you find in this code of military crisis?
2. What concerns were common to both Æthelred's code and the roughly contemporary law code of King Stephen of Hungary (above, p. 213)?

[Source: *English Historical Documents*, vol. 1: *c.*500–1042, ed. Dorothy Whitelock, 2nd ed. (London: Routledge, 1979), pp. 442–46 (slightly modified).]

PROLOGUE. This is the ordinance which the king of the English and both ecclesiastical and lay councilors have approved and decreed.

1. First, namely, that we all shall love and honor one God and zealously hold one Christian faith and entirely cast off every heathen practice; and we all have confirmed both with word and with pledge that we will hold one Christian faith under the rule of one king.

1.1. And it is the decree of our lord and his councilors that just practices be established and all illegal practices abolished, and that every man is to be permitted the benefit of law;

1.2. and that peace and friendship are to be rightly maintained in both religious and secular concerns within this country.

2. And it is the decree of our lord and his councilors that no Christian and innocent men are to be sold out of the country, and especially not among the heathen people, but care is earnestly to be taken that those souls be not destroyed which God bought with his own life.

3. And it is the decree of our lord and his councilors that Christian men are not to be condemned to death for all too small offences.

3.1. But otherwise life-sparing punishments are to be devised for the benefit of the people, and God's handiwork and his own purchase which he paid for so dearly is not to be destroyed for small offences.

4. And it is the decree of our lord and his councilors that men of every order are each to submit willingly to that duty which befits them both in religious and secular concerns.

4.1 And especially God's servants—bishops and abbots, monks and nuns, priests and women dedicated to God—are to submit to their duty and to live according to their rule and to intercede zealously for all Christian people.

5. And it is the decree of our lord and his councilors that every monk who is out of his monastery and not heeding his rule, is to do what behooves him: return readily into the monastery with all humility, and cease from evil-doing and atone very zealously for what he has done amiss; let him consider the word and pledge which he gave to God.

6. And that monk who has no monastery is to come to the bishop of the diocese, and pledge himself to God and men that from that time on he will at least observe three things, namely his chastity, and monastic garb, and serve his Lord as well as ever he can.

6.1. And if he keeps that, he is then entitled to the greater respect, no matter where he dwells.

7. And canons,[1] where there is property such that they can have a refectory and dormitory, are to hold their minster [church] with right observance and with chastity, as their rule directs; otherwise it is right that he who will not do that shall forfeit the property.

[1] Canons here refer to priests who live together in common.

8. And we pray and instruct all mass-priests to protect themselves from God's anger.

9. They know full well that they may not rightly have sexual intercourse with a woman.

9.1. And whoever will abstain from this and preserve chastity, may he have God's mercy and in addition as a secular dignity, that he shall be entitled to a thegn's wergild and a thegn's rights, in life as well as in the grave.[1]

9.2. And he who will not do what belongs to his order, may his dignity be diminished both in religious and secular concerns.

10. And also every Christian man is zealously to avoid illegal intercourse, and duly keep the laws of the Church.[2]

10.1. And every church is to be under the protection of God and of the king and of all Christian people.

10.2. And no man henceforth is to bring a church under subjection, nor illegally to traffic with a church,[3] nor to expel a minister of the church without the bishop's consent.

11. And God's dues are to be readily paid every year.

11.1. Namely, plough-alms 15 days after Easter, and the tithe of young animals by Pentecost, and of the fruits of the earth by All Saints' Day, and "Rome money" by St. Peter's day and light-dues three times a year.[4]

12. And it is best that payment for the soul be always paid at the open grave.

12.1. And if anybody is buried elsewhere, outside the proper parish, the payment for the soul is nevertheless to be paid to the minster to which it belonged.

12.2. And all God's dues are to be furthered zealously, as is needful.

12.3. And festivals and fasts are to be properly observed.

13. The Sunday festival is to be diligently observed, as befits it.

13.1. And one is readily to abstain from markets and public meetings on the holy day.

14. And all the festivals of St. Mary are to be diligently observed, first with a fast and afterwards with a festival.

14.1. And at the festival of every Apostle there is to be fasting and festivity, except that we enjoin no fast for the festival of St. Philip and St. James, because of the Easter festival.

15. Otherwise other festivals and fasts are to be kept diligently just as those kept them who kept them best.

16. And the councilors have decreed that St. Edward's festival is to be celebrated over all England on March 18th.[5]

17. And there is to be a fast every Friday, except when it is a feast day.

18. And ordeals and oaths are forbidden on feast days and the legal Ember days, and from the Advent of the Lord until the octave of Epiphany, and from Septuagesima [Lent] until 15 days after Easter.

19. And at these holy seasons, as it is right, there is to be peace and unity among all Christian men, and every suit is to be laid aside.

20. And if anyone owes another a debt or compensation concerning secular matters, he is to pay it readily before or after [these seasons].

21. And every widow who conducts herself rightly is to be under the protection of God and the king.

21.1. And each [widow] is to remain unmarried for twelve months; she is afterwards to choose what she herself will.

22. And every Christian man is to do what is needful for him, heed zealously his Christian duties, form the habit

---

[1] The wergild was the price of compensation, which varied with the status of the victim. Thegns were noblemen, and they had the high wergild of 1200 shillings.

[2] This provision involves not marrying within six degrees of relationship, or with the widow of so near a kinsman, or a close relative of a previous wife, or a nun, or anyone related by spiritual affinity, or a deserted woman.

[3] This refers to buying an ecclesiastical office or bartering a church.

[4] "Rome money" refers to Peter's Pence, dues sent to Rome to support the papacy. "Light-dues" were revenues to pay for church candles.

[5] St. Edward was the martyred King Edward (r.975–978), the brother of Æthelred.

of frequent confession, and freely confess his sins and willingly atone for them as he is directed.

22.1. And everyone is to prepare himself often and frequently for going to communion;

22.2. and to order words and deeds rightly and keep carefully oath and pledge....

34. We must all love and honor one God and entirely cast out every heathen practice.

35. And let us loyally support one royal lord, and all together defend our lives and our land, as well as ever we can, and pray Almighty God from our inmost heart for his help.

4.19 Christianity comes to Denmark: *The Jelling Monument* (960s).

The Jelling Monument is a large boulder with writing and carvings on it. It is important for understanding how Christianity became incorporated into the networks of power and prestige in Scandinavia.

Powerful people with great resources had long lived in Jelling, close to what is today Vejle, on the Jutland peninsula. During the Bronze Age, before 500 BCE, they built an earthen mound, and, just south of the mound, they lined up several large standing stones to suggest the outline of a ship.

In 958 the Viking king Gorm died at Jelling. His son Harald Bluetooth buried his father in the old mound, adding more soil to make it taller. He also constructed another mound a short distance to the south, in the process destroying the "ship." The construction of mounds was a newly resuscitated custom in the tenth century. It was a self-conscious appeal to old traditions in the face of Christian practices spreading from Denmark's southern neighbors, the Germans. Accompanying Gorm in his tomb were a horse, riding gear, an elegant silver cup, a chest, a small wooden cross, and other artifacts. A powerful man or woman was not to arrive in the afterlife without suitable equipment. This was entirely the opposite of Christian traditions, which by the tenth century prohibited burying goods with bodies: the Christian afterlife was supposed to be immaterial.

Harald took over his father Gorm's kingdom. Then, in the 960s, he became a Christian. The reminders in Jelling of his pagan past, including his father, became an embarrassment, so Harald built a large wooden church close to the northern mound. He dug up the body of his father and moved him to an honored place in the middle of the church, thus posthumously Christianizing Gorm. The centerpiece of the new Christian compound was a piece of art, a large granite boulder situated exactly at the midpoint between the two mounds—the "Jelling Monument." Harald had the boulder inscribed on three sides with large pictures and a text in runic characters, a special alphabet. When they were new, the pictures and the text would have been painted in bright colors. The stone proudly proclaimed that this was a Christian site. One side depicts a great rampant animal (a dragon? a lion?) entwined by a snake. Another side (see photo) portrays Christ crucified. Remarkably, the cross itself is lacking. Instead, interlacing bands surround Christ.

The inscription reads: "King Harald had this monument made in memory of his father Gorm and in memory of his mother Thyre; that Harald who won for himself all of Denmark and Norway and made the Danes Christian." The last words are visible under the figure of Christ.

Thousands of runestones still dot the landscape of Scandinavia, most put up in the eleventh century, when the majority of the population had converted to Christianity. The text of these runestones was usually along the lines of the formula of Jelling: "X had this stone made/raised in memory of Y, his/her mother/father/brother/companion-at-arms." Many stones added "God save his (or her) soul," and others had crosses.

These inscriptions may appear to be selfless acts of remembrance of loved ones, but they served at least as much to remind all who passed of the power and wealth of the sponsor of the inscription, the person who was able to afford such a great monument. Certainly, Harald did not hide behind any false humility; he forthrightly included his name twice to drive the point home. Harald, no one else, was the powerful conqueror and the religious benefactor of those he conquered. In this he appeared both as a traditional Viking warlord and as a good Christian ruler.

The Jelling compound was part of Harald's efforts to consolidate his power, which also included the construction of forts all over his kingdom. It did not help. His son Svein Forkbeard rebelled against him in 986 or 987. Harald had to go into exile, where he soon died. The tomb that he had reserved for himself in the church next to his father Gorm is still empty.

See Plate 3a, "Reading through Looking," p. IV, for a color photo of *The Jelling Monument* today and Plate 3b, p. V, as it was probably painted originally.

1. In what ways does this monument suggest how Christianity was—and was not—compatible with pre-Christian forms of kingship?
2. Why, do you suppose, interlace was used in place of the cross?

[Caption by Anders Winroth. Image courtesy of the Nationalmuseet, Denmark]

4.20 The Vikings as enemies: *The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* (*c.*1048?). Original in Anglo-Saxon.

There are many versions of the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, each taking up the history of England year by year (or nearly), each written in the vernacular (Anglo-Saxon, or Old English), and each treating events from its own point of view. The first version probably took shape in the ninth century under King Alfred the Great (r.871–899); it was circulated and copied during Alfred's reign, and various centers of manuscript production added to it. Different as the versions are, all focus on the Viking invasions and their effects. The version excerpted here, from the so-called C manuscript, was produced either at Abingdon, a monastery in southern England, or, even more likely, at Christ Church, Canterbury, an archbishopric in the same region but about 130 miles southeast of Abingdon. Seven eleventh-century scribes worked on the C manuscript, beginning their account with the year 60 BCE and ending with 1066 CE. One scribe wrote the bulk of it, however, beginning with 491 and ending with 1048. The passages here are concerned with a few years during the reign of Æthelred II (r.978–1016), for whose *Law Code*, see above p. 228. Many of the places named are in southern England (see Map 4.1), which may reflect the concerns of the chronicler.

1. How did the English respond to the Viking attacks?
2. Are there any heroes in this section of the *Chronicle*?

[Source: Margaret Ashdown, ed. and trans., *English and Norse Documents Relating to the Reign of Ethelred the Unready* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1930), pp. 45–47 (notes added).]

Map 4.1 Southern England

996. In this year Ælfric was consecrated Archbishop at Christ Church [Canterbury].

997. In this year the enemy host[1] went round Devonshire [Devon] into the mouth of the Severn, and harried round about, in Cornwall, Wales and Devon, and went ashore at Watchet, and wrought great havoc in burning and in the slaughter of men, and after that went back round Land's End to the southern side, and entered the mouth of the Tamar and so up until they came to Lydford. There they burned and slew all that they met, and Ordulf's monastery at Tavistock they burned to the ground, and took an indescribable amount of booty with them to the ships.

998. In this year the enemy host turned eastward again, and into the mouth of the Frome, and pushed up into Dorset in whatever direction they pleased. Many a time an army was assembled to oppose them, but as soon as they were to join battle, always for some cause it was agreed to disperse, and always in the end they [the Vikings] had the victory. Then for another period they took up their quarters in Wight, and drew their supplies from Hampshire and Sussex.

999. In this year the host again came round into the Thames, and so up the Medway to Rochester. Then the Kentish levies came against them, and a sharp encounter took place. But alas! all too quickly they turned and fled! And the Danes held the field, and then got horses and rode far and wide in whichever direction they would, and ravaged and laid waste almost the whole of West Kent. Then the king decided with his counsellors to advance against the host with both a naval and a land force, but when the ships were ready, there was delay from one day to another, causing distress to the unhappy folk who were stationed on the ships, and, time after time, the more urgent a thing was the more it was behindhand, and all the while they were allowing the enemy forces to increase, and all the while they were retreating from the sea, with the enemy following in their tracks. And then in the end this naval and land campaign effected nothing, except the afflicting of the people, waste of money and the encouragement of their enemies.

1000. In this year the king marched into Cumberland,[2] and laid waste very nearly the whole of it. And his ships went round by Chester and should have come to meet him, but were not able. Then they ravaged Man. The enemy fleet had gone during the summer over to Richard's realm.[3]

1001. In this year the enemy host came to the mouth of the Exe, and so up to the town, and attacked it stubbornly, but they were met with a fierce defense. Then they went about the land, and did just as their wont was, slaying and burning. Then an immense army was assembled of the people of Devon and Somerset, and they joined battle at Pinhoe, and as soon as they met, the home force drew back, and they (the enemy) caused great loss of life, and then went riding over the land, and each inroad was worse than the last, and they took much booty with them to their ships. Thence they made for Wight and there went about at will in any direction and nothing stopped them. Neither fleet by sea nor land force dared approach them, went they never so far inland. Then was it lamentable in every way, for they never ceased from their evil deeds.

1002. In this year the king and his counsellors decided that tribute should be paid to the fleet and peace made, on condition that they should cease from their evil deeds. Then the king sent Ealdorman Leofsige to the fleet, and he, in accordance with the word of the king and his counsellors, arranged a truce with them, and that they should receive maintenance and tribute. This they accepted, and were paid twenty-four thousand pounds. Then in the midst of these events Ealdorman Leofsige slew Æfic, the king's reeve, and the king banished him from the realm. In the same spring landed the Lady, Richard's daughter, and in the summer of the same year died Archbishop Ealdulf, and in this year the king gave orders for all Danish men who were in England to be slain. This was done on the festival of (Saint) Brice [November 13th]. The reason was that it was told the king that they meant to entrap and slay him, and all his counsellors after him, and then possess this realm.

[1] The Vikings from Denmark.

[2] All the places in this paragraph are located to the north and are therefore not on Map 4.1.

[3] King Æthelred was at war with "Cumberland," that is, the kingdom of Strathclyde. "Richard's realm": Richard II (r.996–1026) was the duke of Normandy.

4.21 The Vikings as heroes: *Egil's Saga* (10th cent./13th cent.). Original in Old Norse.

Egil's Saga was written down in Iceland in the thirteenth century, long after the Scandinavian world had been Christianized and brought into the European orbit. But it drew on stories and poetry that its hero, Egil Skallagrimsson (*c.*910–990) composed in the tenth century; these tales remained alive through oral performance. *Egil's Saga* praises the exploits of its hero, and since its hero was a Viking, it provides a very different "take" on the sorts of attacks that *The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* (above, p. 233) deplored. Indeed, the *Saga* reveals many of the motivations and values of Viking culture. While there were no kings of Iceland in the tenth century, the kings of Norway and other strong men dominated Iceland's thirteenth-century history. The written form of the *Saga* celebrates a long-lost past, when powerful farmer chieftains were fiercely independent and zealous about their honor. The excerpt here begins with Kveldulf, Egil's grandfather, who resists the demands of King Harald Fairhair (r.*c.*858–*c.*930; king of a unified Norway from the mid-870s).

1. What constituted male honor in the world of *Egil's Saga*?
2. What roles did kings have in the *Saga*?

[Source: *Egil's Saga*, trans. Bernard Scudder, ed. and notes by Svanhildur Óskarsdóttir (London: Penguin, 1997, 2004), pp. 3–5, 7–8, 52–56, 67–69, 88–89 (some notes added, some modified).]

1. Kveldulf and his wife had two sons. The elder one was named Thorolf and the younger one Grim, and they both grew up to be big, strong men like their father. Thorolf was an attractive and highly accomplished man. He took after his mother's side of the family, a cheerful, generous man, energetic and very eager to prove his worth. He was popular with everyone. Grim was swarthy and ugly, resembling his father in both appearance and character. He turned out to be an active man; he was gifted at working in wood and iron, and grew to be a great craftsman. In winter he would often set off on a fishing boat to lay nets for herring, taking many farmhands with him.

When Thorolf was twenty, he made ready to go raiding, and Kveldulf gave him a longship. Kari's sons Eyvind and Olvir joined him, with a large band of men and another longship.[1] In the summer they went raiding and took plenty of booty which they shared out among themselves. They went raiding for several summers, spending the winters at home with their fathers. Thorolf brought many precious things back to give to his parents, for in those days it was easy to win both wealth and renown. Kveldulf was very old by then, and his sons had reached full manhood.

3. King Harald inherited the titles of his father Halfdan the Black and swore an oath not to cut or comb his hair until he had become sole king of Norway. He was called Harald Tangle-hair.[2] He did battle with the neighboring kings and defeated them, as is told in long accounts. Afterwards he took over Oppland, and proceeded northwards to Trondheim where he fought many battles before gaining full control of all Trondheim district.

After that he intended to go north to Naumdal and take on the brothers Herlaug and Hrollaug, who were kings there, but when they heard that he was on his way, Herlaug and eleven of his men went into the [funeral] mound they had spent the past three years building, and had it closed upon them. Hrollaug tumbled from power and took the title of earl instead, then submitted to Harald and handed over his kingdom. King Harald

[1] Kari was a long-time companion of Kveldulf; when young, they went raiding together.

[2] A reference to Harald's oath to his betrothed, Bytha, that he would not have his hair cut until he had subdued all of Norway. Once Harald became sole ruler of Norway, he was known as Harald Fairhair.

thereby took over Naumdal province and Halogaland and appointed men to govern there in his name.

4. Once King Harald had taken over the kingdoms he had recently won, he kept a close watch on the landholders and powerful farmers and everyone else he suspected would be likely to rebel, and gave them the options of entering his service or leaving the country, or a third choice of suffering hardship or paying with their lives; some had their arms and legs maimed. In each province King Harald took over all the estates and all the land, habited or uninhabited, and even the sea and lakes. All the farmers were made his tenants, and everyone who worked the forests and dried salt, or hunted on land or at sea, was made to pay tribute to him.

Many people fled the country to escape this tyranny and settled various uninhabited parts of many places, to the east in Jamtland and Halsingland, and to the west in the Hebrides, the shire of Dublin, Ireland, Normandy in France, Caithness in Scotland, the Orkney Isles and Shetland Isles, and the Faroe Islands. And at this time, Iceland was discovered.

5. King Harald stayed with his army in Fjordane, and sent out messengers through the countryside to meet the people that he felt he had reason to contact but who had not joined him.

The king's messengers went to Kveldulf's and received a warm welcome.

They told him their business, saying that the king wanted Kveldulf to go to see him: "He has heard that you are a man of high birth and standing," they said. "You have the chance to receive great honor from the king, because he is eager to be joined by people who are renowned for their strength of body and heart."

Kveldulf replied that he was too old for going on fighting ships: "So I will stay at home now and give up serving kings."

"Then let your son go to see the king," the messenger said. "He's a big and brave man. The king will make you a landholder if you serve him."

"I don't want to be a landholder while my father is still alive," Grim said, "because he is my superior for as long as he lives."

The messengers departed, and when they reached the king they told him everything Kveldulf had said to them. The king grew surly, remarking that these must be arrogant people, and he could not tell what their motivation was.

[King Harald reconciled with Kveldulf because Thorolf offered him his service. Thorolf became very rich in land, men, and goods as tax collector for the king. He paid rich tribute to the king in return. But Thorolf's enemies slandered him to the king, who came to suspect him of treason. He seized some of Thorolf's land, reassigned the tax collection to others, and ultimately ran him through with a sword. The king then had a falling out with Thorolf's brother, Grim, now called Skallagrim. Kveldulf, Skallagrim and his wife, Bera, fled to Iceland along with many ships and all their dependents, including men, women, and children. Kveldulf died on the journey.]

30. King Harald Fairhair confiscated all the lands left behind in Norway by Kveldulf and Skallagrim and any other possessions of theirs he could come by. He also searched for everyone who had been in league with Skallagrim and his men, or had even been implicated with them or had helped them in all the deeds they did before Skallagrim left the country. The king's animosity towards Kveldulf and his son grew so fierce that he hated all their relatives or others close to them, or anyone he knew had been fairly close friends. He dealt our punishment to some of them, and many fled to seek sanctuary elsewhere in Norway, or left the country completely.

Yngvar, Skallagrim's father-in-law, was one of these people. He opted to sell all the belongings he could, procure an oceangoing vessel, man it and sail to Iceland, where he had heard that Skallagrim had settled and had plenty of land available. When his crew were ready to sail and a favorable wind got up, he sailed out to the open sea and had a smooth crossing. He approached Iceland from the south and sailed into Borgarfjord and entered the river Langa, all the way to the waterfall, where they unloaded the ship.

Hearing of Yngvar's arrival, Skallagrim went straight to meet him and invited him to stay with him, along with as many of his party as he desired. Yngvar accepted the offer, beached his ship and went to Borg with his men to spend the winter with Skallagrim. In the spring, Skallagrim offered him land, giving him the farm he owned at Alftanes and the land as far inland as the brook at Leirulaek and along the coast to Straumfjord. Yngvar went to that outlying farm and took it over, and turned out to be a highly capable man, and grew wealthy. Then Skallagrim set up a farm in Knarrarnes which he ran for a long time afterwards.

Skallagrim was a great blacksmith and worked large amounts of bog-iron during the winter. He had a forge

built by the sea a long way off from Borg, at the place called Raufarnes, where he did not think the woods were too far away.[1] But since he could not find any stone suitably hard or smooth to forge iron against—because there was nothing but pebbles there, and small sands along the shore—Skallagrim put out to sea one evening in one of his eight-oared boats, when everyone else had gone to bed, and rowed out to the Midfjord islands. There he cast his stone anchor off the prow of his boat, stepped overboard, dived and brought up a rock which he put into his boat. Then he climbed into the boat, rowed ashore, carried the rock to his forge, put it down by the door and always forged his iron on it. That rock is still there with a pile of slag beside it, and its top is marked from being hammered upon. It has been worn by waves and is different from the other rocks there; four men today could not lift it.

Skallagrim worked zealously in his forge, but his farmhands complained about having to get up so early. It was then that Skallagrim made this verse:

The wielder of iron must rise
early to earn wealth from his bellows,
from that sack that sucks in
the sea's brother, the wind.
I let my hammer ring down
on precious metal of fire,
the hot iron, while the bag
wheezes greedy for wind.

31. Skallagrim and Bera had many children, but the first ones all died. Then they had a son who was sprinkled with water and given the name Thorolf.[2] He was big and handsome from an early age, and everyone said he closely resembled Kveldulf's son Thorolf, after whom he had been named. Thorolf far excelled boys of his age in strength, and when he grew up he became accomplished in most of the skills that it was customary for gifted men to practice. He was a cheerful character and so powerful in his youth that he was considered just as able-bodied as any grown man. He was popular with everyone, and his father and mother were very fond of him.

Skallagrim and Bera had two daughters, Saeunn and Thorunn, who were also promising children.

Skallagrim and his wife had another son who was sprinkled with water and named Egil. As he grew up, it soon became clear he would turn out very ugly and resemble his father, with black hair. When he was three years old, he was as big and strong as a boy of six or seven. He became talkative at an early age and had a gift for words, but tended to be difficult to deal with in his games with other children.

That spring Yngvar visited Borg to invite Skallagrim out to a feast at his farm, saying that his daughter Bera and her son Thorolf should join them as well, together with anyone else that she and Skallagrim wanted to bring along. Once Skallagrim had promised to go, Yngvar returned home to prepare the feast and brew the ale.

When the time came for Skallagrim and Bera to go to the feast, Thorolf and the farmhands got ready as well; there were fifteen in the party in all.

Egil told his father that he wanted to go with them.

"They're just as much my relatives as Thorolf's," he said.

"You're not going," said Skallagrim, "because you don't know how to behave where there's heavy drinking. You're enough trouble when you're sober."

So Skallagrim mounted his horse and rode away, leaving Egil behind disgruntled. Egil went out of the farmyard and found one of Skallagrim's pack-horses, mounted it and rode after them. He had trouble negotiating the marshland because he was unfamiliar with the way, but he could often see where Skallagrim and the others were riding when the view was not obscured by knolls or trees. His journey ended late in the evening when he arrived at Alftanes. Everyone was sitting around drinking when he entered the room. When Yngvar saw Egil he welcomed him and asked why he had come so late. Egil told him about his conversation with his father. Yngvar seated Egil beside him, facing Skallagrim and Thorolf. All the men were entertaining themselves by making up verses while they were drinking the ale. Then Egil spoke this verse:

I have come in fine fettle to the hearth
of Yngvar, who gives men gold from the glowing
curled serpent's bed of heather;[3]

I was eager to meet him.

[1] Bog-iron was a precious resource in the Viking Age. Found in peat bogs with mountain streams, it was used to make weapons and tools. Charcoal is used in the smelting process, explaining Skallagrim's decision to move the forge closer to woodland.

[2] Baptism with water is a detail that would make sense only after the Viking period.

[3] This is a reference to a hoard of treasure guarded by a mythical serpent.

Shedder of gold rings bright and twisted
from the serpent's realm, you'll never
find a better craftsman of poems
three winters old than me.

Yngvar repeated the verse and thanked Egil for it. The next day Yngvar rewarded Egil for his verse by giving him three shells and a duck's egg. While they were drinking that day, Egil recited another verse, about the reward for his poem:

The skillful hardener of weapons[1]
that peck wounds gave eloquent
Egil in reward three shells
that rear up ever-silent in the surf.
That upright horseman of the field
where ships race knew how to please Egil;
he gave him a fourth gift,
the brook-warbler's favorite bed.

Egil's poetry was widely acclaimed. Nothing else of note happened during that journey, and Egil went home with Skallagrim.

40. Skallagrim took a great delight in trials of strength and games, and liked talking about them. Ball games were common in those days, and there were plenty of strong men in the district at this time. None of them could match Skallagrim in strength, even though he was fairly advanced in age by then.

Thord, Grani's son from Granastadir, was a promising young man, and was very fond of Egil Skallagrimsson. Egil was a keen wrestler; he was impetuous and quick-tempered, and everyone was aware that they had to teach their sons to give in to him.

A ball game was arranged early in winter on the plains by the river Hvita, and crowds of people came to it from all over the district. Many of Skallagrim's men attended, and Thord Granason was their leader. Egil asked Thord if he could go to the game with him; he was in his seventh year then. Thord let him, and seated Egil behind him when he rode there.

When they reached the games meeting, the players were divided up into teams. A lot of small boys were there as well, and they formed teams to play their own games. Egil was paired against a boy called Grim, the son of Hegg from Heggsstadir. Grim was ten or eleven years old, and strong for his age. When they started playing the game, Egil proved to be weaker than Grim, who showed off his strength as much as he could. Egil lost his temper, wielded the bat and struck Grim, who seized him and dashed him to the ground roughly, warning him that he would suffer for it if he did not learn how to behave. When Egil got back on his feet he left the game, and the boys jeered at him.

Egil went to see Thord Granason and told him what had happened.

Thord said, "I'll go with you and we'll take our revenge."

Thord handed Egil an axe he had been holding, a common type of weapon in those days. They walked over to where the boys were playing their game. Grim had caught the ball and was running with the other boys chasing him. Egil ran up to Grim and drove the axe into his head, right through to the brain. Then Egil and Thord walked away to their people. The people from Myrar seized their weapons, and so did the others. Oleif Hjalti rushed to join the people from Borg with his men. Theirs was a much larger group, and at that the two sides parted.

As a result, a quarrel developed between Oleif and Hegg. They fought a battle at Laxfit by the river Grimsa, where seven men were killed. Hegg received a fatal wound and his brother Kvig died in the battle.

When Egil returned home, Skallagrim seemed indifferent to what had happened, but Bera said he had the makings of a true Viking when he was old enough to be put in command of warships. Then Egil spoke this verse:

My mother said
I would be bought
a boat with fine oars,
set off with Vikings,
stand up on the prow,
command the precious craft,
then enter port,
kill a man and another.

When Egil was twelve, he was so big that few grown men were big and strong enough that he could not beat them at games. In the year that he was twelve, he spent

[1] In this verse, Yngvar is the "hardener," the wielder or maker of weapons that "peck wounds"; then he is the "horseman"—the captain—of the sea, "the field where ships race"; and finally, he is the man who provides little Egil with the duck's favorite "bed," its egg.

a lot of time taking part in games. Thord Granason was in his twentieth year then, and strong too. That winter Egil and Thord often took sides together in games against Skallagrim.

Once during the winter there was a ball game at Borg, in Sandvik to the south. Egil and Thord played against Skallagrim, who grew tired and they came off better. But that evening after sunset, Egil and Thord began losing. Skallagrim was filled with such strength that he seized Thord and dashed him to the ground so fiercely that he was crushed by the blow and died on the spot. Then he seized Egil.

Skallagrim had a servant woman named Thorgerd Brak, who had fostered Egil when he was a child. She was an imposing woman, as strong as a man and well versed in the magic arts.

Brak said, "You're attacking your own son like a mad beast, Skallagrim."

Skallagrim let Egil go, but went for her instead. She fled, with Skallagrim in pursuit. They came to the shore at the end of Digranes, and she ran off the edge of the cliff and swam away. Skallagrim threw a huge boulder after her which struck her between the shoulder blades. Neither the woman nor the boulder ever came up afterwards. That spot is now called Brakarsund (Brak's Sound).

Later that evening, when they returned to Borg, Egil was furious. By the time Skallagrim and the other members of the household sat down at the table, Egil had not come to his seat. Then he walked into the room and went over to Skallagrim's favorite, a man who was in charge of the workers and ran the farm with him. Egil killed him with a single blow, then went to his seat. Skallagrim did not mention the matter and it was let rest afterwards, but father and son did not speak to each other, neither kind nor unkind words, and so it remained through the winter.

[Egil joins his brother and his men on his brother's ship.]

50. In the days of King Harald Fairhair of Norway, Alfred the Great reigned over England, the first of his kinsmen to be sole ruler there. His son Edward succeeded him on the throne; he was the father of Athelstan the Victorious, who fostered Hakon the Good.[1] At this time, Athelstan succeeded his father on the throne. Edward had other sons, Athelstan's brothers.

After Athelstan's succession, some of the noblemen who had lost their realms to his family started to make war upon him, seizing the opportunity to claim them back when a young king was in control. These were British,[2] Scots and Irish. But King Athelstan mustered an army, and paid anyone who wanted to enter his service, English and foreign alike.

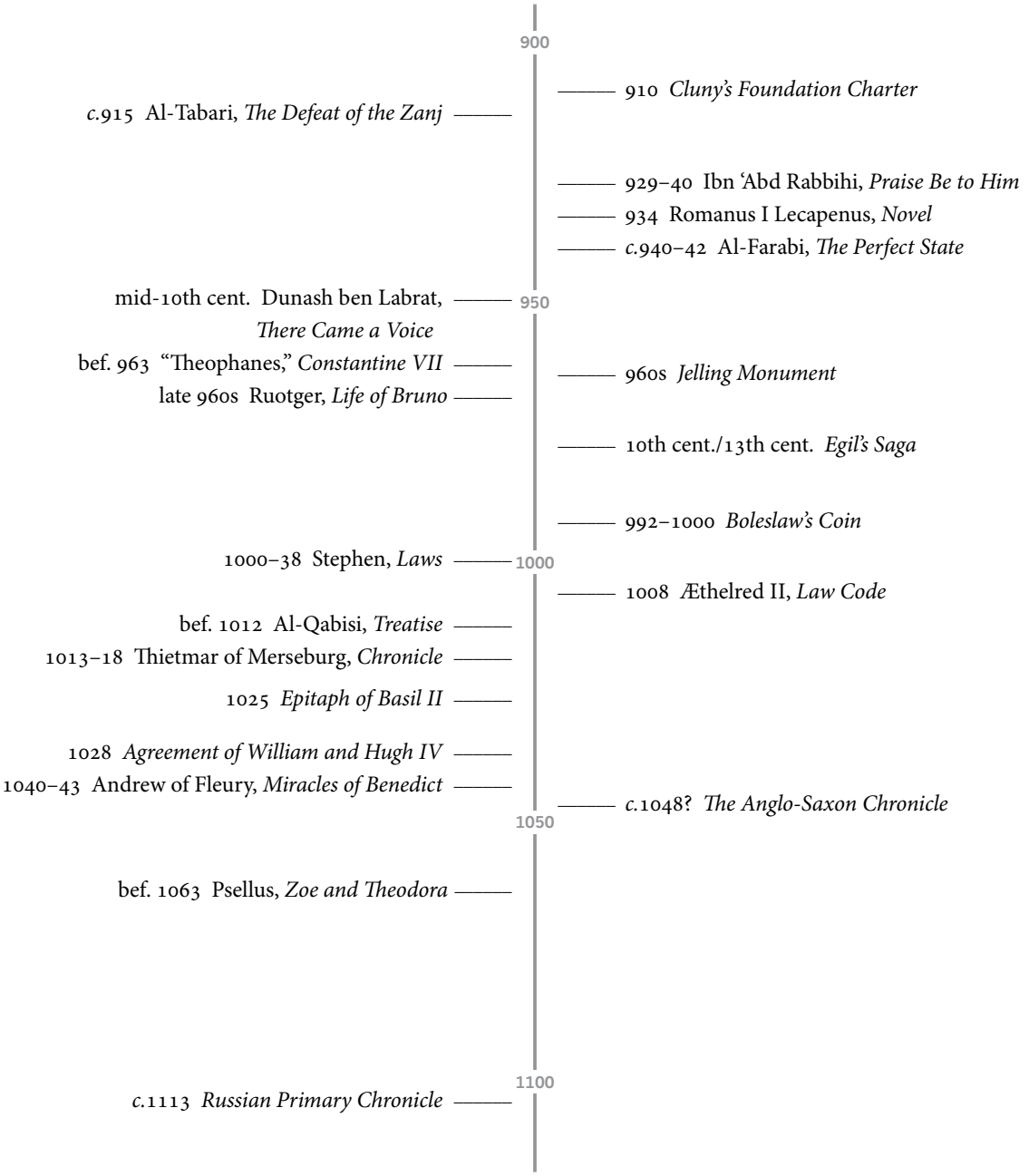
Thorolf and Egil sailed south past Saxony and Flanders, and heard that the king of England was in need of soldiers and that there was hope of much booty there. They decided to go there with their men. In the autumn they set off and went to see King Athelstan. He welcomed them warmly and felt that their support would strengthen his forces greatly. In the course of their conversations he invited them to stay with him, enter his service, and defend his country. It was agreed that they would become King Athelstan's men.

England had been Christian for a long time when this happened. King Athelstan was a devout Christian, and was called Athelstan the Faithful. The king asked Thorolf and Egil to take the sign of the cross, because that was a common custom then among both merchants and mercenaries who dealt with Christians. Anyone who had taken the sign of the cross could mix freely with both Christians and heathens, while keeping the faith that they pleased. Thorolf and Egil did so at the king's request, and both took the sign of the cross. Three hundred of their men entered the king's service.

[1] Alfred the Great (r.871–899); Edward the Elder (r.899–924); Athelstan or Æthelstan (r.924–939). Hakon the Good was a son of Harald Fairhair and Æthelstan's foster son, ruler in Norway *c.*934–960.

[2] The "British" were the Welsh.

TIMELINE FOR CHAPTER FOUR


900
910 *Cluny's Foundation Charter*
*c.*915 Al-Tabari, *The Defeat of the Zanj*
929–40 Ibn 'Abd Rabbihi, *Praise Be to Him*
934 Romanus I Lecapenus, *Novel*
*c.*940–42 Al-Farabi, *The Perfect State*
mid-10th cent. Dunash ben Labrat, *There Came a Voice*
950
bef. 963 "Theophanes," *Constantine VII*
late 960s Ruotger, *Life of Bruno*
960s *Jelling Monument*
10th cent./13th cent. *Egil's Saga*
992–1000 *Boleslaw's Coin*
1000–38 Stephen, *Laws*
1000
1008 Æthelred II, *Law Code*
bef. 1012 Al-Qabisi, *Treatise*
1013–18 Thietmar of Merseburg, *Chronicle*
1025 *Epitaph of Basil II*
1028 *Agreement of William and Hugh IV*
1040–43 Andrew of Fleury, *Miracles of Benedict*
*c.*1048? *The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*
1050
bef. 1063 Psellus, *Zoe and Theodora*
1100
*c.*1113 *Russian Primary Chronicle*

To test your knowledge and gain deeper understanding of this chapter, please go to **www.utphistorymatters.com** for Study Questions.

V

New Configurations (c.1050–c.1150)

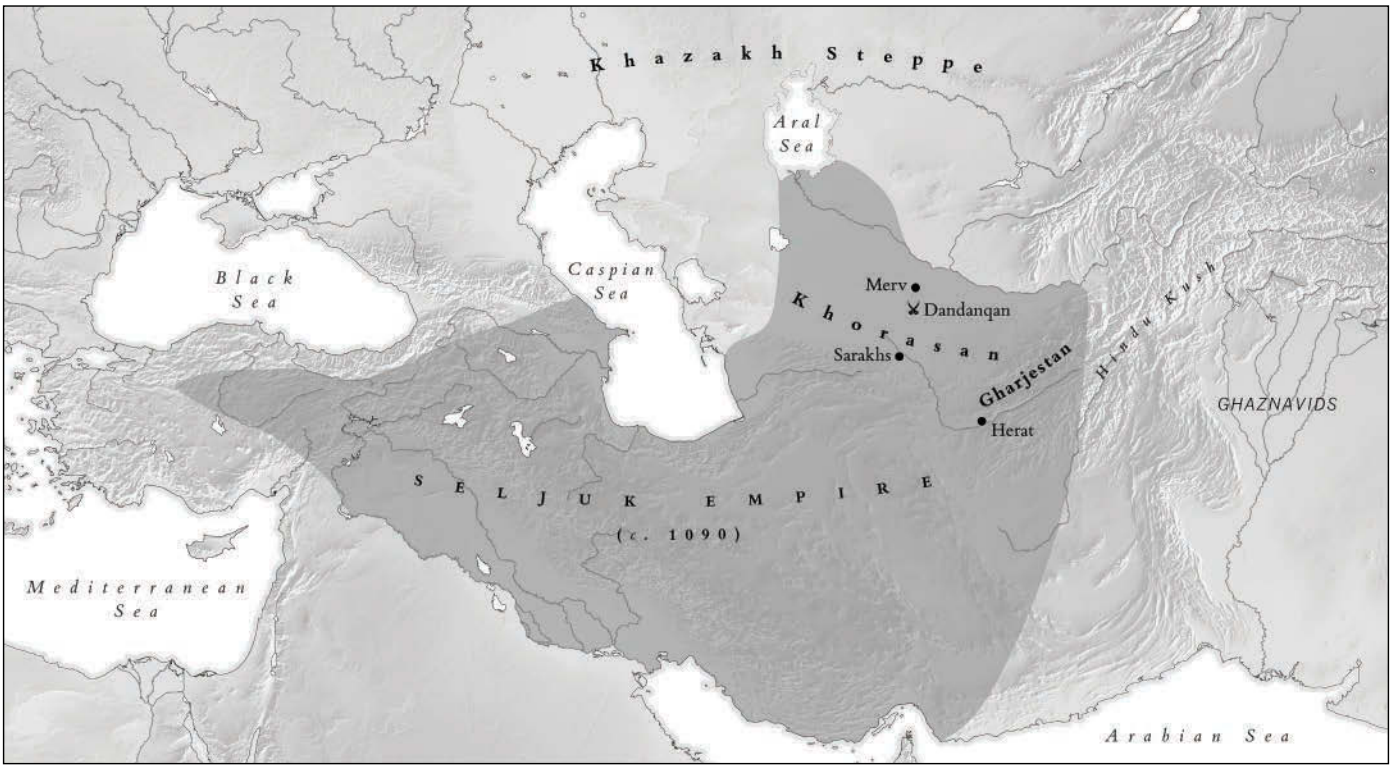
THE SELJUK TRANSFORMATION

5.1 The Seljuks as enemies: Abu'l-Fazl Beyhaqi, *The Battle of Dandanqan* (before 1077). Original in Persian.

Abu'l-Fazl Beyhaqi (995–1077) served as a secretary at the courts of several Ghaznavid rulers, whose sultanates included eastern Iran and Afghanistan. Throughout his career, he kept careful notes of the events taking place around him, and when he retired, he wrote them up in a massive multi-volume history, of which only a small portion remains today. As an active player at court and in the army, he was present at the disastrous battle of Dandanqan (1040), led by Emir (or Sultan) Mas'ud (r.1030–1041) against the Seljuk Turks. (See Map 5.1.) With that decisive victory, the Seljuks, a Turkic group from the Kazakh steppe, found the way open for them to conquer much of the eastern half of the Islamic world and part of the Byzantine as well. The excerpt from Beyhaqi's *History* given here opens with the Ghaznavid army approaching Merv to fight the Seljuks, whose leader, Toghril Beg Mohammad (r.1040–1063), became the founder of the Great Seljuk sultanate. Against the advice of his generals, Mas'ud insisted on launching the expedition from Sarakhs to Merv across hot desert lands with exhausted troops. The army, waylaid at Dandanqan, never quite got there.

1. Why was food so central to Beyhaqi's account?
2. If the army was "well-equipped and in formation," as Beyhaqi says, why did it lose the battle?

[Source: Abu'l-Fazl Beyhaqi, *The History of Beyhaqi (The History of Sultan Mas'ud of Ghazna, 1030–1041)*, trans. C.E. Bosworth, rev. Mohsen Ashtiany, 3 vols. (Boston and Washington, DC: Ilex Foundation and Center for Hellenic Studies, 2011), 2: 327–30 (notes added).]



Map 5.1 The Early Seljuk Empire

When we arrived [at Sarakhs] it was the beginning of Ramadan. We found those regions devastated, with no crops or beasts there and barren, uncultivated fields. The situation there had reached the point that a tiny amount of hay, for instance, could not be had even for a dirham.[1] Prices had risen so high that the old were saying that such high prices had not been known for over a hundred years. A *man*[2] [of flour] had gone up to ten dirhams, but none could be found. There was not a blade of straw or of barley to be seen anywhere, and as a result, the mounted troops and the entire army suffered greatly. Bearing in mind that even our personal guards, despite their many mounts and supplies, were in grave trouble, one can imagine how the rest of the leading court figures and retainers and mass of troops fared. The situation reached such a pitch that there were continuous and ubiquitous arguments and public disputes amongst the various elements of the army, and the troops at large and the palace guards bickered over food, fodder and beasts, so that finally this quarrelling passed from the level of verbal exchanges to that of the sword. Our confidants told us about this, and those we had selected ourselves to be our counsellors and advisers were telling us in both plain and in diplomatic language that, "The correct course of action is for us to head for Herat, since food and fodder can be found there in abundance, and it is near to all the parts of the province and is the pivotal point of Khorasan." The right course was indeed as they said; but we were overcome by a sense of sullen belligerence and obstinacy. Also, it would have meant that the problem of those upstarts[3] would still remain tangled and unresolved, and we were keen to go to Merv in order to get the whole affair straightened out. Moreover, Fate was driving us forward and making us confront unsuccessfully that unforeseen disaster which was about to happen.

[1] Dirhams were silver coins. They were Persian in origin but adopted by Persia's Islamic conquerors to use for large payments.

[2] A measure of weight.

[3] The Seljuk Turks.

We went towards Merv, and we could feel it in our bones that we were committing a grave error. The road was not as it should have been; there was no food or fodder and no water, and we had to face heat and the sand dunes of the desert. When we had gone three or four stages, violent arguments broke out among all sections of the army about the length of the stages, fodder, our mounts, food, etc. The commanders of the troops who had been appointed over the center, the right and left wings, and other places of the army's line of deployment tried to calm down the situation, but the dispute had flared up to such an extent that it could not be damped down sufficiently and was becoming more intense by the hour. Then on a certain day, when we moved from a certain stage at the time of the afternoon worship with the intention of seeking to encamp at a further place, a detachment of the enemy appeared on the fringes of the sandy wastes of the desert. They sprang a daring attack on us and tried to carry off plunder. The troops gave them a severe beating, and they failed to achieve their aim. Sporadic fighting continued late into the day. Our troops maintained their battle formation as they travelled on, and there were some clashes and skirmishes, but no fierce battle occurred, and the enemy steered clear of close encounters and intense fighting. If our troops, our best warriors, had reacted more robustly to these clashes, they would have been able to chase the enemy away in all directions. We encamped at nightfall in a certain place; there had been no mishaps and no prominent commander had been lost. We took all the usual precautions, including posting guards and sending out scouts so that nothing unexpected and untoward should happen to us in the darkness of the night. The next day was spent in the same way until we reached near Merv.

On the third day, we set out with the army well-equipped and in formation in tune with the occasion. The guides had told us that once we passed the fortress of Dandanqan and travelled one parasang[1] further, we would get to flowing water. We set off. When we reached the fortress of Dandanqan before noon, the enemy had filled up and blocked the wells at the gate of the fortress to make it impossible to encamp there. The inhabitants of Dandanqan shouted down that there were five wells within the fortress which would yield ample water for the army, and that if we were to encamp there they would open up once more the wells outside the fortress; there would then be sufficient water and no cause for a crisis. The day was extremely hot, and the only sensible course was to encamp there. But foreordained Fate had to fulfill its brief, and so we set off. A parasang further on, dried-up and deeply hollowed-out beds of streams came into view. The guides were perturbed, because they had thought that there would be water there since no-one could remember a time when those streams had run dry.

The lack of water there worried the troops, and they became dismayed and disorderly. The enemy launched a fierce attack from all four sides, and I myself had to ride out from the center and confront the enemy. We made strenuous attacks, and we thought that the compact formations of the right and left wings were still intact. We did not know that a detachment of the palace gholams mounted on camels had dismounted and were stealing the horses from anyone in sight so that they themselves might ride them into battle.[2] This tussle over horses, and the forcing of one another to dismount, became so intense that they started fighting among themselves and leaving their own stations. The enemy exploited this opportunity, and the situation became intractable, so that neither we nor our leading men could see a way out. We had thus to abandon our equipment and baggage to our opponents and leave the scene, and they became busy with plundering the captured baggage.

We rode on a parasang or so until we reached a large pool of standing water, and all the retainers and troops stationed at court, comprising our brothers and our sons, the leading men and the subordinate ranks, reached there in good shape, such that there were no casualties among the leading figures. It was suggested to us that we should go away, since the situation was irretrievable. This seemed to us a fair assessment, and we set off. On the eighth day, we came to the main town of Gharjestan, and spent two days there until the palace gholams and the rest of the army caught up, so that no person of note was left behind. The only people who were left behind were some members of the palace infantry and others of no note and significance.

[1] A parasang was an Iranian unit of distance equal to about three and one-half miles.

[2] The "gholams" were slave soldiers, usually Turks. The "palace gholams" were the personal bodyguards of the sultan.

5.2 Shi'ites vilified: Nizam al-Mulk, *The Book of Policy* (1091). Original in Persian.

Nizam al-Mulk (1018–1072) was officially the vizier, a sort of prime minister, for Great Seljuk Sultans Alp Arslan (r.1063–1072) and Malikshah (r.1072–1092). But under Malikshah, at least at first, he was in effect the ruler. He wrote *The Book of Policy* for Malikshah late in life, when he felt his power over the sultan slipping in favor of his arch-rival, Taj al-Mulk. *The Book of Policy* very subtly accuses Taj al-Mulk of being a secret Ismaili, an adherent of a radical branch of Shi'ism. In the passage below, Nizam al-Mulk ridicules Ismailism while nevertheless warning of its dire dangers, associating it with the "Qarmatis" and "Batinis" whom he accuses of fomenting unrest. It is true that some of the Seljuk elites flirted with Ismailism, but it was only after the time of Malikshah that the Ismailis tried to take power. In the event, they did not succeed.

1. How did Nizam al-Mulk explain the origins and spread of the form of Shi'ism known as Ismailism?
2. What did he object to in Ismaili doctrine?

[Source: *The Book of Government or Rules for Kings. The siyasat-nama or Siyar al-Muluk of Nizam al-Mulk*, trans. Hubert Darke (New Haven: Yale University Press, 1960), pp. 213–16 (notes added).]

Chapter Forty-Six

ON THE RISINGS OF THE QARMATIS [CARMATHIANS] AND BATINIS IN KUHISTAN, 'IRAQ AND KHURASAN[1]

1. The origin of the Qarmati religion was as follows. Ja'far al-Sadiq had a son whose name was Isma'il; he died before his father leaving a son named Muhammad; and this Muhammad lived until the time of [Caliph] Harun al-Rashid [r.786–809]. Now one of the Zubairis suggested to Harun al-Rashid that Muhammad was plotting a revolt and preaching in secret with the intention of seizing the caliphate.[2] Harun al-Rashid brought Muhammad from Medina to Baghdad and put him in prison, and during this confinement he died, and was buried in the cemetery of the Quraish.[3] Muhammad had a certain Hijazi page called Mubarak, and he was a calligrapher in the fine script known as *muqarmat*; for this reason he used to be called Qarmatwaih. This Mubarak had a friend in the city of Ahwaz whose name was 'Abd Allah ibn Maimun al Qaddah. The latter was one day sitting with him in private and said, "Your master Muhammad ibn Isma'il was my friend and he used to tell me his secrets." Mubarak was deceived and impatient to know what they were. Then 'Abd Allah ibn Maimun made Mubarak swear not to disclose what he was going to tell him except to persons fit to hear it. He then made several statements, introducing obscure words from the language of the imams, mixed up with sayings of the naturalists and utterances of the philosophers, and consisting largely of mention of The Prophet and the angels, the tablet and pen, and heaven and the throne. After that they parted; Mubarak went towards Kufa, and 'Abd Allah to Kuhistan and 'Iraq; and they sought to win over the people of the Shi'a.

[1] The Qarmatis split from the Ismailis, who supported the Fatimids. Batinis was another word for "Ismailis." Nizam al-Mulk did not differentiate between the two; for him they were equally heretical. Kuhistan refers to a part of Khurasan, both lying in Iran and beyond, to the east. Nizam al-Mulk's power was centered in Iran and Iraq. Almost all the place names in this excerpt refer to cities or regions in Iran.

[2] The Zubairis (or Zubayrids) were members of an elite family that had been Companions of Muhammad and momentary rulers of a break-away state in Iraq in the time of the Umayyads.

[3] The Quraish (Quraysh) was the tribe of the Prophet Muhammad.

2. This was at the time when Musa ibn Ja'far was in prison. Mubarak carried on his activities in secret, and disseminated his propaganda in the district around Kufa. Of the people who accepted his teaching, the Sunnis called some of them Mubarakis and others Qarmatis. Meanwhile 'Abd Allah ibn Maimun preached this religion in Kuhistan. Incidentally he was a very clever conjuror, and Muhammad ibn Zakariyya [Razi] has mentioned his name in his book *Makhariq al Anbiya* [Frauds of the Prophets].[1] He then appointed a man called Khalaf to succeed him and said to him, "Go in the direction of Rayy, for thereabouts in Rayy, Qum and Kashan the people are all Rafidis, professing Shi'a beliefs; so they will accept your teaching." 'Abd Allah himself departed in fear towards Basra.

So Khalaf went to Rayy. In the district of Fashabuya there is a village which they call Kilin. There he stayed and practised embroidery at which craft he was expert. He remained there some time without being able to reveal his secrets to anybody, till at last by dint of great efforts he managed to find a suitable person, and instructed him in the religion. He made out that the religion was that of the house [of the Prophet] and had been kept hidden; and said, "When the Qayim [Mahdi] appears the religion will be revealed, and the time of his coming is near. It behooves you to learn now, so that when you see him you will not be ignorant of the religion."[2] So he began secretly to instruct the people of this village in the religion. One day the headman of Kilin was passing outside the village when he heard a voice corning from a ruined mosque. He approached the mosque and listened. This Khalaf was expounding his religion to some of the people. On returning to the village he said, "O people, thwart this man's business. Do not go near him. Judging by what I have heard him say, I am afraid that our village may suffer through his activities." Incidentally Khalaf's speech was imperfect and he could not pronounce the letters *ta* and *ha*. When he knew that he had been discovered, he fled from that village and went to Rayy where he died. He had converted a few of the inhabitants of Kilin, and his son Ahmad ibn Khalaf took his place and continued to foster his father's religion. Ahmad ibn Khalaf found a man named Ghiyath who was well versed in literature and grammar. He made him his successor as propagandist.

3. This Ghiyath then embellished the elements of their religion with verses from the Qur'an, traditions of The Prophet (upon him be peace), Arab proverbs, and various verses and stories. He composed a book entitled *Kitab al Bayan* [The Book of Explanation] and in it he described in the manner of a lexicon the meaning of such terms as "prayer," "fasting," and other religious precepts. Then he held argument with people of the Sunna,[3] and news spread to Qum and Kashan that a man called Ghiyath had come forth from the village of Kilin as a missionary, and was giving glad tidings and teaching religion. The people of these cities flocked to Ghiyath and began to learn the new religion. Eventually the jurist 'Abd Allah Za'farani was informed of this, and he knew that the religion was a heresy. So he urged the people of Rayy to attack the heretics; some of the latter were known by the people of the Sunna as Khalafis, and others as Batinis. By the year 200 (from the hijra) [815/816 CE] the religion was widespread. This was the year in which a man called Sahib al Hal [The Master of the Situation] led a revolt in Syria and captured most of that country. Ghiyath had been forced to flee from Rayy and he went to Khurasan, and stayed at Marv-al-Rud, where he proselytized the emir Husain ibn 'Ali.[4] Husain was converted; his command extended over Khurasan, especially Taliqan, Maimana, Paryab, Gharchistan and Ghur. After adopting the new religion, he converted a number of people in these districts.

4. Ghiyath then nominated a successor at Marv-al-Rud to maintain the converts in the religion and to extend their numbers, while he himself returned to Rayy and began to preach again there. Then he left someone else to carry on the propaganda—a man from the district of Fashabuya called Abu Hatim, who was well versed in Arab poetry and strange tales. Even before he went to Khurasan he had already promised that before long in such-and-such a year the Qayim (whom they call the Mahdi) would appear, and the Qarmatis had trusted in this promise. The people of the Sunna found out that Ghiyath had returned and was once more calling the people to the religion of the Batinis (Allah curse them); and now he continued to promise that at a certain time, the Mahdi would appear, and he kept up this deceit in his

[1] Al-Razi (*c.*854–925/935) was a physician, courtier, and philosopher who famously debated with an Ismaili. In fact, al-Razi was against all revealed religion.

[2] The Mahdi, the "rightly guided one," refers to the one who will rule before the world ends.

[3] The "people of the Sunna" are the Sunni Muslims.

[4] Emirs were local governors.

preaching for some time. However, it chanced that the promised time for the coming of the Mahdi arrived, and he was proved false. The Shi'ites then turned against him, and reviled and renounced him; the Sunnis sought to kill him; but he fled and nobody could find him.

A PROFIT ECONOMY

5.3 Cultivating new lands: *Frederick of Hamburg's Agreement with Colonists from Holland* (1106). Original in Latin.

The commercial revolution took place in both town and countryside. In rural areas, it depended on the enterprise of peasants and the support of people in power. In this charter of agreement, the archbishop of Hamburg-Bremen, Frederick (r.1105–1123), granted swamp land in his diocese to colonists from Holland willing to undertake the backbreaking, collective work of drainage. (They were used to this sort of effort; much of Holland itself was swampland.) The archbishop required payments in return, not only for the produce from the land but also for granting the colonists the right to hear their own court cases. His call to settlers was part of a wider movement: Hamburg-Bremen was on the Slavic frontier, and bringing Christians to settle it was one way that German leaders meant to subdue the polytheistic natives.

1. What did the archbishop gain from this agreement?
2. How was settlement and colonization mingled with religion?

[Source: *Ausgewählte Urkunden zur Erläuterung der Verfassungsgeschichte Deutschlands im Mittelalter*, ed. Wilhelm Altmann and Ernst Bernheim, 5th ed. (Berlin: Weidmannsche Buchhandlung, 1920), pp. 161–62, no. 80. Translated by Barbara H. Rosenwein.]

[1] In the name of the holy and individual Trinity, Frederick, bishop of the church of Hamburg by grace of God, [gives] to all the faithful in Christ, present and future, perpetual benediction. We wish to notify all of a certain agreement that certain people living on this side of the Rhine, who are called Hollanders, made with us.

[2] The aforementioned men came to Our Majesty resolutely asking us to concede to them territory for them to cultivate. This land is situated in our bishopric and has hitherto been uncultivated, marshy, and useless to our locals. And so, having taken counsel with our vassals (*fideles*) and thinking it would be beneficial for us and our successors not to refuse their petition, we gave [our] assent.

[3] Moreover, the agreement of their petition was that they give to us a single denar [a silver coin] each year for every manse of this land.[1] We have thought it necessary to write down here the dimensions of a manse, lest there be a dispute later on among the people: a manse is 720 royal rods long and 30 wide, including the streams which flow through the land, which we grant in similar manner.

[4] Finally, they promised to give us a tithe according to our decree, that is, the eleventh part of the fruit of the earth, the tenth of the lambs, similarly of pigs, similarly of goats, the same of geese, and also they will give in the same way a tenth of the amount of honey and flax. They will render a dinar for each foal on the feast of St. Martin

[1] A manse (*mansus*) was a farming unit: it often included a house, waste, meadow, a garden, and, of course, land for crops. Here its dimensions are standardized and declared because the land is considered "virgin" and ready to be parceled out at will.

[November 11], and an obol [a coin worth less than a dinar] for each calf.

[5] They promised that they would obey us always in all matters pertaining to ecclesiastical law according to the decrees of the holy fathers, canon law, and the customs of the church of Utrecht [the home diocese of the colonists].

[6] With regard to judgments and court hearings involving secular law, they affirm that they will pay 2 marks [a gold or silver coin worth a substantial amount] each year for every 100 manses so that they may try all disputes themselves, lest they suffer from the prejudice of foreign [judges]. If they are unable to settle the more serious hearings or judgments, they shall refer them to the tribunal of the bishop. If they bring him with them to decide the case, for however long he remains [with them] they shall provide for him at their own expense in this manner: they shall keep two thirds of the court fees and give the last third to the bishop.

[7] We have allowed them to construct churches on said territory wherever it seems appropriate to them. We have offered to each church, for the express use of the priests serving God there, a tithe from our tithes of those parish churches. They confirm that the parishioners of each church will give no less than one manse to each church as an endowment for the use of the priest.

[8] The names of the men who came together to make and confirm this agreement are: Heinricus, the priest, to whom we have granted the aforesaid churches for life, and other laymen: Helikinus, Arnoldus, Hiko, Fordoltus, and Referic. To them and their heirs after them we concede the said land according to the secular laws and abovementioned agreement.

[9] The affirmation of this agreement was made in the year of our Lord's incarnation 1106, in the sixth indiction,[1] in the reign of Lord Henry IV, Emperor Augustus of the Romans. To confirm this document with our affirmation, it pleases us that the charter be affixed with the impression of our seal. If anyone says anything against it, let him be anathema.

[10] In confirmation of this document, I, Bishop Wernherus was present and signed. I, Bishop Marquardus. I, Bishop Hasoko. I, Bishop Hujo. I, Adelbero. I, Thieto was present and signed. I, Gerungus, *advocatus* [a lay protector of a church] was present and witnessed. I, Hericus, was present. I, Thidericus. I, Willo, was present. I, Erpo, was present and witnessed. I, Adelbertus. I, Gerwardus. I, Ermbertus. I, Reinwardus. I, Ecelinus.

5.4 Urban commerce: Ibn ʿAbdun, *Regulations for the Market at Seville* (early 12th cent.). Original in Arabic.

Al-Andalus, the Islamic part of Iberia, was urbanized before most other Western regions and, as the document here demonstrates, its economic life was integrated into its notions of religion and morality. Ibn ʿAbdun may well have been a market inspector—a *muhtasib*—responsible not only for making sure that products sold were up to a certain standard and that prices were legitimate but also for regulating relations between Christians, Muslims, and Jews and enforcing Muslim rules regarding sexuality and purity.

1. Why did the market need to be regulated?
2. Which provisions were meant for good health, and which were meant to enforce ritual purity?

[Source: Bernard Lewis, ed. and trans., *Islam: From the Prophet Muhammad to the Capture of Constantinople*, vol. 2: *Religion and Society* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1987), pp. 157–65 (some notes added).]

[1] Indictions were used for dating Roman imperial documents. Why do you suppose it was invoked here?

Shopkeepers must be forbidden to reserve regular places for themselves in the forecourt of the great mosque or elsewhere, for this amounts to a usurpation of property rights and always gives rise to quarrels and trouble among them. Instead, whoever comes first should take his place.

The *muhtasib* [market inspector] must arrange the crafts in order, putting like with like in fixed places. This is the best and most orderly way.

There must be no sellers of olive oil around the mosque, nor of dirty products, nor of anything from which an irremovable stain can be feared.

Rabbits and poultry should not be allowed around the mosque, but should have a fixed place. Partridges and slaughtered barnyard birds should only be sold with the crop plucked, so that the bad and rotten can be distinguished from the good ones. Rabbits should only be sold skinned, so that the bad ones may be seen. If they are left lying in their skins, they go bad.

Egg sellers must have bowls of water in front of them, so that bad eggs may be recognized.

Truffles should not be sold around the mosque, for this is a delicacy of the dissolute.[1]

Bread should only be sold by weight. Both the baking and the crumbs must be supervised, as it is often "dressed up." By this I mean that they take a small quantity of good dough and use it to "dress up" the front of the bread which is made with bad flour....

The cheese which comes from al-Madāin[2] should not be sold, for it is the foul residue of the curds, of no value. If people saw how it is made, no one would ever eat it. Cheese should only be sold in small leather bottles, which can be washed and cleaned every day. That which is in bowls cannot be secured from worms and mold.

Mixed meats should not be sold on one stall, nor should fat and lean meat be sold on one stall. Tripe should only be sold dry on boards, for water both spoils it and increases its weight. The entrails of sheep must be taken out, so that they should not be sold with the meat and at the same price, which would be a fraud. The heads of sheep should not be skinned, except for the young. The guts must always be removed from the bodies of animals, except lambs, and should not be left there, for this too would be an occasion for fraud.

No slaughtering should take place in the market, except in the closed slaughterhouses, and the blood and refuse should be taken outside the market. Animals should be slaughtered only with a long knife. All slaughtering knives should be of this kind. No animal which is good for field work may be slaughtered, and a trustworthy and incorruptible commissioner should go to the slaughterhouse every day to make sure of this; the only exception is an animal with a defect. Nor should a female still capable of producing young be slaughtered. No animal should be sold in the market which has been brought already slaughtered, until its owner establishes that it is not stolen....

Women should be forbidden to do their washing in the gardens, for these are dens for fornication.

Grapes in large quantities should not be sold to anyone of whom it is known that he would press them to make wine. This is a matter for supervision.

Fruit must not be sold before it is ripe for this is bad, except only for grapes, which are good for pregnant women and for the sick....

The seller of grapes should have baskets and nets in which to arrange them, as this is the best protection for them.

Cakes should be properly baked and should only be made wide, as thin ones are good only for the sick.

If someone assays gold or silver coins for a person, and later it emerges that there is base metal in them, the assayer must make good, for he deceived and betrayed the owner of the coins, who placed his trust in him. Swindlers when detected must be denounced in all crafts, but above all in assaying coin, for in this case the swindler can only be a person who is expert in matters of coin.

Women should not sit by the river bank in the summer if men appear there.

No barber may remain alone with a woman in his booth. He should work in the open market in a place where he can be seen and observed.

The cupper.[3] He should only let blood into a special jar with graduation marks, so that he can see how much blood he has let. He should not let blood at his discretion, for this can lead to sickness and death.

---

[1] Apparently a common view. A Spanish Arabic proverb includes the large consumption of truffles among the signs by which the dissolute may be recognized.

[2] A term applied to the fertile islands in the lower Guadalquivir, below Seville.

[3] Muslims practiced "wet" bloodletting. A cup was applied to the skin to create a mild suction, and then the swollen area was cut with the proper tools. A second application of the cup drew out the blood.

The water wheel. Most of the holes for the spindles should be wedged, as this is best for its working.

No one may be allowed to claim knowledge of a matter in which he is not competent, especially in the craft of medicine, for this can lead to loss of life....

Only a skilled physician should sell potions and electuaries and mix drugs. These things should not be bought from the grocer or the apothecary whose only concern is to take money without knowledge; they spoil the prescriptions and kill the sick, for they mix medicines which are unknown and of contrary effect....

Only good and trustworthy men, known as such among people, may be allowed to have dealings with women in buying and in selling. The tradespeople must watch over this carefully. The women who weave brocades must be banned from the market, for they are nothing but harlots.

On festival days men and women shall not walk on the same path when they go to cross the river....

The basins in the public baths should be covered. If they are left uncovered, they cannot be protected from pollution, yet this is a place of purity. The bath attendant, the masseur, and the barber should not walk about in the baths without a loincloth or drawers.

A Muslim must not massage a Jew or a Christian nor throw away his refuse nor clean his latrines. The Jew and the Christian are better fitted for such trades, since they are the trades of those who are vile. A Muslim should not attend to the animal of a Jew or of a Christian, nor serve him as a muleteer, nor hold his stirrup. If any Muslim is known to do this, he should be denounced.

Muslim women shall be prevented from entering their abominable churches for the priests are evil-doers, fornicators, and sodomites. Frankish[1] women must be forbidden to enter the church except on days of religious services or festivals, for it is their habit to eat and drink and fornicate with the priests, among whom there is not one who has not two or more women with whom he sleeps. This has become a custom among them, for they have permitted what is forbidden and forbidden what is permitted. The priests should be ordered to marry, as they do in the eastern lands. If they wanted to, they would....

A Jew must not slaughter meat for a Muslim. The Jews should be ordered to arrange their own butcher's stalls.

A garment belonging to a sick man,[2] a Jew, or a Christian must not be sold without indicating its origin; likewise, the garment of a debauchee. Dough must not be taken from a sick man for baking his bread. Neither eggs nor chickens nor milk not any other foodstuff should be bought from him. They should only buy and sell among themselves.

The sewer men must be forbidden to dig holes in the streets, as this harms them and causes injury to people, except when they are cleaning the entire street.

Itinerant fortune-tellers must be forbidden to go from house to house, as they are thieves and fornicators.

A drunkard must not be flogged until he is sober again.

Prostitutes must be forbidden to stand bareheaded outside the houses. Decent women must not bedeck themselves to resemble them. They must be stopped from coquetry and party making among themselves, even if they have been permitted to do this [by their husbands]. Dancing girls must be forbidden to bare their heads.

No contractor,[3] policeman, Jew, or Christian may be allowed to dress in the costume of people of position, of a jurist, or of a worthy man. They must on the contrary be abhorred and shunned and should not be greeted with the formula, "Peace be with you," for the devil has gained mastery over them and has made them forget the name of God. They are the devil's party, "and indeed the devil's party are the losers."[4] They must have a distinguishing sign by which they are recognized to their shame.

Catamites[5] must be driven out of the city and punished wherever any one of them is found. They should not be allowed to move around among the Muslims nor to participate in festivities, for they are debauchees accursed by God and man alike.

When fruit or other foodstuffs are found in the possession of thieves, they should be distributed in prisons and given to the poor. If the owner comes to claim his goods and is recognized, they should be returned to him.

---

[1] That is, Christians from outside Spain and from those parts of Spain not under Muslim rule.

[2] Probably lepers are meant.

[3] I.e., tax farmer.

[4] Qur'an 57:22.

[5] A young man who has sexual relationships with men.

5.5 The role of royal patronage: Henry I, *Privileges for the Citizens of London* (1130–1133). Original in Latin.

Towns were permanent commercial centers, and their citizens often demanded and received special privileges that gave them considerable autonomy. In this charter, Henry I, king of England (r.1100–1135), grants privileges to the citizens of London *c*.1130, basing them on grants handed out by previous kings. The Londoners have the right to the "farm" or revenues of their own borough, Middlesex. They hold it from the king and his heirs as a vassal might hold a fief. The citizens are also allowed to have their own courts and freedom from various duties and tolls (e.g., passage and lestage—all called "customs" here). The reference to "sokes" in this text means "jurisdictions," which, among other things, were sources of revenues.

1. How do the freedoms granted by King Henry compare with those granted by Archbishop Frederick in his *Agreement with Colonists*, p. 246 above?
2. What might Henry have gained from granting these privileges?

[Source: *English Historical Documents*, vol. 2: 1042–1189, ed. David C. Douglas and George W. Greenaway, 2nd ed. (London: Routledge, 1981), pp. 1012–13 (slightly modified).]

Henry, by the grace of God, king of the English, to the archbishop of Canterbury, and to the bishops and abbots, and earls and barons and justices and sheriffs, and to all his liegemen, both French and English, of the whole of England, greeting. Know that I have granted to my citizens of London that they shall hold Middlesex at "farm" for 300 pounds "by tale" for themselves and their heirs from me and my heirs, so that the citizens shall appoint as sheriff from themselves whomsoever they may choose, and shall appoint from among themselves as justice whomsoever they choose to look after the pleas of my crown and the pleadings which arise in connection with them. No other shall be justice over the men of London. And the citizens shall not plead outside the walls of the city in respect of any plea; and they shall be quit of scot and of Danegeld and the murder-fine.[1] Nor shall any of them be compelled to offer trial by battle.[2] And if any one of the citizens shall be impleaded [sued] in respect of the pleas of the crown, let him prove himself to be a man of London by an oath which shall be judged in the city. Let no one be billeted within the walls of the city, either of my household, or by the force of anyone else. And let all the men of London and their property be quit and free from toll and passage and lestage and from all other customs throughout all England and at the seaports. And let the churches and barons and citizens hold and have well and in peace their sokes, with all their customs, so that those who dwell in these sokes shall pay no customs except to him who possesses the soke, or to the steward whom he has placed there. And a man of London shall not be fined at mercy[3] except according to his "were,"[4] that is to say, up to 100 shillings: this applies to an offence which can be punished by a fine. And there shall no longer be "miskenning"[5] in the hustings court, nor in the folk-moot,[6] nor in other pleas within the city. And the hustings court shall sit once a week, to wit, on

[1] The "murder-fine" (*murdrum*) penalized an entire community for the death of any Norman. It dated from the period after the Norman Conquest, when feelings ran high against the invaders. The Londoners are here exempt from paying this.

[2] This was a duel to determine which party was in the right; the tradesmen of London preferred other forms of trial.

[3] I.e., fined at discretion, and to an unlimited amount.

[4] The "were" was the wergild, the price a murderer had to pay as compensation to the kin of his victim. In this case, the price of 100 shillings is slightly higher than the "were" of a commoner but lower than that of a thegn.

[5] A "miskenning" was a verbal error in reciting the formal oaths protesting innocence; this entailed the loss of the case.

[6] The "hustings court" and the "folk-moot" were both judicial assemblies, but the folk-moot was slightly larger.

Monday. I will cause my citizens to have their lands and pledges and debts within the city and outside it. And in respect of the lands about which they make claim to me, I will do them right according to the law of the city. And if anyone has taken toll or custom from the citizens of London, then the citizens of London may take from the borough or village where toll or custom has been levied as much as the man of London gave for toll, and more also may be taken for a penalty. And let all debtors to the citizens of London discharge their debts, or prove in London that they do not owe them; and if they refuse either to pay or to come and make such proof, then the citizens to whom the debts are due may take pledges within the city either from the borough or from the village or from the county in which the debtor lives. And the citizens shall have their hunting chases, as well and fully as had their predecessors, namely, in Chiltern and Middlesex and Surrey. Witness: the bishop of Winchester; Robert, son of Richer; Hugh Bigot; Alfred of Totnes; William of Aubigny; Hubert the king's chamberlain; William of Montfiquet; Hagulf "de Tani"; John Belet; Robert, son of Siward. Given at Westminster.

CHURCH REFORM

5.6 The pope's challenge: Gregory VII, *Admonition to Henry IV* (1075). Original in Latin.

Both popes and emperors initially supported the movement for Church reform, which demanded that the clergy be celibate and gain their offices according to canon law—that is, without lay interference. But as the issue of Church leadership came to the fore, the two powers inevitably clashed, for kings did not consider themselves mere laymen. When, in 1075, King Henry IV (r.1056–1106) "invested"—put into office—his episcopal candidate at Milan, Tedald, Pope Gregory VII (1073–1085) complained bitterly in a letter of admonition to Henry. Although the Investiture Conflict was long in the making, this letter may be said to have crystallized it.

1. What did Gregory have in mind when he demanded that Henry "obey the Apostolic See as becomes a Christian king"?
2. How did Gregory understand his relationship to Saint Peter?

[Source: *The Correspondence of Pope Gregory VII: Selected Letters from the Registrum*, trans. Ephriam Emerton (New York: Columbia University Press, 1969), pp. 86–90 (notes added).]

Gregory, bishop, servant of God's servants, to King Henry, greeting and the apostolic benediction—but with the understanding that he obeys the Apostolic See as becomes a Christian king.

Considering and weighing carefully to how strict a judge we must render an account of the stewardship committed to us by St. Peter, prince of the Apostles, we have hesitated to send you the apostolic benediction, since you are reported to be in voluntary communication with men who are under the censure of the Apostolic See and of a synod.[1] If this is true, you yourself know that you cannot receive the favor of God nor the apostolic blessing unless you shall first put away those excommunicated persons and force them to do penance and shall yourself obtain

[1] "Under the censure": Gregory is referring to the Roman Lenten Synod of 1075, where five of Henry's advisors had been excommunicated. It was a sin for a Christian to associate with excommunicates.

absolution and forgiveness for your sin by due repentance and satisfaction.[1] Wherefore we counsel Your Excellency, if you feel yourself guilty in this matter, to make your confession at once to some pious bishop who, with our sanction, may impose upon you a penance suited to the offense, may absolve you, and with your consent in writing may be free to send us a true report of the manner of your penance.

We marvel exceedingly that you have sent us so many devoted letters and displayed such humility by the spoken words of your legates, calling yourself a son of our Holy Mother Church and subject to us in the faith, singular in affection, a leader in devotion, commending yourself with every expression of gentleness and reverence, and yet in action showing yourself most bitterly hostile to the canons and apostolic decrees in those duties especially required by loyalty to the Church. Not to mention other cases, the way you have observed your promises in the Milan affair, made through your mother and through bishops, our colleagues, whom we sent to you and what your intentions were in making them is evident to all.[2] And now, heaping wounds upon wounds, you have handed over the sees of Fermo and Spoleto—if indeed a church may be given over by any human power—to persons entirely unknown to us, whereas it is not lawful to consecrate anyone except after probation and with due knowledge.

It would have been becoming to you, since you confess yourself be a son of the Church, to give more respectful attention to the master of the Church, that is, to Peter, prince of the Apostles. To him, if you are of the Lord's flock, you have been committed for your pasture, since Christ said to him: "Peter, feed my sheep," and again: "To thee are given the keys of Heaven, and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in Heaven and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth shall be loosed in Heaven." Now, while we, unworthy sinner that we are, stand in his place of power, still whatever you send to us, whether in writing or by word of mouth, he himself receives, and while we read what is written or hear the voice of those who speak, he discerns with subtle insight from what spirit the message comes. Wherefore Your Highness should beware lest any defect of will toward the Apostolic See be found in your words or your messages and should pay due reverence, not to us but to Almighty God, in all matters touching the welfare of the Christian faith and the status of the Church. And this we say although our Lord deigned to declare: "He who heareth you heareth me; and he who despiseth you despiseth me."

We know that one who does not refuse to obey God in those matters in which we have spoken according to the statutes of the holy fathers does not scorn to observe our admonitions even as if he had received them from the lips of the Apostle himself. For if our Lord, out of reverence for the chair of Moses, commanded the Apostles to observe the teaching of the scribes and pharisees who sat thereon, there can be no doubt that the apostolic and Gospel teaching, whose seat and foundation is Christ, should be accepted and maintained by those who are chosen to the service of teaching.

At a synod held at Rome during the current year, and over which Divine Providence willed us to preside, several of your subjects being present, we saw that the order of the Christian religion had long been greatly disturbed and its chief and proper function, the redemption of souls, had fallen low and through the wiles of the Devil had been trodden under foot. Startled by this danger and by the manifest ruin of the Lord's flock we returned to the teaching of the holy fathers, declaring no novelties nor any inventions of our own, but holding that the primary and only rule of discipline and the well-trodden way of the saints should again be sought and followed, all wandering paths to be abandoned. For we know that there is no other way of salvation and eternal life for the flock of Christ and their shepherds except that shown by him who said: "I am the door and he who enters by me shall be saved and shall find pasture." This was taught by the Apostles and observed by the holy fathers and we have learned it from the Gospels and from every page of Holy Writ.

This edict,[3] which some who place the honor of men above that of God call an intolerable burden, we, using the right word, call rather a truth and a light necessary for salvation, and we have given judgment that it is to be heartily accepted and obeyed, not only by you and your subjects but by all princes and peoples who confess and worship Christ—though it is our especial wish and would be especially fitting for you, that you should excel others

[1] Christians are to confess each sin to a prelate, who then assigns them penance (for example fasting on bread and water for some length of time) and absolves and forgives the sin.

[2] The promises, made at Easter in 1074, were not to appoint Tedald bishop of Milan.

[3] It is not clear what edict Gregory is referring to.

in devotion to Christ as you are their superior in fame, in station and in valor.

Nevertheless, in order that these demands may not seem to you too burdensome or unfair we have sent you word by your own liegemen not to be troubled by this reform of an evil practice but to send us prudent and pious legates from your own people. If these can show in any reasonable way how we can moderate the decision of the holy fathers [at the council] saving the honor of the eternal king and without peril to our own soul, we will condescend to hear their counsel. It would in fact have been the fair thing for you, even if you had not been so graciously admonished, to make reasonable inquiry of us in what respect we had offended you or assailed your honor, before you proceeded to violate the apostolic decrees. But how little you cared for our warnings or for doing right was shown by your later actions.

However, since the long-enduring patience of God summons you to improvement, we hope that with increase of understanding your heart and mind may be turned to obey the commands of God. We warn you with a father's love that you accept the rule of Christ, that you consider the peril of preferring your own honor to his, that you do not hamper by your actions the freedom of that Church which he deigned to bind to himself as a bride by a divine union, but, that she may increase as greatly as possible, you will begin to lend to Almighty God and to St. Peter, by whom also your own glory may merit increase, the aid of your valor by faithful devotion.

Now you ought to recognize your special obligation to them for the triumph over your enemies which they have granted you, and while they are making you happy and singularly prosperous, they ought to find your devotion increased by their favor to you. That the fear of God, in whose hand is all the might of kings and emperors, may impress this upon you more than any admonitions of mine, bear in mind what happened to Saul after he had won a victory by command of the prophet, how he boasted of his triumph, scorning the prophet's admonitions, and how he was rebuked by the Lord, and also what favor followed David the king as a reward for his humility in the midst of the tokens of his bravery.[1]

Finally, as to what we have read in your letters and do not mention here we will give you no decided answer until your legates, Radbod, Adalbert and Odescalcus, to whom we entrust this, have returned to us and have more fully reported your decision upon the matters which we commissioned them to discuss with you.

5.7 The royal response: Henry IV, *Letter to Gregory VII* (1075). Original in Latin.

Henry reacted vigorously to Gregory's challenge. He immediately met with his bishops at the city of Worms, and the assembly denounced Gregory (calling him by his old name, Hildebrand) as a usurper of the papal throne. The letter below, which was circulated within Germany, charges Gregory with throwing the Church into chaos and calls upon him to resign. A milder version was sent to the pope himself.

1. How did Henry try to undermine Gregory's understanding of Saint Peter?
2. By what right did Henry demand that Gregory "descend"?

[Source: *Imperial Lives and Letters*, ed. Robert L. Benson; trans. Theodor E. Mommsen and Karl F. Morrison (New York: Columbia University Press, 2000), pp. 150–51.]

[1] After Saul's victory against the Ammonites (1 Sam. 11:15), he refused to listen to Samuel's admonitions and therefore lost his crown to David (1 Sam. 16:1–13).

Henry, King not by usurpation, but by the pious ordination of God,[1] to Hildebrand, now not Pope, but false monk:

You have deserved such a salutation as this because of the confusion you have wrought; for you left untouched no order of the Church which you could make a sharer of confusion instead of honor, of malediction instead of benediction.

For to discuss a few outstanding points among many: Not only have you dared to touch the rectors of the holy Church—the archbishops, the bishops, and the priests, anointed of the Lord as they are[2]—but you have trodden them under foot like slaves who know not what their lord may do.[3] In crushing them you have gained for yourself acclaim from the mouth of the rabble. You have judged that all these know nothing, while you alone know everything. In any case, you have sedulously used this knowledge not for edification, but for destruction,[4] so greatly that we may believe Saint Gregory, whose name you have arrogated to yourself, rightly made this prophesy of you when he said: "From the abundance of his subjects, the mind of the prelate is often exalted, and he thinks that he has more knowledge than anyone else, since he sees that he has more power than anyone else."[5]

And we, indeed, bore with all these abuses, since we were eager to preserve the honor of the Apostolic See. But you construed our humility as fear, and so you were emboldened to rise up even against the royal power itself, granted to us by God. You dared to threaten to take the kingship away from us—as though we had received the kingship from you, as though kingship and empire were in your hand and not in the hand of God.

Our Lord, Jesus Christ, has called us to kingship, but has not called you to the priesthood. For you have risen by these steps: namely, by cunning, which the monastic profession abhors, to money; by money to favor; by favor to the sword. By the sword you have come to the throne of peace, and from the throne of peace you have destroyed the peace. You have armed subjects against their prelates; you who have not been called by God have taught that our bishops who have been called by God are to be spurned; you have usurped for laymen the bishops' ministry over priests, with the result that these laymen depose and condemn the very men whom the laymen themselves received as teachers from the hand of God, through the imposition of the hands of bishops.

You have also touched me, one who, though unworthy, has been anointed to kingship among the anointed. This wrong you have done to me, although as the tradition of the holy Fathers has taught, I am to be judged by God alone and am not to be deposed for any crime unless—may it never happen—I should deviate from the Faith. For the prudence of the holy bishops entrusted the judgment and the deposition even of Julian the Apostate not to themselves, but to God alone. The true pope Saint Peter also exclaims, "Fear God, honor the king."[6] You, however, since you do not fear God, dishonor me, ordained of Him.

Wherefore, when Saint Paul gave no quarter to an angel from heaven if the angel should preach heterodoxy,[7] he did not except you who are now teaching heterodoxy throughout the earth. For he says, "If anyone, either I or an angel from heaven, preach any other Gospel unto you than that which we have preached unto you, let him be accursed."[8] Descend, therefore, condemned by this anathema and by the common judgment of all our bishops and of ourself. Relinquish the Apostolic See which you have arrogated. Let another mount the throne of Saint Peter, another who will not cloak violence with religion but who will teach the pure doctrine of Saint Peter.

I, Henry, King by the grace of God, together with all our bishops, say to you: Descend! Descend!

---

[1] Rom. 13:2.

[2] Ps. 105:15; Douay Ps. 104:15; 2 Sam. 1:14.

[3] See John 15:15.

[4] See 2 Cor. 10:8, 13:10.

[5] Gregory I, *Pastoral Care* 2.6.

[6] 1 Pet. 2:17.

[7] That is, doctrine that diverges from correct belief.

[8] Gal. 1:18.

5.8 The papal view: Gregory VII, *Letter to Hermann of Metz* (1076). Original in Latin.

Soon after receiving Henry's letter, the pope met with *his* bishops and excommunicated Henry. Many of Henry's supporters abandoned the king, and Bishop Hermann of Metz, one of a handful of bishops at Worms who had opposed the condemnation of Gregory, was important in fomenting the resulting war. Yet Hermann needed arguments to back up the actions of the pope and convince others to separate themselves from the excommunicated king. Gregory supplied some reasons in this letter, downgrading the dignity of kingship and maintaining that the act of excommunicating kings had a long and illustrious history.

1. How did Gregory justify his excommunication of Henry IV?
2. What reasons did Gregory give for considering the "episcopal dignity"—that is, the dignity of bishops—to be greater than the "royal dignity."

[Source: Herbert E.J. Cowdrey, *The Register of Pope Gregory VII, 1073–1085: An English Translation* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2002), pp. 208–11 (notes modified).]

Gregory, bishop, servant of the servants of God, to Hermann, bishop of Metz, greeting and apostolic blessing.

By your questioning you are seeking many things of me who am exceedingly busy, and you send a messenger who presses me too much at his own pleasure. Accordingly, if I do not reply sufficiently, I ask you to bear it with patience.

Therefore how I am in my bodily health, or how the Romans and the Normans[1] who are proving themselves to be with regard to me, the bearer of this letter may tell you. But as regards the other matters about which you have questioned me, would that blessed Peter[2] might answer through me, for he is often honored or suffers injury in me, his servant such as I am.

Now, who the excommunicated bishops, priests, or laymen are there is no need that you should inquire of me, for undoubtedly they are those who are known to have held communion with the excommunicated King Henry, if it is right that he should be called king. For they do not scruple to set human favor or fear before the precept of the eternal King, nor do they fear by their support to drive their king towards the wrath of Almighty God. He, however, by communicating with his own courtiers who were excommunicated for the simoniac heresy[3] has not feared to incur excommunication, and has not been ashamed to draw others to be excommunicated by communicating with him. Concerning such men, what else is there that we might think except what we have learnt in the Psalms: "The fool has said in his heart, 'There is no God,'" and again, "All have together been made unprofitable" in their intentions?[4]

Now, as for those who say, "it is not right that the king should be excommunicated," although in view of their great folly we have no need so much as to answer them, yet lest we seem to pass impatiently over their foolishness we direct them to the words or deeds of the holy fathers, in order that we may call them back to sound teaching. Let them, therefore, read what blessed Peter commanded to the Christian people at the ordination of St. Clement about him whom they knew not to have

[1] When Gregory spoke of the Romans, he meant the people—and above all the nobles—of Rome. By the Normans he meant the rulers of Southern Italy, with whom the papacy had been allied since 1059.

[2] This refers to St. Peter, whose "servant" but also spokesman Gregory considered himself.

[3] Gregory called the purchasing of Church offices "simony" or the "simoniac heresy" after Simon Magus, who in Acts 8:18–24 offered money to Peter and John if they would give him the power to confer the Holy Spirit.

[4] Ps. 14:1–3; Douay Ps. 13:1–3.

the favor of the pontiff.[1] Let them learn why the Apostle says, "Ready to avenge every act of disobedience,"[2] and of whom he says, "With such a man not even to take food."[3] Let them ponder why Pope Zacharias deposed the king of the Franks and absolved all the Frankish people from the bond of the oath that they had taken to him.[4] Let them also learn in the Register of blessed Gregory that in privileges that he drew up for certain churches he not only excommunicated kings and dukes who contravened his words but also adjudged that they should forfeit their office.[5] Nor let them overlook that blessed Ambrose not only excommunicated Theodosius—not only a king but indeed an emperor in habitual conduct and power, but even debarred him from remaining in church in the place of the priests.[6]

But perhaps these men wish to have it thought that, when God three times committed his church to blessed Peter saying, "Feed my sheep,"[7] he made an exception of kings. Why do they not take notice, or rather shamefacedly confess, that, when God gave principally to blessed Peter the power of binding and loosing in heaven and upon earth,[8] he excepted nobody and withheld nothing from his power. For when a man denies that he can be bound by the chain of the church, it remains that he must deny that he can be loosed by its power; and whoever brazenly denies this altogether separates himself from Christ. And if the holy apostolic see, deciding through the pre-eminent power that is divinely conferred upon it, settles spiritual matters, why not also secular matters? In truth, as for the kings and princes of this world who place their own honor and temporal gains before the righteousness of God, and who by neglecting his honor seek their own, whose members they are or to whom they cleave your charity is not in ignorance. For just as those who set God before their own entire will and obey his command rather than men[9] are members of Christ,[10] so also those of whom we have been speaking above are members of Antichrist. If, then, spiritual men are judged when it is necessary, why are not secular ones the more under constraint concerning their wicked deeds?

But perhaps they think that the royal dignity excels the episcopal. From their origins they can gather how greatly they each differ from the other. For human pride has instituted the former; divine mercy has instituted the latter. The former ceaselessly snatches at vain glory; the latter always aspires to the heavenly life. And let them learn what the blessed Pope Anastasius wrote to the Emperor Anastasius about these dignities,[11] and how blessed Ambrose distinguished between these dignities in his pastoral letter: "The episcopal honor and excellence," he said, "if you compare them with the splendor of kings and the diadem of emperors, leave them much more inferior than if you compare the metal of lead with the splendor of gold."[12] Being not unaware of these things, the Emperor Constantine the Great chose not the principal but the least place to sit amongst the bishops; for he knew that "God resists the proud, but he gives favor to the humble."[13]

Meanwhile, brother, we are letting you know that, having received letters from certain of our brother bishops and dukes, by the authority of the apostolic see we have given licence to these bishops to absolve those excommunicated by us who are not afraid to keep themselves from communion with the king. As regards the king himself, [Henry IV] we have absolutely forbidden that anyone should venture to absolve him until his assured penitence

---

1 *Epistola Clementis prior*, chapter 18.

2 2 Cor. 10:6.

3 1 Cor. 5:11.

4 In 751, Pope Zacharias (741–752) sanctioned the deposition of Childeric III (r.743–*c.*751), the last of the Merovingian kings.

5 This refers to the letters of Pope Gregory the Great (590–604).

6 The reference is to St. Ambrose's measures against Emperor Theodosius I (r.379–395) after the emperor responded to a revolt at Thessalonica by massacring its inhabitants.

7 John 21:15–17.

8 See Matt. 16:19. The power of binding and loosing, as interpreted by the papacy, was the priestly power to impose penance and to administer absolution.

9 See Acts 5:29.

10 See 1 Cor. 6:15.

11 This refers to a letter from Pope Anastasius II (496–498) to Emperor Anastasius I (r.491–518).

12 We now know that the work in question was not written by St. Ambrose.

13 James 4:6. The reference is to Emperor Constantine I (r.306–337) at the Council of Nicaea (325).

and sincere satisfaction shall have been reported to us by trustworthy witnesses, so that we may at the same time ascertain how, if divine mercy shall look upon him, we may absolve him to the honor of God and to his own salvation. For it is not hidden from us that there are some of you who, seizing any pretext that might seem to come from us, would be led astray by fear or human favor and presume to absolve him if we were not to forbid, and to add wound to wound in place of medicine. If any who are bishops in truth should forbid them, they would conclude that they were not defending righteousness but pursuing enmities.

Now, as for the ordination and consecration of bishops who venture to communicate with the excommunicated king, as blessed Gregory testifies, before God they become an execration.[1] For when they proudly resist to obey the apostolic see, as Samuel is witness, they fall into the crime of idolatry.[2] For if he is said to be of God who is stirred up by the zeal of divine love to destroy vices, he assuredly denies that he is of God who refuses, so far as he is able, to reprove the life of carnal men. And if he is accursed who withholds his sword from blood,[3] that is, the word of preaching from the slaying of carnal life, how much more is he accursed who from fear or favor drives the soul of his brother to eternal perdition [damnation]? In sum, that the accursed and excommunicated can bless and bestow upon anyone the divine grace that they do not fear to deny by their own works, can be discovered in no ruling of the holy fathers.

Meantime, we order you to have a word with the venerable archbishop of Trier,[4] our brother that is, who is to forbid the bishop of Toul[5] from intruding into the affairs of the abbess of the monastery of Remiremont,[6] and who, in concert with you, is to annul whatever he has decided against her. Now, as regards Matilda,[7] the daughter of us both and the faithful handmaid of blessed Peter, what you wish, I wish. But in what state of life she should continue under God's direction, I do not yet grasp for certain. But of Godfrey her late husband,[8] you may know for a certainty that I, although a sinner, frequently make memorial before God; for neither his enmity nor any vain consideration holds me back and, moved by your own brotherly love and Matilda's pleading, I long for his salvation.

May Almighty God, by the intercession of the queen of heaven, Mary ever-virgin, and by the authority of the blessed apostles Peter and Paul which is granted by him to them, absolve from all sins both you and all our brothers in whatever order who are defending the Christian religion and the dignity of the apostolic see; and, giving to you the increase of faith, hope, and charity, may he make you strong in the defense of his law, so that you may deserve to attain to eternal salvation. Given at Tivoli on August 25th, in the fourteenth indiction.

THE CLERGY IN ACTION

5.9 Dressing for the liturgy: *Vesting Prayers* (*c.*1000?). Original in Latin.

Even before the Gregorian reform, clerics themselves developed devotions to prepare spiritually for their sacramental duties. One practice used the special garments that the priest wore to celebrate the Mass to help him cultivate purity and virtue, prescribing prayers to be said as each liturgical vestment was put on. These vesting prayers developed into a

[1] This is a reference to a letter of Gregory the Great.

[2] See 1 Sam. 15:23.

[3] See Jer. 48:10.

[4] Bishop Udo.

[5] Bishop Pibo.

[6] Gisela.

[7] Matilda was countess of Tuscany and a staunch supporter of Gregory.

[8] Godfrey, duke of Lorraine, was killed on February 26, 1076.

pre-Mass ritual performed in the sacristy: the clerics participating in the liturgy chanted a few psalms to put them in the proper frame of mind and then recited prayers as they donned their vestments. This clerical devotion emerged in response to ninth-century Carolingian reforms (as the manuscript excerpted below, dated to the late tenth century or the beginning of the eleventh, demonstrates), but was more widely disseminated through the eleventh-century Gregorian movement. Vesting prayers proved incredibly popular with clerics and were required until the Second Vatican Council in 1965 made them optional. Brief prayers such as these were sometimes recorded before the text or *ordo* of the Mass, but they were also copied into margins and on blank spaces at the beginning and ends of liturgical manuscripts. Often, as in the example below, variant prayers are given so that clerics could choose versions that spoke to them.

1. Why and how did clothing have moral significance for the clergy?
2. How was each prayer suited to the garment item associated with it?

[Source: Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana, Ottoboniensis Latinus 6, fol. 9v. Translated and introduced by Maureen C. Miller.]

Here begins the rite (*ordo)* for a bishop or priest to prepare himself to say Mass.

First, chant the psalms "Quam dilecta," "Benedixisti," "Inclina," and "Credidi."[1] Then recite the "Kyrie eleison" and the Lord's Prayer.[2] Then pray,

Let your mercy, O God, be upon us
You will turn, O God, and bring us to life
Show us, O Lord, your mercy
And enter not into judgment with your servant
Hear, O Lord, my prayer.[3]

To the amice:[4] Rend, O Lord, my garment and wrap me in joy. To the same: Protect my shoulders, O Lord, with the grace of the Holy Spirit and gird my spirit, all sins having been removed, [so that I might] sacrifice to you, O God, [who] lives and reigns forever.

To the alb:[5] Clothe me, O Lord, in the vestment of salvation and gird me with the breastplate of fortitude. To the same: Gird me, O Lord, with the armor of faith, so that having been shielded from the arrows of iniquity, I might have the strength to preserve righteousness and justice. To the same: Omnipresent and eternal God, I humbly beseech you in order that having cast off the deception of all evasions and put on this white garment, I might be worthy to follow you into the realm of true joy.

To the cincture:[6] Equip me, O Lord, with a watchfulness for my soul, lest my mind be warped by a prideful spirit. To the same: Gird me, O Lord, with virtue and make my soul immaculate. To the same: Fasten most powerfully upon my thigh, O Lord, your sword, so that I may be able manfully to vanquish your enemies with the steadfast hope of eternal truth.

[1] Psalms 84, 85, 86, and 116; Douay Ps. 83, 84, 85, and 115, here identified by their opening word or words in the Latin in which they would have been chanted.

[2] The "Kyrie eleison" is a brief Greek prayer incorporated into the Latin Mass during the early Middle Ages. Meaning "Lord have mercy," the phrase appears in the Greek translation of the Old Testament (the Septuagint) and in the New Testament. The Lord's Prayer is thus called because the Gospels of Matthew (6:9–15) and Luke (11:2–4) describe Jesus teaching it to his disciples. It is also known by its opening phrase as the Our Father (in Latin, *Pater noster*).

[3] All of these are lines from the Psalms: 33:22, 85:7–8, 143:2, 143:1; Douay Ps. 32:22, 84:7–8; 142:2; 142:1.

[4] The amice, the first vestment to be put on, was a rectangular piece of linen or cotton with ties extending from the long ends of one side. It was draped over the shoulders with the ties crossing the chest, crossing again in back, and then tied in front. It likely served to protect the neckline of other vestments from grime (the amice being more easily washable).

[5] A white linen or cotton long-sleeved tunic that was the base garment worn for the Mass and other ceremonies.

[6] A belt worn over the alb and used to adjust its length by pulling fabric up over the belt.

To the stole:[1] Place the stole of justice around my neck, O Lord, and purify my soul of all sinful corruption; break the chain of my sins, so that having taken up the yoke of your service, I might be worthy to attend you with fear and reverence.

To the chasuble:[2] Robe me, O Lord, with the ornament of humility, love, and peace so that having been completely fortified with virtues I might be able to withstand sins and enemies of mind and body, through you, Jesus Christ.

5.10 Keeping tabs: *A Visitation Record* (1268). Original in Latin.

Reformers not only disseminated "best practices" for the clergy, but they also made more rigorous and systematic efforts to enforce these standards. An important tool was the visitation of parishes. Church councils from the fifth century set out the requirement that bishops, or their delegates, visit the churches of their dioceses to inspect their physical condition, their equipment (the books and ceremonial objects essential to delivering pastoral care), their ministers, and more generally the spiritual and moral condition of both clergy and laity. Sporadic prescriptive and documentary sources reveal episcopal attempts to carry out visitations from the ninth through the twelfth centuries, but it is only in the thirteenth century that we begin to get detailed records produced by visitations. Usually the checklist or questionnaire that the prelate carried into the field does not survive, but the notes taken down by the scribe or notary accompanying the visitor reveal ecclesiastical concerns and the standards being enforced. Translated below are the records of a visitation of the churches in the deanery (an ecclesiastical district within a large diocese) of Demouville in the Norman see of Bayeux. It was conducted in 1268 by Henri de Vézelay, then archdeacon of Bayeux, on behalf of his bishop. Henri went on to have a brilliant career in royal administration, serving as chancellor and advisor to French kings Louis IX (Saint Louis, r.1226–1270) and his son Philip III the Bold (r.1270–1285).

1. Why did Henri de Vézelay care about a church gate, an old Missal, and an unsecured baptismal font?
2. What sorts of moral issues did Henri care about?

[Source: L. Delisle, "Visites pastorales de maître Henri de Vezelai, archidiacre d'Hiémois en 1267 et 1268," *Bibliothèque de l'École des Chartres* 54 (1893): 465–67. Translated and introduced by Maureen C. Miller.]

[1] A sort of liturgical scarf worn by deacons and priests, but especially associated with priestly status. Usually eight to ten feet long and two to three inches wide, the stole was put on over the alb, resting on the neck with both ends falling down straight over the front of the body.

[2] The chasuble was the outermost vestment worn by a Christian priest during the Mass. It was a poncho-like garment, often made of a precious fabric such as silk, and highly ornamented.

1268, ON THE MONDAY BEFORE THE FEAST OF BLESSED MICHAEL [24 SEPTEMBER 1268], DEANERY OF DEMOUVILLE.

At Robehomme the *chrismatorium*[1] should be restored and a Gradual and Psalter[2] ought to be bought. The spider cloth[3] above the altar ought to be removed, the blessed altar renewed and repaired, and thus we ordered the people of the place and their treasurers to do this. Garinus Hayche, a married man, is defamed[4] of Johanna, the unmarried daughter of William Viel.

TUESDAY [25 SEPTEMBER 1268]

At Bavent a few things are lacking in the church and its ornaments. A lantern ought to be bought for doing the viaticum.[5] Henry Hemet, a cleric, is defamed of Maltide, daughter of the deceased Noel and he has a child by her. Henry Prestrel is defamed of the wife of Hormont, she whom he had abjured, and he threw out his own wife. Master Gelscuel of Bigarz, a cleric, keeps his own concubine at home.

At Petiville the church gate is falling down and very dangerous. Neither the tabernacle where the body of the Lord [is kept] nor the font are secured due to the negligence of the priest.

At Varaville the Missal[6] is old and unreadable.

At Sallenelles we did not enter the church because the priest was absent and the key to the church could not be found.

At Amfreville the priest was absent, however we visited the church and came upon the chalice in a bag without any other cloth [protecting it]. The church was uncovered[7] through the negligence of the priest. Neither the receptacle where the body of the Lord is kept nor the [baptismal] font was secured. The vestments are very dirty and horrible. Finally, the priest arrived and everything was shown [to us] by him. He was ordered on pain of suspension to get a key for the receptacle for the body of Christ by the following Monday and to correct other things.

At Colombelles the church is being re-roofed; books are lacking.

At Giberville nothing is lacking in the church's ornaments, [but] the church is uncovered. The two chaplains frequent taverns. Thomas Diaconus, a cleric, is denounced for usury and for keeping a kitchen maid. William Synemande, an excommunicate, has been excommunicated several times for a long time. The cleric Aliotus keeps a kitchen maid. Regnaudus Basile, a cleric, is defamed of Petronilla, the widow of the deceased Martin son of Philip.

At Demouville nothing is lacking in the church or its ornaments. The cleric Henry, brother of the dean, is defamed of the widow Florencia. Herbert Boet has a child by Matilda. The cleric Richard Boti still has Marieta. Richard Carsanoz is defamed of Juliana, wife of Selle Guerart and took her to his native land.[8] The cleric Robert Biquet has Matilda and has a child with her. Men don't keep feast days.

---

[1] A *chrismatorium* is a vessel for storing chrism, a mixture of olive oil and balsam consecrated by the bishop that is used in the administration of several sacraments.

[2] The Gradual was a book containing the chants to be sung by the choir at Mass. It takes its name from the step (*gradus*) on which the cantor stood to lead the responsorial psalms intoned after the reading of the Epistle and before the Gospel. The Psalter was a book of the psalms used to recite the cycle of daily prayer known as the Divine Office, a devotion increasingly enjoined on priests from the twelfth century. It was also used to teach reading.

[3] A cloth protecting the altar from spiders and other potential sources of contamination.

[4] The visitor's inquiries allowed parishioners to comment on the conduct and morals of their pastor, but they also brought their own behavior under scrutiny. The passive verb *diffamatur* (here translated "defamed"), from *diffamo*, to accuse or slander, indicates that someone made an accusation of immoral, usually sexual, conduct.

[5] The viaticum was the Eucharist administered to those on the verge of death. The term originally denoted traveling provisions and in Christian usage conveyed the idea that the Eucharist would aid believers on the journey into eternal life. The concern registered here seems to be that if the clergy were summoned in the middle of the night to administer the viaticum, they would have a lamp to light their way while carrying the sacrament.

[6] The Missal is the liturgical book containing all the texts (prayers, readings) needed for saying Mass.

[7] *Ecclesia discooperta* likely comments on the state of the building's roofing.

[8] The text uses *patria*—fatherland, country—suggesting that Richard was not from Normandy.

THURSDAY [27 SEPTEMBER 1268]

At Banneville-la-Campagne the ornaments, corporals,[1] and vestments are dirty. The Breviary[2] is old and unreadable.

At Guillerville the church is poor. The ornaments are good enough.

At ... Émiéville [the church] lacks a key for the font and chrismatorium; the cemetery is not enclosed. These things ought to be corrected within three years. A Psalter and Manual[3] are also lacking. The person assigned to the church does not want to live here so the bishop holds the church. Robert Hardiz still has Luceta au Tabour, whom he is unable to have as his wife because of their consanguinity.

At Manneville the chrismatorium lacks a key through the priest's negligence. He also owes the church treasury three *sextaria* [of grain].

At Cagni all that was lacking in the church has been corrected.

At Vimont the person assigned to the church is still defamed of Petronilla, his blood relative whom he had abjured, and she goes about with him. We ordered a person to remove his straw from the church.

THE FIRST CRUSADE

5.11 Calling the crusade: Robert the Monk, *Pope Urban II Preaches the First Crusade* (1095). Original in Latin.

Byzantine emperors often sent letters or deputations to recruit mercenaries to help fight their wars. To counter the Seljuks, Emperor Alexius (r.1081–1118) sent two delegations to Pope Urban II asking for help. Urban chose to interpret the request in his own way; he left Rome to make a very long trip across the Alps. Among his many activities—stopping at various monasteries and churches, consecrating altars, giving sermons—he attended the Council of Clermont. There, after declaring the Truce of God and reminding the audience of laymen and clergy of their duty to keep the peace, Urban made a new sort of appeal; he called for a new—a holy—way to use arms: in a pilgrimage to the Holy Land. Later historians came to call the result of his call the First Crusade. We do not have Urban's exact words at Clermont. Rather we have a number of accounts of his sermon there, all written a bit later. The one by Robert the Monk (d.1122), who claims to have been an eyewitness, was probably written between 1106–1110 partly to drum up interest in a new crusading expedition.

1. What connection did Urban make between peace in Europe and war against the Seljuks?
2. What are the implications of Urban's appeal to "wrest that land from the wicked race, and subject it to yourselves"?

[1] A corporal is a piece of linen upon which the chalice and paten are placed on the altar.

[2] The Breviary is a liturgical book containing all the texts (psalms, antiphons, hymns, lessons) needed to recite the Divine Office. It appears to date from the eleventh century, and Pope Gregory VII is often credited with this abridged and simplified form of the hours suited to the active lives of secular clerics. Since it could replace several books—the Psalter, Antiphonary, Lectionary—the Breviary was well suited to rural churches.

[3] A Manual is a book containing ceremonial directions for performing various liturgies or services.

[Source: Dana C. Munro, ed., *Urban and the Crusaders*, University of Pennsylvania, Translation and Reprints from the Original Sources of European History, vol. 1, no. 2 (Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1895), pp. 5–8 (notes added).]

Oh, race of Franks, race from across the mountains,[1] race chosen and beloved by God—as shines forth in very many of your works—set apart from all nations by the situation of your country, as well as by your catholic faith and the honor of the holy church! To you our discourse is addressed and for you our exhortation is intended. We wish you to know what a grievous cause has led us to your country, what peril threatening you and all the faithful has brought us.

From the confines of Jerusalem and the city of Constantinople a horrible tale has gone forth and very frequently has been brought to our ears, namely, that a race from the kingdom of the Persians,[2] an accursed race, a race utterly alienated from God, a generation forsooth which has not directed its heart and has not entrusted its spirit to God, has invaded the lands of those Christians and has depopulated them by the sword, pillage and fire; it has led away a part of the captives into its own country, and a part it has destroyed by cruel tortures; it has either entirely destroyed the churches of God or appropriated them for the rites of its own religion. They destroy the altars, after having defiled them with their uncleanness. They circumcise the Christians, and the blood of the circumcision they either spread upon the altars or pour into the vases of the baptismal font. When they wish to torture people by a base death, they perforate their navels, and dragging forth the extremity of the intestines, bind it to a stake; then with flogging they lead the victim around until the viscera having gushed forth the victim falls prostrate upon the ground. Others they bind to a post and pierce with arrows. Others they compel to extend their necks and then, attacking them with naked swords, attempt to cut through the neck with a single blow. What shall I say of the abominable rape of the women? To speak of it is worse than to be silent. The kingdom of the Greeks is now dismembered by them and deprived of territory so vast in extent that it can not be traversed in a march of two months.[3] On whom therefore is the labor of avenging these wrongs and of recovering this territory incumbent, if not upon you? You, upon whom above other nations God has conferred remarkable glory in arms, great courage, bodily activity, and strength to humble the hairy scalp of those who resist you.

Let the deeds of your ancestors move you and incite your minds to manly achievements; the glory and greatness of king Charles the Great, and of his son Louis,[4] and of your other kings, who have destroyed the kingdoms of the pagans, and have extended in these lands the territory of the holy church. Let the holy sepulchre of the Lord our Saviour, which is possessed by unclean nations, especially incite you, and the holy places which are now treated with ignominy and irreverently polluted with their filthiness. Oh, most valiant soldiers and descendants of invincible ancestors, be not degenerate, but recall the valor of your progenitors.

But if you are hindered by love of children, parents, and wives, remember what the Lord says in the Gospel, "He that loveth father or mother more than me, is not worthy of me." "Every one that hath forsaken houses, or brethren, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands for my name's sake shall receive an hundred-fold and shall inherit everlasting life."[5] Let none of your possessions detain you, no solicitude for your family affairs, since this land which you inhabit, shut in on all sides by the seas and surrounded by the mountain peaks, is too narrow for your large population; nor does it abound in wealth; and it furnishes scarcely food enough for its cultivators. Hence it is that you murder and devour one another, that you wage war, and that frequently you perish by mutual wounds. Let therefore hatred depart from among you, let your quarrels end, let wars cease, and let all dissensions and controversies slumber. Enter upon the road to the Holy Sepulchre; wrest that land

[1] "Across the mountains": Urban is thinking of the Franks from his own perspective: he had to cross the Alps to get to France from Rome.

[2] Urban is speaking of the Seljuk Turks, who did not stem from Persia at all, but seemed to Western eyes to come from there.

[3] "The Kingdom of the Greeks" is a reference to Byzantium.

[4] A reference to Charlemagne (d.814) and his son Louis the Pious (d.840).

[5] Quotes from Matt. 10:37 and 19:29.

from the wicked race, and subject it to yourselves. That land which as the Scripture says "floweth with milk and honey,"[1] was given by God into the possession of the children of Israel.

Jerusalem is the navel of the world; the land is fruitful above others, like another paradise of delights. This the Redeemer of the human race has made illustrious by His advent, has beautified by residence, has consecrated by suffering, has redeemed by death, has glorified by burial. This royal city, therefore, situated at the centre of the world, is now held captive by His enemies, and is in subjection to those who do not know God, to the worship of the heathens.[2] She seeks therefore and desires to be liberated, and does not cease to implore you to come to her aid. From you especially she asks succor, because, as we have already said, God has conferred upon you above all nations great glory in arms. Accordingly undertake this journey for the remission of your sins, with the assurance of the imperishable glory of the kingdom of heaven.

When Pope Urban had said these and very many similar things in his urbane discourse, he so influenced to one purpose the desires of all who were present, that they cried out, "It is the will of God! It is the will of God!" When the venerable Roman pontiff heard that, with eyes uplifted to heaven he gave thanks to God and, with his hand commanding silence, said:

Most beloved brethren, to-day is manifest in you what the Lord says in the Gospel, "Where two or three are gathered together in my name there am I in the midst of them."[3] Unless the Lord God had been present in your spirits, all of you would not have uttered the same cry. For, although the cry issued from numerous mouths, yet the origin of the cry was one. Therefore, I say to you that God, who implanted this in your breasts, has drawn it forth from you. Let this then be your war-cry in combats, because this word is given to you by God. When an armed attack is made upon the enemy, let this one cry be raised by all the soldiers of God: It is the will of God! It is the will of God!

And we do not command or advise that the old or feeble, or those unfit for bearing arms, undertake this journey; nor ought women to set out at all, without their husbands or brothers or legal guardians. For such are more of a hindrance than aid, more of a burden than advantage. Let the rich aid the needy; and according to their wealth, let them take with them experienced soldiers. The priests and clerks of any order are not to go without the consent of their bishop; for this journey would profit them nothing if they went without permission of these. Also, it is not fitting that laymen should enter upon the pilgrimage without the blessing of their priests.

Whoever, therefore, shall determine upon this holy pilgrimage and shall make his vow to God to that effect and shall offer himself to Him as a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, shall wear the sign of the cross of the Lord on his forehead or on his breast. When, truly, having fulfilled his vow he wishes to return, let him place the cross on his back between his shoulders. Such, indeed, by the two-fold action will fulfill the precept of the Lord, as He commands in the Gospel, "He that taketh not his cross and followeth after me, is not worthy of me."[4]

5.12 Jewish martyrs: Solomon bar Samson, *Chronicle* (*c.*1140). Original in Hebrew.

In the spring of 1096, irregular crusader armies, inspired by popular preachers such as Peter the Hermit, responded to Pope Urban II's call to regain the Holy Land from the Muslim "infidels" who ruled it by first attacking the "infidels in their midst"—the Jews. Thus, on their way to Jerusalem, they made a "detour" to the cities of the Rhineland, where Jews were flourishing under the protection of local bishops and the emperor. City by city, they

[1] Scripture speaks of the land flowing "with milk and honey" in many passages, e.g., Lev. 20:24.

[2] Jerusalem had been under Islamic rule since 637.

[3] Matt. 18:20.

[4] Matt. 16:24.

rounded up the Jews and gave them the alternatives of conversion or death. At Speyer, many Jews were saved by the local bishop, but at Worms most were massacred. When an army led by Emico, a German nobleman, attacked Mainz, many of the city's Jews not only refused to convert but also actively sought martyrdom, some by their own hands. These suicide-martyrdoms became a rallying image for northern European Jews over the next century, inspiring accounts like that of Solomon bar Samson.

1. Why did the Jews of Mainz kill themselves?
2. Comparing this reading with the account of the martyrdom of Bishop Adalbert in Thietmar of Merseburg's *Chronicle* (above, p. 218), discuss the diverse attitudes toward martyrdom in medieval Christian and Jewish cultures.

[Source: Jacob Rader Marcus and Marc Saperstein, eds., *The Jews in Medieval Europe: A Source Book, 315–1791* (Pittsburgh: Hebrew Union College and University of Pittsburgh Presses, 2015), pp. 75–78 (notes and trans. by Jacob Marcus).]

It was on the third day of Sivan ... at noon [Tuesday, May 27], that Emico the wicked, the enemy of the Jews, came with his whole army against the city gate, and the burghers opened it up for him. Then the enemies of the Lord said to each other: "Look! They have opened up the gate for us. Now let us avenge the blood of 'the hanged one.'"[1]

The children of the holy covenant were there, martyrs who feared the Most High, although they saw the great multitude, an army numerous as the sand on the shore of the sea, still clung to their Creator. Then young and old donned their armor and girded on their weapons, and at their head was Rabbi Kalonymus ben Meshullam, the chief of the community. Yet because of the many troubles and the fasts which they had observed they had no strength to stand up against the enemy.[2] Then came gangs and bands, sweeping through like a flood, until Mainz was filled from end to end.

The foe Emico proclaimed in the hearing of the community that the enemy be driven from the city and be put to flight. Panic was great in the town. Each Jew in the inner court of the bishop girded on his weapons, and all moved towards the palace gate to fight the crusaders and the burghers. They fought each other up to the very gate, but the sins of the Jews brought it about that the enemy overcame them and took the gate.

The hand of the Lord was heavy against His people. All the gentiles were gathered together against the Jews in the courtyard to blot out their name, and the strength of our people weakened when they saw the wicked Edomites overpowering them.[3] The bishops' men, who had promised to help them, were the very first to flee, thus delivering the Jews into the hands of the enemy. They were indeed a poor support; even the bishop himself fled from his church for it was thought to kill him also because he had spoken good things of the Jews....[4]

When the children of the holy covenant saw that the heavenly decree of death had been issued and that the enemy had conquered them and had entered the courtyard, then all of them—old men and young, virgins and children, servants and maids—cried out together to their Father in heaven and, weeping for themselves and for their lives, accepted as just the sentence of God. One to another they said, "Let us be strong and let us bear the yoke of the holy religion, for only in this world can the

[1] "The hanged one" (*ha-talui*), echoing the use of the word in Deut. 21:23, is a demeaning way of referring to Jesus in medieval Jewish texts. Obviously, this could not have been a direct quotation from the crusaders.

[2] Fasting was a traditional manner of Jewish repentance in the hope of appeasing divine anger and receiving protection. Ironically, in this case the narrator claims that the fasts interfered with the Jews' more practical armed resistance.

[3] The Edomites were the traditional foes of the Jews; here, Christians are meant.

[4] Archbishop Ruthard had been paid to remain and defend the Jews. He was later accused of having received some of the plunder taken from them. It is clear that local bishops were not instigators of the violence, and in many cases they made a good-faith effort to protect the Jews of their cities.

enemy kill us—and the easiest of the four deaths is by the sword. But we, our souls in paradise, shall continue to live eternally, in the great shining reflection [of the divine glory]."[1]

With a whole heart and with a willing soul they then spoke: "After all it is not right to criticize the acts of God—blessed be He and blessed be His name—who has given to us His Torah and a command to put ourselves to death, to kill ourselves for the unity of His holy name.[2] Happy are we if we do His will. Happy is anyone who is killed or slaughtered, who dies for the unity of His name, so that he is ready to enter the World to Come, to dwell in the heavenly camp with the righteous—with Rabbi Akiba and his companions, the pillars of the universe, who were killed for His name's sake.[3] Not only *this*; but he exchanges the world of darkness for the world of light, the world of trouble for the world of joy, and the world that passes away for the world that lasts for all eternity." Then all of them, to a man, cried out with a loud voice: "Now we must delay no longer, for the enemy are already upon us. Let us hasten and offer ourselves as a sacrifice to the Lord. Let him who has a knife examine it that it not be nicked, and let him come and slaughter us for the sanctification of the Only One, the Everlasting, and then let him cut his own throat or plunge the knife into his own body."[4]

As soon as the enemy came into the courtyard they found some of the very pious there with our brilliant master, Isaac ben Moses. He stretched out his neck, and his head they cut off first. The others, wrapped in their fringed praying-shawls, sat by themselves in the courtyard, eager to do the will of their Creator. They did not care to flee into the chamber to save themselves for this temporal life, but out of love they received upon themselves the sentence of God.[5] The enemy showered stones and arrows upon them, but they did not care to flee; and "with the stroke of the sword, and with slaughter, and destruction"[6] the foe killed all of those whom they found there. When those in the chambers saw the deed of these righteous ones, how the enemy had already come upon them, they then cried out, all of them: "There is nothing better than for us to offer our lives as a sacrifice."[7]

The women there girded their loins with strength and slew their sons and their daughters and then themselves. Many men, too, plucked up courage and killed their wives, their sons, their infants. The tender and delicate mother slaughtered the babe she had played with; all of them, men and women arose and slaughtered one another.[8] The maidens and the young brides and grooms looked out of the windows and in a loud voice cried: "Look and see, O our God, what we do for the sanctification of Thy great name in order not to exchange you for a hanged and crucified one...."

Thus were the precious children of Zion, the Jews of Mainz, tried with ten trials like Abraham, our father, and like Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah.[9] They bound their sons as Abraham bound Isaac his son, and they received upon themselves with a willing soul the yoke of the fear of God, the King of the Kings of Kings, the Holy One, blessed be He, rather than deny and exchange the religion of our King for "an abhorred offshoot,"[10] a bastard born of menstruation and lust.[11] They stretched out their necks

---

1 In Jewish law the four death penalties were stoning, burning, beheading, and strangulation.

2 While traditional martyrdom to avoid the sin of idolatry is understood to be a mandate from the Torah, there is no commandment that could be understood to justify suicide in this context, and certainly not the killing of other Jews, as the narrative will describe.

3 The Romans martyred Akiba during the Bar Kokba revolt, about 135 CE.

4 The taking of their own lives by Jews is presented as a reenactment of the ancient Temple sacrifices, for which a knife without blemishes was required.

5 This is a description of traditional, passive martyrdom, in which the martyr makes no attempt to resist.

6 Esther 9:13.

7 The outnumbered Jews had no chance to prevail: Emico is reported to have had about twelve thousand men.

8 The narrator does not appear to recognize that such behavior is far more problematic in Jewish law. It is said here to be initiated not by the rabbis but by ordinary Jews.

9 Who were thrown into a fiery furnace (Dan. 3:21).

10 Isa. 14:19.

11 This contemptuous reference to Jesus is based on the assertions in the birth narrative of Matthew's Gospel: Mary and Joseph were betrothed, Mary was pregnant, Joseph was not the father. Jewish readers concluded that the pregnancy was therefore the result of an adulterous relationship.

to the slaughter and they delivered their pure souls to their Father in heaven. Righteous and pious women bared their throats to each other, offering to be sacrificed for the unity of the Name. A father turning to his son or brother, a brother to his sister, a woman to her son or daughter, a neighbor to a neighbor or a friend, a groom to a bride, a fiancé to a fiancée, would kill and would be killed, and blood touched blood. The blood of the men mingled with their wives', the blood of the fathers with their children's, the blood of the brothers with their sisters', the blood of the teachers with their disciples', the blood of the grooms with their brides', the blood of the leaders with their cantors', the blood of the judges with their scribes', and the blood of infants and sucklings with their mothers'. For the unity of the honored and awe-inspiring Name were they killed and slaughtered.

The ears of one who hears these things will tingle, for who has ever heard anything like this? Inquire now and look about, was there ever such an abundant sacrifice as this since the days of the primeval Adam? Were there ever eleven hundred offerings on one day, each one of them like the sacrifice of Isaac, the son of Abraham?

For the sake of Isaac who was ready to be sacrificed on Mount Moriah, the world shook, as it is said, "Behold their valiant ones cry without; [the angels of peace weep bitterly]," [1] and "the heavens grow dark." [2] Yet see what these martyrs did! Why did the heavens not grow dark and the stars not withdraw their brightness? Why did not the moon and the sun grow dark in their heavens when on one day, on the third of Sivan, on a Tuesday, eleven hundred souls were killed and slaughtered, among them so many infants and sucklings who had never transgressed nor sinned, so many poor, innocent souls?

Wilt Thou, despite this, still restrain Thyself, O Lord? For Thy sake it was that these numberless souls were killed.

Avenge quickly the blood of Thy servants which was spilt in our days and in our sight. Amen.

5.13 A Westerner in the Holy Land: Stephen of Blois, *Letter to His Wife* (March 1098). Original in Latin.

The crusaders had moderate success in their war against the Muslims. During the long siege of Antioch, which began in October 1097 and was not over until July 1098, one of the crusade leaders, Count Stephen of Blois (d.1102), dictated a letter to his wife, Adela. Full of love, bravado, false claims (e.g., that he was the leader of the "whole expedition"), and pious sentiments, the letter betrays little sign that Stephen was about to desert the army and return home. The letter is a good illustration of what a crusader was supposed to think about the enterprise, whether he did or not.

1. What does the letter suggests about the relations between husbands and wives (at least those of the French nobility)?
2. What is Stephen's opinion of the Crusade in this letter?

[Source: *The Crusades: A Reader*, ed. S.J. Allen and Emilie Amt (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2003), pp. 63–66, revised from *Translations and Reprints from the Original Sources of European History*, ed. Dana C. Munro, Ser. 1, Vol. 1 (Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Department of History, 1895), no. 4, pp. 5–8.]

[1] Isa. 33:7.

[2] Jer. 4:28.

Count Stephen to Adela, his sweetest and most amiable wife, to his dear children, and to all his vassals of all ranks—his greeting and blessing.

You may be very sure, dearest, that the messenger whom I sent to give you pleasure, left me before Antioch safe and unharmed, and through God's grace in the greatest prosperity. And already at that time, together with all the chosen army of Christ, endowed with great valor by him, we had been continuously advancing for twenty-three weeks toward the home of our Lord Jesus. You may know for certain, my beloved, that of gold, silver and many other kind of riches I now have twice as much as your love had assigned to me when I left you. For all our princes, with the common consent of the whole army, against my own wishes, have made me up to the present time the leader, chief and director of their whole expedition.

You have certainly heard that after the capture of the city of Nicaea we fought a great battle with the perfidious Turks and by God's aid conquered them. Next we conquered for the Lord all Romania[1] and afterwards Cappadocia. And we learned that there was a certain Turkish prince Assam, dwelling in Cappadocia; thither we directed our course. All his castles we conquered by force and compelled him to flee to a certain very strong castle situated on a high rock. We also gave the land of that Assam to one of our chiefs and in order that he might conquer the above-mentioned Assam, we left there with him many soldiers of Christ. Thence, continually following the wicked Turks, we drove them through the midst of Armenia, as far as the great river Euphrates. Having left all their baggage and beasts of burden on the bank, they fled across the river into Arabia.

The bolder of the Turkish soldiers, indeed, entering Syria, hastened by forced marches night and day, in order to be able to enter the royal city of Antioch before our approach. The whole army of God, learning this, gave due praise and thanks to the omnipotent Lord. Hastening with great joy to the aforesaid chief city of Antioch, we besieged it and very often had many conflicts there with the Turks; and seven times with the citizens of Antioch and with the innumerable troops coming to its aid, whom we rushed to meet, we fought with the fiercest courage, under the leadership of Christ. And in all these seven battles, by the aid of the Lord God, we conquered and most assuredly killed an innumerable host of them. In those battles, indeed, and in very many attacks made upon the city, many of our brethren and followers were killed and their souls were borne to the joys of paradise.

We found the city of Antioch very extensive, fortified with incredible strength and almost impregnable. In addition, more than 5,000 bold Turkish soldiers had entered the city, not counting the Saracens, Publicans, Arabs, Turcopolitans, Syrians, Armenians and other different races of whom an infinite multitude had gathered together there. In fighting against these enemies of God and of our own we have, by God's grace, endured many sufferings and innumerable evils up to the present time. Many also have already exhausted all their resources in this very holy passion. Very many of our Franks, indeed, would have met a temporal death from starvation, if the clemency of God and our money had not succored them. Before the above-mentioned city of Antioch indeed, throughout the whole winter we suffered for our Lord Christ from excessive cold and enormous torrents of rain. What some say about the impossibility of bearing the heat of the sun throughout Syria is untrue, for the winter there is very similar to our winter in the west.

When truly Caspian,[2] the emir of Antioch—that is, prince and lord—perceived that he was hard pressed by us, he sent his son Sensodolo[3] by name, to the prince who holds Jerusalem, and to the prince of Calep, Rodoam[4] and to Docap prince of Damascus.[5] He also sent into Arabia for Bolianuth[6] and to Carathania for Hamelnuth.[7] These five emirs with 12,000 picked Turkish horsemen suddenly came to aid the inhabitants of Antioch. We, indeed, ignorant of all this, had sent many of our soldiers away to the cities and fortresses. For there are 165 cities and fortresses throughout Syria which are in our power. But a little before they reached the city, we attacked them

[1] "Romania" here refers to the Byzantine Empire; at the time Stephen was writing, much of Anatolia had been taken by the Seljuk Turks.

[2] This was Yaghi Siyan, appointed emir in 1087.

[3] Shams ad-Daulah.

[4] This was Ridwan of Aleppo.

[5] Docap was Duqaq, Seljuk ruler of Damascus (r.1095–1104).

[6] This was Kerbogha, the Turkish governor of Mosul (d.1102).

[7] Carathania refers to Khorasan, today in Iran.

at three leagues' distance with 700 soldiers, on a certain plain near the "Iron Bridge."[1] God, however, fought for us, his faithful, against them. For on that day, fighting in the strength that God gives, we conquered them and killed an innumerable multitude—God continually fighting for us—and we also carried back to the army more than two hundred of their heads, in order that the people might rejoice on that account. The emperor of Babylon also sent Saracen messengers to our army with letters, and through these he established peace and concord with us.[2]

I love to tell you, dearest, what happened to us during Lent. Our princes had caused a fortress to be built before a certain gate which was between our camp and the sea. For the Turks, daily issuing from this gate, killed some of our men on their way to the sea. The city of Antioch is about five leagues' distance from the sea. For this reason they sent the excellent Bohemond[3] and Raymond, count of St. Gilles,[4] to the sea with only sixty horsemen, in order that they might bring mariners to aid in this work. When, however, they were returning to us with those mariners, the Turks collected an army, fell suddenly upon our two leaders and forced them to a perilous flight. In that unexpected flight we lost more than 500 of our footsoldiers—to the glory of God. Of our horsemen, however, we lost only two, for certain.

On that same day truly, in order to receive our brethren with joy, and ignorant of their misfortunes, we went out to meet them. When, however, we approached the above-mentioned gate of the city, a mob of horsemen and footsoldiers from Antioch, elated by the victory which they had won, rushed upon us in the same manner. Seeing these, our leaders sent to the camp of the Christians to order all to be ready to follow us into battle. In the meantime our men gathered together and the scattered leaders, namely, Bohemond and Raymond, with the remainder of their army came up and narrated the great misfortune which they had suffered.

Our men, full of fury at these most evil tidings, prepared to die for Christ and, deeply grieved for their brethren, rushed upon the sacrilegious Turks. They, the enemies of God and of us, hastily fled before us and attempted to enter their city. But by God's grace the affair turned out very differently; for, when they wanted to cross a bridge built over the great river Moscholum,[5] we followed them as closely as possible, killed many before they reached the bridge, forced many into the river, all of whom were killed, and we also slew many upon the bridge and very many at the narrow entrance to the gate. I am telling you the truth, my beloved, and you may be very certain that in this battle we killed thirty emirs, that is princes, and, three hundred other Turkish nobles, not counting the remaining Turks and pagans. Indeed, the number of Turks and Saracens killed is reckoned at 1,230, but of ours we did not lose a single man.

While on the following day (Easter) my chaplain Alexander was writing this letter in great haste, a party of our men, lying in wait for the Turks, fought a successful battle with them and killed sixty horsemen, whose heads they brought to the army.

These which I write to you are only a few things, dearest, of the many which we have done, and because I am not able to tell you, dearest, what is in my mind, I charge you to do right, to carefully watch over your land, to do your duty as you ought to your children and your vassals. You will certainly see me just as soon as I can possibly return to you. Farewell.

---

[1] The "Iron Bridge" crossed the Orontes River, about seven miles north of Antioch.

[2] A reference to an offer of neutrality by the Fatimid caliph of Egypt, who was Shi'ite, and thus hostile to the Sunni Turks.

[3] Bohemond of Taranto (d.1111), leader of the Norman contingent.

[4] Raymond of St. Gilles (d.1105) was the count of Toulouse and an important crusade leader.

[5] The Orontes River; this was another battle at the Iron Bridge.

Reading through Looking

Reading through Looking has two parts: 1) Material Objects and 2) Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages.

Material Objects consists of color plates for objects and artifacts that are meant to complement some of the readings in the text; they represent another way to understand the issues at hand.

Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages has two purposes. First, it is a stand-alone section that offers an illustrated guide to the topic. Second, it supplements the readings elsewhere in this book, offering concrete examples to illustrate the forms of battle and weaponry mentioned in the texts. Thus, for example, the section here on Siege Warfare (Plates 8 and 9) makes clear what was involved in Count William's siege of Mallevault castle in Reading 4.5 (above, p. 173) and, indeed, in all other medieval sieges.

Getting the most out of these objects means using much the same procedure as with any primary source. That includes:

1. Reading the commentary for each plate.
2. Looking carefully at each object and considering what ideas (and even feelings) it evokes in you.
3. Asking (and trying to answer) the following general questions:
   a. When and where was the object made?
   b. Who made the object? In many cases, you will not know the exact identity of the creator, but you will know (or at least you will be able to speculate about) the status of both the person who made the object and the person or corporation who paid for it or asked that it be made.
   c. For what purpose(s) was the object made?
4. You should also think of specific questions (and seek answers) that apply in particular to the object you are looking at.

OBVERSE

REVERSE

PLATE 1

Seal of Boris-Michael (864–889)

When the Bulgarian khan Boris converted to the Christian religion in *c.*864, he had seals such as this made to advertise his link to that faith. On its obverse (or "heads") side, an image of Christ is encircled by the inscription: "Christ help your servant Michael ruler of Bulgaria." The reverse ("tails") side shows Mary with the inscription "Mother of God help your servant Michael ruler of Bulgaria."

[Images courtesy of Dr. Ivan Jordanov]

OBVERSE

REVERSE

PLATE 2

Boleslaw's Coin (992–1000)

Boleslaw the Brave of Poland (r.992–1025) issued coins that celebrated his rulership. On the obverse ("heads") side he is shown in profile, like a Roman emperor; on the reverse ("tails"), a cross is surrounded by an inscription referring to his chief city, Gniezno. For further discussion, see p. 222.

[From the collection of the National Museum, Kraków]

PLATE 3A

The Jelling Monument (960s)

In the 960s, when the Danish king Harald Bluetooth converted to Christianity, he "Christianized" his father's burial place by building a church on the site and marking the spot with this granite monument depicting the crucified Christ. For further discussion, see p. 231.

[Image courtesy of the Nationalmuseet, Denmark]

PLATE 3B

The Jelling Monument reconstructed

This represents a modern model of the Jelling Monument with its original colors.

[Image courtesy of the Nationalmuseet, Denmark]

PLATE 4

The Bayeux Tapestry (end of the 11th cent.)

This detail from a long embroidery commissioned by a supporter of Duke William of Normandy depicts a crucial moment in the duke's conquest of England. It shows his chief competitor to English kingship, Harold Godwineson, swearing fealty to him.

[Detail of the Bayeux Tapestry—11th Century. With special permission from the City of Bayeux]

REVERSV

PLATE 5

Juan de la Cosa, *World Chart* (1500)

This is the earliest map to depict the Americas as an independent land mass rather than as an appendage of Asia. Juan de la Cosa drew on his own experiences as a navigator and pilot as well as on earlier cartographical depictions of the world. The two red horizontal lines indicate the Equator (to the south) and the Tropic of Cancer (above it, to the north).

[Image courtesy of Album/Art Resource, NY]

EVROPA
ASIA
AFRICA

Compiled and introduced by Riccardo Cristiani

"Greek Fire"

Incendiary weapons had been developed and used in war long before the Byzantines. However, in the late seventh century a new weapon was devised, or at least perfected, at Constantinople. It was called "liquid fire" (*hygron pyr*, in Greek) or, more frequently, "sea fire" (*thalassio* or *thalassion pyr*), for its role in naval battles. The term "Greek fire" was used by the crusaders—who thought of Byzantines as Greeks—and that name prevails even in modern scholarship.

The composition of Greek fire is still debated. Its recipe was a state secret, and was even said to have had celestial origins: Emperor Constantine VII Porphyrogenitus (r.945–959) claimed that it was transmitted by God to Emperor Constantine I (r.306–337) via the angels! Byzantine historian John Haldon proposes that Greek fire was purely a petroleum-based weapon; other scholars suggest that the petroleum was mixed with other substances, such as sulfur and quicklime. The Byzantines could rely on large supplies of light crude oil from the Caucasus region until at least the early thirteenth century—which may explain why the weapon was no longer used thereafter. It is possible that organic resins were added to the crude oil; that would explain the adjective "sticky" (*kollutikon*, in Greek) that Byzantine sources use to describe this "sea fire."

A famous representation of Greek fire in action appears in a twelfth-century manuscript made in Sicily. Containing John Skylitzes' *Synopsis historion* (a synopsis of Byzantine history from 811 to 1057), it is illustrated by some 574 miniatures. In the one pictured here, a seaman (on the left) standing on the bow of a *dromon*—a fast-sailing ship of the Byzantine imperial fleet—mans a metal *siphon* through which he shoots the deadly fire—perhaps no further than sixteen yards (about fifteen meters). (See Plate 6.) The fire was hard to extinguish on land and impossible on water.

PLATE 6

"Greek fire" in the *Synopsis historion* (end of the 12th cent.)

[Vitr. 26-2, fol. 34v, courtesy of Biblioteca Nacional de España]

PLATE 7

A portable hand-siphon (11th cent.)

[MS Vat. gr. 1605, fol. 36r, reproduced by permission of Biblioteca Apostolica Vaticana]

Although normally used in naval warfare, Emperor Basil II (r.976–1025) employed it against the siege engines—war machines used to damage fortifications, as described below—of the rebellious leader Basil Sclerus[1] at the giant walls of Nicaea. It appears that a "portable" version of the siphon, a hand-siphon (*cheirosiphon*, in Greek), was familiar to a tenth-century author known as Heron of Byzantium, who wrote a technical treatise on siege machines. (See Plate 7.) An eleventh-century miniature illustrates the words in Heron's text: "And if some of those standing on the cross-bridge also use swivel tube, handheld incendiaries to shoot fire in the direction of the enemy, they will so terrify [the defenders] standing on the front of the wall that they will quickly abandon their position, not enduring the attack of battle and the force of fire."[2]

Siege Warfare

Siege warfare—the set of operations carried out to conquer castles or fortified towns and cities—was a major strategy in the Middle Ages. It could take a long time to accomplish because defenders inside walled strongholds could offer strenuous resistance against the attackers. Capitulations could take months, and they were usually the results of three scenarios: besiegers could overcome the defenders by breaking into a breached wall or by climbing over the wall; they could prevent provisions from reaching the defenders, starving them to death; and they could profit from treason if someone inside the stronghold let them in.

Siege engines were devised and set in place to force an entry into a fortified castle or city. They ranged from battering rams to trebuchets. A ram consisted in a huge tree trunk, often with an iron-reinforced head; it was smashed methodically against the same part of a wall or gate until it tumbled down. Meanwhile, miners dug tunnels underneath the wall (or sometimes past it), and then filled them with combustibles (gunpowder in the late Middle Ages). Siege towers and simple scaling ladders were also common devices, although—depending on the height of the walls—towers could be massive and expensive structures to build.

By far the most widespread siege engines—not only among Western armies—were stone-throwing machines. Called petraries (from *petra*, stone in Latin), mangonels, and trebuchets, all relied on a beam-sling pivoted between two poles mounted on a base stand. A beautiful miniature in the so-called Crusader Bible—made in France *c.*1244–1254—illustrates a traction trebuchet powered by a team of people (see Plate 8). This siege engine had ropes on the short end of the beam (here, on the right, three ropes are clearly visible) and a sling on the other end. Men (and sometimes women) pulled the ropes while, as in this case, a crewmember took hold of the sling to increase tension prior to its discharge. By the thirteenth century, counterweight trebuchets were also employed. In the place of people pulling the ropes was either a fixed or (best) a slung box filled with earth, sand, stones, or lead. The heavy weight gave the sling the kinetic power to release the payload. Such siege engines could throw heavier stones farther than traction trebuchets. They required enormous amounts of timber, and their parts were usually transported on wagons and

[1] See Michael Psellus, *Zoe and Theodora*, on p. 200.

[2] Denis F. Sullivan, *Siegecraft: Two Tenth-Century Instructional Manuals by "Heron of Byzantium"* (Washington, DC: Dumbarton Oaks, 2000), p. 99.

PLATE 8

Siege warfare in the "Crusader Bible" (*c.*1244–1254)

[Image courtesy of The Morgan Library & Museum/Art Resource, NY]

then reassembled where the siege took place. At the siege of Acre, in 1291, the Mamluks needed a hundred carts to deliver one great trebuchet called "al-Mansuri."

While the context of this illustration is that of the biblical defeat of the Ammonites (1 Sam. 11) by Saul's army (here Saul, on the left, wears an orange surcoat), the setting is that of a thirteenth-century battle and siege, with arms and armor of that period. All knights wear full-body mail armor covered by surcoats. They wield swords with tapering double-edged blades, round pommels, and simple cross-guards typical of the crusaders.[1] Various helmets are depicted, among which is the well-known great helm. Cylindrical and flat-topped, this iron-made helm was heavy (the one shown here in Plate 9 weighs about 5 pounds, or 2.3 kilograms) and quite impractical because it impeded vision and was unsteady: indeed, a mail coif over a quilted cap had to be worn beneath it to safeguard the head and hold the helm roughly in place. Small ventilation holes—the small circular openings on the front—allowed the mounted knights to breathe.

[1] See "Forging Medieval Swords," in Barbara H. Rosenwein, *A Short History of the Middle Ages,* 5th ed. (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2018), p. 74.

PLATE 9

Great Helm (second half of the 13th cent.)

[Image courtesy of Deutsches Historisches Museum, Berlin/A. Psille]

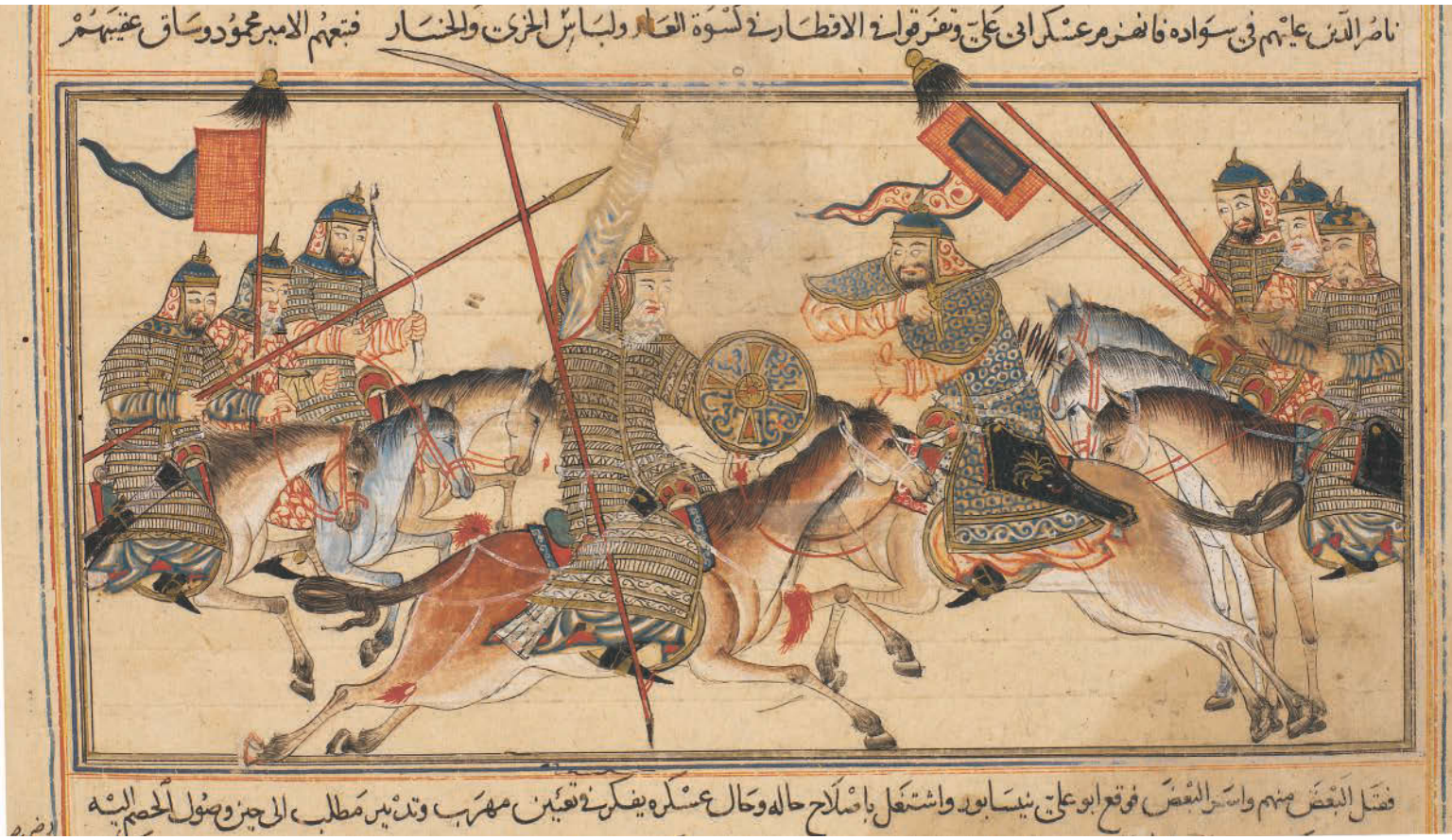


PLATE 10

Mongol heavy cavalry (*c.*1306 or *c.*1314–1315)

[MS 20, fol. 114v, courtesy of University of Edinburgh Main Library]

Mongol Arms and Armor

In this lavish miniature (see Plate 10) from the *Universal History* (also known as *Compendium of Chronicles*, or *Jami' al-Tawarikh*) by Rashid al-Din (d.1318), two cavalries clash in battle. In the thirteenth century (when this manuscript was made), Mongol heavy cavalrymen had swords with slightly curved blades (like sabers), spears, and composite bows. Archery was their most valued skill in warfare. Mongol bows were made from yak horn, sinew, and bamboo glued together. Bow cases may be seen hanging from the left side of the horsemen, while quivers are on their right. Italian merchant and traveler Marco Polo (d.1324) described their equipment thus: "Every [Mongol] is ordered to carry into battle sixty arrows, thirty smaller ones for piercing and thirty larger with broad heads for discharging at close quarters."[1] Shooting from the saddle required practiced horse-archers and well-trained horses—the Mongols rode hardy steppe ponies. The miniature shows that they used stirrups and knotted the long tails of their ponies to avoid ensnaring themselves or their weapons during fights.

[1] *The Travels of Marco Polo*, trans. Ronald Latham (London: Penguin, 1958), p. 314.

PLATE 11

Mongol armored coat (late 13th cent.)

[Image courtesy of 震天動地/CC-BY-SA 3.0]

PLATE 12

Mongol ceramic bombs (late 13th cent.)

[© Matsuura City Board of Education, Kyushu National Museum collection]

Mongol heavy cavalrymen wore lamellar armor—so called because it was made with small scales (lamellae) of iron or leather sewn together. Alternatively, as Plate 10 shows (see the two horsemen wearing red) they wore heavy leather coats without the lamellar armor, reinforced instead by iron rivets—the "dots" visible in Plate 11. This well-preserved Mongol coat has beautiful blue decorative patterns and is today on display in Japan. Under Qubilai Khan (d.1294), grandson of Chinghis Khan, the Mongols attempted twice, in 1274 and 1281, to invade Japan and subdue the *samurai* rulers. They failed on both occasions. In particular, the 1281 invasion met its doom when a typhoon, then dubbed *kamikaze* (the "divine wind") by the Japanese, sank the Mongol fleet. It is now evident from underwater archaeological digs that the Mongols used exploding bombs during the Japanese invasions. They had mastered gunpowder in the course of their Chinese campaigns. Bombs were delivered by trebuchet (see Siege Warfare above) and were made of iron or ceramic material filled with gunpowder and shards. (See Plate 12, where the bombs are about half the size of a modern bowling ball.)

The Longbow

The late fifteenth-century miniature in Plate 13 captures a decisive moment in the battle of Crécy, fought on August 26, 1346, during the Hundred Years' War. On the left, the Genoese contingent of mercenary crossbowmen, fighting for the French army, is being decimated by the English longbowmen, here depicted on the right. By that date, longbows were by no means a novelty. Archeological evidence has demonstrated that they were known already to hunters (and perhaps warriors) in the Neolithic period (*c.*10,000–*c.*2,500 BCE). It is true, though, that the "golden age"—as Mike Loades put it—of the military longbow was between *c.*1270 and *c.*1500, especially among the ranks of English armies. The main reason—although still debated—rests on battle tactics. Longbows were utilized in siege and naval warfare (both by attackers and defenders); but from the late thirteenth century on, English skilled (and rather well-paid) longbowmen began to be employed in massive numbers on open field—both on foot and mounted. During the battle of Crécy, there were (according to modern estimates) between about 7,500 to over 10,000 English archers.

Tactically, the use of longbows allowed for faster rates of shooting compared to those of crossbows—a small mechanical bow that shot bolts. Crossbows were not effective weapons if their bolts travelled further than about eighty yards (seventy-three meters). By contrast, arrows shot from longbows made of yew wood—particularly the very resistant yew from Italy—soared an average of 200–250 yards (180–230 meters). Volley-shooting from a distance, with archers protected by spearmen against cavalry charges, was certainly common practice; but close-range volleys (within 50–100 yards, or 46–91 meters) were even more lethally effective. At Crécy, such a tactic proved to be crucial, particularly because the French commanders rushed the Genoese to the frontline without their pavisses—their large freestanding shields. French chronicler Froissart (d.*c.*1404) described the carnage: "The English archers then advanced one step forward, and shot their arrows with such force and quickness, that it seemed as if it snowed. When the Genoese felt these arrows, which pierced their arms, heads, and through their armor, some of them cut the strings of their crossbows, others flung them on the ground, and all turned about and retreated."[1]

In the mid-fourteenth century, archers of every sort wore a padded coat as armor, but in the fifteenth century, brigandines—body vests with small plates riveted to a textile or leather base, clearly illustrated here on the torsos of both crossbowmen and longbowmen—became widely used. Yet, even brigandines offered little protection against the piercing force of English arrows at close range. At Crécy, their effectiveness—though depending on variables like the angle of the strike, the bow's draw-weight, the type of arrowheads used, and so on—must have been a threat even to the armor of the French mounted knights. Regardless of their penetrative power, the intensity and consistency of their hits were key elements in combat. By the beginning of the seventeenth century, however, longbows were no longer used on battlefield; now guns were the indisputable protagonists.

[1] Jean Froissart, *Chronicles of England, France, Spain and the Adjoining Countries*, trans. Thomas Jones (London: Henry G. Bohn, 1849), 1: 165–66.

PLATE 13

A miniature of the battle of Crécy (late 15th cent.)

[MS Fr. 2643, fol. 165v, courtesy of Bibliothèque nationale de France]

Handgonnes and Cannons

Most likely invented in China in the eighth or ninth centuries, gunpowder was known to Europeans from as early as the second half of the thirteenth century. Despite quantity disparities, all Western recipes for it describe a mixture of saltpeter (potassium nitrate), sulfur, and charcoal. The first account of a weapon that used gunpowder as a propellant (and not as an explosive, as in bombs) dates from 1326. Its projectile was an arrow. By the late fourteenth century, we have more records of gunpowder weapons—handguns (*handgonnes*) and bombards (also called cannons). They fired lead and stone balls rather than arrows. Large bombards could fire stones of around 112 pounds (50 kilograms), proving to be highly effective in siege warfare (see the discussion of Siege Warfare above, pp. XII–XIV).

Handguns were certainly not useful against walls, but they became widely used by battlefield infantry. They were useful even during sieges if pointed at men-at-arms, whether by the besiegers against the men positioned on the walls, or by those men against the besiegers. In the fifteenth century, the quality of gunpowder improved, as did the accuracy of *handgonnes* and the mechanisms used to ignite the charge inside the barrel. An early depiction of a matchlock (also known as a "serpentine") is seen in a manuscript dated 1411 (see Plate 14). It shows a socketed *handgonne* (made of either iron or bronze) mounted on a long wooden pole. The *gonner*'s right hand pulls a metal serpentine that lowers a slow-burning match into the touch-hole, through which the charge is ignited. (Kneeling before him is a servant pouring liquid lead into bullet molds.) Other ways to ignite the powder required the *gonner* to use his free hand to hold a metal piece with a burning match attached to its end (an operation that might also have been performed by an assistant). In a late fifteenth-century manuscript (see Plate 15), two *handgonners*—the men with wooden poles resting on their right shoulders—seem to be operating a fixed-metal spring, the match-holder, with the thumbs of their left hand.

PLATE 14

Handgonne with matchlock (1411)

[MS 3069, fol. 38v, courtesy of Österreichische Nationalbibliothek]

PLATE 15

Gunpowder weapons (1442–1443)

[MS 9466, fol. 4r, courtesy of Koninklijke Bibliotheek van België]

In general, this miniature is an excellent source for military history. Not only does it portray the simultaneous employment of longbows and *handgonnes*, but it also shows a cannon, by then inevitable during a siege. Not big in size—perhaps shooting stone balls of maximum eleven pounds (five kilograms)—its main disadvantage was the lack of an adjustable mount to control the barrel elevation. A similar cannon is on display at the French castle of Castelnaud (see Plate 16). Note the iron bars—used to keep the barrel in place—nailed to the portable wooden stand. Larger cannons were sometimes set on wheeled stands to improve maneuverability and had adjustable mounts for accuracy. In 1453, during their siege of Constantinople, the Ottomans led by Mehmed II the Conqueror (d.1481) managed to employ a monster cannon—among other artillery pieces—capable of discharging a ball of 1,212 pounds (550 kilograms). No wonder they were able to breach the walls and take the city.

PLATE 16

Small bombard (15th cent.)

[Image courtesy of Sémhur/CC-BY-SA 4.0]

SELECTED READINGS

Bachrach, Bernard S., and David S. Bachrach. *Warfare in Medieval Europe, c.400–c.1453*. London: Routledge, 2016.

Bradbury, Jim. *The Routledge Companion to Medieval Warfare*. London: Routledge, 2004.

Decker, Michael J. *The Byzantine Art of War*. Yardley: Westholme Publishing, 2013.

Delgado, James. *Kamikaze: History's Greatest Naval Disaster*. London: Vintage Books, 2009.

DeVries, Kelly, and Robert D. Smith. *Medieval Weapons: An Illustrated History of Their Impact*. Santa Barbara, CA: ABC-CLIO, 2007.

Haldon, John. *The Byzantine Wars*. Stroud: The History Press, 2008.

Haldon, John, with Andrew Lacey and Colin Hewes. "'Greek Fire' Revisited: Recent and Current Research." In *Byzantine Style, Religion and Civilization. In Honour of Sir Steven Runciman*, ed. Elizabeth Jeffreys, 290–325. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2006.

Loades, Mike. *The Longbow*. Oxford: Osprey Publishing, 2013.

McLachlan, Sean. *Medieval Handgonnes: The First Black Powder Infantry Weapons*. Oxford: Osprey Publishing, 2010.

Purton, Peter. *A History of the Late Medieval Siege, 1200–1500*. Woodbridge: Boydell Press, 2010.

Stanton, Charles D. *Medieval Maritime Warfare.* Barnsley: Pen & Sword, 2015.

Turnbull, Stephen. *Mongol Warrior, 1200–1350*. Illus. Wayne Reynolds. Oxford: Osprey Publishing, 2003.

5.14 The Muslim view: Ibn al-Qalanisi, *The Damascus Chronicle of the Crusades* (before 1160). Original in Arabic.

From the Muslim point of view, the conquests "for the Lord" that Stephen of Blois spoke about were, to the contrary, entirely ungodly. On the other hand, the Muslims were hardly unified; Syria, where Ibn al-Qalanisi (1073–1160) wrote his *Chronicle*, had suffered from the Seljuk Turks. Various emirs had competing interests and they inadvertently allowed the Franks to advance through northern Syria and lay siege to Antioch. Ibn al-Qalanisi, twice mayor of Damascus, had access to eye-witness reports and documents of the progress of the crusaders. Although he calls the fight against the Franks "a Holy War," his account of the defeat of Yaghi Siyan, the emir of Antioch, and the slaughter of Antioch's population is a tale of tragedy rather than triumph.

1. How do Ibn al-Qalanisi and Stephen of Blois (above, p. 266) differ in their accounts of the siege of Antioch?
2. How does the notion of "Holy War" in Ibn al-Qalanisi's *Chronicle* compare with Urban II's call to arms (above, p. 261)?

[Source: Ibn al-Qalanisi, *The Damascus Chronicle of the Crusades*, trans. H.A.R. Gibb (London: Luzac & Co., 1932), pp. 41–44 (some notes added or modified).]

PART I
FROM 1097 TO 1132
A.H. 490

(19th December, 1096, to 8th December, 1097)[1]

In this year there began to arrive a succession of reports that the armies of the Franks had appeared from the direction of the sea of Constantinople with forces not to be reckoned for multitude. As these reports followed one upon the other and spread from mouth to mouth far and wide, the people grew anxious and disturbed in mind. The king, Da'ud b. Sulaiman b. Qutulmish,[2] whose dominions lay nearest to them, having received confirmation of these statements, set about collecting forces, raising levies, and carrying out the obligation of Holy War. He also summoned as many of the Turkmens[3] as he could to give him assistance and support against them, and a large number of them joined him along with the 'askar[4] of his brother. His confidence having been strengthened thereby, and his offensive power rendered formidable, he marched out to the fords, tracks, and roads by which the Franks must pass, and showed no mercy to all of them who fell into his hands. When he had thus killed a great number, they turned their forces against him, defeated him, and scattered his army, killing many and taking many captive, and plundered and enslaved. The Turkmens, having lost most of their horses, took to flight. The King of the Greeks[5] bought a great many of those whom they had enslaved and had them transported to Constan-

[1] Because the Islamic calendar is lunar, the year AH (Anno Hijra) is not equivalent to any one year in the CE calendar. An approximation is possible, on the basis of 1 AH = 622 CE.

[2] This was Qilij Arslan I, the Seljuk Sultan of Anatolia.

[3] That is, free members of the various Turkic groups, such as the Seljuks.

[4] The 'askar was a standing army of mounted archers maintained by each ruler and governor, and composed for the most part of Turkic, Slavic, and Caucasian (i.e., peoples from the Caucasus), both slaves and freedmen.

[5] Byzantine emperor Alexius (r.1081–1118).

tinople. When the news was received of this shameful calamity to the cause of Islam, the anxiety of the people became acute and their fear and alarm increased. The date of this battle was the 20th of Rajab (4th July, 1097).

In the middle of Sha'ban (end of July) the emir Yaghi Siyan, lord of Antioch, accompanied by the emir Sukman b. Ortuq and the emir Karbuqa [lord of Mosul],[1] set out with his 'askar towards Antioch, on receipt of news that the Franks were approaching it and had occupied al-Balana.[2] Yaghi Siyan therefore hastened to Antioch and dispatched his son to al-Malik Duqaq at Damascus, to Janah al-Dawla at Hims, and to all the other cities and districts, appealing for aid and support, and inciting them to hasten to the Holy War, while he set about fortifying Antioch and expelling its Christian population. On the 2nd of Shawwal (12th September) the Frankish armies descended on Baghras and developed their attack upon the territories of Antioch, whereupon those who were in the castles and forts adjacent to Antioch revolted and killed their garrisons except for a few who were able to escape from them. The people of Artah did likewise and called for reinforcements from the Franks.[3] During Sha'ban a comet appeared in the West; it continued to rise for a space of about twenty days, and then disappeared.

Meanwhile, a large detachment of the Frankish army, numbering about thirty thousand men, had left the main body and set about ravaging the other districts, in the course of which they came to al-Bara and slaughtered about fifty men there. Now the 'askar of Damascus had reached the neighborhood of Shaizar, on their way to support Yaghi Siyan, and when this detachment made its descent on al-Bara, they moved out against it. After a succession of charges by each side, in which a number of their men were killed, the Franks returned to al-Ruj, and thence proceeded towards Antioch. Oil, salt, and other necessaries became dear and unprocurable in Antioch, but so much was smuggled into the city that they became cheap again. The Franks dug a trench between their position and the city, owing to the frequent sallies made against them by the army of Antioch.

Now the Franks, on their first appearance, had made a covenant with the king of the Greeks, and had promised him that they would deliver over to him the first city which they should capture. They then captured Nicæa, and it was the first place they captured, but they did not carry out their word to him on that occasion, and refused to deliver it up to him according to the stipulation. Subsequently they captured on their way several frontier fortresses and passes.

A.H. 491

(9th December, 1097, to 27th November, 1098)

At the end of First Jumada (beginning of June, 1098) the report arrived that certain of the men of Antioch among the armorers in the train of the emir Yaghi Siyan had entered into a conspiracy against Antioch and had come to an agreement with the Franks to deliver the city up to them, because of some ill-usage and confiscations which they had formerly suffered at his hands. They found an opportunity of seizing one of the city bastions adjoining the Jabal, which they sold to the Franks, and thence admitted them into the city during the night. At daybreak they raised the battle cry, whereupon Yaghi Siyan took to flight and went out with a large body, but not one person amongst them escaped to safety. When he reached the neighbourhood of Armanaz, an estate near Ma'arrat Masrin, he fell from his horse to the ground. One of his companions raised him up and remounted him, but he could not maintain his balance on the back of the horse, and after falling repeatedly he died. As for Antioch, the number of men, women, and children killed, taken prisoner, and enslaved from its population is beyond computation. About three thousand men fled to the citadel and fortified themselves in it, and some few escaped for whom God had decreed escape.

[1] Yaghi Siyan (d.1098) was the emir of Antioch.

[2] Al-Balana: a village in northern Syria.

[3] Christians had been tolerated under Islamic rule; now they took advantage of the Frankish presence.

5.15 The pro-Norman position: William of Jumièges, *The Deeds of the Dukes of the Normans* (*c*.1070). Original in Latin.

Celebrating Duke William of Normandy's victory at Hastings (1066) and justifying his anointment as king of England was William, a monk of Jumièges, a monastery near Rouen founded and supported by the Norman ducal family. William's account was enormously popular, surviving in many manuscripts and inspiring numerous other chroniclers, so that his became the predominant voice in depicting the events of 1066. In the passage below, "Duke Harold" is Harold Godwineson, the man who was crowned king of England after the death of Edward the Confessor. William of Jumièges portrays this as a usurpation.

1. Why did William of Jumièges think that it was by Divine disposition that Edward the Confessor had no heir?
2. In what ways did William of Jumièges consider the battle of Hastings a sort of Holy War?

[Source: *The Norman Conquest*, ed. and trans. R. Allen Brown (London: Edward Arnold, 1984), pp. 13–15 (slightly modified).]

23 Edward, king of the English,[1] by Divine disposition lacking an heir, had formerly sent Robert [of Jumièges] archbishop of Canterbury to the duke[2] to nominate him as the heir to the kingdom which God had given him. Furthermore he afterward sent to the duke Harold,[3] the greatest of all the earls of his dominions in riches, honor and power, that he should swear fealty to him[4] concerning Edward's crown and confirm it with Christian oaths. Harold, hastening to fulfill this mission, crossed the narrow seas and landed in Ponthieu, where he fell into the hands of Guy, count of Abbeville, who at once took him and his companions prisoner. When the duke heard of this he sent envoys and angrily caused them to be released. Harold remained with the duke for some time, and swore fealty concerning the kingdom with many oaths, before being sent back to the king laden with gifts.

At length king Edward, having completed the term of his fortunate life, departed this world in the year of Our Lord 1066. Whereupon Harold immediately usurped his kingdom, perjured in the fealty which he had sworn to the duke. The duke at once sent envoys to him, exhorting him to withdraw from this madness and keep the faith which he had sworn. But he not only would not listen but caused the whole English people also to be faithless to the duke. Then there appeared in the heavens a comet[5] which, with three long rays, lit up a great part of the southern hemisphere for 15 nights together, foretelling, as many said, a change in a kingdom.

24 Duke William therefore, who himself by right should have been crowned with the royal diadem, seeing Harold daily grow in strength, quickly caused a fleet of 3,000 vessels to be built and anchored at St. Valery (sur-Somme) in Ponthieu, loaded both with splendid

[1] Edward the Confessor (r.1042–1066).

[2] I.e., Duke William of Normandy. Throughout this document he is the man known as the "duke."

[3] Harold, son of the powerful Earl Godwine of Wessex, and thus known as Harold Godwineson.

[4] I.e., Duke William.

[5] This was, in fact, Halley's comet, which, in its orbit around the sun, passes near the earth about once every seventy-six years.

horses and the finest warriors, with hauberks[1] and with helmets. Thence with a following wind, sails spread aloft, he crossed the sea and landed at Pevensey, where he at once raised a strongly entrenched castle. Leaving a force of warriors in that, he hastened on to Hastings where he quickly raised another. Harold, hastening to take him by surprise, raised an immense army of English and, riding through the night, appeared at the place of battle in the morning.

25 The duke however, in case of night attack, ordered his army to stand to arms from dusk to dawn. At daybreak he marshalled the squadrons of his warriors in three divisions and fearlessly advanced against the dread foe. He engaged the enemy at the third hour (9 a.m.) and the carnage continued until nightfall. Harold himself fell in the first shock of battle,[2] pierced with lethal wounds. The English, learning that their king had met his death, despairing of their lives, with night approaching, turned about and sought safety in flight.

26 The victorious duke returned to the battlefield from the pursuit and slaughter of his enemies in the middle of the night. Early next morning, the loot having been collected up from the fallen foe and the corpses of his own cherished men buried, he began his march towards London. It is said that in this battle many thousands of English lost their lives, Christ in them exacting retribution for the violent and unlawful death meted out to Alfred, brother of king Edward [the Confessor]. At length the fortunate war-leader, who was no less protected by good counsel, leaving the highroad, turned away from the city at Wallingford, where he crossed the river and ordered camp to be pitched. Moving on from there he came to London, where an advance-party of warriors on entering the city found a large force of rebels determined to make a vigorous resistance. At once engaging them, the warriors inflicted much sorrow upon London by the death of many of her sons and citizens. At length the Londoners, seeing that they could resist no longer, gave hostages and submitted themselves and all they had to their noble conqueror and hereditary lord. And thus his triumph duly completed in spite of so many perils, our illustrious duke, to whom our inadequate words do not begin to do justice, on Christmas Day, was chosen king by all the magnates both Norman and English, anointed with holy oil by the bishops of the kingdom and crowned with the royal diadem, in the year of Our Lord 1066.

5.16 The native position: "Florence of Worcester," *Chronicle of Chronicles* (early 12th cent.). Original in Latin.

Not everyone agreed that William ruled "by right." Members of the Anglo-Saxon lay and ecclesiastical aristocracy bitterly resented their displacement by William's followers. Monks, too, were unhappy, as William imposed a new regime on English monastic life closely modeled on the elaborate round of collective prayer at Cluny. Submerged opposition may be seen in the *Chronicle of Chronicles*, produced in the early twelfth century by a monk at Worcester who was for a long time thought to be "Florence" but is now thought to have been a different monk, named John. The source is still generally known as "Florence of Worcester." In the passage below, the author gives the Anglo-Saxon view of William (whom he calls "count" of Normandy) and the events of 1066. Note that Wulfstan, bishop of Worcester (d.1095), is mentioned in the text as among the few Anglo-Saxon prelates to swear fealty to William. At the same time, Wulfstan was almost certainly the person who commissioned "Florence of Worcester" to write.

1. After comparing the accounts of "Florence of Worcester" and William of Jumièges (p. 271, above), explain whose side you are on and why.

[1] A hauberk is a long tunic made out of chain mail.

[2] This is unlikely; Harold seems to have fallen at the end of the battle, not at the start.

2. What made Harold a legitimate king in the view of "Florence of Worcester"?

[Source: *English Historical Documents*, vol. 2: 1042–1189, ed. David C. Douglas and George W. Greenaway, 2nd ed. (London: Routledge, 1981), pp. 225–28 (slightly modified).]

1066 On Thursday the vigil of our Lord's Epiphany, in the Fourth Indiction, the pride of the English, the pacific king, Edward, son of King Æthelred,[1] died at London, having reigned over the English twenty-three years six months and seven days. The next day he was buried in kingly style amid the bitter lamentations of all present. After his burial the under-king, Harold, son of Earl Godwine, whom the king had nominated as his successor, was chosen king by the chief magnates of all England; and on the same day Harold was crowned with great ceremony by Aldred, archbishop of York. On taking the helm of the kingdom Harold immediately began to abolish unjust laws and to make good ones; to patronize churches and monasteries; to pay particular reverence to bishops, abbots, monks and clerks; and to show himself pious, humble and affable to all good men. But he treated malefactors with great severity, and gave general orders to his earls, ealdormen, sheriffs and thegns to imprison all thieves, robbers and disturbers of the kingdom. He labored in his own person by sea and by land for the protection of his realm. On April 24th in this year a comet was seen not only in England but, it is said, all over the world, and it shone for seven days with an exceeding brightness. Shortly afterwards Earl Tosti[2] returned from Flanders and landed in the Isle of Wight. After making the islanders pay tribute he departed and went pillaging along the sea-coast until he came to Sandwich. As soon as King Harold who was then at London heard this, he assembled a large fleet and a contingent of horsemen, and prepared himself to go to Sandwich. Tosti, learning of this, took some of the shipmen of that place (whether willing or unwilling) and set his course towards Lindsey, where he burnt many villages and put many men to death. Thereupon Edwin, earl of the Mercians, and Morcar, earl of the Northumbrians, hastened up with an army and expelled them from that part of the country. Afterwards he went to Malcolm, king of Scots, and remained with him during the whole of the summer. Meanwhile, King Harold arrived at Sandwich and waited there for his fleet. When it was assembled, he crossed over with it to the Isle of Wight, and, inasmuch as William, count of the Normans, was preparing to invade England with an army, he watched all the summer and autumn for his coming. In addition, he distributed a land force at suitable points along the sea coast. But about the feast of the Nativity of St. Mary[3] provisions fell short so that the naval and land forces returned home. After this Harald Hardraada, king of the Norwegians and brother of St. Olaf, the king, suddenly arrived at the mouth of the river Tyne with a powerful fleet of more than five hundred large ships. Earl Tosti, according to previous arrangement, joined him with his fleet. Hastening, they entered the Humber and, sailing up the Ouse against the stream, landed at Riccall. On hearing this, King Harold marched with speed towards Northumbria. But before his arrival the two brother earls, Edwin and Morcar, at the head of a large army fought a battle with the Norwegians on the northern bank of the river Ouse near York on Wednesday[4] which was the vigil of the feast of St. Matthew the Apostle. They fought so bravely at the onset that many of the enemy were overthrown; but after a long contest the English were unable to withstand the attacks of the Norwegians and fled with great loss. More were drowned in the river than slain on the field.[5] The Norwegians remained masters of the place of carnage, and having taken one hundred and fifty hostages from York and left there the same number of their own men as hostages they went to their ships. Five days after this, namely on Monday, September 25th, as Harold, king of the English, was coming to York with many thousand well-armed fighting men, he fell in with the Norwegians at a place called Stamford Bridge. He slew King Harald and Earl Tosti with the greater part of their army and

[1] This was Æthelred II the Unready, whose law code is excerpted above, p. 228.

[2] Earl Tosti was King Harold's brother. He sided with the Norwegian claimant to the English throne, Harald Hardraada, and the two were killed at the battle of Stamford Bridge on September 25, 1066.

[3] September 8, 1066.

[4] September 20, 1066.

[5] This was the battle of Fulford.

gained a complete victory. Nevertheless, the battle was stoutly contested. Harold, king of the English, permitted Olaf, the son of the Norwegian king, and Paul, earl of Orkney, who had been sent off with a portion of the army to guard the ships, to return home unmolested with twenty ships and the survivors, but only after they had sworn oaths of submission and had given hostages. In the midst of these things, and when the king might have thought that all his enemies were subdued, it was told him that William, count of the Normans, had arrived with a countless host of horsemen, slingers, archers and footsoldiers, and had brought with him also powerful help from all parts of Gaul. It was reported that he had landed at Pevensey. Thereupon the king at once, and in great haste, marched with his army to London. Although he well knew that some of the bravest Englishmen had fallen in the two former battles, and that one-half of his army had not yet arrived, he did not hesitate to advance with all speed into Sussex against his enemies. On Saturday, October 22nd,[1] before a third of his army was in order for fighting, he joined battle with them nine miles from Hastings, where his foes had erected a castle. But inasmuch as the English were drawn up in a narrow place, many retired from the ranks, and very few remained true to him. Nevertheless, from the third hour of the day until dusk he bravely withstood the enemy, and fought so valiantly and stubbornly in his own defense that the enemy's forces could make hardly any impression. At last, after great slaughter on both sides, about twilight the king, alas, fell. There were slain also Earl Gyrth, and his brother, Earl Leofwine, and nearly all the magnates of England. Then Count William returned with his men to Hastings. Harold reigned nine months and as many days. On hearing of his death earls Edwin and Morcar, who had withdrawn themselves from the conflict, went to London and sent their sister, Queen Edith,[2] to Chester. But Aldred, archbishop of York, and the said earls, with the citizens of London and the shipmen planned to elevate to the throne Prince Edgar, nephew of Edmund Ironside, and promised they would renew the contest under his command.[3] But while many were preparing to go to the fight, the earls withdrew their assistance and returned home with their army. Meanwhile Count William was laying waste Sussex, Kent, Hampshire, Surrey, Middlesex and Hertfordshire, burning villages and slaying their inhabitants until he came to Berkhamsted. There Archbishop Aldred, Wulfstan, bishop of Worcester, Walter, bishop of Hereford, Prince Edgar, the earls Edwin and Morcar, the chief men of London, and many others came to him, and giving hostages they surrendered and swore fealty to him. So he entered into a pact with them, but none the less permitted his men to burn villages and keep on pillaging. But when Christmas day drew near, he went to London with his whole army in order that he might be made king. And because Stigand, the primate of all England, was accused by the pope of having obtained the *pallium* in an uncanonical manner, William was anointed king by Aldred, archbishop of York.[4] This was done on Christmas day with great ceremony. Before this (since the archbishop made it a condition), the king had sworn at the altar of St. Peter the Apostle,[5] and in the presence of the clergy and people, that he would defend the holy churches of God and their ministers, that he would rule justly and with kingly care the whole people placed under him, that he would make and keep right law, and that he would utterly prohibit all spoliation and unrighteous judgments.

5.17 The Conquest depicted: *The Bayeux Tapestry* (end of the 11th cent.).

Not a tapestry at all but rather an embroidery, this long (230 feet) and narrow (20 inches) piece of linen tells in uninterrupted pictures, comic-strip style, the story told by William

[1] This is an error; the battle of Hastings was fought on St. Calixtus's day, Saturday, October 14, 1066.

[2] She had married King Harold.

[3] Edmund Ironside was a son of King Æthelred II the Unready of England. He was briefly king, from April to November, 1016.

[4] A "pallium" was a thin band of white wool worn by the popes in the performance of the liturgy, the use of which could be conferred on approved metropolitan bishops. It was regularly given to the archbishops of Canterbury.

[5] This was Westminster Abbey.

of Jumièges (above, p. 271). It covers Harold's early fealty to Duke William, his usurpation of the crown, and his defeat at the battle of Hastings. Borders at top and bottom add picturesque details, while embroidered labels in Latin identify important people and briefly explain the action. Probably commissioned by Odo of Bayeux, Duke William's half brother and a key figure in the story, the *Tapestry* is a work of propaganda. The portion shown here depicts Harold taking an oath before William. On the left is Duke William, sitting in authority upon a throne. Behind him are two Norman witnesses. Each of Harold's hands touches a reliquary as he swears an oath recognizing his dependency on William. To his right, pointing a finger at him, is an English witness. Harold's going back on his oath—his perjury—justifies the invasion of England.

See Plate 4, "Reading through Looking," pp. VI–VII, for a color reproduction of *The Bayeux Tapestry*.

1. How does this section of the tapestry serve to justify William's invasion of England?
2. Why is the moment of oath-taking on the tapestry followed by a sailing ship, with the wind driving it away from Normandy?

[Detail of the Bayeux Tapestry—11th Century. With special permission from the City of Bayeux]

5.18 Exploiting the Conquest: *Domesday Book* (1087). Original in Latin.

In 1086 William ordered a survey of England's counties (or shires) that came to be called "Domesday." Completed in 1087, *Domesday* consists of two books. The first and longer is a well-digested and abbreviated account of the commissioners' reports for all except three counties. The second contains less reworked reports for the remaining counties. The excerpt below, from the first volume, is part of the survey of Huntingdonshire. The excerpt begins with the landholders—the king and his tenants-in-chief—in the shire. There follows an itemization of the properties of each of these landholders along with the geld, or tax, they yielded in the "time of King Edward" (= *tempore Regis Edwardi*, abbreviated TRE). For example, in the time of Edward, before the Norman Conquest, the lands at Cotton were assessed at two hides when a geld was collected. "There is land for 3 ploughs" was a way to

express the acreage: "1 plough" was the theoretical amount of land that could be ploughed each year by a team of eight oxen. The "demesne" was the lord's share of the land. The villans (sometimes spelled villains or villeins) were fairly well-off peasants, at least in comparison with bordars, who represented the poorest peasants. The whole manor at Cotton was worth forty shillings, both in 1066 and in 1086, when the royal commissioners were asking their questions. While the tenant-in-chief holding Cotton was the bishop of Lincoln, he gave it to Tursin to "hold," probably in return for knight's service. Compare this document with the *Polyptyque of the Church of Saint Mary of Marseille*, above, p. 105, with regard to their purposes and the things they inventory.

1. Did any women "hold" land?
2. What proportion of landholders in Huntingdonshire were monasteries and bishops?

[Source: *Domesday Book: A Complete Translation*, ed. Ann Williams and G.H. Martin (New York: Penguin, 2002), pp. 551–53 (slightly modified).]

Huntingdonshire

Here Are Entered the Holders of Lands in Huntingdonshire

I KING WILLIAM

II The Bishop of Lincoln
III The Bishop of Coutances
IIII The Abbey of Ely
V The Abbey of Crowland
VI The Abbey of Ramsey
VII The Abbey of Thorney
VIII The Abbey of Peterborough
IX Count Eustace
X The Count of Eu
XI Earl Hugh
XII Walter Giffard
XIII William de Warenne
XIIII Hugh de Bolbec
XV Eudo fitzHubert
XVI Swein of Essex
XVII Roger d'Ivry
XVIII Ernulf de Hesdin
XIX Eustace the sheriff
XX Countess Judith
XXI Gilbert de Ghent
XXII Aubrey de Vere
XXIII William fitzAnsculf
XXIIII Ranulph, Ilger's brother
XXV Robert Fafiton
XXVI William Engaine
XXVII Ralph fitzOsmund
XXVIII Rohais, Richard's wife
XXIX The king's thegns

I. The Land of the King

HURSTINGSTONE HUNDRED[1]

IN HARTFORD King EDWARD had 15 hides of land to the geld. [There is] land for 17 ploughs. Ranulph, Ilger's brother, has custody of it now. There are now 4 ploughs in demesne; and 30 villans and 3 bordars have 8 ploughs. There is a priest and 2 churches, and 2 mills [rendering] £4, and 40 acres of meadow, [and] woodland pasture I league long and half a league broad. TRE worth £24; now £15.

NORMANCROSS HUNDRED

In BOTOLPH BRIDGE [in Peterborough] King Edward had 5 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 8 ploughs. There the king now has 1 plough in demesne; and 15 villans having 5 ploughs. There is a priest and a church, and 60 acres of meadow, and 12 acres of woodland pasture in Northamptonshire. TRE worth 100s;[2] now £8 Ranulph has custody of it. In this manor of the king and in other manors the sluice of the Abbot of Thorney has flooded 300 acres of meadow.

[1] In Anglo-Saxon England the shires (i.e., counties) were divided into hundreds for administrative and other purposes.

[2] "100s" means 100 shillings, or *solidi*.

In STILTON the king's sokemen [dependents, rather freer than villans] of Normancross [Hundred] have 3 virgates of land to the geld. [There is] land for 2 ploughs, and 5 oxen ploughing.

In ORTON WATERVILLE [in Peterborough] the king has soke [jurisdictional rights, which brought in revenue] over 3½ hides of land in the land of the Abbot of Peterborough which was Godwine's.

TOSELAND HUNDRED

In GREAT GRANSDEN Earl Ælfgar had 8 hides of land to the geld. [There is] land for 15 ploughs. There are now 7 ploughs in demesne; and 24 villans and 8 bordars having 8 ploughs. There is a priest and a church, and 50 acres of meadow and 12 acres of scrubland. From the pasture come 5s4d [5 shillings, 4 pennies]. TRE worth £40; now £30. Ranulph has custody of it.

LEIGHTONSTONE HUNDRED

In ALCONBURY and Great Gidding, a BEREWICK,[1] there were 10 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 20 ploughs. There are now 5 ploughs belonging to the hall, on 2 hides of this land; and 35 villans have 13 ploughs there, and 8 acres of meadow. TRE worth £12; now the same. Ranulph, Ilger's brother, has custody of it.

In KEYSTON King Edward had 4 hides of land to the geld. [There is] land for 12 ploughs. There are now 2 ploughs in demesne; and 24 villans and 8 bordars have 10 ploughs, and [there are] 86 acres of meadow. [There is] woodland, pasture in places, 5 furlongs long and 1½ furlongs broad. TRE, as now, worth £10. Ranulph, Ilger's brother, has custody of it.

In BRAMPTON King Edward had 15 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 15 ploughs. There are now 3 ploughs, and 36 villans and 2 bordars have 14 ploughs. There is a church and a priest and 100 acres of meadow, woodland pasture half a league long and 2 furlongs broad, and 2 mills rendering 10os. TRE, as now, worth £20. Ranulph, Ilger's brother, has custody of it.

In GRAFHAM are 5 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 8 ploughs. The soke [is] in "Leightonstone" Hundred. There 7 sokeman and 17 villans now have 6 ploughs, and 6 acres of meadow. [There is] woodland pasture 1 league long and broad. TRE worth £5: now 10s less.

In GODMANCHESTER King Edward had 14 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 57 ploughs. There are 2 ploughs now in the king's demesne, on 2 hides of this land; and 80 villans and 16 bordars have 24 ploughs. There is a priest and a church, and 3 mills [rendering] 10os, and 160 acres of meadow and 50 acres of woodland pasture. From the pasture 20s. From the meadows 70s. TRE worth £40: now the same, by tale [counting rather than weighing].

II. The Land of the Bishop of Lincoln

TOSELAND HUNDRED

In COTTON the Bishop of Lincoln had 2 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 3 ploughs. There are now 2 ploughs in demesne; and 3 villans having 2 oxen, and [there are] 20 acres of meadow. TRE, as now, worth 40s. Turstin holds it of the bishop.

In GREAT STAUGHTON the Bishop of Lincoln had 6 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 15 ploughs. There are now 2½ ploughs in demesne: and 16 villans and 4 bordars having 8 ploughs. There is a priest and a church, and 24 acres of meadow and 100 acres of woodland pasture. TRE, as now, worth £10. Eustace holds it of the bishop. The Abbot of Ramsey claims this manor against the bishop.

In DIDDINGTON the Bishop of Lincoln had 2½ hides to the geld. [There is] land for 2 ploughs. There are now 2 ploughs in demesne; and 5 villans having 2 ploughs. There is a church, and 18 acres of meadow, [and] woodland pasture half a league long and a half broad. TRE worth 60s; now 70s. William holds it of the bishop.

In BUCKDEN the Bishop of Lincoln had 20 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 20 ploughs. There are now 5 ploughs in demesne; and 37 villans and 20 bordars having 14 ploughs. There is a church and a priest and 1 mill [rendering] 30s, and 84 acres of meadow, [and] woodland pasture 1 league long and 1 league broad. TRE worth £20; now £16.10s.

NORMANCROSS HUNDRED

In DENTON Godric had 5 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 2 ploughs. There is now 1 plough in demesne; and 10 villans and 2 bordars have 5 ploughs. There is a church and a priest, and 24 acres of meadow and 24 acres of scrubland. TRE worth 100s; now £4. Turstin holds it of the bishop.

In ORTON WATERVILLE [in Peterborough] Leofric had 3 hides and 1 virgate of land to the geld. [There

[1] Berewick is an outlying estate.

is] land for 2 ploughs and 1 ox. There is now 1 plough in demesne, and 2 villans, and 9 acres of meadow. TRE worth 20s; now 10s. John holds it of the bishop. The king claims the soke of this land.

In STILTON Tovi had 2 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 2 ploughs and 7 oxen. There is now 1 plough in demesne; and 6 villans with 3 ploughs, and 16 acres of meadow and 5 acres of scrubland. TRE, as now, worth 40s. John holds it of the bishop. This land was given to Bishop Wulfwine TRE.

LEIGHTONSTONE HUNDRED

In LEIGHTON BROMSWOLD Thorkil the Dane had 15 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 17 ploughs. There are now 6 ploughs in demesne; and 33 villans and 3 bordars having 10 ploughs, and 1 mill [rendering] 3s. 3 knights hold 3 hides, less 1 virgate, of this land. There they have 3 ploughs, and 3 villans with half a plough. There are 30 acres of meadow and 10 acres of scrubland. TRE, as now, the bishop's demesne was worth £20; the land of the knights, 60s. Earl Waltheof gave this manor in alms to st. mary of Lincoln.

In PERTENHALL Alwine had 1 virgate of land to the geld. [There is] land for half a plough. This land is situated in Bedfordshire but renders geld and service in Huntingdonshire. The king's servants claim this [land] for his use. TRE, as now, worth 5s. William holds it of Bishop Remigius and ploughs it there with his own demesne.

III. The Land of the Bishop of Coutances

In HARGRAVE [Northants] Sæmær had 1 virgate of land to the geld. [There is] land for 2 oxen. The soke [is] in Leightonstone [Hundred]. The same man himself holds it now of the Bishop of Coutances, and ploughs there with 2 oxen, and has 2 acres of meadow. TRE worth 5s; now the same.

IIII. The Land of the Abbey of Ely

[HURSTINGSTONE HUNDRED]

In COLNE the Abbot of Ely had 6 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 6 ploughs, and in demesne [he had] land for 2 ploughs apart from the 6 hides. There are now 2 ploughs in demesne; and 13 villans and 5 bordars having 5 ploughs; and 10 acres of meadow. [There is] woodland pasture a league long and a half broad, and as much marsh. TRE worth £6; now 100s.

In BLUNTISHAM the Abbot of Ely had 6½ hides to the geld. [There is] land for 8 ploughs and, apart from these hides, [he had] land for 2 ploughs in demesne. There are now 2 ploughs in demesne; and 10 villans and 3 bordars with 3 ploughs. There is a priest and a church, and 20 acres of meadow, [and] woodland pasture 1 league long and 4 furlongs broad. TRE, as now, worth 100s.

In SOMERSHAM the Abbot of Ely had 8 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 12 ploughs and, apart from these hides, [he had] land for 2 ploughs in demesne. There are now 2 ploughs in demesne; and 32 villans and 9 bordars having 9 ploughs. There are 3 fishponds [rendering] 8s. and 20 acres of meadow, [and] woodland pasture 1 league long and 7 furlongs broad. TRE worth £7; now £8.

In SPALDWICK the Abbot of Ely had 15 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 15 ploughs. There are now 4 ploughs in demesne, on 5 hides of this land; and 50 villans and 10 bordars having 25 ploughs. There is 1 mill [rendering] 2s, and 160 acres of meadow and 60 acres of woodland pasture. TRE worth £16; now £22.

In Little Catworth, a BEREWICK of Spaldwick, [there are] 4 hides to the geld. [There is] land for 4 ploughs. There 7 villans have 2 ploughs now.

THE TWELFTH-CENTURY RENAISSANCE

5.19 Logic: Peter Abelard, *Glosses on Porphyry* (*c.*1100). Original in Latin.

Early twelfth–century Europeans had little access to the ancient teaching on logic, especially the pivotal works of Aristotle. But scholars like Peter Abelard (1079–1142) were convinced

that logic was an essential tool for arriving at truth. They drew on the few writings of Aristotle that were available and had, in addition, a treatise that the Greek neo-Platonist Porphyry (d.*c.*305) had written as an introduction to Aristotle's *Categories*; it had been commented on and translated into Latin by the late Roman philosopher Boethius (d.524/526). Abelard was interested in using and developing logic. He concentrated particularly on understanding the kind of reality possessed by "universals"—the "genera and species" that Aristotle spoke of in his writings on logic. Confronting William of Champeaux (d.1121), a scholar of Abelard's day who believed that universals existed outside the mind as common entities, Abelard formulated a set of arguments against this possibility. In his view, every real being outside the mind was entirely singular and in no way common. So-called universals, he concluded, were nothing more than names. They were common not because they possessed any kind of common being but simply because they could be predicated of many different subjects. We can say, for example, that Peter is human; Paul is human; Mary is human; and so on for countless others. As "human" is thus predicable of many, it is accordingly a universal. In the selection below, we see some of Abelard's arguments against William's view, which has come to be known as realism. These arguments were apparently so successful that, much to Abelard's delight, they forced William to modify his position.

1. Why were issues of logic important to medieval scholars?
2. What is Abelard getting at when he says that "in himself [Socrates] is diverse from Plato and likewise in another since he is not the other"?

[Source: *Basic Issues in Medieval Philosophy*, 2nd ed., ed. Richard N. Bosley and Martin Tweedale (Peterborough, ON: Broadview Press, 1997), pp. 353–54. Introduced by Blake Dutton.]

It remains now to object to those who say that each individual in that it agrees with others is universal and who allow that the same items are predicated of many, not in that many are essentially them, but because many agree with them. But if to be predicated of many is the same as agreeing with many, how is it that we say an individual is predicated of only one, since there is nothing which agrees with only one thing? Also, how does being predicated of many constitute a difference between universal and singular, since Socrates agrees with many in exactly the same way as a human being agrees with many? Certainly, a human being insofar as he is a human being and Socrates insofar as he is a human being agrees with others. But neither a human being insofar as he is Socrates nor Socrates insofar as he is Socrates agrees with others. Therefore, whatever a human being has Socrates also has, and in the same way.

Besides, since human being which is in Socrates and Socrates himself are conceded to be completely the same things, there is no difference of the latter from the former. For no thing is diverse from itself at one and the same time, because whatever it has in itself it has and in entirely the same way. Thus, Socrates while white and literate is not in virtue of these diverse from himself, although he has diverse things in himself, for he has both these and in entirely the same way. He is not in one way of himself literate and another way white, just as it is not one thing which of itself is white and another literate.

Also, when they say that Socrates and Plato agree in human being, how is that to be understood when it is agreed that all humans differ from each other both in matter and in form? For if Socrates agrees with Plato in the thing which is human being, but no thing is human being other than Socrates himself or some other human being, he will have to agree with Plato either in himself or in someone else. But in himself he is diverse from Plato and likewise in another since he is not the other.

There are those who understand agreeing in human being negatively as if it were said: Socrates does not differ from Plato in human being. But we could also say that he does not differ from Plato in stone since neither is a stone. Then we note no greater agreement between them

in human being than in stone, unless perhaps there is an earlier proposition, as though we said: They are human being because they do not differ in human being. But this cannot be since it is altogether false that they do not differ in human being. For if Socrates does not differ from Plato in the thing which is human being, neither does he in himself. For if he differs in himself from Plato, since he is the thing which is human being, certainly he will differ from Plato in the thing which is human being.

Now that we have given the arguments why things either individually or collectively cannot be called universal, i.e. said to be predicated of many, it remains to ascribe universality to utterances alone. So just as grammarians call some nouns common and others proper, so dialecticians call some simple expressions universal, some particular, i.e. singular. A word is universal when it is apt to be predicated of many individually on account of its establishment, like the noun "human being" which is conjoinable to particular names of humans in virtue of the nature of the subject things to which it is applied. A singular word is one which is predicable of only one, like "Socrates," since it is taken to be a name of only one.

5.20 Medical science: Constantine the African's translation of Johannitius's *Isagoge* (before 1098). Original in Latin.

We know very little about Constantine the African except that he came to Salerno before 1077 and died at the monastery of Monte Cassino (near Rome) between 1085 and 1098. But his writings initiated a wholesale revival of medical learning in the West. Among his works, excerpted here, was a translation of the *Masa'il fi-tibb* ("Questions about Medicine") by the Nestorian Christian Hunayn ibn Ishaq, who lived in Baghdad in the ninth century. That, in turn, had been a distillation of Galen's *Art of Medicine*, an important medical textbook of the ancient world. Constantine Latinized Hunayn into "Johannitius" and used the Greek word *Isagoge* ("Introduction") in place of Hunayn's Arabic title. The work soon joined other medical texts in translation—some from Hippocrates, the ancient Greek doctor, and others from more recent Byzantine writings—to form the *Articella*, the standard textbook for learning "Greek" medicine in the West. Even after the *Articella* was superseded by other medical texts, the *Isagoge* remained important in medical education, especially at the influential medical school at Salerno.

1. What aspects of the human body are involved in emotions according to Constantine's account?
2. How do today's notions of diet compare with those of Constantine?

[Source: *Medieval Medicine: A Reader*, ed. Faith Wallis (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2010), pp. 140–48 (notes added from glossary). Translated by Faith Wallis.]

1. Medicine is divided into two parts, namely, theory and practice. And of these, theory is further divided into three, that is to say, the consideration of things that are natural, and of things that are non-natural (whence comes knowledge of health, disease, and the neutral state), and when these natural things depart from the course of nature—that is, when the four humors increase beyond the course of nature; and from what cause and symptoms disease may arise.

[The Naturals[1]]

2. **Natural things.** There are seven natural things: the elements, the mixtures [of qualities], the humors,[2] the members [of the body], the powers,[3] the faculties, and the spirits.[4] Some people add to these four others: namely, the ages of life, the colors, the shapes, and the distinction between male and female.

3. **The four elements.** There are four elements: fire, air, water, and earth. Fire is hot and dry; air is hot and moist; water is cold and moist; earth is cold and dry.

4. **The mixtures [of qualities].** There are nine mixtures [of qualities]. Eight are unequal and one equal. Of the unequal, four are simple: namely, hot, cold, moist, and dry. And from these come four composite [mixtures], namely, hot and moist; hot and dry; cold and moist; cold and dry. [A mixture is] equal when the body is brought to a state where it is sound and intact through a balance [of all four qualities].

5. **The humors.** There are four compound [humors]: blood, phlegm, red bile, and black bile. Blood is hot and moist, phlegm is cold and moist, red bile is hot and dry, black bile is cold and dry.

10. **Kinds of members.** There are four kinds of members. Some of them are principal—the foundations and material, so to speak. These are four: the brain, the heart, the liver, and the testicles. Other members serve the aforesaid principal members, such as the nerves, which minister to the brain, and the arteries which minister to the heart, and the veins, which minister to the liver, and the spermatic vessels, which convey sperm to the testicles. Some members have their own inherent power that governs these members and comprises their quality—for example bones, all the cartilages or the membranes that are between the skin and the flesh, the muscles, fat, and flesh. 11. There are other [members] that originate from their own innate power and derive vigor from the fundamental [members], for example, the stomach, kidneys, intestines, and all the muscles. By their own proper power, these members seek out food and transform it, and they perform their actions according to nature. They also have other inherent powers that derive from the fundamental principal [members]; sensation, life, and voluntary motion come from these.

12. **The powers.** The powers are divided into three. There is the natural power, the spiritual power, and the animal power. One natural power ministers, and another is ministered to. Sometimes it generates, at another time it nourishes, and at another time it feeds. But the power that ministers sometimes seeks out, retains, digests, and expels the things that minister to the feeding power, just as the feeding power ministers to the nourishing power. 13. The other two serve the generating power, one by altering food, the other by re-fashioning it. These differ from one another in that the first power alters, and it serves the generating power through the activity of refashioning. But the operations of the re-fashioning power are five: assimilation, hollowing out, perforating, roughening, and smoothing.

14. **Spiritual power.** From the spiritual power, two others proceed: one is operative and the other is operated upon. The operative power is that which dilates the heart and arteries and then contracts them. From the one which is operated upon come anger, indignation, triumph, domination, astuteness, and anxiety.

---

[1] In Arabic-Galenic physiology, the term "naturals" or "things natural" referred to the unalterable "givens" of the physical world and the human body: the elements, complexions, humors, organs, etc.

[2] Depending on the context, the humors were either a) a moisture or fluid of some kind, or b) one of the four bodily fluids deemed to constitute the physiological basis of human life. The classic humors were blood, red bile (also called yellow bile or choler), phlegm, and black bile (or melancholy).

[3] The powers were the natural principles within the body that organized and executed the three major functions of life. Natural powers were nutrition, growth, and reproduction. Spiritual or vital powers were respiration, heat, and emotion. Animal powers were sensation, voluntary motion, and cognition. The powers were manifestations of the spirits.

[4] The spirits were the life forces that organized the principal functions of the body. The natural spirit, whose seat was the liver, controlled nutrition, growth, and reproduction. The vital (or spiritual) spirit, located in the heart, controlled respiration, vital heat, and, to some degree, motion and emotion. The animal spirit, which resided in the brain, governed sensation, voluntary motion, and (in humans) reason.

15. **Animal power** [*the power of* **animus** *or mind*]**.** Animal power encompasses three things. One animal power arranges, discriminates, and assembles; a second one moves with voluntary motions; the third is called "sensing." From the ordering, discriminating, and assembling power come these things: imagination in the front part of the head, cognition or reasoning in the brain, and memory in the occipital region. The [second animal] power moves with voluntary motion. And the sensing power consists in sight, hearing, taste, smell, and touch.

16. **Faculties.** Faculties are of two kinds. There are faculties of which each accomplishes on its own what pertains to it, such as appetite for food [which works] by means of heat and dryness; digestion [which works] by means of heat and moisture; retention [which works] by means of cold and dryness; expulsion [which works] by cold and moisture. There are also composite faculties which are composed of two [faculties]: such are desire and expulsion.

17. **Spirit.** The spirits are three. First, the natural spirit takes its origin from the liver; second, the vital spirit, [originating] from the heart; third, the animal spirit, from the brain. Of these three the first is diffused throughout the whole body in the veins which have no pulse; the second is transmitted by the arteries; and the third by the nerves. These are considered in the seventh division of the seven natural things, that is, the spirit.

18. **The ages [of life].**There are four ages; namely, youth, prime of life, maturity, and old age. Adolescence is of a hot and moist complexion;[1] in adolescence the body increases and grows up to the twenty-fifth or thirtieth year. The prime of life follows, which is hot and dry, preserving the body in a perfect state, with no diminution of its powers, and it ends at age thirty-five or forty. After this comes maturity, which is cold and dry, in which the body begins to decline and decrease, although its power is not abated, and it lasts to the fiftieth or sixtieth year. After this comes old age, abounding in phlegmatic humor, cold and wet, in which it is apparent that there is a decline of power, and it ends with the end of life.

25. **The qualities of the body.** The qualities of the body are five in number; namely, obesity; thinness; emaciation, atrophy, and the mean state. Fatness of flesh arises from lack of heat and overabundance of moisture; thinness arises from heat and intense dryness. Emaciation arises from cold and intense dryness; atrophy from cold and intense moisture. And a mean state arises from a mean proportion of the humors. These are the shapes of the body.

26. **The difference between male and female.** The male differs from the female because he is hotter and dryer; she, on the contrary, is colder and more moist.

[The Non-naturals[2]]

27. **Changes of air.** Changes of the air come about in five different ways; from the seasons, from the rising and setting of the stars, from the winds, from the lands, and from the vapors that arise from them.

28. **The four seasons of the year.** The seasons of the year are four: spring, which is hot and moist; summer, which is hot and dry; autumn, which is cold and dry; winter, which is cold and moist. The nature of the air is changed by the stars, for when the sun approaches a star or a star the sun, the air becomes hotter. But when they separate the coldness of the air is increased.

29. **The winds.** There are four winds: the east wind, the west wind, the north wind, and the south wind. Of the latter two, the nature of the first [that is, the north wind] is cold and dry and of the second [the south wind] is hot and moist. The two others are of an equal nature, for the east wind is hot and dry and the west wind is cold and moist. The south wind is slightly hotter and moister and the north wind colder and dryer.

---

[1] Complexion referred to the blending of qualities or humors natural to an individual. It is more or less equivalent to temperament. The term survives today to denote the quality of the skin because pre-modern physicians made an initial determination of the patient's complexion from examining the face.

[2] The non-naturals referred to environmental and behavioral factors affecting health or disease. These were variable (including air, food and drink, sleep and wakefulness, rest and motion, retention and elimination, and emotional states), and they exerted an influence on the naturals.

32. **Exercise.** Exercise produces change in the body. When it is moderate, it causes a moderate amount of heat; when it is increased, it warms it to a greater degree and afterwards cools it down.

33. **Rest.** Rest produces change in the body; if excessive, it increases cold and moisture.

34. **Baths.** Baths are either of fresh water or of water which is not fresh. A fresh-water bath softens the body, a hot bath warms it, a cold bath cools it. But a fresh-water bath dries out the body, while baths of salt or bitter or sulphurous waters heat and dry the body, and alum or alkaline baths cool and dry it.

35. **Kinds of foods.** Foods are of two kinds. Good food generates good humor and bad food generates an evil humor. That which produces a good humor is that which generates good blood; namely, that which is in a balanced state as regards mixture [of qualities] and operation, such as clean bread [with bran removed] and the flesh of yearling lamb or kid. Bad food brings about the contrary state, for example old bread, or bread with bran in it, or the flesh of old rams or goats. Foods producing good or evil humors are of two kinds, heavy or light. Pork and beef are heavy; chicken or fish are light. And of the latter, the flesh of the middle-sized and more active kinds is better than that of the fatter and scaly varieties. 36. Some kinds of vegetables produce an evil humor of red bile; for instance, nasturtium, mustard, and garlic. Lentils, cabbage, and the meat of old goat's flesh or beef produce black bile. Suckling pig, lamb, purslane,[1] and mountain spinach beget phlegm. Moreover, heavy foods produce phlegm and black bile, and light food produces red bile; in either case, this is bad.

37. **Kinds of drink.** Drinks are of three kinds. First, there is drink which is nothing but a drink: for example, water. Secondly, there is drink which is both drink and food, such as wine. Thirdly, there is drink which is both of these, and this is the potion [medicine] which is given to counteract the harm from a disease, such as melicrate [*honey and water*], mead, or spiced tonic. Food is useful because it restores the integrity of the body in its proper order. Drink is useful because it distributes food throughout the body. But that kind of drink which we called "potion" is useful because it changes the nature of the body into itself.[2]

[The Contra-naturals[3]]

42. **Fever.** Fever is unnatural heat, exceeding the normal course of nature, proceeding from the heart into the arteries; and it inflicts harm by its effect. There are three kinds: the first is in the spirit, and it is called "ephemeral"; the second arises from humors which putrefy, and it is called "putrid"; and the third damages the members of the body, and this one is called "hectic." Of these, the ephemeral variety arises from incidental causes, and putrid [fever] also, [which arises] from things that are putrefied. 43. Some of these are simple and not combined with others, and these are four. The first is that which arises from the putrid state of the blood, scorching both the interior and exterior of the body; for instance, a continued fever. The second is that which arises from the putrid state of red bile; for instance, tertian fever. The third arises from the putrid state of phlegm; for instance, quotidian fever. And the fourth arises from the putrid state of black bile; this attacks the sick man after an interval of two days, and this is called quartan [fever].[4]

46. **What produces health.** If each of the natural things in the human body preserves its proper nature, health is maintained. If any should lose its proper nature, this will make either for illness or the neutral state. There are three classes of illness: similar, universal, and official. 47. A [similar disease] is one affecting the similar members[5] and they have a similar name when the type of suffering is the same, for example, an *aching* head. An [official

[1] A succulent plant sometimes cooked as a vegetable or put into salads.

[2] That is, the potion transforms the body to conform to the nature of the potion itself.

[3] The contra-naturals were all the diseases and traumas that threatened the natural body.

[4] Continuous fevers never broke; tertian fevers peaked every third day; quotidian fevers peaked every day; quartan fevers peaked every fourth day.

[5] Similar diseases were diseases of bad mixtures of humors or qualities, while similar members referred to homogenous parts. Here Constantine gives the example of aches; they were caused by bad mixtures and could affect similar members—i.e., the head or other body parts—indifferently.

disease] befalls official members[1] such as the feet, hands, tongue, or teeth. This takes its name from the infirmity incident to them, for instance podagra [in the foot] or chiragra [in the hand]. And finally there is a universal disease, which is linked to the other two, for example dislocation of the members.

CLUNIACS AND CISTERCIANS

5.21 The Cistercian view: Saint Bernard, *Apologia* (1125). Original in Latin.

An *apologia* is a defense, not an apology. This one emerged from the growing tension between the competing claims of holiness of the Cistercians and the traditional Benedictines, the "black monks," particularly the Cluniacs. Bernard's *Apologia*, written in the guise of a letter to William of Saint-Thierry, the reform-minded abbot of a Cluniac-style house, is modeled on classical rhetorical practice: first you belittle your own side and then you turn to demolish your opponent. The passage below begins at the end of Bernard's criticism of his own order, the Cistercians, which, he says, ought not to be overly proud of its own style of life. Then he turns to "certain monks of yours"—he means the black monks in general and the Cluniacs in particular—offering a bit of "friendly" advice. What follows is a scathing satire on what Bernard took to be the excess, luxury, and laxity of the Cluniacs.

1. How might you defend Cluniac "superfluity" against Bernard's attacks?
2. What were Bernard's criticisms of Cluniac churches?

[Source: *The Cistercian World: Monastic Writings of the Twelfth Century*, trans. and ed. Pauline Matarasso (New York: Penguin Press, 1993), pp. 47–51, 55–58 (notes modified).]

15 If this is to be a letter, it is time I finished it. I have taken up the pen and rebuked as vigorously as I could those monks of ours whom you, Father, complained of as having criticized your Order,[2] and have cleared myself at the same time, as it behoved me, of any unfounded suspicion on this count. However, I feel bound to add a few remarks. Because I give our own men no quarter, I might seem to condone the behavior of certain monks of yours—conduct which I know you disapprove of, and which all good monks must necessarily avoid. I refer to abuses that, if they exist in the Order, God forbid should ever be a part of it. Certainly no order can contain an element of disorder, for disorder and order are incompatible. So long, therefore, as I attack in the men I censure not the Order they belong to but their vices, I shall be seen as arguing for the Order and not against it. In doing this I have no fear of offending those who love the Order. On the contrary they will surely thank

[1] An official disease was not of bad mixture but of bad conformation, such as a deformity. Official members were parts of the body with particular, "official" functions, such as the feet, which have the function of walking. Podagra (today called gout of the foot) and chiragra (today known as gout of the hand) were seen as diseases of bad conformation.

[2] Throughout the following passage, Bernard plays on the meaning of "order," which can refer to the general and abstract notion of order; the monks of the Benedictine Order—that is, those who adhere to *The Benedictine Rule*—and finally, the monks of the Order of Cluny—that is, those who were juridically under the abbot of Cluny, whether at Cluny or not, or, more loosely, those who belonged to a "Cluniac-style" monastery.

me for hunting down what they themselves detest. Any who might be displeased would prove by their refusal to condemn the vices that corrupt it that they did not have the Order's good at heart. To them I make the Gregorian rejoinder: better that scandal erupt than that the truth be abandoned.[1]

Against Superfluity

VIII, 16 It is said, and quite rightly, that the Cluniac way of life was instituted by holy Fathers; anxious that more might find salvation through it, they tempered the Rule to the weak without weakening the Rule. Far be it from me to believe that they recommended or allowed such an array of vanities or superfluities as I see in many religious houses. I wonder indeed how such intemperance in food and drink, in clothing and bedding, in horses and buildings can implant itself among monks. And it is the houses that pursue this course with thoroughgoing zeal, with full-blown lavishness, that are reputed the most pious and the most observant. They go so far as to count frugality avarice, and sobriety austerity, while silence is reputed gloom. Conversely, slackness is called discretion, extravagance liberality, chattering becomes affability, guffawing cheerfulness, soft clothing and rich caparisons are the requirements of simple decency, luxurious bedding is a matter of hygiene, and lavishing these things on one another goes by the name of charity. By such charity is charity destroyed, and this discretion mocks the very word. It is a cruel mercy that kills the soul while cherishing the body. And what sort of charity is it that cares for the flesh and neglects the spirit? What kind of discretion that gives all to the body and nothing to the soul? What kind of mercy that restores the servant and destroys the mistress? Let no one who has shown that sort of mercy hope to obtain the mercy promised in the Gospel by him who is the truth: "Blessed are the merciful, for they shall receive mercy."[2] On the contrary, he can expect the sure and certain punishment which holy Job invoked with the full force of prophecy on those whom I call "cruelly kind": "Let him be no longer remembered, but let him be broken like a sterile tree." The cause—and a sufficient cause for that most proper retribution—follows at once: "He feeds the barren, childless woman and does no good to the widow."[3]

17 Such kindness is obviously disordered and irrational. It is that of the barren and unfruitful flesh, which the Lord tells us profits nothing[4] and Paul says will not inherit the kingdom of God.[5] Intent on satisfying our every whim it pays no heed to the Sage's wise and warning words: "Have mercy on your own soul and you will please God."[6] That is indeed true mercy, and must perforce win mercy, since one pleases God by exercising it. Conversely it is, as I said, not kindness but cruelty, not love but malevolence, not discretion but confusion to feed the barren woman and do no good to the widow—in other words, to pander to the desires of the profitless flesh while giving the soul no help in cultivating the virtues. For the soul is indeed bereaved in this life of her heavenly Bridegroom.[7] Yet she never ceases to conceive by the Holy Spirit and bring forth immortal offspring, which, provided they are nurtured with diligent care, will rightfully be heirs to an incorruptible and heavenly inheritance.[8]

18 Nowadays, however, these abuses are so widespread and so generally accepted that almost everyone acquiesces in them without incurring censure or even blame, though motives differ. Some use material things with such detachment as to incur little or no guilt. Others are moved by simple-mindedness, by charity or by constraint. The first, who do as they are bidden in all simplicity, would be ready to act differently if the bidding were different. The second kind, afraid of dissension in the community, are led, not by their own pleasure, but by their desire to keep the peace. Lastly there are those who are unable to stand out against a hostile majority that vociferously defends such practices as pertaining to the Order and moves swiftly and forcibly to block whatever judicious restrictions or changes the former try to bring in.

---

[1] Gregory the Great, *Homilies on Ezechiel* 1.7.5.

[2] Matt. 5:7.

[3] Job 24:20–21.

[4] John 6:64.

[5] 1 Cor. 15:50.

[6] Ecclus. 30:24; the "Sage" is the author of Ecclesiasticus, Jesus son of Sirach.

[7] The "heavenly Bridegroom" is Christ.

[8] See 1 Pet. 1:4.

IX, 19 Who would have dreamed, in the far beginnings of the monastic order, that monks would have slid into such slackness? What a way we have come from the monks who lived in Anthony's day![1] When one of them paid on occasion a brotherly call on another, both were so avid for the spiritual nourishment they gained from the encounter that they forgot their physical hunger and would commonly pass the whole day with empty stomachs but with minds replete. And this was the right order of precedence—to give priority to what is nobler in man's make-up; this was real discretion—making greater provision for the more important part; this indeed true charity—to tend with loving care the souls for love of whom Christ died.

As for us, when we come together, to use the Apostle's words, it is not to eat the Lord's supper.[2] There is none who asks for heavenly bread and none who offers it. Never a word about Scripture or salvation. Flippancy, laughter and words on the wind are all we hear. At table our ears are as full of gossip as our mouths of festive fare, and all intent on the former we quite forget to restrain our appetite.

On Meals

20 Meanwhile course after course is brought in. To offset the lack of meat—the only abstinence—the laden fish dishes are doubled. The first selection may have been more than enough for you, but you have only to start on the second to think you have never tasted fish before. Such are the skill and art with which the cooks prepare it all that one can down four or five courses without the first spoiling one's enjoyment of the last, or fullness blunting the appetite. Tickle the palate with unaccustomed seasonings and the familiar start to pall, but exotic relishes will restore it even to its preprandial sharpness; and since variety takes away the sense of surfeit, one is not aware that one's stomach is overburdened. Foodstuffs in their pure and unadulterated state have no appeal, so we mix ingredients pell-mell, scorning the natural nutriments God gave us, and use outlandish savors to stimulate our appetite. That way we can eat far more than we need and still enjoy it.

To give but one example: who could itemize all the ways in which eggs are maltreated? Or describe the pains that are taken to toss them and turn them, soften and harden them, botch them and scotch them, and, finally serve them up fried, baked and stuffed by turns, in conjunction with other foods or on their own? What is the purpose of all this unless it be to titillate a jaded palate? Attention is also lavished on the outward appearance of a dish, which must please the eye as much as it gratifies the taste buds, for though a belching stomach may announce that it has had enough, curiosity is never sated. Poor stomach! the eyes feast on color, the palate on flavor, yet the wretched stomach, indifferent to both but forced to accept the lot, is more often oppressed than refreshed as a result.

On Drink

21 What can I say about the drinking of water when even watering one's wine is inadmissible? Naturally all of us, as monks, suffer from a weak stomach, which is why we pay good heed to Paul's advice to use a little wine.[3] It is just that the word *little* gets overlooked, I can't think why. And if only we were content with drinking it plain, albeit undiluted. There are things it is embarrassing to say, though it should be more embarrassing still to do them. If hearing about them brings a blush, it will cost you none to put them right. The fact is that three or four times during the same meal you might see a half-filled cup brought in, so that different wines may be not drunk or drained so much as carried to the nose and lips. The expert palate is quick to discriminate between them and pick out the most potent. And what of the monasteries—and there are said to be some—which regularly serve spiced and honeyed wine in the refectory on major feasts? We are surely not going to say that this is done to nurse weak stomachs? The only reason for it that I can see is to allow deeper drinking, or keener pleasure. But once the wine is flowing through the veins and the whole head is throbbing with it, what else can they do when they get up from table but go and sleep it off? And if you force a monk to get up for vigils before he has digested, you will set him groaning rather than intoning. Having got to bed, it's not the sin of drunkenness they regret if questioned, but not being able to face their food....

---

[1] A reference to St. Antony, for whose life see above, p. 30.

[2] 1 Cor. 11:20.

[3] 1 Tim. 5:35.

On Mounting One's High Horse

Leaving the rest aside, what evidence is there of humility when one solitary abbot travels with a parade of horseflesh and a retinue of lay-servants that would do honor to two bishops? I swear I have seen an abbot with sixty horses and more in his train. If you saw them passing, you would take them for lords with dominion over castles and counties, not for fathers of monks and shepherds of souls. Moreover, napery, cups, dishes and candlesticks have to be taken along, together with packs stuffed full, not with ordinary bedding, but with ornate quilts. A man cannot go a dozen miles from home without transporting all his household goods, as though he were going on campaign or crossing the desert where the basic necessities were unobtainable. Surely water for washing one's hands and wine for drinking can be poured from the same jug? Do you think that your lamp will fail to burn and shine[1] unless it stands in your very own candlestick, and a gold or silver one at that? Can you really not sleep except on a checkered blanket and under an imported coverlet? And is a single servant not capable of loading the packhorse, serving the food and making up the bed? And lastly, if we must travel with these retinues of men and beasts, can we not mitigate the evil by taking the necessary provisions instead of battening on[2] our hosts?

On the Place of Pictures, Sculpture, Gold and Silver in Monasteries

XII, 28 But these are minor points. I am coming to the major abuses, so common nowadays as to seem of lesser moment. I pass over the vertiginous height of churches, their extravagant length, their inordinate width and costly furnishings. As for the elaborate images that catch the eye and check the devotion of those at prayer within, they put me more in mind of the Jewish rite of old. But let this be: it is all done for the glory of God. But as a monk I ask my fellow monks the question a pagan poet put to pagans: "Tell me, O priests, why is there gold in the holy place?"[3] "Tell me, O poor men," say I—for it is the meaning, not the measure that concerns me—"tell me, O poor men, if poor you are, what is gold doing in the holy place?" It is one thing for bishops but quite another for monks. Bishops are under an obligation both to the wise and the foolish. Where people remain impervious to a purely spiritual stimulus, they use material ornamentation to inspire devotion. But we who have separated ourselves from the mass, who have relinquished for Christ's sake all the world's beauty and all that it holds precious, we who, to win Christ, count as dung[4] every delight of sight and sound, of smell and taste and touch, whose devotion do we seek to excite with this appeal to the senses? What are we angling for, I should like to know: the admiration of fools, or the offerings of the simple? Or have we perhaps, through mixing with the Gentiles, learned their ways and taken to worshipping their idols?

To put it plainly: suppose that all this is the work of cupidity,[5] which is a form of idol-worship; suppose that the real objective is not yield but takings. You want me to explain? It's an amazing process: the art of scattering money about that it may breed. You spend to gain, and what you pour out returns as a floodtide. A costly and dazzling show of vanities disposes to giving rather than to praying. Thus riches elicit riches, and money brings money in its train, because for some unknown reason the richer a place is seen to be the more freely the offerings pour in. When eyes open wide at gold-cased relics, purses do the same. A beautiful image of a saint is on show: the brighter the colors the holier he or she will be considered. Those who hasten to kiss the image are invited to leave a gift, and wonder more at the beauty than at the holiness they should be venerating.

Instead of crowns one sees in churches nowadays great jeweled wheels bearing a circle of lamps, themselves as good as outshone by the inset gems. Massive tree-like structures, exquisitely wrought, replace the simple candlestick. Here too the precious stones glimmer as brightly as the flames above.

What is this show of splendor intended to produce? Tears of contrition or gasps of admiration? O vanity of vanities,[6] but above all insanity! The walls of the church are ablaze with light and color, while the poor of the Church go hungry. The Church revets [dresses] its stones in gold and leaves its children naked. The money for feeding the destitute goes to feast the eyes of the rich. The curious find plenty to relish and the starving nothing

[1] See John 5:35.

[2] Thriving at someone else's expense.

[3] Persius, *Satires* 2.69.

[4] See Phil. 3:8.

[5] I.e., greed.

[6] Eccles. 1:2.

to eat. As for reverence, what respect do we show for the images of the saints that pattern the floor we tread beneath our feet? People often spit on angels' faces, and their tramping feet pummel the features of the saints. If we care little for the sacred, why not save at least the lovely colors? Why decorate what is soon to be defaced? Why paint what is bound to be trodden on? What good are beautiful pictures where they receive a constant coating of grime? And lastly, what possible bearing can this have on the life of monks, who are poor men and spiritual? And yet perhaps the poet's well-known line can be countered by the Prophet's words: "Lord, I have loved the beauty of your house and the place where your glory dwells."[1] Very well, we will tolerate such doings in our churches on the grounds that they harm only the foolish and the grasping and not the simple-hearted and devout.

29 But what can justify that array of grotesques in the cloister where the brothers do their reading, a fantastic conglomeration of beauty misbegotten and ugliness transmogrified? What place have obscene monkeys, savage lions, unnatural centaurs, manticores, striped tigers, battling knights or hunters sounding their horns? You can see a head with many bodies and a multi-bodied head. Here is a quadruped with a dragon's tail, there an animal's head stuck on a fish. That beast combines the forehand of a horse with the rear half of a goat, this one has the horns in front and the horse's quarters aft. With such a bewildering array of shapes and forms on show, one would sooner read the sculptures than the books, and spend the whole day gawking at this wonderland rather than meditating on the law of God. Ah, Lord! if the folly of it all does not shame us, surely the expense might stick in our throats?

30 This is a rich vein, and there is plenty more to be quarried, but I am prevented from carrying on by my own demanding duties and your imminent departure, Brother Oger.[2] Since I cannot persuade you to stay, and you do not want to leave without this latest little book, I am falling in with your wishes: I am letting you go and shortening my discourse, particularly since a few words spoken in a spirit of conciliation do more good than many that are a cause of scandal. And would to heaven that these few lines do not occasion scandal! I am well aware that in rooting out vices I shall have offended those involved. However, God willing, those I fear I may have exasperated may end up grateful for my strictures if they desist from their evil ways—that is to say, if the rigorists stop carping and the lax prune back their excesses, and if both sides act in conscience according to their own beliefs, without judging the others who hold different views. Those who are able to live austerer lives should neither despise nor copy those who cannot. As for the latter, they should not be led by admiration for their stricter brethren to imitate them injudiciously: just as there is a danger of apostasy when those who have taken a more exacting vow slip into easier ways, not everyone can safely scale the heights.

5.22 The Cluniac view: Peter the Venerable, *Miracles* (mid-1130s–mid-1150s). Original in Latin.

Peter the Venerable (1092/1094–1156) was born into a wealthy land-owning family. When he became abbot of Cluny in 1122, he inherited a troubled institution, weakened by a revolt against a former abbot and struggling to find a way to deal with hundreds of monasteries that, in one way or another, were dependent on Cluny. After he read Bernard's *Apology*, Peter responded to it in a long letter, rebutting each point. But he also answered the Cistercian critique by reforming the Cluniac lifestyle in his *Statutes* and by celebrating Cluny in his *Miracles*. Written over the course of the last twenty years of his life, the *Miracles*, which

[1] Ps. 26:8; Douay Ps. 25:8.

[2] Oger was Bernard's friend and a canon at Mont-Saint-Éloi, in the very north of France. The idea that Oger was a sort of messenger, on the point of taking the letter to William of Saint-Thierry, is a literary conceit. In fact, Bernard revised and polished the *Apologia* over the course of many months.

contained mainly stories having to do with Cluny, had one major purpose: to praise Cluniac monks. For Peter, Cluny was the embodiment of Christian virtue on earth, the "refuge" of sinners, and the model of monastic life. In the passage below he prefaces a discussion of miraculous visions of the dead with thoughts about Cluny's particular excellence.

1. How did Peter's emphasis on Cluny's function as the "asylum of all Christians" implicitly belittle the Cistercians?
2. Why does Peter emphasize Cluny's "day and night" prayers?

[Source: Peter the Venerable, *De miraculis* 1.9, ed. Denise Bouthillier (Turnhout: Brepols, 1988), pp. 35–36. Translated by Barbara H. Rosenwein.]

The monastery of Cluny is the best known in just about the entire world for its religion, the severity of its discipline, the number of its monks, and its complete observance of the monastic rule. It is the individual and collective place of refuge for sinners by means of which much harm has been inflicted on Hell and a great many profits have been gained by the Heavenly Kingdom. There [at Cluny] innumerable multitudes of men, casting off the heavy burdens of the world from their shoulders, have submitted their necks to the sweet yoke of Christ.[1] There the men of every profession, dignity, and order have changed secular arrogance and luxury into the humble and poor life of monks. There the venerable fathers of these churches [i.e., bishops], fleeing the burdens of church affairs, have chosen to live more safely and more quietly and to obey rather than to command. There the unending and turbulent struggle against spiritual evils offers daily palms of victory to the soldiers of Christ. For the inhabitants of this place, who subject their flesh to the spirit by a continuous effort, the Apostle speaks truly: "To live is Christ, and to die is gain."[2]

By the balm of spiritual virtues that is diffused from this place, the whole house of the world has been filled with the odor of ointment,[3] while the ardor of monastic religion, which at one time had grown cold, grew warm again by the example and zeal of these men. Gaul, Germany, and even Britain across the sea bear witness to this; Spain, Italy, and all of Europe acknowledge it. All of them are full of monasteries either newly founded by them or restored from their earlier decline. There [at these Cluniac houses] colleges of monks, like the celestial troops that surround God in their proper orders, with other armies of holy power, apply themselves day and night to divine praises, so that the saying of the prophet may be understood to also be about them: "Blessed are they that dwell in thy house, O Lord: they shall praise thee for ever and ever."[4] But why do I list other parts of the world, since Cluny's fame has reached from our westernmost regions all the way to the East and has not been hidden from even a corner of the Christian world? For Cluny is the vineyard, and its monks are the branches which, truly clinging to the vine, Christ, and pruned by the Father, the gardener, bear much fruit according to the words of the Evangelist.[5] We read about this vineyard in the Psalms: "It stretched forth its branches unto the sea, and its boughs unto the river."[6] Although this was rightly said about the synagogue of the Jews brought out of Egypt, and above all about the present Church, nevertheless nothing prevents us from understanding it also about this Cluniac Church, which is not the least member of the Universal Church.

[1] See Matt. 11:28–30.

[2] Phil. 1:21.

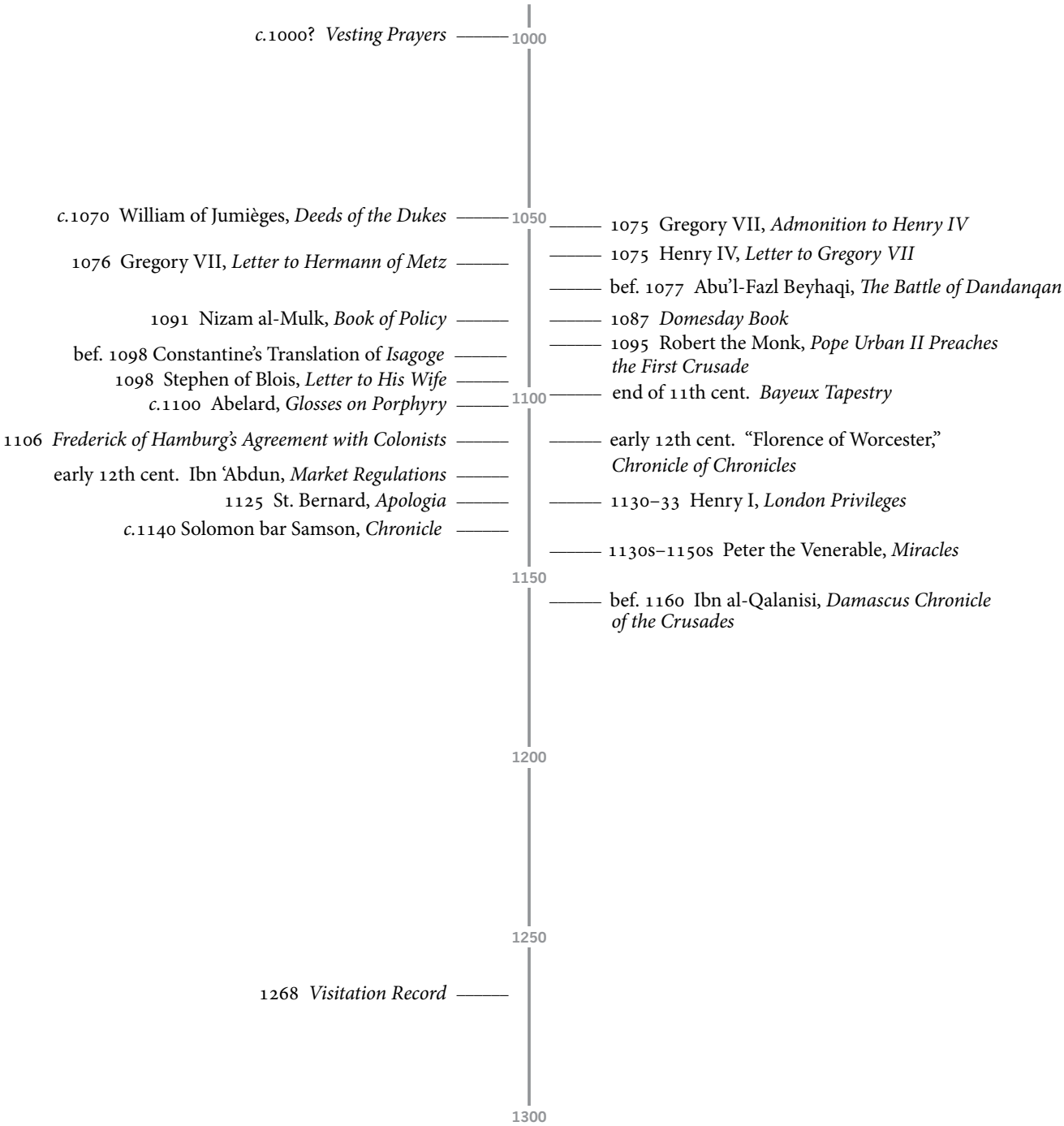
[3] See John 12:3.

[4] Ps. 84:4; Douay Ps. 83:5.

[5] See John 15:1–17.

[6] Ps. 80:11; Douay Ps. 79:12.

TIMELINE FOR CHAPTER FIVE


c.1000? Vesting Prayers
1000
c.1070 William of Jumièges, Deeds of the Dukes
1050
1075 Gregory VII, Admonition to Henry IV
1075 Henry IV, Letter to Gregory VII
1076 Gregory VII, Letter to Hermann of Metz
bef. 1077 Abu'l-Fazl Beyhaqi, The Battle of Dandanqan
1091 Nizam al-Mulk, Book of Policy
1087 Domesday Book
1095 Robert the Monk, Pope Urban II Preaches the First Crusade
bef. 1098 Constantine's Translation of Isagoge
1098 Stephen of Blois, Letter to His Wife
c.1100 Abelard, Glosses on Porphyry
1100
end of 11th cent. Bayeux Tapestry
1106 Frederick of Hamburg's Agreement with Colonists
early 12th cent. "Florence of Worcester," Chronicle of Chronicles
early 12th cent. Ibn 'Abdun, Market Regulations
1125 St. Bernard, Apologia
1130–33 Henry I, London Privileges
c.1140 Solomon bar Samson, Chronicle
1130s–1150s Peter the Venerable, Miracles
1150
bef. 1160 Ibn al-Qalanisi, Damascus Chronicle of the Crusades
1200
1250
1268 Visitation Record
1300

To test your knowledge and gain deeper understanding of this chapter, please go to **www.utphistorymatters.com** for Study Questions.

VI

Institutionalizing Aspirations (c.1150–c.1250)

WARS HOLY AND UNHOLY

6.1 The Northern Crusades: Helmold, *The Chronicle of the Slavs* (1167–1168). Original in Latin.

Helmold (*c.*1125–after 1177?) was a priest at Bosau, a small town about twenty-five miles north of Lübeck. Equipped with an adequate education and the zeal to praise the Church by writing about the conversion of the Slavs, he became a major chronicler of the Northern Crusades. The excerpt here begins with his account—some of it prejudiced—of the religious practices of the Slavs. This helped to justify the deflection of part of the Second Crusade to the north.

1. How was the city of Lübeck created?
2. What happened at Demmin and why was Helmold unhappy about it?

[Source: Helmold, Priest of Bosau, *The Chronicle of the Slavs*, trans. Francis Joseph Tschan (New York: Columbia University Press, 1935), pp. 158–60, 168–69, 180–81 (notes modified).]

52. The Rites of the Slavs

After the death of Cnut, surnamed Laward, the king of the Abodrites, there succeeded to his place Pribislav and Niclot.[1] They divided the principate into two parts so that one governed the country of the Wagiri and the Polabi, the other, that of the Abodrites.[2] These two men were truculent beasts, intensely hostile to the Christians. In

[1] Here the term "Abodrites," which were strictly speaking one Slavic group, refers to the Slavs as a whole. The "king of the Abodrites" was the man given the title by the emperor in Germany; Cnut Laward, whose father had been king of Denmark, gained it in *c.*1128 and ruled for four years. Pribislav and Niclot were native Slavs, heirs of an earlier ruling dynasty.

[2] The Abodrites, Wagiri, and Polabi were various Slavic groups. The Lutici, mentioned below, was another.

those days a variety of idolatrous cults and superstitious aberrations grew strong again throughout all Slavia.[1]

Besides the groves and the household gods in which the country and towns abound, the first and foremost deities are Prove, the god of the land of Oldenburg; Siva, the goddess of the Polabi; Redigast, the god of the land of the Abodrites.[2] To these gods are dedicated priests, sacrificial libations, and a variety of religious rites. When the priest declares, according to the decision of the lot, what solemnities are to be celebrated in honor of the gods, the men, women, and children come together and offer to their deities sacrifices of oxen and sheep, often, also, of Christians with whose blood they say their gods are delighted. After the victim is felled, the priest drinks of its blood in order to render himself more potent in the receiving of oracles. For it is the opinion of many that demons are very easily conjured with blood. After the sacrifices have been consummated according to custom, the populace turns to feasting and entertainment.

The Slavs, too, have a strange delusion. At their feasts and carousals they pass about a bowl over which they utter words, I should not say of consecration but of execration, in the name of the gods—of the good one, as well as of the bad one—professing that all propitious fortune is arranged by the good god, adverse, by the bad god. Hence, also, in their language they call the bad god Diabol, or Zcerneboch, that is, the black god. Among the multiform divinities of the Slavs, however, Svantowit, the god of the land of the Rugiani, stands out as the most distinguished: he is so much more effective in his oracular responses that out of regard for him they think of the others as demigods. On this account they also are accustomed every year to select by lot a Christian whom they sacrifice in his especial honor. To his shrine are sent fixed sums from all the provinces of the Slavs toward defraying the cost of sacrifices. The people are, moreover, actuated by an extraordinary regard for the service of the fane [temple], for they neither lightly indulge in oaths nor suffer the vicinity of the temple to be desecrated even in the face of an enemy. Besides, there has been inborn in the Slavic race a cruelty that knows no satiety, a restlessness that harries the countries lying about them by land and sea. It is hard to tell how many kinds of death they have inflicted on the followers of Christ. They have even torn out the bowels of some and wound them about a stake and have affixed others to crosses in ridicule of the sign of our redemption. It is said that they crucify their most infamous criminals. Those, too, whom they hold for ransom they afflict with such tortures and fetter so tightly that one who does not know their ways would hardly believe....

57. The Building of the City of Lübeck

Matters having been arranged in this manner, Adolph began to rebuild the fortress at Segeberg and girded it with a wall.[3] As the land was without inhabitants, he sent messengers into all parts, namely, to Flanders and Holland, to Utrecht, Westphalia, and Frisia, proclaiming that whosoever were in straits for lack of fields should come with their families and receive a very good land—a spacious land, rich in crops, abounding in fish and flesh and exceeding good pasturage. To the Holzatians and Sturmarians[4] he said:

> Have you not subjugated the land of the Slavs and bought it with the blood of your brothers and fathers? Why, then, are you the last to enter into possession of it? Be the first to go over into a delectable land and inhabit it and partake of its delights, for the best of it is due you who have wrested it from the hands of the enemy.

An innumerable multitude of different peoples rose up at this call and they came with their families and their goods into the land of Wagria to Count Adolph that they might possess the country that he had promised them. First of all the Holzatians received abodes in the safest places to the west in the region of Segeberg along the

[1] By Cnut's time, the Slavs in the region had been both evangelized and ruled by Christians, but the Slavs revolted politically and religiously from time to time, as here, upon Cnut's death.

[2] These are Helmold's names, but perhaps "Prove" corresponds to the Slavic deity Perun, the god of weather and fertility.

[3] Adolph II, count of Holstein (r.1131–1164) was granted some Slavic territory by Emperor Lothar; these are the "arrangements" to which Helmold refers.

[4] These were Christian natives of Saxony, and thus neighbors of the Slavs. For an earlier precedent to this sort of colonization, see *Frederick of Hamburg's Agreement with Colonists from Holland*, above, p. 246.

River Trave, also the Bornhöved open and everything extending from the River Schwale as far as Agrimesov[1] and the Plöner-See. The Westphalians settled in the region of Dargune, the Hollanders around Eutin, and the Frisians around Süssel. The country about Plön, however, was still uninhabited. Oldenburg and Lütjenburg and the rest of the lands bordering on the sea he gave to the Slavs to live in, and they became tributary to him.

Count Adolph came later to a place called Bucu and found there the wall of an abandoned fortress which Cruto, the tyrant of God, had built, and a very large island, encircled by two rivers. The Trave flows by on one side, the Wakenitz on the other. Each of these streams has swampy and pathless banks. On the side, however, on which the land road runs there is a little hill surmounted by the wall of the fort. When, therefore, the circumspect man saw the advantages of the site and beheld the noble harbor, he began to build there a city. He called it Lübeck, because it was not far from the old port and city that Prince Henry had at one time constructed.[2] He sent messengers to Niclot, prince of the Abodrites, to make friends with him, and by means of gifts drew to himself all men of consequence, to the end that they would all strive to accommodate themselves to him and to bring peace upon his land. Thus the deserted places of the land of Wagria began to be occupied and the number of its inhabitants was multiplied. Vicelin, the priest, too, on the invitation as well as with the assistance of the count, got back the properties about the fortress of Segeberg which the emperor Lothar had in times past given him for the construction of a monastery and for the support of servants of God....

[Helmold turns to the activities of crusade armies.]

65. The Siege of Demmin

In the meantime the news spread through all Saxony and Westphalia that the Slavs had broken forth and had been the first to engage in war. All that army, signed with the sign of the cross,[3] hastened to descend upon the land of the Slavs and to punish their iniquity. They divided the army and invested two fortresses, Dobin and Demmin, and they "made many engines of war against" them.[4] There came also an army of Danes, and it joined those who were investing Dobin, and the siege waxed. One day, however, those who were shut up noticed that the army of the Danes acted dilatorily—for they are pugnacious at home, unwarlike abroad. Making a sudden sally, they slew many of the Danes and laid them as a thickness for the ground. The Danes, also, could not be aided on account of intervening water. Moved to anger by this, the army pressed the siege more obstinately. The vassals of our duke and of the margrave Albert, however, said to one another: "Is not the land we are devastating our land, and the people we are fighting our people? Why are we, then, found to be our own enemies and the destroyers of our own incomes? Does not this loss fall back on our lords?"

From that day, then, uncertainty of purpose began to seize the army and repeated truces to lighten the investment. As often as the Slavs were beaten in an engagement, the army was held back from pursuing the fugitives and from seizing the stronghold. Finally, when our men were weary, an agreement was made to the effect that the Slavs were to embrace Christianity and to release the Danes whom they held in captivity. Many of them, therefore, falsely received baptism, and they released from captivity all the Danes that were old or not serviceable, retaining the others whom more robust years fitted for work. Thus, that grand expedition broke up with slight gain. The Slavs immediately afterward became worse: they neither respected their baptism nor kept their hands from ravaging the Danes....

[1] Today Grimmelsberg near Tensebeck, east of Bornhöved.

[2] Prince Henry was a Slavic ruler.

[3] I.e., wearing the symbols of the crusaders.

[4] 1 Macc. 11:20.

6.2 Saladin's *jihad*: Ibn Shaddad, *The Rare and Excellent History of Saladin* (1195–1216). Original in Arabic.

A native of Mosul, Ibn Shaddad (1145–1234), was a professor at *madrasas* in Baghdad and Mosul before he joined Saladin in 1188, just after the conquest of Jerusalem. He served Saladin at Jerusalem as a judge and an administrator, and he continued to serve the Ayyubid family after Saladin's death in 1193. Awarded a generous *iqta*, a land grant somewhat akin to the European fief, Ibn Shaddad poured much of his wealth into financing architectural projects. In particular, he sponsored a complex at Mosul consisting of two schools and a mausoleum. His account of Saladin is hagiographical in that its purpose is to praise the virtues of his hero. But it was possibly also meant subtly to criticize Saladin's successors (compare this with Einhard's portrait of Charlemagne on p. 115). However, Ibn Shaddad had many good things to say about one of Saladin's sons, al-Zahir, and so it is likely that he wrote his *Rare and Excellent History* while serving al-Zahir, who died in 1216.

1. According to Ibn Shaddad, what were Saladin's chief virtues?
2. What were the decisive strategies and maneuvers of Saladin's army in the battles recounted here?

[Source: Ibn Shaddad, *The Rare and Excellent History of Saladin or al-Nawadir al-Sultaniyya wa'l-Mahasin al-Yusufiyya*, trans. D.S. Richards (Aldershot: Ashgate, 2001), pp. 73–78 (notes modified).]

Account of the Battle of Hattin, a blessing for the Muslims

It took place on Saturday 24 Rabi' II 583 [July 4, 1187]. The sultan perceived that his gratitude for God's favor towards him, evidenced by his strong grasp on sovereignty, his God-given control over the lands and the people's willing obedience, could only be demonstrated by his endeavoring to exert himself to the utmost and to strive to fulfil the precept of Jihad. He sent to summon all his forces, which gathered on the date given at 'Ashtara.[1] He reviewed them and made his dispositions, then set forth into the God-forsaken enemy's lands at midday on Friday 17 Rabi' II [June 26]. He always sought out Fridays for his battles, especially the times of Friday prayer, to gain the blessing of the preachers' prayers on the pulpits, for they were perhaps more likely to be answered.

As he marched out at that time in battle array, he heard that the enemy, when they learnt that he had concentrated his armies, gathered in full on the plain of Saffuriyya in the territory of Acre and intended to come to battle.[2] The same day, the sultan camped at Lake Tiberias near a village called Sannabra.[3] He then moved and camped west of Tiberias on the top of the mountain, in battle formation and expecting that the Franks, when they heard that, would come against him. However, they did not move from their encampment. He took up this position on Wednesday 21 Rabi' II [July 1], and having seen that they were not moving, he descended upon Tiberias with a light force, leaving the main divisions in position facing the direction in which the enemy were. He attacked Tiberias and took it within one hour after a direct assault. Eager hands then turned to plundering, taking captives, burning and killing. The citadel alone held out.

[1] Saladin prepared for the battle of Hattin, which is on the western side of the Sea of Galilee, at Ashtara, which was on the eastern side.

[2] Sepphoris (or Tzipori) is fifteen or so miles from the Sea of Galilee. The army was led by Guy de Lusignan, king of Jerusalem (r.1186–1192).

[3] Tiberias is just to the west of Lake Tiberias, also known as the Sea of Galilee. Sannabra was just to the south.

Learning what had happened to Tiberias, the enemy could not bear not to give into their impulsive zeal, but set out at once and marched to defend Tiberias. The Muslim scouts told the emirs that the Franks[1] were on the move, and they sent people to inform the sultan.[2] He left men in Tiberias to watch the citadel and then he and his force joined the main army. The two armies encountered one another on the slopes of the mountain of Tiberias, to the west of the town, late on Thursday 22 Rabi' II [July 2].

Nightfall separated the two sides and both spent the night at battle stations, bristling with weapons, until the morning of Friday 23rd [July 3]. Both armies mounted and clashed together. The vanguard was in operation, then the main divisions moved forward and battle was joined and became very intense. This was around a village called Lubiya. They were closely beset as in a noose, while still marching on as though being driven to a death that they could see before them, convinced of their doom and destruction and themselves aware that the following day they would be visiting their graves.

The conflict continued at close quarters, each horseman clashing with his opponent, until victory [for the Muslims] and for the infidels the onset of disaster were imminent, but night and its darkness intervened. That day there occurred mighty deeds and momentous doings, such as have not been related of past generations. Each party spent the night in arms, expecting his adversary at every moment, though too weak through tiredness to stand up and unable through fatigue to crawl, let alone run.

Eventually, there came the Saturday morning, on which the blessing was vouchsafed. Both sides sought their positions and each realized that whichever was broken would be driven off and eliminated. The Muslims were well aware that behind them was the Jordan and before them enemy territory and that there was nothing to save them but God Almighty.

God had already ordained and prepared the believers' victory, and he duly brought it about according to what he had predestined. The Muslim divisions charged on the wings and in the centre. They let out a shout as one man, at which God cast terror into the hearts of the unbelievers. "It was right for Us to give aid to the believers."[3]

The Count [Raymond] was a clever and shrewd leader of theirs.[4] He saw that the signs of defeat were already upon his co-religionists and no notion of aiding his fellows stopped him thinking of himself, so he fled at the beginning of the engagement before it grew fierce and made his way towards Tyre, pursued by a group of Muslims. He alone was saved, but Islam became safe from his wiles.[5]

The forces of Islam surrounded the forces of unbelief and impiety on all sides, loosed volleys of arrows at them and engaged them hand to hand. One group fled and was pursued by our Muslim heroes. Not one of them survived. Another group took refuge on a hill called the Hill of Hattin, the latter being a village near which is the tomb of Shu'ayb (on him and on the rest of the prophets be blessings and peace).[6] The Muslims pressed hard upon them on that hill and lit fires around them. Their thirst was killing and their situation became very difficult, so that they began to give themselves up as prisoners for fear of being slain. Their commanders were taken captive but the rest were either killed or taken prisoner, and among those who lived were their leader, King Guy, Prince Reynald, the brother of the king, the prince who was lord of Shawbak, the son of Humfrey, the son of the Lady of Tiberias, the Master of the Templars, the lord of Jubayl and the Master of the Hospitallers. The rest of the commanders were killed, and the lowly soldiers were divided up, either to be slain or made captive. Everyone not killed was made prisoner. Some nobles amongst them willingly surrendered in fear for their lives. Someone I trust told me that in the Hawran[7] he met a single person holding a tent-rope with which all by himself he was pulling along thirty odd prisoners because of the desperate defeat that had befallen them.

As for their leaders that survived, we shall recount their fate. The count who fled arrived at Tripoli and was taken ill with pleurisy, and thus God brought about his death. As for the officers of the Hospitallers and the Templars, the sultan chose to put them to death and killed

[1] All the crusaders were called "Franks" by both the Byzantines and the Muslims.

[2] The sultan is Saladin.

[3] Qur'an 30:47.

[4] This was Raymond III, count of Tripoli.

[5] This refers to Raymond's death shortly after he defected from the crusading army.

[6] Shu'ayb was one of four prophets mentioned in the Qur'an.

[7] A region in southwest Syria.

them all without exception. The sultan had vowed to kill Prince Reynald if he got him in his power.[1] This was because a caravan from Egypt had passed through his land at Shawbak during the state of truce. They halted there under safe conduct, but he [Reynald] treacherously killed them [the Muslims in the caravan]. The sultan heard of this and religion and his zeal encouraged him to swear that, if he seized his person, he would kill him. After God had bestowed the great victory on him, the sultan sat in the entrance lobby of his tent, for it had not been fully erected, while people were offering him prisoners and any commanders they had found. The [main] tent was then erected and he sat there in great delight, expressing his gratitude for the favor that God had shown him. Then he summoned King Guy [and] his brother, Prince Reynald. He handed the king a drink of iced julep, from which he drank, being dreadfully thirsty, and he then passed some of it to Prince Reynald. The sultan said to the interpreter, "Tell the King, 'You are the one giving him a drink. I have not given him any drink.'" According to the fine custom of the Arabs and their noble ways, if a prisoner took food or a drink of water from whoever had captured him, his life was safe. His intention was to follow these noble ways.

He ordered them to proceed to a place assigned for their lodging. They did so and ate something. Then the sultan summoned them again, now having with him none but a few servants. He gave the king a seat in the vestibule and, having summoned Prince Reynald, confronted him as he had said. He said to him, "Here I am having asked for victory through Muhammad, and God has given me victory over you." He offered him Islam but he refused. The sultan then drew his scimitar and struck him, severing his arm at his shoulder. Those present finished him off and God speedily sent his soul to Hell-fire. His body was taken and thrown down at the door of the tent. The king, when he saw him brought out in this manner, was convinced that he would be next. The sultan called him in and reassured him, saying, "It has not been customary for princes to kill princes, but this man transgressed his limits, so he has suffered what he suffered." That night was spent by our people in the most complete joy and perfect delight, raising their voices in praise of God and gratitude towards him, with cries of "God is great" and "There is no god but God," until daybreak on Sunday.

The taking of the citadel of Tiberias

On Sunday 25 Rabi' II [July 5] the sultan camped at Tiberias and during the remainder of that day received the surrender of the citadel. He remained there until the Tuesday [July 7].

Account of the taking of Acre

Saladin then departed for Acre, where he arrived on Wednesday, the last day of Rabi' II [July 8]. He attacked on the morning of Thursday 1 Jumada I [July 9] and took the city, delivering the Muslim prisoners there, who were about 4,000 souls. He seized the money, stores, goods and commodities it contained, for it was renowned as a trading emporium. The troops dispersed throughout the coastal lands, taking forts, castles and fortified places. They took Nablus, Haifa, Caesarea, Sepphoris and Nazareth. That was because they were empty of men, who had been either killed or captured. When the administration of Acre had been settled and those due booty had received their share of wealth and captives, the sultan set out for Tibnin.

The taking of Tibnin[2]

Tibnin, a strong fortress, was besieged on Sunday 11 Jumada I [July 19]. The sultan set up trebuchets and pressed hard with assaults and a blockade.[3] It was held by courageous men, strong in their religion. The Muslims required an extreme effort, but God gave Saladin the victory and he took the place by assault on Sunday the 18th [July 26] and made prisoners of those who had escaped death. He moved away to the city of Sidon, which he attacked and took control of after one day, that is, on Wednesday 21 Jumada I [July 29].

---

[1] Reynald was lord of Kerak, a crusader castle.

[2] Tibnin (Tebnine), is just south of the Litani River. Ibn Shaddad names the cities in the order in which they were taken by Saladin as his army moved more or less directly from south (Acre) to north (Tibnin) along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea; Sidon and then Beirut, both north of the Litani River, were next. But from there, Saladin began to move southward, toward Ascalon. In short, he systematically took all the major towns and castles in the Kingdom of Jerusalem before attacking the city of Jerusalem itself.

[3] For trebuchets, see "Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages," in "Reading through Looking," pp. XII–XIV.

His taking of Beirut

The sultan remained at Sidon long enough to arrange its administration and then he marched to Beirut. He attacked it on Thursday 22 Jumada I [July 30], carried out assaults and pressed hard on the city, eventually taking it on Thursday 29 Jumada I [August 6]. While he was attacking Beirut, his men gained possession of Jubayl.

When his mind was easy concerning these parts, he decided to go to Ascalon as, after he had camped before Tyre and made a trial assault at this time, he determined not to occupy himself with it because his troops had scattered throughout the coast. Every man had gone to take something for himself, tired of fighting and constant campaigning. Every Frankish survivor on the coast had flocked to Tyre. Thus he decided to attack Ascalon because it was an easier objective.

The capture of Ascalon

Saladin came to camp before the city on Sunday 16 Jumada II [August 23], having taken many places on his way there, such as Ramla, Yubna and Darum.[1] He set up trebuchets and made fierce attacks. The city fell to him on Saturday 29 Jumada II [September 5], and he remained there while his men took over Gaza, Bayt Jibrin and Latrun without meeting any resistance.[2]

Between the recovery of Ascalon and the Franks' taking it from the Muslims thirty-five years had passed, for the enemy gained control of it on 27 Jumada II 548 [September 19, 1153].

The conquest of Jerusalem the Blessed, the Noble

Having gained Ascalon and the places surrounding Jerusalem, the sultan buckled down to the task and supreme effort of attacking the latter place. The forces which had scattered throughout the coast rejoined him after satisfying their desire for plunder and pillage. He then marched towards it, relying on God and entrusting his cause to Him, to take the opportunity to open the door to success which one is urged to grasp when it opens, in the words of Muhammad (upon him be peace), "If a door to some advantage is opened for anyone, then let him grasp it, for he knows not when it may be closed against him."[3]

He descended on the city on Sunday 15 Rajab 583 [September 20, 1187]. He took up position on the western side. It was crammed with fighting men, both mounted and foot soldiers. Experienced sources estimated the number of soldiers who were there at more than 60,000, apart from women and children. Then, because of an advantage he saw, he transferred to the north side, which move took place on Friday 20 Rajab [September 25]. He set up trebuchets and pressed hard on the city with assaults and a hail of missiles. Eventually, he undermined the city wall on the side next to the Valley of Gehenna in the northern angle. The enemy saw the indefensible position they had fallen into and the signs were clear to them that our true religion would overcome the false. Their hearts were downcast on account of the killing and imprisonment that had befallen their knights and men-at-arms and the fall and conquest of their fortresses. They realized that their lot was ineluctable and that they would be killed by the sword that had killed their brethren. Humbled, they inclined towards seeking terms. An agreement was reached through an exchange of messages between the two sides.

The sultan received the surrender on Friday 27 Rajab [October 2]. The eve had been the [date of the] Prophetic Ascension which is written about in the Noble Qur'an. Observe this remarkable coincidence, how God facilitated its restoration to Muslim hands on the anniversary of their Prophet's Night-Journey.[4] This is a sign that God had accepted this proffered obedience. It was a great victory, witnessed by a vast crowd of men of religion, Sufis, and mystics. The reason for this was that, when people heard of the conquest of the coastal lands that God had effected at Saladin's hand and his intention to move against Jerusalem became widely known, the *ulama* from Egypt and Syria made their way to him, so much so that no-one of any note failed to be present. Voices were raised in shouts and prayers, with cries of "There is no god but God" and "God is great." On the Friday of the conquest the *khutbah* was delivered and Friday prayers

[1] Towns on the way to Ascalon. Yubna, known to the crusaders as Ibelin, was just southwest of Ramla, while Darum was south of Ascalon, along the coast. In this way, Saladin took the key places surrounding Ascalon.

[2] Gaza, Bayt Jibrin, and Latrun were all near Ascalon.

[3] Not to be found in any of the canonical collections.

[4] A reference to the story of Prophet Muhammad's Mi'raj, his ascension into heaven from the rock now marked by the Dome of the Rock in Jerusalem.

held in Jerusalem.[1] The cross of vast size, which was over the Dome of the Rock, was lowered. God gave victory to Islam by His might and strength.

The basic provision in the treaty was that they would pay ransoms, for every man ten Tyrian dinars, for every woman five dinars and for every child, male or female, a dinar. All who produced the ransom would secure their freedom, otherwise they would be made captive. God freed those Muslims who were prisoners, a large multitude of about 3,000 souls.

The sultan remained there, collecting money and distributing it to the emirs and the *ulama*, and also conveying all who paid their ransom to their place of safety, namely Tyre. I have heard that the sultan departed from Jerusalem without keeping any of that money, which amounted to 220,000 dinars. He left on Friday 25 Sha'ban 583 [October 30, 1187].

6.3 The Fourth Crusade: Nicetas Choniates, *O City of Byzantium* (*c.*1215). Original in Greek.

Innocent III (1198–1216) called a new crusade in the first year of his reign. But the Fourth Crusade that resulted was deflected from its course; its chief "triumph" was the conquest of Constantinople. Nicetas Choniates (*c.*1150–*c.*1217), an official at the Byzantine imperial court, wrote a long lament about the event. The excerpt below begins on February 2, 1204, when the crusaders' armies went on a foraging expedition to Philea, on the Black Sea, and on their return encountered the imperial troops.

1. How did Nicetas Choniates draw on both classical Greek and biblical literature to describe and understand the siege of Constantinople?
2. What reasons did Nicetas Choniates give for the fall of Constantinople?

[Source: *O City of Byzantium, Annals of Niketas Choniates*, trans. Harry J. Magoulias (Detroit: Wayne State University Press, 1984), pp. 312–17 (slightly modified).]

When Baldwin, count of Flanders, ravaged the lands around Philea and collected tribute thence, the emperor marched against him.[2] As the Romans[3] were moving out and the enemy troops returning from their battle array, they met in close combat. The Romans were paralyzed by fear and took to impetuous flight; the emperor, left all alone, very nearly perished, and the icon of the Mother of God, which the Roman emperors reckon as their fellow general, was taken by the enemy.

Not only were these events dreadful, but those that followed were much worse than expected and most calamitous. In the larger ships, frightful scaling ladders were once again fabricated and all manner of siege engines were constructed.[4] Banners were flown on top, and huge rewards were offered those who would ascend to give battle.

A measure of the horrors was about to begin, others were already under way, and still others were to follow; the deliberations on amity were disregarded, wholly ignored. Certain wicked Telchines[5] frequently confounded the negotiations. The doge of Venice, Enrico Dandolo, electing to discuss peace terms with the emperor, boarded a

[1] The *ulama* refers to Islamic scholars. A *khutbah* is a public sermon.

[2] Count Baldwin of Flanders (1172–*c.*1205) became the first Latin emperor at Constantinople in 1204. It was in fact his brother who led the expedition to Philea. The emperor, who had just been crowned, was Alexius V Ducas Murtzuphlus.

[3] I.e., the Byzantines.

[4] See "Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages," in "Reading through Looking," pp. XII–XIV.

[5] The Telchines were spiteful sorcerers with webbed fingers and feet.

trireme and put in at Kosmidion. As soon as the emperor arrived there on horseback, they exchanged views on the peace, paying no heed to anyone else. The demands made by the doge and the remaining chiefs were for the immediate payment of five thousand pounds of gold and certain other conditions which were both galling and unacceptable to those who have tasted freedom and are accustomed to give, not take, commands.[1] These demands were deemed to be heavy Laconian lashes[2] to those for whom the danger of captivity was imminent and universal destruction had erupted, while the doge loudly again declared what had been stated earlier, that the conditions were quite tolerable and not at all burdensome. As the conditions for peace were being negotiated, Latin cavalry forces, suddenly appearing from above, gave free rein to their horses and charged the emperor, who wheeled his horse around, barely escaping the danger, while some of his companions were taken captive. Their inordinate hatred for us and our excessive disagreement with them allowed for no humane feeling between us.

Thereupon [April 8, 1204], the enemy's largest ships, carrying the scaling ladders that had been readied and as many of the siege engines as had been prepared, moved out from the shore, and, like the tilting beam of a scale's balance, they sailed over to the walls to take up positions at sufficient intervals from one another. They occupied the region extending in a line from the Monastery of Evergetes to the palace in Blachernai, which had been set on fire, the buildings within razed to the ground, thus stripping it of every pleasant spectacle. Observing these maneuvers, Ducas[3] prepared to resist the enemy. He issued instructions for the imperial pavilion to be set up on the hill of the Pantepoptes monastery whence the warships were visible and the actions of those on board were in full view.

As dawn broke on the ninth day of the month of April in the seventh indiction of the year 6712 [April 9, 1204], the warships and dromons[4] approached the walls, and certain courageous warriors climbed the scaling ladders and discharged all manner of missiles against the towers' defenders. All through the day, a battle fraught with groans was waged. The Romans had the upper hand: both the ships carrying the scaling ladders and the dromons transporting the horses were repulsed from the walls they had attacked without success, and many were killed by the stones thrown from the City's engines.

The enemy ceased all hostilities through the next day and the day after, which was the Lord's day [Sunday, April 10–11, 1204]; on the third day, the twelfth day of the month of April, Monday of the sixth week of the Great Lent, they again sailed towards the City and put in along the shore. By midday our forces prevailed, even though the fighting was more intense and furious than on the preceding Friday. Since it was necessary for the queen of cities to put on the slave's yoke, God allowed our jaws to be constrained with bit and curb[5] because all of us, both priest and people, had turned away from him like a stiff-necked and unbridled horse. Two men on one of the scaling ladders nearest the Petria Gate, which was raised with great difficulty opposite the emperor, trusting themselves to fortune, were the first from among their comrades to leap down onto the tower facing them. When they drove off in alarm the Roman auxiliaries on watch, they waved their hands from above as a sign of joy and courage to embolden their countrymen. While they were jumping onto the tower, a knight by the name of Peter entered through the gate situated there. He was deemed most capable of driving in rout all the battalions,[6] for he was nearly nine fathoms tall[7] and wore on his head a helmet fashioned in the shape of a towered city. The noblemen about the emperor and the rest of the troops were unable to gaze upon the front of the helm of a single knight so terrible in form and spectacular in size and took to their customary flight as the efficacious medicine of salvation. Thus, by uniting and fusing into one craven soul, the cowardly thousands, who had the advantage of a high

[1] The crusaders, and particularly Doge Enrico Dandolo (r.1192–1205), had negotiated with Alexius IV Angelus (r.1203–1204), the rival emperor, to help him and his father, Isaac II Angelus (r.1185–1195, 1203–1204), regain the imperial throne at Constantinople in return for various favors, including nearly 200,000 marks of silver. The crusaders were here asking for about half of that from Murtzuphlus.

[2] A reference to practices at Sparta as recorded in Xenophon, *Republica Lacedaemoniorum* 2.2.

[3] The emperor.

[4] A dromon was a sailing galley.

[5] See Ps. 32:9; Douay Ps. 31:9.

[6] The imagery is from Homer, *Iliad* 5.93–96. This was Peter of Amiens, who led a party of ten knights and sixty sergeants.

[7] The image is from Homer, *Odyssey* 11.312.

hill, were chased by one man from the fortifications they were meant to defend. When they reached the Golden Gate of the Land walls, they pulled down the new-built wall there, ran forth, and dispersed, deservedly taking the road to perdition and utter destruction. The enemy, now that there was no one to raise a hand against them, ran everywhere and drew the sword against every age and sex. Each did not join with the next man to form a coherent battle array, but all poured out and scattered, since everyone was terrified of them.

That evening the enemy set fire to the eastern sections of the City not far from the Monastery of Evergetes; from there the flames spread to those areas that slope down to the sea and terminate in the vicinity of the Droungarios Gate. After despoiling the emperor's pavilion and taking the palace in Blachernai by assault without difficulty, they set up their general headquarters at the Pantepoptes monastery. The emperor went hither and yon through the City's narrow streets, attempting to rally and mobilize the populace who wandered aimlessly about. Neither were they convinced by his exhortations nor did they yield to his blandishments, but the fiercely shaken aegis filled all with despair.[1]

To continue with the remaining portions of my narrative, the day waned and night came on, and each and every citizen busied himself with removing and burying his possessions. Some chose to leave the City, and whoever was able hastened to save himself.

When Ducas saw that he was gaining nothing,[2] he was fearful lest he be apprehended and put into the jaws of the Latins as their dinner or dessert, and he entered the Great Palace. He put on board a small fishing boat the Empress Euphrosyne, Emperor Alexius's wife, and her daughters, one of whom he loved passionately [Eudocia] (for he had frequently engaged in sexual intercourse from the first appearance of hair on his cheek, and he was a proven lecher in bed, having put away two wedded wives[3]) and sailed away from the City [night of April 12–13, 1204], having reigned two months and sixteen days.

When the emperor had fled in this manner, a pair of youths sober and most skillful in matters of warfare, these being Ducas[4] and Lascaris,[5] bearing the same name as the first emperor of o ur faith [Constantine], contested the captaincy of a tempest-tossed ship, for they viewed the great and celebrated Roman empire as Fortune's prize, depending upon the chance move of a chessman. They entered the Great Church,[6] evenly matched, competing against each other and being compared one with the other, neither one having more or less to offer than the other, and they were deemed equal in the balance because there was no one to examine them and pass judgment.

Receiving the supreme office by lot, Lascaris refused the imperial insignia; escorted by the patriarch to the Milion, he continuously exhorted the assembled populace, cajoling them to put up a resistance. He pressed those who lift from the shoulder and brandish the deadly iron ax, sending them off to the imminent struggle, reminding them that they should not fear destruction any less than the Romans should the Roman empire fall to another nation: no longer would they be paid the ample wages of mercenaries or receive the far-famed gifts of honor of the imperial guard, and their pay in the future would be counted at a hair's worth.[7] Thus did Lascaris, but not a single person from the populace responded to his blandishments. The ax-bearers agreed to fight for wages, deceitfully and cunningly exploiting the height of the danger for monetary gain, and when the Latin battalions clad in full armor made their appearance, they took flight to save themselves [early morning of April 13, 1204].

The enemy, who had expected otherwise, found no one openly venturing into battle or taking up arms to resist; they saw that the way was open before them and everything there for the taking. The narrow streets were clear and the crossroads unobstructed, safe from attack, and advantageous to the enemy. The populace, moved by the hope of propitiating them, had turned out to greet them with crosses and venerable icons of Christ as was customary during festivals of solemn processions. But their disposition was not at all affected by what they saw, nor did their lips break into the slightest smile, nor did the unexpected spectacle transform their grim and frenzied glance and fury into a semblance of cheerfulness.

---

[1] See Homer, *Iliad* 15.229–30. The aegis was the shield or breastplate of Zeus and Athena.

[2] See Matt. 27:24.

[3] See Homer, *Iliad* 1.114.

[4] This Constantine Ducas was probably the son of John Angelus Ducas, the uncle of Isaac II and Alexius III.

[5] Constantine Lascaris was the brother of the future emperor of Nicaea, Theodore I Lascaris (r.1205–1222).

[6] The Great Church was Hagia Sophia, built by Justinian.

[7] Homer, *Iliad* 9.378.

Instead, they plundered with impunity and stripped their victims shamelessly, beginning with their carts. Not only did they rob them of their substance but also the articles consecrated to God; the rest fortified themselves all around with defensive weapons as their horses were roused at the sound of the war trumpet.

What then should I recount first and what last of those things dared at that time by these murderous men? O, the shameful dashing to earth of the venerable icons and the flinging of the relics of the saints, who had suffered for Christ's sake, into defiled places! How horrible it was to see the Divine Body and Blood of Christ poured out and thrown to the ground! These forerunners of Antichrist, chief agents and harbingers of his anticipated ungodly deeds, seized as plunder the precious chalices and patens; some they smashed, taking possession of the ornaments embellishing them, and they set the remaining vessels on their tables to serve as bread dishes and wine goblets. Just as happened long ago, Christ was now disrobed and mocked, his garments were parted, and lots were cast for them by this race; and although his side was not pierced by the lance, yet once more streams of Divine Blood poured to the earth.[1]

The report of the impious acts perpetrated in the Great Church are unwelcome to the ears. The table of sacrifice,[2] fashioned from every kind of precious material and fused by fire into one whole—blended together into a perfection of one multicolored thing of beauty, truly extraordinary and admired by all nations—was broken into pieces and divided among the despoilers, as was the lot of all the sacred church treasures, countless in number and unsurpassed in beauty. They found it fitting to bring out as so much booty the all-hallowed vessels and furnishings which had been wrought with incomparable elegance and craftsmanship from rare materials. In addition, in order to remove the pure silver which overlay the railing of the bema,[3] the wondrous pulpit and the gates, as well as that which covered a great many other adornments, all of which were plated with gold, they led to the very sanctuary of the temple itself mules and asses with packsaddles; some of these, unable to keep their feet on the smoothly polished marble floors, slipped and were pierced by knives so that the excrement from the bowels and the spilled blood defiled the sacred floor. Moreover, a certain silly woman laden with sins, an attendant of the Erinyes, the handmaid of demons, the workshop of unspeakable spells and reprehensible charms, waxing wanton against Christ, sat upon the synthronon and intoned a song, and then whirled about and kicked up her heels in dance.[4]

It was not that these crimes were committed in this fashion while others were not, or that some acts were more heinous than others, but that the most wicked and impious deeds were perpetrated by all with one accord. Did these madmen, raging thus against the sacred, spare pious matrons and girls of marriageable age or those maidens who, having chosen a life of chastity, were consecrated to God? Above all, it was a difficult and arduous task to mollify the barbarians with entreaties and to dispose them kindly towards us, as they were highly irascible and bilious and unwilling to listen to anything. Everything incited their anger, and they were thought fools and became a laughingstock. He who spoke freely and openly was rebuked, and often the dagger would be drawn against him who expressed a small difference of opinion or who hesitated to carry out their wishes....

Such then, to make a long story short, were the outrageous crimes committed by the Western armies against the inheritance of Christ. Without showing any feelings of humanity whatsoever, they exacted from all their money and chattel, dwellings and clothing, leaving to them nothing of all their goods. Thus behaved the brazen neck, the haughty spirit, the high brow, the ever-shaved and youthful cheek, the bloodthirsty right hand, the wrathful nostril, the disdainful eye, the insatiable jaw, the hateful heart, the piercing and running speech practically dancing over the lips. More to blame were the learned and wise among men, they who were faithful to their oaths, who loved the truth and hated evil, who were both more pious and just and scrupulous in keeping the commandments of Christ than we "Greeks."[5] Even more culpable were those who had raised the cross to their shoulders, who had time and again sworn by it and the sayings of the Lord to cross over Christian lands

[1] See John 19:1–4, 23–24, 34.

[2] I.e., the altar.

[3] In the Greek Church the area in which the altar is placed is called the bema, or sanctuary.

[4] The Erinyes were the Furies of mythology. The synthronon were the thrones of the bishop and the clergy behind the altar in the sanctuary. The words "waxing wanton against Christ" echoes 1 Tim. 5:11.

[5] This sentence is meant to be sarcastic, as is shown by the use of the term *Graikoi*, the Latin term of derision for the Byzantines.

without bloodletting, neither turning aside to the right nor inclining to the left, and to take up arms against the Saracens and to stain red their swords in their blood; they who had sacked Jerusalem, and had taken an oath not to marry or to have sexual intercourse with women as long as they carried the cross on their shoulders, and who were consecrated to God and commissioned to follow in his footsteps....

O City, City, eye of all cities, universal boast, supramundane wonder, wet nurse of churches, leader of the faith, guide of Orthodoxy, beloved topic of orations, the abode of every good thing! O City, that hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury![1] O City, consumed by a fire far more drastic than the fire which of old fell upon the Pentapolis![2] "What shall I testify to thee? What shall I compare to thee? The cup of thy destruction is magnified," says Jeremias, who was given to tears as he lamented over ancient Sion.[3] What malevolent powers have desired to have you and taken you to be sifted?[4] What jealous and relentless avenging demons have made a riotous assault upon you in wild revel? If these implacable and crazed suitors neither fashioned a bridal chamber for thee, nor lit a nuptial torch for thee, did they not, however, ignite the coals of destruction?

GROUNDING JUSTICE IN ROYAL LAW

6.4 English common law: *The Assize of Clarendon* (1166). Original in Latin.

The Assize of Clarendon reflected the decisions of a meeting at Clarendon in which King Henry II (r.1154–1189) and his leading men determined to reform the English legal system. Building on administrative institutions already in place, they fortified and regularized them, so that royal law would pervade every county and hundred (English local districts). The *Assize* provided for a regular system of itinerant (traveling) judges with important police powers. Encroaching on older methods of keeping law and order, it called for the widespread use of sworn inquests to bring criminal cases to the attention of royal justices.

1. What crimes did the king emphasize and with what justification?
2. What were the tasks of a sheriff according to the *Assize*?

[Source: *English Historical Documents*, vol. 2: 1042–1189, ed. David C. Douglas and George W. Greenaway, 2nd ed. (London: Routledge, 1981), pp. 440–43 (notes modified).]

Here begins the assize of Clarendon made by King Henry II with the assent of the archbishops, bishops, abbots, earls and barons of all England.

1. In the first place the aforesaid King Henry, on the advice of all his barons, for the preservation of peace, and for the maintenance of justice, has decreed that inquiry shall be made throughout the several counties and throughout the several hundreds[5] through twelve of the more lawful men of the hundred and through four of the more lawful men of each vill upon oath that they will speak the truth, whether there be in their hundred

[1] See Isa. 51:17.

[2] See Wisd. of Sol. 10:6 and Gen. 19:24; the Pentapolis refers to the five cities that united to defeat King Chedorlaomer (Gen. 14:1) —Sodom, Gomorrah, Segor, Adama, and Seboim—only one of which was not destroyed by God.

[3] See Lam. 2:13.

[4] See Luke 22:31.

[5] The inquiries were to be made by the visitation of itinerant justices, also called "justices in eyre."

or vill any man accused or notoriously suspect of being a robber or murderer or thief, or any who is a receiver of robbers or murderers or thieves, since the lord king has been king.[1] And let the justices inquire into this among themselves and the sheriffs among themselves.[2]

2. And let anyone, who shall be found, on the oath of the aforesaid, accused or notoriously suspect of having been a robber or murderer or thief, or a receiver of them, since the lord king has been king, be taken and put to the ordeal of water,[3] and let him swear that he has not been a robber or murderer or thief, or receiver of them, since the lord king has been king, to the value of 5 shillings, so far as he knows.

3. And if the lord of the man, who has been arrested, or his steward or his vassals shall claim him by pledge within the third day following his capture, let him be released on bail with his chattels[4] until he himself shall stand his trial.

4. And when a robber or murderer or thief or receiver of them has been arrested through the aforesaid oath, if the justices are not about to come speedily enough into the county where they have been taken, let the sheriffs send word to the nearest justice by some well-informed person that they have arrested such men, and the justices shall send back word to the sheriffs informing them where they desire the men to be brought before them; and let the sheriffs bring them before the justices. And together with them let the sheriffs bring from the hundred and the vill, where they have been arrested, two lawful men to bear the record of the county and of the hundred as to why they have been taken, and there before the justice let them stand trial.

5. And in the case of those who have been arrested through the aforesaid oath of this assize, let no man have court or justice or chattels save the lord king in his court in the presence of his justices; and the lord king shall have all their chattels.[5] But in the case of those who have been arrested otherwise than by this oath let it be as is customary and due.

6. And let the sheriffs, who have arrested them, bring them before the justice without any other summons than that they have from him. And when robbers or murderers or thieves, or receivers of them, who have been arrested through the oath or otherwise, are handed over to the sheriffs, let them receive them immediately and without delay.

7. And in the several counties where there are no gaols [jails], let such be made in a borough or some castle of the king at the king's expense and from his wood, if one shall be near, or from some neighboring wood at the oversight of the king's servants, to the end that in them the sheriffs may be able to guard those who shall be arrested by the officials accustomed to do this, or by their servants.

8. Moreover, the lord king wills that all shall come to the county courts to take this oath, so that none shall remain behind on account of any franchise which he has, or any court or soke,[6] which he may have, but that they shall come to take this oath.

9. And let there be no one within his castle or without, nor even in the honor of Wallingford, who shall forbid the sheriffs to enter into his court or his land to take the view of frankpledge and to see that all are under

---

[1] These "lawful men" on oath are the ancestors of the modern jury. The "vill"—or village—was smaller than the "hundred," hence the jury was smaller. The jury—technically termed a jury of presentment—was asked to "speak the truth" about criminals or suspected criminals in the locality. Here Henry was regularizing an institution (the frankpledge) already in place.

[2] I.e., the sheriff was left with certain powers of criminal jurisdiction beyond the powers of the justices.

[3] Ordeals were meant to show guilt or innocence through "tests," the outcome of which was determined by God's judgment. In the case of the ordeal of water, the accused was immersed in a pool or stream. If the accused immediately rose to the surface, he or she was guilty; if the accused sank, he or she was innocent.

[4] I.e., movable property.

[5] "Court or justice or chattels" refers to the fees generated by the case. By this provision, the king claimed the sole rights to the profits of jurisdiction in this new procedure. But, as the next sentence makes clear, profits arising from arrests according to the older system were to be distributed in the old way.

[6] Franchises, courts, and sokes were private jurisdictions, often granted by privilege or charter. This clause was aimed at limiting the powers of private courts.

pledges; and let them be sent before the sheriffs under free pledge.[1]

10. And in cities or boroughs let no one hold men or receive them into his house or on his land or in his soke, whom he will not take in hand to produce before the justice, should they be required; or else let them be in frankpledge.

11. And let there be none in a city or a borough or a castle or without it, nor even in the honor of Wallingford, who shall forbid the sheriffs to enter into their land or their soke to arrest those who have been accused or are notoriously suspect of being robbers or murderers or thieves or receivers of them, or outlaws, or persons charged concerning the forest;[2] but the king commands that they shall aid the sheriffs to capture them.

12. And if anyone shall be taken in possession of the spoils of robbery or theft, if he be of evil repute and bears an evil testimony from the public and has no warrant, let him have no law.[3] And if he has not been notoriously suspect on account of the goods in his possession, let him go to the ordeal of water.

13. And if anyone shall confess to robbery or murder or theft, or to harboring those who have committed them, in the presence of the lawful men or in the hundred court, and afterwards he wish to deny it, let him not have his law.[4]

14. Moreover, the lord king wills that those who shall be tried by the law and absolved by the law, if they have been of ill repute and openly and disgracefully spoken of by the testimony of many and that of the lawful men, shall abjure the king's lands, so that within eight days they shall cross the sea, unless the wind detains them; and with the first wind they shall have afterwards they shall cross the sea, and they shall not return to England again except by the mercy of the lord king; and both now, and if they return, let them be outlawed; and on their return let them be seized as outlaws.[5]

15. And the lord king forbids that any vagabond, that is, a wanderer or unknown person, shall be given shelter anywhere except in a borough, and even there he shall not be given shelter longer than one night, unless he become sick there, or his horse, so that he can show an evident excuse.

16. And if he shall remain there longer than one night, let him be arrested and held until his lord shall come to give surety for him, or until he himself shall procure safe pledges; and let him likewise be arrested who gave him shelter.[6]

17. And if any sheriff shall send word to another sheriff that men have fled from his county into another county, on account of robbery or murder or theft or the harboring of them, or on account of outlawry or of a charge concerning the king's forest, let him (the second sheriff) arrest them; and even if he knows of himself or through others that such men have fled into his county, let him arrest them and guard them until he has taken safe pledges for them.

18. And let all the sheriffs cause a record to be made of all fugitives who have fled from their counties; and let them do this before the county courts and carry the names of those written therein before the justices, when next they come to them, so that these men may be sought

---

[1] This clause overrode guarantees of privilege—often granted by kings—against the entry of public officials into private jurisdictions. The frankpledge was a group of men pledged not to commit any offenses and to produce any of their number who did so. (Another name for this group was a "tithing.") Most ordinary freemen were part of one. The "view of frankpledge" was customarily taken twice a year by the sheriff to verify membership in the frankpledge and to hear of any of its members' criminal activities.

[2] The king claimed special jurisdiction over forests.

[3] I.e., criminals taken red-handed and without "warrant" (or surety)—namely, a person to guarantee their court appearance—were to be punished without trial.

[4] I.e., the case was not to be tried after the accused had pleaded guilty to the offense. In all these clauses, the particular importance attached both to the past record of the accused and to local opinion concerning him should be noted.

[5] This was a new feature in criminal law administration: even those who had been acquitted on a particular indictment were not regarded as free and lawful persons if their past record was shady, and they were to suffer exile.

[6] Sureties and "safe pledges" were all ways to ensure that the person would appear in court if allowed to go free before trial.

throughout England, and their chattels may be seized for the needs of the king.

19. And the lord king wills that from the time the sheriffs shall receive the summons of the itinerant justices to present themselves before them, together with the men of the county, they shall assemble them and make inquiry for all who have newly come into their counties since this assize; and they shall send them away under pledge to attend before the justices, or they shall keep them in custody until the justices come to them, and then they shall present them before the justices.

20. Moreover, the lord king forbids monks or canons or any religious house to receive any men of the lower orders as a monk or a canon or a brother, until it be known of what reputation he is, unless he shall be sick unto death.

21. Moreover, the lord king forbids anyone in all England to receive in his land or his soke or in a house under him any one of that sect of renegades who were branded and excommunicated at Oxford.[1] And if anyone shall so receive them, he himself shall be at the mercy of the lord king, and the house in which they have dwelt shall be carried outside the village and burnt. And each sheriff shall swear an oath that he will observe this, and shall cause all his officers to swear this, and also the stewards of the barons and all knights and freeholders of the counties.

22. And the lord king wills that this assize shall be kept in his realm so long as it shall please him.

6.5 The legislation of a Spanish king: *The Laws of Cuenca* (1189–1193). Original in Latin.

The town of Cuenca, originally founded by Muslims in al-Andalus, was conquered by King Alfonso VIII of Castile (r.1158–1214) in 1177. Soon thereafter he issued a set of laws (*fueros*) for the citizens. Unlike English laws, those of Cuenca were to be enforced by local—not royal—officials (*alcaldi* and *iudices*), though there were provisions for appealing the most serious cases to the king. The code makes clear that some Muslims still lived in the town and that Jews and Christians regularly interacted there. Woman and children had numerous rights, and the laws paid particular attention to what today would be called "family law."

1. What were the classes, genders, and religions that Alfonso's legislation attended to?
2. Why were Alfonso's legal concerns so different from those of the English king Henry II in *The Assize of Clarendon* (above p. 302)?

[Source: *The Code of Cuenca: Municipal Law on the Twelfth-Century Castilian Frontier*, trans. James F. Powers (Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 2000), pp. 28–29, 66–69, 92, 160–65 (slightly modified, and notes making use of the Glossary on pp. 229–32).]

Prologue

... The memory of men is fragile and insufficient for a multitude of things, and for this reason one has proceeded with the sagacity to put the laws of legal statute and civil rights in writing. After meditative selection [these laws] sprouted from royal authority to calm the discord between citizens and inhabitants; thus, some could crush villains by the greatest possible cunning, since they are protected by royal guarantee, and cannot subsequently be weakened by fraudulent subterfuge.

[1] A reference to the Cathars.

For this consideration, then, I, Alfonso, proclaimed king by the grace of God, the most powerful of the Hispanic kings, notice of whose immense greatness and concordant fame resonated far and wide, from the rising of the sun to the bounds of the earth, under whose domain the kings are happy to be subjected, under whose government the laws are pleased to be administered; I, the guide of those who take pride in the Hispanic kingdoms, codified the summation of the judicial institutions in behalf of safeguarding peace and the rights of justice between clergy and laity, between townsmen and peasants, among the needy and the poor; and I codified it, ordered it written with much care so that any question or discussion, as much in the petition as in the judicial action (as much for the cause as for the accusation), which occurs between the citizens and the inhabitants, removing all appeal, except those which later on excluded the laws, and having torn the veil of the sham, could determine under the judgment of the justice, once imputed and discerned, the cause of both parties to the tenor of the written laws and the use of the custom "in which rests the right and the norm of the language,"[1] the reason of each part having been expressed and versed, so let the law be defined under the supervision of the knighthood.

Thus, [this is] a king of such renowned authority, that from sea to sea the kings [who are] enemies of the name of Christ fear his name only, since they have experienced his power and have been crushed by him many times; [of such renowned authority that] Christian princes serve him as the first [lord], and from whom Don Conrado, illustrious descendant of the Roman Emperor, and Don Alfonso, king of León, are happy to have received the weapons of combat and his backing, a reminder of his goodness and of having kissed his hand.

After laying siege and after many tasks, tormented by numerous difficulties and distressed by the enemies within, nine months having passed, he made his entry into the city of Cuenca, preferring it to the others; since he chose Cuenca as Alphonsipolis, he preferred it for his residence, and he adopted its citizens as his favorite people in order to strengthen its prosperity, freedom, and distinction among the others he had liberated from the captivity of Babylon and from the yoke of the Pharaoh with the weapons of his royal power, once he suppressed the filth of its idolatry.[2]

Therefore, so that so great a prerogative of dignity should be known, he conceded high rank to the inhabitants and settlers of Cuenca, as much to those already there as those to come; by this code of freedom, the tenor of which concerns matters of public affairs and its sentences, which are examined in justice with meditating decision and granted by royal agreement, he confirmed it forever with the seal of the royal effigy.

Happy is that marriage certainly when Law and Justice join in uniform alliance, so that when the Law instructs that one should be cleared, he is cleared by the Law, and that which it determines should be condemned, is condemned by Justice, which sufficiently favors definition by both. Thus, Law is that which permits the honest and prohibits the opposite; Justice, on the other hand, is the virtue that concedes each one his rights, punishes the culprit, and acquits the innocent.

Disposing these things continually for the honor of Holy Mother Church and for the increase of the Catholic faith, which in the district of Cuenca remained overwhelmed in an extraordinary way, for God Living and True, to whom to serve is to rule and whose yoke is soft and his load light, they serve in freedom, and just as they obey the Commandments of a single God, they also obey the orders of a single king and prince.

Therefore, I, Alfonso, king by the grace of God, together with Leonor my wife the queen, and our serene son Fernando, whose birth distinguished the above city with serene and pleased look, grant to all the inhabitants of Cuenca and to their successors this summary of dignity and prerogative of freedom; and so that for posterity it could not be broken, I confirm it with the guarantee of our seal and with our royal protection....

Chapter X
The Right of Succession of Children and Parents

1. THE RIGHT OF SUCCESSION OF CHILDREN AND PARENTS

Any child should inherit the goods of his father and mother, movable goods as well as real estate. The father and mother [should inherit] the movable goods of the children. The father, however, should not have to inherit the real estate of his child which comes to the latter

[1] Horace, *Epistulae* 2.3.71–72.

[2] Alfonso likens his capture of Cuenca from the Muslims to the liberation of the Jews from Babylon and Egypt.

through inheritance. Regarding the other real estate which the parents acquire jointly, the one who survives, father or mother, should inherit this for lifetime use only, by right of inheritance through their child, if he lives at least nine days. After the death of the father or mother, the real estate returns to the estate.

For this reason I command that, although the surviving parent has to inherit this real estate for lifetime use, and the real estate has to revert to the estate, the survivor should provide bondsmen who will guard the real estate from harm. The real estate that belongs to the child through his estate should revert to that estate the day the survivor dies.

2. THE NEAREST RELATIVES OF A DEAD PERSON ARE HIS HEIRS

The relatives who are nearest [in blood] and also citizens should inherit the goods of their deceased relative. If someone comes forward as a closer relative than these others, this person should inherit the goods of the deceased but first should provide bondsmen who establish that this person should have been an inhabitant of Cuenca for at least ten years. Those who do not do this should not inherit.

3. THOSE WHO ENTER A MONASTIC ORDER

Whoever enters a monastic order should take with him only a fifth portion of his movable property, and the rest, joined with the entirety of his real estate, should remain for his heirs. It will be seen as unjust and inequitable that someone should disinherit his children by donating their movable property and real estate to the monks, because it is established in the code that nobody should disinherit their children.

4. CHILDREN ARE UNDER THE POWER OF THEIR PARENTS

Children should be under the power of their parents and are family members until they should contract marriage. And until that moment, everything the children acquire or obtain should belong entirely to their parents; the children holding nothing against their parents' will.

5. PARENTS RESPOND FOR THE CRIMES OF THEIR CHILDREN

Parents should respond for the crimes of their children, whether or not the latter should be sound in judgment.[1] If someone enters the home of another and commits any crime, whether or not they should be a hireling of the house, the owner of the house should not respond with a surety for them unless he defends them. If he defends them, he should respond for them or bring them to give juridical satisfaction. But if they do not return to the house of their *señor*, or the *señor* does not go forth in their defense, no one should respond for them but their parents.[2] Nevertheless, if a child commits a homicide, even though he should be in the pay of another, no one should respond for him except his parents, because they should pay the pecuniary penalties; however, the parents should not depart as enemies unless they are blamed for the homicide. Then, if they are accused and convicted of homicide, they are obligated also to depart from our city as enemies. If the child is bereft of one of his parents, the one who acts as his guardian should respond for him until the child is given the portion of goods that belongs to him. After the partition of goods, the guardian does not have to respond.

6. PARENTS DO NOT RESPOND FOR THE DEBTS OF THEIR CHILDREN

Parents should not respond for the loans or debts of their children.

7. THE DISTURBED CHILD

If a father or mother has a disturbed child and is concerned for paying the pecuniary penalties of the crimes that he might commit, he should hold the child captive or bound until he calms down or is treated, while he remains deranged, so that the child does not cause damage. The parents have to respond for any damage that he causes, even if they have renounced him in front of the council or have disinherited him. This precept is established so that none may say that their child is insane or disturbed and renounce him before the council and then, with concealment and deception, cause him to kill someone or start a fire or do any other harm.

---

[1] "Respond for" means to be legally responsible for.

[2] The *señor* was the male head of a family or household or, as in this case, an owner, employer, or master. Apparently at Cuenca many children did not live in the homes of their parents but rather were sent to other homes to work as maids, servants, or apprentices. The parents remained responsible for them if they committed a crime but not, as the next law makes clear, if they defaulted on a loan.

8. SEPARATION OF THE WIFE AND THE HUSBAND

When husband and wife, for any reason and by common agreement, want to separate, only those things they have acquired together should be distributed equally and nothing else; they should also distribute equally the works that both have completed on their property. And after one of those who has been separated in life dies, the survivor should receive nothing from the other's goods, but rather the heirs of the dead person should be those to receive all his or her goods, and these should be divided among themselves.

9. THE PARTITION OF GOODS OF PARENTS AND CHILDREN

All partitions of goods that are done in the presence of three citizens and recorded should hold as firm, so that the partition or the names of the witnesses are written in the public record, because, if some or all of the witnesses have died, he who holds the document should swear with two citizens that this is authentic, and he should be believed, in case some of the heirs deny the partition. Likewise, the division and the partition are firm and sound that the parents, whether healthy or sick, had made for their heirs, being all present without exception and in agreement; because the partition done in another way by the father or the mother is not legal. The donation should also be accepted and sound that the father and mother confirm only by oath.

10. THE DOCUMENT OF PARTITION

The document of partition should have this formulation: "All should know absolutely, those present as well as those to come, that I, *N*., desiring the end of all flesh, which one is born for, so that before a man should die he should pay the debts of nature, allot and concede to my heirs and successors that, by right of patrimony after my death, according to hereditary right, they should possess my things, all that I have acquired with my sweat and my service up to the present day, as much in movable property as in real estate, and in this manner: to *G*., my firstborn son, the vineyard that is within the district of Cuenca, near the river, with the orchard that lies within it; I leave you also all the houses that I built or bought in the locale *N*.; to *R*., my younger son, the field *N*. or the vineyard with the portion [of land] that belongs to it. Witnessed by those whose names appear below: *F.P.D.J*. Era one thousand two hundred.[1] *N*., being king. *N*., being *iudex*. *N*., being *merino*. *N*., being *sagio*."[2]

11. ALSO REGARDING THE PARTITION

If the spouses have children and are not separated in life, and neither of the two has other children, when one of them dies, having settled all the common debts that they have contracted jointly, and having paid also the share of the dead for alms for their soul[3] and their shroud, their children or heirs should distribute all the goods of the dead among each other, both goods and real estate. If a child dies, the surviving parent should inherit his goods, as has already been said. But if the child has a descendant, the latter should succeed him [the child] and not the father or the mother....

Chapter XIII
No One Should Respond for Counseling

1. NO ONE SHOULD RESPOND FOR GIVING ADVICE

I command that no one should respond or pay any fine for giving advice. However, he should respond if he advises the selling of a Christian. I also command that each one should pay the same fine, even if he should go in assistance of another and the fight should be another's fight.

2. WHOEVER TAKES PART IN A GANG SHOULD PAY, EXCEPT THEIR WIVES

Whoever takes part in a gang in order to lend aid to someone should pay double the pecuniary fine for the crime that they have committed, even though he should be that one's son or his blood kin, except for his wife; if the wife takes part in the gang of her husband, or if the latter is in the gang of his wife, the couple do not have to pay double [fines] for this, since it is a single fine for both.

---

[1] The date of the Era was thirty-eight years ahead of the Year of Our Lord, so the date CE would be 1162. This chapter provides a form that must be filled out according to the facts and names of each case.

[2] The *iudex* was the chief elected civil official of the town; the *merino* was the royal territorial administrator who received the king's rents from the town council; the *sagio* was the bailiff, town crier, and executioner. Naming these officials, along with the reigning king, was a way to authenticate the document and its date.

[3] "Alms for their soul" refers to the distribution of money to the poor on behalf of the soul of the departed.

3. HE WHO HOLDS ANOTHER'S WIFE

If someone holds another's wife, he should pay three hundred *solidi* and should be considered an enemy.[1]

4. HE WHO SELLS FOOD TO THE MUSLIMS

Whoever sells or gives weapons or food to the Muslims let him be hurled from the city cliffs, if it can be proved; but if not, he should clear himself with twelve citizens and should be believed; or he should swear alone and respond to the challenge by judicial combat,[2] the one which pleases the council more. We call food bread, cheese, and everything which one can eat, except for living livestock.

5. THE SERVANT WHO KILLS OR INJURES A CHRISTIAN

If someone's servant or Moor[3] hurts or kills a Christian, his master should pay the fine for the crime that he has committed or he should put the injurer in the hands of the plaintiff, the servant's master choosing that which pleases him more....

Chapter XXIX
Cases between Christians and Jews

1. CASES BETWEEN CHRISTIANS AND JEWS

If a Jew and a Christian litigate for something, two citizen *alcaldi*[4] should be designated, one of whom should be Christian and the other Jewish. If one of the litigants is not pleased by the judgment, he should appeal to four citizen *alcaldi*, two of whom should be Christian and two Jewish. These four should have final judgment. Whoever appeals the judgment of these four should know that he will lose the case. These *alcaldi* should guard against judging anything else than what the Code of Cuenca prescribes.

2. WITNESSES BETWEEN A JEW AND A CHRISTIAN

The witnesses between a Christian and a Jew should be two citizens, one Christian and the other Jewish, and all the things denied by the testimony of these [two] should be confirmed and believed. Anyone who ought to testify should swear with double the sureties or on his feet, according to the Code of Cuenca. If it is the Christian who places his foot and is defeated in the case, the *iudex* should imprison him in the jail of the king until he pays.[5]

3. THE JEW WHO TESTIFIES THAT HIS DEBTOR WAS OUTSIDE JAIL

If the Jew testifies that the prisoner is outside jail, the *iudex* should put him in the power of the Jew until he pays. Moreover, if it is the Jew who places his foot and is defeated in the case, the *albedí* [Jewish *iudex*, chancery official] should imprison him in the jail of the king.

4. THE CHRISTIAN WHO TESTIFIES THAT HIS DEBTOR IS OUTSIDE JAIL

If it is the Christian who attests that the prisoner is outside jail, the *albedí* should place him in the prison of the Christians, from whence he should not leave until he pays.

5. THE TESTIMONY FOR DELIVERY OF SURETIES

Be it known concerning witnesses, whether a Christian or a Jew, [if] he delivers double the sureties and he does not redeem them within the term of nine days, he should lose them completely.

6. IF THE ALBEDÍ DOES NOT WANT TO DO JUSTICE

If the *albedí* does not do justice, he should pay ten *aurei*[6] to the *iudex* and, furthermore, the plaintiff should take as sureties with impunity what he can seize of the things of the Jews outside of the *alcacería* [district of shops

---

[1] A *solidus* (pl. *solidi*) was a silver coin worth 1/20th of a silver pound.

[2] "Judicial combat" was an ordeal by duel. It might be on foot or on horseback. Care was taken to choose combatants well matched in size, strength, and skill.

[3] A "Moor" was a Muslim living in Spain; in this case, he was the slave or servant of a Christian.

[4] The *alcaldi* (sing. *alcaldus*) were elected officials who served as aldermen and judges in the parish; the word was derived from the Arabic *al-qadi*.

[5] The expressions "on his feet" and "places his foot" probably mean that the person has undertaken judicial combat. "Double the sureties" means double the payment—or goods equal to the payment—that was required to cover the penalty of the crime.

[6] The *aureus* (pl. *aurei*) was a gold coin.

Jews rented from the king]. The *iudex* should divide the above-mentioned ten *aurei* with the plaintiff.

7. THE IUDEX WHO DOES NOT WANT TO DO JUSTICE

If it is the *iudex* who does not do justice for a Jew, he should pay ten *aurei* to the *albedí* and, furthermore, the Jew should take as sureties all that he can seize of the things of the Christian....

16. THE PLACE AND TIME OF JUDGMENTS

The cases between Jews and Christians should be before the gate of the *alcacería* and not at the synagogue. The time of the meetings of the court should be from the completion of matins in the cathedral church until terce.[1] When they sound terce, they should conclude the judgments. He who does not present himself before the court should lose the case.

17. THE OATH OF THE JEW AND OF THE CHRISTIAN

For all claims, should they be Christian, should they be Jewish, up to a value of four *menkales*,[2] the Christian should swear without the cross and the Jew without the Torah. If the claim is worth four *menkales* or more, the Christian should swear on the cross and the Jew on the Torah. And if the Jew or the Christian does not want to swear, he should lose the case.

LOCAL ARRANGEMENTS

6.6 A Byzantine monastery on Cyprus: Neophytos, *Testamentary Rule* for the Hermitage of the Holy Cross (1214). Original in Greek.

When Neophytos was born in 1134, Cyprus was part of the Byzantine Empire. In 1191, king of England Richard the Lion-Heart (r.1189–1199) conquered the island but soon sold it to the Knights Templar, who in turn sold it to the Poitevan (French) knight Guy de Lusignan in 1192. The Lusignan family held the island until 1489; their impact included the gradual imposition of the Latin (Roman Catholic) Church in a region that had been firmly Greek Orthodox. In 1204, the Fourth Crusade resulted in the Latin take-over of Constantinople and other regions of Byzantium. Nevertheless, through it all, Neophytos followed the path of an Orthodox holy man, joining a monastery in 1152 and, less than a decade later, seeking out a more solitary life. By 1160 he had settled in a cave in the mountains in southwestern Cyprus. Next to his cell, he constructed a church, dedicating it to the Holy Cross, a relic of which he installed in a niche. Not long afterward, his foundation received support from the near-by Orthodox bishop of Paphos, and his *Testamentary Rule* included prayers for the Byzantine emperor, who had taken refuge at Nicaea. Even so, Neophytos also considered the Lusignan king of Cyprus, Hugh (r.1205–1218), to be a protector and benefactor of his hermitage. The Holy Cross became a site for pilgrims, and the cave complex, parts of which were richly decorated with wall paintings, soon housed a small number of monks. Neophytos wrote its first *Rule* in 1177 and revised it for the version here in 1214. He began with a brief account of his life.

[1] The timing of the judgments is here regulated by the canonical hours of the Church: matins often began at sunrise; terce was the third hour, i.e., around 9 a.m.

[2] A *menkal* (pl. *menkales*) was a coin of copper or copper and silver mixed, valued at about ¼ of an *aureus*.

1. In what ways was Neophytos's *Rule* different from the *Rule* of Benedict (above, p. 20)?
2. In what ways does Neophytos's *Rule* demonstrate the persistence of Byzantium even after 1204? In what ways does it reveal Byzantium's defeat?

[Source: Neophytos, "Testamentary Rule of Neophytos for the Hermitage of the Holy Cross near Ktima in Cyprus," trans. Catia Galatariotou in *Byzantine Monastic Foundation Documents: A Complete Translation of the Surviving Founders' Typika and Testaments*, ed. John Thomas and Angela Constantinides Hero with Giles Constable (Washington, DC: Dumbarton Oaks Research Library, 2000), pp. 1350–55, 1359, 1363–64 (notes modified).]

[Chapter Three]

... But no one knew of these thoughts of mine [about the uncertainties of life in the world] except for God who bestowed them on me. For which reason my parents earnestly wanted to join me in matrimony, I being then a son of eighteen years of age. For, seven months earlier, they had confirmed the customary contracts of marriage and the betrothal, and while they were hotly pursuing the things concerning the marriage, I was hotly pursuing ways and means of escaping. Why then, with God's most excellent goodwill and help, having departed secretly from the paternal home, I made my flight's way to the monastery of holy [St. John] Chrysostom on the mountain of Koutzovendis, [believing] that place to be inaccessible to those who were bound to [try to] track me down. There is no need to tell what lamentations took place among parents and neighbors and acquaintances, and what searching through every eparchy[1] of the island. I do not bear to speak extensively about how, having apprehended me, after two months, they brought me back again under the yoke, and after what fight and battle and deliberation I dissolved those marriage contracts, but this I shall briefly say, that, as the Lord wanted, so it happened.

Chapter Four: Concerning what followed these and of my establishment in the hermitage and certain mysteries

I deem it necessary also to narrate briefly what followed these, so as not to distress those who love to hear [the story], through interrupting the sequence of the narrative. It is as follows:

Having been deemed worthy of my own beloved tonsure, no bridal ornament, I believe, ever charmed any bridegroom as much, as did me the vesture of the monk's dress with [the help of] God. For I filled with kisses the tips of its cuffs, and I begged the Lord to preserve it pure and unblemished for me until the end. Because I had not been given over to even one day's studying of lessons by my parents, so that I was ignorant of even the first letters of the alphabet, I was thus permitted by Maximos the superior of the monastery to tend the vineyards at the so-called Boupai.

Having served there for five years, and having acquainted myself with the rudimentary elements of letters, and having learned with [the help of] God the Psalter by heart, I was transferred upon the command again of the aforementioned superior from there to the holy church of the divine [St. John] Chrysostom, forthwith holding the office of assistant ecclesiarch.[2] Having clung to this service for two more years, I was greatly vexed by night and by day by love for the contemplative life, which vexed me even when I devoted myself to the services outside the monastery. But I was prevented from this by the superiors of the monastery because of tender youth.

Henceforward then, departing from the monastery, I arrived at the Holy Land of Jerusalem, both for the sake of worship, and in the hope of encountering in those deserts some solitary and eremitic man and follow him. For which purpose, having first searched out the region of Tiberias, even as far as the desert in which Christ blessed the loaves,[3] and the hills of Magdala and Mount Tabor, and then, after venerating the holy and life-possessing

[1] A jurisdiction.

[2] The assistant to the sacristan.

[3] See Matt. 14:17.

tomb, and having searched the desert of Souka, the torrent of Saint Sabas and the regions of the Choziba and of the Jordan, searching the caves like a hunter of bees, and having failed in my aim, I was distraught.

But having spent six months there, I was told through a vision, by God's mercy, that I had to go, not in that desert, but to another place, upon which the King too, it said, shall descend and there stamp the bread. Henceforward then, departing from there, I sailed to Cyprus to the holy monastery of my holy father [St. John] Chrysostom, lest, I thought, my divine call concerning solitude is realized on the slopes of that mountain.

Because the Lord who foresees all did not will this, the heads of the monastery did not will it either, for which reason, immediately departing from there too, I arrived at the fort of Paphos, wishing to sail towards Mount Latros,[1] expecting to encounter on it some solitary man and serve him. But having been detected by the guards of the harbor and been seized by them as a fugitive, I was put in jail for a night and a day. They deprived me even of the two *nomismata* which I had for the fare. In their mistaken belief that they would find something more on me, the workers of greed even searched the very seams of my clothing. And injustice belied itself finding nothing more. But having been released by the guard through the mediation of some pious persons, I was at a loss, not knowing which was to be my ordained place of promise and rest.

I was forced to say all this, wishing to show how I came to possess the place of this hermitage, of which I was completely ignorant in the past. Now wishing to bypass the length of the story, I shall briefly say that, instead of the renowned Latros, God gave me this precipice and this smallest of caves. Which was deserted and a resting-place of various birds, but to me it appeared desirable because of the solitary nature of the place, and in hope I settled in it alone.

Chapter Five: Concerning the construction of the hermitage, and concerning the bishop and certain mysteries

In the year six thousand six hundred and sixty-seven [= 1159 CE], of the seventh indiction, on the twenty-fourth of the month of June, on the birth-day of the venerable [St. John the] Forerunner [John the Baptist], having resorted to the said cave, I was twenty-five years old, yet I searched out the solitude of the place even until the month of September. But having discovered that the place was quiet and undisturbed, I started hewing the cave and widening it, and breaking down its unsound parts, and I worked thus throughout all that year, up to and until the following September and the [feast day of the] Exaltation of the Holy Cross [September 14].

Having also fully carved out a tomb deep inside the cave, I told myself: "You shall possess nothing more than this, even if you come to rule the whole world." I called the cave by the name of the Holy Cross, having fixed an altar for the holy rites, so as not to distance myself from the holy communion of the body and blood of Christ.

Five years having passed by, I was also aroused in a laborious search for [relics of] the Venerable Cross and, as always, he who said that "everyone who asks receives and he who seeks finds"[2] was proved right. For I too found what I was looking for. Then also after some time, my unworthy mind's ear heard a certain honey-dropping strange and unusual voice, saying thrice, "Remember," that is to say "your prophesied profession in the desert," namely "Go to another place, in which the King too, descending there, shall stamp the bread." Together with this there are also certain other [things], but what need is there to reveal those too, as if my honesty would be observed from these? But let these be for the glory of God.

Moreover, after a few years, by means of a vision, I thought I was going up the mountain of Olympos, facing Lefkara [and] my native city of Amathous, as if to venerate the Cross of Christ, and lo, a voice saying to me "After fifty days" and anew for the second time "After sixty days." The fulfillment of this saying still remains obscure.

During those years, the see of Paphos was vacant, and in the seventh year of my sojourn in the hermitage it was wedded to that blessed man Basil Kinnamos.[3] For led by God, he showed great favor and faith towards my humbleness. He did not cease to incite me for an entire four-year period: on one hand he himself constantly visited me, and on the other, he exhorted me through his officials, until he placed me under the yoke of priesthood and persuaded me to take up a disciple to live with me, having also drawn up a *sigillion*[4] for the sufficient living allowance.

[1] A well-known monastic settlement.

[2] Matt. 7:8.

[3] Bishop of Paphos (r.1166–1190/94). A bishop was said to be "wedded" to his see.

[4] An official document bearing a seal.

Thereafter the structures of the hermitage began to be extended and adorned, and the entire length of the cliff was thoroughly hewn out for the construction of cells. In the twenty-fourth year of my enclosure, the hermitage was painted throughout, and the cliff next to it, hewn out, was consecrated as the church of the All-Holy Cross ... [gap in text]

Chapter Seven: Concerning the King of Cyprus and administrator of the present hermitage[1]

[Gap in text] ... but also, I implore you to attend to this my holy hermitage, as an administrator after God. Whenever because of some greed wrong is committed against it by one of the more cruel persons to the affliction of the brothers, with [the help of] God vindicate this quickly, as a man having power from God, and let your reward, from God, be the salvation of your soul. Thereupon, as benefactor, as administrator, and as brother, you shall also have eternal commemorative services in my holy hermitage. If, for a certain most urgent need, the brothers think fit to send one of them to the emperor, co-operate with this and speak up for the brothers so that their request shall be met, and the mercy of God shall be upon you for this favor. Amen.

Chapter Eight: Memorandum to the emperor[2]

We often see how a stone runs headlong down until [it reaches] the plain. I too, Lord emperor, with feet moving on their own, rushed to your noble [majesty], with this present writing. For I have heard that "a king loves justice"[3] and I was convinced that you too, Godguarded from above, shall not overlook my memorandum, but shall fulfill, whichsoever is the request of my disciples and your servants who are praying for you, who persevere in this my holy hermitage and who officiate in the church of the Venerable Cross in it. Christ, "the king of glory,"[4] shall reward by recompense your divine rule and shall strengthen and protect and make your reign mighty for long years. Amen.

Chapter Nine: Concerning the number of brothers and prohibition of instruction of children

In my previous testamentary *Rule* I had regulated for a very small number of brothers. But noting this provision in the rule, not just the brothers about me but also some of the learned laymen came together and they meekly requested that the number of brothers be raised up to twenty or even twenty-five, having also precisely calculated the sum of money necessary for such a number of church and attendant monks, "lest," they said, "some of the good people may desire to live here and, if they are held back by the rule, you shall be found to be the cause of grief and faintheartedness both to them and to us."

I answered these by saying that I had not so regulated out of hatred for the salvation and communal living of the good and many, but because I was taught by experience, both of the cenobitic systems and of what I expressly wrote about in my sixteenth chapter, that communal living of the many and ignorant and knavish and unruly and querulous breeds much noise and scandal. If certain such good men resort here for the glory of God and their salvation and their number is raised, as you said, I myself would certainly be no obstacle to those in whom God delights. Let the number then be raised to fifteen or even eighteen. He who feeds and provides for the few shall have no difficulty in feeding also the many, and especially if [they are] good. Let the most God-fearing and prudent among them be steward, and another of similar qualities be treasurer, so that the recluse[5] shall always remain quiet and undisturbed.

I neither agree with nor urge the instruction of lay children in the hermitage. For this is an indecent thing and strange and foreign to the tradition of the holy fathers. For which reason I too properly forbade it.

---

[1] King Hugh of Lusignan (r.1205–1218). The head (the so-called "recluse") of the hermitage was Neophytos himself; as "administrator" Hugh was meant to be its protector.

[2] Theodore I (r.1205–1221), who set up a Byzantine capital at Nicaea modeled on the one that had existed at Constantinople prior to the events of 1204.

[3] Ps. 99:4; Douay Ps. 98:4.

[4] Ps. 24:7–10; Douay Ps. 23:7–10.

[5] The head of the monastery.

"Remove not," it is said, "the old landmarks which thy fathers placed."[1]

Chapter Ten: Concerning poverty and the economic remedy

I hold that of every material possession none is better than the estate of poverty, as it always accompanies holiness. For it was thus that those who shook off their own property cleaved to the apostles, as the book of their acts plainly describes.[2] Having at all events, brethren, acquired this most precious estate of holiness, do not also acquire wealth and a pair of oxen and arable land and the disturbance of cattle, so as not, having approached the world, to lose solitude, harm greatly your soul, and place the public servants above your head. For behold, fifty-five years have gone by since this hermitage was constructed, and, possessing none of the things pertaining to life, the Lord deprived us of none of his goods.

These I had regulated fittingly and well in my first testament. But our country having fallen to the Latins and all the people having been deprived of every necessity, it was obviously natural that we would also fall into hard times, both because of the superabundance of the brothers and because of the increased expense, not simply because of our needs, but also because of the outsiders who daily come and visit the hermitage on account of its fame.[3] But because great expense at all events needs certain income and expenditure, and the brethren with good reasons disturbed me with these, I myself submitted to their desire, that is to say to acquire a little arable land and a vineyard and moderate numbers of sheep, to serve their very basic needs. You, brethren, I implore the Lord God to preserve unharmed from their soul-harming effects, and me in His mercy to judge innocent of this action....

Chapter Twelve: Concerning the ecclesiastical office and the priest and the holy vessels, and the books of the recluse

Since the *typikon*[4] of the church explains about the daily church service, I consider it unnecessary to talk at length about it. But I shall briefly say this, that this command of the *typikon* must not be overlooked and the reading of the Psalter must not be touched on cursorily, and that you must not neglect reading the liturgical books in time, nor be lazy in reading the catechism, for the glory of God and the benefit of those desiring it.

You must observe daily during the vespers and the matins and the holy liturgy the prayers for the emperors and magistrates and bishops and for the ministers [of God] past and present. You must not neglect the services for the Saturdays and Sundays and feast days and of the great saints. If this is not a burden to you, present God with an offering for me too at every liturgy....

The holy vessels and the books and the holy icons, as having been consecrated to God and to the holy hermitage once and for all, no one should remove any of them, either by authority or as a gift, lest both the giver and the receiver be subjected to the curse and excommunication from the church. Beware!

There are with [the help of] God also the writings of the recluse, sixteen small and large books, of which the three larger are *panegyrikai*.[5]

Two other books of many letters very beneficial to the soul, in which are also four hundred ascetic chapters and twenty-four *Telonia*.

A book in fifty chapters, containing also a commentary on the Song of Songs.

Another, [The book] of the *Divine Sign*.

Another, a commentary on the *Hexaemeros* in sixteen homilies.

---

[1] Prov. 22:28.

[2] Acts 2:45.

[3] Cyprus "fell to the Latins" in 1191, when King Richard conquered it.

[4] The book outlining the liturgy.

[5] *Panegyrikai* were panegyrics, public speeches in praise of a person or thing; Neophytos wrote them for certain feast-days of the Orthodox ecclesiastical year. As for the other books on this list: the *Telonia* were about spiritual battles; the "book of fifty chapters" had commentaries on many subjects ranging from contemporary issues to biblical texts. The Song of Songs is a book of the Bible. The book of the *Divine Sign* was about a miraculous incident in Neophytos' life. The *Hexaemeros* is the story of the Creation in six days, as described in the first chapter of Genesis. The "book of catechetical instruction" was a set of moral exhortations addressed by the monastic head (in this case the recluse, Neophytos) to his monks on special occasions. The penitential *stichera* were hymns—in this case penitential—sung with psalm verses in churches following the Byzantine rite. The "Last Book" cannot be identified.

Another, a commentary on the Psalms in twelve homilies.

Another, a commentary on the canons of the twelve feasts of the Lord.

Another [book] in twelve chapters, the notebook of the recluse, referring to [the events] of forty and fifty years and to natural phenomena.

Another [book] in twenty chapters, contains clear and concise commentaries on the Lord's commandments in the Old and New Testaments.

Another, the book of catechetical instruction.

Another small [book] of penitential *stichera*.

Another, this present testamentary *Rule*.

Yet another, the so-called Last [Book].

Sixteen books altogether, which, being new, must not be overlooked at all events by those who love virtue and God. But having perceived that the writings are not of human wisdom or subtle verbiage but of the grace of the Holy Spirit, they shall glorify the Triune God. Amen.

Chapter Nineteen: Concerning the hermitage's inaccessibility to women and concerning female beasts

Safety [from danger] and [from] the unforeseen is always good. "All things are lawful for me," it is said, "but not all things are helpful"[1] and, "let all be done decently and in order."[2] For this reason I too command that the bounds of the holy hermitage be inaccessible to any woman. If any woman, out of depravity, enters inside the outer gate, she shall fall under the punishment of feeding on dry food for forty days, and of carrying out the same number of genuflections throughout these days, so that both she is taught and she teaches others not to cross boundaries of discipline and not to overstep salvific rules. We have decreed thus, not because we loathe our fellow-human beings, but we wrote thus in order to preserve the discipline of the place. For it is unbefitting for the shipmaster to permit causes of scandal and shipwreck to enter the harbor. For the region of the hermitage being separate from the world and solitary, it ought to preserve also the likeness of a haven of salvation.

But together with these we also command this, that it is unbefitting to have for service in the monastery of the hermitage a female donkey or a mule. For such a thing is blameworthy and indecent and unbecoming, and supportive of "the devices of the devil"[3] towards evil, and especially for those who are still morally unstable and lacking in the fear of God.

Let Christ my God, the master of all, steer also this hermitage and all those in it towards harbors of salvation by his grace. Amen.

[At this point Neophytos lists "twenty ascetic canons" taken from the Rule of Basil the Great]

CANON SIX: CONCERNING MONKS PLAYING AND THAT PHYSICAL LABOR IS ALSO USEFUL

Secret and unattested is the fall of two monks who playfully embrace each other, especially if they are younger [monks], as I heard from those who suffered this. But it is necessary to punish and stop those who playfully embrace thus.

We know that physical labor is useful to all. This little I myself know from experience. For one who labored wisely and harvested, shall say: "God see my humiliation and my labor,"[4] and forgive all my sins. He shall be confident that this shall come to pass.

CANON SEVEN: CONCERNING A BROTHER FALLEN INTO SIN

If one of the brothers is led astray to a carnal sin, which I pray may not happen, if his soul is wounded and with confession he hastens towards repentance, let him be allowed [to remain here], and let him carry out the work of the punishment relative to the sin, so as to make sure that he shall not sin again. As for the one who is not so inclined, let him be ousted from here like a diseased sheep, so as not to spread the disease to the rest of the monks as well. For it is easier to participate in evil than to partake in goodness.

---

[1] 1 Cor. 6:12.

[2] 1 Cor. 14:40.

[3] Eph. 6:12.

[4] Gen. 31:42.

CANON EIGHT: CONCERNING GRIEVOUS SLAVERY

Our country having been terribly enslaved to a Latin nation, and divine providence having preserved us free, we, brothers, have a duty to preserve ourselves free from sin, with [the help of] God, and to thank and glorify God our benefactor as he so deserves, so as to attract even more of his divine providence.

CANON NINE: CONCERNING BATH AND BED

A monk of the hermitage, and especially a young one, must not bathe and add fire to fire, except in case of illness or infirmity due to old age. Neither must a monk lie down to sleep on a bed, but on a mat, just as the angel of God enjoined godly Pachomios.[1] But he who uses a bed because of illness or old age is not to be blamed.

6.7 Doing business: *A Genoese societas* (1253). Original in Latin.

Medieval business arrangements called for numerous kinds of contracts, i.e., documents with legal force in court. The cities of the Mediterranean abounded in such documents, normally drawn up by notaries. One such arrangement was a *societas*, a partnership in which the partners normally pooled their money and labor and reaped equal profits or losses. All the members were liable for the others; there was no concept (yet) of limited liability. The *societas* contract recorded below was a bit unusual: two of the partners (Consolino and Friedrich) contributed their skill (in this case in metallurgy) but no money, while another, Orlando Paglia, gave money but no labor. The rest of the partners promised both money and work. The profits, too, were shared unequally.

1. What does this document reveal about the medieval silver industry?
2. What sorts of qualifications did a person need to enter into a *societas?*

[Source: *Medieval Trade in the Mediterranean World: Illustrative Documents*, ed. and trans. Robert S. Lopez and Irving W. Raymond (New York: Columbia University Press, 2001), pp. 194–95 (notes modified).]

Genoa, September 7, 1253

In the name of the Lord, amen. Orlando Paglia; Giovanni Puliti; Ranieri of Verona; Giacomo Migliorati; Consolino, son of the late Konrad, German; and Friedrich, German, acknowledge that they have jointly made among themselves a *societas* to last forever for the purpose of buying mines, furnaces, or veins for the production of silver in Sardinia or wherever God may guide them more [wisely]. In this *societas* said Orlando invested £100 Genoese; Giovanni Puliti, £50; Ranieri of Verona, £15; Giacomo Migliorati, £25; waiving the exception that the money has not been had or received in cash. According to [the conditions of] this *societas* all are to go to Sardinia or wherever God may guide them more [wisely] to do said work, except Orlando, who is not himself going at present but may go whenever he likes and [may send] whatever messenger he wishes. And they are to share the expenses of said *societas* in food and drink and chartering of boats and renting of houses, both in sickness and in health, while engaged in said work; and they are to buy with [the capital of] said *societas* the equipment needed to do that work. And Consolino and Friedrich are to be in said *societas* with the abovementioned [investors] and to labor in good faith and without fraud, and to preserve and to protect said *societas*, and to give aid and counsel for the increase of said *societas*. They promise one another to

[1] Pachomios was a fourth-century Egyptian hermit and monastic founder.

make an accounting of the profit which God may grant to said *societas* every fourth month. And said Consolino and Friedrich are to have for their labor the sixth share of the profit which God may grant in that *societas*. And of the rest, [after deduction] of said sixth share, Orlando is to have a third share, Giovanni Puliti a third share, Ranieri and Giacomo another third share. And Consolino and Friedrich promised to the aforesaid not to forsake that *societas* in any way nor to leave it unless for the purpose of going to Tuscany. And if they, or one of them, should leave for said cause, they promised to return to said *societas* within two or three months from the day they left. They all swore, placing their hands on the sacred and holy Gospels of God, to undertake, to complete, and to observe each and all [of the aforesaid conditions] and not to violate [them] in any [way] under penalty of £100 Genoese, the pact remaining as settled among them [as] mutually stipulated and solemnly promised and under pledge of their goods, [the penalty] being given by the one who does not observe to those who do observe [it]. And we may be sued, wherever any of us and any of our goods [may be], waiving the privilege of [choosing] the tribunal. Done in Genoa in the house where said Orlando lives. Witnesses: Giacomo of Parma, son of the late Marina, and Obertino of Reggio [Emilia]. 1253, tenth indiction, on the seventh day of September, between terce and nones.

Only one [instrument] was made.[1]

6.8 Women's work: *Guild Regulations of the Parisian Silk Fabric Makers* (13th cent.). Original in French.

Craftspeople drew up their own laws to regulate themselves and guarantee the integrity and uniformity of their products. At Paris, there were perhaps a dozen such trades in the time of King Philip Augustus (r.1180–1223), but the number had swelled to over a hundred by the time of Louis IX (r.1226–1270), as we know from the collection of regulations published in 1268 by Etienne de Boileau, Louis's appointee as provost of Paris from *c*.1261 to 1270. The regulations for the makers of silk fabrics in Boileau's book, given below, show that women as well as men were involved in some important trades.

1. Why did apprentices pay their mistress less the longer their apprenticeship?
2. Who oversaw the silk fabric makers' craft?

[Source: *Women's Lives in Medieval Europe: A Sourcebook*, ed. Emilie Amt (New York and London: Routledge, 1993), pp. 194–99 (notes added).]

The Craft of Silk Fabric

1. No journeywoman[2] maker of silk fabric may be a mistress of the craft until she has practiced it for a year and a day, after she has done her apprenticeship, because she will be more competent to practice her craft and observe the regulations.

2. No mistress of this craft may take an apprentice for fewer than six years with a fee of four livres [pounds], or for eight years with forty sous, or for ten years with no fee; and she may have no more than two apprentices at the same time, and she may not take another until their apprenticeships are completed.

[1] This is an annotation of the notary, meaning that only one copy of the document was drafted for the parties.

[2] A journeywoman or journeyman was a day laborer; the job normally came after a long apprenticeship. Few laborers attained the status of mistress or master of the craft, who dominated the offices and policies of the guild.

3. No mistress or journeywoman may work at night or on a feast day observed by the whole town.

4. No mistress of the craft may weave thread with silk, or foil with silk, because the work is false and bad; and it should be burned if it is found.[1]

5. No mistress or journeywoman of the craft may make a false hem or border, either of thread or of foil, nor may she do raised [three-dimensional] work of thread or foil. And if such work is found, it should be burned, because it is false and bad.

6. No mistress or journeywoman of the craft, after she has done her apprenticeship, may hire anyone who is not a mistress of the craft, but she may take work to do from whomever she likes.

7. It is ordered that all the mistresses of the said craft who send their work outside the town to be done must show it to those who are designated to watch over the craft, along with the work of their own house, to make sure that it is up to standard.

8. And anyone who infringes on any of the above regulations must pay eight Parisian sous, each time she is found at fault; of which the king will have five sous, and the craft guild twelve deniers, and the masters who oversee the craft two sous for their pains and for the work they do in overseeing the craft.

9. To safeguard this craft in the manner described above, there should be established three masters and three mistresses, who will swear by the Saints that they will make known to the provost of Paris[2] or to his representative all the infringements of the regulations of the said craft, to the best of their ability.

BUREAUCRACY AT THE PAPAL CURIA

6.9 The growth of papal business: Innocent III, *Letters* (1200–1202). Original in Latin.

In the wake of the Gregorian Reform the papacy reorganized itself as a major court for all sorts of Church matters—disputed elections, appeals from individual churches regarding their rights, decisions about canonical marriages, and many other issues. By the time of Innocent III (1198–1216), the pope was involved in many local church affairs. The three letters here illustrate this point for England. The first shows Innocent intervening in a case involving a priest who resigned his post; the second has him determining the fitness of a priest to continue his work; and the third shows him interceding in a property dispute.

1. Who initiated the cases in which the pope intervened: the papacy or local churchmen?
2. How do these letters help explain the rapid expansion of the papal bureaucracy?

[Source: *Selected Letters of Pope Innocent III concerning England (1198–1216)*, ed. C.R. Cheney and W.H. Semple (London: Thomas Nelson and Sons, 1953), pp. 15, 23, 33–34 (notes modified).]

[1] Presumably, weaving thread or foil with the silk would contaminate its purity.

[2] The provost of Paris was the city's chief public magistrate.

[Letter 1, February 5, 1200]

To the bishop, dean, and subdean of Lincoln.[1]

It has come to our hearing, on information from our beloved son Master Elias de Chieveley,[2] that having canonically obtained the church of Chieveley on the authority of the Apostolic See, and having had peaceful possession for some time, he was at length compelled, through his very great fear of the king, to promise on oath to resign it, and has in fact resigned it into the hands of the appropriate persons.[3] But because actions done under duress or through fear ought not to have binding force, by apostolic letter we command you that, if it be established to your satisfaction that Master Elias was forced to resign by such fear, as could and should affect a man of courage, then notwithstanding the aforesaid oath (by which he was bound only to resign, but not precluded from seeking reinstatement) by ecclesiastical censure you will cause the aforesaid church to be restored to him without appeal.

No letter prejudicial to truth and justice etc. If you cannot all etc., then let two of you etc.[4]

The Lateran, the 5th of February.

[Letter 2, November 8, 1200]

To the bishop of Lincoln.[5]

Our beloved son A., a priest, appearing in our presence, by his own confession disclosed to us that, being so badly troubled by a certain physical ailment that desire for sleep and food seemed to have left him, with the idea of wakening some slight appetite for a meal he mounted a horse he had bred. The horse not being completely obedient to the reins, but prancing and leaping contrary to the rider's will, he pulled hard on the bridle and pricked with the spurs in order to curb its impetuosity. But the rein snapped, and the horse, as left to its own caprice, bolted at a gallop—when a woman, approaching from the side and carrying a baby, met it. The horse collided with her, threw its rider to a distance, and crushed the child. The priest himself, as a result of his sudden fall, was brought almost to the gates of death: ultimately he recovered, but has not since presumed to celebrate mass. As the foregoing account is uncorroborated, by apostolic letter we command you carefully to enquire into the truth and, if you find the occurrence to have happened as stated, not to debar the priest from celebrating the divine offices, since he will have committed homicide neither by will nor act, nor have deliberately attempted anything unlawful.

The Lateran, the 8th of November.

[Letter 3, March 6, 1202]

Innocent, bishop, servant of the servants of God, to his beloved sons the priors of St. Oswald and of Pontefract and Roger dean of Ledsham in the diocese of York, greeting and apostolic benediction.[6]

The petition of our beloved son William de Midelton has been read to us: it set forth that his father once pledged a piece of land at Ecclefechan to Ivo de Crossby of the diocese of York as security for a certain sum of money, and that, though the said Ivo in his lifetime and his son Richard after his death gained from that property the capital and more, nevertheless the said Richard, to the peril of his salvation, still holds it and refuses to return it. Therefore by apostolic letter we command you that, if the case is as stated, you should compel, without appeal, the said Richard to content himself with his capital, and to restore to the complainant the said land and any takings in excess of the capital sum, on threat of the penalty

---

[1] Bishop Hugh I (St. Hugh of Avallon; r.1186–1200); Roger de Rolveston was dean 1195–1223; the subdean was either Richard Kentensis or William de Bramfeld.

[2] Master Elias of Chieveley, Berkshire had obtained the church there by order of Pope Celestine III (1191–1198).

[3] I.e., to his ecclesiastical superiors. The king in question was John (r.1199–1216), who at the time was quarreling with the Church.

[4] These are formulas so common as to allow abbreviation, rather like LOL today.

[5] There was no bishop, in fact; Hugh died in 1200 and no successor was appointed until 1203.

[6] St. Oswald in Yorkshire was a priory of Austin canons—that is, a community organized much like a monastery but made up of priests following the Rule of St. Augustine rather than of St. Benedict. The prior was Ralph (r.1199–1208). Pontefract, also in Yorkshire, was a Cluniac priory; its prior was Hugh (r.*c.*1184–*c.*1203). Roger of Ledsham, rural dean of Pontefract between 1191 and 1203, may be the third person addressed here.

published in the Lateran Council against usurers.[1] If any witnesses cited have withdrawn through favor, hatred, or fear, you are to compel them, by ecclesiastical censure without appeal, to give evidence establishing the truth.

But if you cannot all take part in discharging this business, let two of you discharge it, notwithstanding.

The Lateran, the 6th of March, in the fifth year of our Pontificate.

6.10 Petitioning the papacy: *Register of Thomas of Hereford* (1281). Original in Latin.

This document is from the episcopal register of Thomas Cantilupe, bishop of Hereford (r.1275–1282). Episcopal registries, which came to be drawn up in the thirteenth century in England and elsewhere, were official record books, each put together by a scribe working for a bishop. They covered the gamut of episcopal activities, including visitations to monasteries (during which monks were interviewed and problems attended to), ordinations of priests, presentations of church benefices, excommunications, and, as here, appeals to the papal court. In this document, Bishop Thomas writes to his "proctors"—his agents—at the papal curia. All bishops depended largely on their manors to generate the income that they needed; when Thomas complained about the "poverty of the bishopric," he meant that he could ill afford the costs of litigation. He had to go into debt to Italian bankers, whom he called the "merchants of Pistoia." One case that Thomas litigated had to do with "the cause against St. Asaph." This alluded to his dispute with Anian II, bishop of St. Asaph, in Wales, who claimed the right to some of the same parishes that Thomas claimed. The pope referred the matter to John Peckham, the archbishop of Canterbury (r.1279–1292), but Thomas, who was already disputing Peckham's jurisdiction over Hereford, appealed to the pope—at considerable cost.

1. What diplomatic and negotiating strategies did Thomas of Hereford tell his agents to follow?
2. What role did the king of England apparently play in the life of Bishop Thomas?

[Source: *English Historical Documents*, vol. 3: 1189–1327, ed. Harry Rothwell (London: Routledge, 1975), pp. 763–65 (notes modified).]

To our proctors staying at the Roman court. To masters William Brun and John de Bitterley greeting. Although word has passed between us before and an account by letter followed afterwards upon the same matter, i.e. of "visiting"[2] every one of the cardinals, we think after deliberation that the burden of debt and the poverty of the bishopric do not permit this; yet, because we understand, know indeed, that affairs in the curia are not advanced at all unless there are visits general and particular, we send you on that account for the expediting of our affairs by letters of merchants of Pistoia one hundred pounds sterling to be received in sterling or *gros* of Tours. Which sum of money, though it seems little, can nevertheless be useful if carefully distributed, which in the judgment of some can be done in this way: viz [clearly], that sir Hugh, the English cardinal, should have thirty marks, sir Gerard,

[1] This was a reference to the decrees of the Third Lateran Council (1179).

[2] That is, "giving gifts."

cardinal, our auditor,[1] ten pounds, and his household five marks. Sir Matthew Ruffus, cardinal, ten marks, sir Jordan, cardinal, ten marks, the vice-chancellor, fifteen pounds, the auditor of objections, ten marks, B. de Neapoli and another notary who is particularly outstanding and particularly intimate with the lord pope, twenty marks in equal portions; the chamberlain of the lord pope ten marks, the usher of the lord pope, forty shillings sterling. To others it seems that five marks can be deducted from the sum set aside for the vice-chancellor, so that he has ten marks only; from the two notaries and the chamberlain of the pope they can subtract seven and a half marks so that each of them has as much as the other. And so of the hundred pounds there will remain 33½ marks.[2]

To others it seems that it would be a good thing to bear in mind the pope, with whom the archbishop (from whom appeal is being made) is on familiar terms, to the extent of forty or fifty marks, first taking out of the list as many people as would together receive that amount of money. But to us it seems that the middle way is more profitable and honorable, though if necessity compels it, let the pope be considered in some way which will please him on whom it is recognized all favor depends. This however which we write about the pope we have no mind for, unless for lack of its being done our cause against St. Asaph and our other affairs were to be manifestly in danger. For which reason we should very much like you to present forty or fifty marks, or jewels to that amount, to the said lord rather by raising a new loan than that you should subtract any part of the aforementioned sum. For contracting which loan, we are not sending you our signet because we do not believe that it is necessary for us to do this this time. The merchants of Pistoia, we believe, will, to oblige us, lend us on any sort of bond of ours that amount of money. But if it is not possible to provide for our needs through them or our other friends, then you may take out of the hundred pounds for the lord's use[3] as much as you consider expedient, distributing what is left of the said money amongst the others as shall seem expedient for advancing our cause and our other affairs. In the cause against St. Asaph let us hold in the main to the rule of the defendant, whose instinct is to drag out the cause as long as possible. In the aforementioned cause, however, in which we have an acceptance lately drawn up in legal form of the appeal from [the decision of] the lord archbishop of Canterbury, we do not wish to hunt for shameful and doubtful subterfuges with which to sway the mind of the judge or such things as might render us suspect in his eyes or by which danger might threaten us if we are sent back to the former judge: a thing which perhaps might be preferred by our adversary. We wish instead to avoid the manifold dangers while the cause is at the aforesaid court; so long as our expenses incurred in sending a modest mission to obtain a decision are first refunded to us, or at least claimed with sufficient force, before he from whose decision we are appealing defers to our appeal; on account of that, as in this method of distribution, with which as we have stated above we are in more agreement, there are 33½ marks left over for distribution, we very much wish our lord the Spanish cardinal (to whom we are writing) to have ten marks and sir Benedict, cardinal, and sir James, cardinal, or William, the French cardinal, whichever of these at the time of distribution is friendlier with the lord pope and in the promotion of our affairs is able to exert more influence for us, to have ten marks, indeed eleven marks. What is left over after these we leave you to deal with jointly, for one or more other visits or for other necessary expenditure.

After the distribution, though, we should like our envoys to return to us with the utmost speed, with your letters recounting what has been done and the attitude of the recipients, along with other news worth mentioning.

Because we are (praised be the Most High) so restored spiritually and improved bodily that our body suffices these days for the labors, troubles and duties of our office, we propose to return home about the feast of St. Michael if the Lord allows, especially because the lord king has now written twice to us about this since Easter. And if you send back one of our envoys or someone else to us to tell us the exact state of our cause we shall be able to send back to you our pleasure in writing before our return by him or another from Fontaine, where we shall then be. Indeed, we do not want you to retain even one of our envoys for too long, since messengers sufficiently reliable and faithful return from the curia every day, by whom you will be able to tell us what you have to say and we thank you for having reported the state of affairs at the curia to us by such hitherto.

---

[1] I.e., the judge delegated to hear the bishop's cause.

[2] The arithmetic is faulty but may be corrected by assuming a copyist's error and reading fifteen marks (instead of pounds) for the vice-chancellor in the first scheme.

[3] *Ad opus Domini*—in the context, this is probably the lord pope.

We are indeed sending you the contents of the letters in which we write as you ask, and in the light of them you will be able to speak more circumspectly with them. Mr. Adam de Fileby, according to what we have heard, will arrive at the curia soon. In what frame of mind he is, though, towards us we do not know at all.[1] If in addition to the amounts distributed and necessary expenses four marks can be paid to Mr. E. de Warefelde as salary, then by all means let it be done; that too among other things you might tell us about. And because in addition to the ten marks which you have received from us and which you have expended on difficult business of ours, you have spent eight shillings sterling and three shillings and one penny of *gros* of Tours, as we understand from a certain schedule of yours sent to us, we very much want you to recompense yourselves from the money sent to you, if it can be done conveniently for us.

If you can distribute the said money to better advantage than is set out in any of the ways mentioned, then in the name of the Lord do as will be most useful to us, provided there is agreement about what is done. Farewell. Given at Brynum on 16 June, A.D. 1281.

6.11 Mocking the papal bureaucracy: *The Gospel According to the Marks of Silver* (*c.*1200). Original in Latin.

The sorts of experiences Thomas of Hereford had at the papal curia and recorded in his *Register*, above, p. 320, especially the tips and other expenses he had to pay, led some people to mock the papacy and to interpret its need for revenues as simple greed. *The Gospel according to the Marks of Silver* satirizes the curia in the cadences of the Gospel of St. Mark 1:1: "The beginning of the Gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God."

1. Who could have written this sort of satire?
2. Who besides the pope is mocked here?

[Source: *The Medieval Record: Sources of Medieval History*, ed. Alfred J. Andrea (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1997), p. 296.]

Here begins the Gospel according to the marks of silver. In that time, the pope said unto the Romans: "When the Son of Man comes to the seat of Our majesty,[2] first say unto him, 'Friend, wherefore art thou come?'[3] But if he should persevere in his knocking and give thee nothing,[4] cast him forth into the outer darkness."[5] And it came to pass that a certain poor cleric came to the lord pope's court and cried out, saying: "Have mercy even unto me, ye doorkeepers of the pope, because the hand of poverty has touched me.[6] For I am needy and poor, and I beg thee to relieve my calamitous misery."[7] They, however, upon hearing this were right indignant and said: "Friend, thy poverty go with thee to damnation.[8] Get thee behind me, Satan, because ye taste not of the things that savor of money.[9] Amen, Amen, I say unto thee, thou shalt not enter into the joy of thy Lord, until thou hast given the

[1] Relations were strained.
[2] Matt. 25:31.
[3] Matt. 26:50.
[4] Luke 11:5–13 and Matt. 7:7–11.
[5] Matt. 25:30.
[6] Matt. 15:22.
[7] Job 19:21.
[8] Acts 8:20.
[9] Mark 8:33.

very last penny."[1] And the pauper went away and sold his cloak and tunic and everything that he owned, and he gave to the cardinals, and the doorkeepers, and the chamberlains.[2] But they said: "And this, what is it among so much?" And they cast him out before the gates,[3] and he going forth wept bitterly[4] and could not be consoled.

Thereafter there came to the court a certain rich, fat, well-fed,[5] and bloated cleric, who had committed murder while engaging in a riot.[6] He first gave to the doorkeeper, in the second place to the chamberlain, and in the third place to the cardinals.[7] And they took counsel among themselves as to who of them should have received the most.[8] But the lord pope, hearing that his cardinals and ministers had received so many gifts from the cleric, took ill well unto death.[9] Then the rich cleric sent unto him a sweet elixir of gold and silver, and straightway he was recovered.[10] Then the lord pope called unto himself his cardinals and ministers and said unto them: "Brothers, be watchful lest anyone seduce thee with empty words.[11] For I give unto you an example that even as much as I take, ye also should take."[12]

CONFRONTATIONS

6.12 Henry II and Becket: *The Constitutions of Clarendon* (1164). Original in Latin.

As part of his reform of the English legal system, Henry II (r.1154–1189) expected "criminous clerks"—that is, clerics who were suspected of committing a serious crime—to come before his courts. "Clerks" included numerous members of the minor Church orders and thus a large proportion of the free male population. Archbishop Thomas Becket (r.1162–1170) wanted church courts to have jurisdiction over all clerical cases. Pressed by the pope as well as by numerous cardinals and bishops to give in to Henry, Becket reluctantly agreed in 1164. The king insisted on a public assent, and the *Constitutions of Clarendon* was the result. It cast the issue as a matter of tradition, claiming to record the "customs, liberties and privileges" that prevailed in the time of Henry I (r.1100–1135). The *Constitutions* did not end the dispute between Henry and Becket, however. Becket escaped to France, hurling excommunications from there against bishops and great laymen in England who, in his view, infringed on his rights. When Becket returned to England, Henry II famously (but perhaps apocryphally) let slip the words, "Will no one rid me of this turbulent priest?" Four knights in the royal entourage took to the road and murdered Becket in his cathedral at Canterbury (in 1170), turning him into an instant martyr. In the end, most of the

[1] Matt. 5:26.
[2] Matt. 13:44–46.
[3] Matt. 22:13.
[4] Matt. 26:75.
[5] Deut. 32:15.
[6] Mark 15:7.
[7] Matt. 25:14–15.
[8] Matt. 20:10.
[9] Phil. 2:27.
[10] John 5:9.
[11] Eph. 5:6.
[12] John 13:15.

provisions of the *Constitutions* stood, regulating the relationship between royal courts and criminous clerks.

1. Compare the (hoped for) role of the English king in clerical litigation here with the actual role of the king in the litigation of Bishop Thomas of Hereford (above p. 320).
2. If you were the archbishop of Canterbury, why—or why not—would you agree to these *Constitutions*?

[Source: *English Historical Documents*, vol. 2: 1042–1189, ed. David C. Douglas and George W. Greenaway, 2nd ed. (London: Routledge, 1981), pp. 766–70 (notes modified).]

In the year 1164 from our Lord's Incarnation, being the fourth of the pontificate of Alexander,[1] and the tenth of Henry II, most illustrious king of the English, in the presence of the said king was made this record and declaration of a certain part of the customs, liberties and privileges of his ancestors, that is, of King Henry, his grandfather, and of other things which ought to be observed and maintained in the realm. And by reason of the dissensions and discords which had arisen between the clergy and the justices of the lord king and the barons of the realm concerning the customs and privileges of the realm, this declaration was made in the presence of the archbishops, bishops and clergy, and of the earls, barons and magnates of the realm. And these same customs were acknowledged by the archbishops and bishops, and the earls, barons, nobles and elders of the realm. Thomas, archbishop of Canterbury; and Roger, archbishop of York; Gilbert, bishop of London; Henry, bishop of Winchester....[2]

Now of the acknowledged customs and privileges of the realm a certain part is contained in the present document, of which part these are the heads:

1. If a dispute shall arise between laymen, or between clerks and laymen, or between clerks, concerning advowson and presentation to churches, let it be treated and concluded in the court of the lord king.[3]

2. Churches within the fief of the lord king cannot be granted in perpetuity without his consent and concession.[4]

3. Clerks cited and accused of any matter shall, when summoned by the king's justice, come before the king's court to answer there concerning matters which shall seem to the king's court to be answerable there, and before the ecclesiastical court for what shall seem to be answerable there, but in such a way that the justice of the king shall send to the court of holy Church to see how the case is there tried. And if the clerk shall be convicted or shall confess, the Church ought no longer to protect him.[5]

[1] Alexander III (1159–1181).

[2] Here numerous bishops are named and said to have "agreed, and by word of mouth steadfastly promised on the word of truth to the lord king and his heirs, that these customs should be kept and observed in good faith and without evil intent." Following those names are the names of numerous "magnates and nobles of the realm."

[3] "Advowson and presentation" had to do with rights over churches. The Church claimed that suits arising out of such disputes had to do with spiritual matters, while the king regarded them as questions of property.

[4] I.e., the ownership of churches on royal estates was not to be transferred without the king's consent. The object of this clause was to preserve all the rights and services due the king. Becket raised no objection to this clause.

[5] I.e., a clerk accused of a grave offense, murder and the like, was to answer before the king's justice for the breach of the king's peace committed by the felony. He was then to be sent on the church court to answer there, as a clerk, to the homicide. If convicted, he would be "degraded," and the "Church ought no longer to protect him." He was then to be brought back to the king's court as a layman, to be sentenced to the penalties any other layman would suffer—that is, either death or mutilation. The provision that the "justice of the king shall send to the court of holy Church to see how the case is there tried" was meant to ensure that the offender would not escape.

4. It is not lawful for archbishops, bishops and beneficed clergy of the realm to depart from the kingdom without the lord king's leave. And if they do so depart, they shall, if the king so please, give security that neither in going, nor in tarrying, nor in returning will they contrive evil or injury against the king or the kingdom.[1]

5. Excommunicates ought not to give pledges of security for future good behavior nor take oaths, but only to give sufficient pledge of security to abide by the judgment of the Church in order to obtain absolution.

6. Laymen ought not to be accused save by accredited and lawful accusers and witnesses in the presence of the bishop, in such a way, however, that the archdeacon may not lose his right nor anything due to him thereby. And if the accused persons be such that no one either wishes or dares to prefer a charge against them, the sheriff, when requested by the bishop, shall cause twelve lawful men of the neighborhood or township to swear before the bishop that they will manifest the truth of the matter to the best of their knowledge.

7. No one who holds of the king in chief nor any of the officials of his demesne[2] shall be excommunicated, nor the lands of any of them placed under interdict, unless application shall first be made to the lord king, if he be in the realm, or to his chief justice, if he be abroad, that right may be done him; in such wise that matters pertaining to the royal court shall be concluded there, and matters pertaining to the ecclesiastical court shall be sent thither to be dealt with.

8. With regard to appeals, if they should arise, they should proceed from the archdeacon to the bishop, and from the bishop to the archbishop. And if the archbishop should fail to do justice, the case must finally be brought to the lord king, in order that by his command the dispute may be determined in the archbishop's court, in such a way that it proceed no further without the assent of the lord king.[3]

9. If a dispute shall arise between a clerk and a layman, or between a layman and a clerk, in respect of any holding which the clerk desires to treat as free alms, but the layman as lay fee, it shall be determined by the recognition of twelve lawful men through the deliberation, and in the presence of the king's chief justice, *whether* the holding pertains to free alms or to lay fee.[4] And if it be judged to pertain to free alms, the plea shall be heard in the ecclesiastical court; but if to lay fee, it shall be heard in the king's court, unless both of them shall claim from the same bishop or baron. But if each of them appeal concerning this fief to the same bishop or baron, the plea shall be heard in the latter's court, in such a way that he who was originally in possession shall not lose possession by reason of the recognition that has been made, until the matter has been settled by the plea.

10. If any one of a city or castle or borough or demesne manor of the lord king be cited by archdeacon or bishop for any offence for which he is obliged to make answer to them, and he refuse to give satisfaction at their citations, it is highly proper to place him under interdict;[5] but he ought not to be excommunicated until application has been made to the chief officer of the lord king in that town, in order that it may be adjudged proper for him to make satisfaction. But if the king's officer fails to act in this, he himself shall be at the mercy[6] of the lord king, and thereafter the bishop shall be allowed to coerce the accused by ecclesiastical justice.

11. Archbishops, bishops and all beneficed clergy of the realm, who hold of the king in chief, have their possessions from the lord king by barony and are answerable for them to the king's justices and officers; they observe and perform all royal rights and customs and, like other barons, ought to be present at the judgments of the king's

---

[1] This clause was an attempt to prevent appeals to Rome.

[2] This clause protected the royal tenants-in-chief, i.e., those who held fiefs directly from the king.

[3] I.e., no appeals might proceed to Rome without the king's consent.

[4] "Free alms" versus "lay fee" refer to the terms by which land was held. Land was held in "free alms" when it was held in exchange for prayers or other charitable activity; it was held in "lay fee" when it owed feudal obligations.

[5] "Interdict" refers to the ecclesiastical punishment of denying a person participation in most sacraments and burial in consecrated ground.

[6] "At the mercy of the lord king," i.e., liable to a royal fine.

court together with the barons,[1] until a case shall arise involving a judgment concerning mutilation or death.[2]

12. When an archbishopric or bishopric is vacant, or any abbey or priory of the king's demesne, it ought to be in the king's hand, and he shall receive from it all revenues and profits as part of his demesne. And when the time shall come to provide for the church, the lord king ought to summon the more important of the beneficed clergy of the church, and the election ought to take place in the lord king's chapel with the assent of the lord king and the advice of the clergy of the realm whom he shall summon for this purpose. And the clerk elected shall there do homage and fealty to the lord king as his liege lord for his life and limbs and his earthly honor, saving his order, before he is consecrated.[3]

13. If any of the magnates of the realm should forcibly prevent an archbishop or bishop or archdeacon from doing justice to himself or to his people, the lord king ought to bring him to justice. And if perchance anyone should forcibly dispossess the lord king of his right, the archbishops, bishops and archdeacons ought to bring him to justice, so that he may make satisfaction to the lord king.

14. The chattels of those who are under forfeiture to the king may not be retained by any church or cemetery against the king's justice, because they belong to the king, whether they be found within the churches or without.[4]

15. Pleas of debt due under pledge of faith, or even without pledge of faith, are to lie in the justice of the king.[5]

16. Sons of villeins ought not to be ordained without the consent of the lord on whose land they are known to have been born.[6]

This record of the aforesaid customs and privileges of the crown was drawn up by the archbishops, bishops, earls, barons, nobles and elders of the realm at Clarendon on the fourth day previous to the Purification of the Blessed Virgin Mary[7] in the presence of the lord Henry,[8] and of his father, the lord king. There are, moreover, many other great customs and privileges pertaining to holy mother-church and to the lord king and the barons of the realm which are not contained in this document. Let them be safe for holy Church and for our lord, the king and his heirs and the barons of the realm. And let them be inviolably observed for ever and ever.

6.13 Emperor and pope: *The Diet of Besançon* (1157). Original in Latin.

In Germany, the election of Frederick I Barbarossa (r.1152–1190) brought peace after years of civil war. But the emperor's claim to overlordship in Italy—and in Rome—threatened

[1] I.e., ecclesiastical tenants-in-chief of the crown were to hold their fiefs by ordinary feudal tenures and were bound by feudal laws and customs, including being present at court to give the king counsel.

[2] By canon law no churchman could be present at, or take part in, the "shedding of blood"; hence the ecclesiastical tenants-in-chief of the king were to leave the court when sentences of this nature were pronounced.

[3] King Henry I and his archbishop, Anselm, fought their own "Investiture Conflict" in the early twelfth century, and the outcome, which was a precedent for the Concordat of Worms, is here placed on record: the king had a role in the election of bishops—but did not appoint them outright—and the cleric, before consecration, did "homage and fealty" to the king for his "life and limbs and earthly honor"—that is, his temporal possessions.

[4] This clause asserted the king's right over the chattels—i.e., the movable property—left by those who had been condemned for treason or felony and had fled the country. Such possessions were often stored within ecclesiastical precincts, where they enjoyed the privilege of sanctuary. The king regarded this as an abuse of his rights.

[5] I.e., under the king's jurisdiction.

[6] A clause aimed at preventing the loss of villein (also spelled villan and villain) services to the lords.

[7] January 29, 1164.

[8] This was a son of Henry II; he died in 1183.

the papacy's autonomy. The contest between the emperor and the pope in the empire was not about jurisdiction over criminous clerics, as it was in England; rather it was about how to understand the relationship between the institutions of empire and papacy. At Besançon the pope's emissaries reminded the emperor of the "dignity and honor" as well as the "emblem of the imperial crown" that the Church at Rome had "conferred" on him—as if the symbol of empire had been the pope's to give. Adding insult to injury, the emissaries spoke of these gifts as *beneficia*, a Latin word that meant both the neutral "benefits" and the potentially explosive "fiefs." Translated for the assembly by its more potent meaning, *beneficia* launched a diplomatic crisis, as the chronicler Rahewin—who dedicated his work to the emperor's chancellor and notary—recorded. Ultimately the pope wrote a conciliatory letter to Frederick explaining that by *beneficia* he had meant only "good deeds," and the emergency passed. But the struggle between emperor and pope to define themselves with respect to each other continued.

1. Although Rahewin says that the reader may "choose freely the side [pope's or emperor's] to which he desires to lend his favor," whose side is he on and how do you know?
2. Why did the ambassadors of Pope Adrian IV come to Besançon and what were they hoping to accomplish?

[Source: *The Deeds of Frederick Barbarossa by Otto of Freising and his Continuator, Rahewin*, trans. Charles Christopher Mierow (New York: Columbia University Press, 1953), pp. 180–86 (slightly modified and some notes added or omitted).]

8. ... In the middle of the month of October [1157] the emperor set out for Burgundy to hold a diet [meeting] at Besançon. Now Besançon is the metropolis of one of the three parts into which the renowned Charles the Great divided his empire for distribution among his three sons, all enjoying the royal title.[1] It is situated on the river Doubs. In this city practically all the chief men of that land had assembled, and also many ambassadors from foreign lands, namely, Romans, Apulians [i.e., from Apulia, in Italy], Tuscans, Venetians, Franks, English, and Spaniards, awaited the emperor's arrival. He was received with the most festive display and solemn acclaim. For the whole world recognized him as the most powerful and most merciful ruler, and undertook, with mingled love and fear, to honor him with new tokens of respect, to extol him with new praises.

But before our pen addresses itself to an account of the affairs of this province and its management, we must speak of the ambassadors of the Roman pontiff, Adrian [IV, 1154–1159]—why they came and how they departed—because the authority of this delegation was very great and their errand very serious. No one will complain at the prolixity of this account who considers carefully the importance of the matter and the length of time that this tempest has raged and still rages. The personnel of the embassy consisted of Roland, cardinal priest of the title of St. Mark and chancellor of the Holy Roman Church,[2] and Bernard, cardinal priest of the title of St. Clement, both distinguished for their wealth, their maturity of view, and their influence, and surpassing in prestige almost all others in the Roman Church.

Now the cause of their coming seemed to have an air of sincerity; but it was afterward clearly discerned that unrest and an occasion for mischief lay beneath the surface. One day, upon the prince's retiring from the uproar and tumult of the people, the aforesaid messengers were conducted into his presence in the more secluded retreat of a certain oratory and—as was fitting—were received

[1] After the death of Charlemagne (814) and his son Louis the Pious (840), the empire was divided among Louis's three sons. Besançon was in the portion that went to Lothar.

[2] Roland Bandinelli, later Pope Alexander III (1159–1181).

with honor and kindness, claiming (as they did) to be the bearers of good tidings.

But the beginning of their speech appeared notable at the very outset. It is said to have been as follows: "Our most blessed father, Pope Adrian, salutes you, and the College of Cardinals of the Holy Roman Church, he as father, they as brethren." After a brief interval they produced the letter that they bore. Copies of this and other letters which passed back and forth in this time of confusion, I have taken pains to insert in this work that any reader who may wish to judge, attracted and summoned not by my words or assertions but by the actual writings of the parties themselves, may choose freely the side to which he desires to lend his favor. Now the content of the letter was as follows:

9. "Bishop Adrian, the servant of the servants of God, to his beloved son Frederick, the illustrious emperor of the Romans, greeting and apostolic benediction.

"We recollect having written, a few days since, to the Imperial Majesty, of that dreadful and accursed deed, an offense calling for atonement, committed in our time, and hitherto, we believe, never attempted in the German lands. In recalling it to Your Excellency, we cannot conceal our great amazement that even now you have permitted so pernicious a deed to go unpunished with the severity it deserves. For how our venerable brother E[skil], archbishop of Lund, while returning from the apostolic see, was taken captive in those parts by certain godless and infamous men—a thing we cannot mention without great and heartfelt sorrow—and is still held in confinement;[1] how in taking him captive, as previously mentioned, those men of impiety, a seed of evildoers, children that are corrupters,[2] drew their swords and violently assaulted him and his companions, and how basely and shamefully they treated them, stripping them of all they had, Your Most Serene Highness knows, and the report of so great a crime has already spread abroad to the most distant and remote regions. To avenge this deed of exceptional violence, you, as a man to whom we believe good deeds are pleasing but evil works displeasing, ought with great determination to arise and bring down heavily upon the necks of the wicked the sword which was entrusted by divine providence to you 'for the punishment of evildoers and for the praise of them that do well,'[3] and should most severely punish the presumptuous. But you are reported so to have ignored and indeed been indifferent to this deed, that there is no reason why those men should be repentant at having incurred guilt, because they have long since perceived that they have secured immunity for the sacrilege which they have committed.

"Of the reason for this indifference and negligence we are absolutely ignorant, because no scruple of conscience accuses our heart of having in any way offended the glory of Your Serenity. Rather have we always loved, with sincere affection, and treated with an attitude of due kindness, your person as that of our most dear and especially beloved son and most Christian prince, who, we doubt not, is by the grace of God grounded on the rock of the apostolic confession.

"For you should recall, O most glorious son, before the eyes of your mind, how willingly and how gladly your mother, the Holy Roman Church, received you in another year, with what affection of heart she treated you, what great dignity and honor she bestowed upon you, and with how much pleasure she conferred the emblem of the imperial crown, zealous to cherish in her most kindly bosom the height of Your Sublimity, and doing nothing at all that she knew was in the least at variance with the royal will.

"Nor do we regret that we fulfilled in all respects the ardent desires of your heart; but if Your Excellency had received still greater benefits[4] at our hand (had that been possible), in consideration of the great increase and advantage that might through you accrue to the Church of God and to us, we would have rejoiced, not without reason.

"But now, because you seem to ignore and hide so heinous a crime, which is indeed known to have been committed as an affront to the Church universal and to your empire, we both suspect and fear that perhaps your thoughts were directed toward this indifference and neglect on this account: that at the suggestion of an evil man, sowing tares,[5] you have conceived against

[1] Eskil (r.*c.*1100–1182) was archbishop of Lund (today Sweden but in Eskil's day part of Denmark). His efforts to free his church from the jurisdiction of the archbishop of Hamburg-Bremen may well have led to the "captivity" recorded here.

[2] See Isa. 1:4.

[3] 1 Pet. 2:14.

[4] The word used was *beneficia*, which could mean "benefices" (i.e., fiefs) as well as benefits. The emperor and his attendants understood the first meaning, and they concluded that the pope claimed overlordship of the empire.

[5] Matt. 13:25.

your most gracious mother the Holy Roman Church and against ourselves—God forbid!—some displeasure or grievance.

"On this account, therefore, and because of all the other matters of business which we know to impend, we have thought best to dispatch at this time from our side to Your Serenity two of the best and dearest of those whom we have about us, namely, our beloved sons, Bernard, cardinal priest of St. Clement's, and Roland, cardinal priest of St. Mark's and our chancellor, men very notable for piety and wisdom and honor. We very earnestly beseech Your Excellency that you receive them with as much respect as kindness, treat them with all honor, and that whatever they themselves set forth before Your Imperial Dignity on our behalf concerning this and concerning other matters to the honor of God and of the Holy Roman Church, and pertaining also to the glory and exaltation of the empire, you accept without any hesitation as though proceeding from our mouth. Give credence to their words, as if we were uttering them." [September 20, 1157.]

10. When this letter had been read and carefully set forth by Chancellor Rainald[1] in a faithful interpretation, the princes who were present were moved to great indignation, because the entire content of the letter appeared to have no little sharpness and to offer even at the very outset an occasion for future trouble. But what had particularly aroused them all was the fact that in the aforesaid letter it had been stated, among other things, that the fullness of dignity and honor had been bestowed upon the emperor by the Roman pontiff, that the emperor had received from his hand the imperial crown, and that he would not have regretted conferring even greater benefits (*beneficia*) upon him, in consideration of the great gain and advantage that might through him accrue to the Roman Church. And the hearers were led to accept the literal meaning of these words and to put credence in the aforesaid explanation because they knew that the assertion was rashly made by some Romans that hitherto our kings had possessed the imperial power over the City,[2] and the kingdom of Italy, by gift of the popes, and that they made such representations and handed them down to posterity not only orally but also in writing and in pictures. Hence it is written concerning Emperor Lothar, over a picture of this sort in the Lateran palace:

Coming before our gates, the king vows to safeguard
the City,
Then, liegeman to the Pope, by him he is granted the
crown.

Since such a picture and such an inscription, reported to him by those faithful to the empire, had greatly displeased the prince when he had been near the City in a previous year [1155], he is said to have received from Pope Adrian, after a friendly remonstrance, the assurance that both the inscription and the picture would be removed, lest so trifling a matter might afford the greatest men in the world an occasion for dispute and discord.

When all these matters were fully considered, and a great tumult and uproar arose from the princes of the realm at so insolent a message, it is said that one of the ambassadors, as though adding sword to flame,[3] inquired: "From whom then does he have the empire, if not from our lord the pope?" Because of this remark, anger reached such a pitch that one of them, namely, Otto, count palatine of Bavaria (it was said), threatened the ambassador with his sword. But Frederick, using his authority to quell the tumult, commanded that the ambassadors, being granted safe-conduct, be led to their quarters and that early in the morning they should set forth on their way; he ordered also that they were not to pause in the territories of the bishops and abbots, but to return to the City by the direct road, turning neither to the right nor to the left. And so they returned without having accomplished their purpose, and what had been done by the emperor was published throughout the realm in the following letter [October 1157]:

11. "Whereas the Divine Sovereignty, from which is derived all power in heaven and on earth, has entrusted unto us, His anointed, the kingdom and the empire to rule over, and has ordained that the peace of the churches is to be maintained by the imperial arms, not without the greatest distress of heart are we compelled to complain to Your Benevolence that from the head of the Holy Church, on which Christ has set the imprint of his peace and love, there seem to be emanating causes of dissensions and evils, like a poison, by which, unless God avert it, we fear the body of the Church will be stained, its unity shattered, and a schism created between the temporal and spiritual realms.

[1] Rainald of Dassel (*c.*1120–1167), archbishop of Cologne and imperial chancellor.

[2] Throughout this document, "the City" refers to Rome.

[3] See Horace, *Satires* 2.3.276.

"For when we were recently at the diet in Besançon and were dealing with the honor of the empire and the security of the Church with all due solicitude, apostolic legates arrived asserting that they bore to Our Majesty such tidings that the honor of the empire should receive no small increase. After we had honorably received them on the first day of their arrival, and on the second, as is customary, had seated ourself with our princes to hear their tidings, they, as though inspired by the Mammon of unrighteousness,[1] by lofty pride, by arrogant disdain, by execrable haughtiness, presented a message in the form of a letter from the pope, the content of which was to the effect that we ought always to remember the fact that the lord pope had bestowed upon us the imperial crown and would not even regret it if Our Excellency had received greater benefits (*beneficia*) from him.

"This was the message of fatherly kindness, which was to foster the unity of Church and empire, which was to bind them together in the bonds of peace, which was to bring the hearts of its hearers to harmony with both and obedience to both! Certain it is that at that impious message, devoid of all truth, not only did Our Imperial Majesty conceive a righteous indignation, but all the princes who were present were filled with so great fury and wrath that they would undoubtedly have condemned those two wicked priests to death, had not our presence averted this.

"Moreover, because many copies of this letter were found in their possession, and blank parchments with seals affixed that were still to be written on at their discretion, whereby—as has been their practice hitherto—they were endeavoring to scatter the venom of their iniquity throughout the churches of the Teutonic realm, to denude the altars, to carry off the vessels of the house of God,[2] to strip crosses of their coverings, we obliged them to return to the City by the way they had come, lest an opportunity be afforded them of proceeding further.

"And since, through election by the princes, the kingdom and the empire are ours from God alone, Who at the time of the passion of His Son Christ subjected the world to dominion by the two swords,[3] and since the apostle Peter taught the world this doctrine: 'Fear God, honor the king,'[4] whosoever says that we received the imperial crown as a benefice (*pro beneficio*) from the lord pope contradicts the divine ordinance and the doctrine of Peter and is guilty of a lie. But because we have hitherto striven to snatch from the hand of the Egyptians[5] the honor and freedom of the churches, so long oppressed by the yoke of undeserved slavery, and are intent on preserving to them all their rights and dignities, we ask Your University[6] to grieve at so great an insult to us and to the empire, hoping that your unwavering loyalty will not permit the honor of the empire, which has stood, glorious and undiminished, from the founding of the City and the establishment of the Christian religion even down to your days, to be disparaged by so unheard-of a novelty, such presumptuous arrogance, knowing that—all ambiguity aside—we would prefer to encounter the risk of death rather than to endure in our time the reproach of so great a disorder."

12. Having dealt thus with this matter, Frederick turned his attention to ordering the affairs of the empire in the kingdom of Burgundy.

6.14 King and nobles: *Magna Carta* (1215). Original in Latin.

After King John's sound defeat by the king of France at the battle of Bouvines (1214), the barons of England, angry about losing their French possessions and chafing under the taxes

[1] Luke 16:9.

[2] Dan. 1:2. The "Teutonic realm" is Germany.

[3] Luke 22:38. Because Christ said of two swords, "It is enough," the passage was used as a justification for the equal power of the Church and the State.

[4] 1 Pet. 2:17.

[5] See Exod. 18:9; 1 Sam. 10:18.

[6] I.e., the pope as the Universal Pope.

and other indignities they had suffered at John's hands in his quest for revenues, rebelled. At Runnymede in 1215 they forced the king to give his assent to a charter that has come to be known as *Magna Carta*. In the version published below, the starred clauses indicate those that were not repeated when *Magna Carta* was reissued in 1225.

1. What were the enduring provisions of this document, and whom did they benefit?
2. Which provisions of *Magna Carta* affected women and children?

[Source: *English Historical Documents*, vol. 3: 1189–1327, ed. Harry Rothwell (London and New York: Routledge, 1975), pp. 316–24 (notes added).]

John, by the grace of God, king of England, lord of Ireland, duke of Normandy and Aquitaine, and count of Anjou, to the archbishops, bishops, abbots, earls, barons, justiciars,[1] foresters, sheriffs, stewards, servants, and to all his bailiffs and faithful subjects, greeting. Know that we, out of reverence for God and for the salvation of our soul and those of all our ancestors and heirs, for the honor of God and the exaltation of holy church, and for the reform of our realm, on the advice of our venerable fathers, Stephen, archbishop of Canterbury, primate of all England and cardinal of the holy Roman church, Henry archbishop of Dublin, William of London, Peter of Winchester, Jocelyn of Bath and Glastonbury, Hugh of Lincoln, ... [The names of numerous churchmen and barons follow.]

[1] In the first place have granted to God, and by this our present charter confirmed for us and our heirs forever that the English church shall be free, and shall have its rights undiminished and its liberties unimpaired; and it is our will that it be thus observed; which is evident from the fact that, before the quarrel between us and our barons began, we willingly and spontaneously granted and by our charter confirmed the freedom of elections which is reckoned most important and very essential to the English church, and obtained confirmation of it from the lord pope Innocent III,[2] which we will observe and we wish our heirs to observe it in good faith forever. We have also granted to all free men of our kingdom, for ourselves and our heirs forever, all the liberties written below, to be had and held by them and their heirs of us and our heirs.

[2] If any of our earls or barons or others holding of us in chief by knight service dies, and at his death his heir be of full age and owe relief[3] he shall have his inheritance on payment of the old relief, namely the heir or heirs of an earl £100 for a whole earl's barony, the heir or heirs of a baron £100 for a whole barony, the heir or heirs of a knight 100s, at most, for a whole knight's fee; and he who owes less shall give less according to the ancient usage of fiefs.

[3] If, however, the heir of any such be under age and a ward,[4] he shall have his inheritance when he comes of age without paying relief and without making fine.

[4] The guardian of the land of such an heir who is under age shall take from the land of the heir no more than reasonable revenues, reasonable customary dues and reasonable services, and that without destruction and waste of men or goods;[5] and if we commit the wardship of the land of any such to a sheriff, or to any other who is answerable to us for its revenues, and he destroys or wastes what he has wardship of, we will take compensation from him and the land shall be committed to two lawful and discreet men of that fief, who shall be answerable for the revenues to us or to him to whom we have assigned them; and if we give or sell to anyone the wardship of any such land and

[1] The justiciar was the king's chief minister, able to act in his name. There were two justiciars, one in England, the other in Ireland.

[2] Innocent III (1198–1216).

[3] "Relief" was the payment that the heir of a vassal made to the lord upon inheriting the fief.

[4] A "ward" is subject to a guardian; in the cases referred to here, the ward was the underage child of a deceased knightly tenant.

[5] The king had previously sold wardships (guardianships) to men who cut down the trees and otherwise exploited the property, leaving little for the wards when they came into their inheritance.

he causes destruction or waste therein, he shall lose that wardship, and it shall be transferred to two lawful and discreet men of that fief, who shall similarly be answerable to us as is aforesaid.

[5] Moreover, so long as he has the wardship of the land, the guardian shall keep in repair the houses, parks, preserves, ponds, mills and other things pertaining to the land out of the revenues from it; and he shall restore to the heir when he comes of age his land fully stocked with ploughs and the means of husbandry according to what the season of husbandry requires and the revenues of the land can reasonably bear.

[6] Heirs shall be married without disparagement,[1] yet so that before the marriage is contracted those nearest in blood to the heir shall have notice.

[7] A widow shall have her marriage portion and inheritance forthwith and without difficulty after the death of her husband; nor shall she pay anything to have her dower or her marriage portion or the inheritance which she and her husband held on the day of her husband's death; and she may remain in her husband's house for forty days after his death, within which time her dower shall be assigned to her.[2]

[8] No widow shall be forced to marry so long as she wishes to live without a husband provided that she gives security not to marry without our consent if she holds of us or without the consent of her lord of whom she holds, if she holds of another.[3]

[9] Neither we nor our bailiffs will seize for any debt any land or rent, so long as the chattels of the debtor are sufficient to repay the debt....

*[10] If anyone who has borrowed from the Jews any sum, great or small, dies before it is repaid, the debt shall not bear interest as long as the heir is under age, of whomsoever he holds; and if the debt falls into our hands, we will not take anything except the principal mentioned in the bond.

*[11] And if anyone dies indebted to the Jews, his wife shall have her dower and pay nothing of that debt; and if the dead man leaves children who are under age, they shall be provided with necessaries befitting the holding of the deceased; and the debt shall be paid out of the residue, reserving, however, service due to lords of the land; debts owing to others than Jews shall be dealt with in like manner.[4]

*[12] No scutage or aid shall be imposed in our kingdom unless by common counsel of our kingdom, except for ransoming our person, for making our eldest son a knight, and for once marrying our eldest daughter; and for these only a reasonable aid shall be levied.[5] Be it done in like manner concerning aids from the city of London.

[13] And the city of London shall have all its ancient liberties and free customs as well by land as by water. Furthermore, we will and grant that all other cities, boroughs, towns, and ports shall have all their liberties and free customs.[6]

*[14] And to obtain the common counsel of the kingdom about the assessing of an aid (except in the three cases aforesaid) or of a scutage, we will cause to be summoned the archbishops, bishops, abbots, earls and greater barons, individually by our letters—and, in addition, we will cause to be summoned generally through our sheriffs and bailiffs all those holding of us in chief—for a fixed date, namely, after the expiry of at least forty days, and

[1] The king had previously made money by forcing heirs to marry beneath them ("with disparagement"). In effect, he sold off diseased or disfigured widows and wards.

[2] The dower was the gift the husband gave his new wife, which remained her property upon his death.

[3] The king had previously been marrying widows to the highest bidder.

[4] The Jews were the property of the king, who shared in their gains. Limiting the amounts that Jews might charge also affected the king.

[5] Scutage was a money payment in lieu of military service, and it was much favored by the king, who could then hire warriors rather than make do with vassals who owed only forty days' service. By denying the king the right to demand scutages without their consent (here and in clause 14) the barons were in effect denying the king's right to an effective army. Aids were customary payments from a vassal to his lord, but the king had been requiring these aids much more frequently, and for many more occasions, than was traditional.

[6] For an example of such liberties see *Privileges for the Citizens of London* (above, p. 250).

to a fixed place; and in all letters of such summons we will specify the reason for the summons. And when the summons has thus been made, the business shall proceed on the day appointed, according to the counsel of those present, though not all have come who were summoned.

*[15] We will not in future grant any one the right to take an aid from his free men, except for ransoming his person, for making his eldest son a knight and for once marrying his eldest daughter, and for these only a reasonable aid shall be levied.

[16] No one shall be compelled to do greater service for a knight's fee or for any other free holding than is due from it.

[17] Common pleas shall not follow our court, but shall be held in some fixed place.[1]

[18] Recognitions of *novel disseisin*, of *mort d'ancester*, and of *darrein presentment*, shall not be held elsewhere than in the counties to which they relate,[2] and in this manner—we, or, if we should be out of the realm, our chief justiciar,[3] will send two justices through each county four times a year, who, with four knights of each county chosen by the county, shall hold the said assizes in the county and on the day and in the place of meeting of the county court....

[20] A free man shall not be amerced [fined] for a trivial offence except in accordance with the degree of the offence, and for a grave offence he shall be amerced in accordance with its gravity, yet saving his way of living;[4] and a merchant in the same way, saving his stock-in-trade; and a villein shall be amerced in the same way, saving his means of livelihood—if they have fallen into our mercy:[5] and none of the aforesaid amercements shall be imposed except by the oath of good men of the neighborhood.

[21] Earls and barons shall not be amerced except by their peers, and only in accordance with the degree of the offence.

[22] No clerk shall be amerced in respect of his lay holding except after the manner of the others aforesaid and not according to the amount of his ecclesiastical benefice.

[23] No vill or individual shall be compelled to make bridges at river banks, except those who from of old are legally bound to do so.[6]

[24] No sheriff, constable, coroners, or others of our bailiffs, shall hold pleas of our crown.[7]

*[25] All counties, hundreds, wapentakes and trithings[8] shall be at the old rents without any additional payment, except our demesne manors....

*[27] If any free man dies without leaving a will, his chattels [movable goods] shall be distributed by his nearest kinsfolk and friends under the supervision of the church, saving to everyone the debts which the deceased owed him.

[28] No constable or other bailiff of ours shall take anyone's corn [grain] or other chattels unless he pays on the spot in cash for them or can delay payment by arrangement with the seller.

---

[1] It was expensive to follow the king's court around from place to place. In John's day, the establishment of a permanent court at Westminster was in fact underway.

[2] *Novel disseisin*, *mort d'ancester*, and *darrein presentment* were the names of royal writs. By purchasing one of these, plaintiffs could bring disputes involving property into the royal courts, where they would be heard locally by the king's justices, who decided on the basis of the sworn testimony of twelve jurors.

[3] The king's justiciar was by this time the king's representative in all matters.

[4] "Saving his way of living," that is, allowing him and his dependents enough to live on.

[5] "Fallen into our mercy," that is, liable to our—the king's—fines. Amercements are fines.

[6] The king claimed the right to compel the local population to repair bridges so that royal hunts could take place. John had ordered the repair of numerous bridges in order to impose heavy fines on those who did not comply.

[7] I.e., all criminal trials were to be held under the auspices of the king's justices.

[8] "Hundreds, wapentakes and trithings" were subdivisions of the county. The rents were collected by the sheriff, who gave a fixed portion to the royal treasury and kept the rest for himself.

[29] No constable shall compel any knight to give money instead of castle-guard if he is willing to do the guard himself or through another good man, if for some good reason he cannot do it himself; and if we lead or send him on military service, he shall be excused guard in proportion to the time that because of us he has been on service.

[30] No sheriff, or bailiff of ours, or anyone else shall take the horses or carts of any free man for transport work save with the agreement of that freeman.

[31] Neither we nor our bailiffs will take, for castles or other works of ours, timber which is not ours, except with the agreement of him whose timber it is.

[32] We will not hold for more than a year and a day the lands of those convicted of felony, and then the lands shall be handed over to the lords of the fiefs.

[33] Henceforth all fish-weirs [traps] shall be cleared completely from the Thames and the Medway and throughout all England, except along the sea coast.

[34] The writ called *Praecipe* shall not in future be issued to anyone in respect of any holding whereby a free man may lose his court.[1]

[35] Let there be one measure for wine throughout our kingdom, and one measure for ale, and one measure for corn, namely "the London quarter"; and one width for cloths whether dyed, russet or halberget, namely two ells within the selvedges. Let it be the same with weights as with measures.

[36] Nothing shall be given or taken in future for the writ of inquisition of life or limbs: instead it shall be granted free of charge and not refused.[2] ...

[39] No free man shall be arrested or imprisoned or disseised or outlawed or exiled or in any way victimized, neither will we attack him or send anyone to attack him, except by the lawful judgment of his peers or by the law of the land.[3]

[40] To no one will we sell, to no one will we refuse or delay right or justice.

[41] All merchants shall be able to go out of and come into England safely and securely and stay and travel throughout England, as well by land as by water, for buying and selling by the ancient and right customs free from all evil tolls, except in time of war and if they are of the land that is at war with us. And if such are found in our land at the beginning of a war, they shall be attached,[4] without injury to their persons or goods, until we, or our chief justiciar, know how merchants of our land are treated who were found in the land at war with us when war broke out; and if ours are safe there, the others shall be safe in our land....

*[47] All forests that have been made forest in our time shall be immediately dis-afforested; and so be it done with river banks that have been made preserves[5] by us in our time.

*[48] All evil customs connected with forests and warrens, foresters and warreners, sheriffs and their officials, river-banks and their wardens shall immediately be inquired into in each county by twelve sworn knights of the same county who are to be chosen by good men of the same county, and within forty days of the completion of

[1] The royal writ *Praecipe* took a case out of local courts and put it under royal jurisdiction. The barons who demanded *Magna Carta* wanted to preserve their customary courts, which brought them money in fines.

[2] Anyone accused of homicide and subject to trial by combat could claim that his accuser had brought charges "out of spite and hate" and buy a "writ of inquisition of life or limbs" that would require a local jury to determine whether trial by combat was lawful. This clause made the writ free.

[3] This, the most famous clause of *Magna Carta*, was not a guarantee of trial by jury but was a privilege granted to all free men (a minority of the population, consisting of barons, knights [i.e., gentry] and some particularly substantial peasants who held free, rather than servile, land) that they be judged according to established procedures by members of their own class. To be "disseised" meant to be dispossessed of one's property.

[4] I.e., seized.

[5] The king had claimed the right to "afforest" whole districts, turning open land into forests, so that he might hunt there, and he had river banks enclosed so that he might catch the birds flying there.

the inquiry shall be utterly abolished by them so as never to be restored, provided that we, or our justiciar if we are not in England, know of it first....

*[51] As soon as peace is restored, we will remove from the kingdom all foreign knights, cross-bowmen, serjeants, and mercenaries, who have come with horses and arms to the detriment of the kingdom.

*[52] If anyone has been disseised [dispossessed] of or kept out of his lands, castles, franchises or his right by us without the legal judgment of his peers, we will immediately restore them to him: and if a dispute arises over this, then let it be decided by the judgment of the twenty-five barons who are mentioned below in the clause for securing the peace:[1] for all the things, however, which anyone has been disseised or kept out of without the lawful judgment of his peers by king Henry, our father, or by king Richard, our brother, which we have in our hand or are held by others, to whom we are bound to warrant them, we will have the usual period of respite of crusaders,[2] excepting those things about which a plea was started or an inquest made by our command before we took the cross; when however we return from our pilgrimage, or if by any chance we do not go on it, we will at once do full justice therein....

[54] No one shall be arrested or imprisoned upon the appeal of a woman for the death of anyone except her husband.[3] ...

*[56] If we have disseised or kept out Welshmen from lands or liberties or other things without the legal judgment of their peers in England or in Wales, they shall be immediately restored to them; and if a dispute arises over this, then let it be decided in the March[4] by the judgment of their peers—for holdings in England according to the law of England, for holdings in Wales according to the law of Wales, and for holdings in the March according to the law of the March. Welshmen shall do the same to us and ours....

*[59] We will act toward Alexander, king of the Scots, concerning the return of his sisters and hostages and concerning his franchises and his right in the same manner in which we act towards our other barons of England, unless it ought to be otherwise by the charters which we have from William his father, formerly king of the Scots, and this shall be determined by the judgment of his peers in our court.

[60] All these aforesaid customs and liberties which we have granted to be observed in our kingdom as far as it pertains to us towards our men, all of our kingdom, clerks as well as laymen, shall observe as far as it pertains to them towards their men.

*[61] Since, moreover, for God and the betterment of our kingdom and for the better allaying of the discord that has arisen between us and our barons we have granted all these things aforesaid, wishing them to enjoy the use of them unimpaired and unshaken forever, we give and grant them the under-written security, namely, that the barons shall choose any twenty-five barons of the kingdom they wish, who must with all their might observe, hold and cause to be observed, the peace and liberties which we have granted and confirmed to them by this present charter of ours, so that if we, or our justiciar, or our bailiffs or any one of our servants offend in any way against anyone or transgress any of the articles of the peace or the security and the offence be notified to four of the aforesaid twenty-five barons, those four barons shall come to us, or to our justiciar if we are out of the kingdom, and, laying the transgression before us, shall petition us to have that transgression corrected without delay. And if we do not correct the transgressions or if we are out of the kingdom, if our justiciar does not correct it, within forty days, reckoning from the time it was brought to our notice or to that of our justiciar if we were out of the kingdom, the aforesaid four barons shall refer that case to the rest of the twenty-five barons and those twenty-five barons together with the community of the whole land shall distrain and distress us in every way they can, namely, by seizing castles, lands, possessions, and in such other ways as they can, saving our person and

[1] See clause 61.

[2] The "respite for crusaders" was three years' immunity from all litigation and payment of debts.

[3] A woman could choose her own champion in a trial by combat, and thus she was thought to have an unfair advantage in bringing a charge.

[4] The March was the border region between England and Wales.

the persons of our queen and our children, until, in their opinion, amends have been made; and when amends have been made, they shall obey us as they did before. And let anyone in the land who wishes take an oath to obey the orders of the said twenty-five barons for the execution of all the aforesaid matters, and with them to distress us as much as he can, and we publicly and freely give anyone leave to take the oath who wishes to take it and we will never prohibit anyone from taking it. Indeed, all those in the land who are unwilling of themselves and of their own accord to take an oath to the twenty-five barons to help them to distrain and distress us, we will make them take the oath as aforesaid at our command. And if any of the twenty-five barons dies or leaves the country or is in any other way prevented from carrying out the things aforesaid, the rest of the aforesaid twenty-five barons shall choose as they think fit another one in his place, and he shall take the oath like the rest. In all matters the execution of which is committed to these twenty-five barons, if it should happen that these twenty-five are present yet disagree among themselves about anything, or if some of those summoned will not or cannot be present, that shall be held as fixed and established which the majority of those present ordained or commanded, exactly as if all the twenty-five had consented to it; and the said twenty-five shall swear that they will faithfully observe all the things aforesaid and will do all they can to get them observed. And we will procure nothing from anyone, either personally or through anyone else, whereby any of these concessions and liberties might be revoked or diminished; and if any such thing is procured, let it be void and null, and we will never use it either personally or through another.

*[62] And we have fully remitted and pardoned to everyone all the ill-will, indignation and rancor that have arisen between us and our men, clergy and laity, from the time of the quarrel. Furthermore, we have fully remitted to all, clergy and laity, and as far as pertains to us have completely forgiven, all trespasses occasioned by the same quarrel between Easter in the sixteenth year of our reign and the restoration of peace. And, besides, we have caused to be made for them letters testimonial patent of the lord Stephen archbishop of Canterbury, of the lord Henry archbishop of Dublin and of the aforementioned bishops and of master Pandulf about this security and the aforementioned concessions.

*[63] Wherefore we wish and firmly enjoin that the English church shall be free, and that the men in our kingdom shall have and hold all the aforesaid liberties, rights and concessions well and peacefully, freely and quietly, fully and completely, for themselves and their heirs from us and our heirs, in all matters and in all places for ever, as is aforesaid. An oath, moreover, has been taken, as well on our part as on the part of the barons, that all these things aforesaid shall be observed in good faith and without evil disposition. Witness the above-mentioned and many others. Given by our hand in the meadow which is called Runnymede between Windsor and Staines on the fifteenth day of June, in the seventeenth year of our reign.

NEW LITERARY FORMS

6.15 Byzantine romantic fiction: Niketas Eugenianos, *Drosilla and Charikles* (*c.*1156). Original in Greek.

Once popular in the Hellenistic world (323–30 BCE), romances were revived and transformed by poets of twelfth-century Byzantium. Before then, saints' lives had provided the grist for Byzantine story-telling, as in *The Life of Saint Philaretos* (above, p. 107). But in the wake of the Byzantine defeat at Manzikert and the conquest of most of Anatolia by Seljuk Turks, the multi-ethnic world of the Byzantines turned in on itself, becoming self-consciously "Greek." The poets of the new romances played on this new sensibility, self-consciously returning to classical literary traditions. But the issues they grappled with were very much of their own time, and they wrote for the amusement and pleasure of the Byzantine upper classes of their day. It is no surprise that Niketas, the author of *Drosilla and Charikles*, served as a tutor to a member of the ruling Comnenian family.

His poem begins with an attack by the barbarian "Parthians" (the name of a Persian dynasty that had died out in the third century) on "Barzon," a mythical city. Two lovers, the lovely Drosilla and the handsome Charikles, are made captives. Both lament their fate and long for one another. Charikles makes friends with a fellow-prisoner, Kleandros, who has also been separated from his own beloved. Soon, Chrysilla, the aged wife of the Parthian leader, falls madly in love with Charikles, while her son is equally smitten with Drosilla. Chrysilla's passion leads her to poison her husband, but the resulting power vacuum invites the Arabs to invade, taking Drosilla and Charikles among their captives. Traveling to Arabia with other prisoners in a wagon, Drosilla is dislodged by an overhanging tree limb and falls from a cliff into the sea. That night, Charikles hears of this and begins to lament, attracting the attention of the Arab ruler. Charikles claims that he has lost his "sister" Drosilla, and his sorrow so moves the ruler that he sets Charikles—together with his friend Kleandros—free to look for her. Meanwhile, having floated to shore, Drosilla finds her way to a village where an old woman, Maryllis, offers her food and shelter. In a dream, Drosilla learns that she must seek Charikles at a nearby inn, the "house" of Xenokrates. But when she arrives at the inn and asks for Charikles, the innkeeper's son, Kallidemos, immediately falls in love with her and pretends that Charikles is not there. While Drosilla bewails her false dream, Kallidemos woos her with long speeches. Old Maryllis supports his pleas, for Kallidemos is rich and a good catch. The passage below begins the next day.

1. What elements of this romance—so overtly "classical" in inspiration—are also motivated by Christian traditions and concerns?
2. What is the role of the natural world in the love scene in the Eighth Book?

[Source: Niketas Eugenianos, *Drosilla and Charikles*, in *Four Byzantine Novels*, trans. with intro. and notes Elizabeth Jeffreys (Liverpool: Liverpool University Press, 2012), pp. 432–45 (notes modified).]

Seventh Book

Already it was morning and saffron-hued day,
and lustrous light had poured everywhere over all creation
from the great translucent star
that rose from the ocean,
as learned poetry wisely puts it,[1]
and from the highest mountains it shed warmth even-handedly
over the peaks and densely shaded foothills
to produce fertile offspring and a joyous life.
Charikles too rose from sleep
and came out of Xenokrates' house,[2]
bringing with him his friend Kleandros.

Meanwhile the old woman had been trying to comfort
the girl who had been weeping since daybreak,
and said, "Come, child, tell me;
where do you come from and who is your father and what your city,
and who is this Charikles on whom you call and for whom you lament?
You mourn ignobly and weep senselessly,
for you have not accepted marriage with Kallidemos
who exceeds all the inhabitants here
in beauty and burgeons with gold.
You do not make a good choice, poverty-stricken stranger,
if you now consider that Kallidemos, a noble youth,
is not fit to be united with you."

[1] A nod to Homer's "rosy-fingered dawn" in *Iliad* 8.1.1, 19.1.

[2] The inn where he had been staying.

As Drosilla began to speak,
"Since you want to learn, mother, from me, the foreigner,
about what happened to me and to Charikles,"
Kleandros heard this and stopped in his tracks,
for the sound of Charikles' name checked him
as he was running ahead of Charikles himself,
and, "Charikles, give assurances of joy
to me, Kleandros, who shares your troubles,"
said he to Charikles, as he turned to him.
Charikles was astounded by these words,
he was amazed by the mere sound of them.
Then, clasping each others' hands,
they immediately burst into that abode
within which the kind-hearted old woman
was conversing sympathetically with Drosilla.
Then there was speech hovering between joy and tears,
clapping of hands, the reverberation of smacking kisses,
an immeasurable storm flooding from eyes,
cries of thankfulness to Semele's son,[1]
kind words from Charikles to the old woman
for her hospitality to Drosilla,
many thanks to Kleandros
from that best of maidens, Drosilla,
for his having shared Charikles' hardships.
Such was the hubbub among the four of them,
truly a mixture of joy and tears.

But Kallidemos was not unaware of these developments.
While he was contemplating frantically within himself
performing a murderous deed against Charikles,
a deed that was without a wound, that was not too gory,
so that he could achieve marriage with Drosilla,
he was unaware that he was preparing the noose for himself.
When he realized that Charikles was aware
of the girl's arrival in the village
before he had completed his projected plan,
emboldened by love-inspired madness
he embarked on an abduction more suited to a brigand.
For frequently love knows no shame.
So he planned in the desert-wastes of night
to fall unexpectedly on the young men,
having with him comrades of his own age,
in order to abduct the girl
—for he had prepared a vessel for their departure.
But instead of the flame which his desires had kindled,
the fire of a tertian fever gripped him;[2]
instead of a vessel sailing away,
it was a couch of suffering that claimed him;
instead of a speedy departure to another village,
he discovered protracted immobility for his limbs.

But Charikles could have no surfeit
of Drosilla's refreshing kisses;
for if anyone has an opportunity to kiss his beloved,
his heart is insatiable
and he easily soaks up the flow of pleasure;
his lip is no longer parched,
for it has attained sweetness without limits,
and pleasure is emptied into his being.
When they broke off from their kisses,
old Maryllis sobered up and said,
"Charikles, my child, you have come here now opportunely,
and you have found Drosilla who was rescued by the gods
and who till now has not stopped weeping
and uttering mournful laments for you;
since you have come opportunely—great is our gratitude to the gods
who have brought you to us safe and sound
and reunited you with your beloved—,
since you have come opportunely, child, it is now your opportunity to tell us
how the two of you came to your union,
what is your homeland, and what the origins of your passion,
and who is this foreigner Kleandros,
what was the reason for your separation
and for your finding each other once more.
The maiden was starting to tell me
and was about to explain all this,
yes, and to recount it all in sequence,

[1] The god who brought the two lovers together in the first place and who sent Drosilla her dream was Dionysios, son of Semele, a mortal, and the god Zeus. Dionysios was the god of wine, the grape-harvest, ecstasy, frenzy, madness, and drunkenness.

[2] A "tertian fever" was a fever that peaked every three days.

before you arrived at the house."

"Painfully and with groans
—how else?", said Kleandros, "but your suggestion is good."

"Since, oh golden fate, you have come under my roof,
guided by some god,
so that the girl who weeps night and day
might briefly pause in her wailings,
you could to us explain your arrival here
and Eros' mystic boldness
with great pleasure and joy.[1]
What is it that grieves Drosilla still,
or what is that troubles her, now that you, Charikles, have arrived?
For since she moaned when you were absent, shrieked,
cried bitterly, wailed grievously,
now that you are present and joy once instituted
holds sway, oh saviour gods,
the story should follow an appropriate path.
You would delight the girl even more
if you opened your sweet mouth
and she hearkened to its sound.
You will also encourage me to sympathize with troubles I understand,
from which till now she has suffered woefully."

"How indeed I would like first,
my dear Maryllis, to ask the girl,"
said Charikles, "by what means she was saved although on her own,
when she fell into the sea from the high mountain.
Indeed I am still somewhat bemused and wonder
whether I see Drosilla in a vision;
but since it is your wish, old mother, that we should tell
of our huge periods of suffering
in exchange for your hospitality,
listen; for how can we spurn
the cause of so much happiness
for me, Drosilla, and Kleandros, the foreigners?
Know then that our homeland is Phthia,
my mother is Krystale and my father Phrator,
Drosilla's parents are Myrtion and Hedypnoe.
While a holy festival was being celebrated
in honour of Dionysos, son of Semele and Zeus,
Drosilla came out beyond the gates of her home city
in the company of tender maidens;
I saw her and was overcome. You will not blame me, woman,
as I saw the vision of her countenance,
for in the great crowd that was gathering together then
none could be seen more beautiful than Drosilla.
Once overcome I addressed her and, addressing her, I begged her
to join with me in flight.
She consented, for she too was experiencing a strange reciprocal love.
We found a ship about to sail off
and, abandoning our parents and country,
we embarked together on the vessel.
But after we had sailed a little way in fair conditions,
we came unexpectedly upon men
who rejoice in banditry by sea,
whose clutches we escaped eventually and with difficulty,
and fled, taking refuge in a wood,
and we slipped into the city of Barzon in haste.
When we left there together while a great celebration
for Zeus was in progress,
we fell in with the Parthian expedition
as a new prey; and with necks bound
we were brought to their city.
There many circuits of days
we measured out with so many groans,
and we encountered the good Kleandros whom you see, woman,
who had been captured previously by the barbarian band
and was an excellent companion in slavery
—for we saw in prison against expectation
the life of slavery, alien lords,
and loves that were so ill fated.
Then for the third time we fell prisoner together,
to the Arabs when the Parthians were routed.
So, having become captives, we were led away
to traverse a path that was perpetually confined
by dense and overhanging woods
and we were in distress, each supporting the other,
with the just and reasonable fear

[1] Eros, god of love, is much praised and blamed in this poem.

that we might slip from the crags
and find our grave in the sea.
Which is what befell this maiden here,
whom I see living, O Zeus and all the gods.
So the ruler of the Arabs, lord Chagos,
finding me lamenting at night for the girl,
immediately set me free together with Kleandros here,
out of pity for our suffering.
So, having demanded all that is expedient for life
from the gods' providence,
we were freed from the burden of slavery's yoke.
At the twelfth dawn we approached
with difficulty the abode of Xenokrates,
and we were planning today
shortly to leave the village and hasten elsewhere
—for we have spent three circuits of days in Xenokrates' house
in respite from our ordeal—
had not a dream been sent from the gods,
or rather, not a dream but the appearance of
the fair-formed son of Zeus and Semele,
who restrained us, saying, 'Go no further
until you find Drosilla, whom you want to see alive
and who is weeping in the village.'

So now you have discovered, woman, all about us,
as you asked; but for the rest of the story,
I beg you to ask the maiden herself,
how—after being hurled into the sea—she managed
nonetheless to reach you here,
who have proved a second Hedypnoe to her."[1]

"As for me, Charikles, even if the malignant thread,"
said Drosilla, "of vengeful fate
always wishes to spin a grievous destiny,
yet the providence of the saviour god
which we have been fortunate to have
as our ally in our love—but do not cease, lord,
from protecting, as you wish, her who abandoned her country—
that providence always wishes to bring the best outcome.
That providence, when I fell—oh, the abominable branch
which caught my arm at the elbow
and threw me into the abyss from my perch—.
saved me when my breast and guts and elbows
were thoroughly battered on the rocks."
—And bending over the girl as she spoke,
Charikles with tears kissed
her red and white crystalline fingers.—
"Who placed in those hands which you now kiss and embrace
that tree trunk, and gave me
such a broad and substantial log
that swiftly brought me safe to land?
Oh many thanks, Dionysos, lord of the earth,
who saved me from many dangers
and bestowed on me a gift greater than any other.
He whom I placed among the dead I see among the living."

And embracing in the pause in her speech
like ivy clinging to an oak, they kissed each other gladly.
So difficult was their embrace to bring to an end
that it occurred to Maryllis
that the two had indeed become one body,
who in speech had become one soul.
Thus it is with every lover who is redolent with desire;
for when after a long time he sees her whom he desires,
he kisses her insatiably until his desire is assuaged.

As soon as Charikles had with difficulty sobered up, he said,
"O you who have endured so much that you cannot recount,
O longed-for light, O breath and heart,
how did you travel such a long path
and come to this village here?"

The girl replied once more, "He
who led me to the village was he
who had saved me from the ocean's watery wastes
and allows me now to look on a living Charikles."

At this Maryllis demonstrated her delight,
saying, "What a novel sight I see, strangers!
For I am an old woman and advanced in age,
and I have had experience of much good and evil,
but I have never known such desire,
nor have I seen such a handsome couple

[1] Hedypnoe is the mother of Drosilla, as the poem explains above in line 135.

coming to their union so pitiably and so young
from such unendurable mutual anguish.
That she, oh Zeus, a protected virgin
and yet many times forced into slavery,
should escape raving passions,
and that he who, before the barbarians' naked swords,
fell like summer grass
should be among the living and united with the girl,
after having previously been sundered from her,
you say this is the work of a god, and you say rightly,
chaste Drosilla. Let Kallidemos go hang.
Those whom a god has joined, who may separate?"[1]

These were her remarks, and she set up a table in their midst,[2]
saying, "I rejoice with you, strangers,
today. Keep me company,
and I will dance in honour of the god Dionysos
who has firmly united those who had suffered pitiably."

So they then busied themselves
and delightedly consumed food and drink,
and the old woman—for she was good-hearted—
gave herself over to the festivities and the drinking.
Then she got up from her seat
and, being already prepared for this,
took a napkin in both hands
and began a somewhat Bacchic dance,[3]
producing a small snuffling sound,
which initiated festivity and instigated mirth.
However, the constant gyrations quickly
tripped Maryllis up in her movements
and so the poor wretch fell over
with her legs in a tangle;
she promptly lifted her feet over her head
and pushed her head into the ground.
The symposiasts let out a huge guffaw.
Old Maryllis lay where she fell
and farted three times,
because she could not bear the pressure on her head.
She did not get up—the poor wretch
said she could not, and lying there
she held out her hands to the young men.
But Kleandros could not contain himself;
he collapsed with laughter and on his own
lay there half-dead, panting hard.
What about Charikles? Amidst the mirth,
thinking he had found an excellent opportunity,
he had bent over Drosilla's neck
to laugh at the good Maryllis,
and he could not get enough kisses,
with their lips glued together.
But Kleandros picked himself up and with difficulty
got the old woman upright again,
afraid, I think, after what had already happened,
that she might go one better and foul herself,
or batter her head as she lay there,
and as a reward for her hospitality
have this crushing headache.
But she sat with the young people and said,
"By the gods, my children, just look at me.
From the time that the good Chramos, Maryllis' son,
was buried—and that was eight years ago—
I have not laughed or danced;
I have this to thank you for.
They say that even an old man runs when fooling with lads."

"By your son," responded the young men,
"you have given us great pleasure, decorous Maryllis,
in many ways, including your food and drink.
And your dancing and skilful gyrations,
and the abundant movements of your feet,
and the speed of your subtle contrapuntal motions,
have delighted us more than food, more than drink,
more than the most luxurious banquet,
more than the most overflowing cup.
And you have done nothing strange, mother;
even if we were old men three times over,
we would not have been afraid of sharing your experience,

[1] See Matt. 19:6. Although Niketas was largely inspired by ancient Greek poetry, he also drew on the Bible, particularly this passage from Matthew and the Song of Songs.

[2] Permanent arrangements for dining were not the norm in Byzantine houses. Thus, Maryllis has to set up the table and chairs, and later she will have them taken away.

[3] "A Bacchic dance": Bacchus was the Roman name for Dionysios. In this comical scene, the old lady, Maryllis, starts a frenzied dance. The "symposiasts" at line 286 are the party-goers—here the hero, heroine, and their friend. The Byzantine sense of the ridiculous focused on bodily functions (like farting) and slapstick.

since the gods always grant what is agreeable."

The youths addressed these words to the old woman,
and with the table taken out of the way,
Kleandros lay down to sleep
while the old woman took herself off too.

Eighth Book

Then Charikles gave his hand to the maiden
and immediately went out with her into the garden
that was nearby. Advancing a little he looked quizzically
at the trees, the fruit, the medley of flowers,
a handsome sight that delighted the onlookers.
Then, seated beneath a myrtle tree,
they addressed themselves to conversation.
And said Charikles, "Who, my dear beloved,
is the Kallidemos whom the old woman mentioned in her cups?
Surely malignant fate has not permitted
some vicious bully and savage tyrant
to enjoy your beauty and marriage with you?
Surely no one has been able to quench the fire
which you have in the depth of your soul for Charikles?
O, O desired eye, conceal nothing,
for you speak to Charikles and not to a stranger."

"What do you mean? Be silent," responded
the maiden Drosilla to Charikles,
"Charikles, my husband. Yes, you alone are
my husband; this is no false saying.
Wit and judgment have deserted you
because of the lengthy troubles that have beset you,
for distress befuddles the mind too.
Indeed, father Zeus and the assembly of the gods,
if Drosilla had not kept her virginity until now,
the fact would have become apparent of its own accord.
What a word, excellent Charikles, my husband,
has escaped the barrier of your teeth!
I will explain to you, and may there stand as witness to my statement
Zeus' son, who the day before yesterday in my sleep
revealed to me as he stood beside me when I lay slumbering,
that you were sheltering in Xenokrates' house.
Obeying his command—for how could I not?—
and full of joy, I asked the old woman
if there was an innkeeper in the village.
When she indicated Xenokrates to me,
I followed her to his dwelling.
She was acquainted even before your maiden was
with Kallidemos, son of Xenokrates,
and she begged the young man to come to us,
so that she could find out about your arrival here.
For the two of us did not enter his abode,
and this is a demonstration of my decorous behaviour.
But would that I had entered the dwelling!
I would have found bliss more speedily,
and what abundance would I have possessed
when I recognized the magnificent treasure that is Charikles!
Kallidemos, whom I have just mentioned, promptly
when he saw us came out of his house
and by dreadful ill fortune begrudged me
your happy presence here
and denied, Charikles, knowledge of your name.
He stood close by me, from head to feet
he measured me and, gazing at me intently,
seemed to have lost his breath.
For if beauty is often capable of attracting
men past their prime,
how much more can it attract a youth in his prime?
What speeches he made in vain,
how many promises he recited,
it is impossible to recount, Charikles, even if I wanted to;
and how could I, since I paid not the slightest attention.
This one thing I know—and the old woman is witness to my suffering—
that when I heard the heart-rending denial
of your arrival—alas, alas, the envy—
my heart seemed to have been torn from me,
I was forced to vomit forth my soul,
I was spiritless, speechless, nothing but a statue,
I blamed, woe, the gods in their entirety,
shedding copious floods of warm tears,
lamenting bitterly for my true husband.
For whom? Alas, alas, for the handsome Charikles."

To this Charikles responded. "Thanks be to you,
O son of Zeus, greatest of the gods,
who removed the jealous inclination
which Kallidemos felt for Drosilla,

and who led Charikles
to the abode of old Maryllis.
For if Kallidemos had not begrudged us our passion,
he would not have undergone this disease sent from the gods."

And bending over her neck
and kissing her three times, he grasped her by the elbow
and asked her to give a womanly recompense,
saying, as he pointed with his finger, "You see the trees,
how many birds' nests with their nestlings there are in them;
there regularly the sparrows celebrate their marriages;
the tree is a bridal bower, the branch the bridal chamber,
which has its leaves as the bridal couch;
yes, the great bridal hymn is sung
by the winged creatures fluttering around the garden.
Grant me, Drosilla, marriage with you,
for which I have undergone a myriad pains,
for which I have endured flight, slavery, captivity,
for which I have shed groans and oceans of tears.
Oh loving bonds and interwoven arms
and entwined fingers and linked feet.
I know, I know, Ares, from what happened,
that not even you were inappropriately aggrieved
when you were caught by the iron chains, Hephaistos' wiles,[1]
as you slept blissfully with the sea-born one.
But, O dear one,[2] do not hinder me.
Eros, aid me by inspiring the maiden;
no one running on foot will escape the winged creature.[3]
O my light, warm my heart too;
ungracious beauty pleases but does not hold one,
like a hook without a barb.
Hera and the unwed Pallas, on seeing you,
said, 'We no longer strip as we did before;
one judgment from a shepherd is quite enough.'[4]
Would that I were a zephyr,[5] maiden,
and you, seeing me blowing mildly,
would bare your breast and take me in.
You, blessed Selene gleaming palely,
beam down, guide and illumine the stranger;
Endymion lit up your heart.[6]
Away with silver and brilliant gems
and gold that mocks hearts;
perdition on all those things, wealth, infinite happiness,
which was once pledged by Chrysilla;[7]
you are all these things to me, chaste maiden.
You pride yourself on your fair hair; away with the weight of gold;
you have a white complexion; farewell, the charm of pearls;
your embrace ornaments a neck,
a gleaming ruby is enfolded in your lips.
Marriage with you is not entirely without adornment;
nightingales sing as they flutter around in a circle,
swallows chorus in response.
All this is your bridal ode; grant me marriage.
The sparrow can make love, it can have a marriage;
but we who are in the throes of passions, can we not be united?"

He addressed many such remarks to the girl,
for every lover who gazes on his beloved
and pours out all his attention on her
thinks nothing of the rest of his life.
But although Drosilla held the handsome Charikles
and kissed the young man,
she welcomed him only with embraces
and the honeyed sweetness of kisses.

---

[1] In Homer, *Odyssey* 8.266–366, Hephaistos, the lame iron-working son of Zeus, cast a metal net over his wife Aphrodite, caught sleeping with Ares, god of war. Aphrodite (the Roman Venus) is the "sea-born one" in line 431.

[2] The "dear one" is Drosilla.

[3] Eros has wings.

[4] Pallas refers to Athena: the godesses Aphrodite, Hera, and Athena, competing for a golden apple said to be "for the fairest," submitted to the judgment of the shepherd prince Paris. His choice led to the Trojan war.

[5] A gentle breeze.

[6] Selene, the moon (and female) fell in love with the handsome Endymion.

[7] Chrysilla was the wife of the barbarian Parthian leader; she fell in love with Charikles.

For she said, "O Charikles, my heart,
you are not going to achieve union with Drosilla.
Do not struggle, do not force me, do not make pointless efforts;
it is not right for a girl who is chaste
to behave in an unseemly manner.
I love you; how could I not? For what reason?
I love Charikles and I desire him more than anything else,
but I will not betray my virgin state like a courtesan
without the consent of my kin, my mother and my father....

[The couple returns home and, accompanied by their families and friends, they are united in marriage by a priest of Dionysos.]

6.16 Love and propriety in al-Andalus: Anonymous, *The Tale of Bayad and Riyad* (early 13th cent.). Original in Arabic.

The story of Bayad and Riyad probably had a long history before it ended up in the version we have here. The manuscript in which it appears is richly illustrated and was probably produced for the pleasure and entertainment of an audience deeply interested in issues of both love and propriety. At the time, Iberia was divided among the fiercely Sunni Almohad caliphs at Seville, rapidly advancing Christian armies, and independent *taifa* rulers. With its engagement in themes of love, song, and even frivolity, *The Tale* was likely not a product of the official—and extremely conservative—Almohad court but, rather, of one of the Islamic princely enclaves that maintained themselves in spite of—and sometimes even in opposition to—the rulers at Seville.

The narrator and key figure in the tale is the Old Woman. She has welcomed into her home Bayad, the son of a merchant in Damascus. He has fallen in love with the beautiful Riyad, the slave-girl of a *hajib*—a vizier or minister. Bayad asks the Old Woman to help him woo Riyad. She does, taking him to a *majlis*—an elegant gathering full of company, wine, and song—hosted by the *hajib*'s daughter, who is known as "the Lady" or "the *Sayyida*." The Lady is Riyad's immediate mistress. The excerpt here begins at the *majlis* with Bayad publicly declaring his love for Riyad in many songs. As becomes clear, while it was generally acceptable—if a bit rash—for him to do that, it was not at all proper or courtly for Riyad to make her own feelings known.

1. Why was Bayad considered a man of letters (an *adib*) while Riyad, who also sang spontaneously, offended her mistress?
2. What was "courtly" and "proper" at a court in al-Andalus, and how did love figure in it?

[Source: Cynthia Robinson, *Medieval Andalusian Courtly Culture in the Mediterranean:* Hadith Bayad wa Riyad (London: Routledge, 2007), pp. 24–35 (notes modified).]

... Then we heard someone, a man, singing these verses, where it says:

What's wrong with the critic? May the fires of passion sear him!
And may ardent passion roast his heart and his sides,
And tomorrow may he long for union with a tyrannical beloved
Until tears run down his cheeks!
May he be wretched and each day meet with the torments
Of his lot, of his sickness and his laments.
May his heart be tortured and his entrails steadfast in their torment;
His eyes will well forth his forlorn tears.
May sleep flee him, and may he keep nightly vigil in the darkness,
With its stars, its planets and its suns
And, sleepless, may he not wrest any slumber from the night;
And when morning comes, may it bring him renewed pain!
May his days find him biting his fingernails because of his desire,
And may night reveal to you his humiliations!
And may this description of a heart made slave to love be enough for you:
Passion circumambulated it[1] and made pieces of it!

(And the Old Woman said:) And when Riyad heard that, she recognized the song, and it was as if she bowed her head in embarrassment, afraid that her Lady would find her out through it. She was on the point of climbing up into a tree, and her clothing got caught in its branches, and she was afraid that she might fall to the ground. The Lady called out to her, "By the rights I have over you, Riyad, why don't you come down from there?!" And then she called to another slave girl, "Help me and get Riyad down from there, and then look and see who that is singing!" The slave girl climbed up into the highest part of the tree, and when she had gotten a look and seen him, she climbed down and said, "Oh, my Lady, I saw him and by God he is a lovely guest—young, intelligent, handsome in appearance, and if you think that maybe he could stay with us until sunset, we could enjoy him on this day, for he is [here there is a lacuna, possibly of an entire page].

... And Bayad came down after me, then the Lady offered food, and said to me, "Give him something to eat, Oh, my Aunt!"[2] And he ate very elegantly, in an exemplary and noble manner. Then the food was cleared away, and she said to him, "Will you have something to drink?" and he said, "Yes, I'd be honored!" Then the Lady said to one of her slave girls named Tarub, "Oh, Tarub, take the lute and sing something for our guest!" She said, "Yes, I'd be honored to!" Then she took the lute and tuned it and jumped in and started to sing the one that goes like this:

The arrows of a glance split my entrails;
My patience was exhausted and my body was weakened.
And sleep fled me and love kept me awake,
With the pains of grief and sadness.
What ails me is terrible, and I see no one
Who might help me, in all of Creation.
Leave off your criticizing, then, I beg you, for God's sake!
For it is the greatest of torments to me!

(And the Old Woman said:) And when the slave girl had finished with her poem, she kissed the ground before Bayad, and placed the lute in his lap and said to him, "Do, my Lord, that which I know you to be capable of doing!" Bayad took the lute and jumped in and began to sing these verses, where it is said:

I forbade my eyelids to suffer through a vigil,
And I charged them to never allow me to know relief.
I cleaved ceaselessly to my insomnia, and then I said to my sighs,
"Move your burning embers to my breast!
And you, my liver, melt away; and you, oh, fire of my sighs,
Grow even bigger, so that love may better pounce!"
And loving bewitchment indeed wounded my heart
And ignited my desires and loosened their reins.

[1] Just as pilgrims to Mecca circumambulate the *ka'ba*.

[2] The Old Woman is narrating the story. Bayad has been led to the *majlis*; the Lady, Riyad's mistress, is offering food and asks the Old Woman, whom she calls "Aunt," to give some food to Bayad as well.

(And the Old Woman said:) He was silent for a second, and then he started singing these verses, where it says:

Passion and desire shot deadly arrows at me
And thus what there was of them already in my heart was doubled!
I came down then with the sickness that was in my heart,
And the key to it all was the glance of an eye!
How sad is the heart which is tormented and pained,
Agitated by day and lost, by night, in the sea of mortal anguish!
Before, I knew not what passion and its torments were,
But here I am now, in love, with passion for my companion.
I headed toward desire, exhausted by passion,
And because of that calamity my heart fell into disgrace!

(And the Old Woman said:) And when he had finished his poem, he breathed a sigh and began to sing these verses, where it says:

Because of passion, flaming fires of love burn in my chest,
And desire slips furtively to the furthest reaches of my heart.
Love holds absolute power over my soul,
A power that would make the hardest iron melt.
Nevertheless, I consent to make Love my intimate companion,
Even though it makes my entrails burn!
Its terrible power breaks me to pieces through desire,
Causing me pain and tears!

(And the Old Woman said:) And when his paroxysm had passed, he kissed the lute and he put in on the carpet, saying, "That's the extent of my knowledge of singing," and the *Sayyida* said to him, "It was beautiful—you offered us something truly marvelous ... true *badi*![1] It's no wonder your name is Bayad![2] Tell me something about yourself, whose son you are and all that ..."

"I am Bayad ibn Husain ibn Muhammad ibn Idris,[3] from the city of Damascus, in the *bilad al-sham*.[4] I was traveling with my father until we reached your country, because of business, and my father left to go and work. He left me alone to enjoy myself, and I was amusing myself greatly here at the shore of this river, consoling myself and delighting my eyes in the views and the scenery, when at some moment during the day, there appeared to me from among the trees a girl, and I have not been able to see her again since that day, since that moment."

And the *Sayyida* said, "Well, come here to us each Friday, because we are always here," and then she said, "Oh, Bayad, would you recognize the young girl with whom you spoke if you saw her?" and he said, "No, by your life." The *Sayyida* said to him, "Well, this is the one, my good sir!" and pointed to Riyad, Bayad looked at her, and said, "Without a doubt, this is the one." Then the *Sayyida* said to him, "By God, is she not beautiful?" And he said to her, "Oh, *Sayyida*, truly the moon and the stars shine because of her light!" and the *Sayyida* said to him, "By your merit, and the truth of your affection and the superiority of your origins and the acuteness of your intellect, keep secret all that you see here, and don't go making yourself all hoarse about it—do the right thing, and the proper thing!" Bayad said: "Oh, *Sayyida*, nothing at all will be said about this, for your servant is of the ones who accept wise counsel and allow themselves to be taught; I trust in God and in his Prophet to preserve me from such an error!"

(And the Old Woman said:) And then the *Sayyida* ordered one of her slave girls to sing, and she took up the lute and tuned it and immediately began to sing these verses where it says:

I sink my cheek to the dust because of passion,
Because I no longer wish to maintain my pride.
I agreed to suffer what I suffer now,
And because of this passion, I suffer a sea of sorrows!
But, although passion has tormented my body,
My heart will not turn away from it!

And when the slave girl finished her poem, the *Sayyida* said, "Very nice, may God bless you!" And then she said, "Oh, Surur![5] Sing something for us so that our guest

[1] Usually meaning "unprecedented, unique," *badi* in this context probably has to do with eloquence.

[2] *Bayad* can connote the possession of a fine character or a good reputation.

[3] These are all names of prophets, and at least two of them have *shi'ite* associations.

[4] Name for the region of the Islamic world (approx. modern Syria) where Damascus is located.

[5] Surur means happiness or gaiety.

does not change his idea of us!" And Bayad said to her, "By God, *Sayyida*, not at all!" and (And she [the Old Woman] said:) the slave girl took up the lute and tuned it and threw herself into singing these verses where it says:

I let go my reins and my downfall appeared!
I allowed my tears to run and prudence was washed away.
I became the companion of love, and I made it public—
I exchanged the sweetness of sleep for insomnia!
In my ignorance, I held right to the shudderings of love,
And the evils of passion wounded my heart.
My friend shot at me arrows from beneath her languid lids,
Which hit my heart, to humiliate me in my haughtiness!

(The Old Woman said:) And when Bayad heard the *Sayyida*'s command and Surur had finished her poem, he took up the lute and tuned it and began to sing these verses where it says:

Passion called me and I responded,
And it gave me to drink from a detestable cup.
It placed between my breast and my entrails
Sighs and fire, whose flames never go out.
How pitiable is the eye, when night comes—
It watches all night, though the tears never stop!
How pitiable is the body that suffers for so long—
And the eye that is tormented by the pains of love!

(The Old Woman said:) And when the poem was finished the *Sayyida* said, "Oh, Riyad, by my dominion over you, why don't you sing something touching for us? Because I love you, and I love to hear you sing." She said, "Yes, I'd be honored," and took up the lute and tuned it and threw herself into singing these verses where it says:

The eyelids' arrow aimed at that which is in the heart,
And the torrent of tears caused it humiliation and torment.
To him who is the victim of passion, it is shameful—
The water falling from those eyelids, when it runs and spills over!
To the one who is victim of the disdain that torments him,
He feels its burning, and the flames of desire burn in him—
During the night, he watches, and his soul is mad with love.
He suffers sorrow, anguish, torments and worries.
Oh, you two *lauzengiers*,[1] stop reproaching me, because the ruins
Of patience and the madness of love have covered over that which was.

(The *Sayyida* said:) "Very pretty—your song pleased us!" She said, "Yes," and then immediately began to sing the one that goes:

What's wrong with the love-mad one,
That his tears run thus down his cheeks?
In his entrails are anguish and lovelorn care,
And his chest holds sighs.
Because of this, the lover's day begins with torment,
And during the night sleep mistreats him.
His body is emaciated and fire is found in his heart—
Because of this he is wounded—destroyed!

(The Old Woman said:) And when Riyad finished her verses, Bayad said, "It's quite natural that his body becomes emaciated and that his heart is rent apart, and that he goes right ahead in his passion and doesn't turn back!" Upon hearing these words, Riyad smiled, sighed, and recited these verses:

My heart complained about my eyes and my eyes accused my heart—
The one is the slave of the others because of desire and love!
My eyes wounded my heart and he threw back at them a river of tears
That fall in drops, like pearls, down the cheek.
Giving away hidden passion and its torments,
He shouts, "Is there no one who will treat with justice one who loves as much as I?"

And when Riyad finished reciting her poem, Bayad grabbed the lute from her hands and tuned it and rashly began to sing these verses, where it says:

It is right that love be pleasant to the lover,
If the one who should treat him justly in love does so.

[1] *Lauzengier*: a "court gossip."

If not, then there is no sincerity, and the *lauzengier*
Cannot censure him, if he strays from the truth.
There is no love except in confidence and sincerity,
For the *lauzengier* is unjust in his deeds.
How sad is the lover whose heart melts
In his breast, and is exhausted by passion's sorrows.

And when Bayad finished his poem, Riyad said to him, "may God make miserable those who deceive and abandon and flee from and unjustly treat their beloveds, and do not fulfill wishes even though the possibility exists for union, or for finding a way to make one happen," and Bayad said, "Trustworthy ones are few."

Then the *Sayyida* said, "Oh, Bayad, you are a true poet and a proficient man of letters[1]—we only recite what we have learned or memorized and that which we know by heart, and that which we have heard from others, but you say that which you find within yourself, may God bless you and protect you, and reward you with the goodness of happiness, and all of us beg you to lend to us awhile your intellect and your being and your presence and your knowledge of poetry. We wish you to describe for us our garden,[2] for there is no doubt of your capacities—by God, we only ask you because now we're on friendly terms with you." Bayad said to her, "Yes, I'd be greatly honored!" and then he lowered his head thoughtfully for a while, and composed, saying:

Oh, you who are covered with myrtles and fresh
narcissus,
And with red and white roses, each mixed with the
other!
It seems that the color of the roses is the confusion of
a virgin,
With which love plays, kissing and biting.
It seems that the yellow paleness of the narcissus as it
grows
Is like coins minted of pure gold.
It seems that the eyes of the lily as they open
Are the eyes of a virgin just waking from sleep.
It seems that the pure cup is a star that has appeared
to us;
At times, it rises and at others it sets.
It seems that the cheeks of the drinkers, after the wine
has run down them,
Are embers burning on the ground.

(The Old Woman said:) And when he had finished his poem, the *Sayyida* said, "This is truly *adab*!" Then a young girl named Hawa[3] stood up and kissed the ground before the *Sayyida* and said, "Oh, *Sayyida*, might I be permitted to ask an improvisation from this elegant poet?" And the *Sayyida* said, "I fear that our guest might find that too much." Bayad, on hearing this, said, "Order her, Oh, *Sayyida*, to ask for whatever she wishes, for whoever stands up to improvise, and whoever requests improvisation before you has been elevated in rank by God himself," and the *Sayyida* said, "Well, then, ask the *adib*, I give you permission." The slave girl kissed the ground and said, "Oh, sir, praise our *Sayyida* and Honored Mistress for us!" Bayad said, "Yes, I'd be greatly honored!" and he improvised, saying:

Oh, you who achieved with beauty both discretion and
royalty,
To such an extent that you are higher than the stars
when they appear!
Her qualities are excellent upbringing and education,
nobility and splendor!
Her complexion is more beautiful than the bud of
the rose!
The force of her soul is higher than the constellations,
And she has no equal in all of humanity!
Whenever she appears among the virgins of haughty
breast,
The best of them envies her!

(The Old Woman said:) And the slave girls all stood up and kissed the ground before the *Sayyida* and before Bayad, on hearing those verses, and they said to him, "Well done, by God, that was beautiful, but there's one thing left that you must do ..." The *Sayyida* said, "What might that be? What is left for him to do, you playful ones?" And they said to her, "Without a doubt he must

[1] He is an *adib*, a practitioner of *adab*, the perfect courtier, the man of civility and good manners who could speak, versify, and sing with ease on any topic.

[2] The word used for "garden" here, *rawda*, is significant, for it differs from those used earlier to refer to the garden. *Rawda* comes from the same root from which Riyad's name is derived. The word alerts the reader to the fact that the garden and Riyad will be described in similar terms. (For Bayad's terms describing Riyad, see below.)

[3] *Hawa* means "passionate love."

describe for us our sister Riyad, to the point that such a thing is possible, since she is beyond description in her true essence." And Bayad said, "Let this be by your orders, Oh, *Sayyida*." The *Sayyida* said, "Yes," and Bayad said, "But what might I be able to say in this matter, Oh, *Sayyida*?" And the *Sayyida* said to him, "Do the best you can!" And Bayad said, "Truly I am not able; my *wasf* cannot reach the heights of her charms."[1] The *Sayyida* said, "Let it be to you something between a request ... and a DEMAND!" So Bayad said, "And if I were to describe her shyness, her splendor, her beauty, or her excellence, or her perfection, or her silence, or her charms, or her completeness, or her gaze, or her paleness, or her neck, or the redness of her cheeks or her silence, or her stature, or her tenderness, or her neck or her breasts or her hips or her coquettishness or her beauty or her elegance, for truly I am confused, and am really able to do nothing ... I can do nothing with this *wasf*." But the *Sayyida* said to him, "Oh, sir, no poetry could be more beautiful than that which you have just said in prose!" Bayad said to her, "Order me to say whatever I might, by means of my capabilities and the eloquence of my tongue, and my intellect; and with luck, my words will not offend." The *Sayyida* said to him, "Say whatever you wish; truly I have learned that you are not lacking in strength in what you say." Bayad responded, "Yes." And then he sighed deeply and composed, saying:

Oh, you of the languid glances, genteel and of soft skin,
  Moon of the night and more resplendent than the sun,
Delicate of complexion and slim!
  Her tunic of silk and her mantle are the very embodiment of beauty.
White skin, of a fresh, patent loveliness!
  She shoots a glance and her eyes wound all mortals.
In her cheeks is a most pleasant garden of beauty,
  And in her neck there is charm, how beautiful it is!
If she looked at the heart of an indifferent one, she would shoot into it
  Arrows of death, and he would never love another!
Or if she touched a hard stone, water would flow from it!
  Or if she spoke to a dead man, he would say to her, "Here I am!"
Beauty is resplendent in the rays which shine from her forehead.
  And from her wafts a breeze of camphor and musk.
She deprived me of the forces of my patience and I do not hope
  For remedy for my love in this world, if it come not from her.

(The Old Woman said:) And when he finished the somewhat troubled recitation of his poem, Riyad and the *Sayyida* and the slave girls said, "That was truly beautiful, by God, oh, Bayad; we loved it!" Bayad said, "By God, there is nothing further left concerning this matter!" But Riyad said, on hearing this, "Oh, 'Itab,[2] bring me the lute," and she took up the lute and tuned it and began rashly to sing these verses, where it says:

Truly the fires of love have burned in my heart
  And melted my body from the pains of love—
I was left without my soul, and I spent the night sleepless,
  Trying to contain the tears caused by the ardor of love.
There is an amorous passion in my soul, whose flames never go out,
  And my patience has betrayed me, as did my good sense.
Sorrows torment me with burning sighs,
  Together with a love lodged between my breast and my heart.
There is no one to help me in the torment of my love,
  Except tears that flow from my eyes like rain.
What consolation, what patience, can I expect for my passion,
  Since there is no remedy which can free my heart from the torment of love?
Why is he whom I love distant and far?
  And why is there no possibility of reunion? What ruse must the lover employ?

Then she began to cry, and her eyes filled with tears, and the entire *majlis* fell silent, right down to the last one. Then she got control of herself and swallowed her tears and impetuously began to recite these verses, where it says:

I am afflicted and put to the test—my eyes have been sickened
  By the friend whom I see close to me, but who does

[1] *Wasf* refers to descriptive verse, one of the four Arabic poetic forms. The other three were invective, boast, and elegy.

[2] 'Itab, another slave girl; the name means "threshold."

not come close.
I have reached the height of passion,
My sickness is my shroud, and my eyelids my mourning.
I find no patience; my soul melts with love.
I cannot hide it, for my tears are like torrential rain.
This passion—has taken hold of me and melted me,
So that my body is sick and has grown weak.
Before, I had a great aid in my patience, but now
It is broken, and I have neither patience nor aid,
And there is no one but tears and eyelids
To aid me against the torments of passion!

(The Old Woman said:) And when she finished her poem, the *Sayyida* said to her, "By God, in what have I not aided you, Oh, Riyad? And what have you ever asked of me which I have not given to you? By God, I have sought your favor and your pleasure, even to the point of uniting you here with your beloved, the two of you here together in one *majlis*, with me present! I even took pleasure in the matter, just as if nothing at all were going on, and I said to myself, may God judge, may his will be done, for only He knows the length of my time, or of hers. And my father has asked me to give you to him, but I couldn't bring myself to do that, but by God, now I'll sell you in the market for nothing!" Then she tore her gown and stood up, enraged, and behaved in a most violent manner. The slave girls fled toward the interior of the garden. But they couldn't find the way out, and they were afraid of betrayal and shame. Riyad came over to me and said, "My Lady, I have made a grave mistake, and now will come the rumors, and the disclosing [of the secrets]!"

(The Old Woman said:) And I said to her, "You did not do right by us ... you ruined the *majlis* and the loveliness of the day," then I took Bayad and examined him closely, and I took his lute with me and left with him, as though he were one of the slave girls. The guards didn't realize what had happened in the garden, and Riyad stayed there crying, sad and sorry for what she had done. We arrived home without further incident, and Bayad said, "Do you see, Oh, my Mother, what has been God's will, may the glory be his?" I said, "Yes, I see." And he said to me, "And what now?" and I said to him, "I don't know."

[The *Sayyida* admits that she herself, by "relaxing the norms" of the *majlis*, opened the door to Riyad's breach of propriety. Riyad cuts "herself off from everything except the terrible thirst of her passion." The two lovers exchange some letters (always in verse) and recite to themselves mournful poems of love about one another. Riyad and her mistress are reconciled. Although the final pages of the manuscript are missing, it seems that in the end the *Sayyida* organizes another *majlis* at which both Bayad and Riyad get together—and presumably behave properly!]

6.17 A troubadour love song: Bernart de Ventadorn, *When I see the lark* (*c.*1147–after 1172). Original in Old Occitan.

We know little about Bernart de Ventadorn, one of the most admired troubadours in his own time and ours. Among our few sources is a *vida*, or prose life, which says that he was the son of a baker in the castle of Ventadorn in the Limousin (the region around Limoges, in France); that he fell in love with the lord's wife; and that, disappointed, he later loved none other than Eleanor of Aquitaine, daughter of the duke of Aquitaine, wife of the king of France, Louis VII, and then of the king of England, Henry II. Unfortunately, the *vidas* are unreliable. However, on the basis of the *vida* and other scraps of information, Bernart's activity is usually dated about 1147 to after 1172, when he was mentioned in a poem along with other troubadours, including one who is known to have died in that year. Bernart may actually have been the son of the viscount of Ventadorn, but the point is debated.

This song became a classic in the troubadour repertory. Even Dante imitated it in *Paradiso*, Canto 20, verses 73–75:

> Like a lark that soars in the air
> First singing, and then falls silent, happy
> In the last sweetness that gives it satisfaction ...

1. How does the role of the natural world in this poem compare with its role in Niketas's romance, above, p. 336?
2. Why does the poet say he knows little about love?

[Source: William D. Paden, *An Introduction to Old Occitan* (New York: Modern Language Association, 1998), pp. 159–60. Translated and introduced by William D. Paden and Frances Freeman Paden.]

1
When I see the lark beat his wings
With joy in the rays of the sun
And forget himself and fall
In the warmth that fills his heart,
Oh, I feel so great an envy
Of one I see who's merry
I wonder that my heart
Does not melt with desire.

2
Oh, I thought I knew so much
About love, but how little I know!
I cannot stop loving her
Though I know she'll never love me.
She has stolen my heart and stolen herself
And me, myself, and all the world;
She stole herself and left me naught
But desire and a longing heart.

3
I despair of women.
I will never trust them again;
Just as I've always defended them,
I'll stop defending them now.
I see not a one of them gives me help
With the one who brings me to ruin,
So I fear and distrust them all,
For I know they all are the same.

4
Love is lost for certain,
And I never knew it at all;
If she who should have had the most
Has none, where shall I look?
Oh, it looks bad to whoever sees her,
That she lets this yearning wretch,
Who will get no good without her,
Die because she will not help.

5
I get no help with my lady
From God or mercy or right,
And it doesn't please her to love me,
So I'll not tell her my plight;
If she discards me and denies me,
She'll kill me, and dead, I'll answer;
If she abandons me, I will go away
A wretch in exile, I know not where.

6
I have not had power over my life
Or been myself since the time
She let me look into her eyes,
Into a mirror that gives delight.
Mirror, since I saw myself in you,
My sighs have caused my death;
I lost myself, as handsome Narcissus
Lost himself in the spring.[1]

[1] Narcissus appears in Ovid's *Metamorphoses* 3, where he flees the nymph Echo, comes to a pond, loses himself in admiration of his reflection, and turns into a flower nodding over the water.

7
My lady resembles a woman
In this, and for it I reproach her;
She does not want what she should,
And she does what she should not.
I have fallen into ill favor,
And behaved like the fool on the bridge;[1]
This happened to me, I don't know why,
Except that I climbed too high.

8
Tristan,[2] from me you'll hear no more,
For I go in despair, I know not where.
I'll stop my voice from singing
And hide from love and joy.

6.18 A trobairitz love song: La Comtessa de Dia, *I have been in heavy grief* (late 12th–early 13th cent.). Original in Old Occitan.

La Comtessa ("the countess") de Dia (today Die) was a trobairitz, or woman troubadour, who sang in the late twelfth century or the early thirteenth. We know of about two dozen trobairitz, most of them by only one song apiece, but we have four by her. Although she must have hailed from Die, just north of Provence, she has not been identified with confidence. She may have been called Comtessa as the daughter of a count; we do not know if she ever married.

1. How is the Comtessa de Dia's poem a kind of reply to Bernart's despair about women?
2. How are "love" and "power" related in this poem?

[Source: William D. Paden, *An Introduction to Old Occitan* (New York: Modern Language Association, 1998), pp. 58–59. Translated and introduced by William D. Paden and Frances Freeman Paden.]

1
I have been in heavy grief
For a knight that once was mine,
And I want it to be forever known
That I loved him too much.
I see now that I'm betrayed
For not giving him my love.
Bemused, I lie in bed awake;
Bemused, I dress and pass the day.

2
If only I could hold him
Naked in my arms one night!
He would feel ecstatic
Were I to be his pillow.
Since I desire him more
Than Floris did Blanchefleur,[3]
I give him my heart and my love,
My wit, my eyes, for as long as I live.

[1] According to a proverb, the fool does not dismount, but rides onto a narrow bridge, and so falls into the river.

[2] Tristan, the name of the lover of Isolde in contemporary romance, is here used as a poetic name for another troubadour who sang of love.

[3] In the French romance of *Floris and Blanchefleur* the young lovers are separated, reunited, and finally married. La Comtessa compares herself to the hero, not the heroine, as she does again with another romance in another song.

3
Splendid lover, charming and good,
When shall I hold you in my power?
If only I could lie with you one night
And give you a loving kiss!

Know that I'd like
To hold you as my husband,
As long as you'd promise
To do what I desired.

6.19 A political song from the south of France: Bertran de Born, *Half a sirventés I'll sing* (1190). Original in Old Occitan.

Bertran de Born, one of the greatest political poets among the troubadours, was the lord of Autafort, today Hautefort ("High-Strong"), a castle in Aquitaine that survives today, although it has been much altered. In papers of the French king Philip Augustus (r.1180–1223), Bertran's son was named last among the seventy wealthiest lords in France, and we have no reason to suppose the poet was less privileged. He was active as a poet from *c.*1180–1196, when he became a Cistercian monk. He may have died about 1215.

In this *sirventés*, or political song, Bertran joyfully anticipates violent conflict between Richard the Lion-Heart, king of England and duke of Aquitaine (r.1189–1199), and Alfonso VIII, king of Castile (r.1158–1214). War between them seemed to be imminent in June 1190. As a member of the landed aristocracy, Bertran regarded warfare as his natural occupation and a source of energizing value to society, regardless of any damages it might cause to unworthy usurers, burghers, and merchants.

1. What sorts of emotions does the poet celebrate and how do they relate to warfare?
2. Taking together this poem's attitude toward death with that in the poem of Bernart de Ventadorn (above, p. 350), how was death viewed in the twelfth century?

[Source: William D. Paden, Tilde Sankovitch, and Patricia H. Stäblein, *The Poems of the Troubadour Bertran de Born* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1986), pp. 399–401.Translated and introduced by William D. Paden and Frances Freeman Paden.]

1
Half a *sirventés* I'll sing about two kings:
Soon we shall see more knights
Following Alfonso, the king of Castile;
He is coming, I hear, and will want mercenaries.
But Richard will spend silver and gold
By bushels and barrels; he will be glad
To spend and give, and he'll spurn Alfonso's treaty–
He wants war more than a hawk wants quail!

2
If both kings are noble and brave,
Fields will soon be strewn with fragments
Of helmets and shields and saddles and swords,
And bodies split open, down to their breeches;
We shall see war-horses running wild,
And many a lance through chests and sides,
And joy and tears and grief and rejoicing.
The loss will be great, but the gain will be greater!

3
Trumpets, drums, standards and pennons
And ensigns and horses black and white
Soon we shall see, and the world will be good.
We'll take whatever the usurers have;
No driver of mules will travel in safety,
No burgher will go without fear,
Nor merchant coming from France.
He who happily takes will be rich!

4
But if the king comes, I trust in God
I'll be alive or cut to pieces;

5
If I am alive, it will be good luck,
And if I die it will be a release!

6.20 Fabliaux: *The Piece of Shit* and *The Ring That Controlled Erections* (13th cent.). Original in Old French.

Originating in northern France and performed by jongleurs (who were also acrobats, musicians, dancers, and jugglers), fabliaux were popular entertainment for all classes, though today only about 150 are extant in manuscripts. Short, humorous poems, fabliaux were meant to make people laugh; they highlighted human foibles and poked fun at peasants, women, and churchmen. In *The Piece of Shit* the peasant's wife beats her husband at his own crude game while in *The Ring that Controlled Erections*, written by Haiseau, who wrote three other short fabliaux in the mid 13th century, the bishop is a perfect fool. Although rough and bawdy, fabliaux were quite sophisticated poetically, each written in rhyming couplets. For example, *The Piece of Shit* begins:

> A cui que il soit lait ne bel,
> commencier vos voil .i. fablel,
> por ce qu'il m'est conté et dit
> que li fablel cort et petit...

Here *bel* rhymes with *fablel, dit* with *petit*; and—as with all fabliaux—all of the lines contain exactly eight syllables.

1. Who gets the brunt of the jokes in these fabliaux?
2. Do you suppose the original owner of the ring lost it or left it intentionally? Why?

[Source: *The Fabliaux*, trans. Nathaniel E. Dubin, intro. R. Howard Bloch (New York: Liveright, 2013), pp. 180–81, 183, 929, 931.]

The Piece of Shit

Though some may like it and some no,
I mean to tell a fabliau,
for I've heard many folks repeat
when fabliaux are short and sweet,
compared with long ones they're less dreary,
and so here goes now. Hear ye! Hear ye!

A peasant sat some time before
now on a cushion filled with straw,
scratching himself by the fireplace,

with his wife sitting in her place
across from him upon some thatch.
Right in the middle of a scratch
the peasant grabs his cock and balls
and, looking at his wife, he calls,
"Hey, woman! By your marriage vow,
if you can tell, try guessing now
just what I'm holding in my hand."
She wasn't too far from him, and
she's pretty uppity as well.
"May it roast in the fires of Hell!
You've grabbed your wiener, I surmise."
"Not so. I've got the sack that lies
beneath it," says the peasant, "yes sir.
You see you're not that good a guesser."

The woman unobtrusively
reaches beneath her rapidly
as if she has to scratch her ass,
and hanging there she finds a mass
about the size of a small bean,
and quickly, without being seen.
she pulls it all out by the hair
and tells her husband, "If I'd dare
to make a bet against you, sir,
I'd wager what I'm holding here
between my fingers, though you try
three times, you can't identify."
"Saint Martin help me, that's just fine!
I'll bet a pennyworth of wine."

The bet thus closed, they gave their word,
and his wife handed him the turd.
He takes and rubs it to and fro
between his fingers. "Is it dough?
To me it feels a little soft."
"Now by my head, you have got off
to a bad start," the woman calls
out loud to him, "for that is false.
Two guesses left!" The peasant racks
his brains: "By God, I bet it's wax!
I can't imagine where you found it."
"What you suppose is quite unfounded,"
(she takes him for a fool) she says.
"That only leaves you one last guess."
The peasant's so afraid he'll lose,
he puts it in his mouth and chews
and rolls it on his tongue a bit.

"God's holy blood! Why, this is shit!

Now I can tell!" the peasant said.
"You got it this time, by my head,
for shit it is, and that's for sure.
You get the wine; I'll bet no more
with you. Satan's made you a sage, or
else I'd have never lost our wager."

The Ring That Controlled Erections
by Haiseau

Haiseau has yet another thing
to tell. A man once owned a ring
which, when worn, by a magic spell
at once would make his manhood swell.
It happened one day that he rode
across a field where a stream flowed.
He got off his horse when he saw it,
strode to the bank and crouched before it,
and there he washed his hands and face.

He took the ring out in that place.
At length he got up and rode on,
but left the ring there on the lawn.

A bishop soon came riding by.
As soon as the stream caught his eye,
he dismounted and found the ring,
and, enthralled by its glittering,
he picked it up and put it on.
His virile member thereupon
began to stiffen in due course.
The bishop, now back on his horse,
was disconcerted to detect
his penis had grown quite erect
and this growth didn't seem to end it,
for it grew ever more distended
and so enlarged, it burst the stitches
at the seams of the bishop's britches.
Ashamed, the bishop shows his servants
what hard luck mortifies and burdens
him, but they've no way of construing
this mischief is all the ring's doing.

It grew till it dragged on the ground.
He sent his messengers around
to find someone who could advise
him how to bring it back to size.
The man who'd lost the ring got word
of what strange marvel had occurred,
and to the bishop straightaway
he went and asked how much he'd pay
him if he could effect a cure.
He said, unable to endure
such agony, "Just name your fee."

"Then I will ask you to agree
to give me those two rings you wear
and one hundred pounds as my share."

Without the rings on, his incessant
erection became detumescent.
Before the bishop paid his hundred
pounds to him, he was disencumbered,
and wasn't it a fair exchange
when each was glad to have the change?

6.21 Romance: Chrétien de Troyes, *Lancelot* (*c.*1177–1181). Original in Old French.

Like the fabliaux, medieval romances were written in the vernacular. Those by Chrétien de Troyes, who wrote under the patronage of Marie of Champagne, more or less mark the start of the genre. They were (and continue to be) celebrated for their art and originality. Most of Chrétien's poems, including *Lancelot*, drew on stories, apparently circulating orally, about King Arthur and his knights. They brought together (Chrétien boasted of "conjoining") heroic and marvelous adventures in poems of around 7,000 lines. The first couplet suggests the flavor of the whole:

> Puis que ma dame de Chanpaigne
> Vialt que romans a feire anpraigne,

Every two lines, each of eight syllables, form similarly rhyming couplets that serve, in aggregate, to both create and idealize norms of chivalric and courtly behavior. *Lancelot* celebrates fearless warriors motivated by love, anger, and shame; it advertises the fine manners of ladies and knights; it includes battles fought according to rules and regulated by codes of honor. Unlike some romances, however, *Lancelot* treats the cult of love with gentle satire, as in a scene where the hero, Lancelot, adores his lady's hair as if it were a holy relic. And unlike the plots of most romances, the hero's lady, who is also King Arthur's wife, gladly commits adultery with her lover.

1. What elements of the fabliaux are also true of Chrétien's *Lancelot*?
2. What elements of troubadour poetry are also true of Chrétien's *Lancelot?*

[Source: Chrétien de Troyes, *Lancelot: The Knight of the Cart*, trans. Burton Raffel (New Haven: Yale University Press, 1997), pp. 1–4, 7–13, 19–21, 25–30, 39–40, 47–48, 118–21, 132, 145–48 (notes added).]

Because my lady of Champagne[1]
Wants me to start a new
Romance, I'll gladly begin one,
For I'm completely her servant
In whatever she wants me to do,
And these are not flattering words.
Others, who like to wheedle
And coax, might start by saying
—And this, too, would not
Be flattery—that here was a princess
Who outshines every lady
Alive, as the winds of April
And May blow sweetest of all.
But I, by God, refuse
To spin sweet words about
My lady. Should I say: "This lady
Is worth her weight in queens,
One gem as good as silks
And onyx?" No, I won't,
But even if I don't, she is.
What I have to say is that this
Story has been better polished
By her work and wisdom than by mine.
As Chrétien begins this tale
Of Lancelot, the Knight
Of the Cart, he declares that the subject
And its meaning come from his lady.
She gave him the idea, and the story;
His words do the work of her matter.
And he writes that once, on Ascension
Day, King Arthur held court
With all the splendor he loved,
Being so wealthy a king.
And after dining, Arthur
Remained with his companions,
For the hall was full of barons,
And the queen[2] was there, and many
Other beautiful high-born
Ladies, exchanging elegant
Words in the finest French.
And Kay, who along with others
Had waited on table, ate
With his stewards. But as he sat down,
A singularly well-equipped knight[3]
Entered, armed to the teeth
And armored from head to foot.
Heavily armed as he was,
He walked straight to where
The king was seated among
His barons, but gave him no greeting,
Declaring: "Arthur, I hold
Many of your people captive—
Knights, ladies, girls—
But I didn't come here to tell you
I meant to let them go!
All I want you to know
Is that neither your wealth nor your strength
Is sufficient to get them back.
Understand me: you'll be sooner
Dead than able to do
A thing!" The king answered
That what he couldn't help
He could live with; but it did not make him
Happy. And then their visitor
Started to leave, but got
Only as far as the door
Before he turned, stopped,
And instead of descending the steps
Threw back this challenge: "King,
If you have a single knight
In this court of yours you can trust
To take your queen to the woods,
Where I'll be going when I'm finished
Here, then I'll agree
To let him have those prisoners
I've got in my dungeons, provided
He can defeat me in battle,
It being understood
That possession of your queen is the prize
For victory." Many people
In the palace heard him; the court
Was astonished. The news was brought
To Kay, as he sat at his food,
And he rose at once, left
The table, and came to the king....

[Kay extracts the promise from Arthur and his queen that any wish he makes will be granted. Kay then says:]

"I'll think myself a fortunate
Man, if you let me have it.
Your queen, who stands beside me,

[1] Countess Marie de Champagne (1145–1198), oldest daughter of King Louis VII (r.1137–1180) and Eleanor of Aquitaine (1122–1204).

[2] Guinevere, Arthur's queen and, as we shall see, Lancelot's great love.

[3] Méléagant, as Chrétien reveals later.

Will be placed under my protection,
And we'll ride off to the woods
In search of the knight and his challenge."
The king was upset, but his word
Had been given, and he could not revoke it,
No matter how angry and sorrowful
It made him (which was easy to see).
The queen, too, was deeply
Displeased, and the whole palace
Denounced Kay's pride and presumption
In making such a demand.
And then the king took
The queen by the hand, and said,
"Lady, it can't be helped;
You must go with Kay." And the steward
Said, "Just trust her to me;
There's nothing to be afraid of.
You can count on me, my lord:
I'll bring her back safe
And sound!" Arthur gave him
Her hand, and Kay led her
Out, the entire palace
Following, frowning as they went.
The steward was fully armed,
Of course; his horse stood
In the courtyard, waiting, and beside it
The sort of palfrey fit
For a queen to ride, patient,
Calm, not pulling at the bit.
Slowly, the queen approached,
And, sighing sadly, mounted,
Then spoke in a voice so soft
No one was meant to hear her:
"Oh, my love, if only
You knew, you'd never let me
Take a step in this man's
Care!" It was barely a whisper,
But Count Guinables, who stood
Close by, heard what she'd said.
As they rode toward the woods, everyone
Watching, knights and ladies,
Were as sad as if she were being
Buried. They never expected
To see her again, in this life.
And so the steward, impelled
By his pride, took her to the woods.
For all their sorrow, none of them
Thought to follow along,
Until Sir Gawain quietly
Said to the king, his uncle,
"My lord, I'm quite astonished:
This strikes me as terribly wrong.
If you'll take my advice, as long
As there's time, and they're still in sight,
Let's ride along behind them,
You and I and whoever
Joins us, I simply can't keep
Myself from following after:
It makes no sense not to,
At least until we know
What happens to the queen, and how well
Kay can take care of her."
"We'll go, good nephew," said the king.
"Yours is a politic wisdom.
And now that you've spoken up,
Tell them to bring out our horses
And have them saddled and bridled,
So all we need do is mount."
As soon as the horses were ordered,
They were led out and readied. The king,
Of course, was the first to mount,
And then my lord Gawain,
And after him the others.
Everyone wanted to come,
But each in his own way,
Some of them armed to the teeth,
Some of them neither armored
Nor carrying weapons. But Gawain
Was fully armed, and had ordered
Two of his squires to bring
A pair of battle horses.
And then, as they neared the forest,
They saw Kay's horse, which they knew
At once, come jogging out,
Riderless, and observed that both
Its reins had been broken. And as
It approached they saw, too,
That the stirrup-leather was spotted
With blood, and the back of the saddle
Had been broken to bits. It was hardly
A pleasant sight; they nodded
And shrugged, knowing what had happened.
My lord Gawain galloped
Far ahead of the others,
Until he saw a knight[1]
Come riding slowly toward him

[1] This, as we later learn, is Lancelot.

On a tired and heavy-footed
Horse, panting and drenched
With sweat. The knight greeted
My lord Gawain, and Gawain
Returned the greeting. And then,
Recognizing Gawain,
The knight stopped and said,
"My lord, I think you can see
What a sweat my horse is in;
He's no use at all, in this state.
I believe those horses over
There are yours: may I ask,
Please, that you do me the favor—
Which I'll gladly repay—of either
Letting me have, or lending me,
One, whichever you like?"
Said Gawain, "Take your pick:
The one you prefer is yours."
But the knight's need was so pressing
He made no attempt to choose
The better, or bigger, or faster,
But simply mounted the one
That happened to be closest, and galloped
Away at once. The horse
He left behind him fell dead,
So hard had he been ridden
That day, driven till he dropped.
Without losing a moment,
The knight dashed into
The forest, and Gawain followed
As fast as he could, until
He reached the foot of a hill.
Some distance further along
He found the horse the knight
Had taken, dead in the road,
And saw the signs of many
Mounted men, and broken
Shields and lances all around.
Clearly, there'd been a furious
Fight, involving a good many
Knights, and Gawain was upset
He'd had no part in the battle.
He didn't stop for long,
But rode rapidly ahead
Until, suddenly, he saw
The knight, alone and on foot,
In full armor, helmet
On his head, shield around his neck,
Sword at his side. And there
Was a cart—used, in those days,
As we use a pillory, now.
In any good-sized town
You'll find them by the thousand, but then
There was only one, and they used it
For every kind of criminal,
Exactly like the pillory
Today—murderers, thieves,
Those defeated in judicial
Combat, robbers who roamed
In the dark, and those who rode
The highways. Offenders were punished
By being set in the cart
And driven up and down
The town. Their reputations
Were lost, and the right to be present
At court; they lost all honor
And joy. Everyone knew
What the carts were for, and feared them;
They'd say, "If you see a cart
Coming your way, cross
Yourself, and pray to the Lord
On high, to keep you from evil."
The knight on foot, who had
No lance, came up behind
The cart and saw, seated
On the shaft, a dwarf, who like
A carter held a long whip
In his hands. And the knight said,
"Dwarf, in the name of God,
Tell me: have you seen my lady
The queen come by?" The dwarf
Low-born and disgusting, had no
Interest in telling the knight
Anything; "If you feel like taking
A ride in this cart of mine,
You might find out, by tomorrow,
What's happened to the queen." The cart
Rolled slowly on, not stopping
For even a moment; and the knight
Followed along behind
For several steps, not climbing
Right up. But his hesitant shame
Was wrong. Reason, which warred
With Love, warned him to take care;
It taught and advised him never
To attempt anything likely
To bring him shame or reproach.
Reason's rules come
From the mouth, not from the heart.
But Love, speaking from deep

In the heart, hurriedly ordered him
Into the cart. He listened
To Love, and quickly jumped in,
Putting all sense of shame
Aside, as Love had commanded....

[The knight (Lancelot) in the shameful cart and Sir Gawain on horseback arrive at a castle and stay the night. In the morning, the knight looks out a window and sees a funeral procession. He notices:]

The bier, preceded by a noble
Knight, leading at his left
Hand a beautiful lady.
The knight at the window knew her
At once: this was the queen,
And his eyes followed her along
The path, watching with passionate
Care, thrilled at the sight,
For as long as he could, Then,
When he wasn't able to see her,
His body went slack, he felt
He could let himself fall from the window,
And was halfway over the sill
When Gawain saw him and, from
Behind, pulled him back,
Saying, "Be calm, my lord:
In the name of God, don't even
Think of committing such folly!
How wrong to despise your life!"
"He's right to despise it," said the lady [of the castle].
"Do you think there's anyone who hasn't
Heard what happened? Of course
He'd rather be dead, now
That he's ridden in the cart. For him,
Death would be better than life,
For all life holds is shame,
Contempt, and misery." Both knights
Asked for their armor and weapons,
And made themselves ready. And the lady
Displayed a noble politeness:
Having jeered and mocked more
Than enough, now she gave
The knight, as a mark of affection
And respect, a horse and a spear.
And the knights left her like civilized
Men, well trained in courtesy,
Bowing and wishing her well,
Then riding away, following
After the procession they'd seen.
No one could exchange a word
With either knight, they galloped
So fast. They rode hard
Down the road the queen had taken,
But couldn't catch the funeral
Party, which had hurried off.
Leaving the fields, they crossed
A fence and found a well-kept
Road, which led them across
A forest. It was early morning
When they came to a crossroads and saw
A girl, whom they both greeted,
Asking, with careful courtesy,
If by any chance she knew,
And was able to tell them, where
The queen had been taken. She answered
Soberly, saying, "Offer
Me enough and, yes,
I can certainly tell you. I can set you
On the right road, and name you
The land they've gone to and the knight
Who's led them there. But you'll need
To be ready for immense hardships,
If you try to follow them! It takes
Pain and suffering to get there."
My lord Gawain replied,
"With God's good help, my lady,
I pledge myself and whatever
Strength I have to your service,
Whenever you need me, if only
You'll tell me the truth." The knight
Who'd ridden in the cart offered
More than all his strength,
Swearing, with all the force
And power that Love had given him,
That nothing would stand in his way
And, fearing nothing, he'd come
Whenever she called and do
Whatever she wanted done.
"You'll hear it all!" she cried,
And immediately began her tale:
"On my faith, lords, a most powerful
Knight, Méléagant,
Son of the king of Gorre,
Has taken the queen to that land
No one visits and ever
Returns, forced to remain
In exile, serving that lord."
Then the knight of the cart demanded:

"Where can we find that land,
Lady? How do we get there?"
She answered, "I'll certainly tell you.
But understand: you'll meet
With many obstacles, and many
Dangers; it won't be easy,
Without the king's permission.
His name is Bademaguz....

[The prescient lady is entirely correct. There are two routes to the queen and each is equally dangerous. Lancelot and Gawain agree to split up. Lancelot gets to a river crossing. A knight, accompanied by a lady, guards the ford. He cries out, forbidding Lancelot to continue, but Lancelot, lost in thoughts of love, hears nothing.]

The sentinel swore to make
Our knight pay: no shield would protect him,
Nor would the mail shirt he wore.
He spurred his horse to a gallop,
Then whipped it to its fastest pace,
And struck our knight so fiercely
That he stretched him out in the water
No one was allowed to cross.
His spear, too, fell
In the water, and the shield from around
His neck. But the water woke him:
Blinking, at best half-conscious,
Like someone just out of bed,
He jumped to his feet, astonished
To find himself where he was.
And then he saw the sentinel,
And shouted, "You! Why
Did you hit me? Explain yourself,
For I never knew you were there,
And I've done nothing to harm you."
"You did, by God," was the answer.
"Didn't you treat me like dirt
When I told you, three times over,
And as loud and clear as I could,
That you couldn't cross? You had
To hear me, at least the second
Time, or the third, but you rode
Right on, although I warned you
I'd strike if you entered that water."
But our knight immediately answered,
"As far as I'm concerned,
I never saw you and I never
Heard you! Maybe you did
Forbid me to cross. But I
Was lost in my thoughts. Believe me,
Just let me get my hands
On your bridle, and you'll regret it!"
"Oh, really?" the sentinel answered.
"And what will you do? Come over
Here and hang on my bridle,
If you're brave enough to try it.
All your boasting and threats
Aren't worth a fistful of ashes."
"There's nothing I'd like better,"
Our knight answered. "You'll see
Exactly what happens as soon as
I get my hands on you."
And then our knight waded
To the middle of the stream, and grasped
The sentinel's reins in his left
Hand, and seized his leg
With the right, pulling and twisting
So hard that the other cried out
In pain: he felt as if
His leg was about to be pulled
From his body, and begged our knight
To stop, saying, "Knight,
If you'd like to challenge me, man
To man, go get your horse,
And your shield, and your spear, and I'll gladly
Fight you." "By God, I won't
Let go," said our knight. "I'm afraid
You'll run away the minute
You're free." Deeply shamed,
The sentinel said, "Knight,
You can mount your horse in peace.
I promise I'll neither trick you
Nor run away. You've shamed me,
And now I'm angry." But our knight
Only replied, "Not
Till you've solemnly sworn you won't
Play tricks, or run, or ride
Toward me, or touch me, until
You see me mounted. I'd do you
A great favor, if I set you
Free, now that I've got you."
And so he swore, for he had to.
As soon as he had the sentinel's
Solemn word, our knight
Went to collect his shield
And spear, which had floated far
From the ford, carried by the swift
Current. Then he returned
And took possession of his horse.

And when he was back in the saddle
He hung the shield around
His neck, and set his spear
Against the saddle bow.
And then the knights ran
At one another as fast
As their horses could gallop. The sentinel
Struck the very first blow,
Striking so hard that his spear
Shattered. Then a blow from our knight
Drove him off his horse,
Deep down in the water.
And our knight leapt from his horse,
Sure he could drive in front of him
At least a hundred such enemies.
He drew his great steel sword
Just as the sentinel, leaping
Up, drew his, gleaming
Bright, and they fought once more,
Holding their shining shields
In front of them, protecting themselves,
For both sharp blades were busy,
Always moving, never
At rest. They beat at each other
Relentless, the fighting so furious
That our knight began to feel,
Deep in his heart, ashamed
To be at it so long, working
So hard to finish what he'd started,
And wondering if he'd ever succeed
In his mission, if a single knight
Could delay him. It seemed to him
That, just the day before,
If he'd met a hundred such knights
In a valley, he'd have beaten them all
By now; he was anxious, and worried,
Finding himself forced
To waste his time, and so many
Blows. He attacked the sentinel
So fiercely that he turned and ran,
Reluctantly giving up
Control of the ford. But our knight
Was not done: he chased the other
Down, and drove him to the ground
On all fours, swearing as he swung
His sword he'd soon regret
Tumbling a traveler in the stream
And interrupting his thoughts.
The girl who'd come with the sentinel
Heard these fearsome threats
And, much afraid, begged
Our knight not to kill him.
But the knight of the cart informed her
He couldn't show mercy to someone
Who'd made him suffer such shame.
So our knight came forward, sword
Raised, and the sentinel cried,
"For the sake of God, and for me,
Grant me the mercy I asked for!"
Our knight answered, "May God
Love me, I've never denied
Mercy to a man who did me
Wrong, if he asked in God's name.
I'll grant you mercy, this once,
For His sake. It's only right:
I can't refuse you, when you ask
Not in your own name, but His....

[Lancelot continues on his way until he meets a beautiful girl, who invites him to stay the night at her castle, but only if he will sleep with her. Unwilling, but seeing no alternative, he agrees. But when it is time for them to bed together, he finds her attacked by a rapist and other heavily armed men. Then, to keep his word, he fights them off, and the girl takes him by the hand.]

Holding his hand, she led him
Back to the great hall.
He followed along, unhappy.
A bed stood ready in the middle
Of the hall, beautifully made
With soft, flowing white sheets—
No flat straw mattress for them,
No rough and wrinkled blankets!
A coverlet of flowered
Silk, double thickness,
Had been spread on top, and the girl,
Still wearing her chemise,
Lay on it. How hard it was
For him, taking off
His shoes and undressing! He was sweating
Freely, but even suffering
As he was, he meant to honor
His pledge. Was he being forced?
Almost: he was forcing himself
To sleep with the girl; his promise
Called him, and bent his will.
He lay on the bed, slowly,
Carefully, like her still wearing
His shirt, so cautious as he stretched

Out on his back that no part
Of his body was touching hers.
Nor did he say a word—
As if he'd been a monk,
Forbidden to speak in his bed.
He stared at the ceiling, seeing
Neither her nor anything
Else. He could not pretend
Goodwill. And why? His heart
Had been captured by another woman,
And even a beautiful face
Cannot appeal to everyone.
The only heart our knight
Owned was no longer his
To command, having already
Been given away; there was nothing
Left. Love, which rules
All hearts, allows them only
One home. "All hearts?" No:
All that Love finds worthy,
Love's approval being worth
A great deal. And Love valued
Our knight higher than any,
Creating such pride in his heart
That I cannot blame him, and I will not,
For renouncing what Love denied him
And striving for the love Love meant him
To have. The girl could see
Her company caused him discomfort;
He'd gladly have let her go,
Clearly determined not
To touch her or seek her favor.
So she said, "With your permission,
My lord, I think I'll leave you,
And sleep in my own bed;
You'll be more at your ease, alone.
I can't believe you find me
Delightful, or ever will." ...

[In the morning Lancelot continues his journey along with the girl of the castle. He comes across a comb with a handful of the queen's hair caught in it. The girl of the castle asks for the comb.]

He was willing
To hand it over, but first
He gently removed the queen's
Hair, not breaking a single
Strand. Once a man
Has fallen in love with a woman
No one in all the world
Can lavish such wild adoration
Even on the objects she owns,
Touching them a hundred thousand
Times, caressing with his eyes,
His lips, his forehead, his face.
And all of it brings him happiness,
Fills him with the richest delight;
He presses it into his breast,
Slips it between his shirt
And his heart—worth more than a wagon-
Load of emeralds or diamonds,
Holy relics that free him
Of disease and infection: no powdered
Pearls and ground-up horn
And snail shells for him! No prayers
To Saints Martin and James: his faith
In her hair is complete, he needs
No more. And their real power?
You'd take me for a liar, and a fool,
If I told you the truth—if they offered him
Everything displayed at the Fair
Of Saint-Denis he wouldn't
Have exchanged the hairs he'd found
For the whole bursting lot of it.
And if you're still hunting
The truth, let me tell you that gold
Refined a hundred times,
And then again, would have seemed
To him, if you set that gold
Against a single strand
Of hair, darker than night
Compared to a summer's day....

[After many adventures, battles, and feats of strength and daring, Lancelot reaches the tower of courteous King Bademagu and his discourteous, wicked son Méléagant, who is holding the queen. Lancelot and Méléagant have a great battle, with the queen watching from a window. The battle rages, with Lancelot, badly wounded from a Sword Bridge that he had had to cross, weakening. Then he sees the queen.]

His powers and quickness had returned.
Love and his mortal hate—
Fiercer than any ever
Known—combined to make him
So fearsome that Méléagant
Was suddenly afraid,
For never in all his life

Had an enemy seemed so strong,
Or pressed and hurt him so badly
As this knight was doing. He tried
As hard as he could to keep him
At a distance, feinting, ducking,
Bobbing, badly hurt
Each time he was hit. Lancelot
Wasted no breath on threats,
Kept driving him toward the tower
And the queen, over and over
Coming as close as he could,
Forcing Méléagant back,
Each rime, barely a foot
Away from stepping out
Of her sight. So Lancelot led him
Up and down, this way
And that, always making him
Stop in front of his lady,
The queen, who'd set his heart
On fire, just knowing she was
Watching—a fiercely roaring,
Burning-hot flame impelling him
Straight at Méléagant
And pushing his helpless enemy
Forward and back like a cripple,
Tugging him along like a blind man
Or a beggar at the end of a rope.
The king saw his son
Utterly overwhelmed
And was filled with pity and compassion:
He had to help, if he could.
But the queen, he knew, was the only
Possible source of assistance,
So he turned to her and spoke:
"Lady, for as long as you've been
In my land you've had my love
And honor; I've served you well,
And always gladly, in every
Way I could. Let me
Ask you, now, to repay me.
And the gift I ask you to give me
Could only be granted out
Of the purest love. I can see
Quite well—there's not the slightest
Doubt—that my son has lost
This battle. And I speak to you, now,
Not on this score, but because
It's clear that Lancelot
Could easily kill him, if he chose to.
I hope you want that no more
Than I do—not that my son
Has treated you well—he hasn't—
But simply because I beg you
For your mercy. Let him live.
Let the final blow be withheld.
And thus you can tell me, if you choose,
How you value the honor
I've shown you." "Dear sir, if that's
What you want, I want it, too.
I certainly hate and loathe
Your son, for the best of reasons,
But you indeed have served me
So well that it pleases me
To please you by stopping the battle."
They had not whispered private
Words; both Lancelot
And Méléagant heard them.
Lovers are obedient men,
Cheerfully willing to do
Whatever the beloved, who holds
Their entire heart, desires.
Lancelot had no choice,
For if ever anyone loved
More truly than Pyramus[1]
It was him. Hearing her response,
As soon as the final word
Fell from her mouth, declaring,
"Dear sir, if you want the battle
Stopped, I want that, too,"
Nothing in the world could have made him
Fight, or even move,
No matter if it cost his life....

[The queen will not speak to Lancelot (because, as it turns out, he had hesitated before entering the cart), but when she hears false rumors that he is dead, she repents.]

Accusing herself of sinful
Behavior, of wicked acts
Directed at the man whose heart
Had always been hers, and still
Would be hers, were he still alive,
And knowing she'd been so cruel
Stole away her beauty.

[1] A famous lover celebrated by the Roman writer Ovid. Early in his career, Chrétien translated into French several works by Ovid.

The thought of such wickedness drained
And discolored her skin more
Than fasting or all-night vigils....

[Eventually the two are reconciled. The queen invites him to come to see her at night at her window covered with iron bars.]

Lancelot greeted her with gentle
Warmth, which she returned,
Immense longing gripping
Them both, each for the other.
No harsh or angry words
Passed between them: pressing
As close as they could, they were just
Able to clasp hand
To hand. How it hurt them,
Unable to be together,
And how they cursed those iron
Bars! But Lancelot assured her,
Should she be willing, he'd come
And join her: no iron bars
Could keep him out! The queen
Quickly replied, "Can't
You see? This iron's too thick
To bend, too strong to break.
Please: don't even attempt it!
How could you possibly pull
Away a single one?"
"Ah, don't worry, my lady!
No iron can keep me out.
Nothing can stop me from coming
To you, if you want me to come.
Just say the word, and consider it
As good as done. Your
Not wanting me in is the only
Obstacle that could keep me out,
The only barrier I can't
Break down." "I want you in,"
Said the queen. "That's not the question.
But let me quickly return
To bed, and lie there, and watch,
Because it won't be pleasant
Or at all amusing if my husband's
Steward, who's sleeping here,
Hears you at work, and wakes up.
Besides, it's better for me
To be back in bed, not standing
Here for everyone to see."
"Go back to bed, lady,
But have no fear: this
Is work I can do quietly.
These bars will come out quickly
And with hardly an effort, and no one
Will hear me or know what I've done."
The queen hurried back
To her bed, and the knight prepared
To pull the window apart.
Taking hold of the bars,
He bent them toward him until
They snapped away from their sockets.
But the iron edge was so sharp
It cut through his little
Finger, down to the bone,
And sliced deep in the knuckle
Of the finger next to it. He had no
Awareness of the blood running out,
Nor the wounds; he felt no pain,
His mind on other matters.
The window was high in the wall,
But Lancelot had no trouble
Climbing quickly through.
Finding Sir Kay asleep,
He approached the queen's bed,
Bowing in adoration
Before the holiest relic
He knew, and the queen reached out
Her arms and drew him down,
Holding him tight against
Her breast, making the knight
As welcome in her bed, and as happy,
As she possibly could, impelled
By the power of Love, and her own
Heart. It was Love that moved her,
And she loved him truly, but he
Loved her a hundred thousand
Times more, for if other hearts
Had escaped Love, his
Had not. His heart was so
Completely captured that the image
Of Love in all other hearts
Was a pale one. And the knight had
What he wanted, for the queen willingly
Gave him all the pleasures
Of herself, held him in her arms
As he was holding her.
It was so exceedingly sweet
And good—the kisses, the embraces—
That Lancelot knew a delight
So fine, so wondrous that no one

In the world had ever before
Known anything like it, so help me
God! And that's all I'm allowed
To tell you; I can say no more.
These pleasures I'm forbidden to report
Were the most wonderful known
The most delightful. That night,
And all night long, Lancelot
Experienced incredible joy.
But the dawn came, against
His will, and he had to leave.

DEVELOPMENTS IN RELIGIOUS SENSIBILITIES

6.22 Disciplining and purifying Christendom: *Decrees of Lateran IV* (1215). Original in Latin.

Called by Pope Innocent III (1198–1216), the Fourth Lateran Council was a turning point in the history of the Church. It codified many doctrines, policies, and practices that had hitherto been informal, local, or fuzzy. It meant to purify Christendom of the contaminating presence of heretics and Jews while determining the religious behavior and beliefs of those within the fold.

1. In what ways did the Fourth Lateran Council continue the Church reform movement begun in the eleventh century?
2. In what ways did it represent something new?

[Source: *Decrees of the Ecumenical Councils*, ed. Norman P. Tanner, vol. 1: *Nicaea I to Lateran V* (London and Washington, DC: Sheed & Ward and Georgetown University Press, 1990), pp. 230–31, 233–36, 245, 257–58, 265–67 (notes modified).]

Constitutions

1. ON THE CATHOLIC FAITH

We firmly believe and simply confess that there is only one true God, eternal and immeasurable, almighty, unchangeable, incomprehensible and ineffable, Father, Son and holy Spirit, three persons but one absolutely simple essence, substance or nature. The Father is from none, the Son from the Father alone, and the holy Spirit from both equally, eternally without beginning or end; the Father generating, the Son being born, and the holy Spirit proceeding; consubstantial and coequal, co-omnipotent and coeternal; one principle of all things, creator of all things invisible and visible, spiritual and corporeal; who by his almighty power at the beginning of time created from nothing both spiritual and corporeal creatures, that is to say angelic and earthly, and then created human beings composed as it were of both spirit and body in common. The devil and other demons were created by God naturally good, but they became evil by their own doing. Man, however, sinned at the prompting of the devil.

This holy Trinity, which is undivided according to its common essence but distinct according to the properties of its persons, gave the teaching of salvation to the human race through Moses and the holy prophets and his other servants, according to the most appropriate disposition of the times. Finally the only-begotten Son of God, Jesus Christ, who became incarnate by the action of the whole Trinity in common and was conceived from the ever virgin Mary through the cooperation of the holy Spirit, having become true man, composed of a rational soul and human flesh, one person in two natures, showed more clearly the way of life. Although he is immortal and unable to suffer according to his divinity, he was made capable of suffering and dying according to his humanity.

Indeed, having suffered and died on the wood of the cross for the salvation of the human race, he descended to the underworld, rose from the dead and ascended into heaven. He descended in the soul, rose in the flesh, and ascended in both. He will come at the end of time to judge the living and the dead, to render to every person according to his works, both to the reprobate and to the elect. All of them will rise with their own bodies, which they now wear, so as to receive according to their desserts, whether these be good or bad; for the latter perpetual punishment with the devil, for the former eternal glory with Christ.

There is indeed one universal church of the faithful, outside of which nobody at all is saved, in which Jesus Christ is both priest and sacrifice. His body and blood are truly contained in the sacrament of the altar under the forms of bread and wine, the bread and wine having been changed in substance, by God's power, into his body and blood, so that in order to achieve this mystery of unity we receive from God what he received from us. Nobody can effect this sacrament except a priest who has been properly ordained according to the church's keys, which Jesus Christ himself gave to the apostles and their successors. But the sacrament of baptism is consecrated in water at the invocation of the undivided Trinity—namely Father, Son and holy Spirit—and brings salvation to both children and adults when it is correctly carried out by anyone in the form laid down by the church. If someone falls into sin after having received baptism, he or she can always be restored through true penitence. For not only virgins and the continent but also married persons find favor with God by right faith and good actions and deserve to attain to eternal blessedness....

3. ON HERETICS

We excommunicate and anathematize every heresy raising itself up against this holy, orthodox and catholic faith which we have expounded above. We condemn all heretics, whatever names they may go under. They have different faces indeed but their tails are tied together inasmuch as they are alike in their pride. Let those condemned be handed over to the secular authorities present, or to their bailiffs, for due punishment. Clerics are first to be degraded from their orders. The goods of the condemned are to be confiscated, if they are lay persons, and if clerics they are to be applied to the churches from which they received their stipends. Those who are only found suspect of heresy are to be struck with the sword of anathema, unless they prove their innocence by an appropriate purgation, having regard to the reasons for suspicion and the character of the person. Let such persons be avoided by all until they have made adequate satisfaction. If they persist in the excommunication for a year, they are to be condemned as heretics. Let secular authorities, whatever offices they may be discharging, be advised and urged and if necessary be compelled by ecclesiastical censure, if they wish to be reputed and held to be faithful, to take publicly an oath for the defense of the faith to the effect that they will seek, in so far as they can, to expel from the lands subject to their jurisdiction all heretics designated by the church in good faith. Thus whenever anyone is promoted to spiritual or temporal authority, he shall be obliged to confirm this article with an oath. If however a temporal lord, required and instructed by the church, neglects to cleanse his territory of this heretical filth, he shall be bound with the bond of excommunication by the metropolitan and other bishops of the province. If he refuses to give satisfaction within a year, this shall be reported to the supreme pontiff so that he may then declare his vassals absolved from their fealty to him and make the land available for occupation by Catholics so that these may, after they have expelled the heretics, possess it unopposed and preserve it in the purity of the faith—saving the right of the suzerain [ruler] provided that he makes no difficulty in the matter and puts no impediment in the way. The same law is to be observed no less as regards those who do not have a suzerain.

Catholics who take the cross and gird themselves up for the expulsion of heretics shall enjoy the same indulgence, and be strengthened by the same holy privilege, as is granted to those who go to the aid of the holy Land. Moreover, we determine to subject to excommunication believers who receive, defend or support heretics. We strictly ordain that if any such person, after he has been designated as excommunicated, refuses to render satisfaction within a year, then by the law itself he shall be branded as infamous and not be admitted to public offices or councils or to elect others to the same or to give testimony. He shall be intestable, that is he shall not have the freedom to make a will, nor shall he succeed to an inheritance. Moreover nobody shall be compelled to answer to him on any business whatever, but he may be compelled to answer to them. If he is a judge, sentences pronounced by him shall have no force and cases may not be brought before him; if an advocate, he may not be allowed to defend anyone; if a notary, documents drawn up by him shall be worthless and condemned along with their condemned author; and in similar matters we order the same to be observed. If however he is a cleric, let him be deposed from every office and benefice, so that

the greater the fault the greater be the punishment. If any refuse to avoid such persons after they have been pointed out by the church, let them be punished with the sentence of excommunication until they make suitable satisfaction. Clerics should not, of course, give the sacraments of the church to such pestilent people nor give them a Christian burial nor accept alms or offerings from them; if they do, let them be deprived of their office and not restored to it without a special indult [privilege] of the apostolic see. Similarly with regulars,[1] let them be punished with losing their privileges in the diocese in which they presume to commit such excesses.

There are some who "holding to the form of religion but denying its power" (as the Apostle says),[2] claim for themselves the authority to preach, whereas the same Apostle says, "How shall they preach unless they are sent?"[3] Let therefore all those who have been forbidden or not sent to preach, and yet dare publicly or privately to usurp the office of preaching without having received the authority of the apostolic see or the catholic bishop of the place, be bound with the bond of excommunication and, unless they repent very quickly, be punished by another suitable penalty. We add further that each archbishop or bishop, either in person or through his archdeacon or through suitable honest persons, should visit twice or at least once in the year any parish of his in which heretics are said to live. There he should compel three or more men of good repute, or even if it seems expedient the whole neighborhood, to swear that if anyone knows of heretics there or of any persons who hold secret conventicles or who differ in their life and habits from the normal way of living of the faithful, then he will take care to point them out to the bishop. The bishop himself should summon the accused to his presence, and they should be punished canonically [according to canon law] if they are unable to clear themselves of the charge or if after compurgation[4] they relapse into their former errors of faith. If however any of them with damnable obstinacy refuse to honor an oath and so will not take it, let them by this very fact be regarded as heretics. We therefore will and command and, in virtue of obedience, strictly command that bishops see carefully to the effective execution of these things throughout their dioceses, if they wish to avoid canonical penalties. If any bishop is negligent or remiss in cleansing his diocese of the ferment of heresy, then when this shows itself by unmistakable signs he shall be deposed from his office as bishop and there shall be put in his place a suitable person who both wishes and is able to overthrow the evil of heresy.

4. ON THE PRIDE OF GREEKS TOWARDS LATINS

Although we would wish to cherish and honor the Greeks who in our days are returning to the obedience of the apostolic see, by preserving their customs and rites as much as we can in the Lord, nevertheless we neither want nor ought to defer to them in matters which bring danger to souls and detract from the church's honor. For, after the Greek church together with certain associates and supporters withdrew from the obedience of the apostolic see, the Greeks began to detest the Latins so much that, among other wicked things which they committed out of contempt for them, when Latin priests celebrated on their altars they would not offer sacrifice on them until they had washed them, as if the altars had been defiled thereby. The Greeks even had the temerity to rebaptize those baptized by the Latins; and some, as we are told, still do not fear to do this. Wishing therefore to remove such a great scandal from God's church, we strictly order, on the advice of this sacred council, that henceforth they do not presume to do such things but rather conform themselves like obedient sons to the holy Roman church, their mother, so that there may be "one flock and one shepherd."[5] If anyone however does dare to do such a thing, let him be struck with the sword of excommunication and be deprived of every ecclesiastical office and benefice....

21. ON CONFESSION BEING MADE, AND NOT REVEALED BY THE PRIEST, AND ON COMMUNICATING AT LEAST AT EASTER

All the faithful of either sex, after they have reached the age of discernment, should individually confess all their sins in a faithful manner to their own priest at least once a year, and let them take care to do what they can to perform the penance imposed on them. Let them reverently receive the sacrament of the Eucharist at least at Easter unless they think, for a good reason and on the advice of their own priest, that they should abstain from receiving

[1] I.e., monks.

[2] 2 Tim 3:5.

[3] Rom. 10:15.

[4] A procedure whereby witnesses swear to the innocence of the accused.

[5] John 10:16.

it for a time. Otherwise they shall be barred from entering a church during their lifetime and they shall be denied a Christian burial at death. Let this salutary decree be frequently published in churches, so that nobody may find the pretense of an excuse in the blindness of ignorance. If any persons wish, for good reasons, to confess their sins to another priest let them first ask and obtain the permission of their own priest; for otherwise the other priest will not have the power to absolve or to bind them.[1] The priest shall be discerning and prudent, so that like a skilled doctor he may pour wine and oil[2] over the wounds of the injured one. Let him carefully inquire about the circumstances of both the sinner and the sin, so that he may prudently discern what sort of advice he ought to give and what remedy to apply, using various means to heal the sick person. Let him take the utmost care, however, not to betray the sinner at all by word or sign or in any other way. If the priest needs wise advice, let him seek it cautiously without any mention of the person concerned. For if anyone presumes to reveal a sin disclosed to him in confession, we decree that he is not only to be deposed from his priestly office but also to be confined to a strict monastery to do perpetual penance....

50. ON THE RESTRICTION OF PROHIBITIONS TO MATRIMONY

It should not be judged reprehensible if human decrees are sometimes changed according to changing circumstances, especially when urgent necessity or evident advantage demands it, since God himself changed in the New Testament some of the things which he had commanded in the Old Testament. Since the prohibitions against contracting marriage in the second and third degree of affinity, and against uniting the offspring of a second marriage with the kindred of the first husband, often lead to difficulty and sometimes endanger souls, we therefore, in order that when the prohibition ceases the effect may also cease, revoke with the approval of this sacred council the constitutions published on this subject[3] and we decree, by this present constitution, that henceforth contracting parties connected in these ways may freely be joined together. Moreover the prohibition against marriage shall not in future go beyond the fourth degree of consanguinity and of affinity, since the prohibition cannot now generally be observed to further degrees without grave harm. The number four agrees well with the prohibition concerning bodily union about which the Apostle says, that "the husband does not rule over his body, but the wife does; and the wife does not rule over her body, but the husband does";[4] for there are four humors in the body, which is composed of the four elements. Although the prohibition of marriage is now restricted to the fourth degree, we wish the prohibition to be perpetual, notwithstanding earlier decrees on this subject issued either by others or by us. If any persons dare to marry contrary to this prohibition, they shall not be protected by length of years, since the passage of time does not diminish sin but increases it, and the longer that faults hold the unfortunate soul in bondage the graver they are.

51. ON THE PUNISHMENT OF THOSE WHO CONTRACT CLANDESTINE MARRIAGES

Since the prohibition against marriage in the three remotest degrees has been revoked, we wish it to be strictly observed in the other degrees. Following in the footsteps of our predecessors, we altogether forbid clandestine marriages and we forbid any priest to presume to be present at such a marriage. Extending the special custom of certain regions to other regions generally, we decree that when marriages are to be contracted they shall be publicly announced in the churches by priests, with a suitable time being fixed beforehand within which whoever wishes and is able to may adduce a lawful impediment. The priests themselves shall also investigate whether there is any impediment. When there appears a credible reason why the marriage should not be contracted, the contract shall be expressly forbidden until there has been established from clear documents what ought to be done in the matter. If any persons presume to enter into clandestine marriages of this kind, or forbidden marriages within a prohibited degree, even if done in ignorance, the offspring of the union shall be deemed illegitimate....

67. ON THE USURY OF JEWS

The more the Christian religion is restrained from usurious practices, so much the more does the perfidy of the Jews grow in these matters, so that within a short time they are exhausting the resources of Christians. Wishing therefore to see that Christians are not savagely oppressed by

[1] The power to "bind and loose"—that is to impose penance and to absolve—is based on Matt. 16:19 and 18:18.

[2] See Luke 10:34.

[3] The reference is to decisions of earlier councils.

[4] 1 Cor. 7:4.

Jews in this matter, we ordain by this synodal decree that if Jews in future, on any pretext, extort oppressive and excessive interest from Christians, then they are to be removed from contact with Christians until they have made adequate satisfaction for the immoderate burden. Christians too, if need be, shall be compelled by ecclesiastical censure, without the possibility of an appeal, to abstain from commerce with them. We enjoin upon princes not to be hostile to Christians on this account, but rather to be zealous in restraining Jews from so great oppression. We decree, under the same penalty, that Jews shall be compelled to make satisfaction to churches for tithes and offerings due to the churches, which the churches were accustomed to receive from Christians for houses and other possessions, before they passed by whatever title to the Jews, so that the churches may thus be preserved from loss.

68. THAT JEWS SHOULD BE DISTINGUISHED FROM CHRISTIANS IN THEIR DRESS

A difference of dress distinguishes Jews or Saracens from Christians in some provinces, but in others a certain confusion has developed so that they are indistinguishable. Whence it sometimes happens that by mistake Christians join with Jewish or Saracen women, and Jews or Saracens with Christian women. In order that the offence of such a damnable mixing may not spread further, under the excuse of a mistake of this kind, we decree that such persons of either sex, in every Christian province and at all times, are to be distinguished in public from other people by the character of their dress—seeing moreover that this was enjoined upon them by Moses himself, as we read.[1] They shall not appear in public at all on the days of lamentation and on passion Sunday; because some of them on such days, as we have heard, do not blush to parade in very ornate dress and are not afraid to mock Christians who are presenting a memorial of the most sacred passion and are displaying signs of grief. What we most strictly forbid, however, is that they dare in any way to break out in derision of the Redeemer. We order secular princes to restrain with condign [appropriate] punishment those who do so presume, lest they dare to blaspheme in any way him who was crucified for us, since we ought not to ignore insults against him who blotted out our wrongdoings.

69. THAT JEWS ARE NOT TO HOLD PUBLIC OFFICES

It would be too absurd for a blasphemer of Christ to exercise power over Christians. We therefore renew in this canon, on account of the boldness of the offenders, what the council of Toledo[2] providently decreed in this matter: we forbid Jews to be appointed to public offices, since under cover of them they are very hostile to Christians. If, however, anyone does commit such an office to them let him, after an admonition, be curbed by the provincial council, which we order to be held annually, by means of an appropriate sanction. Any official so appointed shall be denied commerce with Christians in business and in other matters until he has converted to the use of poor Christians, in accordance with the directions of the diocesan bishop, whatever he has obtained from Christians by reason of his office so acquired, and he shall surrender with shame the office which he irreverently assumed. We extend the same thing to pagans.

70. THAT CONVERTS TO THE FAITH AMONG THE JEWS MAY NOT RETAIN THEIR OLD RITE

Certain people who have come voluntarily to the waters of sacred baptism, as we learnt, do not wholly cast off the old person in order to put on the new more perfectly.[3] For, in keeping remnants of their former rite, they upset the decorum of the Christian religion by such a mixing. Since it is written, cursed is he who enters the land by two paths,[4] and a garment that is woven from linen and wool together should not be put on,[5] we therefore decree that such people shall be wholly prevented by the prelates of churches from observing their old rite, so that those who freely offered themselves to the Christian religion may be kept to its observance by a salutary and necessary coercion. For it is a lesser evil not to know the Lord's way than to go back on it after having known it.

[71.] EXPEDITION FOR THE RECOVERY OF THE HOLY LAND

It is our ardent desire to liberate the holy Land from infidel hands. We therefore declare, with the approval of this sacred council and on the advice of prudent men who are fully aware of the circumstances of time and place, that

[1] See Lev. 19:19; Deut. 22:5 and 22:11.

[2] A reference to the Council of Toledo of 589, canon 14.

[3] See Col 3:9.

[4] See Ecclus. 2:14 and 3:28.

[5] See Deut. 22:11.

crusaders are to make themselves ready so that all who have arranged to go by sea shall assemble in the kingdom of Sicily on June 1st after next: some as necessary and fitting at Brindisi and others at Messina and places neighboring it on either side, where we too have arranged to be in person at that time, God willing, so that with our advice and help the Christian army may be in good order to set out with divine and apostolic blessing. Those who have decided to go by land should also take care to be ready by the same date. They shall notify us meanwhile so that we may grant them a suitable legate *a latere*[1] for advice and help. Priests and other clerics who will be in the Christian army, both those under authority and prelates, shall diligently devote themselves to prayer and exhortation, teaching the crusaders by word and example to have the fear and love of God always before their eyes, so that they say or do nothing that might offend the divine majesty. If they ever fall into sin, let them quickly rise up again through true penitence. Let them be humble in heart and in body, keeping to moderation both in food and in dress, avoiding altogether dissensions and rivalries, and putting aside entirely any bitterness or envy, so that thus armed with spiritual and material weapons they may the more fearlessly fight against the enemies of the faith, relying not on their own power but rather trusting in the strength of God. We grant to these clerics that they may receive the fruits of their benefices in full for three years, as if they were resident in the churches, and if necessary they may leave them in pledge for the same time.

6.23 Devotion through poverty: Peter Waldo in *The Chronicle of Laon* (1173–1178). Original in Latin.

Peter Waldo (d.*c*.1207), a wealthy merchant at Lyon, was inspired, like many people of his time, by the *Acts of the Apostles* in the New Testament. At some time in the 1170s, he rid himself of his material possessions and began to preach to his neighbors "to place your hopes in God and not in wealth." He and his followers (known at first as the Poor, or the Poor Men, but later on as the Waldensians) were initially embraced by the papacy but forbidden to preach. However, they continued to preach and were declared heretics in 1184. Their continued association with heresy may be seen in Jacques Fournier's *Episcopal Register*, p. 418 below. In the account printed here, written by an anonymous chronicler who was not entirely hostile to the movement, Peter is called Valdès, the original form of his name. Since the account is in a chronicle, some of the entries are preceded by dates.

1. How does this account of Peter Waldo's life compare with the autobiographical account of St. Francis in his *Testament* (below, p. 375)?
2. How do you explain the many different responses to Waldo's conversion?

[Source: *The Birth of Popular Heresy*, ed. and trans. Robert I. Moore (New York: St. Martin's Press, 1975), pp. 111–13 (slightly modified).]

At about this time, in 1173, there was a citizen of Lyon named Valdès, who had made a great deal of money by the evil means of usury. One Sunday he lingered by a crowd that had gathered round a *jongleur*,[2] and was much struck by his words. He took him home with him, and listened carefully to his story of how St. Alexis had

[1] "*A latere*" means "from the side [of the pope]." The pope is here saying that a papal legate is necessary.

[2] A *jongleur* was an entertainer.

died a holy death in his father's house.[1] Next morning Valdès hastened to the schools of theology to seek advice about his soul. When he had been told of the many ways of coming to God he asked the master whether any of them was more sure and reliable than the rest. The master quoted to him the words of the Lord, "If thou wilt be perfect go sell what thou hast and give to the poor and thou shalt have treasure in heaven. And come follow me."[2]

Valdès returned to his wife and gave her the choice between having all his movable wealth or his property in land and water, woods, meadows, fields, houses, rents, vineyards, mills and ovens. She was very upset at having to do this and chose the property. From his movable wealth he returned what he had acquired wrongly, conferred a large portion on his two daughters, whom he placed in the order of Fontevrault[3] without his wife's knowledge, and gave a still larger amount to the poor. At this time a terrible famine was raging through Gaul and Germany. For three days a week, from Whitsun to St Peter-in-chains [May 27–August 1] Valdès generously distributed bread, soup and meat to anyone who came to him. On the Assumption of the Virgin [August 15] he scattered money among the poor in the streets saying, "You cannot serve two masters, God and Mammon."[4] The people around thought that he had gone out of his senses. Then he stood up on a piece of high ground and said, "Friends and fellow-citizens, I am not out of my mind, as you think. I have avenged myself on the enemies who enslaved me when I cared more for money than for God and served the creature more faithfully than the creator. I know that many of you disapprove of my having acted so publicly. I have done so both for my own sake and for yours: for my sake, because anybody who sees me with money in future will be able to say that I am crazy; for your sake, so that you may learn to place your hopes in God and not in wealth."

Next day as he was coming out of church Valdès begged a certain citizen, formerly a friend of his, for God's sake to give him something to eat. The man took him home, and said, "As long as I live I will provide you with the necessities of life." When his wife heard this story, she was very upset, and rushed distraught to complain to the archbishop that Valdès had begged his bread from someone other than herself. This moved everybody who was with the archbishop to tears. The archbishop requested the citizen to bring his guest before him. The wife seized her husband by his tattered clothes, and said, "Is it not better, my man, for me to redeem my sins by giving you alms than a stranger?" After this, by the archbishop's command, he was not allowed to accept alms from anybody in the city except his wife.

1177 Valdès, the citizen of Lyon whom we have already mentioned, who had vowed to God that he would possess neither gold nor silver, and take no thought for the morrow, began to make converts to his opinions. Following his example, they gave all they had to the poor and willingly devoted themselves to poverty. Gradually, both in public and in private, they began to inveigh against both their own sins and those of others.

1178 Pope Alexander III[5] held a council at the Lateran palace.... The council condemned heresy and all those who fostered and defended heretics. The pope embraced Valdès, and applauded the vows of voluntary poverty which he had taken, but forbade him and his companions to assume the office of preaching except at the request of the priests. They obeyed this instruction for a time, but later they disobeyed, and affronted many, bringing ruin on themselves.

---

[1] In the story of St. Alexis, probably a conflation of several legends, the saint, member of a distinguished family at Rome, left his wife on his wedding night, went on a pilgrimage, and, upon his return to Rome, lived unrecognized as a beggar under the stairs in his father's house. After his death documents made his identity known and he was honored as a saint.

[2] Matt. 19:21.

[3] Fontevrault was a monastery founded by Robert of Arbrissel (*c*.1045–1116). It consisted of two houses, one for men and the other for women, both of which were presided over by the same female abbess.

[4] Matt. 6:24; Luke 16:13.

[5] Alexander III was pope from 1159 to 1181. In fact this council (Lateran III) was held in 1179.

6.24 Devotion through mysticism: Jacques de Vitry, *The Life of Mary of Oignies* (1213). Original in Latin.

Jacques de Vitry (d.1240) learned about Mary of Oignies while he was a regular canon (much like a monk but living according to the Rule of St. Augustine rather than Benedict) at Oignies, today in the north of France. Mary (1177–1213) led a nearby house of Beguines—a community in which women took no formal vows but nevertheless dedicated themselves to lives of piety. Jacques's support for the Beguines helped legitimize them: his biography made Mary into a kind of saint, while his direct appeal to the papacy in 1216 resulted in the Beguines' official recognition. Although they spent their days at simple tasks—caring for the sick, spinning, weaving—Beguines like Mary lived passionate lives, weeping cascades of tears as they contemplated the Lord.

1. Comparing this *Life* with that of Monegundis in the sixth century (see above, p. 38), how might you characterize the transformations that occurred in medieval conceptions of female piety?
2. How did the life of Christ inspire Mary of Oignies?

[Source: *Medieval Women's Visionary Literature*, ed. Elizabeth Alvilda Petroff, trans. Margot King (New York: Oxford University Press, 1986), pp. 179–81 (a few notes added).]

BOOK I

CHAPTER 16

The beginning of her conversion to you, O Lord, the first fruits of her love, was your Cross and Passion. She heard you hearing and was afraid,[1] she considered your works and feared. One day when she was reflecting on the blessings you had sent and visited upon her and which you had graciously shown forth in the flesh to mankind, and while she was considering your torment upon the Cross, she found such grace of compunction and wept so abundantly that the tears which flowed so copiously from her eyes fell on the floor of the church and plainly showed where she had been walking. For a long time after this visitation, she could not look at an image of the Cross, nor could she speak of the Passion of Christ, nor hear other people speaking of it without falling into ecstasy by reason of her enfeebled heart. She therefore would sometimes moderate her sorrow and restrain the flood of her tears and, leaving behind His humanity, would raise her mind so that she might find some consolation in His unchangeableness. The more, however, she tried to restrain the vehemence of the flood, the more wondrously did her ardor increase it. When she considered how great was He who had allowed Himself to be so humiliated for us her sorrow was redoubled and her soul renewed with sweet compunction and fresh tears.

CHAPTER 17

Once, just before Holy Thursday when the Passion of Christ was approaching, she began to offer herself up as a sacrifice to the Lord with an even greater flood of tears, sighs, and sobs. One of the priests of the church exhorted her with honey-tongued rebukes to pray in silence and to restrain her tears. Although she had always been bashful and would, with dovelike simplicity, make an effort to obey in all things, yet she knew that she could not restrain these tears. She therefore slipped quietly out of the church and hid herself in a secret place far from everyone, and she tearfully begged the Lord that he show this priest that it is not in man to restrain the impulse of tears when the waters flow with the vehemence of the blowing wind.[2]

[1] Hab. 3:2.

[2] See Ps. 147:18 and Exod. 14:21.

On that very day while the priest was celebrating Mass, it happened that "the Lord opened and none shut"[1] and "He sent forth waters and they overturned the earth."[2]

His spirit was drowned with such a flood of tears that he almost suffocated. The harder he tried to restrain this force, the more drenched he became and the more soaked did the book and the altar become. What could he do, he who had been so lacking in foresight, he who had rebuked the handmaid of Christ? With shame and through personal experience he was taught what he previously had not learned through humility and compassion. Sobbing frequently and with disordered and broken speech, he barely avoided total collapse, which one of his acquaintances has testified. After Mass was finished, the handmaid of Christ returned to the church and told the priest everything that had happened, as if she herself had been present. "Now," she said, "you have learned through personal experience that man cannot restrain the impulse of the spirit 'when the south wind blows.'"[3]

CHAPTER 18

When a constant outburst of tears gushed forth from her eyes both day and night and ran down her cheeks and made the church floor all muddy, she would catch the tears in the linen cloth with which she covered her head. She went through many veils in this way since she had to change them frequently and put a dry one on in place of the wet one she had discarded.

In my love for her I suffered with her in her long fasts and frequent vigils and while she was enduring many such deluges of tears. I therefore asked her whether she felt any pain or discomfort as one is accustomed to experience in such a state of exhaustion. "These tears," she said, "are my refreshment. Night and day they are my bread. They do not impair my head but rather feed my mind. They do not torment me with pain but, on the contrary, they rejoice my soul with a kind of serenity. They do not empty the brain but fill the soul to satiety and soften it with a sweet anointing. They are not violently wrenched out but are freely given by the Lord."

CHAPTER 22

Having once tasted the spirit, she held as nothing all sensual delights until one day she remembered the time when she had been gravely ill and had been forced, from necessity, to eat meat and drink a little wine for a short time. From the horror she felt at her previous carnal pleasure, she began to afflict herself and she found no rest in spirit until, by means of extraordinary bodily chastisements, she had made up for all the pleasures she had experienced in the past. In vehemence of spirit, almost as if she were inebriated, she began to loathe her body when she compared it to the sweetness of the Paschal Lamb[4] and, with a knife, in error cut out a large piece of her flesh which, from embarrassment, she buried in the earth. Inflamed as she was, however, by the intense fire of love, she did not feel the pain of her wound and, in ecstasy of mind, she saw one of the seraphim standing close by her. Much later when women were washing her corpse, they were amazed when they found the places of the wounds but those to whom she had made her confession knew what they were. Why do those who marvel at the worms which swarmed from the wounds of Simeon [Stylites] and are awe-struck at the fire with which Antony burnt his feet[5] not wonder at such strength in the frail sex of a woman who, wounded by charity and invigorated by the wounds of Christ, neglected the wounds of her own body?

BOOK II

CHAPTER 72

It frequently occurred that when the priest raised the Host, she saw between his hands the corporeal form of a beautiful boy and an army of the heavenly host descending with a great light. When the priest received the Host after the general confession, she saw in the spirit the Lord remain in the soul of the priest illuminating him with a wondrous brightness. If, on the other hand, he received it unworthily, she saw the Lord withdraw with displeasure and the soul of the wretched man would

[1] Isa. 22:22.

[2] Job 12:15.

[3] See Acts 28:13.

[4] The Paschal Lamb, that is, the sacrificial lamb of the Jewish Passover, was understood to be a prefiguration of Christ.

[5] A reference to the temptations of Antony, as depicted in *The Life of St. Antony*, above, p. 30. Simeon Stylites was another saint whose ascetic practices—particularly his long endurance on a pillar—were well known.

remain empty and dark. Even when she was not present in the church but remained in her cell, she prayed with her eyes covered with a white veil, as was her habit, and when Christ descended to the altar at the utterance of the sacred words, then, wondrously transformed, she felt His coming. If she was present at the reception of the sacrament of Extreme Unction by invalids,[1] she felt the presence of Christ when, with a multitude of saints, He tenderly strengthened the sick person, expelled demons, and purged the soul and, as it were, transfused Himself in light throughout the whole body of the invalid while the different limbs were being anointed.

CHAPTER 88

Sometimes it seemed to her that for three or more days she held Him close to her so that He nestled between her breasts like a baby, and she hid Him there lest He be seen by others. Sometimes she kissed him as though He were a little child and sometimes she held Him on her lap as if He were a gentle lamb. At other times the Holy Son of the Virgin manifested Himself in the form of a dove for the consolation of His daughter or He would walk around the church as if He were a ram with a bright star in the middle of his forehead and, as it seemed to her, He would visit His faithful ones.

6.25 The mendicant movement: St. Francis, *A Rule for Hermitages* (1217–1221) and *The Testament* (1226). Original in Latin.

Saint Francis (1181/1182–1226) had an extraordinary impact on late medieval religious life. Born into a wealthy merchant family in Assisi, Francis, like Peter Waldo, had a conversion experience in his mid-twenties that led him to strip himself of all his belongings and take up the lifestyle of a poor person—a mendicant—who preached and begged for his daily bread and lodging. His effect in the cities of Italy was electrifying: Francis gained numerous followers (called "friars" from the Latin term for brothers). Women too were drawn to his example.

Although Francis disliked having to institutionalize his ideals, he was constrained by external demands to write (or rather dictate, in Umbrian dialect, words that were translated into Latin by his scribes) several rules. The *Rule for Hermitages* was probably meant as an "appendix" for one of his longer rules, even though hermitages seem to violate the Franciscan norm of mendicancy and itineracy—of being "on the move." Perhaps the hermits of the Franciscan Order were men already in hermitages before they joined; or perhaps they used the hermitage for a period of reflection. The *Testament*, dictated during the final days of Francis' life, summed up the main points of his spirituality. Like Neophytos's *Testamentary Rule*, it began with an autobiographical account.

1. How might you compare the sensibilities of Peter Waldo, Mary of Oignies, and Francis to arrive at a composite picture of what it meant to "follow Christ" at the turn of the thirteenth century?
2. In what ways did Francis' *Rule* differ from—and in what ways was it similar to—the nearly contemporary *Testamentary Rule* of Neophytos (above, p. 310)?

[Source: *Francis of Assisi*: *Early Documents*, vol. 1: *The Saint*, ed. Regis J. Armstrong, J.A. Wayne Hellmann, and William J. Short (New York: New City Press, 1999), pp. 61–62, 124–27 (notes modified).]

[1] Extreme Unction is the sacrament of anointing the sick and the dying.

A Rule for Hermitages

Let those who wish to stay in hermitages in a religious way be three brothers or, at the most, four; let two of these be "the mother" and have two "sons" or at least one. Let the two who are "mothers" keep the life of Martha and the two "sons" the life of Mary and let one have one enclosure in which each one may have his cell in which he may pray and sleep.[1]

And let them always recite Compline of the day immediately after sunset and strive to maintain silence, recite their Hours, rise for Matins, and "seek first the kingdom of God and His justice."[2] And let them recite Prime at the proper hour and, after Terce, they may end their silence, speak with and go to their mothers. And when it pleases them, they can beg alms from them as poor little ones out of love of the Lord God.[3] And afterwards let them recite Sext, None and, at the proper hour, Vespers.

And they may not permit anyone to enter or eat in the enclosure where they dwell. Let those brothers who are the "mothers" strive to stay far from everyone and, because of obedience to their minister, protect their "sons" from everyone so that no one can speak with them. And those "sons" may not talk with anyone except with their "mothers" and with the minister and his custodian when it pleases them to visit with the Lord's blessing.[4]

The "sons," however, may periodically assume the role of the "mothers," taking turns for a time as they have mutually decided.[5] Let them strive to observe conscientiously and eagerly everything mentioned above.

The Testament

The Lord gave me, Brother Francis, thus to begin doing penance in this way: for when I was in sin, it seemed too bitter for me to see lepers.[6] And the Lord Himself led me among them and "I showed mercy" to them.[7] And when I left them, what had seemed bitter to me was turned into sweetness of soul and body. And afterwards I delayed a little and left the world.[8]

And the Lord gave me such faith in churches that I would pray with simplicity in this way and say: "We adore You, Lord Jesus Christ, in all Your churches throughout the whole world, and we bless You because by Your holy cross You have redeemed the world."[9]

Afterwards the Lord gave me, and gives me still, such faith in priests who live according to the rite of the holy Roman Church because of their orders that, were they to persecute me, I would still want to have recourse to them. And if I had as much wisdom as Solomon and found impoverished priests of this world, I would not preach in their parishes against their will. And I desire to respect, love, and honor them and all others as my lords. And I do not want to consider any sin in them because I discern the Son of God in them and they are my lords.

---

[1] Mary and Martha are sisters in Luke 10:38–42. Martha welcomes Jesus and his disciples and busies herself with preparations for her guests, but Mary sits at Jesus' feet, listening to him. Martha complains that Mary should help her, but Jesus responds that Mary has chosen the better way. In Christian commentaries on this passage, Mary stands for the contemplative life while Martha signifies the active life. Both are needed. Thus the "mothers" and "sons" at the hermitage take on these two roles. Francis's use of maternal imagery for the relationship among the hermits stems from Isa. 49:15 and 66:13, where God's love for mankind is likened to the love a mother has for her child.

[2] Matt. 6:33. These Hours constitute the (Divine) Office, to which Francis frequently refers in the *Testament* below.

[3] The hermits, too, are to practice mendicancy, begging alms. But in the hermitage, they beg from their "mothers" who provide them with food and other essentials. The sons have no contact with the outside world, but the mothers, though they should "stay far from everyone" (as the Rule says in the next paragraph), must have been able to obtain the wherewithal of life from beyond the hermitage enclosure.

[4] The "minister" and his "custodian" were titles for the provincial administrators of the Franciscan Order.

[5] The periodic exchange of roles demonstrated the essential fraternity and equality among the hermits.

[6] "The Lord gave me" here and elsewhere underlines Francis's interpretation of his conversion as obedience and submission to God's will.

[7] The phrase "I showed mercy" has a rich biblical tradition, especially in the Old Testament. For Francis, it was particularly aligned with penance: people show mercy to others (lepers, for example) as God shows mercy to the penitent.

[8] Traditionally a person "left the world" by entering a monastery. But in Francis's case it meant the beginning of his path of conversion, the first step of which was the restoration (by his own hands) of the church of San Damiano just outside of Assisi.

[9] The prayer is based on a traditional one, but Francis added "all your churches throughout the world" as well as the adjective "holy" to describe the Cross.

And I act in this way because, in this world, I see nothing corporally of the Most High Son of God except His most holy Body and Blood which they receive and they alone administer to others.[1] I want to have these most holy mysteries honored and venerated above all things and I want to reserve them in precious places. Wherever I find our Lord's most holy names and written words in unbecoming places, I want to gather them up and I beg that they be gathered up and placed in a becoming place. And we must honor all theologians and those who minister the most holy divine words and respect them as those who minister to us spirit and life.

And after the Lord gave me some brothers, no one showed me what I had to do, but the Most High Himself revealed to me that I should live according to the pattern of the Holy Gospel. And I had this written down simply and in a few words and the Lord Pope confirmed it for me. And those who came to receive life gave whatever they had to the poor and were content with one tunic, patched inside and out, with a cord and short trousers. We desired nothing more. We clerical [brothers] said the Office as other clerics did; the lay brothers said the *Our Father*; and we quite willingly remained in churches. And we were simple and subject to all.[2]

And I worked with my hands, and I still desire to work; and I earnestly desire all brothers to give themselves to honest work.[3] Let those who do not know how to work learn, not from desire to receive wages, but for example and to avoid idleness. And when we are not paid for our work, let us have recourse to the table of the Lord, begging alms from door to door. The Lord revealed a greeting to me that we should say: "May the Lord give *you* peace."[4]

Let the brothers be careful not to receive in any way churches or poor dwellings or anything else built for them unless they are according to the holy poverty we have promised in the Rule,[5] "As pilgrims and strangers," let them always be guests there.[6]

I strictly command all the brothers through obedience, wherever they may be, not to dare to ask any letter from the Roman Curia, either personally or through an intermediary, whether for a church or another place or under the pretext of preaching or the persecution of their bodies. But, wherever they have not been received "let them flee into another"[7] country to do penance with the blessing of God.

And I firmly wish to obey the general minister of this fraternity and the other guardian whom it pleases him to give me. And I so wish to be a captive in his hands that I cannot go anywhere or do anything beyond obedience and his will, for he is my master.

And although I may be simple and infirm, I nevertheless want to have a cleric always with me who will celebrate the Office for me as it is prescribed in the Rule.

And let all the brothers be bound to obey their guardians and to recite the Office according to the Rule.[8] And if some might have been found who are not reciting the Office according to the Rule and want to change it in

---

[1] This affirmation of the authority of the priests of the Roman Church, their exclusive right to celebrate the Eucharist, their right to deny him permission to preach, even their right to persecute him, all explicitly affirm Francis's orthodoxy in the context of heretics like Waldo (for whom see above, p. 371).

[2] The *Our Father* is the prayer in Matt. 6:9–13. Compare the habit of the friars to that of the monks in *The Benedictine Rule* (above, p. 20). The "clerical" friars chanted the traditional liturgical hours while the lay brothers said the *Our Father* over and over. When "on the move," the friars stayed and prayed at any nearby church.

[3] "I worked with my hands" is a reference to the model of the apostles in Acts 20:34. Francis and other early Franciscans worked in leprosaria or did agricultural labor in exchange for bread. By the time Francis wrote the *Testament*, however, many of the friars had substituted intellectual work for manual labor, and they depended on the other brothers to maintain them. In the next sentence, Francis seems to want even those "contemplative" friars, as well as those with greater responsibilities, to learn how to work with their hands, probably to prevent the development of two separate classes of brothers.

[4] 2 Thess. 3:16.

[5] By the time Frances wrote this *Testament*, he had drawn up several Rules. The one written in 1221 and sealed by the pope in 1223 was no doubt the one referred to here. At this point the *Testament* ceases to be autobiographical and becomes, instead, a series of admonitions to the friars. Here Francis reveals his fear that the very success of his order will jeopardize its ideals. Thus, he is worried about gifts and (in the next sentence) prohibits the brothers from actively seeking churches or residences.

[6] 1 Pet. 2:11.

[7] Matt. 10:23.

[8] The "guardian" was the superior of the community, much like the abbot of a monastery.

some way, or who are not Catholics, let all the brothers, wherever they may have found one of them, be bound through obedience to bring him before the custodian of that place nearest to where they found him. And let the custodian be strictly bound through obedience to keep him securely day and night as a man in chains, so that he cannot be taken from his hands until he can personally deliver him into the hands of his minister.[1] And let the minister be bound through obedience to send him with such brothers who would guard him as a prisoner until they deliver him to the Lord of Ostia, who is the Lord, the Protector, and the Corrector of this fraternity.

And the brothers may not say: "This is another rule." Because this is a remembrance, admonition, exhortation, and my testament, which I, little brother Francis, make for you, my blessed brothers, that we might observe the Rule we have promised in a more Catholic way.

And let the general minister and all the other ministers and custodians be bound through obedience not to add to or take away from these words. And let them always have this writing with them together with the Rule. And in all the chapters which they hold, when they read the Rule, let them also read these words. And I strictly command all my cleric and lay brothers, through obedience, not to place any gloss upon the Rule or upon these words saying: "They should be understood in this way." But as the Lord has given me to speak and write the Rule and these words simply and purely, may you understand them simply and without gloss and observe them with a holy activity until the end.

And whoever observes these things, let him be blessed in heaven with the blessing of the Most High Father, and on earth with the blessing of His Beloved Son with the Most Holy Spirit, the Paraclete, and all the powers of heaven and with all the saints. And, as far as I can, I, little brother Francis, your servant, confirm for you, both within and without, this most holy blessing.

6.26 Religious feeling turned violent: *Chronicle of Trier* (1231). Original in Latin.

Beginning in the twelfth century, the monks of the monastery of St. Matthias, just outside Trier, began keeping a *Gesta* or *Chronicle* of their city and its saints and religious institutions. For the year 1231 they recorded the burning of heretics "throughout the whole of Germany."

1. What was the role of the Dominicans in the persecution of heretics?
2. What was the attitude of the monks of St. Matthias (the authors of this account) toward these persecutions?

[Source: *Heresies of the High Middle Ages*, ed. and trans. Walter L. Wakefield and Austin P. Evans (New York: Columbia University Press, 1969), pp. 267–69 (notes modified).]

In the year of our Lord 1231 began a persecution of heretics throughout the whole of Germany, and over a period of three years many were burned. The guiding genius of this persecution was Master Conrad of Marburg;[2] his agents were a certain Conrad, surnamed Tors, and John, who had lost an eye and a hand. Both of these were said to have been converted heretics.[3] It is this Master Conrad who, renowned for active preaching, especially in behalf of the crusades, had built up a great following among the people; who interfered in the visitation of clergy and nuns

[1] These harsh prescriptions against disobedient friars testifies to Francis's fears about splinter groups within and heretical influences on the order.

[2] Conrad of Marburg (d.1233) was a papal inquisitor in Germany.

[3] Conrad Tors was a Dominican; John a layman.

and sought to constrain them to strict observance and continence;[1] and who, supported by apostolic authority and endowed with firmness of purpose, became so bold that he feared no one—not even a king or a bishop, who rated no higher with him than a poor layman. Throughout various cities the Preaching Friars [Dominicans] cooperated with him and with his afore-mentioned lieutenants; so great was the zeal of all that from no one, even though merely under suspicion, would any excuse or counterplea be accepted, no exception or testimony be admitted, no opportunity for defense be afforded, nor even a recess for deliberation be allowed. Forthwith, he must confess himself guilty and have his head shaved as a sign of penance, or deny his crime and be burned.

Furthermore, one who has thus been shaved must make known his associates, otherwise he again risks the penalty of death by burning. Whence it is thought that some innocents have been burned, for many, because of love of earthly existence or out of affection for their heirs, confessed themselves to have been what they were not and, constrained to make accusation, brought charges of which they were ignorant against those to whom they wished ill. Indeed, it was finally discovered that heretics instigated some of their number to permit themselves to be shaved in penance and thus to accuse Catholics and the innocent. Of such three were taken at Mainz; thereafter there was no one so pure of conscience as not to fear meeting a calamity of this sort. For no one dared, I will not say to intercede for the accused, but even to make the mildest observation in their behalf, for he would immediately be considered a defender of heretics. And, indeed, in accordance with the decision pronounced by the lord pope,[2] he [Conrad] proceeded against defenders and receivers of heretics exactly as against heretics themselves. Furthermore, if anyone had once abjured this impiety and was reported to have relapsed, he was apprehended and without any reconsideration was burned.

Nor was the diocese of Trier free from this infection. For in the city of Trier itself three groups of heretics were uncovered. There was burned a certain Leuchard, who was reputed to have been of a most saintly life, but who bewailed with dreadful laments the unjust banishment from heaven of Lucifer, whom she wished again restored to heaven. Nor was it surprising that such occurrences happened in other cities, since in Rome itself, according to a letter from the pope, not a few had been thus infected. There were a large number in this sect. Many of them were versed in the Holy Scriptures, which they had in German translation. Some, indeed, performed a second baptism; some did not believe in the sacrament of the Lord's body; some held that the body of the Lord could not be consecrated by evil priests; some said that the body of the Lord could be consecrated with salver and chalice in any place whatsoever, equally well by a man or a woman, whether ordained or not; some judged confirmation and extreme unction to be superfluous; some scorned the supreme pontiff, the clergy, and the monastic life; some denied the value of prayers of the Church for the souls of the dead; some took their own mothers in marriage, making amends for the consanguinity that existed by the payment of eighteen pence; some kissed a pallid man or even a cat, and performed still worse acts; some, believing all days to be the same, refused to keep holidays or fasts, and thus worked on feast days and ate meat on Good Friday. Let this suffice as a catalogue of their errors, not that we have listed them all but only noted the most outstanding.

At that time the archbishop of Trier convened a synod in which he publicly announced that the heretics in his diocese had a bishop, to whom they had given his own name, Theodoric, and that others did the same elsewhere after the bishops of other places; and he also announced that they shared in common a pope, whom they called Gregory after the bishop of the Church Universal, so that, should they be questioned about the faith, they could say that they had the same faith as did Pope Gregory and bishop so-and-so (giving the name of the bishop), naming our bishop and meaning theirs.

Three heretics were cited before this synod, of whom two were released and one burned.

[1] I.e., self-control, discipline.

[2] Gregory IX (1227–1241).

TIMELINE FOR CHAPTER SIX

*c.*1147– *c.*1170 Bernart de Ventadorn, *When I see the lark*

1150

*c.*1156 Niketas Eugenianos, *Drosilla and Charikles*

1157 *Diet of Besançon*

1164 *Constitutions of Clarendon*

1166 *Assize of Clarendon*

1167–68 Helmold, *Chronicle of the Slavs*

1173–78 *Chronicle of Laon*

1175

*c.*1177–81 Chrétien de Troyes, *Lancelot*

1189–93 *Laws of Cuenca*

1190 Bertran de Born, *Half a sirventés I'll sing*

1195–1216 Ibn Shaddad, *History of Saladin*

*c.*1200 *Gospel According to the Marks of Silver*

1200

late 12th–early 13th cent. Comtessa de Dia, *I have been in heavy grief*

1200–2 Innocent III, *Letters*

early 13th cent. Anonymous, *The Tale of Bayad and Riyad*

1213 Jacques de Vitry, *Life of Mary of Oignies*

1214 Neophytos, *Testamentary Rule*

*c.*1215 Choniates, *O City of Byzantium*

1215 *Magna Carta*

1215 *Decrees of Lateran IV*

1217–21 St. Francis, *A Rule for Hermitages*

1225

1226 St. Francis, *The Testament*

1231 *Chronicle of Trier*

13th cent. *Parisian Silk Guild Regulations*

1250

1253 *A Genoese societas*

1275

13th cent. *The Piece of Shit* and *The Ring That Controlled Erections*

1281 *Register of Thomas of Hereford*

To test your knowledge and gain deeper understanding of this chapter, please go to **www.utphistorymatters.com** for Study Questions.

VII

Tensions and Reconciliations (c.1250–c.1350)

THE MONGOLS AND THE MAMLUKS

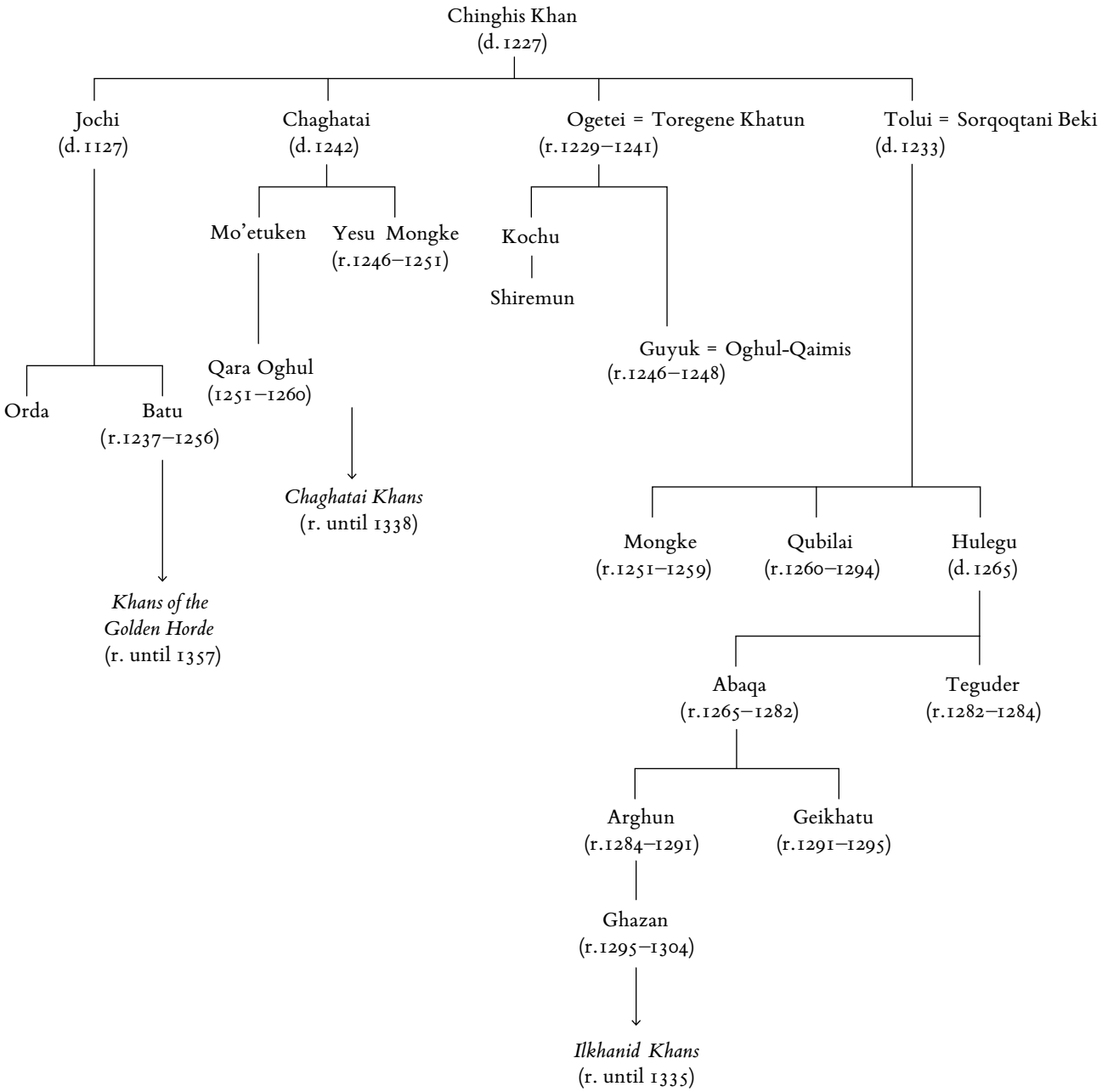
7.1 A spokesman for Mongol rule: Rashid al-Din, *Universal History* (before 1318). Original in Persian.

The Mongol expansion east and west changed the face of Asia, Europe, and the Middle East. Yet relatively soon they broke into regional powers and assimilated with the civilizations that they conquered. The Ilkhanid dynasty took over Iran, and one of its first historians was Rashid al-Din (*c.*1247–1318), who was born into a Jewish family but converted to Islam at about the age of thirty. Trained in medicine, he became a physician for the second Ilkhanid Mongol khan, and he served later khans, including Ghazan Khan (r.1295–1304), as co-vizier, a sort of prime minister. At the same time, he was a prolific author, writing works of theology, agronomy, and, excerpted here, a lengthy history that integrated the history of the Mongols into world history. It was commissioned by Ghazan, under whom the Mongols converted to Islam, partly to differentiate themselves from the Chinese Mongols, and partly because they had come to identify with their subjects. The excerpt here, about the reign of Guyuk Khan (r.1246–1248), grandson of Chinghis Khan (d.1227) and son of Ogetei (r.1229–1241), offers a glimpse into Rashid's interests and method, which was (at least in part) to build gradually to the triumphant and righteous reign of Ghazan.

For the key figures and relationships discussed here, see Genealogy 7.1.

1. What is Rashid's view of the role and importance of women in Mongol society?
2. What were the principal concerns of Guyuk Khan as ruler?

[Source: Rashid al-Din, *The Successors of Genghis Khan*, trans. John Andrew Boyle (New York: Columbia University Press, 1971), pp. 180–86 (notes modified).]



Genealogy 7.1 The Mongol Khans

History of Guyuk Khan's accession to the throne of the Khanate

During his lifetime Ogetei Qa'an had chosen his third son, Kochu, who was born of Toregene Khatun, as his heir and successor.[1] He died however, while Qa'an was still living, and since Qa'an loved him more than all his other sons, he brought up [Kochu's] eldest son, Shiremun, who was exceedingly fortunate and intelligent, in his own *ordo* and decreed that he was to be his heir and successor.[2]

In the year in which Qa'an was to bid farewell to this life he had sent messengers to summon Guyuk. In compliance with this command Guyuk turned back, but before his arrival Fate's inevitable decree was carried out and no opportunity was given for father and son to brighten their eyes with each other's beauty. When Guyuk was informed of his father's death, he hurried forward until he reached the Emil.[3] From thence he made for his father's *ordo*; and the hopes of the ambitious were dashed by his arrival.

And when messengers had gone to the ends and corners of the lands near and far, to summon and invite the princes, emirs, sultans, *maliks*, and scribes, each of them set out from his home and country in obedience to the command.[4] And when the spring of the Year of the Horse, falling in Rabi' II of the year 643 [September 26–October 23, 1245] came round, the princes and emirs of the right and left hand arrived, each with his followers and retainers, and they gathered together in Koke-Na'ur[5]—all except Batu, who was offended with them for some reason and held aloof, excusing himself on the grounds of his feeble condition and an attack of gout.[6] The first to arrive were Sorqoqtani Beki and her sons with all manner of gear and full equipage.[7] From the East came Otchigin with eighty[8] sons, Elchitei, and the other uncles and cousins, and from the *ordo* of Chaghatai Qara-Hulegu, Yesu-Toqa and the other sons, grandsons, and nephews of Chaghatai.[9] From the *ordo* of Jochi, Batu had sent his brothers Orda, Shiban, Berke, Berkecher, Tangqut, and Toqa-Temur. And important *noyans* [commanders] and great emirs, who had connections with one or another party, came in attendance on the princes. From Khitai there came emirs and officials; from Turkistan and Transoxiana the Emir Mas'ud accompanied by the grandees of that region; from Khurasan, the Emir Arghun with the emirs and notables of that province and those of Iraq, Lur, Adharbaijan, and Shirvan; from Rum, Sultan Rukn al-Din; from Georgia, the two Davids; from Aleppo, the brother of the ruler; from Mosul, the envoy of Sultan Badr al-Din Lu'lu'; and from the Caliphate of Baghdad, the chief cadi Fakhr al-Din. There came also envoys from the Franks, and from Fars and Kirman; and from 'Ala al-Din, the ruler of Alamut, the governors of Quhistan Shihab al-Din and Shams al-Din.[10] And to this assembly came all of them with such baggage and presents as befitted such a court. Nearly two thousand tents had been made ready for them, and in the neighborhood of the *ordo*, because of the multitude of people, no place was left to alight in, and food and drink fetched a high price and were unobtainable.

The princes and emirs spoke as follows about the Khanate: "Since Koten, whom Chinghis Khan had appointed to be successor to Qa'an, is somewhat sickly, and Toregene Khatun favors Guyuk, and Shiremun,

---

[1] Qa'an is an alternate spelling for Khan. The mention of Toregene Khatun here is important, for it was her support for Guyuk that was decisive in his election as khan according to Rashid.

[2] The *ordo* refers to the camp of the Mongol prince, in this case Ogetei (r.1229–1241); the camp was always under the management of one of the prince's wives, in this case Toregene Khatun.

[3] The Emil River: one of the boundaries of Guyuk's principality, which is today Northern Xinjiang (China's northwest corner).

[4] The *maliks* were local rulers, inferior to the sultans.

[5] Koke-Na'ur: the Blue Lake. Its exact location is uncertain.

[6] Batu (r.1237–1256) was a grandson of Chinghis Khan; he founded the Golden Horde.

[7] Sorqoqtani Beki was the wife of Tolui, a son of Chinghis. Rashid considered her extremely intelligent and virtuous.

[8] An error for "eight." Otchigin was the brother of Chinghis; he had attempted to seize the throne before this election. Later (see below) he was tried and executed.

[9] Chaghatai was a son of Chinghis and thus uncle of Guyuk. The Chaghatai khanate was located in the Uzbekistan/Afghanistan region. Clearly Mongol government was a family affair.

[10] The list of names and notables, drawn from as far west as Syria and even the "Franks" (probably a reference to the mission of the Franciscan John of Plano Carpini [d.1252], sent by Pope Innocent IV to protest the Mongol invasion into Christian territory), is designed to highlight the importance of Guyuk's election.

Qa'an's heir, has not yet reached maturity, it is advisable that we set up Guyuk Khan, who is the eldest son of Qa'an." Now Guyuk Khan was known for his power and authority, and Toregene Khatun favored him and most of the emirs were in agreement with her. After a discussion, they agreed to set him on the throne. He for his part, as is the custom, rejected [the honor], recommending each and every prince [in his stead] and having recourse to the excuse that he was sickly and indisposed. After the emirs had insisted he said: "I accept on condition that henceforth the Khanate shall be settled in my family." They all of them made the following written undertaking: "As long as there remains of thy race a piece of flesh such as an ox or dog would not accept wrapped in fat or grass, we shall give the Khanate to no other." Then, the science of the *qams* having been practiced, all the princes took off their hats, loosened their belts, and set him upon the throne of the Khanate, in the *morin yil*, that is, the Year of the Horse, corresponding to Rabi' II of the year 643 [September 16–October 13, 1245].[1] In accordance with their custom, they took their cups and feasted for a whole week. When they had finished, he presented great quantities of goods to the *khatuns*, princes, and commanders of *tumens*, thousands, hundreds, and tens.[2] Then they began to deal with important affairs of state. First, they held a court of inquiry to try Fatima Khatun, and then they took up the case of Otchigin, which they examined minutely.[3] And since this examination was a matter of great delicacy and not everyone could be taken into their confidence, Mongke Qa'an and Orda were the examiners and they would admit no one else.[4] When they had completed the enquiry, he was put to death by a group of emirs.

Qara Oghul was the successor of Chaghatai, and Yesu-Mongke, who was his direct son, was not allowed to intervene. And because Guyuk Khan had a friendship for the latter he said: "How can a grandson be heir when there is a son?" And he settled Chaghatai's position upon Yesu-Mongke and strengthened his hand in all matters.[5]

After Qa'an's death, every one of the princes had set their hand to actions without number; they had written drafts on the Empire and issued *paizas* to all sorts of persons. Guyuk Khan ordered these to be called in, and since they were outside the *yosun* and *yasaq* they were ashamed and hung their heads in confusion.[6] And the *paizas* and *yarlighs* of each of them were taken from them and laid before the author with the words: "*Read thy Book: there needeth none but thyself to make out an account against thee this day*."[7] [Only] Sorqoqtani Beki and her sons preserved their honor and held their heads high, for they had been guilty of no breach of the *yasa*. In his speeches Guyuk used to hold them up as an example to the rest; and he praised them while he held the others lightly.

He confirmed all the *yasas* of his father and gave orders that every *yarligh* that had been adorned with the *al-tamgha* of Qa'an should be signed again without reference [to himself].[8]

Thereafter he assigned and dispatched armies in every direction, sending Subedei Bahadur and Jaghan Noyan with a large army into Khitai and parts of Manzi and assigning Eljigitei with another army to the West.[9] And he commanded that of the Tazik armies in Persia

---

[1] The *qams* were shamans, intercessors between the Mongol community and higher powers.

[2] *Khatuns* were Turkish and Mongol princesses; *tumens* were army units of ten thousand men; the thousands etc. that follow are army units of lesser sizes.

[3] Fatima Khatun had been an attendant of Toregene Khatun. According to Rashid, the two together plotted against various ministers and appointed incompetents in their place. In particular, Fatima and her mistress "had an old grudge against Mahmud Yalavach," and put "a man called 'Abd al-Rahman in his stead." Toregene died right after the election of Guyuk. With her gone, Fatima was accused of sorcery, tried, and brought to trial. She was put to death.

[4] Mongke Qa'an would become ruler three years after Guyuk's death. Orda was one of Chinghis' grandsons.

[5] Qara Oghul was Chaghatai's grandson, whereas Yesu-Mongke was his son. But Guyuk made the succession go to Yesu-Mongke, with Qara Oghul getting the Chaghatai khanate only thereafter.

[6] *Paizas* were a sort of passport. The *yosun* was the Mongol customary law, while the *yasaq* (sing. *yasa*) were laws of the khan. Ogetei Qa'an's death is referred to here.

[7] Qur'an 17:15.

[8] The *yarligh* was a decree; it was sealed with a red *al-tamgha*.

[9] Subedei Bahadur, Jaghan Noyan, and Eljigitei were army commanders. Khitai and Manzi were Chinese provinces. Eljigitei was sent westward.

two out of every ten men should set out and reduce the rebellious territories, beginning with the Heretics.[1] He himself intended to follow after. And though he had placed all those armies and conquered peoples under the command of Eljigitei, he especially entrusted to him the affairs of Rum, Georgia and Aleppo, in order that no one else might interfere with them and the rulers of those parts might be answerable to him for their tribute. He put to death ʿAbd al-Rahman, whom Toregene Khatun had sent as governor to Khitai, and gave the countries of Khitai to the Sahib Yalavach.[2] Turkistan and Transoxiana he transferred to the Emir Masʿud, and Khurasan, Iraq, Adharbaijan, Shirvan, Lur, Kirman, Georgia, and [the region] bordering on India he entrusted to the Emir Arghun Aqa. And to all the emirs and *maliks* that were dependent on each of them he gave *yarlighs* and *paizas*, and important business was confided to them. He gave the Sultanate of Rum to Sultan Rukn al-Din and deposed his brother. David, the son of Qiz-Malik, he made subject to the other David. And by the ambassador from Baghdad he sent threats and menaces to the Caliph because of a complaint which Shiremun, the son of Chormaghun, had made about them. So also he ordered a reply to be written in the harshest language to the memorandum brought by the ambassadors from Alamut. As for Chinqai, he showed favor to him and conferred on him the rank of vizier.[3] And all the great men from every side returned home. *Praise be to God, the Lord of the Worlds!*

History of the end of Guyuk Khan's reign; his generosity and liberality; his setting out for the Emil; and his passing away in the region of Samarqand

Now Qadaq, who was of the Christian religion, had been, since his childhood, in attendance on Guyuk Khan in the capacity of *atabeg*, and his nature was impressed with that picture.[4] To this was afterward added the influence of Chinqai. He therefore always went to great lengths in honoring priests and Christians, and when this was noised abroad, priests set their faces toward his Court from the lands of Syria and Rum and the As and the Orus.[5] And because of the attendance of Qadaq and Chinqai he was prone to denounce the faith of Islam, and the cause of Christians flourished during his reign, and no Muslim dared to raise his voice to them.

Now because Guyuk Khan wished the fame of his own generosity to surpass that of his father's, he used to exceed all bounds in his munificence. He commanded that the goods of merchants who had come from all sides should be valued in the same way as had been done in his father's day and their dues paid to them. On one occasion these dues amounted to 70,000 *balish*, for which drafts had been written upon every land.[6] The wares of every clime were piled up in heaps such that it was difficult to transport them. The pillars of state represented this to him. "It will be a trouble to guard it," he said, "and it will be of no profit to us. Distribute it among the soldiers and all present." For days they distributed it and sent it to all the subject peoples; and still much was left. He ordered it to be scrambled for.

That year he wintered in that place, and when the new year came around he said: "The air of the Emil is agreeable to my constitution and the water of that region is beneficial to my ailment." And setting out from thence he proceeded, with the greatest possible awesomeness and majesty, toward the countries of the West. And whenever he came to cultivated land or saw people in the roadway, he would command them to be given enough *balish* and clothes to free them from the humiliation of poverty. Now Sorqoqtani Beki, being an intelligent woman and extremely shrewd, realized that his haste in that journey was not devoid of guile. She secretly dispatched a courier to Batu to say: "Be prepared, for Guyuk Khan has set out for those regions at the head of a large army." Batu was grateful and made ready for battle with him. However, when [Guyuk Khan] reached the confines of Samarqand,

---

[1] The Tazik armies were the Persian (or Iranian) armies; the Heretics were the Ismaʿilis, also known as the Assassins. On Mongol warfare and equipment, see "Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages," in "Reading through Looking," pp. XV–XVII.

[2] At this point Guyuk righted the wrong done by Fatima and Toregene (see p. 384, n. 3). This and the other appointments listed below clearly recalibrated the balance of power throughout the Mongol Empire.

[3] Chinqai had been a minister for Ogetei as well.

[4] As *atabeg*, Qadaq had been a guardian of Guyuk.

[5] "People of the As and the Orus" refers to people of the Caucasus Mountain region.

[6] A *balish* was an ingot of gold or silver. But, as Rashid goes on to make clear, the merchants did not pay their dues in ingots but rather in kind: "the wares of every clime."

a week's journey from Besh-Baliq, the predestined hour arrived and did not grant him respite advance one step beyond that place, and he passed away [in 1248]. The length of his reign had been one year. May the Lord of Islam enjoy many years of life, youth, and fortune!

After the death of Guyuk Khan, the roads were closed and a *yasaq* was issued to the effect that everyone should halt in whatever place he had reached, whether it was inhabited or desert. And at Oghul-Qaimish's command, Guyuk Khan's tomb was transferred to the Emil, where his *ordo* was.[1] Sorqoqtani Beki, as is the custom, offered her words of advice and consolation and sent her clothing and a *boqtaq*.[2] And Batu consoled and comforted her in the like manner and said: "Let Oghul-Qaimish continue, as heretofore, to administer affairs in consultation with Chinqai and the [other] ministers, and let her neglect nothing, for on account of old age, weakness, and gout I am unable to move, and you, the *inis*,[3] are all there; therefore concern yourselves with whatever is necessary." Little was done, however, except for dealings with merchants. Most of the time Oghul-Qaimish was closeted with the *qams*, carrying out their fantasies and absurdities. As for Khwaja and Naqu, they set up two courts in opposition to their mother, so that in one place there were three audience chambers of different rulers. Elsewhere also the princes made dealings and issued orders in accordance with their own wishes. And because of the differences between mother, sons, and the rest, and their divergent counsels and policies, affairs passed out of their control. As for Chinqai, he was perplexed in the conduct of affairs, and no one listened to his words and advice. And of their kinsfolk, Sorqoqtani Beki used to send words of admonishment and counsel, but the sons in their childishness behaved in an arbitrary manner, and with the encouragement of Yesu-Mongke[4] [they] continued to misrule until the Khanate was settled upon Mongke Qa'an[5] and public affairs were strung upon the string of order.

This is the history of Guyuk Khan that has been written.

7.2 A Mongol reply to the pope: Guyuk Khan, *Letter to Pope Innocent IV* (1246). Original in Persian.

In the West, the Mongols were often called Tatars or Tartars. In 1245, Pope Innocent IV (1243–1254) wrote two letters to "the emperor of the Tartars" to school him in the essentials of the Christian religion, informing him that the pope held "the keys of the kingdom of heaven," expressing amazement that the "emperor"—that is, the Great Khan (*khagan*)—would invade "many countries belonging both to Christians and to others," and asking him to do penance. The letters were delivered by two Franciscan friars, Lawrence of Portugal and John of Plano Carpini, who reached their destination just as Guyuk Khan (r.1246–1248), oldest son and successor of Ogetei, was being installed as Great Khan. Guyuk's reply, printed below, shows him as firm in his own beliefs and as certain of his self-righteousness as the pope was; his conquests, he said, were God-given: "How could anybody seize or kill by his own power contrary to the command of God?"

1. On what issues did Guyuk Khan and the pope misunderstand one another?
2. What threats lurk in this letter?

[1] Oghul-Qaimish was the senior wife (now a widow) of Guyuk Khan.

[2] A *boqtaq* was the high, ornate, ceremonial headdress of high-ranking ladies.

[3] The *inis* were the younger brothers.

[4] Yesu-Mongke was one of the sons of Chaghatai.

[5] Mongke Qa'an (r.1251–1259) was one of the sons of Tolui.

[Source: *The Mongol Mission: Narratives and Letters of the Franciscan Missionaries in Mongolia and China in the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries*, ed. Christopher Dawson (New York: Sheed and Ward, 1955), pp. 85–86 (language modernized and some notes added).]

We, by the power of the eternal heaven,
Khan of the great Ulus[1]
Our command:—

This is a version sent to the great Pope, that he may know and understand in the [Persian] tongue, what has been written. The petition of the assembly held in the lands of the Emperor [for our support], has been heard from your emissaries.

If he reaches [you] with his own report, you who are the great Pope, together with all the Princes, come in person to serve us. At that time I shall make known all the commands of the *Yasa*.[2]

You have also said that supplication and prayer have been offered by you, that I might find a good entry into baptism. This prayer of yours I have not understood. Other words which you have sent me: "I am surprised that you have seized all the lands of the Magyar and the Christians. Tell us what their fault is." These words of yours I have also not understood. The eternal God has slain and annihilated these lands and peoples because they have neither adhered to Chinghis Khan, nor to the Khagan,[3] both of whom have been sent to make known God's command, nor to the command of God. Like your words, they also were impudent; they were proud and they slew our messenger-emissaries. How could anybody seize or kill by his own power contrary to the command of God?

Though you also say that I should become a trembling Nestorian Christian, worship God, and be an ascetic, how do you know whom God absolves in truth, to whom He shows mercy? How do you know that such words as you speak are with God's sanction? From the rising of the sun to its setting, all the lands have been made subject to me. Who could do this contrary to the command of God?

Now you should say with a sincere heart: "I will submit and serve you." You yourself, at the head of all the Princes, come at once to serve and wait upon us! At that time I shall recognize your submission.

If you do not observe God's command, and if you ignore my command, I shall know you as my enemy. Likewise I shall make you understand. If you do otherwise, God knows what I know.

At the end of Jumada the second in the year 644.[4]

The Seal

We, by the power of the eternal Tengri,[5] universal Khan of the great Mongol Ulus—our command. If this reaches peoples who have made their submission, let them respect and stand in awe of it.

7.3 The Hungarian king bewails the Mongol invasions: Béla IV, *Letter to Pope Innocent IV* (*c.*1250). Original in Latin.

It was probably in 1250 that King Béla IV of Hungary (r.1235–1270) wrote a letter to Pope Innocent IV (1243–1254) on the situation in his country. The Mongols (or "Tartars") had already invaded Hungary in 1241–1242, and Béla greatly feared that they were preparing

[1] Ulus is a large or small social group, here consisting of all the peoples under the supreme ruler as a community.

[2] The *Yasa* refers to the customs and laws of the Mongols.

[3] Khagan is the supreme ruler, the khan of khans.

[4] I.e., 1246 CE.

[5] The Mongolian great god.

a second, definitive conquest of the West (which, however, never occurred). The letter described the difficulties that Hungary—and all of Europe—would face in case of this second assault. Above all, the king explained the general peril of his country, which was on the eastern frontier of Christendom: on one side, to be sure, were Christians, but on the other side were heretics and pagans. Traditionally understood as a complaint to the pope and as a desperate demand for help from the great powers of Christendom, the letter may also be interpreted as Béla's attempt to use Hungary's frontier location to create an ideology in the service of royal power. Hungary had always been situated on the eastern border of western Christendom; although strongly tied to that side, it was bound to negotiate as well with its eastern neighbors when necessary.

1. How does Béla turn the enemies of Hungary into an issue for all of Christendom?
2. What does Béla want the pope to do?

[Source: Archivio Segreto Vaticano, AA Arm. I-XVIII-605; Augustin Theiner, *Vetera monumenta historica Hungariam sacram illustrantia*, vol.1: 1216–1352 (Rome, 1859), pp. 230–32. Translated and introduced by Piroska Nagy.]

To the most holy father in Christ and Lord Innocent, by divine providence Supreme pontiff of the Holy Roman and Universal Church, Béla, king of Hungary by the same grace, with the respect both due and devoted. Most of the kingdom of Hungary has been reduced to a desert by the scourge of the Tartars, and it is surrounded like a sheepfold by different infidel peoples like the Ruthenians and the Brodniks[1] on the eastern side and the Bulgarians and Bosnian heretics against whom we have been fighting until now with our armies on the southern side. On the western and northern side there are Germans, from whom, because of our common faith, our kingdom should gain the fruit of some aid. However, it is not any fruit, but rather the thorns of war that our land is forced to endure as they snatch away the wealth of the country by unexpected plundering. For this reason—and especially because of the Tartars, whom the experience of war has taught us to fear in the same way as all the other nations that they have passed through have learned—after having asked for advice from the prelates and princes of our kingdom, we hasten to flee to the worthy vicar of Christ [the pope] and to his brethren, as to the sole and very last true protector of Christian faith in our ultimate need, so that what we all fear will not happen to us, or rather, through us, to you and to the rest of Christendom. Day after day news of the Tartars come to us: that they have unified their forces—and not only against us, with whom they are the most enraged, because we refuse to submit to them even after all that injury, while all the other nations that they put to the test became their tributaries, especially the regions which are at the east of our kingdom, such as Russia, the countries of the Cumans and the Brodniks, and Bulgaria, which in large part had once belonged to our dominion. It is rather against the whole of Christendom that their forces are unified, and, insofar as it is deemed certain by several trustworthy people, they have firmly decided to send their countless troops against the whole of Europe soon. Thus, we are afraid that, if their people arrive, our subjects will be unable or even unwilling to withstand the cruelty of the Tartar ferocity in battle and, against our will, guided by fear, they will end up by submitting to their yoke, just as the above-mentioned neighbors have already done, unless by its careful consideration the farsighted Apostolic see securely and powerfully fortifies our kingdom in order to comfort the peoples living in it.

Indeed, we write this letter principally for two reasons: not to be accused of having shirked what is possible, and not to be considered negligent. As far as what is possible is concerned, we say that we can conclude after our experience that we did whatever was possible when we exposed ourselves and all we had to the heretofore unknown men and capabilities of the Tartars. As for negligence, we can by no means be accused of it. For, while

[1] Steppe peoples with whom Hungary had to contend.

the Tartars were still fighting against us in our country, we turned to the three principal courts of Christendom seeking help in this affair, namely yours, which is believed and held by Christians to be the highest and master of all the courts; [and we turned to the court] of the emperor,[1] to whom we even declared that we would be ready to submit ourselves if, during the time of the above-mentioned scourge he would have given us valid assistance and help; and we also turned for help to the court of the Franks.[2] But from all of them we received neither encouragement nor support, only words. In fact, we had recourse to all that was ours and, for the profit of Christendom, we humiliated our royal majesty and gave two of our daughters in marriage to two Ruthenian dukes and the third one to a Polish duke, aiming to learn through them and other friends of ours in the Eastern parts all the secret news about Tartars, so that this way we might face them and resist in a more suitable way their intentions and fraudulent schemes. We even received the Cumans into our kingdom, and—for shame!—today we defend our kingdom with pagans and put down the infidels of the Church with the help of pagans. Moreover, in order to defend the Christian faith, we have joined by marriage our first-born son to a Cuman woman, in order to avoid the worst, and to have the possibility to create some occasion to bring them to the baptismal font—as we have already done more than once. So for all these and other reasons we very much hope that it is clear to the Sanctity of your Supreme pontiff, that in these oppressive times we have received no useful aid from any prince or people of the whole Christian Europe, with the exception of the knights Hospitaller in Jerusalem, whose brothers at our request have recently taken up arms against the pagans and the schismatics in defense of our kingdom and the Christian faith.[3] We have already placed part of them in a very dangerous spot, namely in the neighborhood of the Cumans and the Bulgars beyond the Danube, in the area through which the Tartar army found its way to us at the time of the invasion of our kingdom. Regarding that region, we hope and intend that, if God helps our acts and those of the above-mentioned Hospitallers, the Apostolic See may find them sufficiently worthy to grant them its favor. Just as the Danube stretches to the sea of Constantinople, so we can succeed through them to propagate progeny of the Catholic faith, and thus they may bring useful aid to the Roman empire and also to the Holy Land. We have installed another part of them in the middle of our country, to defend the castles that we are constructing around the Danube, because our peoples are not accustomed to do this. For, after more than one discussion, our council decided that it would be more beneficial to us and to the whole of Europe to safeguard the Danube by fortifications: the Danube is the water of resistance.[4] It was here that Heraclius met Chosroes when he defended the Roman empire,[5] and it was here that we resisted—entirely unprepared, and thus badly injured—the Tartars for ten months, while our kingdom was still almost completely lacking fortifications and defenders. Because if—God forbid!—this territory were possessed by the Tartars, the door would be open for them to [invade] the other regions of the Catholic faith. This is in part because there is no sea to hamper their passage from here to other Christians, and in part it is because they can settle their families and animals—in which they abound—marvelously well here, better than elsewhere. Attila[6] may serve as an example of someone who, coming from the East to subdue the West, established the center of his authority in the middle of the kingdom of Hungary. On the other hand, the emperors, who came fighting from the West in order to subdue the East, laid down their frontiers inside our country, however much they did for the organization of the army. May your pontifical Sanctity, pondering all this, find us worthy to procure a medicine before the wound rots. Indeed the multitude of wise people is very surprised that, in the present state of affairs, your Paternity permitted the departure of the king of France, such a noble member of the Church, from the frontiers of Europe.[7] The multitude

[1] Emperor Frederick II (r.1220–1250).

[2] The French king at this time was St. Louis (r.1226–1270).

[3] The Knights Hospitaller was a crusading order of warrior-monks. While originally formed to defend the Crusader States, it was also involved in numerous other military ventures.

[4] "Water of resistance": i.e., the Danube is the watery frontier that will keep out the Tartars.

[5] A reference to the wars between the Byzantine emperor Heraclius (r.610–641) and the Persian king Chosroes II (r.590–628).

[6] The original contains the name Totila, as Béla confused Totila, king of the Ostrogoths (d.552), with Attila, leader of the Huns (d.453).

[7] St. Louis left for the Seventh Crusade in 1248.

is wondering and cannot cease to be amazed at the fact that your Apostolic Clemency offers substantial help to the empire of Constantinople and regions overseas, which, if they were lost—God forbid!—would not harm the inhabitants of Europe as much as if our kingdom alone passed into the possession of the Tartars. We take God and man as our witness that our necessity and the gravity of our situation are so great that, if the various dangers of the roads did not prevent us, we would send not only messengers, as we have done so far, but would personally come as a servant and fall down at your feet to proclaim before the face of the whole Church—so that we may be justified and excused—that, if your fatherly sanctity does not send us help and the need becomes overwhelming, against our will, we may reach an arrangement with the Tartars. So we humbly beseech you that the Holy Mother Church consider, if not ours, at least the merits of our predecessors, the holy kings who, full of devotion and reverence submitted themselves and their people, preaching to them the orthodox faith, and serving you with purity of faith and in obedience. That is why the Apostolic see promised to them and to their successors all grace and favor if any necessity threatened, at a moment when they did not even ask for it, as the course of things was prosperous for them. Alas, now this heavy constraint seems to be imminent. Thus, open your fatherly heart, and in this time of persecution, extend your hand with the necessary support for the defense of the faith and for the public utility. Otherwise, if our petition—which is so necessary and so universally favorable for the faithful of the Roman Church—suffers a refusal (which we cannot believe) then we should be obliged by necessity, not like sons but like step-sons, excluded from the flock of the father, to beg for aid elsewhere. Dated in Patak the day of the bishop and confessor Saint Martin, III of the ides of November.

7.4 An Islamic account of the fall of Acre: Abu'l-Fida, *A Short History of Mankind* (1318–1319). Original in Arabic.

The Mamluks of Egypt and Syria faced two potential threats: the Mongols and the Europeans. They thought of both as infidels, and their base of operations against them was Syria. Here they came to rely on the Ayyubid lords of Hama, even though for the most part the Mamluks had displaced the Ayyubids. As lord of Hama, Abu'l-Fida (r.*c.*1310–1331) supported the Mamluk sultan in a variety of ways, the most important being military. Like European counts and dukes pledged to their king, so Abu'l-Fida led his own army into war on behalf of the sultan. Well educated, he wrote poetry, a book on world geography, and *A Short History of Mankind*. While his history begins with Adam, its final section, excerpted here, is a memoir of Abu'l-Fida's personal experiences. He was present at the siege of Acre (1291), the last gasp of the Crusader States, and he went on to fight many other wars. As his account makes clear, the existence of Armenia, which had sided with the Crusader States, was a thorn in the Mamluks' side; and beyond Armenia was the insistent threat of the Ilkhanid Mongols, whose attempts to conquer Syria were finally and decisively ended only in 1303.

1. What (apart from military aid) did the lords of Hama offer to the Mamluk sultan?
2. Which battles did Abu'l-Fida emphasize and why?

[Source: *The Memoirs of a Syrian Prince: Abu'l Fida', sultan of Hamah (672–732/1273–1331)*, trans and intro. P. M. Holt (Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner Verlag, 1983), pp. 16–19 (notes and some names modified).]

Then Came in the Year 690 [1291] The Conquest of Acre

In Jumada II of this year [June 1291] Acre was conquered. The reason for that was that the sultan al-Ashraf marched on Acre with the Egyptian forces. He sent to order the Syrian forces to come and to bring the mangonels with them.[1] So al-Muzaffar, the lord of Hama, and his uncle al-Afdal, with all the Hama contingent went to Hisn al-Akrad [Krac des Chevaliers].[2] There we took delivery of a great mangonel called "al-Mansuri," which made a hundred cart-loads.[3] They were distributed among the Hama contingent, and one cart was put in my charge, for at that time I was an emir of Ten.[4] Our journey with the carts was late in the winter-season, and we had rain and snowstorms between Hisn al-Akrad and Damascus. We suffered great hardship thereby because of the drawing of the carts, the oxen being weak and dying from the cold. Because of the carts, we took a month from Hisn al-Akrad to Acre—usually about an eight days' journey for horses. The sultan al-Ashraf similarly commanded mangonels to be brought there from all the fortresses, so there were collected against Acre great and small mangonels such as never were collected against any other place.

The descent of the Muslim armies on it was in the early part of Jumada I of this year [May 1291], and severe fighting developed. The Franks[5] did not close most of their gates but left them open and fought in them. The contingent from Hama was stationed at the head of the right wing, as was their custom, so we were beside the sea, with the sea on our right as we faced Acre. Ships with timber vaulting covered with ox-hides came to us firing arrows and quarrels.[6] There was fighting in front of us from the direction of the city, and on our right from the sea. They brought up a ship carrying a mangonel which fired on us and our tents from the direction of the sea. This caused us distress until one night there was a violent storm of wind, so that the vessel was tossed on the waves and the mangonel it was carrying broke. It was smashed to pieces and never set up again. During the siege, the Franks came out by night, surprised the troops and put the sentries to flight. They got through to the tents and became entangled in the ropes. One of their knights fell into an emir's latrine and was killed there. The troops rallied against them and the Franks fell back routed to the town. The troops of Hama killed a number of them, and when morning came alMuzaffar, the lord of Hama, hung a number of heads of Franks on the necks of the horses which the troops had taken from them, and brought them to the sultan al-Ashraf.

The troops tightened their grip on Acre until God Most High granted them its conquest by the sword on Friday, 17 Jumada II [June 17]. When the Muslims stormed it, some of its inhabitants took flight in ships. Inside the town were a number of towers holding out like citadels. A great mass of Franks entered them and fortified themselves. The Muslims slew, and took an uncountable amount of booty from Acre. Then the sultan demanded the surrender of all who were holding out in the towers, and not one held back. The sultan gave the command and they were beheaded around Acre to the last man. Then at his command the city of Acre was demolished and razed to the ground.

By a strange coincidence, the Franks had captured Acre, taking it from Salah al-Din [Saladin] at noon on Friday, 17 Jumada II 587 [July 12, 1191], took the Muslims in it, and then killed them. God Almighty in His prescience decreed that it should be conquered in this year [690/1291] on Friday, 17 Jumada II, at the hand of the sultan al-Ashraf Salah al-Din.[7] So its conquest was like the day when the Franks took possession of it, and likewise the honorifics of the two sultans.

---

[1] A mangonel was a siege engine. See "Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages," in "Reading through Looking," pp. XII–XIV.

[2] Al-Afdal was Abu'l-Fida's father and al-Muzaffar his cousin.

[3] Mangonels and other siege engines were disassembled when traveling from one place to another. Al-Mansuri was so large that it took 100 carts to hold all of its parts.

[4] As a young leader, Abu'l-Fida had a contingent of ten men. The fact that he was responsible for one of the carts carrying the parts of al-Mansuri shows the trust placed in him; if even one cart were missing, the mangonel could not be set up.

[5] All the crusaders and forces of the Crusading States were known as "Franks."

[6] Quarrels are the bolts shot from crossbows. See "Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages," in "Reading through Looking," pp. XVIII–XIX.

[7] Salah al-Din means "Righteousness of religion."

The Conquest of a Number of Fortresses and Cities

When Acre was conquered, God Most High cast alarm into the hearts of the Franks in the coastlands of Syria. They forthwith evacuated Sidon and Beirut and al-Shuja'i received their surrender in late Rajab [July 1291].[1] The inhabitants of the city of Tyre likewise fled, and the sultan sent to receive its surrender. Then Atlit surrendered at the beginning of Sha'ban [July 30]. Then Tartus surrendered on 5 Sha'ban [August 3]. All that was in the year 690, and the sultan enjoyed a felicity that had fallen to no other—the conquest of these great and well-fortified settlements without fighting or trouble. He commanded and they were utterly destroyed. By these conquests all the coastlands were brought back to Islam—an event too great to be hoped or wished. Syria and the coastlands were purged of the Franks after they had been on the brink of taking Egypt and getting possession of Damascus and other places in Syria—may God be praised and blessed. When these great conquests were completed, the sultan al-Ashraf moved on and entered Damascus, where he stayed for a time. Then he returned to Egypt, entering it in this year.

... In Rabi' I [March–April] died Arghun, the king of the Mongols, the son of Abaqa, son of Hulegu, son of Tolui, son of Chinghis Khan.[2] The length of his reign was about seven years, and when he died, there ruled after him his brother Geikhatu, the son of Abaqa. Arghun left two sons, Ghazan and Oljeitu, and they were in Khurasan. When Geikhatu succeeded, he was a monster of depravity and sodomy with the sons of the Mongols. For that reason, they detested him and were full of ill-will towards him....

Then Came in the Year 691 [1291–2] The Conquest of Qal'at al-Rum

In this year the sultan al-Ashraf marched from Egypt to Syria, and assembled his Egyptian and Syrian forces. Al-Muzaffar and his uncle al-Afdal set out to attend on him. They met him in Damascus and marched in attendance on him, preceding him to Hama. Al-Muzaffar, the lord of Hama, concerned himself with hospitality, purveyance and gifts. The sultan arrived at Hama, and his pavilion was set up to the north of it by the aqueduct of Salamiyya. Al-Muzaffar offered him a great banquet in the Maydan, and set up tents appropriate for occupation by the sultan. The sultan al-Ashraf came down to the Maydan, and a great number of splendid cloths were spread before his horse. Then the sultan entered the house of al-Muzaffar in Hama, and al-Muzaffar spread cloths yet again before his horse. The sultan took his seat in the house, then he entered the bath. Coming out, he sat down beside the Orontes River. Then he went to the pigeon-house on the wall of the gate of al-Naqfi, called the Red Pigeon-house, and sat in it. Then he went from Hama with the lord of Hama and his uncle in attendance to al-Mashhad, then to al-Hammam and al-Zarqa in the desert. He had a great hunt of gazelle and wild asses. As for the soldiers, they proceeded by the road to Aleppo.

Then the sultan left for Aleppo, and went from there to Qal'at al-Rum,[3] which he besieged in the first ten days of Jumada I in this year [April 21–30, 1292]. It is a very strongly fortified position on the bank of the Euphrates. He set up mangonels against it. This is another of the sieges of which I was a witness. The station of the contingent from Hama was on the crest of the mountain which commands the citadel from the east, so that we could observe the movements of its people in the fighting and so on. The blockade was tightened as the siege continued, and it was conquered by the sword on Saturday, 11 Rajab of this year [June 28, 1292]. Its people were killed and their children taken by force. The catholicos, the caliph of the Armenians, who had his see there, sought refuge in the keep, where also gathered those who had fled from the citadel. The mangonel of the contingent from Hama was on the crest of the hill commanding the citadel, and the sultan ordered the lord of Hama to fire on them with the mangonel. When we wound it up to fire on them, they asked the sultan for terms. He granted them only their lives, but they were to be made prisoners. They accepted this, and the catholicos with all who were in the keep of the citadel were taken prisoner to the last man.

---

[1] Al-Shuja'i was a Mamluk emir.

[2] As shown in Genealogy 7.1. Abu'l-Fida uses the term "king of the Mongols" to refer to the Ilkhanids.

[3] Qal'at al-Rum (Armenian, Hromgla) had since 1151 been the see of the head of the Armenian Church, the catholicos. It was then part of the Frankish County of Edessa. By 1292, however, it was an isolated Armenian enclave in Islamic territory.

7.5 A Christian account of the fall of Acre: "The Templar of Tyre," *Deeds of the Cypriots* (before 1343). Original in Old French.

The author commonly known as "The Templar of Tyre" (*c.*1255–before 1343) was almost certainly not a Templar—not a member of the order of those monk-warriors—nor from Tyre, although he lived there between at least 1269 and 1283. At Tyre, he worked for an important noble family, the Montforts; by 1285 he was at Acre serving as an advisor to the Templar master. He was present at the siege of Acre by the Mamluks in 1291, escaped to Cyprus, and probably settled there. His *Chronicle*, from which the excerpt here is taken, probably began with Adam and ended around 1321 or a bit later, but the first section is lost. His detailed account of the fall of Acre suggests that he was an eye-witness to the events. He wrote it perhaps a few years after the event, certainly before 1343, when his manuscript was first discovered.

1. How does this account of the fall of Acre compare with that of Abu'l-Fida?
2. What does the Templar's account reveal about the crusaders' attitudes toward the Muslims?

[Source: Paul Crawford, trans., *The "Templar of Tyre": Part III of the "Deeds of the Cypriots"* (Aldershot Hampshire: Ashgate, 2003), pp. 101–13 (some notes modified and others taken from the Glossary)].

480[1] It happened that, because of the fall of Tripoli, the pope sent twenty galleys to the aid of the city of Acre. These galleys were armed in Venice; their captain was a great nobleman of Venice named Jacopo Tiepolo, the son of Doge Lorenzo Tiepolo of Venice (who was dead). With him came a knight, a great landholder called Roux of Sully. A great number of common people of Italy also took the cross and came to Acre.

When these people came to Acre, the truce which the king had made with the sultan was well-maintained between the two parties.[2] Poor Saracen peasants came into Acre carrying goods to sell, as they were accustomed to do. It happened one day, by the agency of the Enemy from Hell (who desires to arrange evil deeds between good people), that the crusaders, who had come to do good and to arm themselves for the succour of the city of Acre, brought about its destruction, for one day they rushed through Acre, putting all the poor peasants who had brought goods (both wheat and other things) to sell in Acre to the sword.[3] These were Saracens of the villages round about Acre. They also slew a number of bearded Syrians who were of the law of Greece (they killed them because of their beards, mistaking them for Saracens).[4]

This was ill-done indeed, for Acre was taken by the Saracens because of it, as you shall hear.

481 When the peasants were killed, as you have heard, the news was reported to the sultan in Babylon, who was most infuriated by it, and raged against the people of

[1] The numbers are simply for ease of reference.

[2] The "king" was Henry II, king of Cyprus (r.1285–1306 and 1310–1324) and king of Jerusalem (r.1285 until the fall of Acre in 1291, after which the title was meaningless). The truce with the Mamluk sultan provided safe conduct for Muslim peasants and merchants to trade in the city. It was drawn up in 1289 and was to last for ten years.

[3] The "crusaders" were probably the men sent by Pope Nicholas IV in the Venetian galleys.

[4] Just as the Muslims called all Europeans "Franks," so Europeans called all Muslims "Saracens." European men customarily shaved; other male inhabitants of the Middle East generally wore beards. "Syrians of the law of Greece" refers to Syrians who were Orthodox Christians. Because they were natives of Syria, they spoke Arabic, not Greek.

Acre. The blood-soaked *chemises* of those who had been killed were carried to him.[1] Since the sultan was planning to do grievous harm to the city of Acre [anyway], he immediately sent messages to the lords of Acre, to the effect that he had had a truce with the Christians, and that they had broken the truce and slain his Saracen peasants. And he demanded that they make amends and bring justice to those who had done this.

The lords of Acre went into council on the matter. Among the many words spoken among them, my lord the master of the Temple counselled that they should take those prisoners who were to die for their misdeeds, and who were in the royal prison and the prisons of the Templars, Hospitallers, Pisans and Venetians, and should say that they were the ones who had broken the truce and killed the Saracen peasants. "And thus the sultan will subside, appeased, and we will turn him aside from his intentions to harm us by the justice which strikes them, since they are to die anyway."

There were some who agreed with this idea, but many others who did not agree at all. In the end they took no action, and sent what seemed to them a suitable reply to the sultan. As far as I could hear, they told the sultan that these crusaders who had done the deed were foreigners from overseas, and not subject to their justice, and that they were unable to lay a finger on them.

The sultan took this answer badly, and gathered his forces and his siege engines, and also collected his host of armed men. He set up way-stations in the desert along his route, with encampments and supplies. And he sent one of his emirs named Taqsu into the region near Acre, where he remained for four months, between Château Pèlerin and Caesarea, and they cut down wood with which they could make *buches* as wooden hoardings against the city of Acre.[2] He said that the *buches* were to go to Babylon,[3] so that the Christians would not realize [what he was really doing.] Meanwhile the Emir Silah, the emir who was the friend of the master of the Temple, told the master that the sultan was making every preparation to come to besiege Acre.[4]

The master of the Temple promptly reported this to all the lords of Acre. But they did not want to believe it.

482 When the month of October of the year of the Incarnation of Our Saviour Jesus Christ 1290 arrived, Sultan al-Mansur left Babylon and came with all his forces to a place called al-Salihiyah.[5] Here a sickness overtook him and he died....

484 ... The host of Babylon had not moved from the place where it had been, outside

Babylon; the new sultan, son of him who was dead, who had himself called al-Ashraf, saw the host prepared, and the way-stations along the roads, and set out to go to Acre with a great many men on horse and on foot. It was said that there were more than 70,000 horsemen and over 150,000 footmen or more. At Acre there were, counting women and men and children. only 30,000 to 40,000 people, among whom there were 700 to 800 horsemen, and of footmen, counting the crusaders, some 13,000.

485 When those of Acre had heard that al-Mansur was dead, as you have heard, they had rejoiced greatly, and thought that they had been saved. But they had not expected this other Sultan al-Ashraf to attack with his host in the first year of his lordship; they expressed great surprise at this. So they prepared their siege engines and other things which they needed, and manned their defences well, and began to raise the alarm, as one must do when there is an enemy.

All the men of Acre arranged for four messengers [to go to the sultan], along with a gift which they sent. The messengers were Sir Philip Mainebeuf, a knight of Acre, who knew the Saracen language[6] very well; and a Templar brother, a knight named Bartholomew Pisan, who had been born in Cyprus; and a Hospitaller brother; and a scribe named George. They came before the sultan, but he refused the letters and the gift, and held the messengers in prison.

As it happened, before the messengers were sent to the sultan, the sultan sent a letter to the master of the Temple. The Saracen text was translated into French by my hand, and I took the translation and showed it to

[1] A *chemise* resembled a long shirt; sometimes it was worn beneath other garments.

[2] *Buches* were bundles of wood used for construction and to screen troops or siege engines. Château Pèlerin was a fortification at present day Atlit, a coastal town south of Haifa.

[3] Babylon was the name the crusaders gave to Egypt (often specifically Cairo).

[4] Emir Silah worked for the sultan but he also served as a spy for the Templar master.

[5] Al-Mansur (d.1290) was the seventh Mamluk sultan of Egypt.

[6] The "Saracen language" was Arabic. The Templar of Tyre could read Arabic, as he notes in the next paragraph.

my lord the master and to all the lords of Acre; that is to say, to the patriarch and legate,[1] and to the master of the Hospital, Brother John of Villiers and to the commander of the Germans[2] (whose master had fallen out of the good graces of the lords of Acre and had gone to live in Apulia). And I showed it to the Pisan consul and to the Venetian *bailli*,[3] who were not at all willing to accept the fact that the sultan was coming, until he had almost arrived, at which point the men of Acre sent him their messengers, as you have heard.

486 Now let me show you the tenor of the letter which the sultan sent to the master of the Temple. Notice the sort of salutation which the sultan sent in his letter, which went as follows:

487 "The Sultan of Sultans, King of Kings, Lord of Lords, al-Malik al-Ashraf, the Powerful, the Dreadful, the Scourge of Rebels, Hunter of Franks and Tartars and Armenians, Snatcher of Castles from the Hands of Miscreants, Lord of the Two Seas, Guardian of the Two Pilgrim Sites, Khalil al-Salihi,[4]

"To the noble master of the Temple, the true and wise:

> "Greetings and our good will! Because you have been a true man, so we send you advance notice of our intentions, and give you to understand that we are coming into your parts to right the wrongs that have been done. Therefore, we do not want the community of Acre to send us any letters or presents [regarding this matter], for we will by no means receive them."

488 Such was the command and the tenor of the letter of the sultan, as you have heard. Notwithstanding this, they did not leave off sending him messengers as I have told you; they were arrested and thrown into prison in Babylon, where they later perished miserably.

489 The sultan came before Acre and besieged it on Thursday the fifth of April, in the year 1291 of the Incarnation of Christ, and he took it on the eighteenth day of May in the same year. Now you will learn how it happened.

490 The sultan pitched his tents very close together, from Toron all the way up to as-Sumairiya, so that the whole plain was covered with tents. The tent of the sultan himself, which is called the *dehlis*,[5] was on a small hill, where there was a lovely tower and gardens and vineyards of the Temple. This *dehlis* was entirely red, and its door opened facing the city of Acre. It was a custom of the sultans that everyone would know that the direction in which the door of the *dehlis* opened would be the direction in which he would take the road. They remained for eight days before Acre, doing nothing besides engaging in the occasional clash between our forces and theirs, in which a few were killed on either side.

At the end of the eight days, they brought up and emplaced their siege engines, and the stones that they threw weighed a *quintar* each.[6] One of these engines was called *Haveben*, that is to say "Furious," and it was set up in front of the Templars' section.[7] Another, which fired on the Pisans' section, was called al-Mansuri, that is to say "Victory." Yet another, very large, whose name I do not know, fired on the Hospitallers' section; and a fourth engine fired on a great tower called the Accursed Tower, which is at the second wall[8] and was in the custody of the king.

491 They set up great barricades and wicker screens, ringing the walls with them the first night, and the second night they moved them further in, and the third night further still, and they brought them so far forward that they came up to the lip of the *fosse*.[9] Behind these screens the armed men dismounted from their horses, bows in hand. And if you are wondering how they were allowed to draw so near, the answer is that they could not be stopped, as I shall now explain.

These people had their horsemen fully armed, on armored horses, and they stretched from one side of the

---

[1] The "patriarch and legate" was the Latin patriarch of Jerusalem Nicholas of Hanapes, killed during the battle at Acre.

[2] The "Germans" refers to the Teutonic Knights, a crusading order.

[3] The Venetian *bailli* represented the government of Venice.

[4] Khalil al-Salihi was another name for al-Ashraf.

[5] *Dehlis* was an Arab word for "entry room" or "vestibule" and also applied to the tent that the sultan used as a reception room.

[6] One hundred pounds.

[7] Each order (such as the Templars) and each important element in the town had responsibility for a section of the walls. Haveben is the Templar's attempt to represent the Arabic word *Ghadban*, which means "wrathful, furious."

[8] There were two lines of walls at Acre; the "second wall" probably refers to the inner wall.

[9] The moat.

city to the other, that is to say, from the beach on one side to the beach on the other. There were more than 15,000 of them, and they worked in four shifts a day, so that no one was over worked. None of our men went out against those who were behind the screens, for if they had, those who were behind [the first enemy line] would have defended them and barred the way, and so if it had happened that our men had gone out against them, the men on horseback would have defended them.

So in the end the Muslims advanced to the edge of the fosse, as I have told you, and the men on horseback each carried four or five *buches* on the necks of their horses, and threw them down behind the screens. And when night came, they put them in front of the screens, and bound a cord on top, and the pile became like a wall that no engine could harm, though some of our medium engines shot and battered at it without effect. The stones merely rebounded into the fosse.

After this the enemy brought up their *carabohas*, small hand-operated Turkish devices with a high rate of fire which did more damage to our men than the larger engines did, since in the places where the *carabohas* were firing, no one dared to come out into the open. In front of the *carabohas* they had made the rampart so strong and so high that no one could strike or shoot at those who were firing [the *carabohas*]. And this situation lasted as long as they were mining, because a great emir named Sanjar al-Shuja'i commanded the enemy sector opposite a new little tower at the first walls in front of the Accursed Tower, which was called the Tower of the King. This Sanjar al-Shuja'i mined out towards the tower, and also mined one of the walls, called the King's Wall. They pressed so hard against it that our men set it on fire, and made it collapse. The Saracens also made another mine against the Tower of the Countess of Blois (which she had made when she came to this side of the sea for her soul's sake) and our men countermined against it, and fought back fiercely. But the Saracens brought fresh men each day, because they had so many troops.

One day our men took counsel and decided to make a general sally on all sides with horse and foot, to burn the *buches*. So my lord the master of the Temple and his men, and Sir John [of Grailly and Sir Otto] of Grandson and other knights went out one night from the Templars' sector (which ran from the seaside to the Gate of St. Lazarus), and the master ordered a Provençal, who was viscount of the bourg of Acre, to set fire to the wooden *buches* of the great engine of the sultan. They went out that night, and came up to these *buches*, but the man who was supposed to hurl the Greek fire[1] was afraid when he threw it, and it fell short and landed on the ground, where it burned out. The Saracens who were there were all killed, horsemen and footmen. But our men, both brethren[2] and secular knights, went so far in among the tents that their horses got their legs tangled in the tent ropes and went sprawling, whereupon the Saracens slew them. In this way, we lost eighteen horsemen that night, both brethren of the Temple and secular knights, though they did capture a number of Saracen shields and bucklers and trumpets and drums. Then my lord and his men turned back towards Acre.

On the way, they ran into a number of Saracens lying in ambush, all of whom they killed, for the moonlight was as bright as day and they could see them clearly. As I have already told you, the lord of Hama[3] was in that sector, and he rallied his troops to him and hit us on the seashore with showers of javelins, wounding some of our men. But they dared not close with our men. You should know that they seemed to have close to two thousand mounted men [in this skirmish], but our side had—including knights and other horsemen, and brethren of the military orders, and *valés*, and turcopoles—scarcely three hundred.[4]

On the other sectors where action had been ordered, nothing was done, because the Saracens perceived the activity and were on guard, and attacked the Christians so fiercely that they turned back without accomplishing anything.

492 Later on it was decided that all the lords and the forces of Acre should make a sortie in the middle of the night from the Gate of St. Anthony, to fall suddenly on the Saracens. This was decided so secretly that no one knew of it until the command "To horse!" was given. At the time when our men mounted up and sallied forth from the Gate of St. Anthony, the moon was not shining at all, but was obscured. The Saracens were forewarned, and illuminated the scene with torches so that it seemed to be day along their lines. A division so large that it contained well-nigh 10,000 men came against our men and

[1] See "Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages," in "Reading through Looking," pp. X–XII.

[2] The "brethren" refers to the members of the military orders.

[3] "The lord of Hama" was, of course, al-Muzaffar, Abu'l-Fida's cousin.

[4] The "valés" were young attendants, perhaps squires; the turcopoles were locally recruited troops of mounted archers.

raked them so fiercely with javelins that it seemed to be raining. Our men could not endure this and so withdrew into the city, many of the horsemen being wounded.

Our people in the city of Acre were thus in a sorry condition. But they received news that King Henry was about to come from Cyprus with significant assistance, and they looked for him daily.

493 The King had summoned his men in Cyprus, and assembled them and left from Famagusta, and arrived at Acre on the fourth of May. The city was in dire straits because, as I have told you, the [outer] wall was mined and the tower which had been mined had been burned.

But all the same they took great comfort in the arrival of these men, and that of the King a few days later, so they sent messengers to the sultan: Sir William of Villiers, a knight, and William of Caffran, a man from the household of the master of the Temple. The sultan came out from his *dehlis* before the gate of the city known as the Gate of the Legate, and there was a ceasefire on both sides. The messengers went out unarmed, and they came before the sultan, who was within a small tent.

When the messengers had thrice saluted him on their knees, he approached them and said, "Have you brought me the keys of the city, then?" The messengers replied that the city could not be surrendered so easily, but that they had come to him to ask for some measure of mercy for the poor people.

At this the sultan said to them, "I will give you this much grace, that you cede me the bare stones [of the city] alone. and carry off everything else, and go forth and leave the place. I will do this for your king, who has come here and who is a youth, just as I might have been. But I will do nothing more for you."

Then the messengers said to him that this could not be, "because the people overseas would hold us to be traitors," at which he said, "Then you should go away, for I shall offer nothing more!"

As he spoke these words, there was a siege engine which the crusaders were working from the Gate of the Legate, and it fired by I know not what accident, and the stone came so near the tent where the sultan and the messengers were that the sultan (in an act of youthful bravado, not meaning serious harm) leaped to his feet, and laying his hand on his sword, he drew it out a palm's length, and said, "Ah! You filthy swine, what prevents me from striking off your heads?"

At this, Sanjar al-Shuja'i said to him, "Sir, God forbid that you should foul the iron of your sword with the blood of these pigs! Those who fired the siege engine are traitors, but you should let these men go, for they are here with you." And so the messengers returned to Acre, and thereupon the two sides began again their labors, firing mangonels at one another, and doing the things that are usually done between enemies.

494 The new tower, which they called the Tower of the King, was so badly undermined that the front face fell in a heap into the fosse. so that it was impossible to pass over the top of the stones. Seeing this, the Saracens made small sacks of hemp cloth and filled them with sand. Every man carried one of these sacks on the neck of his horse and tossed it to the Saracens who were there behind the *buches* at that point. Then when night fell, they took the sacks and spread them across the top of the stones, and smoothed them out like a roadway, and the next day (Wednesday) they came across on the sacks at Vespers, and took the tower. Half of the vault was still intact and in one piece on the side of the town, and there were a great many of our men defending the tower, but the defence was all for nothing, because the Saracens took the tower anyway, and planted the ensign of the sultan on it. At this, we loaded the siege engines and aimed them at the tower and fired, and killed some of the Saracens, but not enough to drive them back.

When our men saw that the tower was taken, they built a structure out of leather-covered wood, called a *chat*, and put men inside it, so that the Saracens who had taken the tower might not advance further.[1]

495 When the tower had thus fallen, as I have explained, everyone was thoroughly demoralized, and began increasingly to send their women and children down to the ships. But on the next day, Thursday, the weather was very bad, and the sea ran so high that the women and children who had boarded the ships were unable to stay there, and they disembarked and returned to their homes.

496 Before dawn on the next day, Friday, a drum began a powerful stroke, and at the sound of this drum, which had a horrible and mighty voice, the Saracens assailed the city of Acre upon all sides. The place where they entered first was by the Accursed Tower, which they had already taken. I shall tell you the way in which they came.

[1] *Chat*, literally, a "cat": a wooden structure, used, as here, as a moveable shelter.

497 They came on afoot, so many that they were without number. In the van came men carrying great tall shields, and after them came men who cast Greek fire, and after them came men who hurled javelins and shot feathered arrows in such a thick cloud that they seemed to fall like rain from the heavens. Our men who were inside the *chat* abandoned it. At this, the Saracens, whom I have mentioned, took two routes, since they were between the two walls of the city—that is to say, between the first walls and ditches, which were called the barbican, and the great [inner] walls and ditches of the city proper. Some of them entered by a gate of that great tower called the Accursed Tower, and moved towards San Romano, where the Pisans had their great engines. The others kept to the road, going to St. Anthony's Gate.

498 When the master of the Temple, who was at his *Auberge* with the men who were defending it, heard the drum beating, he realized that the Saracens were launching some assault.[1] The master gathered ten or twelve brethren and his own household troops and headed for the St. Anthony Gate, right between the two walls.

On the way, he passed the Hospitaller sector, and he summoned the master of the Hospital to join him. The Hospitaller master in turn collected some of his brethren, and some knights of Cyprus and of the Holy Land, and some footmen. They moved towards the St. Anthony Gate, where they found the Saracens coming in on foot, and they counter-attacked them.

But it was all to no effect, as I have explained, for there were too many Saracens. When the two masters of the Temple and the Hospital arrived there and went into combat, it seemed as if they hurled themselves against a stone wall. Those of the enemy who were hurling Greek fire hurled it so often and so thickly that there was so much smoke that one man could scarcely see another. Amongst the smoke, archers shot feathered arrows so densely that our men and mounts were terribly hurt.

It happened that one poor English *valé* was so badly hit by the Greek fire which the Saracens were hurling that his surcoat burst into flames. There was no one to help him, and so his face was burned, and then his whole body, and he burned as if he had been a cauldron of pitch, and he died there. He was on foot when this happened, because his mount had been slain under him.

The Saracens hung back for a bit, and then raised their shields and moved forward a little ways, and when men charged down on them, they straightway fixed all their shields and drew up. They did not cease from their work of hurling javelins and casting Greek fire all day. This conflict, this [particular] confused struggle, lasted up until mid-morning.

In this place a great misfortune befell, by which those Saracens who had come into the city, as I have said, were able to enter more easily and quickly, and by which our people were greatly disheartened. The occasion was this: a javelin came at the master of the Temple, just as he raised his left hand. He had no shield save his spear in his right hand. The javelin struck him under the armpit, and the shaft sank into his body a palm's-length; it came in through the gap where the plates of the armor were not joined. This was not his proper armor, but rather light armor for putting on hastily at an alarm.

When he felt himself mortally wounded, he turned to go. Some of the defenders thought that he was retiring because he wanted to save himself. The standard-bearer saw him go, and fell in behind him, and then all his household followed as well. After he had gone some way, twenty crusaders from the Vallo di Spoleto saw him withdrawing, and they called to him, "Oh for God's sake, Sir, don't leave, or the city will fall at once!" And he cried out to them in a loud voice, so that everyone could hear him: "My lords, I can do no more, for I am killed; see the wound here!"

And then we saw the javelin stuck in his body, and as he spoke he dropped the spear on the ground, and his head slumped to one side. He started to fall from his horse, but those of his household sprang down from their horses and supported him and took him off, and laid him on a shield that they found cast off there, a tall, broad buckler. They carried him off toward the St. Anthony Gate, but found it closed; instead, they found a small door which had a bridge leading from the *fosse* into the residence of the Lady Maria of Antioch, which had previously belonged to Sir James of La Mandelée....

He did not speak again, but gave up his soul to God. He was buried before his tabernacle, which was the altar where they said Mass. And God has his soul—but what great harm was caused by his death!

499 Now I will tell you what happened next.

As men learned what had happened, and saw the master carried off, they began one by one to abandon their posts and flee. For the Saracens, as I have said, had come through the Accursed Tower, and went straight through San Romano, and set fire to the great engine of the Pisans, and went down the straight road to the

[1] The "Auberge" of the Temple master was a fortification.

Germans[1] and took St. Leonard, and everyone they encountered they put to the sword. Other Saracens assaulted the Tower of the Legate, which was on the sea. From the edge of the sea to the foot of the tower, the Saracens prised off a latticework which had bars and points sticking out so that horses could not get through there. Then a great number of mounted Saracens came in. Sir John of Grailly and Sir Otto of Grandson and the men of the king of France[2] put up a fierce defence, so that there were many wounded and dead. But Sir John of Grailly and Sir Otto of Grandson were unable to withstand the Saracen pressure, and they withdrew from the place and saved themselves, Sir John of Grailly being wounded.

500 When Henry, King of Jerusalem and Cyprus, saw this disaster, he came to the master of the Hospital, and they perceived plainly that neither counsel nor reinforcement were of any further value, so they saved themselves and boarded their galleys.

7.6 The global economy: Francesco Balducci Pegolotti, *The Practice of Trade* (*c.*1340s). Original in Italian.

Francesco Balducci Pegolotti (d. after 1347) worked for the hugely successful banking and trading enterprises of the Bardi family in Florence. His travels on their behalf took him from Antwerp to Cyprus, and from other traders he learned about the going prices for exotic goods and the best trade routes to take whether going to Constantinople or China. The excerpt here describes how to go to China. The places that Pegolotti mentions (here modernized) are on Map 7.1.

1. What were the dangers a traveler might encounter during this trip?
2. In what ways could travelers protect themselves?

[Source: *Cathay and the Way Thither*, trans. and ed. Henry Yule, vol. 3 (Hakluyt Society, 1914, rpt. Kraus Reprint, Nendeln, 1967) (notes added and place names modernized)].

In the Name of the Lord, Amen!
This book is called the Book of Descriptions of Countries and of measures employed in business, and of other things needful to be known by merchants of different parts of the world, and by all who have to do with merchandise and exchanges; showing also what relation the merchandise of one country or of one city bears to that of others; and how one kind of goods is better than another kind; and where the various wares come from, and how they may be kept as long as possible.

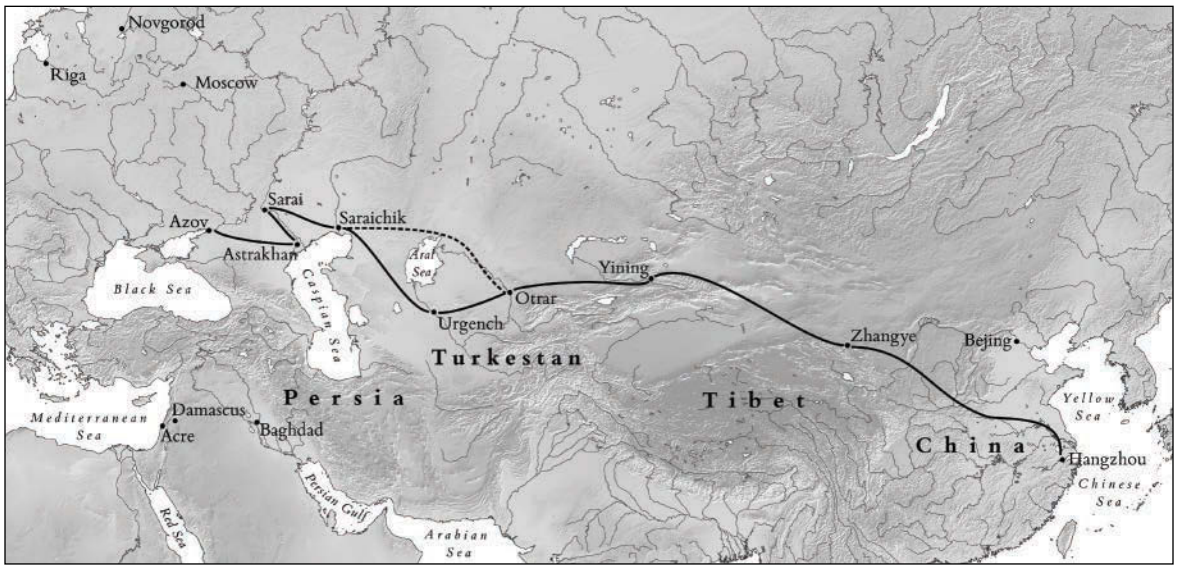
The book was compiled by Francesco Balducci Pegolotti of Florence, who was with the Company of the Bardi of Florence, and during the time that he was in the service of the said Company, for the good and honour and prosperity of the said Company, and for his own, and for that of whosoever shall read or transcribe the said book. And this copy has been made from the book of Agnolo di Lotti of Antella, and the said book was transcribed from the original book of the said Francesco Balducci.

Chapter I.
Information regarding the journey to China, for such as will go by Azov and come back with goods.

In the first place, from Azov to Astrakhan may be twenty-five days with an ox-wagon, and from ten to twelve

[1] The convent of the Teutonic Knights.

[2] In 1254, when he left the Crusader States to return to France, King Louis IX left a regiment behind at Acre. In 1291, its commander was John of Grailly.



Map 7.1 Place Names from Azov to Hangzhou

days with a horse-wagon.[1] On the road you will find plenty of *Moccols*, that is to say, of *gens d'armes*.[2] And from Astrakhan to Sarai may be a day by river, and from Sarai to Saraichik, also by river, eight days.[3] You can do this either by land or by water; but by water you will be at less charge for your merchandise.

From Saraichik to Urgench may be twenty days' journey in camel-wagon.[4] It will be well for anyone travelling with merchandise to go to Urgench, for in that city there is a ready sale for goods. From Urgench to Otrar is thirty-five to forty days in camel-wagons. But if when you leave Saraichik you go direct to Otrar, it is a journey of fifty days only, and if you have no merchandise it will be better to go this way than to go Urgench.[5]

From Otrar to Yining is forty-five days' journey with pack-asses, and every day you find Moccols.[6] And from Yining to Zhangye[7] is seventy days with asses, and from Zhangye until you come to a river called ... is forty-five days on horseback; and then you can go down the river to Hangzhou, and there you can dispose of the *sommi* of silver that you have with you, for that is a most active place of business.[8] ...

Chapter II.
Things needful for merchants who desire to make the journey to China above described.

In the first place, you must let your beard grow long and not shave. And at Azov you should furnish yourself with a dragoman.[9] And you must not try to save money in the matter of dragomen by taking a bad one instead of a good one. For the additional wages of the good one will not cost you so much as you will save by having him. And besides the dragoman it will be well to take at least two good men servants, who are acquainted with the Cumanian [Mongol] tongue. And if the merchant likes to take a woman with him from Azov he can do so; if he does not like to take one there is no obligation, only if

[1] Azov is at the western end of the Don River and Astrakhan is where the Don River starts from the Caspian Sea. See Map 7.1.

[2] Perhaps *Moccols* were Mongols, or perhaps bandits. *Gens d'armes* are men-at-arms.

[3] Sarai, on a channel of the Volga River, was the capital city of the Golden Horde. Saraichik is today in Kazakhstan.

[4] Urgench is in western Uzbekistan.

[5] Otrar is in Kazakhstan. Clearly Pegolotti is not describing a straight path but rather various options for the voyage.

[6] Yining is in China, about 400 miles east of Kyrgystan.

[7] Zhangye is in Gansu Province, about 1200 miles east of Yining.

[8] Hangzhou is basically at China's eastern seaboard. *Sommi* of silver were silver ingots.

[9] A dragoman is an interpreter and guide.

he does take one he will be kept much more comfortably than if he does not take one. However, if he does take one, it will be well that she be acquainted with the Cumanian tongue as well as the men.

And from Azov travelling to Astrakhan you should take with you twenty-five days' provisions, that is to say, flour and salt fish, for as to meat you will find enough of it at all the places along the road. And so also at all the chief stations noted in going from one country to another in the route, according to the number of days set down above, you should furnish yourself with flour and salt fish; other things you will find in sufficiency, and especially meat.

The road you travel from Azov to China is perfectly safe, whether by day or by night, according to what the merchants say who have used it. Only if the merchant, in going or coming, should die upon the road, everything belonging to him will become the perquisite of the lord of the country in which he dies, and the officers of the lord will take possession of all. And in like manner if he die in China. But if his brother be with him, or an intimate friend and comrade calling himself his brother, then to such a one they will surrender the property of the deceased, and so it will be rescued.

And there is another danger: this is when the lord of the country dies, and before the new lord who is to have the lordship is proclaimed; during such intervals there have sometimes been irregularities practised on the Franks, and other foreigners. (They call *Franks* all the Christians of these parts from Greece westward.) And neither will the roads be safe to travel until the other lord be proclaimed who is to reign in [the place] of him who is deceased.

China is a province which contained a multitude of cities and towns. Among others there is one in particular, that is to say the capital city, ... in which there is a vast amount of trade, and this city is called Beijing. And the said city has a circuit of one hundred miles and is all full of people and houses and of dwellers in the said city.

You may calculate that a merchant with a dragoman, and with two men servants, and with goods to the value of twenty-five thousand golden florins, should spend on his way to China from sixty to eighty *sommi* of silver, and not more if he manages well; and for all the road back again from China to Azov, including the expenses of living and the pay of servants, and all other charges, the cost will be about five *sommi* per head of pack animals, or something less. And you may reckon the *sommo* to be worth five golden florins.[1] You may reckon also that each ox-wagon will require one ox and will carry ten cantars Genoese weight; and the camel-wagon will require three camels, and will carry thirty cantars Genoese weight; and the horse-wagon will require one horse, and will commonly carry six and half cantars of silk, at 250 Genoese pounds to the cantar.[2] And a bale of silk may be reckoned at between 110 and 115 Genoese pounds.

You may reckon also that from Azov to Sarai the road is less safe than on any other part of the journey; and yet even when this part of the road is at its worst, if you are some sixty men in the company you will go as safely as if you were in your own house.

Anyone from Genoa or from Venice, wishing to go to the places above-named, and to make the journey to China should carry linens with him, and if he visits Urgench he will dispose of these well. In Urgench he should purchase *sommi* of silver, and with these he should proceed without making any further investment, unless it be some bales of the very finest stuffs which go in small bulk, and cost no more for carriage than coarser stuffs would do.

Merchants who travel this road can ride on horseback or on asses or mounted in any way that they want to be mounted.

Whatever silver the merchants may carry with them as far as China the lord of China will take from them and put into his treasury. And to merchants who thus bring silver they give that paper money of theirs in exchange. This is of yellow paper, stamped with the seal of the lord aforesaid. And this money is called *balishi*; and with this money you can readily buy silk and all other merchandize that you have a desire to buy.[3] And all the people of the country are bound to receive it. And yet you shall not pay a higher price for your goods because your money is of paper. And of the said paper money there are three kinds, one being worth more than another, according to the value which has been established for each by that lord.

---

[1] The gold florin was originally minted at Florence in 1252 and widely adopted. Also called a ducat, it was worth perhaps $150 in today's money. Since Pegolotti says that the *sommo* is equal to 5 florins, his model merchant carries $3,750,000 worth of goods to China, spending $45,000 to $60,000 on his way there and less (because of the diminished need for pack animals) on his way back.

[2] The Genoese pound was equivalent to about twelve ounces.

[3] The Chinese did indeed print paper money, first issued in the early twelfth century.

NEW FORMATIONS IN EASTERN EUROPE

7.7 Poland as a frontier society: *The Henryków Book* (*c.*1268). Original in Latin.

The Henryków Book was written by Peter, the third abbot of a Cistercian monastery founded in Henryków (Silesia) in the thirteenth century. The book contained a mix of history—much of it based on oral testimony—and legal documents; Peter intended it, he said, to protect his monastery against "the malice and iniquity of some." He meant claimants to the monastery's lands. Many of the people who threatened the monks' landholding were heirs of those who had previously donated or sold their land to the monastery. That explains why his book was organized around specific pieces of land, and why Peter mingled narratives about how the monastery got that land with documents that buttressed its claims. Historians may use Peter's account to analyze various tensions in Silesian society as well as the monastery's relationship to outside forces. Silesia (which at the time Peter was writing was a duchy of Poland) was a frontier region, lying between the old heartland of Poland (centered on Gniezno) and Germany. Peter noted the presence of German and Czech settlers in the region, but his focus was on the Piasts, the reigning ducal family in Poland. One branch of the Piasts held Silesia. For Peter, there were two periods of history: the time of the good dukes (before 1241) and the time thereafter, which followed the invasion of Silesia by the "pagans"—by this term Peter meant the Mongols—and their defeat and slaying of Duke Henry II the Pious at the battle of Legnica (1241). This, according to Peter, ushered in a period of weak dukes—"boyish" or "juvenile" were the epithets Peter used for them—and led to the period of conflict and disorder in which he was writing.

1. How did the Mongols, the dukes, the Northern Crusades, and the German settlers make Henryków's thirteenth-century Silesia different from Cluny's tenth- and eleventh-century Burgundy on p. 184 above?
2. Why did Albert give land to Henryków; why did he reclaim it; and how was the dispute between the monks and Albert resolved?

[Source: Piotr Górecki, *A Local Society in Transition: The* Henryków Book *and Related Documents* (Toronto: Pontifical Institute of Medieval Studies, 2007), pp. 91, 105–8 (notes modified). Translated by Piotr Górecki.]

HERE BEGINS THE TREATISE INTRODUCING THE FIRST BOOK ABOUT THE FOUNDATION OF THE CLOISTER OF SAINT MARY THE VIRGIN IN HENRYKÓW.

[1] Because the deeds of the mortals grow old and are dimmed by a fog of oblivion in the course of time and with the long succession of posterity, it has wisely been decreed to entrust them to the memory of succeeding generations by a record of letters. Therefore we, the First monks transferred from the holy and venerable community of the monastery of Lubiaz to plant the flower of divine service in Henryków, have decided to reveal to our successors by the present writing in what way—meaning from what persons and for what reason—this house has assumed the beginnings of its foundation.

And because through the succession of diverse times and persons the good deeds of the faithful are sometimes violated by the malice and iniquity of some among those

who come after them, we have expressed in the present booklet, by a truthful narration, how—meaning from what persons and by what authority—the gifts of all the inheritances which this cloister has peacefully possessed since the beginnings [of the rule] the first Abbot Henry until the most recent times of the fourth Abbot Geoffrey,[1] have accrued to this church, and been confirmed in its eternal possession: so that the knights of Christ who slave for Almighty God in this place for a long time to come may be able to refute any claim leveled against them and answer the adversaries of their house with reasoned reflection, because, thanks to this book, they know the origins of each gift and the cause [of the monks' possession] of each inheritance....

ABOUT CIENKOWICE.

[45] We will say about Cienkowice how and why the cloister may possess part of it. In the days when the cloister of Henryków was being founded, there was a certain rather powerful knight by the name of Albert, and by the nickname of Lyka in Polish, who possessed [land] in Cieplowoda. This same Albert took as wife a daughter of a certain noble by the name of Dzierzko, and begat a daughter by her. When she was born, the wife herself died at once.[2] After her death, Albert granted to the cloister a part of his inheritance of Cieplowoda, in the amount of two plows,[3] to be possessed forever for the soul of his father, then dead, and for his own sins.

[46] *About the gift and the alms of Albert with Beard*. Albert made this gift in the year of the Lord 1229. That same year, Albert went to Prussia for the sins of his father and for his own sins.[4] But before he embarked on that journey, he ordained before the lord duke and the barons that if he should not return, the cloister of Henryków was to possess the entire territory of Cieplowoda; while if he did return, the cloister was to keep that part which he had granted earlier, in the amount of two plows. But because in those days men were simple, without the bile of malice, no privilege was requested from the duke about this deed at that time. Albert returned from Prussia healthy and whole, and later took a German wife by whom he begat sons and daughters. Yet, the cloister possessed from him and from his sons the land which he had granted out of his Cieplowoda, peacefully and for many years.

[47] *What happened in the land after the pagans*. However, as soon as the pagans[5] entered this land, and did much in it that was worthy of lament, and after the celebrated Duke [Henry II] was killed, this land was dominated by knights, each of whom seized whatever pleased him from the duke's inheritances. Hence the said Albert procured for himself from the boyish Duke Boleslaw[6] two ducal inheritances adjoining his [estate], Cienkowice and Kubice, for a modest sum of money.

[48] *About the purchase*. In order, then, that [the sum of] this money, and the extent of the said inheritances, may be more fully known: this same Albert measured out in the said two villages thirty large hides, for which hides he gave the juvenile Duke Boleslaw thirty silver marks;[7] and, after eliminating the heirs of these villages, he joined these hides to his village of Cieplowoda. Hence the names of the said villages were completely obliterated, and changed to the name of Count Albert's village, Cieplowoda.

[49] *A further account of this*. While this and many similar evils, very harmful to the dukes, were taking place in the land, the said Albert began to settle his Cieplowoda, together with the aforesaid [two] villages, with Germans.[8] But because that portion [of Cieplowoda] which he had given to the cloister lay in the kind of place that prevented him from establishing a German village in one piece there unless he redeemed the cloister's arable fields for himself, he repeatedly asked lord Bodo, abbot of this cloister at that time, to resign to him the land which he had earlier given to the cloister for his sins, and to receive the same amount [of land] near the cloister's old boundaries, that is, in the corner of Cienkowice. Weary of his repeated insistence and prayers, at last the abbot finally—albeit reluctantly—consented to him, and

---

1 Abbots of Henryków during the years 1227–1234 and 1269–1273, respectively.

2 Presumably in childbirth.

3 "Two plows" indicates the area that two plows could work in a day.

4 Presumably as a crusader against the Baltic Prussians.

5 I.e., the Mongols.

6 Duke Boleslaw II the Bald (1220/1225–1278) was the oldest son of Henry II the Pious. He succeeded his father to the rule of the Duchy of Silesia in 1242, a year after the battle of Legnica.

7 A mark was a unit of account. In the Piast duchies it was equal to about 240 pence.

8 That is, he recruited new settlers from Germany and allotted land to them. In return, they paid him dues.

made the exchange with him, receiving near the cloister's boundaries in Cienkowice as much [land] as he had held in Cieplowoda; and he resigned to Count Albert what he was asking for. Hence the name of Cienkowice lives on today for the parcel which we have there.

[50] *Here ends the reason why the cloister possesses Cienkowice*. Here, brothers, the reason why you possess Cienkowice has been set out to you....

7.8 The Lithuanian duke flirts with Christianity: Duke Gediminas, *Letter to Pope John XXII* (1322) and *Letter to the townspeople of Lübeck, Rostock, Stralsund, Greifswald, Stettin, and Gotland* (May 26, 1323). Original in Latin.

Gediminas was grand duke of the pagan duchy of Lithuania from 1315/1316 until his death in 1341. Remembered as one of Lithuania's most influential medieval rulers, he is often credited with consolidating Lithuania politically and expanding Lithuanian lands from the Baltic Sea to the Dnieper River basin in present-day Ukraine. While the reign of Gediminas marks a period of great political and military achievement for Lithuania, it was also a time of unrelenting conflict with the Teutonic Knights.

Transcripts of six letters drafted by Franciscan scribes between 1322 and 1325 at the request of Gediminas survive today.[1] Addressed to all Christians living in Western Europe, including the pope, the townspeople of Baltic Germany (the Hansa), and the mendicant orders of Saxony, these letters reveal that Gediminas may have been willing to make certain concessions to end the conflict with the Teutonic Order and encourage immigration to Lithuanian lands. The sincerity of his claims remains an important topic of historical debate. The following selection includes the grand duke's first letter to Pope John XXII (1316–1334), the second of the Avignon popes, and a letter to member cities of the Hanseatic League.

1. Why did Gediminas claim that he was ready to obey the pope as do "other Christian kings"?
2. Why did Gediminas issue invitations to new settlers and what types of liberties and exemptions did he grant?

[Source: *Chartularium Lithuaniae res gestas magni ducis Gedeminne illustrans / Gedimino laiškai*, ed. S.C. Rowell (Vilnius: Leidykla Vaga, 2003), pp. 38–41, 58–62. Translated and introduced by Kristina Markman.]

[1] The text of these letters survives in contemporary transcripts in the archives of Riga, Berlin, and the Vatican. The documents were reproduced from the originals at the request of Gediminas himself, who in the addendum to each letter instructed that it be copied for wider circulation.

Letter of Gediminas to Pope John XXII [1322]

To the most excellent father, lord John, the supreme pontiff of the Roman See, Gediminas, King of the Lithuanians and many Ruthenians,[1] etc.

For a long time, we have heard that all the worshippers of the Christian faith ought to be subject to your authority and paternity, and that the Catholic faith itself is governed by the foresight of the Roman Church. It is henceforth that we declare to your reverence in the present letter that our predecessor King Mindaugas with his entire kingdom was converted to the faith of Christ,[2] but, because of the atrocious injuries and innumerable treacheries of the master of the brothers of the Teutonic Order, they all withdrew from the faith, and thus, to our sorrow, until this very day, we remain in the error of our forefathers. For many times, in order to make peace, our predecessors sent to the archbishops of Riga[3] their envoys whom they [Teutonic Knights] brutally murdered, as is well known by [the case of] lord Isarnus[4] who, on behalf of lord Boniface,[5] arranged a peace and truce with us and the brothers of the Teutonic Order and sent his letters to us,[6] but, [when] the envoys were returning from lord Isarnus, [Teutonic Knights] killed some on the way, [and] hung the others or forced them to drown themselves.

Likewise, our predecessor King Vytenis[7] sent a letter to the legate lord Francis and the lord Archbishop Frederick of Riga[8] asking that they send to him two brothers from the Franciscan Order, allotting them a place and already having built them a church. Knowing this, the Prussian brothers of the Teutonic Order sent an army by a back route and set fire to said church. Moreover, they captured lord archbishops, bishops, and priests, as is well known from [the case of] lord John[9] who died in the curia in the times of lord Boniface, and from [the case of] lord Archbishop Frederick whom they treacherously drove out of the church, [and] also from [the case of] one cleric, lord Berthold, whom they cruelly killed in the city of Riga in his very own house.

Likewise, they lay waste to lands, as is evident in Semigallia[10] and many others places. However, they say that they do this in order to defend Christians. Holy and revered Father, we do not fight Christians in order to destroy the Catholic faith, but in order to oppose injuries to our people as do [other] Christian princes and kings; this is evident because we have among us brothers from the Franciscan Order and the Dominican Order to whom we have given full freedom to baptize, preach, and administer other sacred rites.

In fact, revered Father, we wrote you this so that you know why our forefathers fell back into the error of infidelity and disbelief. Now, however, holy and revered Father, we pray that you might take notice of our lamentable situation because we are ready, like other Christian kings, to obey you in everything and receive the Catholic

---

[1] *Ruthenia* is the Latin for Kievan Rus. In the 1240s, Lithuanian duke Mindaugas (d.1263) conquered the region of Black Ruthenia (today western Belarus). His successors continued to push eastward annexing Russian lands. Gediminas's title—king of Lithuanians and many Ruthenians—reflects Lithuania's territorial acquisitions from the late thirteenth to early fourteenth centuries.

[2] In 1253, Mindaugas was baptized and crowned king of Lithuania. After a short period of relative peace with the Livonian branch of the Teutonic Order, civil war broke out in Lithuania and Mindaugas was assassinated in 1263. It is unknown whether he apostatized from Christianity as the letter states.

[3] The archbishopric of Riga in medieval Livonia was the most important Catholic archdiocese in the region. Jurisdictional disputes led to a power struggle between the archbishop, the citizens of the city of Riga, and the Livonian Order.

[4] Isarnus Tacconi of Fontiès-d'Aude, archbishop of Riga (r.1300–1302).

[5] Pope Boniface VIII (1294–1303).

[6] These letters do not survive.

[7] Vytenis, probably Gediminas's brother, was grand duke of Lithuania 1295–1315/1316.

[8] Frederick von Pernstein, archbishop of Riga (r.1304–1341). In 1311, Pope Clement V (1305–1314) sent Francis of Moliano to Riga to investigate charges of abuse brought against the Livonian branch of the Teutonic Order by Frederick. On the basis of Francis' report, the pope excommunicated the Livonian branch of the Teutonic Order for one year and imposed an interdict on the Order's lands in 1312.

[9] John III of Schwerin, archbishop of Riga (r.1294–1300). In 1297, the Teutonic Knights attacked the archbishop's castle, seized the archbishop, and held him prisoner for thirty-three days. In 1299, John traveled to Rome to plead his case in the papal curia where he remained until his death in 1300, as noted in the letter.

[10] Semigallia or Zemgale (today in Latvia) was a territory claimed by the Lithuanian dukes.

faith, provided that we are restrained in nothing by said torturers, namely by said master[1] and brothers.

Letter of Gediminas to the townspeople of Lübeck, Rostock, Stralsund, Greifswald, Stettin, and Gotland [May 26, 1323]

Gediminas, by the grace of God, King of the Lithuanians and Ruthenians, Prince and Duke of Semigallia, to honorable men, prudent and honest counselors, magistrates and citizens of Lübeck, Rostock, Stralsund, Greifswald, Stettin,[2] and Gotland,[3] to merchants and artisans of all conditions, [sends] greetings and royal grace and favor.

Since all kingdoms, of which we hold one, are subject to the heavenly king, Jesus Christ, just as form in matter or as a slave in [his master's] house, although we appear the least of all kings, nevertheless, by the providence of God, we are the greatest in our own [realm], in which we retain [the right] to direct and to govern, to destroy and to save, to close and to open. For a little while now, you have crossed our borders without any inspection [on the way] to visit Novgorod and Pskov. All this we permitted for the sake of the general good. Now you have seen and heard from day to day all the harm [that befalls] your [people].[4] Our forefathers sent to you their envoys and letters, opened their land to you, [but] none of your people came, not even a dog from your parts rendered gratitude for our offers. May the things written above not frighten you! If [our forefathers] themselves promised one thing, with the blessing of God, we will double it. For that reason all the more, we have sent our letter to our Father, the most holy lord Pope, regarding a union with the church of God, and with indescribable impatience are awaiting the arrival of his legates, whose stay we guaranteed to oversee in writing. Therefore, [after] consulting with yourselves, send to us from all your parts earnest envoys, true and worthy men of faith; above our signature and at the top of the present letter, confirmed by the royal seal, thereupon we promise to all of you, having given our pledge, that we will arrange such a peace between us that even Christians have never experienced the like.

We will gather bishops, priests, devout members of the Franciscan and Dominican Orders, whose lives are praiseworthy and admirable; [but] we do not wish such men to come who make monasteries into a refuge for thieves, sell alms to the detriment of their soul, and emerge from [their hideout] in thieving bands to harass and murder clerics; we advise every ruler to beware of such monks.

In addition, above [that which was granted by] all our predecessors, we now grant according to royal decree in the present charter our land to be free, without any tolls, exaction of services and duties[5] to all merchants, knights, [and] vassals, whom we will endow with incomes to each according to his status. To artisans of all conditions, namely craftsmen, cobblers, carpenters, stonemasons, saltmakers,[6] millers, silversmiths, cross-bow makers, fishermen, or others of any condition, let them come with their children, wives, and livestock, let them come and go as they please, far-removed from all disturbances because, having given our pledge in these matters, we swore that they will remain safe and exempt from all wrongful attacks by our subjects.

To farmers who wish to come and reside in our kingdom, we offer and grant [the right] to cultivate up to ten years freely and without [paying] the *cens*,[7] and exemption from all royal dues for half that time; upon expiration of said period and also depending upon the fertility of their land, they will pay a tithe[8] as in all other kingdoms or as they have been accustomed to give in their own; in such a way then, grain will be more abundant for us than the norm in all other kingdoms.

---

[1] Gediminas is likely referring to the reigning grandmaster, Karl von Trier (r.1311–1324).

[2] Today Szczecin, West Pomerania, Poland.

[3] All of these cities were members of the Hanseatic League.

[4] Gediminas is likely referring to the reports of abuse issued by the archbishops of Riga, dukes of Poland, and various local Baltic municipalities against the Teutonic Knights.

[5] Here Gediminas is referring to compulsory service owed to the lord, particularly military service, and the requisition of vehicles and horses for military purposes.

[6] The actual phrase used by Gediminas is "those trained in the art of salt." This may refer to miners, refiners, etc.

[7] The *cens* was an annual tax paid for the right to use and work land.

[8] The tithe was an annual compulsory tax in the amount of 10 per cent of all income, paid in currency or kind.

Let all townspeople enjoy the civil law of the city of Riga,[1] unless by that time, in accordance with the sound counsel of men of discretion there will be found better. So that we might make you more secure and certain, we have erected two churches for the Franciscan Order, one in our royal city called Vilnius[2] and another in Novgorodok,[3] and a third for the Dominican Order, so that anyone may worship God according to his rite.

Therefore, in order that our grant of privileges may remain impermeable and strong, we have ordered the present charter to be written and we reinforced it by affixing our seal; because knowing this—that we sent the same seal to our Lord and most holy Father and copied everything in our letter to him—[you can be assured] we will preserve this [grant] in its entirety. In this letter, we repudiate deniers of our seal just as if they were malicious destroyers of the faith, heretics, liars, and men deprived of all honor. Through the duchy of the lord Boleslaw, Duke of Masovia,[4] everyone will be able to have secure entry to us, to our [land] holdings.

Given in Vilnius, in the year of our Lord 1323 on the feast day of Corpus Christi. After the letter has been read in one city, we ask that under the witness of devout and other worthy men of faith that it be copied and sent without delay to another city so that our desire may be revealed to all. Farewell.

7.9 Pagan Lithuania in Christian Europe: Peter of Dusburg, *Chronicle of the Prussian Land* (*c.*1320–1326). Original in Latin.

Peter of Dusburg (d.*c.*1326) was a priest-brother of the Teutonic Order. His *Chronicle of the Prussian Land*, which was completed in 1326 and dedicated to Grandmaster Werner von Orseln, represents the first official history of the Teutonic Order in Prussia. At the time of its composition, the Order's military practices and methods of conversion had come under widespread criticism. The *Chronicle* provides not only detailed accounts of the Order's victories and heroic deeds, but also serves as an ideological justification of the Order's status and activities in the Baltic. The following selections are taken from the final chapters of the *Chronicle*, which deal exclusively with the Order's war against the Lithuanians.

1. What crimes did Peter accuse the Lithuanians of committing?
2. How were the accusations brought by Peter against the Lithuanians similar to those of Gediminas against the Teutonic Knights (see p. 404 above)?

[Source: Peter of Dusburg, *Chronicon Terrae Prussiae*, ed. Max Töppen in *Scriptores Rerum Prussicarum*, I, pp. 3–219, ed. Theodor Hirsch et al. (Frankfurt am Main: Minerva, 1861, rpt. 1965), pp. 186–94. Translated and introduced by Kristina Markman.]

[1] Riga was granted Lübeck Law in 1201, though it did not become a member of the Hanseatic League until 1281. The law provided for self-government, making the city independent from imperial oversight and dues.

[2] This is the first known reference to Vilnius as a royal or capital city.

[3] Today Navahrudak, Belarus.

[4] Boleslaw II, duke of Masovia (today in east-central Poland), r.1294–1313. Gediminas refers to the combined territory of his sons, Siemowit and Trojden, as the "duchy of the lord Boleslaw."

341. On the devastation of the diocese of Dorpat in the land of Livonia.

Meanwhile, when that army of the brothers was in said territories,[1] the Lithuanians with a great multitude of people entered the land of Livonia,[2] and besides other damages that they caused in the diocese of Dorpat[3] with fire and sword,[4] they killed more than five thousand Christians and led them away into eternal captivity.

343. On the plunder of Reval, the land of the Danish king.

At the same time, David the *castellan* of Garth[5] with an army of Lithuanians entered Reval, the land of the Danish king,[6] and besides other infinite damages which he inflicted upon said land with fire and sword, he captured and killed more than five thousand noble Christian men, women, girls, and others of both genders. He also killed many parish and monastic priests. He barbarically defiled and desecrated holy places, churches, sacred vestments and altar vessels, and everything else used for worship.

344. On the destruction of the city of Memel and many castles.

In the same year [1323], on the third day after the feast of Pope St. Gregory,[7] Lithuanians from Samogitia[8] with their army took the city of Memel[9] and killed one priest-brother of the Teutonic Order. They also seized seventy people in that city, some of whom were killed, [and] others taken away into eternal captivity. The city itself and three nearby newly converted castles, cogs[10] and other ships, and everything else that could be destroyed by fire, except only the castle inhabited by the brothers, they turned to ash.

346. On the destruction of the duchy and city of Dobrzyń and the death and capture of nine thousand Christians.

On the feast day of the Exaltation of the Holy Cross[11] in the same year [1323], the Lithuanians, seeing that everything happens according to their will,[12] once again gathered a strong army and went to the duchy of the noble lady, Duchess [Anastasia] of Dobrzyń,[13] and did away with six thousand people of both genders, slaughtering

---

1 In the previous passage (not included), Peter described the Teutonic Order's raid into Lithuania.

2 Livonia was once the region associated with parts of present-day northwestern Latvia and southwestern Estonia. In the fourteenth century, the territory was subdivided among the Livonian Order, a semi-autonomous branch of the Teutonic Order, the archbishopric of Riga, and the bishoprics of Courland, Ösel-Wiek, and Dorpat.

3 The bishopric of Dorpat was a medieval Catholic diocese, which existed from 1224 to 1558 and included parts of present-day Estonia.

4 Dusburg's frequent reference to destruction caused by *fire and sword* has biblical connotations. E.g.,

> "For the Lord shall judge by fire, and by his sword unto all flesh, and the slain of the Lord shall be many" (Isa. 66:16); "There shall the fire devour thee: thou shalt perish by the sword" (Nah. 3:15).

5 A *castellan* was the custodian of a castle and surrounding territories. Since the city of Garth (today Grodno, Belarus) guarded the pass from the West to Lithuanian holdings in Rus', the castellan of Garth played a critical military role in the defense of Lithuania. According to Peter, David was a close ally and loyal vassal of Gediminas. He is the most frequently mentioned Lithuanian character in the *Chronicle*.

6 The Danish ruled Reval (today Tallinn, Estonia) from 1219.

7 March 15, 1323.

8 Samogitia (Lithuanian-Žemaitija) is a region in northwestern Lithuania. The territory played a critical role in Lithuania's wars with the Teutonic Order as it geographically divided the land of the Order in Prussia from its holdings in Livonia. Samogitia remained one of the primary targets of Teutonic military campaigns.

9 Today Klaipėda, Lithuania.

10 A cog is a ship with a single mast and square-rigged sail.

11 September 14, 1323.

12 The tone is contemptuous. By drawing the reader's attention to the supposed arrogance of the Lithuanians, Peter rhetorically juxtaposes the pagans with the always humble and grateful Christian knights.

13 Dobrzyń was formerly a territory located in and around today's Dobrzyń nad Wisłą in Poland.

some and miserably leading away the others into eternal servitude of the pagans. In addition, they killed seven parish priests and two brothers of the Order of Saint Benedict along with six hundred clerics, both ordained and not ordained, who were found inside and outside the seminary. They also burnt ten parish churches, all the main villages, and the capital city of said duchy called Dobrzyń, where they captured and killed two thousand Christians. Along with said damages, they also carried off so much plunder and such diverse things that since the Christian faithful are to remain in the eternal servitude of the pagans, the land of said duchy (deserving of mournful memory) will hardly ever be able to recover from said devastation; and certainly it ought to frighten and sadden that due to the destruction of said duchy, the infidels will have easier access to the adjacent and neighboring lands of the Christians. Behold how much evil was brought upon the Christian faith and the faithful within the span of one and a half years for almost twenty thousand Christians were killed and led away into eternal captivity by the pagans and many cities and castles were completely destroyed.

349. On the destruction of an allod or the estate of David of Garth.

In the same year [1324], during Lent, three brothers and six hundred men[1] from Natangia[2] attacked the *allod*[3] or estate of David the castellan of Garth and burned it to the ground, and in addition to the dead, they led away thirty-eight people and one hundred horses along with a lot of other livestock.

356. On the legates of the Apostolic See and the peace made between the pagans and Christians.

In the same year [1324], the lord Pope John XXII, at the suggestion of brother Frederick from the Franciscan Order, the Archbishop of Riga,[4] and the citizens [of Riga], sent two legates to Livonia, namely Bartholomew, bishop of Electen,[5] and Bernard, abbot of the Benedictine monastery of St. Theofred[6] in the diocese of Aniciensis,[7] to baptize the king of the Lithuanians and Ruthenians. On the day after [the feast day] of the holy apostle and evangelist Matthew,[8] when they came to the city of Riga, they established a peace between said kings[9] and their subjects on the one side, and the Christians on the other, and ordered them to strictly observe the authority of the church, adding that whoever accidentally happens to become the violator of this peace or do anything by word or deed, plan or action that could hinder this beneficial negotiation or delay it in any way will receive the sentence of excommunication *ipso facto* from which he cannot be absolved except by the Apostolic See before which he must present himself within three months to undergo there the penalty owed for his violation. After this, the legates sent loyal envoys to Gediminas, king of the Lithuanians, to offer him an arrangement as commissioned to them by the Apostolic See, and to carefully find out if he, himself, along with the people of his kingdom might wish to receive the grace of baptism and, relinquishing idolatry, humbly honor the name of our Lord Jesus Christ.[10]

---

[1] A typical invading army of the Teutonic Order consisted of a handful of knight-brothers (often no more than half a dozen) and hundreds of mercenaries, volunteers, lay knights, native recruits, and colonists who owed military service to the Teutonic Order.

[2] Natangia (named after the Baltic tribe that once lived in the area) was formerly a region of Prussia covering present-day Kaliningrad Oblast in Russia. According to Peter, the Teutonic Knights subdued the last Natangian uprising in 1295. Some Natangians owed military service to the Knights, while others served as mercenaries and volunteers in their army.

[3] An *allod* or *allodium* refers to hereditary land owned outright and exempt from feudal duties.

[4] Frederick von Pernstein, archbishop of Riga (r.1304–1341).

[5] The diocese of Electen (today Alet, France) was established in 1318. Bartholomew was its first bishop (r.1318–1333).

[6] Today the Abbey of Saint-Chaffre-du-Monastier (Chaffre is the French vulgarization of Théofrède).

[7] Today Le Puy-en-Velay, France.

[8] September 22, 1324.

[9] Peter is referring to the legates' affirmation of the peace treaty concluded on October 2, 1323 between Gediminas, the Livonian Order, the viceroy of Reval, the archbishop, and the citizens of Riga. In August 1324, the pope wrote to the grandmaster of the Teutonic Order commanding him to uphold the treaty.

[10] A copy of the report made by the envoys of the papal legates survives.

357. On the destruction of the land of Masovia.

Therefore, when the peace was confirmed and the brothers and other Christians in the lands of Livonia and Prussia and other neighboring areas truly believed that they ought not wage war, and they already arranged to forge their swords into plowshares and their spears into scythes, that wicked enemy of the faith and the faithful, like a deaf asp,[1] closed his ears to the salutary admonitions of the lord Pope put forth to him by said envoys with great care, because when he had to think about his salvation and that of his people, namely how he could receive the sacrament of baptism with dignity and with due reverence, himself following in the footsteps of his predecessors, he turned all his efforts to the destruction of the faith and the faithful. In fact, [Gediminas] commanded that David, his castellan of Garth, with a strong army enter the land of Masovia and a city called Poltus[2] in the diocese of Ploczensis[3] on the eleventh calends of December,[4] and devastate by fire and sword one hundred and thirty villages of said diocese of the duke of Masovia, and many estates of priests and nobles, and thirty parish churches and chapels along with many oratories dedicated to the glory of God. Impudently handling holy objects, sacred vestments and vessels, they killed priests, monastic and parish alike, and more than four thousand others of both genders, slaughtering some and leading away others into eternal captivity.

361. On the devastation of the land of the Margraviate of Brandenburg and the death and capture of six thousand Christians.

In the year of our Lord 1326, King Łokietek of Poland[5] asked Gediminas, king of the Lithuanians, whose daughter his son had just recently taken as a wife, to send him some soldiers from his people. [Gediminas], acquiescing to his request, sent him 1200 horsemen. At the behest of Łokietek, along with his men, with arms in hand, they invaded the land of Margraviate of Brandenburg[6] near the city of Frankfurt[7] and destroyed by fire and sword everything belonging to it, which included more than one hundred and forty villages, as many parish churches, three monastic houses and two pious convents of the Cistercian Order, and many other monastic and secular chapter houses, barbarically dragging monks and nuns from cloisters, ministers of the church and priests, carrying away sacred vessels, vestments, and other sacred objects. They killed the men but carried off the women and many noble ladies along with virgins and children into captivity. Among these virgins was one noble woman who, on account her eminence, had no equal in beauty; a great dispute arose between the Lithuanians in regards to who was to have her, but, so that it did not escalate into an altercation, a man approached her and cut her in half with his sword, saying: "She is divided into two parts. Let each take his equal share of her." And thus when that land lay waste and more than six thousand people had been killed or captured, they withdrew. A certain Pole, grieving about the great massacre of Christians, followed the [Lithuanian] army, pretending to be a friend of the pagans and, when they had come to an opportune place and time, before the eyes of many, he killed David the castellan of Garth and leader of this war who inflicted infinite evils, as mentioned above, against the faith and the faithful.

---

[1] See Ps. 58:4, Douay Ps. 57:5: "Their madness is according to the likeness of a serpent: like the deaf asp that stoppeth her ears:/ Which will not hear the voice of the charmers."

[2] Today Pultusk, Poland.

[3] Today the diocese of Plock, Poland.

[4] November 21, 1324.

[5] Władysław I Łokietek or Władysław the Elbow-High (d.1333) became king of Poland in 1320 after twenty years of struggle to reunite the duchies of Poland.

[6] The Margraviate or Mark of Brandenburg was a principality of the Holy Roman Empire. Armed conflict between Poland and Brandenburg arose over the land of Lubusz.

[7] Today Frankfurt (Oder) in Brandenburg, Germany.

7.10 Bulgaria claims a saint: *The Short Life of St. Petka (Paraskeve) of Tarnov* (13th cent.). Original in Old Church Slavonic.

After a successful revolt against Byzantine domination at the end of the twelfth century, Bulgaria established the Second Bulgarian Empire, with its ruler taking the title tsar (i.e., emperor). In the early thirteenth century, it went on the offensive against Byzantines (who by then had lost Constantinople to the crusaders and were divided among three successor states). Probably in 1231, after one such battle, Bulgarian Tsar Ivan Asen II (r.1218–1241) moved the relics of Saint Petka (in Greek Paraskeve) to his capital city of Tarnov (today Veliko Tarnovo), where she became the patron saint. Petka had been a tenth-century hermit in Kalikratia (in the Byzantine province of Thrace); in the twelfth century her local cult grew, and the patriarch of Constantinople commissioned a new *Life* for her. To this *The Short Life*, written in Old Church Slavonic for the needs of the Bulgarian Church, added an account of the triumphant translation of Petka's relics to Tarnov.

1. What virtues made Petka a saint?
2. What might have motivated the Bulgarian tsar to appropriate a Byzantine saint for Bulgaria?

[Source: Kiril Petkov, ed. and trans., *The Voices of Medieval Bulgaria, Seventh–Fifteenth Century: The Records of a Bygone Culture* (Leiden: Brill, 2008), pp. 274–76 (notes modified).]

On the same day [October 14][1] is the memory of the holy and blessed Paraskeve [Petka]. This holy and blessed Petka hailed from the village of Epivat, [in the district of] the city of Kalikratia. She was the daughter of faithful parents who were neither too wealthy nor too powerful, nor were they afflicted by poverty.

When she came of age, she took a firm decision to embrace the angelic life. She left her parents and friends and all those who lived in the world and followed Christ. Borne on the wings of virtue, she settled in the desert and remained there attached to silent life, which was, indeed, angelic, and tormented her body with fast and vigils. There she had no food and drink; tears and incessant prayers were her nourishment and sustenance. Spending all of her life in this way she enlightened herself with virtue in that place and lived a worthy life. Her reason and conscience were joined and bound together and were always aiming high. She did not wish to affiliate herself to anyone of this world but dwelled focused on the Lord and toiled along the steep and difficult road.

When she felt that her end was near, she left the desert and set off for Constantinople. She visited all the holy places and spent a short while there; then she went back to her native place, Kalikratia, and there she yielded up her blessed spirit in the hands of the living God and accepted the distinction of the heavenly crown.

It happened that in that time a certain sailor was afflicted by a deadly disease. He soon died and they buried him by a tower. His grave emitted such a foul odor that no one dared go down that road. A hermit dwelled in that place and he had to get down from the tower[2] and bury the corpse deeper to get rid of the stench. Other people heard about that and [wishing to help] took the body from the roadside [and began digging] to bury it right next to the body of the saint. When they saw her body—whole, perfectly preserved, and sound—they

[1] The *Short Life of Petka* is contained in a collection of short lives of saints that were used as daily readings in church. Evidently more than one of these was read on October 14.

[2] Apparently he lived on a column, in the manner of Symeon Stylites.

marveled. Then they thought that if that body had been holy, God would have revealed it through miracles, and so they went away, leaving the body there.

However, one of them, by the name of George, had a marvelous and terrifying dream: a certain queen sat on a throne and a multitude of officials were about her. At this sight he was seized by terror and fell down on his face. One of the bright men took him by the hand, lifted him up, and told him: "Man, don't you fear God? That body is holy! How could you bury that stinking and decaying corpse with the body of Petka, the servant of God?" [And the queen told him:] "Go right away and tell everyone to deliver me from that unbearable stench! If you do not do that, know that the divine fire will burn you and all of you will perish. Because I am human too, and my native land is Epivat."

That same night a woman by the name of Euthymia had the same vision. On the morning they told everyone about it. When they heard that, everyone took candles and gathered at the body of the saint. They dug out the body and laid it in a casket. Then they carried it to the church of the Holy Apostles where it pours out healing to this very day: the possessed get healed, the blind see the light, the lame get to walk, and the people afflicted by all kinds of disease get whole again.

The great Tsar Ivan Asen [II], son of the great and old Tsar Asen, heard about the miracles of the saint and strongly desired to transport the body of the saint to his land. Then the Franks ruled in Constantinople and paid tribute to Ivan Asen.[1] He, however, wanted neither silver nor precious stones, but set off with diligence and carried the saintly body to his glorious Tsarigrad[2] Tarnov. There he met it together with the patriarch, the entire clergy, and the people, and with candles, incense-burners, and every honor they laid her in the royal church.[3]

May through her prayers God welcome us in His Kingdom! Amen.

TRANSFORMATIONS IN THE CITIES

7.11 The *popolo* gains power: *The Ghibelline Annals of Piacenza* (1250). Original in Latin.

In the twelfth century, nobles dominated the towns of northern Italy, making their power concretely visible by building lofty town towers reminiscent of castles. In the thirteenth century, the nobles of most towns were challenged by the *popolo*—a group composed mainly of artisans and shopkeepers but also often joined by interested or opportunistic nobles—who formed local armed bands, tried to oust the nobles, and demanded a role in communal government. In many cities the struggle between the commune and the *popolo* ended in a sort of stalemate, each group gaining its own officials and laws. Eventually, however, representatives of the *popolo* were integrated in some manner alongside the head of the commune, the *podestà*. At Piacenza, an initial revolt of the *popolo* in the 1220s was led by the nobleman Guglielmo Landi, but he was expelled in 1236. In 1250, according to the so-called *Ghibelline Annals of Piacenza* (from which the excerpt here is taken), the *popolo* rose up again during a period of grain shortage. Originally led by a man named Antolino Saviagata, the *popolo* later named Uberto de Iniquitate, from a noble family rival to the Landi family, to lead it. Soon factions within the *popolo* emerged, as different groups supported or opposed Uberto's policies.

[1] The "Franks" were the Westerners, who had taken Constantinople in 1204. It is doubtful that they paid tribute to Ivan Asen II.

[2] Literally, this was an Old Church Slavonic translation of "City of the Caesar," which could mean Constantinople but here referred to Bulgaria's "imperial" city, Tarnov, today Veliko Tarnovo.

[3] The "patriarch" here refers to the archbishop of Bulgaria.

1. How would you tell this story from the point of view of the *podestà*?
2. Why did factions arise among the *popolo*?

[Source: *The Towns of Italy in the Later Middle Ages*, ed. and trans. Trevor Dean (Manchester and New York: Manchester University Press, 2000), pp. 158–60 (slightly modified).]

At the beginning of June, the Milanese army rode into the territory of Lodi with a great quantity of corn [grain] which they were sending to Parma, where there was a great shortage. They transported the corn as far as the Po [River] and then handed it over to the Piacentines ...

In 1250 the common people of Piacenza saw that they were being badly treated regarding foodstuffs: first, because all the corn that had been sent from Milan, as well as other corn in Piacenza, was being taken to Parma, with farm laborers being forced to transport it without payment; second, because the Parmesans were touring Piacentine territory buying corn from the threshing floors and fields, which seemed very serious to the Piacentines. The Parmesans could do this in safety because Matteo da Correggio, a citizen of Parma, was podestà of Piacenza, and supported them as much as he could in having corn taken to Parma. Knowing about all this, on Friday July 27th early in the morning, Antolino Saviagata, at the instigation of the Scotti family, because he was their neighbor, and of others, gathered twenty or thirty leaders (consuls) of the popular societies of Piacenza in the church of San Pietro, with the purpose of going to the podestà and telling him to oppose this export of Piacentine corn to Parma. In the church they all swore to support each other if anything was said to them on account of this meeting. It was then maliciously reported to the podestà that Antolino Saviagata and others had gathered to cause damage and harm to the city of Piacenza. The podestà sent one of his judges ... to the church; he arrested Antolino, but let the others leave. The podestà immediately held a general council and so maligned Antolino and his assembly that it was immediately decreed that no more than three people could assemble in the city, that the podestà had full power to inquire into Antolino's actions, and to put him to death if he deserved it. Some of those who had been at Antolino's gathering, fearing death, convened their own societies and told them they had done nothing wrong in the assembly; and the societies decided to support their consuls within the law. Meanwhile, the podestà held Antolino in his home, not doing him any harm. The *populares*, inflamed by what had happened and by what was going on ... took up arms and banners, rang their bells, gathered together and came to the podestà. The podestà, in fact, wanted to release Antolino on surety, more out of fear than love, but Antolino refused ... His father was pressing him to let himself be bound over, and there were many magnates willing to stand surety for him, including Pietro Malvicini, Filippo Visdomini, Giacomo Visconti and Uberto de Iniquitate, but he refused them. The podestà, seeing the crowd coming towards him and hearing the bells ring, let Antolino go. Antolino was badly dressed, with shoes on his feet but nothing covering his legs. On his release, Antolino did not go home at once, but wishing to accomplish his desires, went well-supported to a certain well, where he found a great crowd of men armed for battle, and he addressed them, provoking and inducing them to do what he desired, reminding them of the great harms that had been done to the *popolo* over the past fifteen years, how they had been killed, condemned and expelled from one city to another, and that they would rather die than suffer any more ... [The men of each of the six city districts] elected two consuls of the people ...

On the following Saturday, all the consuls, with a great number of the *popolo*, came to the communal council. Antolino excused their presence, arguing and explaining that what had been done by the *popolo* was not done as an affront to the podestà, but to his honor and that of the Roman church, of the commune of Milan and their friends ... The consuls of the *popolo* then assembled at Santa Maria del Tempio and resolved to issue statutes and to hold a council of the people. The statutes were passed, and on Sunday morning the council met in the church of San Pietro. There was such a press of people that they could not stay there, so they moved to the church of San Sisto. Among the first clauses [of the statutes] ... was one about electing a rector of the *popolo*. Many men believed themselves to be leaders of the *popolo*, namely Fredenzio da Fontana, Filippo Visdomini, Uberto Zanardi, Guelfo Stricto ... and when this clause was read out, great division arose among the *popolo*: some wanted one man, some another, and there was great clamor. Then [one man] said "Why do you not accept Uberto de Iniquitate, for he has already suffered many injuries and losses on your

behalf?" And so he was elected by acclamation. Those who had betrayed the *popolo* and Guglielmo Landi—and there were many of them among both the consuls and the others present—complained loudly and wanted to leave the church to raise uproar, but some of those who had been unable to enter the church closed the doors so that they could not leave. They regarded lord Uberto as an excessively "imperial" man.[1] Once things had calmed down, however, they resumed their seats and took part in the election of consuls of the people: one or two from each society, according to its standing, with other men from each district of the city. Unanimously these elected Uberto de Iniquitate as podestà and rector of the *popolo* for one year. Envoys were sent to his home, and he came immediately and gladly took the oath of office, without consulting any of his relatives or friends. All of the *popolo* then accompanied him home with great rejoicing and honor. As he had been poorly dressed before, he later held a great meeting in the piazza San Pietro, dressed in scarlet with squirrel fur. This was attended by a huge crowd of men of the *popolo*, at the news of which many knights and commoners were scared to death because of the harm they had done him and the *popolo* in the past. And from that day on, he began to lead the *popolo*. After a short interval, he held another council in San Sisto, saying what some of his friends had said to him, that "a vassal of one year brings little profit and little loss," and so he was elected podestà of the *popolo* for five years, and after him his son Giannone. Men of the *popolo* who had relatives and friends among the Piacentine exiles began to tell them "Come, come back, brothers, exiles from Piacenza"; others though ... strongly opposed this. However, such was the number of the former that the latter could do nothing: people today delight in upsetting things. And at last, Uberto de Iniquitate and his advisors were content to let the exiled *populares* return, but leaving the Landi ... and other knights outside. Meanwhile, Antolino Saviagata ... went to Milan as an envoy ... on some business. There, either because he was offered money, or because he regretted what he had done, and fearing the return of the exiles whom he had persecuted and expelled, he sought to disobey and harm the *popolo*. Conspiring with others ... he sought to return the city to its previous regime. When this was discovered by the podestà of the *popolo*, Antolino was captured and greatly tortured. But, because what he had done pleased Uberto de Iniquitate, who did not want the Landi and others to return, Uberto let him go unpunished, expelling him from the city. And thus faction arose among the *popolo*.

7.12 The Hanseatic League: *Decrees of the League* (1260–1264). Original in Latin.

The word "hansa" perhaps originally meant "armed convoy," but it came to be used of associations of merchants and especially of the merchants of the cities along the North and Baltic Seas. Lübeck served as a hinge between the two seas, and its decrees from 1260 to 1264, printed below, reveal that its legislation touched the other member cities as well.

1. To what degree did the interests of the merchants override the interests of the various princes under whom the various cities were technically subject?
2. What potential sources of friction are smoothed over by these decrees?

[Source: *A Source Book for Mediaeval History*, ed. Oliver J. Thatcher and Edgar Holmes McNeal (New York: Charles Scribner's, 1905), pp. 611–12 (slightly modified).]

[1] That is, he supported the imperial, rather than the papal, party.

We wish to inform you of the action taken in support of all merchants who are governed by the law of Lübeck.

(1) Each city shall, to the best of its ability, keep the sea clear of pirates so that merchants may freely carry on their business by sea. (2) Whoever is expelled from one city because of a crime shall not be received in another. (3) If a citizen is seized [by pirates, robbers, or bandits], he shall not be ransomed, but his swordbelt and knife shall be sent to him [as a threat to his captors]. (4) Any merchant ransoming him shall lose all his possessions in all the cities that have the law of Lübeck. (5) Whoever is proscribed[1] in one city for robbery or theft shall be proscribed in all. (6) If a lord besieges a city, no one shall aid him in any way to the detriment of the besieged city, unless the besieger is his lord. (7) If there is a war in the country, no city shall on that account injure a citizen from the other cities, either in his person or goods, but shall give him protection. (8) If any man marries a woman in one city, and another woman from some other city comes and proves that he is her lawful husband, he shall be beheaded. (9) If a citizen gives his daughter or niece in marriage to a man [from another city], and another man comes and says that she is his lawful wife, but cannot prove it, he shall be beheaded.

This law shall be binding for a year, and after that the cities shall inform each other by letter of what decisions they make.

7.13 Too big to fail? *A Great Bank Petitions the City Council of Siena* (1298). Original in Latin.

What happened when a medieval merchant defaulted? Although strict application of the law would have meant jailing the defaulter and selling off his property to pay off the debt, this rarely happened, at least in the Mediterranean region. Rather, the merchant left town while his friends obtained a safe-conduct for him for a period of time. Then the failing merchant returned home to negotiate with his creditors. Businesses that were jointly owned—such as *compagnie* and banks—were more problematic. Because "limited liability" did not yet exist, all the owners were liable for all company debts. In the case of banks, which gave out numerous loans, this meant that the default of even a small number of customers could lead to the bankruptcy of the whole. This was the problem that confronted the Bonsignore family, the owners of the *Magna Tabula*, the "Great Bank" of Siena in 1298, when it petitioned the city council (known as the Council of the Bell) to suspend joint liability and to give the partners extra time to pay back the bank's debts. Specifically, it asked that each partner be liable not for the entire debt of the bank but only for the percentage of debt corresponding to the capital he had invested in the company. The city council was unmoved. It turned down the request, and the Great Bank failed. Siena rapidly declined as a business center thereafter.

1. What sorts of benefits did the Bonsignore claim that their bank offered Siena?
2. Why do you suppose the Council of Siena turned down the Bonsignore petition?

[Source: *Medieval Trade in the Mediterranean World: Illustrative Documents Translated with Introductions and Notes*, ed. and trans. Robert S. Lopez and Irving W. Raymond (New York: Columbia University Press, 2001), pp. 298–302 (notes modified).]

[1] I.e., declared an outlaw.

[Siena, August 9, 1298]

To you who are men of great discernment and wisdom, lords of the [Council] of Nine Governors and Defenders of the Commune and People of Siena, [the following] petition is submitted and set forth by the undersigned partners of the *societas* [partnership] known as "The *Societas* of the Sons of Bonsignore." Although self-praise is considered neither in good [taste] nor befitting, nevertheless the critical situation will be a reasonably sufficient excuse for the partners of said *societas*.

And so, although [the petitioners] trust that you know [the facts of the case], yet they recall to your minds that of all the *societates* of Tuscany, Lombardy, and indeed the whole world, this one has been held in greater honor than any other and in greater renown; that greater confidence has been placed in it by the lords popes of Rome, by cardinals, patriarchs, archbishops, bishops and other prelates of the Church, by kings, barons, counts, traders, and by other men of every condition; that it has also been an asset, indeed a very great asset, to the Commune of Siena at the Roman Curia, to the ambassadors of Siena [sent on missions] on this side of the mountains or beyond the mountains in the furtherance of the missions on which they were sent, and likewise in meeting the payment of moneys needed both for the conduct of said missions and for personal expenses.

And this is certain and well-known, that the *societas* has brought many honors and advantages to the Commune of Siena; that it has done honor to the merchants and citizens of Siena in the various parts of the world, and has given superior advice and perfect assistance to a great many in rescuing persons and goods; that, for the upholding and increase of the honor of the Commune of Siena, it bore many burdens in connection with customs duties, public loans, and the maintenance of horses, and indeed it bore a goodly share of said burdens; and, to conclude, it would be a heavy and difficult task to recount how great an advantage and how much honor has accrued to the Commune of Siena from the good standing of the *societas*. But since well-known facts need no proof, [the petitioners] rest content with the facts presented above, confident that your discerning minds know this well.

However, just as the status and government of this world forever remains [as it is], not because of the poor condition of [human] society but because of the sins of [men], and because they have not learned what is good from Him who is the Highest Good, [so likewise] the Enemy, [instigator] of discord, has sown among them discord of such nature, so deep, and continued for so long a time that any *societas* in this world would have been eventually destroyed and stripped of all its strength.[1] Yet, very great and almost incalculable though their loss may be, even now if said discord were removed and harmony were to follow, [the *societas*] would recover its strength and would surpass all other *societates* in power and with honor. And may He who can do all things bring this to pass.

But even if this cannot be, even now the *societas* is in a position to meet its obligations at the proper times and places and within the different time limits, as is its custom, to all its creditors and to those who are to receive anything from it. But because of their own discord and also at the urging and instigation of some citizens of Siena—who are acting ill and have no reason or cause for taking any action whatever—all their creditors are agitating and are demanding what the *societas* and its partners owe them; and they are making [these] demands upon certain partners and not upon all [as a body]. And this does not happen because of the poor condition of the *societas* but because of the envy and instigation of some persons, as has been stated above, and not because the *societas* has thus far refused to meet its obligations to anyone. Indeed from the day that discord arose and up to this day, the *societas* has met its obligations in regard to both capital and interest, as had been its custom before the days of discord, and it has already paid out 200,000 gold florins.

Yet, even if [the partners of] the *societas* were in full and good harmony, and all the creditors were to make a run on the *societas* at the same time and hour, the *societas* would fail to meet its obligations not because it is unable [to pay] but for the reason that whatever it is obligated to give it [first] must recover in different parts of the world from kings, counts, barons, and from other *societates* and individuals. And this was well-known to those who extended credit to said *societas*, since the said *societas* did not conceal that it received from [some] men but lent to all others, as every *societas* does. Therefore the demands should be considerate and moderate, so that even as the partners of the said *societas* cannot in one moment recover from all [who owe them], similarly they should not be forced in one moment to meet all their obligations

[1] Here the petitioners attempt to draw a comparison between the sad conditions of human society and those of the Bonsignore partnership. Both are in a position to thrive, but the devil endeavors to destroy them by instigating internal dissensions. There is a play on words between *societas* (human society in general) and *societas* (partnership).

so long as discord exists among them. But even if there were harmony and the [present] demands for payment were made not upon specifically indicated partners but upon the *societas* as a whole, the *societas* would still be unable to meet its obligations. Therefore the time has come for the city of Siena, which has gathered so many advantages and such great honor from the good standing of the said *societas*, to render [that service] to which it is obligated by nature.

The points that [the petitioners] ask and humbly supplicate to be done are as follows:

First: That those who are instigating the creditors of the *societas* to make such demands [for payment] be all equally ruled out. This can easily be done by a provision to be enacted by you and the General Council of the Bell, [to wit], that no one [partner] of the said *societas* may or should be compelled by the lord podestà, the captain, the consuls of the merchants,[1] by any ruler or official of the Commune of Siena to pay the debts of the said *societas* to a greater extent than that which falls to him in proportion to his capital. If such provision be enacted, those who are instigating the creditors to present demands, realizing that they cannot hurt those whom they have in mind, would refrain from further instigations; and the creditors would temper their less-than-honest demands and would make reasonable, honest, and ordinary demands, and at a proper time, because they know and will be in a position to know that the *societas* and the partners of the *societas* can fully meet their obligations to their creditors—provided, however, that their creditors stand by the partners, so that these may [in turn] collect [what is owing them]. For there is no *societas* in the world which would not fail if all its creditors made a run [on it]. And thus the said *societas* is not failing and could not fail because of inability [to pay], but because of the discord among its [partners] and because of those who are hoping for the destruction of the said *societas*, [a fate] that must not be tolerated in the slightest degree by you [gentlemen] and the Commune of Siena.

The second point that is petitioned for with humble supplication and prayer: That a suitable delay be granted to the partners of the said *societas* so that they may collect and thus meet their obligations in accordance with the demands of the creditors. And this is fully warranted by custom and by good business practice, and is furthermore sanctioned by imperial legislation.

The third point that is asked for, ever out of grace and with humble supplication: That it may please you to see to it that two ambassadors of the Commune of Siena go to the lord pope and speak in behalf of the said *societas*, and that he [the pope] use the influence of his holy office with the creditors of the said *societas* and especially with those creditors who reside at the Curia, to the end that, in presenting their demands, these creditors may not burden the partners of the *societas* except in the proportion that falls to each one; that the creditors may grant the partners a suitable delay, so that these may be in a position to collect from their creditors and so meet their obligations to the creditors [of the *societas*]; and that, in requiring that, the said lord pope bring to bear the weight of his holy office. And [you should] appoint an embassy in regard to the matters above-mentioned and anything else that you may deem necessary for the well being and reorganization of the said *societas*.

And you ought to be led to make provisions regarding said matters by [recollecting] the advantages which have accrued to the city from the good standing of the said *societas*, by your love for the citizens, so that....[2] For, if the provision should not be enacted, the individual partners who are being harassed for the total [debits of the *societas*] and who cannot bear [the burden], would be forced to leave [their posts], and the *societas* would not be able to collect what it has to recover in different parts of the world, and hence the city and the businessmen of the city would be oppressed by the reprisals which would be instituted against the Commune of Siena, and its merchants would no longer have free access to trade.

This petition is therefore just in each item. And it is better that said provision be enacted, so that those meet their obligations who are able and who ought to, as has been stated, rather than that so many citizens of this city—the partners of the said *societas*—should be scattered, and the *societas* be mined, and the merchants of the city of Siena incur restrictions and losses.

And note that the provision demands haste because, at the instigation of certain citizens of Siena, the creditors in the city of Rome have caused the seizure of the goods of said *societas* that were in the said city, and the factors

[1] These were all communal officials, the first two always coming from outside Siena. The podestà had both military and judicial powers; he held office for one year. The captain referred to here was probably the executive officer for the *popolo*; he was supposed to balance the power of the podestà. The consuls of the merchants were officials of the merchants' guild at Siena, which had numerous privileges there.

[2] Some words are missing.

[that is, the agents of the *societas*] have fled. Wherefore, lest the disgrace and such a great danger increase, [the partners] humbly petition you to help them aid justice and the advantage of the city. And [the partners] themselves offer to their creditors to assign trustworthy debtors [for the sums owing] to them,[1] if only the creditors be willing to wait so long as [the partners] collect and [in turn] meet their obligations.

The [arguments] presented above embody justice; they embody equity, honor for the city, the preservation of its citizens, and the liberty and security of its merchants; and they avert error and scandal.

May God, who can do all things, make His light to shine upon your hearts in these and all other matters that make or may make for the peace and good standing of the city and its territory; and may He preserve the city and its citizens and grant them beneficent peace....

[The petition was denied.]

HERESIES AND PERSECUTIONS

7.14 Inquisition: Jacques Fournier, *Episcopal Register* (1318–1325). Original in Latin.

Jacques Fournier was Pope Benedict XII (1334–1342), the third pope at Avignon, and responsible for building the papal palace there. But before that, between 1317 and 1326, he was bishop of his native city of Pamiers, in southern France. Officials under his jurisdiction there took meticulous care to record and preserve the inquests into and confessions of 114 villagers suspected of heresy between 1318 and 1325. (Compare this use of an episcopal register with that of the one drawn up for Thomas of Hereford, above, p. 320.) Most were accused of being dualists. (The Church called them Cathars or Albigensians; the dissidents, however, typically called themselves "good men.") The original proceedings were in Old Occitan, the vernacular language of the region, but they were translated into Latin for the record. The result, as may be seen from the materials printed here regarding Guillaume Austatz—a wealthy peasant farmer and also the king's *baille*, or legal and fiscal authority—is a portrait of village life revealing friendships, enmities, gossip, and class tensions.

1. Why might Guillaume's fellow villagers have testified against him?
2. What leads you to think that Guillaume was innocent—or guilty?

[Source: *Medieval Popular Religion, 1000–1500: A Reader*, ed. John Shinners, 2nd ed. (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2006), pp. 485–504. Translated by John Shinners.]

Witnesses against Guillaume Austatz of Ornolac for the Crime of Heresy

In the year of the Lord 1320, May 11, Gaillarde, wife of Bernard Ros of Ornolac (sworn as a witness and questioned because the said Guillaume Austatz had spoken certain heretical words) said that about four years ago she was in her house at Ornolac, and Alazaïs, the wife of Pierre Mounié of the same place, was there with her. The said Guillaume arrived along with some other people whose names she says she does not recall. When they had

[1] This seems to mean that the partners shall earmark for each creditor any specific credit of the *societas* that may seem particularly easy to recover.

gathered around the hearth in the house, they started talking about God and about the General Resurrection. Among other things, they said that God really needed to be great in power and strength since each human soul would return to its own body at the General Resurrection. Hearing this, Guillaume said, "And do you believe that God made as many human souls as there are men and women? Surely not! For when at death souls exit the human bodies they have been in, they steal into the bodies of children who have just been born; as they leave one body, they enter into another one." For, as he said, if each human soul were to reclaim the very same body it had been in, since the world has lasted for many years, the whole world would be filled up with souls—so much so, as he said, that they couldn't be contained in the area between Toulouse and the Mérens Pass. For although souls are quite small, so many people have existed that their souls could not be contained within that space. When she heard these words, Alazaïs took the witness in her arms and held her closely. And when, after a while, Guillaume left the witness's house, Alazaïs said to her, "O godmother, these are evil words that Guillaume spoke," and the witness said that they were strong words.

Asked why she had concealed these words for such a long time, she said that she had not believed they were as serious as they are, but, goaded by her conscience, she had revealed them this year to the priest Bernard Petron, who was staying at Ornolac, so that he could counsel her what to do about them. And this priest, so she said, advised her to reveal the words to the lord bishop of Pamiers. So, led by her conscience, as she said, she reported these words to the bishop.

Asked if she had seen Guillaume take communion or doing the other things which good and faithful Christians are accustomed to do, she responded that for the past twelve years she had lived in the village of Ornolac and she had never seen Guillaume take communion, not even when he was sick or on the feast days when people usually receive communion, though she had seen him going into the church. And she should know since, as she said, his mother-in-law is her sister. She said moreover that Guillaume, while he lived at Lordat where he was born, used to practice usury; but after he moved to Ornolac, he practiced no usury that she knew of.

Asked if she deposed the previous testimony out of hate, love, fear, or bad will, instructed, or suborned, she said no, but because it is the truth, as she said above.

In the same year on May 26, the said Gaillarde, wife of the said Bernard Ros, cited on the same day, appeared before the lord bishop in the episcopal see at Pamiers and was received by the lord bishop as a witness against Guillaume Austatz concerning some matters touching on the Catholic faith. Swearing an oath as a witness, she said and deposed that this year, around the feast of the nativity of St. John the Baptist [June 24], some money and some other things had been stolen from her which she had kept in a certain chest that had been broken into. The witness went to the said Guillaume (who was then and is now the *baille* [royal official] of Ornolac) and requested him to carry out his office, search for the thief, and to do what needed to be done for her to get her stolen things back. When he was unwilling to listen to her about her case, weeping and wailing she went to the church of Our Lady of Montgauzy to get a miracle from her to recover her money and property. In order to better get the miracle, she girded the candle on Blessed Mary's altar [probably by tying a string around it which she would later use to make a wick for another candle to be offered at the altar]. When she got back to Ornolac, she again asked Guillaume to investigate the theft, but he did not want to bother himself with it. The witness told him he should search for the money and things stolen from her just as he had searched for grain stolen from him that year. He told her that he had looked for the grain because he would have recognized it had he found it, but he wouldn't recognize her stolen money and property, as she said. And she said, "I put my trust in Blessed Mary of Montgauzy. I visited her and asked her to restore my stolen money and property; and I asked her to take revenge against those who stole from me if they don't restore them." Then Guillaume told the witness in the presence of some other people whose names she does not recall (except for Julien de Ornolac from Ornolac), that Blessed Mary did not have the power to restore the witness's money and things. When she said that yes she did, and that what he had said was bad, and also that the Blessed Mary would avenge her, Guillaume said Blessed Mary did not kill people or commit murders....

The same year, July 25, the said Alazaïs, wife of Pierre Mounié, again appeared and offered testimony after she had been told to swear to tell the truth as a witness. She said that about two years ago she had lost her four sons one after the other and was terribly sad and depressed over this. One day when Guillaume had come back from his fields, he saw her standing in the doorway of her house looking quite depressed, and he asked her why she was so sad. She told him it was because she had so suddenly lost her four handsome boys. Guillaume told her not to be sad about this, for she would get her four dead sons back. And when she told Guillaume that she

believed she would see her dead sons and get them back in paradise but not in this world, Guillaume told her that, on the contrary, she would get them back in this very world. For when she got pregnant the souls of her four dead sons would be reincarnated in the sons she conceived and carried in her womb; and in that way she would recover her dead sons in this world. Asked about those present, she said she did not recall that anyone was present except herself and Guillaume. Asked about the time and place, she answered as above.

Also she said that this year, on what day she did not recall, but after the [Waldensian] heretics Raymond de la Côte and the woman Agnes had been burned,[1] she and Guillaume were standing near the door of his house and Guillaume said that the bishop of Pamiers was a proud and harsh man. She said that a man who had great power could do much. And then Guillaume said that if Raymond and Agnes had been listened to and had had an audience, just as the bishop did, the bishop would be worthier of burning than Raymond and Agnes. And when the witness said that it was not theirs to judge this, Guillaume quickly went inside his house....

The year as above, July 27, Pierre de Bordas of Ornolac was sworn as a witness and asked to tell the truth plainly and fully about the above matters and others touching on the Catholic faith against Guillaume Austatz. He said that this year, after the heretic Raymond de la Côte was burned by the lord bishop of Pamiers and the inquisitor of Carcassone, when the news reached Ornolac, the witness; his wife, Alazaïs; Barchinona, the wife of the late Bernard de Bordas; and Guillaume Austatz were sitting at the table eating when Guillaume said that the heretic Raymond who had been burned was a good cleric, one of the better people in all Christendom. And it would have been better for [the region of] Sabarthès if the bishop of Pamiers had been burned instead of Raymond. Asked whether he heard Guillaume saying that this heretic was a good Christian and a holy man, and that, if he had been treated justly, he would not have been burned, he said that he does not recall. Asked if, when Guillaume said these words—that it would have been better for Sabarthès for the lord bishop to have been burned than the heretic—he agreed or disagreed with him or chastised him for these words, he responded that he said nothing to him, though it seemed to him that he had spoken badly, so he said....

The Confession of the Converted Heretic Guillaume Austatz

In the year of the Lord 1320, July 15, it came to the attention of the reverend father in Christ, Lord Jacques [Fournier], by God's grace bishop of Pamiers, that Guillaume Austatz of Ornolac in the diocese of Pamiers, had said and asserted before many people: that each human soul does not have its own body, but when it exits from one body, it steals into another body; and that even at the resurrection not every soul will resume its own body. He also said that each soul will not be rewarded or punished in the body it dwelled in, and that he personally did not trust that his soul would be saved or damned. He also said that, if each soul had its own body and was not reincarnated into another body, even though souls were very small, still the land of Sabarthès would be filled up from Toulouse all the way to the Mérens Pass—giving to understand through this that souls are corporeal. He also said that Raymond de la Côte, the heretic condemned this year by the lord bishop and the inquisitor of Carcassone, was a good Christian, and that what he taught was true. He also said that the church was not able to compel anyone to offer any specific thing at mass, but that it sufficed to offer a straw to the priest. Through these things it was apparent that he was a believer, favorer, and harborer of the Manichaean heretics and a member of their sect. The lord bishop informed himself about these matters and, wishing to question this man about them and other things pertaining to the Catholic faith, about which he was vehemently suspect, he cited him by his letters to appear on this day. Guillaume, appearing before the lord bishop and Frère Gaillard de Pomiès (the lord inquisitor of Carcassone's deputy), was asked by the same simply and not under oath if he had said, taught, or believed the aforesaid heretical words. He responded no.

The same lord bishop, wishing to lead him back to faith and free him from danger, gave him some time (until early tomorrow evening) to think about the aforesaid; and because Guillaume said that his enemies made these denunciations, the lord bishop asked him who he thought his enemies were, and Guillaume answered that the priest and assistant priest of Ornolac were, and no one else.

The next day at early evening the said Guillaume appeared before the lord bishop in his episcopal chambers, assisted by Frère Gaillard de Pomiès, and made a physical oath that he would tell the truth plain and simple

[1] For the Waldensians in an earlier period, as depicted in the *Chronicle of Laon*, see above, p. 371.

without any falsehoods intermixed about the aforesaid heretical articles and other matters pertaining to the Catholic faith, both insofar as they concerned him as the defendant and others, living or dead, as witnesses. After the articles contained in the preceding were explained to him again in the vernacular, he responded to the first article that he had never said nor did he believe that each human soul does not possess its own body.

To the second article he said he had not said or believed that the human soul, when it exits from its body, enters at that point or later into another body.

To the third article he said he believes that the human soul will rise and resume the flesh and bones it occupied in this life, and he never said or believed otherwise, so he said.

To the fourth article he said that at the General Judgment, a soul will be punished or rewarded in the body it occupied in this life, and he had never said or believed otherwise, so he said.

To the fifth article he said he had never said that if each human being who ever was, is, or will be had his own soul, then the land between Toulouse and the Mérens Pass would be filled up with the souls of the people of Sabarthès, past and present.

To the sixth article he said that he had never said that Raymond de la Côte was a good Christian.

To the seventh article he said that, repeating a statement he heard from a man from Chateauverdun (who was repeating a statement of the Romans), he had indeed said that the church could not compel anyone to make a specific offering, but that it sufficed to offer anything, no matter how small. But the man had not said that he believed this or was trying to discourage anyone from making agreeable or proper offerings. Asked the name of the man from Chateauverdun, he said that he did not know. Asked when he heard the man say these words, he said this year. Asked who else was present, he said he did not remember. Asked if he had seen heretics, believed in them, harbored them, or favored them, he said no.

Since the above information made it clear that the said Guillaume had neither told the truth about nor confessed the aforesaid heretical articles, the lord bishop arrested him and ordered him to be incarcerated immediately at Alemanns by his deputies, ordering him not to leave the castle without the lord bishop's permission.

The same year as above, August 11, Guillaume Austatz standing for judgment at the residence of the episcopal see of Pamiers before the lord bishop assisted by Frère Gaillard de Pomiès, said and confessed that three or four years ago—he did not really remember the time or day—he was in his house at Ornolac, and [either] Bartholomette, the wife of Arnaud d'Urs of Vicdessos, who was then staying at his house, or Alazaïs, wife of Pierre de Bordas, had lost a son whom she had discovered lying dead next to her in bed. But he did not remember, so he said, which of the two women had lost her son. And when this woman wept and wailed over the death of her son, and he saw and heard her, he said to the woman that she should not weep or wail because God would give that dead son's soul to the next child, boy or girl, that she conceived and bore, or else his soul will be in a good place in the next world. Asked what he understood it to mean when he said God would return the dead son's soul to whatever boy or girl the woman conceived or bore in the future, he said that he understood through these words that amends would be made to the woman with another child, and, so he said, though these words meant nothing, he said them anyway just as they came to his head. Asked if he had heard anyone saying that souls exiting human bodies reenter other human bodies, or if he had ever believed this or believed it still, he said he had never heard it from anyone, nor had he believed it, nor did he believe it now. Asked if he had ever said the same words or words to that effect to any person or persons except to Bartholomette or Alazaïs, he said he did not recall saying such words or words to that effect.

Also he said that around a year and a half ago he was in the village common of Ornolac and with him there, as he recalled, were Raymond de Ornolac, Pierre Doumenc, Pons Barrau, Guillaume de Aspira, Pierre de Gathlep, Bertrand de Ville, Raymond Benet the Younger, and some others he did not recall, so he said. Someone from among them, he did not remember who, started talking about the location of the souls of the dead, asking what place could hold as many souls as there were people who had died every day. Guillaume replied that they were received into paradise. And when those standing around asked him if paradise was so huge a place that it could hold every soul, he said that it was huge—so huge that if a house were made that occupied the whole area between Toulouse and Mérens, paradise would still be a bigger place and could hold many souls in it.

The same year as above, August 28, standing for judgment at the episcopal see of Pamiers before the lord bishop assisted by the said Frère Gaillard de Pomiès (the deputy of the lord inquisitor of Carcassone), Guillaume Austatz said and confessed that two and a half years ago or so, on the day that the said lord bishop first visited Sabarthès and the church of St. Martin of Ussat, the son of Alazaïs Mounié of Ornolac and also some other boy

were burned by a fire that they had [accidentally] set in the house of Bernard Mounié. And when the said Alazaïs was crying over the loss of her son, Guillaume came over and visited Alazaïs at her house to console her about her son's death. While comforting her he said, "Godmother, don't weep and wail, for you can still get back the souls of your dead children." Alazaïs said that yes, she would get them back in paradise. He told her that in fact she would get them back in some son or daughter whom she would conceive and bear, for she was still young; and if she didn't get them back in a son or daughter, she would regain them in paradise.

The same year as above, August 29, standing for judgment at the aforesaid see before the said bishop assisted by the said Frère Gaillard de Pomiès, Guillaume Austatz said and confessed that eight years ago or so, as he recalled, his mother, Guillemette de Austatz, was cited for the crime of heresy by the lord inquisitor of Carcassone. When he heard this, he went on a market day to Lordat to be with his mother who had to go to Carcassone. And in his mother's house at Lordat they sat alone together by the fire and, as he said, he asked his mother if she thought she was guilty of heresy since she had been cited by the lord inquisitor. She said yes. And then he said to her, "How? Have you met heretics?" And she said yes: Pierre Authié and Prades Tavernier at Arnaud de Albiès's house in Lordat. And when he asked her why and how she had gone to that house to see these heretics, she said that late one evening she was standing at the door of her house, and Guillemette (the wife of the surgeon Arnaud Teisseire of Lordat and the daughter of the heretic Pierre Authié) arrived with Raymond Sabatié of Lordat. Then Raymond said to Guillaume's mother, "Come join Guillemette de Teisseire." She said "Gladly," so they went together (namely his mother, Guillemette, and Raymond) and went inside Albiès's house to a room where the heretics were. When they were at the door to the room, Raymond asked Guillaume's mother if she would like to see some holy men, and, quickly opening the door, they entered and found there the heretics Pierre Authié and Prades Tavernier, whom first Guillemette and next Raymond reverenced in a heretical fashion. When these two had greeted the heretics, they told Guillaume's mother she should adore them in the same way they had. Guillemette told her that this master [i.e., Pierre] was her [i.e., Guillemette's] father, and they taught her how she should adore them. And so his mother, after they had instructed her, reverenced the heretics. After this adoration, they stayed there with the heretics, and Pierre Authié preached to them. This heretic told them among other things that when children's souls exit after their death, they enter by stealth into the bodies of children who were generated and conceived after the death of the first children. This happens after the mother of the dead children conceives and bears other children....

On August 30, standing for judgment at the episcopal see of Pamiers before the lord bishop assisted by the said Frère Gaillard de Pomiès (the deputy of the lord inquisitor of Carcassone), Guillaume Austatz said and confessed that this year, after the heretic Raymond de la Côte was burned in the village of Alemanns, one Sunday the men of Ornolac (namely Pons Barrau, Guillaume de Aspira, Pierre Doumenc, Bernard de Ville, Guillaume Forsac, Raymond de Ornolac, all of them from Ornolac) were in the village common next to the elm tree there, and they were talking about the burning of the heretic. Guillaume arrived and said, "I'll tell you this for a fact: this fellow they burned was a good cleric—there was none better in these parts except the bishop of Pamiers. He constantly argued with the bishop and he disagreed with him, but he believed in God, Blessed Mary, and all the saints, and in the seven [*sic*] articles of faith, and he was a good Christian. And since he believed all these things, it was a great injustice to burn him." The men asked him why he was burned considering he was a good cleric and a good Christian, and he replied it was because he said the pope could not absolve sins and he denied purgatory—that is why he was burned.

Also he said that before he said these words in the village common of Ornolac, Raymond de Nan, who was staying with Pierre Mir, the canon of Foix, came to his house at Ornolac and told him, in the hearing of Pierre Bordas, Arnaud Pere, and Guillaume Garaud of Chateauverdun, that a man had been burned at the village of Allemans by the bishop of Pamiers. People said he was a good cleric, and that he had disagreed with the bishop but believed in God, Blessed Mary, all the saints, and the seven articles of faith, and was a good Christian, and it was a great injustice to burn him. When Guillaume heard this, he suggested that "it would have been better for Sabarthès if the bishop of Pamiers had been burned instead of this man, for afterwards he wouldn't make us spend our money." By this he understood not that the bishop was a heretic, but that the bishop demanded a tithe on sheep called *carnelages* from the people of Sabarthès. This was why he said it would have been better for the lord bishop to be burned than the heretic. Asked if he then believed or still believes it would have been better for Sabarthès if the bishop had been burned instead of the heretic Raymond de la Côte, he said he believed it then when he spoke these words, and he held that opinion

for fifteen days; but after fifteen days he did not believe it nor does he now. He was asked—when he believed it was better for Sabarthès to burn the lord bishop of Pamiers instead of the heretic since the bishop exacted the tithe of sheep from Sabarthès—whether he believed or still believes the bishop can justly demand the tithe. He said he thought the bishop could justly demand the tithe. He was asked, since he believed the bishop could justly demand the tithe, whether he believed the people of Sabarthès acted justly in refusing to pay the tithe. He said that although the bishop exacted the tithe according to law, the people of Sabarthès also justly refused to pay the tithe according to their customs. Asked why he believed it was better to burn the bishop than the heretic, since, when he said this, he thought the lord bishop justly demanded the tithe from the people of Sabarthès, he responded that he said this because of the expenses the lord bishop cost the people of Sabarthès....

He was asked if, when he said the heretic Raymond de la Côte was a good Christian and was unjustly burned, he knew that he had been condemned by the lord bishop and the inquisitor of Carcassone as a heretic and had been judged a heretic. He said he did indeed know that Raymond had been condemned as a heretic by the bishop and the inquisitor; still, it did not seem to him or to others with whom he spoke that he was a heretic since he believed in God, Blessed Mary, all the saints, and the seven articles of faith. This was why it seemed to him that Raymond was a good Christian and had been unjustly condemned. But later, when they considered that the lord bishop and the inquisitor would not have burdened themselves with so great a sin as killing a man unless it was just, it seemed to them that—although to some small degree they had unjustly condemned him—still, in some measure they had acted justly. He was asked whether, after he had heard it said—as he confessed—that Raymond had been condemned as a heretic since he did not believe the pope could absolve sins and he denied that purgatory existed, he then believed and still believes that Raymond had been justly condemned as a heretic for denying these two articles. He said that at the time he spoke these words, he did not believe that the heretic should have been condemned for not believing the two articles; but before then and after then he believed and still believes he was justly condemned as a heretic for denying the two articles. However, for fifteen days he remained convinced that he had been unjustly condemned for denying the articles. He was asked whether, at the time he believed Raymond had been unjustly condemned as a heretic for denying the two articles, he thought that to say the pope could not absolve sins and to deny that purgatory existed in the next world were heresies. He said that for those fifteen days he did not believe it was heresy to say the pope could not absolve sins and that purgatory did not exist. But before and after those fifteen days, he believed and still believes that to deny these two articles is heresy, and also that someone denying these articles should be justly condemned as a heretic.

The year as above, September 1, the said Guillaume Austatz appeared for judgment at the episcopal see before the lord bishop assisted by Frère Gaillard de Pomiès, the deputy of the lord inquisitor of Carcassone. He said and confessed that about five years ago he was at home, and Pierre Bordas and his wife Alazaïs and Barchinona Bordas were there. They started talking about the salvation of souls. He said that, if it were true what the priests say—namely that if someone wanted to be saved, it was necessary for him to confess all his sins, and, if he could, to restore or return everything he had taken from other people against their will—not ten out a hundred people will be saved. Better yet, not ten out of a thousand. For people do not confess their sins very well, either because they have forgotten them or because they are embarrassed to confess them; and they take lots of things from other people. So only a few out of many will be saved, if what the priests say is true. Asked if he then believed and still believes that when priests say these two things they are telling the truth, he said yes. Asked whether he believed he would be damned for eternity if he died and had not wanted to confess that he had knowingly committed simple fornication or loaned money at interest or had failed to return interest that he had received if he could, he said that he did.

Also, he had said he believed that if each soul had its own body, the world could scarcely hold these souls since, though they were very small, there were so many of them that they would fill up the world. From this it appeared that he believed souls were material. He was asked if he thought human souls were material and had physical parts: hands, feet, and other parts. He said that at the time he had said this, he believed human souls had the physical shape of a man or woman and parts resembling the human body. But now he believed human souls were spirits without parts resembling the human body.

He was asked whether he believed the saints dwelling in paradise could help people living in this world; he said yes. He was asked whether he had ever said otherwise. He said that this year around Pentecost, when Gaillarde Ros had lost five sous stolen from a chest, she complained to him that since he was the local *baille*, and since he

had not immediately discovered who had committed the theft, she had asked Blessed Mary of Montgauzy to expose the thief. He said to Gaillarde, "And don't you think Blessed Mary would commit a greater sin if she revealed the person who stole the four [*sic*] sous from you? For wouldn't the thief be thrown into confusion and brought to justice [with the risk of capital punishment] by this than if Blessed Mary didn't return the four sous to you?" But he said this, so he said, as a joke, not really believing Blessed Mary would sin if she revealed the thief. He also did not think it would be a sin if she revealed the wrongdoer, or even if he were sentenced to death or killed by order of his superior.

He was asked if he had ever confessed the aforesaid heresies to a priest or in any other way. He said no, because he had not believed he had sinned by believing them and persisting in that belief. But now he realized that he had been gravely at fault for believing these errors, and he humbly begged absolution for the sentence of excommunication he incurred for believing them. He said he was prepared to perform any penance and suffer any penalty the lord bishop and the inquisitors enjoined on him for these things. But he was obliged that if he later recalls any other crime beyond that which he had confessed, or also if he remembers that someone else living or dead had committed this crime, as quickly as he can he will reveal this to the bishop, his successors, or the lord inquisitor of Carcassone. And the lord bishop, seeing his humility and contrition, absolved him in the church's due form from the sentence of excommunication he incurred for believing these heresies, provided that he fully confessed them and that he now and forevermore believes what the Roman Church preaches and teaches. But before granting him this absolution, he received from him an abjuration and oath as follows:

There Guillaume Austatz abjured all heresy, belief in, support of, defense of, harboring of, approval of the sect, life, or faith of, agreement with, and every other kind of participation with Manichaeans or Waldensians, etc ... otherwise his absolution is not valid.

This was done in the presence of the said lord bishop, Frère Gaillard, Frère Arnaud de Caslar (both of the Order of Preachers at Pamiers),[1] and Master Guillaume Pierre Barthe, the lord bishop's notary, who recorded and wrote the preceding. And I, Rainaud, faithfully corrected all of it against the original copy.

The year as above, September 3, standing for judgment at the episcopal see of Pamiers before the lord bishop assisted by the said Frère Gaillard de Pomiès (deputy of the lord inquisitor of Carcassone), Guillaume Austatz heard the bishop read to him in the vernacular everything he confessed above. Asked whether everything he confessed against himself and against others in the above confession was true, he said yes. He said he wished and wishes to stand firm in this confession, seeking mercy that he be not judged upon the above matters; and he finished his business, and sought to be given a sentence and mercy for the above matters....

On the Sunday assigned to the said Guillaume Austatz, he appeared in the cemetery of St. John the Martyr and sentence was rendered to him by the lord bishop and the lord inquisitor in this manner: "May all know, etc...." Look for this sentence in the Sentence Book of the inquisition of heretical depravity, which sentence was issued against the said Guillaume Austatz on Sunday, March 2 in the said cemetery.

And I, the aforesaid Rainaud, faithfully corrected all of this against the original copy.

[We do not know whether Guillaume was punished or was allowed to return home.]

7.15 Jews in England: *Statute of the Jewry* (1275) and *Petition of the "Commonalty" of the Jews* (shortly after 1275). Originals in Latin and French, respectively.

The endless need of King Henry III (r.1216–1272) for revenues hit the Jews of England hard. Numerous taxes, fines, and confiscations left many of them bankrupt. Some left the country. Meanwhile stories of Jewish ritual killings circulated, touching off mass executions.

[1] The Order of Preachers refers to the Dominicans.

In 1231 the city of Leicester expelled its Jews, and between 1234 and 1243 numerous cities and even whole counties of England did likewise. When Edward I (r.1272–1307) came to the throne, he compounded the problem. Reacting to Church canons against the "sin of usury," he issued the *Statute of the Jewry* in 1275, prohibiting Jews from charging interest and insisting that all current debts to Jews be settled quickly for less than was owed. In effect the *Statute* deprived the Jews of their livelihood. To compensate, it allowed Jews to become merchants, artisans, or farmers (though only for a short term). But, as the Jews pointed out in their *Petition of the "Commonalty,"* Jews could not really become merchants or artisans, for they could not travel safely, and they would never be able to extend credit (since they were unlikely ever to be paid). Under such circumstances, they could not compete with Christians. In fact the *Statute* was an utter failure, and Edward ended by expelling all the Jews from England in 1290.

1. What was the purpose of the "distinguishing mark" that Jews were to wear after their seventh birthday?
2. What did the Jews ask of the crown in their petition?

[Source: *English Historical Documents*, vol. 3: 1189–1327, ed. Harry Rothwell (London and New York: Routledge, 1975), pp. 411–13 (notes added).]

The Statute of the Jewry (1275)

Because the king has seen that many evils and instances of the disinheriting of good men of his land have happened as a result of the usuries which the Jews have made in the past, and that many sins have followed thereupon, the king, though he and his ancestors have always received great benefit from the Jewish people in the past, has nevertheless for the honor of God and the common benefit of the people, ordained and established that from now on no Jew shall lend anything at usury, either on land or rent or anything else, and that usuries shall not continue beyond the feast of St. Edward [October 13] last. Agreements made before that shall be kept, save that the usuries shall cease. All those who owe debts to Jews on pledges of movables are to clear them between now and Easter; if not the pledges shall be forfeited. And if any Jew shall lend at usury contrary to what the king has established the king will not concern himself either personally or through his officials to get him recovery of his loan, but will punish him at his discretion for the offence and will do justice to the Christian that he may recover his pledge.

And so that distresses for debts due to Jews shall not henceforth be so grievous, a half of the lands and chattels of Christians is to be kept for their sustenance,[1] and no distress for a debt owing to a Jew is to be made upon the heir of the debtor named in the Jew's deed or other person holding the land that was the debtor's before the debt is proved and acknowledged in court.

And if a sheriff or other bailiff has by the king's command to give a Jew, or a number of Jews, for a debt due to them seisin[2] of chattels or land to the value of the debt, the chattels are to be valued by the oaths of good men and be delivered to the Jew or Jews or to their agent to the amount of the debt, and if the chattels do not suffice, the lands shall be extended by the same oath before seisin is given to the Jew or Jews, to each one according to what is due to him, so that it may be known for certain that the debt is paid and the Christian may have his land again, saving always to the Christian half of his land and chattels for his sustenance as aforesaid, and the chief dwelling.

And if any movables be found hereafter in the seisin of a Jew and any one wishes to sue him, the Jew shall have his warranty if he is entitled to it, and if not, let

[1] As a legal term, "distress" means holding someone's property against the payment of a debt. Chattels are movable property, as opposed to land, which cannot be moved.

[2] I.e., legal possession.

him answer: so that in future he is not in this matter to be otherwise privileged than a Christian.

And that all Jews shall dwell in the king's own cities and boroughs, where the chirograph chests of the Jews are wont to be:[1] and that each Jew after he is seven years old shall wear a distinguishing mark on his outer garment, that is to say in the form of two Tables joined, of yellow felt of the length of six inches and of the breadth of three inches. And that each one after he is twelve years old shall yearly at Easter pay to the king, whose serf he is, a tax of three pence, and this be understood to hold as well for a woman as for a man.

And that no Jew have power to enfeoff[2] another, Jew or Christian, with houses, rents or tenements that he now has, or to alienate them in any other manner, or to acquit any Christian of his debt without special permission of the king, until the king shall have otherwise ordained thereon.

And as it is the will and sufferance of holy church that they may live and be preserved, the king takes them into his protection and grants them his peace; and wills that they may be safely preserved and defended by his sheriffs and his other bailiffs and faithful; and commands that none shall do them harm or damage or wrong in their bodies or in their goods movable or immovable and that they shall neither plead nor be impleaded in any court, nor be challenged or troubled in any court, save in the court of the king, whose bondmen they are. And that none shall owe obedience or service or rent save to the king or to his bailiffs in his name, unless it be for their dwellings which they now hold by paying rent, saving the right of holy church.

And the king grants them that they may live by lawful trade and by their labor and that they may have intercourse with Christians in order to carry on lawful trade by selling and buying. But that no Christian for this cause or any other shall dwell among them. And the king wills that they shall not by reason of their trading be put to scot and lot or tallaged,[3] with those of the cities and boroughs where they live because they are liable for tallage to the king as his serfs and to no one other than the king.

Moreover the king grants them that they may buy houses and curtilages[4] in the cities and boroughs where they live, so that they hold them in chief of the king, saving to the lords of the fee[5] their services due and accustomed. And they may take and buy farms or land for the term of ten years or less, without taking homages or fealties[6] or such sort of obedience from Christians, and without having advowsons[7] of churches, that they may be able to gain their living in the world if they have not the means of trading or cannot labor. And this power of taking lands at farm shall be open to them only for fifteen years from this time forward.

Petition of the "Commonalty" of the Jews (shortly after 1275)

To our lord the king and to his council the commonalty of the Jews ask the favor of their assent and discretion on the things written below.

Because the new statutes will that the Jews should have seisin of half only of lands and rents pledged to them, leaving the other half of the lands and rents and the chief messuage[8] for the sustenance of the Christian who is the debtor of the Jew, this is their enquiry: if the debtor of the Jew dies without heir of his body and without wife and the lands and rents fall to a rich man or to someone who has enough of his own to live on without these lands and rents that are pledged to the Jew, in such circumstances shall the Jew have possession of the whole of the pledged property until the debt is paid, or not?

Besides this, our question is about a Christian who has borrowed money from Jews which is the king's money and this Christian has no lands, rents or chattels save a large house which he occupies worth 100 shillings or 10 marks a year and if it were sold would fetch 100 marks or £100, what seisin will the Jew have of his pledge for

[1] The "chirograph chests" were the boxes in which the records of debts were held. A chirograph was a document written in duplicate and cut such that the two parts would fit together only with one another.

[2] I.e., to give a fief to.

[3] "Scot and lot" and tallage were taxes.

[4] Yards or courtyards.

[5] "Fee" is equivalent to fief.

[6] Lords normally received homage and fealty from their vassals, but such relations were not permitted between Jews and Christians.

[7] The advowson was the right to an ecclesiastical benefice.

[8] Messuage is a house and the land and buildings attached to it.

the recovery of the debt seeing that this Christian has nothing save this house.

Further, the commonalty of the Jews beseech our lord the king that the poor Jews, who have nothing whereby to live or trade, may have leave to sell their houses and their rents to other Jews richer than themselves: it would be worth as much to our lord the king for the one lot of Jews to have the rents and houses as the other, and he could not lose by it. That if they have not leave to sell their houses they will have to demolish them and sell the stone and timber to various people.

Furthermore, the commonalty of the Jews demonstrate that they would be compelled if they were to trade at all to buy dearer than a Christian and to sell dearer, for Christian merchants sell their merchandise on credit and if the Jew sold on credit he would never be paid a single penny. And Christian merchants can carry their merchandise far and near but if the Jew carried his beyond the ...[1] he would be ... and robbed. And they beseech our lord the king and his council that ... such counsel in the Jewry that they can live in his time with his ... as in the time of his ancestors since the Conquest.

RULERS AND RULED

7.16 The Spanish Cortes: Alfonso X, *Cortes of Valladolid* (1258). Original in Spanish.

The Cortes of Castile-León, an assembly of the three estates of the realm, exemplified the growth of parliamentary institutions in twelfth- and thirteenth-century Europe. The Cortes reached maturity during the reign of Alfonso X, *el Sabio* (r.1252–1284), who convened that assembly of bishops, nobles, and representatives of the towns—on average, about every two years—for a variety of purposes: to promulgate his law codes, to enact legislation, to obtain consent to extraordinary taxes, to secure recognition of the heir to the throne, and to consider other issues concerning the common good. The Cortes also afforded an opportunity for the estates (the clergy, nobles, and commons), especially the municipal representatives, to present petitions, which, if accepted, became the law of the land. The economic situation was uncertain at Alfonso's accession, principally because of the political alteration following his father's conquest of Seville and the other major cities of the former al-Andalus. In his first Cortes at Seville in 1252, Alfonso attempted to control the economy so as to alleviate inflation, conserve natural resources, and maintain a favorable balance of trade. Those aims are also evident in the Cortes of Valladolid in 1258, which repeated several of the earlier laws. The king tells us that after taking counsel and receiving the consent of the three estates, he ordered everyone to abide by the laws enacted. Copies of this text were given to each of the towns represented. In the excerpts given below, the king, faced with serious inflation, tried to curb extravagance in food and dress at his court and also at weddings; to forbid the export of goods deemed essential to the economy, such as horses and livestock; to regulate the administration of justice in his court and to exclude hangers-on, who were likely to abuse his hospitality; to limit interest-taking by Jewish moneylenders; to require Jews and Moors[2] to dress distinctively so as not to be confused with Christians; to prohibit mercantile associations that tried to regulate the economy for

[1] Here and elsewhere in this and the next sentence the writing is defaced and can no longer be read.

[2] Moors, from Latin *mauri*, a term commonly used for Muslims who originally invaded Spain from Morocco (Roman Mauretania).

their benefit; and to protect woods and streams from pollution. Enforcement of these laws seems to have been uneven.

1. Which groups in Spain were weak and which were powerful as revealed in this report?
2. What were the major duties of the king?

[Source: *Cortes de los antiguos reinos de Castilla y León,* 5 vols. (Madrid: M. Rivadeneyra, 1861–1903), vol. 1:54–63. Translation, introduction, and notes by Joseph F. O'Callaghan.]

Don Alfonso,[1] by the grace of God, king of Castile, Toledo, León, Galicia, Seville, Córdoba, Murcia, and Jaén, to all the magnates and all the knights and all the nobles and all the men of the [military] orders and all the [municipal] councils of the kingdom of León who will see this my charter, health and grace. Know that I had my consent and my counsel with my brothers the archbishops and with the bishops and the magnates of Castile and León and with the good men of the towns of Castile, Extremadura, and the land of León who were with me at Valladolid, concerning many intolerable things that were being done that were harmful to us and my entire realm. And they consented to eradicate them and to set down specific and certain things so that you might live.[2] And I determined to observe what they set down and to cause it to be observed and upheld in all my kingdoms. And they all swore and promised to uphold it and to observe it. And the archbishops and the bishops imposed a sentence of excommunication on all those who might not observe it. And the things are these.

1. That I and the queen my wife, etc.

They think it right that the king and his wife should spend 150 *maravedís* each day for their meals, not including outside guests, and no more; and that the king shall eat as he thinks best for his body.[3]

2. That the king should dress as he thinks best and with as many suits of clothes as he wishes.

3. That the king shall order the men who live with him to eat more moderately. And they should not incur such great expense as they do; and the expense that they incur should be only as much as the king may command.

7. They think it right that no man should enter the king's court unless he is with his lord or is a litigant. And if another enters there let the king punish him as he thinks best.[4] And the litigant shall depart as soon as his suit is settled.

8. They think it right that every [municipal] council having a suit before the king should send two good men and no more. And the king should name two good men of his household whose sole task is to receive the good men of the towns and the litigants when they come, and provide them, as honored men, with lodging. And they should present [the suit] to the king. And the king should grant them three days each week when he will hear them and judge them. And on the day of judgment all the litigants shall leave, except those whom he wishes to remain with him. And these days are Mondays, Tuesdays, and Fridays.

9. The king commands that all the litigants who come to his household shall appear before the judges; and if the plea is one that the judges understand and can adjudicate, let them adjudicate it at once; and if the plea is one for the king, let it be presented to him. And if the litigant, once judgment is pronounced, does not wish to leave, or does not wish to submit letters of petition to the king's men who ought to receive them, they shall be arrested

[1] Don, derived from Dominus (Lord) was an honorific title used in Spain.

[2] This phrase refers not only to all the people attending the Cortes, but also to all the people of the realm whom they represented.

[3] Compare this with prices fixed by the Cortes of Seville in 1252. The best horse was 150 *maravedís*; a saddle, 15; a lady's silk headdress, 3; the best fur, 35; 6 pairs of women's shoes, 1; a cow, 3; a bull, 4.

[4] In addition to officials, prelates, magnates, litigants, poets and scholars, the court also attracted idlers hoping to get a free meal or some other benefit, without having to work for it.

and the king shall punish them as he wishes. And if the judge does not want to render judgment or the scribe or the king's man does not want to receive the petition, let the one who delayed the litigant pay his expenses.

12. They also asked a favor of the king that he should not allow horses to be taken out of his kingdoms, nor should he issue charters for the export of livestock, because they believe that that is harmful to his realm. And if a magnate or any other man, without the king's charter, agrees to export horses or livestock or prohibited goods from their lands or places that they hold from the king, or if they export them for something given to them, let them lose the lands they hold of him. And if he is a man who does not hold land from the king, let the king punish him as he thinks best.[1]

13. That no magnate or any other man of his kingdoms may eat more than two meat dishes each day, and one in two ways: either he hunts and catches it or someone else catches it and gives it him. On the meat day no one should eat fish other than trout, and at dinner they may eat one meat dish as they think best, but of one kind and no more. And on fish days one can only eat three fish dishes, not counting shellfish.[2]

14. That no magnate or another knight or any other man may have more than four suits of clothing each year. They may not be trimmed with ermine or otter or with silk, or gilded or silvered or with long cords made rigid with a rod, or metalwork or belts or with raised stitching, or any adornment other than fur or cloth. Nor shall one cloth be sewn over another. And no one shall wear a scarlet raincape except the king.[3] They shall not make leather capes except twice a year. The raincape shall be worn for two years. And no one, other than the king or a new knight, may wear *cendal* [finely woven cloth] or silk unless it is the lining for clothing. And no one may wear the best furs except the king, or a new knight, or a bridegroom, unless he is a magnate or a magnate's son. No magnate or any other man shall wear a cape or surcoat trimmed with silver or crystals or buttons or long cords or ermine or otter, except in the raised stitching of a leather cape. And no magnate may wear a tabard [a sleeveless garment] while in the court.[4]

16. That no magnate may come to the king's household except one who is sent for; and if another comes on account of a suit that he has, let him remain there until his suit is settled; and if he has to settle his finances with the king, let the king settle with him by the third day. And this is also stated for the bishops and masters [of the military orders] and the abbots of [religious] orders.

17. They think it right that every magnate who has 10,000 *maravedís* from the king shall use his own money to eat when he comes to court and he shall lodge in the town where the king lodges. And the magnate who comes to the king's household shall eat in his house and he may bring ten knights and no more.[5] And the magnate who does not eat in his house, may bring two knights and give them food in their lodging. And no knight may come to the king's court without his lord, except a litigant or one sent for by the king.

23. That any magnate, who is still a squire, shall become a knight once the king gives him an estate. And while he is a squire he may not marry, or make knights until he becomes a knight, unless he is the king's son. This is also stated for the sons of magnates.

---

[1] The king ordinarily maintained the magnates, his principal vassals, by giving them *soldadas* or stipends in return for military service. This might be in the form of a landed estate or an income-producing source, such as a toll. A magnate might have landed property of his own. Most people did not hold land from the king.

[2] Alfonso X was one of the first monarchs to enact legislation to protect the environment and to conserve natural resources. He stressed the need to cultivate the land, and develop pastures, mines, and other assets in an orderly way, and to facilitate transportation and communication by building roads and bridges.

[3] The king's legislation restricting the use of colors and types of garments to certain persons was intended to emphasize rank and social difference. Here he reserved the use of scarlet clothing to himself.

[4] I am most grateful to Amparo García Cuadrado of the University of Murcia for her kind assistance in identifying various types of clothing. For illustrations, see her *Las Cantigas: el Códice de Florencia* (Murcia: Universidad de Murcia 1993).

[5] The second magnate, apparently not invited to eat with the king, had to feed his own men. In limiting that second magnate to two knights, the king was helping to limit his expenses.

24. No squire may eat with a knight.

25. The king commands that no one may make clothing except in white, black, or brown. No knight may wail or tear at himself except for his lord.[1] And no one may wear mourning clothes for another, except a suit for a relative or his lord or a wife for her husband, who may wear whatever she wishes.

26. That no Jew may wear white fur or *cendal* of any sort, nor a sturdy gilded or silvered saddle[2] or red stockings or any colored outfit, other than gray or dark brown or black English cloth, except those that the king may command.

27. The king commands that Moors living in towns populated by Christians shall be enclosed round about [in a district]; and they shall wear their hair parted without a tuft [or topknot] and they should wear their beards long as their law requires.[3] And they may not wear *cendal* or white fur or colored clothing, except as is stated above concerning the Jews; nor white or gilded shoes and whoever does so will be at the mercy of the king.

29. They take it as right concerning usury [interest] that all the Jews of the kingdom shall take usury of three for four until the end of the year, and they may not renew the charter until the year is finished. And then let them balance income and capital, and they may not lend thereafter.[4] And this preserves the privileges that each one of the places may have in this matter; in this respect those that the kings gave both to Christians and to Jews shall be valid; and there cannot be any other law or any other rule concerning this. And this shall be as good for Christians and Moors and Jews and for all those who lend at usury. And the king commands that this shall be valid for four years from the day the charter was issued; and from then on no one can demand it and it shall not be valid in any way.[5]

36. They take it as right that confraternities or evil sworn associations or any other wicked assemblies that are harmful to the kingdom and diminish the sovereignty of the king, may not be formed, except those that give food to the poor or for votive lights or to bury the dead or funeral meals that may be eaten in the house of the deceased, and not for other wicked assemblies. And they may not have there any judges to judge in the confraternities, other than those appointed by the king in the towns or according to the *fuero*.[6] And those that do form them together with all that they have shall be turned over to the king, and a judge who accepts that judgeship shall lose whatever he has and his body shall be at the king's mercy. And the king commands that all the confraternities that have been formed shall be dissolved at once, lest they be subject to the aforesaid penalty.

37. They take it as right that merchants and artisans of whatever trade they may be shall not act together against the people, but each one shall sell his product as best he can and those who do otherwise shall be handed over to the king with whatever they have and be at his mercy.[7]

38. They take it as right that no Christian woman shall nurse the child of a Jew or a Moor, and no Jewish or Moorish woman shall nurse a Christian child, and the one who does so will be at the mercy of the king.

42. The king commands that no one shall set fire to the woods and the one who is found doing so shall be thrown into it; otherwise everyone can have whatever he wishes to take from him.

43. The king commands that no one shall throw herbs or lime into streams or any other things that might kill the fish. The king also orders that in that region where there are salmon no one may take the little ones that are called

---

[1] This law tried to restrain the practice of crying loudly or scratching one's face as a sign of mourning.

[2] The *siella de barda* was a type of saddle used by knights.

[3] Illustrations usually depict bearded Moors wearing turbans covering their hair.

[4] Interest or usury of 25% was calculated on a yearly basis when an accounting was done. Only after the original contract expired at the end of the year could a new one be arranged.

[5] Royal privileges concerning usury would be valid for four years.

[6] Confraternities were guilds of merchants or artisans organized to pursue the economic advantage of the members. The king's concern was to prevent the development of a private jurisdiction outside royal control. *Fuero* refers to the local municipal law. For an example, see above, *The Laws of Cuenca*, p. 305.

[7] The law forbade merchants and artisans to fix prices.

gorgones. And whoever does any of these things shall be at the king's mercy.

44. The king commands concerning weddings that no one shall dare to give or receive stockings for the wedding of his female relative. And whoever takes them shall be fined 100 *maravedís*, both the one who gave them and the one who received them.[1]

45. And whoever marries a young girl may give her no more than 60 *maravedís* for clothing for her wedding. And whoever marries a widow may give her 60 *maravedís* for clothing for her wedding. And the king commands that whoever gives more than this shall be at his mercy. And the king also commands that, not counting the household company, no more than five men and five women from the bridegroom's side and an equal number from the bride's side may eat at the wedding.[2] And these do not include the best man and the matron of honor or the father and mother of the bride and groom. And the wedding may not last more than two days. And if the father and mother of the bride and groom or the bride and groom or the one holding the wedding invite more than the number in this law of the king, he shall be fined 10 *maravedís* for each person and he shall be fined 10 *maravedís* for each person of all those who eat without having been invited. And if any male or female relative rears an orphan or any other orphan without a father or a mother, let the one who raised him come in place of the father.

46. And the king commands that from the day of the wedding up to a month, no more than four men, as the previous law commands, shall be asked to be present or invited, and whoever does otherwise shall be at the mercy of the king.[3]

And I the aforesaid King Don Alfonso command you to hold and observe all the aforesaid laws. And I forbid anyone to dare to violate them or to contravene them in any way. The body of the one who does so and whatever he has will be handed over to me on that account. And if perchance anyone should do it, I command the judges and the magistrate to take good trustees and good surety so that he will appear before me, so that I can impose that punishment that I ought to impose on one who violates the oath and contradicts the lord's commandment.

Given at Valladolid. The king commands it. The 21st day of January in the era 1296 [1258].[4]

7.17 The commons participate: *Summons of Representatives of Shires and Towns to Parliament* (1295). Original in Latin.

In 1264, Simon de Montfort (1208–1265), rebelling against the English king Henry III (r.1216–1272), called members of the commons in both town and country to a meeting of parliament. It became a precedent for subsequent assemblies. When King Edward I (r.1272–1307) issued summonses to a parliament of 1295, he sent out letters individually to the members of the higher clergy and his barons. At the same time, as the document here shows, he sent letters to the sheriffs of the realm to summon representatives of "the knights, citizens, and burgesses"—in other words, the commons.

[1] Perhaps this attempted to prohibit the gift of scarlet stockings that were reserved to the king.

[2] In attempting to curb extravagant expense in wedding celebrations, the king was building on restrictions enacted in earlier municipal law codes.

[3] As wedding celebrations could become disorderly, the king's intent was to send most people home and back to work after the wedding day.

[4] The Castilian Era of Caesar was 38 years in advance of the Christian Era (*Anno Domini*).

1. Compare the personnel summoned to the English Parliament with those summoned to the Spanish Cortes.
2. How do you suppose the sheriffs carried out the tasks assigned to them?

[Source: *Translations and Reprints from the Original Sources of European History*, vol. 1, no. 6, *English Constitutional Documents*, ed. Edward Potts Cheyney (Philadelphia: Department of History of the University of Pennsylvania, 1902), p. 35.]

The king to the sheriff of Northamptonshire.

Since we intend to have a consultation and meeting with the earls, barons and other principal men of our kingdom with regard to providing remedies against the dangers which are in these days threatening the same kingdom, and on that account have commanded them to be with us on the Lord's day next after the feast of St. Martin,[1] in the approaching winter, at Westminster, to consider, ordain, and do as may be necessary for the avoidance of these dangers, we strictly require you to cause two knights from the aforesaid county, two citizens from each city in the same county, and two burgesses from each borough, of those who are especially discreet and capable of laboring, to be elected without delay, and to cause them to come to us at the aforesaid time and place. Moreover, the said knights are to have full and sufficient power for themselves and for the community of the aforesaid county, and the said citizens and burgesses for themselves and the communities of the aforesaid cities and boroughs separately, then and there for doing what shall then be ordained according to the common counsel in the premises, so that the aforesaid business shall not remain unfinished in any way for defect of this power. And you shall have there the names of the knights, citizens and burgesses and this writ.

Witness the king at Canterbury, on
the third day of October.

[Identical summonses were sent to the sheriffs of each county.]

7.18 A charismatic ruler: Joinville, *The Life of St. Louis* (1272). Original in French.

Jean de Joinville (1225–1317) was a friend and confidant of King Louis IX (r.1226–1270), who would be canonized as St. Louis in 1297. Joinville met Louis on the Seventh Crusade in 1248 and remained in active service to the king thereafter. He began the first part of his *Life*, excerpted here, in 1272; he added a second part between 1298 and 1309.

1. What did Joinville admire most about the king?
2. How did Joinville reconcile political power with sanctity?

[Source: Joinville and Villehardouin, *Chronicles of the Crusades*, trans. M.R.B. Shaw (New York: Penguin Books, 1963), pp. 163–73, 175–78 (slightly modified).]

[1] I.e., the first Sunday after November 11.

Part One

CHAPTER 1: THE SERVANT OF GOD

In the name of God Almighty, I, Jean, Lord of Joinville, Seneschal[1] of Champagne, dictate the life of our good King, Saint Louis, in which I shall record what I saw and heard both in the course of the six years in which I was on pilgrimage in his company overseas, and after we returned to France. But before I speak to you of his great deeds and his outstanding valor, I will tell you what I myself observed of his good teaching and his saintly conduct, so that it may be set down in due order for the edification of those to whom this book is read.

This saintly man loved our Lord with all his heart, and in all his actions followed His example. This is apparent from the fact that as our Lord died for the love he bore His people, even so King Louis put his own life in danger, and that several times, for the very same reason. It was danger too that he might well have avoided, as I shall show you later.

The great love King Louis bore his people is shown by what he said, as he lay dangerously ill at Fontainebleau, to his eldest son, my Lord Louis. "My dear son," he said, "I earnestly beg you to make yourself loved by all your people. For I would rather have a Scot come from Scotland to govern the people of this kingdom well and justly than that you should govern them ill in the sight of all the world." This upright king, moreover, loved truth so well that, as I shall show you later, he would never consent to lie to the Saracens[2] with regard to any covenant he made with them.

He was so temperate in his appetite that I never heard him, on any day of my life, order a special dish for himself, as many men of wealth and standing do. On the contrary, he would always eat with good grace whatever his cooks had prepared to set before him. He was equally temperate in his speech. I never, on any single occasion, heard him speak evil of any man; nor did I ever hear him utter the name of the Devil—a name in very common use throughout the kingdom—which practice, so I believe, is not pleasing to God.

He used to add water to his wine, but did so reasonably, according as the strength of the wine allowed it. While we were in Cyprus he asked me why I did not mix my wine with water. I replied that this was on the advice of my doctors, who had told me that I had a strong head and a cold stomach, so that I could not get drunk. He answered that they had deceived me; for if I did not learn to mix my wine with water while I was still young, and wished to do so in my old age, gout and stomach troubles would take hold on me, and I should never be in good health. Moreover, if I went on drinking undiluted wine when I was old, I should get drunk every night, and it was too revolting a thing for any brave man to be in such a state.

The king once asked me if I wished to be honored in this world, and to enter paradise when I died. I told him I did. "If so," said he, "you should avoid deliberately saying or doing anything which, if it became generally known, you would be ashamed to acknowledge by saying 'I did this,' or 'I said that.'" He also told me not to contradict or call in question anything said in my presence—unless indeed silence would imply approval of something wrong, or damaging to myself, because harsh words often lead to quarrelling, which has ended in the death of countless numbers of men.

He often said that people ought to clothe and arm themselves in such a way that men of riper age would never say they had spent too much on dress, or young men say they had spent too little. I repeated this remark to our present king when speaking of the elaborately embroidered tabards that are in vogue today.[3] I told him that, during the whole of our voyage overseas, I had never seen such embroidered tabards, either on the king or on any one else. He said to me that he had several such garments, with his own arms embroidered on them, and they had cost him eight hundred *livres parisis*. I told him that he would have put his money to better use if he had given it to God, and had his clothes made of good plain taffeta bearing his arms, as his father had done.

King Louis once sent for me and said: "You have such a shrewd and subtle mind that I hardly dare speak to you of things concerning God. So I have summoned these two monks to come here, because I want to ask you a question." Then he said: "Tell me, seneschal, what is your idea of God?" "Your Majesty," I replied, "He is something so good that there cannot be anything better." "Indeed," said he, "you've given me a very good answer; for it's precisely the same as the definition given in this book I have here in my hand."

---

[1] Technically a senechal was a royal officer. But Joinville inherited the title from his father, and in his case it was simply an honorific.

[2] The Saracens, i.e., the Muslims.

[3] A tabard was a tunic worn over armor and embroidered with a coat of arms. "Our present king" was Louis's grandson Philip IV "The Fair," king of France (r.1285–1314).

"Now I ask you," he continued, "which you would prefer: to be a leper or to have committed some mortal sin?" And I, who had never lied to him, replied that I would rather have committed thirty mortal sins than become a leper. The next day, when the monks were no longer there, he called me to him, and making me sit at his feet said to me: "Why did you say that to me yesterday?" I told him I would still say it. "You spoke without thinking, and like a fool," he said. "You ought to know there is no leprosy so foul as being in a state of mortal sin; for the soul in that condition is like the Devil; therefore no leprosy can be so vile. Besides, when a man dies his body is healed of its leprosy; but if he dies after committing a mortal sin, he can never be sure that, during his lifetime, he has repented of it sufficiently for God to forgive him. In consequence, he must be greatly afraid lest that leprosy of sin should last as long as God dwells in paradise. So I beg you," he added, "as earnestly as I can, for the love of God, and for love of me, to train your heart to prefer any evil that can happen to the body, whether it be leprosy or any other disease, rather than let mortal sin take possession of your soul."

At another time King Louis asked me if I washed the feet of the poor on Maundy Thursday.[1] "Your Majesty," I exclaimed, "what a terrible idea! I will never wash the feet of such low fellows." "Really," said he, "that is a very wrong thing to say; for you should never scorn to do what our Lord Himself did as an example for us. So I beg you, first for the love of God and then for love of me, to accustom yourself to washing the feet of the poor."

This good king so loved all manner of people who believed in God and loved Him that he appointed Gilles le Brun, who was not a native of his realm, as High Constable of France, because he was held in such high repute for his faith in God and devotion to His service. For my part, I believe he well deserved that reputation. Another man, Master Robert de Sorbon,[2] who was famed for his goodness and his learning, was invited, on that account, to dine at the royal table.

It happened one day that this worthy priest was sitting beside me at dinner, and we were talking to each other rather quietly. The king reproved us and said: "Speak up, or your companions may think you are speaking ill of them. If at table you talk of things that may give us pleasure, say them aloud, or else be silent."

When the king was feeling in a mood for fun, he would fire questions at me, as for instance: "Seneschal, can you give me reasons why a wise and upright layman is better than a friar?" Thereupon a discussion would begin between Master Robert and myself. When we had disputed for some length of time the king would pronounce judgement. "Master Robert," he would say, "I would willingly be known as a wise and upright man, provided I were so in reality—and you can have all the rest. For wisdom and goodness are such fine qualities that even to name them leaves a pleasant taste in the mouth."

On the other hand, he always said that it was a wicked thing to take other people's property. "To 'restore,'" he would say, "is such a hard thing to do that even in speaking of it the word itself rasps one's throat because of the *r*'s that are in it. These *r*'s are, so to speak, like the rakes of the Devil, with which he would draw to himself all those who wish to 'restore' what they have taken from others. The Devil, moreover, does this very subtly; for he works on great usurers and great robbers in such a way that they give to God what they ought to *restore* to men."

On one occasion the king gave me a message to take to King Thibaut,[3] in which he warned his son-in-law to beware lest he should lay too heavy a burden on his soul by spending an excessive amount of money on the house he was building for the Predicants[4] of Provins. "Wise men," said the king, "deal with their possessions as executors ought to do. Now the first thing a good executor does is to settle all debts incurred by the deceased and restore any property belonging to others, and only then is he free to apply what money remains to charitable purposes."

One Pentecost the saintly king happened to be at Corbeil, where all the knights had assembled. He had come down after dinner into the court below the chapel, and was standing at the doorway talking to the Count of Brittany, the father of the present count—may God preserve him!—when Master Robert de Sorbon came to look for me, and taking hold of the hem of my mantle led me towards the king. So I said to Master Robert: "My good sir, what do you want with me?" He replied: "I wish to ask you whether, if the king were seated in this court and you

[1] This is also known as Holy Thursday, the Thursday before Easter Sunday.

[2] Robert de Sorbon was Louis's chaplain and founder (in 1257) of the college of the Sorbonne, today the University of Paris. He had the title of Master because he was qualified, by his university training, to teach theology.

[3] Thibaut (1201–1253) was count of Champagne and, starting in 1234, king of Navarre. He was a *trouvère*, that is, a troubadour who wrote in French rather than Old Occitan, the language of southern France.

[4] Predicants was another word for the Dominicans.

went and sat down on his bench, at a higher place than he, you ought to be severely blamed for doing so?" I told him I ought to be. "Then," he said "you certainly deserve a reprimand for being more richly dressed than the king, since you are wearing a fur-trimmed mantle of fine green cloth, and he wears no such thing." "Master Robert," I answered, "I am, if you'll allow me to say so, doing nothing worthy of blame in wearing green cloth and fur, for I inherited the right to such dress from my father and mother. But you, on the other hand, are much to blame, for though both your parents were commoners, you have abandoned their style of dress, and are now wearing finer woolen cloth than the king himself." Then I took hold of the skirt of his surcoat and of the surcoat worn by the king, and said to Master Robert: "See if I'm not speaking the truth." At this the king began to take Master Robert's part, and say all in his power to defend him.

A little later on the king beckoned to his son, the Prince Philip—the father of our present king—and to King Thibaut. Then, seating himself at the entrance to his oratory, he patted the ground and said to the two young men: "Sit down here, quite close to me, so that we won't be overheard." "But, my lord," they protested, "we should not dare to sit so close to you." Then the king said to me, "Seneschal, you sit here." I obeyed, and sat down so close to him that my clothes were touching his. He made the two others sit down next, and said to them: "You have acted very wrongly, seeing you are my sons, in not doing as I commanded the moment I told you. I beg you to see this does not happen again." They assured him it would not.

Then the king said to me that he had called us together to confess that he had wrongly defended Master Robert against me. "But," said he, "I saw he was so taken aback that he greatly needed my help. All the same you must not attach too great importance to anything I may have said in his defense. As the seneschal rightly says, you ought to dress well, and in a manner suited to your condition, so that your wives will love you all the more and your men have more respect for you. For, as a wise philosopher has said, our clothing and our armor ought to be of such a kind that men of mature experience will not say that we have spent too much on them, nor younger men say we have spent too little."

I will tell you here of one of the lessons King Louis taught me on our voyage back from the land overseas.[1] It so happened that our ship was driven on to the rocks off the island of Cyprus by a wind known as the *garbino*, which is not one of the four great winds. At the shock our ship received the sailors were so frantic with despair that they rent their clothes and tore their beards. The king sprang out of bed barefoot—for it was night—and with nothing on but his tunic went and lay with arms outstretched to form a cross before the body of Our Lord on the altar, as one who expected nothing but death.

The day after this alarming event, the king called me aside to talk with him alone, and said to me: "Seneschal, God has just shown us a glimpse of His great power; for one of these little winds, so little indeed that it scarcely deserves a name, came near to drowning the King of France, his children, his wife, and his men. Now Saint Anselm says that such things are warnings from our Lord, as if God meant to say to us: 'See how easily I could have brought about your death if that had been My will.' ' Lord God,' says the saint, 'why do You thus threaten us? For when you do, it is not for Your own profit, nor for Your advantage—seeing that if You had caused us all to be lost You would be none the poorer, nor any the richer either if You had caused us to be saved. Therefore, the warning You send us is not for Your own benefit, but for ours, if we know how to profit by it.'

"Let us therefore," said the king, "take this warning God has sent us in such a way that if we feel there is anything in our hearts or our bodies that is displeasing to Him, we shall get rid of it without delay. If, on the other hand, we can think of anything that will please Him, we ought to see about doing it with equal speed. If we act thus our Lord will give us blessings in this world, and in the next greater bliss than we can tell. But if we do not act as we ought, He will deal with us as a good lord deals with his unfaithful servant. For if the latter will not amend his ways after he has been given warning, then his lord punishes him with death, or with penalties even harder to bear."

So I, Jean de Joinville, say: "Let the king who now reigns over us beware; for he has escaped from perils as great as those to which we were then exposed, or even greater. Therefore, let him turn from doing wrong, and in such a way that God will not smite him cruelly, either in himself or in his possessions."

In the conversations he had with me, this saintly king did every thing in his power to give me a firm belief in the principles of Christianity as given us by God. He used to say that we ought to have such an unshaken belief in all

[1] Louis went overseas on two crusades. This refers to his first, the Seventh Crusade, which, like the next one, was a failure. Louis died in the course of his second crusade.

the articles of faith that neither fear of death nor of any harm that might happen to our bodies should make us willing to go against them in word or deed. "The Enemy,"[1] he would add, "works so subtly that when people are at the point of death he tries all he can to make them die with some doubt in their minds on certain points of our religion. For this cunning adversary is well aware that he cannot take away the merit of any good works a man has done; and he also knows that a man's soul is lost to him if he dies in the true faith....

King Louis also spoke to me of a great assembly of clergy and Jews which had taken place at the monastery of Cluny. There was a poor knight there at the time to whom the abbot had often given bread for the love of God. This knight asked the abbot if he could speak first, and his request was granted, though somewhat grudgingly. So he rose to his feet, and leaning on his crutch, asked to have the most important and most learned rabbi among the Jews brought before him. As soon as the Jew had come, the knight asked him a question. "May I know, sir," he said, "if you believe that the Virgin Mary, who bore our Lord in her body and cradled Him in her arms, was a virgin at the time of His birth, and is in truth the Mother of God?"

The Jew replied that he had no belief in any of those things. Thereupon the knight told the Jew that he had acted like a fool when—neither believing in the Virgin, nor loving her—he had set foot in that monastery which was her house. "And by heaven," exclaimed the knight, "I'll make you pay for it!" So he lifted his crutch and struck the Jew such a blow with it near the ear that he knocked him down. Then all the Jews took to flight, and carried their sorely wounded rabbi away with them. Thus the conference ended.

The abbot went up to the knight and told him he had acted most unwisely. The knight retorted that the abbot had been guilty of even greater folly in calling people together for such a conference, because there were many good Christians there who, before the discussion ended, would have gone away with doubts about their own religion through not fully understanding the Jews. "So I tell you," said the king, "that no one, unless he is an expert theologian, should venture to argue with these people. But a layman, whenever he hears the Christian religion abused, should not attempt to defend its tenets, except with his sword, and that he should thrust into the scoundrel's belly, and as far as it will enter."

CHAPTER 2: THE SERVANT OF HIS PEOPLE

In the midst of attending to the affairs of his realm King Louis so arranged his day that he had time to hear the Hours[2] sung by a full choir and a Requiem mass without music. In addition, if it was convenient, he would hear low mass for the day, or high mass on Saints' days. Every day after dinner he rested on his bed, and when he had slept and was refreshed, he and one of his chaplains would say the Office for the Dead privately in his room. Later in the day he attended vespers, and compline at night.

A Franciscan friar once came to see him at the castle of Hyères, where we had disembarked on our return to France. In his sermon, intended for the king's instruction, he said that in his reading of the Bible and other books that speak of non-Christian princes he had never found, in the history of either heathen or Christian peoples, that a kingdom had been lost or had changed its ruler, except where justice had been ignored. "Therefore," said he, "let the king who is now returning to France[3] take good care to see that he administers justice well and promptly to his people, so that our Lord may allow him to rule his kingdom in peace to the end of his days." I have been told that the worthy man who taught the king this lesson lies buried at Marseille, where our Lord, for his sake, still performs many a fine miracle. He would never consent to remain with the king for more than a single day, however strongly his Majesty pressed him to stay. All the same, the king never forgot the good friar's teaching, but governed his kingdom well and faithfully according to God's law.

In dealing with each day's business, the king's usual plan was to send for Jean de Nesles, the good count of Soissons, and the rest of us, as soon as we had heard mass, and tell us to go and hear the pleadings at the gate of the city which is now called the Gate of Requests.

After he had returned from church the king would send for us, and sitting at the foot of his bed would make us all sit round him, and ask us if there were any cases that could not be settled except by his personal intervention. After we had told him which they were, he would send for the interested parties and ask them: "Why did you not accept

[1] "The Enemy" is the devil.

[2] The Hours refers to the daily offices of prayer.

[3] "France" refers to the Ile-de-France. Hyères was (and is) in Provence. Joinville is again referring to the king's return from the Seventh Crusade.

what our people offer?" "Your Majesty," they would reply, "because they offer us too little." Then he would say: "You would do well to accept whatever they are willing to give you." Our saintly king would thus do his utmost to bring them round to a right and reasonable way of thinking.

In summer, after hearing mass, the king often went to the wood of Vincennes, where he would sit down with his back against an oak, and make us all sit round him. Those who had any suit to present could come to speak to him without hindrance from an usher or any other person. The king would address them directly, and ask: "Is there anyone here who has a case to be settled?" Those who had one would stand up. Then he would say: "Keep silent all of you, and you shall be heard in turn, one after the other." Then he would call Peter de Fontaines and Geoffry de Villette, and say to one or other of them: "Settle this case for me." If he saw anything needing correction in what was said by those who spoke on his behalf or on behalf of any other person, he would himself intervene to make the necessary adjustment.

I have sometimes seen him, in summer, go to administer justice to his people in the public gardens in Paris, dressed in a plain woolen tunic, a sleeveless overcoat of linsey-woolsey,[1] and a black taffeta cape round his shoulders, with his hair neatly combed, but no cap to cover it, and only a hat of white peacock's feathers on his head. He would have a carpet laid down so that we might sit round him, while all those who had any case to bring before him stood round about. Then he would pass judgment on each case, as I have told you he often used to do in the wood of Vincennes.

I saw the king on another occasion, at a time when all the French prelates had said they wished to speak with him, and he had gone to his palace to hear what they had to say. Bishop Guy of Auxerre, the son of William de Mello, was among those present, and he addressed the king on behalf of all the prelates. "Your Majesty," he said, "the Lords Spiritual of this realm here present, have directed me to tell you that the cause of Christianity, which it is your duty to guard and defend, is being ruined in your hands." On hearing these words the king crossed himself and said: "Pray tell me how that may be."

"Your Majesty," said the bishop, "it is because at the present time excommunications are so lightly regarded that people think nothing of dying without seeking absolution, and refuse to make their peace with the Church. The Lords Spiritual[2] require you therefore, for the love of God and because it is your duty, to command your provosts and your bailiffs[3] to seek out all those who allow themselves to remain under the ban of the Church[4] for a year and a day, and compel them, by seizure of their possessions, to get themselves absolved."

The king replied that he would willingly give such orders provided he himself could be shown without any doubt that the persons concerned were in the wrong. The bishop told him that the prelates would not on any account accept this condition, since they questioned his right to adjudicate in their affairs. The king replied that he would not do anything other than he had said; for it would be against God and contrary to right and justice if he compelled any man to seek absolution when the clergy were doing him wrong.

"As an example of this," he continued, "I will quote the case of the Count of Brittany, who for seven whole years, while under sentence of excommunication, pleaded his cause against the bishops of his province, and carried his case so far that in the end the Pope condemned all his adversaries. Now, if at the end of the first year I had forced the count to seek absolution, I should have sinned against God and against the man himself." So the prelates resigned themselves to accepting things as they were; and I have never heard tell that any further demand was made in relation to this matter.

In making peace with the King of England, King Louis acted against the advice of his council, who had said to him: "It seems to us that Your Majesty is needlessly throwing away the land you are giving to the King of England; for he has no right to it, since it was justly taken from his father." To this the king replied that he was well aware that the King of England had no right to the land, but there was a reason why he felt bound to give it to him. "You see," said he, "our wives are sisters and consequently our children are first cousins. That is why it is most important for us to be at peace with each other. Besides, I gain increased honor for myself through the peace I have made with the King of England, for he is now my vassal, which he has never been before."

---

[1] A coarse woven fabric made of wool and linen.

[2] I.e., the bishops.

[3] Provosts and bailiffs were royal officers.

[4] "The ban of the Church" was excommunication.

7.19 The papal challenge: Boniface VIII, *Unam sanctam* (1302). Original in Latin.

The increasing prestige of the European kings as both rulers and models of piety upset the delicate balance of power between Church and State. In 1301, King Philip IV of France arrested—on charges of treason—the bishop of Pamiers, Bernard Saisset (*c.*1232–*c.*1314), whom Pope Boniface VIII (1294–1303) had named to the post without royal approval. Like Becket some 130 years before in England, Boniface demanded that the bishop be tried in a church court. In *Unam sanctam* he affirmed the superior power of the pope. Soon thereafter, he excommunicated Philip. Turning tables, Philip had his men try to arrest Boniface, and although they were unsuccessful, the papacy soon thereafter moved to Avignon, well within the French sphere of influence.

1. What points in this papal bull might have offended Philip IV?
2. What points in this bull are directed less to the king than to churchmen?

[Source: *Translations and Reprints from the Original Sources of European History*, vol. 3, no. 6, *The Pre-Reformation Period*, ed. James Harvey Robinson (Philadelphia: Department of History of the University of Pennsylvania, 1907), pp. 20–23 (notes added).]

That there is one Holy Catholic and Apostolic Church we are impelled by our faith to believe and to hold—this we do firmly believe and openly confess—and outside of this there is neither salvation or remission of sins, as the bridegroom proclaims in Canticles, "My dove, my undefiled is but one; she is the only one of her mother; she is the choice one of her that bare her."[1] The Church represents one mystic body and of this body Christ is the head; of Christ, indeed, God is the head. In it is one Lord, and one faith, and one baptism. In the time of the flood, there was one ark of Noah, pre-figuring the one Church, finished in one cubit, having one Noah as steersman and commander. Outside of this, all things upon the face of the earth were, as we read, destroyed. This Church we venerate and this alone, the Lord saying through his prophets, "Deliver my soul, O God, from the sword; my darling from the power of the dog."[2] He prays thus for the soul, that is for Himself, as head, and also for the body which He calls one, namely, the Church on account of the unity of the bridegroom, of the faith, of the sacraments, and of the charity of the Church. It is that seamless coat of the Lord, which was not rent, but fell by lot.[3] Therefore, in this one and only Church, there is one body and one head,—not two heads as if it were a monster—namely, Christ and Christ's Vicar, Peter and Peter's successor, for the Lord said to Peter himself, "Feed my sheep:"[4] *my* sheep, he said, using a general term and not designating these or those sheep, so that we must believe that all the sheep were committed to him. If, then, the Greeks, or others, shall say that they were not entrusted to Peter and his successors, they must perforce admit that they are not of Christ's sheep, as the lord says in John, "there is one fold, and one shepherd."[5]

In this Church and in its power are two swords, to wit, a spiritual and a temporal, and this we are taught by the words of the Gospel, for when the Apostles said, "Behold, here are two swords"[6] (in the Church, namely, since the Apostles were speaking), the Lord did not reply that it was

[1] See Song of Sol. 5:2 and 6:8.

[2] Ps. 22:20; Douay Ps. 21:21.

[3] See John 19:23–24.

[4] John 21:15–17.

[5] John 10:16.

[6] Luke 22:38.

too many, but enough. And surely he who claims that the temporal sword is not in the power of Peter has but ill understood the word of our Lord when he said, "Put up thy sword in its scabbard."[1] Both, therefore, the spiritual and the material swords, are in the power of the Church, the latter indeed to be used for the Church, the former by the Church, the one by the priest, the other by the hand of kings and soldiers, but by the will and sufferance of the priest. It is fitting, moreover, that one sword should be under the other, and the temporal authority subject to the spiritual power. For when the Apostle said, "there is no power but of God and the powers that are of God are ordained," they would not be disposed in an orderly manner unless one sword were guided by the performance of the most exalted deeds. For, according to the Holy Dionysius,[2] the law of divinity is to lead the lowest through the intermediate to the highest. Therefore, according to the law of the universe, things are not reduced to order directly, and upon the same footing, but the lowest through the intermediate, and the inferior through the superior. It behooves us, therefore, the more freely to confess that the spiritual power excels in dignity and nobility any form whatsoever of earthly power, as spiritual interests exceed the temporal in importance. All this we see fairly from the giving of tithes, from the benediction and sanctification, from the recognition of this power and the control of these same things. For the truth bearing witness, it is for the spiritual power to establish the earthly power and judge it, if it be not good. Thus, in the case of the Church and the power of the Church, the prophecy of Jeremiah is fulfilled: "See, I have this day set thee over the nations and over the kingdoms"[3]—and so forth. Therefore, if the earthly power shall err, it shall be judged by the spiritual power; if the lesser spiritual power err, it shall be judged by the higher. But if the supreme power err, it can be judged by God alone and not by man, the apostles bearing witness saying, the spiritual man judges all things but he himself is judged by no one. Hence this power, although given to man and exercised by man, is not human, but rather a divine power, given by the divine lips to Peter, and founded on a rock for Him and his successors in Him [Christ] whom he confessed, the Lord saying to Peter himself, "Whatsoever thou shalt bind," etc.[4] Whoever, therefore, shall resist this power, ordained by God, resists the ordination of God, unless there should be two beginnings, as the Manichaean imagines. But this we judge to be false and heretical, since, by the testimony of Moses, not in the *beginnings*, but in the *beginning*, God created the heaven and the earth. We, moreover, proclaim, declare and pronounce that it is altogether necessary to salvation for every human being to be subject to the Roman Pontiff.

Given at the Lateran the twelfth day before the Kalends of December, in our eighth year, as a perpetual memorial of this matter.

MODES OF THOUGHT, FEELING, AND DEVOTION

7.20 Scholasticism: Thomas Aquinas, *On Love* (1271). Original in Latin.

Thomas Aquinas (*c.*1225–1274) was a Dominican friar, a university professor of theology, and perhaps the best known of the medieval scholastics—scholars who approached broad and significant topics systematically, using the tools of Aristotelian logic for their scaffolding. By Thomas's day, the entire corpus of Aristotle's works was available in Latin, and Thomas shows easy familiarity with all of them. He wrote the passage *On Love* that is excerpted here as part of a systematic analysis of all the emotions. That discussion was embedded, in turn, in a huge work, the *Summa Theologiae*, which took up all the burning

[1] John 18:11.

[2] Now known as Pseudo-Dionysius, a Syrian thinker (*fl. c.*500).

[3] Jer. 1:10.

[4] A reference to Matt. 16:18–19, where Jesus refers to Peter as the "rock" (*petra* in Latin) upon which he will build his Church. The papacy was fond of quoting this as a foundational text.

questions of the day regarding God, man, and their relations with one another. The section here, while brief, includes all the elements of the classic scholastic argument. It begins with a question: What are the causes of love? It divides the question into the four causes that were commonly assumed to make a person love someone or something. Each "article" takes up one of the causes. The first article, the only one illustrated in this excerpt, asks whether the only cause of love is Good, meaning that the goodness of a thing causes one to love it. Thomas begins with "Objections" that argue the position he will ultimately refute. He follows the Objections with a section beginning with the words "On the contrary." That section introduces the position that Thomas takes on the issue. Then he makes his argument, starting "I answer that...." Finally, he rebuts each Objection.

1. What developments in medieval logic do you see when comparing this work with Abelard, *Glosses on Porphyry*, above, p. 278?
2. Why did Thomas talk about love in a theological treatise?

[Source: Thomas Aquinas, *Summa Theologica (Pars Prima Secundae)* (Middlesex: Echo Library, 2007), p. 123 (notes added).]

Question 27

Of the Cause of Love
(In Four Articles)

We must now consider the cause of love: and under this head there are four points of inquiry:
(1) Whether good is the only cause of love?
(2) Whether knowledge is a cause of love?
(3) Whether likeness is a cause of love?
(4) Whether any other passion of the soul is a cause of love?——

FIRST ARTICLE

Whether Good Is the Only Cause of Love?

Objection 1: It would seem that good is not the only cause of love. For good does not cause love, except because it is loved. But it happens that evil also is loved, according to Ps. 10:6: "He that loveth iniquity, hateth his own soul": else, every love would be good. Therefore good is not the only cause of love.

Obj. 2: Further, the Philosopher says (Rhet. ii, 4)[1] that "we love those who acknowledge their evils." Therefore, it seems that evil is the cause of love.

Obj. 3: Further, Dionysius says (Div. Nom. iv)[2] that not "the good" only but also "the beautiful is beloved by all."

On the contrary, Augustine says (De Trin. viii, 3):[3] "Assuredly the good alone is beloved." Therefore, good alone is the cause of love.

I answer that, as stated above[4] (Q. 26, A. 1), Love belongs to the appetitive power which is a passive faculty.[5] Wherefore its object stands in relation to it as the cause of its movement or act. Therefore, the cause of love [has

[1] "The Philosopher" is Aristotle, and Rhet. is a reference to Aristotle's treatise *On Rhetoric*. All the citations in parentheses have been added by editors; Thomas himself assumed that his readers would know his references.

[2] "Dionysius" now known as Pseudo-Dionysius the Areopagite, was a late fifth or early sixth-century Christian theologian whose works were especially esteemed by scholastics. Div. Nom. refers to his work *On the Divine Names*.

[3] Augustine was the late fourth and early fifth-century theologian who wrote *The City of God* (see above, p. 16); Thomas quotes here from Augustine's work *On the Trinity*.

[4] As stated in Thomas's treatment of Question 26.

[5] Thomas, like many other scholastics, borrowed the idea of human "powers" or "faculties" from Aristotle. The "appetitive power" is the power of desire, and all the emotions belong to it. It is "passive" in that it is "acted upon"—when something outside of it stimulates it. The "something outside" of love that causes it to act is its object.

to] be love's object. Now the proper object of love is the good; because, as stated above,[1] love implies a certain connaturalness or complacency of the lover for the thing beloved, and to everything, that thing is a good, which is akin and proportionate to it. It follows, therefore, that good is the proper cause of love.[2]

Reply Obj. 1: Evil is never loved except under the aspect of good, that is to say, in so far as it is good in some respect, and is considered as being good simply. And thus a certain love is evil, in so far as it tends to that which is not simply a true good. It is in this way that man "loves iniquity," inasmuch as, by means of iniquity, some good is gained; pleasure, for instance, or money, or such like.[3]

Reply Obj. 2: Those who acknowledge their evils are beloved, not for their evils, but because they acknowledge them, for it is a good thing to acknowledge one's faults, in so far as it excludes insincerity or hypocrisy.

Reply Obj. 3: The beautiful is the same as the good, and they differ in aspect only. For since good is what all seek, the notion of good is that which calms the desire; while the notion of the beautiful is that which calms the desire, by being seen or known. Consequently those senses chiefly regard the beautiful, which are the most cognitive, [namely] sight and hearing, as ministering to reason; for we speak of beautiful sights and beautiful sounds.[4] But in reference to the other objects of the other senses, we do not use the expression "beautiful," for we do not speak of beautiful tastes and beautiful odors. Thus it is evident that beauty adds to goodness a relation to the cognitive faculty: so that "good" means that which simply pleases the appetite; while the "beautiful" is something pleasant to apprehend.

7.21 The vernacular comes into its own: Dante, *Inferno*, Canto V (Paolo and Francesca) (1313–1321). Original in Italian.

Dante (1265–1321) used his native Tuscan language to create poetry of great power. Born into a family that obtained noble status through mercantile activities (his father was a moneylender), his early aptitude for poetry was encouraged by his teachers. In his three-part *Divine Comedy*, Dante undertook a metaphorical journey to hell, purgatory, and heaven, meeting famous—and infamous—people along the way, and he used the experience to comment on all the issues of his day. In some ways, his poem was a commentary on the scholastic synthesis of Thomas Aquinas, with which Dante, like most educated people of his day, was very familiar. In the excerpt here, from the *Inferno* (Hell), Dante illustrates Thomas's assertion that "evil is never loved except under the aspect of good." Unfortunately for Paolo and Francesca, their love was not caused by a "true good."

1. How did the poet feel about Paolo and Francesca?
2. How did reading the story of Lancelot and Guinevere (see above, p. 356) bring the two lovers together?

[1] Again in Question 26.

[2] "Connaturalness," "complacency," "akin," and "proportionate" are all ways of saying that that which is good causes love to have an affinity for it. Thus, what is good causes love to love it because it induces love to become like the good.

[3] Here Thomas speaks of a "true good," a good that is entirely good. Many things are not a true good but are loved (vainly, wrongly, hopelessly) because they are partially good.

[4] Beauty is, then, the good of the senses of sight and sound.

[Source: Dante Alighieri, *The Divine Comedy*, trans. and commentary by Charles S. Singleton, *Inferno* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 1970), pp. 47, 49, 51, 53, 55, 57 (notes added, adapted from the accompanying vol. of commentary by Singleton).]

Inferno Canto V

Thus I descended from the first circle into the second, which girds less space, and so much greater woe that it goads to wailing. There stands Minos, horrible and snarling: upon the entrance he examines their offenses, and judges and dispatches them according as he entwines.[1] I mean that when the ill-begotten soul comes before him, it confesses all; and that discerner of sins sees which shall be its place in Hell, then girds himself with his tail as many times as the grades he wills that it be sent down. Always before him stands a crowd of them; they go, each in his turn, to the judgment; they tell, and hear,[2] and then are hurled below.

"O you who come to the abode of pain," said Minos to me, when he saw me, pausing in the act of that great office, "beware how you enter and in whom you trust; let not the breadth of the entrance deceive you!" And my leader[3] [said] to him, "Why do you too cry out? Do not hinder his fated going: thus is it willed there where that can be done which is willed; and ask no more."

Now the doleful notes begin to reach me; now I am come where much wailing smites me. I came into a place mute of all light, which bellows like the sea in tempest when it is assailed by warring winds. The hellish hurricane, never resting, sweeps along the spirits with its rapine; whirling and smiting, it torments them. When they arrive before the ruin, there the shrieks, the moans, the lamentations; there they curse the divine power. I learned that to such torment are condemned the carnal sinners, who subject reason to desire.

And as their wings bear the starlings along in the cold season, in wide, dense flocks, so does that blast the sinful spirits; hither, thither, downward, upward, it drives them. No hope of less pain, not to say of rest, ever comforts them. And as the cranes go chanting their lays, making a long line of themselves in the air, so I saw shades come, uttering wails, borne by that strife; wherefore I said, "Master, who are these people that are so lashed by the black air?"

"The first of these of whom you wish to know," he said to me then, "was empress of many tongues. She was so given to lechery that she made lust licit in her law, to take away the blame she had incurred. She is Semiramis, of whom we read that she succeeded Ninus and had been his wife: she held the land the Sultan rules.[4] The next is she who slew herself for love and broke faith to the ashes of Sichaeus;[5] next is wanton Cleopatra.[6] See Helen, for whom so many years of ill revolved;[7] and see the great Achilles, who fought at the last with love.[8] See Paris, Tristan,"[9] and more than a thousand shades whom love

---

[1] The first circle of the nine circles of Hell is Limbo, but it is still a bit outside Hell proper. That begins where Minos—in legend a king of Crete and in Virgil's *Aeneid* a judge of men's lives in Hell—stands snarling. Since Hell is funnel-shaped, each successive circle in the descent is smaller in circumference than the one above it. While the spirits in Limbo sigh, those in the next circle wail in pain.

[2] The souls tell their sins and hear their judgment.

[3] Dante's "leader," "Master," and "teacher" is Virgil, sometimes called "the poet," whose portrayal of Aeneas's visit to the underworld is echoed by Dante in many of the images in the *Inferno*.

[4] Semiramis is the Greek name of a queen of ancient Assyria. She was famous for her beauty and lust as well as for her prowess in war. The region of ancient Assyria in Dante's time (northern Iraq) was not ruled by a Sultan but rather by the Mongol Ilkhanids. It was Egypt that was under the Mamluk Sultan's rule. Apparently Dante confused Babylonia, a kingdom of the Assyrian empire, with Babylon (Old Cairo), a fortified city on the Nile.

[5] "She who slew herself for love" was Dido, queen of Carthage, who, after mourning her husband Sichaeus, fell in love with Aeneas despite her vow to remain faithful to the memory of her husband. When Aeneas left Dido to found Rome, she stabbed herself.

[6] Cleopatra, queen of Egypt, was mistress of Julius Caesar and Mark Antony and was famous for her beauty and seductive ways.

[7] Helen was the beautiful wife of the king of Sparta. Her abduction by Paris led to the long Trojan War.

[8] In medieval romances, Achilles, the hero of the Trojan War, was in love with Polyxena and was lured to his death by a sham rendezvous with her.

[9] Tristan died for his love of Isolde.

had parted from our life he showed me, pointing them out and naming them.

When I heard my teacher name the ladies and the knights of old, pity overcame me and I was as one bewildered. "Poet," I began, "willingly would I speak with those two that go together and seem to be so light upon the wind."[1]

And he to me, "You shall see when they are nearer to us; and do you entreat them then by that love which leads them, and they will come."

As soon as the wind bends them to us, I raised my voice, "O wearied souls! come speak with us, if Another[2] forbid it not."

As doves called by desire, with wings raised and steady, come through the air, borne by their will to their sweet nest, so did these issue from the troop where Dido is, coming to us through the malignant air, such force had my compassionate cry.

"O living creature, gracious and benign, that go through the black air visiting us who stained the world with blood, if the King of the universe were friendly to us, we would pray Him for your peace, since you have pity on our perverse ill. Of that which it pleases you to hear and to speak, we will hear and speak with you, while the wind, as now, is silent for us.

"The city where I was born lies on that shore where the Po descends to be at peace with its followers.[3] Love, which is quickly kindled in a gentle heart, seized this one for the fair form that was taken from me—and the way of it afflicts me still. Love, which absolves no loved one from loving, seized me so strongly with delight in him,[4] that, as you see, it does not leave me even now. Love brought us to one death. Caina awaits him who quenched our life."[5]

These words were borne to us from them. And when I heard those afflicted souls I bowed my head and held it bowed until the poet said to me, "What are you thinking of?"

When I answered, I began, "Alas! How many sweet thoughts, what great desire, brought them to the woeful pass!"

Then I turned again to them, and I began, "Francesca, your torments make me weep for grief and pity; but tell me, in the time of the sweet sighs, by what and how did Love grant you to know the dubious desires?"

And she to me, "There is no greater sorrow than to recall, in wretchedness, the happy time; and this your teacher knows. But if you have such great desire to know the first root of our love, I will tell as one who weeps and tells. One day, for pastime, we read of Lancelot, how love constrained him; we were alone, suspecting nothing.[6] Several times that reading urged our eyes to meet and took the color from our faces, but one moment alone it was that overcame us. When we read how the longed-for smile was kissed by so great a lover, this one, who never shall be parted from me, kissed my mouth all trembling. A Gallehault was the book and he who wrote it;[7] that day we read no farther in it." While the one spirit said this, the other wept, so that for pity I swooned, as if in death, and fell as a dead body falls.

---

[1] "So light upon the wind": Dante sees two spirits that are more violently tossed by the wind than the others. According to the principle of just punishment, the heightened violence of the wind signifies that their love was particularly passionate.

[2] The name of God is blasphemous in Hell. So Dante calls Him "Another."

[3] The city is Ravenna and the speaker, who is not named until later, is Francesca, known as Francesca da Rimini (1255–1285). She was a real person, daughter of Guido da Polenta the elder, lord of Ravenna (d.1310) and the aunt of Guido Novello, Dante's host at Ravenna. She was married to Gianciotto Malatesta (d.1304). No contemporary chronicle or document mentions the love between Francesca and Paolo or their deaths, but the story is told by Boccaccio as well as by Dante.

[4] This is Paolo Malatesta (1246–1285), who is never named here. He was the brother of Gianciotto, Francesca's husband.

[5] Caina is a place in lower Hell.

[6] For Lancelot's love of Queen Guinevere, see above, p. 356.

[7] "A Gallehault was the book": in some versions of the Lancelot story, Gallehault brought Guinevere and Lancelot together for their first meeting and urged the two to kiss.

7.22 Medieval drama: *Directions for an Annunciation Play* (14th cent.). Original in Latin.

Medieval drama grew out of Church liturgy and the public hurly-burly of town life. By the thirteenth century many churches were acting out the events of the Annunciation (when the angel Gabriel announced to the Virgin Mary that she would "bring forth a son"). The drama was presented as an interlude during the Mass, whether on the feast of the Annunciation itself (March 25) or during Advent (beginning the fourth Sunday before Christmas). It employed a relatively small number of characters and some startling stagecraft. At Tournai (today in Belgium) an artificial dove—representing the Holy Spirit that impregnated Mary—descended from the cathedral vault; at Parma (in Italy) the actor portraying Gabriel himself swung down. In the version printed here, which was performed at Padua (also in Italy) in the fourteenth century, Gabriel handed the dove to Mary, who "put it under her cloak."

1. Why might worshippers want to see the Gospel story to "come to life"?
2. How might such dramas have enhanced the audience's piety?

[Source: *Medieval Popular Religion, 1000–1500: A Reader*, ed. John Shinners (Peterborough, ON: Broadview Press, 1997), pp. 128–29 (notes added). Translated by John Shinners.]

On the day of the feast of the Annunciation, after dinner, let the great bell be rung at the usual time, and meanwhile let the clergy gather at the church; they should prepare themselves in the main sacristy,[1] some of them wearing their copes[2] and other required things. In this sacristy Mary, Elizabeth, Joseph, and Joachim[3] should stand ready with a deacon and a subdeacon holding silver books. At the appointed time they should leave the sacristy in procession and make their way to the place prepared for them. Leaving them there, the procession should continue to the baptistery where a boy should be waiting seated on a chair dressed as Gabriel. Let him be lifted up on the chair and carried from the baptistery into the church along the side aisle and taken up the steps next to the choir. The clergy should stand in the middle of the church arranged like a chorus. Meanwhile the subdeacon should begin the prophetic epistle: "The Lord spoke again to Achaz."[4] After the prophecy is finished, the deacon should start the Gospel: "The angel Gabriel was sent"[5] and proceed up to the words "And when the angel had come to her, he said." At that point, Gabriel, kneeling with two fingers of his right hand upraised, should begin singing this antiphon in a loud voice: "Hail, Mary, full of grace, the Lord is with thee; blessed art thou among women." When this antiphon is finished, the deacon should continue reciting the Gospel up to the words "And the angel said to her." Then the Angel, again standing with his right hand completely open, should begin this antiphon: "Do not be afraid, Mary, for thou has found grace with God. Behold, thou shalt conceive in thy womb and shalt bring forth a son." When this antiphon is finished, the deacon should continue reciting up to the words "But Mary said to the angel." Then Mary should answer in a clear voice with this antiphon: "How shall this happen, angel of God, since I do not know man?" When this antiphon is finished, the deacon should continue reciting up to the words "And the angel answered and said to her"; and the Angel should again begin this verse: "Listen, Mary, virgin of Christ, the

[1] The sacristy is the room in a church that houses the sacred vessels and vestments.

[2] A cope is a long church vestment, a sort of cloak.

[3] I.e., the actors portraying these characters in the drama. For the story of the Annunciation, see Luke 1:26–38.

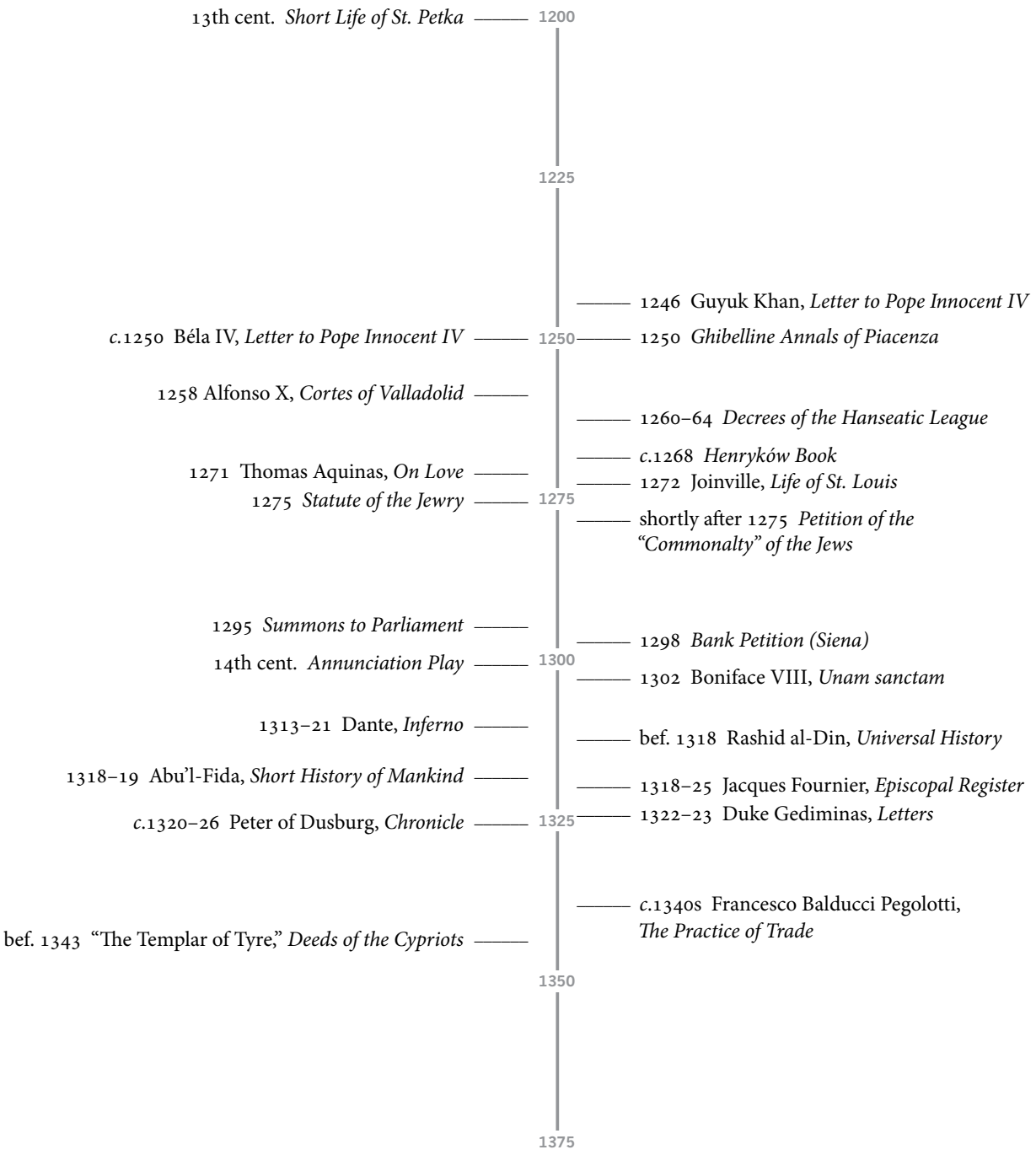
[4] Isa. 7:10.

[5] Luke 1:26.

Holy Spirit shall come upon thee and the power of the Most High shall overshadow thee." But when he comes to the words "the Holy Spirit shall come upon thee," let him hold out a dove a little way from him. When this verse is finished, the deacon should continue reciting up to the words "But Mary said to the angel." When this is finished, Mary should stand up with her arms outstretched and begin saying in a loud voice, "Behold the handmaid of the Lord." Before the end of this antiphon, he should let go of the dove and Mary should take it and put it under her cloak. Antiphon: "Behold the handmaid of the Lord; be it done to me according to thy word."

When all this is ended, the deacon should continue on to the next verse, "Now in those days Mary arose and went with haste into the hill country" up to the words "And Elizabeth cried out with a loud voice, saying." Meanwhile, Mary should descend from her place and go over to where Elizabeth and Joachim are. Both of them should receive her according to the description in the Gospel. Having done this, Elizabeth should kneel, touch Mary's body with both hands, and begin this antiphon with a humble voice: "Blessed art thou among women and blessed is the fruit of thy womb!" When the antiphon is finished, Elizabeth should get up and, standing again, say this antiphon: "And how have I deserved that the mother of my Lord should come to me? For behold, the moment that the sound of thy greeting came to my ears, the babe in my womb leapt for joy. And blessed is she who has believed because the things promised her by the Lord shall be accomplished." When this is finished, the deacon should again continue up to "And Mary said." Then Mary should turn and face the people and in a loud voice sing at the eighth tone these three verses [i.e., the Magnificat]: "My soul magnifies the Lord, and my spirit rejoices in God my Savior; because he has regarded the lowliness of his handmaid; for, behold, henceforth all generations shall call me blessed." When this is finished, the organ should answer with one verse, and the choir with the next, and so on until the end. When this is all done, let everyone return to the sacristy.

TIMELINE FOR CHAPTER SEVEN


13th cent. *Short Life of St. Petka*
1200
1225
1246 Guyuk Khan, *Letter to Pope Innocent IV*
*c.*1250 Béla IV, *Letter to Pope Innocent IV*
1250
1250 *Ghibelline Annals of Piacenza*
1258 Alfonso X, *Cortes of Valladolid*
1260–64 *Decrees of the Hanseatic League*
*c.*1268 *Henryków Book*
1271 Thomas Aquinas, *On Love*
1272 Joinville, *Life of St. Louis*
1275 *Statute of the Jewry*
1275
shortly after 1275 *Petition of the "Commonalty" of the Jews*
1295 *Summons to Parliament*
1298 *Bank Petition (Siena)*
14th cent. *Annunciation Play*
1300
1302 Boniface VIII, *Unam sanctam*
1313–21 Dante, *Inferno*
bef. 1318 Rashid al-Din, *Universal History*
1318–19 Abu'l-Fida, *Short History of Mankind*
1318–25 Jacques Fournier, *Episcopal Register*
*c.*1320–26 Peter of Dusburg, *Chronicle*
1325
1322–23 Duke Gediminas, *Letters*
*c.*1340s Francesco Balducci Pegolotti, *The Practice of Trade*
bef. 1343 "The Templar of Tyre," *Deeds of the Cypriots*
1350
1375

To test your knowledge and gain deeper understanding of this chapter, please go to **www.utphistorymatters.com** for Study Questions.

VIII

Catastrophe and Creativity (c.1350–c.1500)

THE BLACK DEATH

8.1 The effects of the plague: Giovanni Boccaccio, *The Decameron* (1348–1351). Original in Italian.

Giovanni Boccaccio (1313–1375) was the illegitimate son of a wealthy Florentine merchant who, like Francesco Pegolotti (see above, p. 399) worked for the Bardi bank. Boccaccio spent a formative thirteen years at the court of Naples, apprenticing for his father, studying the liberal arts, learning canon law, and meeting aristocrats of the Neapolitan ruling house, the Angevins. He gravitated to poetry and literature, was much influenced by the poet Petrarch, and in the 1330s began composing his first major works. In 1348, back in Florence after much travel, he witnessed the effects of the Black Death and wrote *The Decameron* as a sort of tribute both to the horror of the experience and to the ability of the Florentines to wrest delight, wit, and humor out of tragedy. The book purports to relate the one hundred tales told by seven young women and three young men during a ten-day retreat from Florence to escape the plague. The excerpt here begins on the very first day and, in explaining the reasons for the retreat, reveals the physical, social, and emotional effects of the Black Death.

1. What were the plague's effects on Florentine burial customs according to Boccaccio?
2. Given that Boccaccio was critical of Florentine reactions to the plague, what would he have had the Florentines do instead?

[Source: *The Decameron of Giovanni Boccaccio*, trans. Richard Aldington (New York: Dell, 1930), pp. 30–36 (notes added.)]

The First Day
Here begins the first day of the Decameron, wherein, after the author has showed the reasons why certain persons gathered to tell tales, they treat of any subject pleasing to them, under the rule of Pampinea.

Most gracious ladies,[1] knowing that you are all by nature pitiful, I know that in your judgment this work will seem to have a painful and sad origin. For it brings to mind the unhappy recollection of that late dreadful plague, so pernicious to all who saw or heard of it. But I would not have this frighten you from reading further, as though you were to pass through nothing but sighs and tears in your reading. This dreary opening will be like climbing a steep mountainside to a most beautiful and delightful valley, which appears the more pleasant in proportion to the difficulty of the ascent. The end of happiness is pain, and in like manner misery ends in unexpected happiness.

This brief fatigue (I say brief, because it occupies only a few words) is quickly followed by pleasantness and delight, as I promised you above; which, if I had not promised, you would not expect perhaps from this opening. Indeed, if I could have taken you by any other way than this, which I know to be rough, I would gladly have done so; but since I cannot otherwise tell you how the tales you are about to read came to be told, I am forced by necessity to write in this manner.

In the year 1348 after the fruitful incarnation of the Son of God, that most beautiful of Italian cities, noble Florence, was attacked by deadly plague. It started in the East either through the influence of the heavenly bodies or because God's just anger with our wicked deeds sent it as a punishment to mortal men; and in a few years killed an innumerable quantity of people. Ceaselessly passing from place to place, it extended its miserable length over the West. Against this plague all human wisdom and foresight were vain. Orders had been given to cleanse the city of filth, the entry of any sick person was forbidden, much advice was given for keeping healthy; at the same time humble supplications were made to God by pious persons in processions and otherwise. And yet, in the beginning of the spring of the year mentioned, its horrible results began to appear, and in a miraculous manner. The symptoms were not the same as in the East, where a gush of blood from the nose was the plain sign of inevitable death; but it began both in men and women with certain swellings in the groin or under the armpit. They grew to the size of a small apple or an egg, more or less, and were vulgarly called tumors. In a short space of time these tumors spread from the two parts named all over the body. Soon after this the symptoms changed and black or purple spots appeared on the arms or thighs or any other part of the body, sometimes a few large ones, sometimes many little ones. These spots were a certain sign of death, just as the original tumor had been and still remained.

No doctor's advice, no medicine could overcome or alleviate this disease. An enormous number of ignorant men and women set up as doctors in addition to those who were trained. Either the disease was such that no treatment was possible or the doctors were so ignorant that they did not know what caused it and consequently could not administer the proper remedy. In any case very few recovered; most people died within about three days of the appearance of the tumors described above, most of them without any fever or other symptoms.

The violence of this disease was such that the sick communicated it to the healthy who came near them, just as a fire catches anything dry or oily near it. And it even went further. To speak to or go near the sick brought infection and a common death to the living; and moreover, to touch the clothes or anything else the sick had touched or worn gave the disease to the person touching.

What I am about to tell now is a marvelous thing to hear; and if I and others had not seen it with our own eyes I would not dare to write it, however much I was willing to believe and whatever the good faith of the person from whom I heard it. So violent was the malignancy of this plague that it was communicated, not only from one man to another, but from the garments of a sick or dead man to animals of another species, which caught the disease in that way and very quickly died of it. One day among other occasions I saw with my own eyes (as I said just now) the rags left lying in the street of a poor man who had died of the plague; two pigs came along and, as their habit is, turned the clothes over with their snouts and then munched at them, with the result that

[1] In his prologue to the *Tales*, Boccaccio explains that he wishes to give amusement to people who helped him when he was suffering terrible pangs of love. Above all, he wishes to give pleasure to ladies, whom he addresses here, for they are always under the authority of men, and "they spend most of their time enclosed in their little rooms, sitting almost idly, wanting—and not wanting—at the same time, addressing various thoughts to themselves that cannot always be joyful."

they both fell dead almost at once on the rags, as if they had been poisoned.

From these and similar or greater occurrences, such fear and fanciful notions took possession of the living that almost all of them adopted the same cruel policy, which was entirely to avoid the sick and everything belonging to them. By doing so, each one thought he would secure his own safety.

Some thought that moderate living and the avoidance of all superfluity would preserve them from the epidemic. They formed small communities, living entirely separate from everybody else. They shut themselves up in houses where there were no sick, eating the finest food and drinking the best wine very temperately, avoiding all excess, allowing no news or discussion of death and sickness, and passing the time in music and suchlike pleasures. Others thought just the opposite. They thought the sure cure for the plague was to drink and be merry, to go about singing and amusing themselves, satisfying every appetite they could, laughing and jesting at what happened. They put their words into practice, spent day and night going from tavern to tavern, drinking immoderately, or went into other people's houses, doing only those things which pleased them. This they could easily do because everyone felt doomed and had abandoned his property, so that most houses became common property and any stranger who went in made use of them as if he had owned them. And with all this bestial behavior, they avoided the sick as much as possible.

In this suffering and misery of our city, the authority of human and divine laws almost disappeared, for, like other men, the ministers and the executors of the laws were all dead or sick or shut up with their families, so that no duties were carried out. Every man was therefore able to do as he pleased.

Many others adopted a course of life midway between the two just described. They did not restrict their victuals so much as the former, nor allow themselves to be drunken and dissolute like the latter, but satisfied their appetites moderately. They did not shut themselves up, but went about, carrying flowers or scented herbs or perfumes in their hands, in the belief that it was an excellent thing to comfort the brain with such odors, for the whole air was infected with the smell of dead bodies, of sick persons and medicines.

Others again held a still more cruel opinion, which they thought would keep them safe. They said that the only medicine against the plaguestricken was to go right away from them. Men and women, convinced of this and caring about nothing but themselves, abandoned their own city, their own houses, their dwellings, their relatives, their property, and went abroad or at least to the country round Florence, as if God's wrath in punishing men's wickedness with this plague would not follow them but strike only those who remained within the walls of the city, or as if they thought nobody in the city would remain alive and that its last hour had come.

Not everyone who adopted any of these various opinions died, nor did all escape. Some when they were still healthy had set the example of avoiding the sick, and, falling ill themselves, died untended.

One citizen avoided another, hardly any neighbor troubled about others, relatives never or hardly ever visited each other. Moreover, such terror was struck into the hearts of men and women by this calamity, that brother abandoned brother, and the uncle his nephew, and the sister her brother, and very often the wife her husband. What is even worse and nearly incredible is that fathers and mothers refused to see and tend their children, as if they had not been theirs.

Thus, a multitude of sick men and women were left without any care except from the charity of friends (but these were few), or the greed of servants, though not many of these could be had even for high wages. Moreover, most of them were coarse-minded men and women, who did little more than bring the sick what they asked for or watch over them when they were dying. And very often these servants lost their lives and their earnings. Since the sick were thus abandoned by neighbors, relatives and friends, while servants were scarce, a habit sprang up which had never been heard of before. Beautiful and noble women, when they fell sick, did not scruple to take a young or old man-servant, whoever he might be, and with no sort of shame, expose every part of their bodies to these men as if they had been women, for they were compelled by the necessity of their sickness to do so. This, perhaps, was a cause of looser morals in those women who survived.

In this way many people died who might have been saved if they had been looked after. Owing to the lack of attendants for the sick and the violence of the plague, such a multitude of people in the city died day and night that it was stupefying to hear of, let alone to see. From sheer necessity, then, several ancient customs were quite altered among the survivors.

The custom had been (as we still see it today), that women relatives and neighbors should gather at the house of the deceased, and there lament with the family. At the same time the men would gather at the door with the male neighbors and other citizens. Then came

the clergy, few or many according to the dead person's rank; the coffin was placed on the shoulders of his friends and carried with funeral pomp of lighted candles and dirges to the church which the deceased had chosen before dying. But as the fury of the plague increased, this custom wholly or nearly disappeared, and new customs arose. Thus, people died, not only without having a number of women near them, but without a single witness. Very few indeed were honored with the piteous laments and bitter tears of their relatives, who, on the contrary, spent their time in mirth, feasting and jesting. Even the women abandoned womanly pity and adopted this custom for their own safety. Few were they whose bodies were accompanied to church by more than ten or a dozen neighbors. Nor were these grave and honorable citizens but grave-diggers from the lowest of the people who got themselves called sextons, and performed the task for money. They took up the bier and hurried it off, not to the church chosen by the deceased but to the church nearest, preceded by four or six of the clergy with few candles and often none at all. With the aid of the grave-diggers, the clergy huddled the bodies away in any grave they could find, without giving themselves the trouble of a long or solemn burial service.

The plight of the lower and most of the middle classes was even more pitiful to behold. Most of them remained in their houses, either through poverty or in hopes of safety, and fell sick by thousands. Since they received no care and attention, almost all of them died. Many ended their lives in the streets both at night and during the day: and many others who died in their houses were only known to be dead because the neighbors smelled their decaying bodies. Dead bodies filled every corner. Most of them were treated in the same manner by the survivors, who were more concerned to get rid of their rotting bodies than moved by charity towards the dead. With the aid of porters, if they could get them, they carried the bodies out of the houses and laid them at the doors, where every morning quantities of the dead might be seen. They then were laid on biers, or, as these were often lacking, on tables.

Often a single bier carried two or three bodies, and it happened frequently that a husband and wife, two or three brothers, or father and son were taken off on the same bier. It frequently happened that two priests, each carrying a cross, would go out followed by three or four biers carried by porters; and where the priests thought there was one person to bury, there would be six or eight, and often, even more. Nor were these dead honored by tears and lighted candles and mourners, for things had reached such a pass that people cared no more for dead men than we care for dead goats. Thus it plainly appeared that what the wise had not learned to endure with patience through the few calamities of ordinary life, became a matter of indifference even to the most ignorant people through the greatness of this misfortune.

Such was the multitude of corpses brought to the churches every day and almost every hour that there was not enough consecrated ground to give them burial, especially since they wanted to bury each person in the family grave, according to the old custom. Although the cemeteries were full they were forced to dig huge trenches, where they buried the bodies by hundreds. Here they stowed them away like bales in the hold of a ship and covered them with a little earth, until the whole trench was full.

Not to pry any further into all the details of the miseries which afflicted our city, I shall add that the surrounding country was spared nothing of what befell Florence. The villages, on a smaller scale, were like the city; in the fields and isolated farms the poor wretched peasants and their families were without doctors and any assistance, and perished in the highways, in their fields and houses, night and day, more like beasts than men. Just as the townsmen became dissolute and indifferent to their work and property, so the peasants, when they saw that death was upon them, entirely neglected the future fruits of their past labors both from the earth and from cattle, and thought only of enjoying what they had. Thus it happened that crows, asses, sheep, goats, pigs, fowls and even dogs, those faithful companions of man, left the farms and wandered at their will through the fields, where the wheat crops stood abandoned, unreaped and ungarnered. Many of these animals seemed endowed with reason, for, after they had pastured all day, they returned to the farms for the night of their own free will, without being driven.

Returning from the country to the city, it may be said that such was the cruelty of Heaven, and perhaps in part of men, that between March and July more than one hundred thousand persons died within the walls of Florence, what between the violence of the plague and the abandonment in which the sick were left by the cowardice of the healthy. And before the plague it was not thought that the whole city held so many people.

Oh, what great palaces, how many fair houses and noble dwellings, once filled with attendants and nobles and ladies, were emptied to the meanest servant! How many famous names and vast possessions and renowned estates were left without an heir! How many gallant men and fair ladies and handsome youths, whom Galen,

Hippocrates and Æsculapius themselves would have said were in perfect health, at noon dined with their relatives and friends, and at night supped with their ancestors in the next world![1]

8.2 Warding off the plague through processions: Ibn Battuta, *Travels* (before 1368). Original in Arabic.

Pilgrim and adventurer Ibn Battuta (1304–1368) left his home in Tangiers (today Morocco) in 1325 and had covered most of the Arab world by the end of his travels in 1354. He later dictated his observations about culture, geography, and customs. Interspersed with his descriptions were personal experiences, which he called "Anecdotes." The one recounted here recalled his trip to Damascus in July 1348, when he witnessed fasts, prayers, and processions meant to ward off the plague.

1. What does this source incidentally tell us about everyday life in Damascus?
2. Who joined the processions at Damascus?

[Source: *The Travels of Ibn Battuta, A.D. 1325–1354*, trans. Hamilton A.R. Gibb, vol. 1 (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1958), pp. 142–44 (notes omitted).]

Among the sanctuaries of Damascus which are celebrated for their blessed power is the Mosque of the Footprints (Masjid al-Aqdam), which lies two miles to the south of Damascus, alongside the main highway which leads to the illustrious Hijaz, Jerusalem, and Egypt. It is a large mosque, abundant in blessing, and possessing many endowments, and the people of Damascus hold it in great veneration. The footprints from which it derives its name are certain footprints impressed upon a rock there, which are said to be the print of the foot of Moses (on him be peace). Within this mosque there is a small chamber containing a stone with the following inscription upon it: "A certain saintly man used to see the Chosen [i.e., Muhammad] (God bless and give him peace) in his sleep, and he would say to him 'Here is the grave of my brother Moses (on him be peace).'" On the road in the vicinity of this mosque is a place called the Red Sandhill; and near Jerusalem and Jericho there is a place which is also called the Red Sandhill and which is revered by the Jews.

Anecdote. I witnessed at the time of the Great Plague at Damascus in the latter part of the month of Second Rabiʿ of the year 49 [July 1348] a remarkable instance of the veneration of the people of Damascus for this mosque. Arghun-Shah, king of the emirs and the Sultan's viceroy,[2] ordered a crier to proclaim through Damascus that the people should fast for three days and that no one should cook in the bazaar during the daytime anything to be eaten (for most of the people there eat no food but what has been prepared in the bazaar). So the people fasted for three successive days, the last of which was a Thursday. At the end of this period the emirs, sharifs, qadis, doctors of the Law, and all other classes of the people in their several degrees, assembled in the Great Mosque, until it was filled to overflowing with them, and spent the Thursday night there in prayers and liturgies and supplications. Then, after performing the dawn prayer [on the Friday morning], they all went out together on foot carrying Qur'ans in their hands—the emirs too barefooted. The entire population of the city joined in the exodus, male and female, small and large; the Jews went out with their book of the Law and the Christians with their Gospel, their women and children with them; the whole concourse of them in tears and humble supplications, imploring the favor of God through His Books and His Prophets. They made

[1] Galen, Hippocrates, and Æsculapius were famous doctors of the ancient world.

[2] The ruler of Damascus was the Mamluk sultan.

their way to the Mosque of the Footprints and remained there in supplication and invocation until near midday, then returned to the city and held the Friday service. God Most High lightened their affliction; the number of deaths in a single day reached a maximum of two thousand, whereas the number rose in Cairo and Old Cairo to twenty-four thousand in a day.

8.3 Warding off the plague through prayer: Archbishop William, *Letter to His Official at York* (July 1348). Original in Latin.

During the same month as the Damascus processions, the English archbishop of York William de la Zouche (r.1342–1352) wrote from his residence at Cawood, a few miles southwest of York, to arrange for special processions, prayers, and masses to be held in his diocese to ward off the plague, which had already hit France.

1. What commonalities and what differences were there in York's and Damascus's responses to the plague?
2. What explanation for the plague does William give?

[Source: *The Black Death*, ed. and trans. Rosemary Horrox (Manchester: Manchester University Press, 1994), pp. 111–12.]

Since the life of man on earth is a war, no wonder if those fighting amidst the miseries of this world are unsettled by the mutability of events: now favorable, now contrary. For Almighty God sometimes allows those he loves to be troubled while their strength is perfected in weakness by an outpouring of spiritual grace. There can be no one who does not know, since it is now public knowledge, how great a mortality, pestilence, and infection of the air are now threatening various parts of the world, and especially England; and this is surely caused by the sins of men who, while enjoying good times, forget that such things are the gifts of the most high giver. Thus, since the inevitable human fate, pitiless death, which spares no one, now threatens us, unless the holy clemency of the Savior is shown to his people from on high, the only hope is to hurry back to him alone, whose mercy outweighs justice and who, most generous in forgiving, rejoices heartily in the conversion of sinners; humbly urging him with orisons and prayers that he, the kind and merciful Almighty God, should turn away his anger and remove the pestilence and drive away the infection from the people whom he redeemed with his precious blood.

Therefore we command, and order you to let it be known with all possible haste, that devout processions are to be held every Wednesday and Friday in our cathedral church, in other collegiate and conventual churches, and in every parish church in our city and diocese, with a solemn chanting of the litany, and that a special prayer be said in mass every day for allaying the plague and pestilence, and likewise prayers for the lord king and for the good estate of the church, the realm and the whole people of England, so that the Savior, harkening to the constant entreaties, will pardon and come to the rescue of the creation which God fashioned in his own image.

And we, trusting in the mercy of Almighty God and the merits and prayers of his mother, the glorious Virgin Mary, and of the blessed apostles Peter and Paul, and of the most holy confessor William and of all the saints, have released 40 days of the penance enjoined by the gracious God on all our parishioners and on others whose diocesans have approved and accepted this our indulgence, for sins for which they are penitent, contrite, and have made confession, if they pray devoutly for these things, celebrate masses, undertake processions or are present at

them, or perform other offices of pious devotion.[1] And you are to ensure that these things are speedily put into effect in every archdeaconry within our diocese by the archdeacons or their officials. Farewell.

8.4 Blaming the Jews for the Black Death: Heinrich von Diessenhoven, *On the Persecution of the Jews* (*c*.1350). Original in Latin.

In the thirteenth century, European Jews were accused of having arcane and evil knowledge. In the fourteenth century, this idea became lethal when the Black Death struck. Outcasts of every sort—lepers, beggars, and Jews—were accused of spreading poison. Soon the accusations focused on the Jews, who were killed (among other places) in parts of France, Germany, the Low Countries, and Italy. In the *Ecclesiastical History* of Heinrich von Diessenhoven (d.1376), a canon lawyer close to the Hapsburg dynasty, the burning of Jews in Germany was treated as God's way to confound his enemies.

1. How was the guilt of the Jews "proven"?
2. Who tried to protect the Jews throughout this episode?

[Source: *The Black Death*, ed. and trans. Rosemary Horrox (Manchester: Manchester University Press, 1994), pp. 208–10 (some notes added).]

The persecution of the Jews began in November 1348, and the first outbreak in Germany was at Sölden, where all the Jews were burnt on the strength of a rumor that they had poisoned wells and rivers, as was afterwards confirmed by their own confessions and also by the confessions of Christians whom they had corrupted and who had been induced by the Jews to carry out the deed. And some of the Jews who were newly baptized said the same. Some of these remained in the faith but some others relapsed, and when these were placed upon the wheel[2] they confessed that they had themselves sprinkled poison or poisoned rivers. And thus no doubt remained of their deceitfulness which had now been revealed.

Within the revolution of one year, that is from All Saints [November 1] 1348 until Michaelmas [September 29] 1349 all the Jews between Cologne and Austria were burnt and killed for this crime, young men and maidens and the old along with the rest. And blessed be God who confounded the ungodly who were plotting the extinction of his church, not realizing that it is founded on a sure rock and who, in trying to overturn it, crushed themselves to death and were damned for ever.

But now let us follow the killings individually. First Jews were killed or burnt in Sölden in November, then in Zofingen they were seized and some put on the wheel, then in Stuttgart they were all burnt. The same thing happened during November in Landsberg, a town in the diocese of Augsburg and in Beuron, Memmingen and Burgau in the same diocese. During December they were burnt and killed on the feast of St. Nicholas [December 6] in Lindau, on December 8 in Reutlingen, on December 13 in Haigerloch, and on December 20 in Horw they were burnt in a pit. And when the wood and straw had been consumed, some Jews, both young and old, still remained

[1] The remission of penance was part of the theology of Purgatory, the place where souls of the deceased are cleansed (purged) of their sins for a certain period corresponding to the number and seriousness of the sins. The archbishop here declares that certain pious acts carried out on earth were equivalent to 40 days of penance in Purgatory. Such a remission of days in Purgatory was called an indulgence.

[2] Breaking on the wheel was a form of torture.

half alive. The stronger of them snatched up cudgels and stones and dashed out the brains of those trying to creep out of the fire, and thus compelled those who wanted to escape the fire to descend to hell. And the curse seemed to be fulfilled: "his blood be upon us and upon our children."[1]

On December 27 the Jews in Esslingen were burnt in their houses and in the synagogue. In Nagelten they were burnt. In the abovesaid town of Zofingen the city councillors, who were hunting for poison, found some in the house of a Jew called Trostli, and by experiment were satisfied that it was poison. As a result, two Jewish men and one woman were put on the wheel, but others were saved at the command of Duke Albrecht of Austria,[2] who ordered that they should be protected. But this made little difference, for in the course of the next year those he had under his protection were killed, and as many again in the diocese of Constance. But first those burnt in 1349 will be described in order.

Once started, the burning of the Jews went on increasing. When people discovered that the stories of poisoning were undoubtedly true they rose as one against the Jews. First, on January 2, 1349 the citizens of Ravensburg burnt the Jews in the castle, to which they had fled in search of protection from King Charles, whose servants were imprisoned by the citizens after the burning. On January 4th the people of Constance shut up the Jews in two of their own houses, and then burnt 330 of them in the fields at sunset on March 3rd. Some processed to the flames dancing, others singing and the rest weeping. They were burnt shut up in a house which had been specially built for the purpose. On January 12 in Buchen and on January 17 in Basel they were all burnt apart from their babies, who were taken from them by the citizens and baptized. They were burnt on January 21 in Messkirch and Waldkirch, on January 26 in Speyer, and on January 30 in Ulm, on February 11 in Überlingen, on February 14 in the city of Strasbourg (where it took six days to burn them because of the numbers involved), on February 16 in Mengen, on the 19th of the month in Sulgen, on the 21st in Schaffhausen and Zurich, on the 23rd in St. Gall and on March 3 in Constance, as described above, except for some who were kept back to be burnt on the third day after the Nativity of the Virgin [September 11].

They were killed and burnt in the town of Baden on March 18, and those in the castle below, who had been brought there from Rheinfelden for protection, were killed and then burnt. And on May 30 they were similarly wiped out in Radolfzell. In Mainz and Cologne they were burnt on August 23. On September 18, 330 Jews were burnt in the castle at Kyburg, where they had gathered from Winterthur and Diessenhoven and the other towns of their protector the Duke of Austria. But the imperial citizens did not want to go on supporting them any longer, and so they wrote to Duke Albrecht of Austria, who was protecting his Jewish subjects in the counties of Pfirt, Alsace and Kyburg, and told him that either he had them burnt by his own judges or they would burn them themselves. So the Duke ordered them to be burnt by his own judges, and they were finally burnt on September 18.

And thus, within one year, as I said, all the Jews between Cologne and Austria were burnt—and in Austria they await the same fate, for they are accursed of God. And I could believe that the end of the Hebrews had come, if the time prophesied by Elias and Enoch were now complete; but since it is not complete, it is necessary that some be reserved so that what has been written may be fulfilled: that the hearts of the sons shall be turned to their fathers, and of the fathers to the sons.[3] But in what parts of the world they may be reserved I do not know, although I think it more likely that the seed of Abraham will be reserved in lands across the sea than in these people. So let me make an end of the Jews here.[4]

---

[1] Matt. 27:24: the people's response to Pilate's statement, "I am innocent of the blood of this just man [Christ]. Look you to it."

[2] Albert II (or Albrecht II), duke of Austria 1330–1358.

[3] A reference to Mal. 4:5–6: "Behold I will send you Elias the prophet, before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the lord. And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children and the hearts of the children to their fathers: lest I come and strike the earth with anathema." This text was taken to mean that after the coming of Antichrist the prophets Enoch and Elias would reconvert the apostates as a preliminary to the second coming of Christ and the Last Judgment. At the same time, they would convert the Jews to Christianity. Heinrich's point is that because the second coming is not yet imminent, contemporary Jews could not be entirely wiped out or converted, because some had to survive to be converted by Enoch and Elias in the Last Days.

[4] The sentence is ambiguous and, given the anti-Jewish sentiments of the author, probably deliberately so. Its surface meaning is that he has come to the end of the two chapters devoted to the Jews and is now about to turn to other matters. But it could also be taken to mean that he hopes to see the extermination of the Jews in Europe, as there are likely to be enough elsewhere to meet the prophetic conditions laid down for Christ's second coming.

8.5 A Turkish hero: Ashikpashazade, *Othman Comes to Power* (late 15th cent.). Original in Turkish.

Writing in the late fifteenth century, the chronicler Ashikpashazade (d. after 1484) based his account of the founder of the Ottoman Turks (Othman [d.1324/1326]) on earlier sources and on his sense of the sort of heroic past such a leader needed to have. He depicted Othman creating a new empire through a combination of fate, "feigned friendships," religious fervor, force, and cunning.

1. What are the similarities and differences between Ashikpashazade's heroic image of Othman and Joinville's portrait of St. Louis (see p. 432)?
2. What role do the dervishes have in the successes of the Ottomans in this account and why might the Ottomans have let them take that role?

[Source: *Die altosmanische Chronik des Asikpasazade*, ed. Friedrich Giese (Leipzig: Harrassowitz, 1929). Translated by Robert Dankoff.]

How Othman Ghazi became Sultan

Ertugrul Ghazi heard that Sultan 'Alaeddin[1] of the Seljuk dynasty had become King of Rum.[2] He said, "We have to determine the man's quality. We'll go to that country and perform the ghaza."[3] Ertugrul Ghazi had three sons, Othman, Gündüz, and Saruyati. Together they started out for Rum. While they were nomadizing in the province of Ghazi Hasan of Mosul, Ertugrul Ghazi sent his son Saruyati to 'Alaeddin, saying, "Provide us with a homeland and we will go and perform the ghaza." Sultan 'Alaeddin was extremely happy at their coming. The tekfur[4] of Sultan Önü and of Karaja Hisar was submissive, so Sultan 'Alaeddin provided them with Sögüt as their homeland, which was between Karaja Hisar and Bilejik. In addition, he gave them the ranges of Mount Domanich and Ermeni Beli. They passed directly through Ankara and settled in that province.

Several years later, Ertugrul Ghazi died. They preferred Othman Ghazi to succeed him in Sögüt. As soon as Othman Ghazi succeeded his father, he began a policy of "feigned friendship" with the neighboring infidels. Meanwhile, he began hostilities with the emir of Germiyan[5] because the latter was constantly harassing the populace of the surrounding countryside. Othman Ghazi also began to mount hunting expeditions far and wide.

How Othman Ghazi began from Time to Time to Make Raids at Nighttime and in the Day

At Inegöl there was an infidel named Aya Nikola. When Othman went to the summer pasture or to the winter pasture, Aya Nikola used to harass the migration. Othman Ghazi complained of this to the tekfur of Bilejik, and said, "What we would like from you is to let us deposit our baggage with you when we go to the summer pasture." He agreed. So whenever Othman Ghazi went to the summer pasture, he loaded his baggage on oxen and sent them along with some women to be deposited in Bilejik castle. And when they returned from the summer pasture, they sent cheese and knotted rugs and flatweaves and lambs in the way of gifts. Then they took back their belongings and went on their way. These infidels trusted

[1] Apparently 'Ala' al-Din Kay Qubad III, who ruled intermittently between 1284 and 1302.

[2] Rum equals Anatolia.

[3] "To perform the Ghaza" means to conduct raids on the infidels. The warrior who gains fame in the ghaza gains the title of Ghazi.

[4] Byzantine prince or governor. (The title "tekfur" is used for Christian emirs, or commanders.)

[5] Turkish emirate (*beglik*) of western Anatolia with its capital at Kütahya (ancient Cotiaeum).

them completely; but the infidels of Inegöl were wary of Othman, and he of them.

One day, Othman Ghazi came through Ermeni Beli with seventy men in order to set fire to Inegöl at night. A spy informed the infidels, who set up an ambush. The spy's name was Araton. Othman Ghazi had a Balkan sailor in his service. He came and informed them that the ambush was situated where the pass of Ermeni Beli emerged into the valley. The ghazis put their trust in God and marched straight toward the ambush. They were all on foot. There were many infidels. A great battle took place. Othman's brother Saruyati's son, whose name was Bay Hoca, was martyred. This occurred near the village of Hamza Beg, where the pass of Ermeni Beli emerges. Also, there is a ruined caravansary next to his shrine. From there, they turned back and Othman went to the summer pasture.

How Othman Ghazi Had a Dream, to Whom He Told It, and What Its Interpretation Was

Othman Ghazi prayed, and for a moment he wept. He was overcome by drowsiness and he lay down and slept. Now in that vicinity there dwelt a certain holy sheikh named Edebali.[1] His many saintly qualities were evident, and he was believed by all the people. By name he was a dervish, but his dervishhood was concealed within;[2] he had an abundance of worldly goods and wealth, and he had torches and banners [signs of hospitality]. His guesthouse was never empty, and Othman Ghazi also came sometimes and was the guest of this holy man.

As Othman Ghazi slept, he saw in his dream that a moon arose out of this holy man's breast and entered Othman Ghazi's breast. Then a tree sprouted out of Othman Ghazi's navel, and the shadow of the tree covered the entire world. In its shadow, there were mountains, with streams issuing from the foot of each mountain. And from these flowing streams some people drank, and some watered gardens, and some caused fountains to flow.

When he awoke, he came to the sheikh and told him the dream. The sheikh said, "Othman, my son! Sovereignty has been granted to you and your descendants. And my daughter Malhun is to be your wife." He immediately gave his daughter to Othman Ghazi and married them.

This sheikh, Edebali, who interpreted Othman Ghazi's dream and gave tidings of sovereignty for himself and his descendants, had a disciple with him whose name was Kumral Dede, son of Dervish Durdi. That dervish now spoke, "O Othman! Since sovereignty has been given to you, it is proper for you to give us some token of gratitude." Othman replied, "At whatever time I become king, I will give you a city." The dervish said, "This little village is sufficient for us: we have renounced the city." Othman Ghazi accepted this. The dervish said, "Give us a document to that effect." Othman Ghazi replied, "Do you think that I write documents, that you want a document from me? Here is my sword. It was left to me by my father and my grandfather. I will give it to you. And I will also give you a goblet. Let them remain together in your hands, and let them preserve this stamp. And if God accepts me for this service, my descendants will recognize this sign, and will accept your claim." Now that sword is still in the hands of Kumral Dede's descendants. And whenever any of Othman Ghazi's descendants saw that sword, they bestowed favors upon those dervishes and they renewed the sword's scabbard. Every one of the House of Othman who has become king has made a pilgrimage to that sword....

How Certain News Reached Sultan 'Alaeddin, and How the Infidels Were Treating the Muslims

Now news reached Sultan 'Alaeddin that the infidels had fought against Othman Ghazi with large forces and had martyred his brother Saruyati. The sultan said, "It is well-known that the tekfur of Karaja Hisar is our enemy; also that the emir of Germiyan does not like those strangers [i.e., the Ottomans]. The greater part of the infidels' activities is due to his heedlessness, I know that myself. Now let our own army gather immediately! Shall we let those infidels get away with such actions? Is the zeal of Islam no longer in us?" With this command, a great army gathered to attack Karaja Hisar.

Othman Ghazi also came and joined the battle on one side. After the fighting had gone on for a day or two, word arrived that the Tatar Bayinjar[3] had taken Eregli, laid waste the houses and the people, and set fire to the city. Sultan 'Alaeddin summoned Othman Ghazi and handed

[1] In this context, sheikh refers to a holy man or religious leader, here the head of a dervish order.

[2] A dervish was an ascetic belonging to one of several Islamic orders. Some performed whirling dances and vigorous chants as part of their devotions.

[3] Bayinjar may have been the Mongol governor of that name who was sent to Rum in 1298 by the Ilkhanid ruler Ghazan (r.1295–1304).

over to him all the equipment which he had brought to take to Karaja Hisar. He said, "Othman Ghazi, my son! Upon you are many tokens of good fortune. There is no one in the world who will withstand you and your descendants. With you are my prayers, the favor of God, the aspiration of the saints, and the miracles of the Prophet." With that, he returned to his province. Othman pressed the battle for several more days. In the end, he captured the fortress, took the tekfur, let the ghazis plunder the city, distributed the houses to the ghazis and to others, and made it a Muslim city. This victory occurred in 1288....

How the Infidels of Harman Kaya became Acquainted with Othman Ghazi and What They Did

Whenever Othman Ghazi, who was now emir of the Banner, mounted for a raid, Köse Mihal was always with him. Most of the servants of these ghazis were infidels from Harman Kaya. One day Othman Ghazi said to Mihal, "We want to ride against Darakchi Yenijesi. What do you say?" Mihal replied, "My Khan![1] Let us pass to Sorgun by way of Saru Kaya and Besh Tash so that we can cross the Sakarya River. Then the ghazis on the other side will join us. It will also be easy to strike at the province of Mudurni, which is a prosperous place. Also, Samsa Chavush is settled near that province. We can keep him informed of our movements, and he can let us know when the time is right."

Following this advice, they marched out and camped at the dervish lodge at Besh Tash. They inquired of the sheikh, "Does the river afford a crossing?" "By the grace of God, there is a crossing for the ghazis!" the sheikh replied. They let their horses graze, then mounted and came to the river bank, where they found Samsa Chavush ready and waiting. He conducted the ghazis straight to Sorgun. The infidels of that province were well acquainted with Samsa Chavush. As soon as they saw him, and saw the army, they became submissive and obedient. The men and women came out to meet them. Among them was a rather distinguished infidel whom they summoned. He came and took a solemn oath with Othman Ghazi that they would accept whatever Samsa Chavush said.

8.6 Diplomacy: *Peace Agreement between the Ottoman Sultan Mehmed II and the Signoria of Venice* (January 25, 1478). Original in Greek.

Mehmed II's sack of Constantinople was part of his larger plan to reconstitute the Roman Empire under his own rule. After 1453, Mehmed moved into the Balkans and the Aegean, coming up against the other major power in the region, Venice. Between 1463 and 1478, the Ottomans and Venetians waged war, although for much of that time Venice was looking for a way to make peace. This they finally arranged in 1478. Although all sides confirmed its provisions, the agreement has no signatures. Only the Venetian copy has survived, a scroll 23 inches long and 9½ inches wide, composed of pieces of Venetian paper pasted together. The top piece, with a scissors watermark, has Mehmed's gold *tugra*, or formal emblem, while the bottom piece has an eagle watermark and the text of the agreement. The first ten provisions repeat agreements previously made between the Ottomans and the Venetians. (They echo, as well, earlier agreements that the Venetians made with the Byzantines.) The remainder provides for Venice to surrender various territories and to pay the sultan large quantities of gold.

1. What are the tasks of the *bailo*?
2. What seems to have been most important to Mehmed: to take over Venetian fortresses or to be paid a lot of money?

[1] Khan was the old Central Asian term for a ruler.

[Source: State Archives of Venice, ASV Documenti Turchi B1/2. Translated by Diana Gilliland Wright.]

I, the great lord and great emir, Sultan Mehmed-Bey,[1] son of the great and blessed lord Murad-Bey, do swear by the God of heaven and earth, and by our great prophet Mohammed, and by the seven *mushaf*[2] which we Moslems possess and confess, and by the 124 thousand prophets of God (more or less),[3] and by the faith which I believe and confess, and by my soul and by the soul of my father, and by the sword I swear:

Because my Lordship formerly had peace and friendship with the most illustrious and exalted Signoria[4] of Venice, now again we desire to make a new peace and oath to confirm a true friendship and a new peace. For this purpose, the aforementioned illustrious Signoria sent the learned and wise Sir Giovanni Dario,[5] secretary, as emissary to my Lordship so we might make the said peace with the following old and new provisions. For this my Lordship swears by the above-written oaths that just as there was formerly peace and friendship between us, namely, with their lords and men and allies, I now profess good faith and an open peace by land and sea, within and without the Straits,[6] with the villages, fortresses, islands, and lands that raise the banner of San Marco,[7] and those who wish to raise the flag in the future, and all those places that are in their obedience and supervision,[8] and to the commerce which they have as of today and are going to have in the coming years.

[Confirmation of Previous Agreements.]

[1][9] First, no man of my lordship will dare to inflict injury on or opposition to the Signoria of Venice or its men: if this happens, my Lordship is obligated to punish them according to the cause: similarly, the most illustrious Signoria is obligated toward us.

[2] Further, from this day forward, if either land or other goods of the most illustrious Signoria and its men is taken by the men of my Lordship, it will be returned: similarly, they are obligated to my Lordship.

[3] Their men and their merchandise may come by land and by sea to every land of my Lordship, and all the merchandise and the galleys and the ships will be secure and at ease: they are similarly obligated toward us in their lands.

[4] Similarly, the Duke of Naxos and his brothers and their lords and men with their ships and other boats are in the peace.[10] They will not owe my Lordship any service, but the Venetians will hold them just as it all used to be.

[5] Further, all ships and galleys, that is merchantmen and the fleet of my Lordship, wherever they may encounter the Venetians, will have good relations and peace with

---

1 Bey is a superior honorific in Turkish-related languages.

2 The seven *mushaf* were the seven accepted versions of the Qur'an: this emphasized Mehmed's Sunni allegiance.

3 The phrase "more or less" indicates that while they did not know the precise number of prophets, they did not wish to offend.

4 The Signoria could refer to the government of Venice in general, but here it probably signifies a ten-member executive council there.

5 Giovanni Dario, the special Venetian emissary who brought the peace agreement to completion, was given a knighthood by Mehmed for his services. Dario's house, which Venice gave him in appreciation, can be seen in Venice: though small, it is one of the most conspicuous on the Grand Canal.

6 The Dardanelles, i.e., the strait that connects the Aegean Sea with the Sea of Marmara, the body of water that touches Constantinople's southern shore.

7 The banner of San Marco is red with a gold Venetian lion and a book that reads, "Pace tibi, Marce, evangelista meus [Peace unto you, St. Mark, my Evangelist]." The patron saint of Venice, Mark's body is believed to be buried in San Marco.

8 This clause of the agreement refers to various other minor lords in the Aegean who gave nominal homage to Venice.

9 The numbers are not on the original document, but are found on the official Venetian Greek and Italian file copies.

10 Duke of Naxos: this refers to Jacopo III Crispo, who ruled the Cyclades 1463–1480. One of his brothers, Giovanni III, ruled 1480–1494.

them. Corsairs and klefts, wherever they are taken, will be punished.[1]

[6] If any Venetian incurs a debt or commits other wrong in the lands of my Lordship, the other Venetians will bear no responsibility: similarly, the Signoria of Venice [vows the same] to our men.

[7] If any Venetian slave flees and comes into Turkish hands and becomes a Moslem, they will give his master 1000 aspers;[2] if he is a Christian he will be sent back.[3]

[8] If any Venetian boat is wrecked on the land of my Lordship, all the men will be freed and all the merchandise returned to their agent: they are similarly obligated to our men.

[9] If any Venetian man dies in the lands of my Lordship, without a will or heir, his goods are to be given to the Venetian *bailo*; if no *bailo* is found, they will be given into Venetian hands. Venice will write what to do.[4]

[10] Further, the most illustrious Signoria will have the right and authority specifically to send a *bailo* to Constantinople, with his household, according to custom, who will be able to dispense justice and administer Venetian affairs, according to their custom. The governor[5] will be obligated to give him aid and cooperation.

[New provisions and conditions for peace.]

[11] If the said *bailo* wants to secure his position during this time, he is obligated to give my Lordship every year a gift of 10,000 Venetian florins[6] from the commercial transactions.[7]

[12] Further, the most illustrious Signoria of Venice is obligated for every debt lying between us and for all debts whether common or private or of certain of their men, for all the past time before the war until today, to give to my Lordship 100,000 Venetian ducats within two years.[8] Further, my Lordship cannot look for past debts, either from the most illustrious Signoria of Venice or from its men.[9]

[13] Further, the most illustrious Signoria of Venice is obligated to hand over to my Lordship the fortress called Skodra[10] in Albania, except that it may remove the lord who is *rettor*, and the council, and all the other men[11] who wish to depart, specifically, with their merchandise, if they have any. The Signoria will take the equipment and all other military materiel or whatever is found in the fortress at present without any opposition.

[14] Further, the most illustrious Signoria of Venice is specifically obligated to transfer to my Lordship the island of Lemnos, except that they will take the *rettor* and the Venetian citizens. The other men who want to go will take whatever they have to go wherever they want.

---

[1] Corsairs were pirates who were licensed by some official ruler, for example, a local Venetian or Ottoman governor. Klefts were bandits in Ottoman and Venetian territories in Greece.

[2] One thousand aspers was then equal to about 22 ducats, a reasonable, if modest, price for a slave.

[3] This matter of escaped slaves was a normal provision in treaties, frequently reiterated in correspondence.

[4] As will be seen in Section 10, Venice was represented in Constantinople by a *bailo* who governed the large Venetian trading community and who acted as the Venetian consul *vis à vis* the Turks.

[5] The Ottoman governor of the city of Constantinople.

[6] "Gift": the Greek means "little baskets," a Byzantine term for an obligatory gift from peasants to their landholder. The Ottomans used florins interchangeably with ducats.

[7] Bayazid II, who succeeded his father Mehmed II in May 1481, reduced the annual 10,000 florins payment to 5,000.

[8] It took two years to pay half the money. The 100,000 was money owed by two Venetian entrepreneurs for leases on Turkish alum mines.

[9] The sultan here forgives the debts that were not specified in this agreement.

[10] The fortress of Skodra (Scutari, Skodar) had twice been under siege by Ottoman forces: the second had lasted since the previous May. Mehmed regarded the failure to take the fortress as a singular humiliation. It was handed over to him in March 1479 after the governor, Antonio de Leze, received a letter from Venice which began: "We don't doubt that you have already heard before this about the peace agreement."

[11] "All the other men" was understood to include the soldiers, and all other (male) residents, their families, movable possessions, and trade goods. The *rettor* was the governor.

Those who want to remain on the island will be pardoned for what they did up to this point.[1]

[15] Further, the most illustrious Signoria of Venice will hand over to my Lordship the present fortresses and lands which were taken in the war from my Lordship, that is, the lands in the Morea,[2] except that the men in their authority may go wherever they want with whatever they have. If any want to remain in the present territories and fortresses they will have complete pardons, specifically, for every act, if they did anything up to now.

[16] Further, my Lordship is obligated to hand over to them the occupied lands, that is, to the former borders of their fortresses which abut the lands of my Lordship on all sides.[3]

The above-written provisions are confirmed and ratified and sworn.

The present writing was done in the year 6987, the 12th indiction, the 25th of the month of January, in Constantinople.[4]

BYZANTIUM: DECLINE AND FALL

8.7 Before the fall: Patriarch Anthony, *Letter to the Russian Church* (1395). Original in Greek.

This impassioned letter to Grand Prince Vasily I of Moscow from Patriarch Anthony IV (r.1389–1390 and again 1391–1397) evokes the imperial ideal that once held sway at Byzantium. But it was only a memory by Anthony's time. At the end of the fourteenth century, the ruler of Moscow could boldly disparage the emperor, and the emperor, Manuel II Palaeologus (r.1391–1425), a weak vassal of the Ottoman sultan, could give no reply to their critiques. Byzantium had shrunk to include only a bit of Greece, a few islands, and the city of Constantinople, while the Turks were largely in control of vast regions that had once been Byzantine. Under these circumstances, the patriarch of Constantinople, not the emperor, was the only man with enough standing to reply to Vasily.

1. What must have been the content of Vasily's letter, to which this is a response?
2. How does the patriarch argue that the emperor's position in the Church has not been diminished by the Ottoman advance?

[Source: Deno John Geanakoplos, *Byzantium: Church, Society, and Civilization Seen through Contemporary Eyes* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1984), pp. 143–44.]

[1] This is a blanket pardon for anyone who might have fought against Mehmed. Lemnos was captured by Mehmed in 1456, then taken, retaken, and ravaged by both sides for the next 20 years. Its strategic location at the approach to the Dardanelles made possession essential for the control of shipping.

[2] The Morea was the usual name for southern Greece.

[3] This became a major issue in settling Venetian-Ottoman boundaries in Greece and required a series of boundary commissions in which representatives and the oldest inhabitants from both sides worked out what should be the dividing line.

[4] The Ottomans used Byzantine dating. The year 6987 was equivalent to 1478. While a number of Mehmed's letters and treaties use this dating, it is unclear whether this results from his secretaries following Byzantine precedents in dealing with the West, or whether it indicates his claim to rule the empire of the Romans. The peace agreement was not signed because in Ottoman tradition such documents, or '*ahd-names* were considered to be issued unilaterally by the sultan.

The holy emperor has a great place in the church, for he is not like other rulers or governors of other regions. This is so because from the beginning the emperors established and confirmed the [true] faith in all the inhabited world. They convoked the ecumenical councils and confirmed and decreed the acceptance of the pronouncements of the divine and holy canons regarding the correct doctrines and the government of Christians. They struggled boldly against heresies, and imperial decrees together with councils established the metropolitan sees of the archpriests and the divisions of their provinces and the delineation of their districts. For this reason the emperors enjoy great honor and position in the Church, for even if, by God's permission, the nations [primarily the Ottoman Turks] have constricted the authority and domain of the emperor, still to this day the emperor possesses the same charge from the church and the same rank and the same prayers [from the church]. The *basileus* [emperor] is anointed with the great myrrh and is appointed *basileus* and *autokrator* of the Romans, and indeed of all Christians. Everywhere the name of the emperor is commemorated by all patriarchs and metropolitans and bishops wherever men are called Christians, [a thing] which no other ruler or governor ever received. Indeed, he enjoys such great authority over all that even the Latins themselves, who are not in communion with our church, render him the same honor and submission which they did in the old days when they were united with us. So much more do Orthodox Christians owe such recognition to him....

Therefore, my son, you are wrong to affirm that we have the church without an emperor, for it is impossible for Christians to have a church and no empire. The *Basileia* [empire] and the church have a great unity and community—indeed they cannot be separated. Christians can repudiate only emperors who are heretics who attack the church, or who introduce doctrines irreconcilable with the teachings of the Apostles and the Fathers. But our very great and holy *autokrator*, by the grace of God, is most orthodox and faithful, a champion of the church, its defender and avenger, so that it is impossible for bishops not to mention his name in the liturgy. Of whom, then, do the Fathers, councils, and canons speak? Always and everywhere they speak loudly of the one rightful *basileus*, whose laws, decrees, and charters are in force throughout the world and who alone, only he, is mentioned in all places by Christians in the liturgy.

8.8 The fall bewailed: George Sphrantzes, *Chronicle* (before 1477). Original in Greek.

George Sphrantzes (1401–1477), born into a noble and pious family, was brought up at the imperial court in Byzantium and personally knew the last three emperors. For much of his adult life, until the fall of the Byzantine Empire, he served Constantine XI (r.1449–1453) as diplomat, ambassador, and spy. His *Chronicle*, which uses the vernacular Greek of the time rather than the classicizing Greek of most Byzantine historians, is an unusually personal and often eyewitness account. With the fall of Constantinople, Sphrantzes was briefly enslaved, as was his wife, whom he ransomed. He continued to work for the remnants of the imperial house until, in 1456, he and his wife retired to monasteries.

1. What made George Sphrantzes's life "wretched"?
2. Why did Sphrantzes want the emperor to marry the widow of Sultan Murad, and what did he arrange when the widow refused?

[Source: *The Fall of the Byzantine Empire: A Chronicle by George Sphrantzes, 1401–1477*, trans. Marios Philippides (Amherst: The University of Massachusetts Press, 1980), pp. 21, 57–64, 69–71 (notes modified).]

I am George Sphrantzes the pitiful First Lord of the Imperial Wardrobe, presently known by my monastic name Gregory. I wrote the following account of the events that occurred during my wretched life.

It would have been fine for me not to have been born or to have perished in childhood. Since this did not happen, let it be known that I was born on Tuesday, August 30, 6909 [1401]. The revered and holy Lady Thomais, as my godmother, sponsored my baptism....

28.7 On October 31, 6957 [1448], our emperor Lord John passed away. He was fifty-six years, ten months, and eleven days old. On November 1, he was buried in the Monastery of the Pantocrator. He had been emperor for twenty-three years, three months, and ten days.

29.1 On November 13 of the same year, Lord Thomas arrived by ship in the City [i.e., Constantinople]; he had heard of the emperor's death only as he was passing through Callipolis.[1]

2. His arrival put an end to the intrigues of his brother Lord Demetrius, or rather to those of his agents to declare him emperor. Demetrius was not a despot and had not been born in the purple; he had an older brother still alive, a man who excelled in all good activities and was free from misfortune. Proper claim and justice prevailed by command of the holy empress, her sons the despots, and by the opinion and will of the nobility.

3. On December 6, I set out with an embassy to inform the sultan that the empress, the brothers, right of birth, and the love and wisdom of nearly the whole population of the City chose Lord Constantine emperor. The sultan approved the choice and sent me away with honor and gifts.

4. In the same days lords from the City were sent to the Morea: Alexius Philanthropenus Lascaris, who had been dispatched to the City by my master together with Lord Thomas the despot, on the despot's business with the emperor, and Manuel Palaeologus Iagrus. Lord Constantine the despot was crowned emperor at Mistra on January 6 [1449].[2]

5. On March 12 of the same year [1449], he came to the City on board a Catalan vessel and was received with joy by all.

6. In August of the same year, the honored despot Lord Thomas, who was born in the purple, departed for the Morea.

7. On September 1, 6958 [1449], Lord Demetrius the despot also left for the Morea. Before their departure, a reconciliation took place in the presence of their lady mother, their brother the emperor, and ourselves, the chosen nobles: they took oaths which they violated, and were rewarded with misfortunes, as I saw later. How they were disposed toward each other is not essential to my narration, as I was absent from the City and do not have accurate knowledge.

30.1. On October 14 of the same year [1449], I was dispatched to the *mepes*—that is king—of Georgia, King George, and to the emperor of Trebizond, Lord John Comnenus, with remarkable gifts and a great, impressive retinue consisting of young nobles, soldiers, celibate priests, singers, physicians, and musicians with their instruments. The Georgians knew the names of our instruments but had not seen them before and wished to inspect and hear them. For this reason many came from the furthest parts of Georgia to hear them.

2. My mission in those places was to arrange a marriage for my emperor [Constantine IX Palaeologus], whichever of the two families seemed suitable to me. He required me to submit my unbiased report on the advantages and disadvantages of each for his final decision. I sent messengers and letters by messengers, and my lord answered me by others. But his messengers' boat was wrecked in the Amisus area[3] and before my lord and emperor discovered what had passed and sent others, I spent two years minus thirty days in those parts.

3. While I was there, on March 23 of the same year [1450], our memorable holy empress, who had taken the veil under the name Patience and had become a nun, passed away and was buried next to her late husband, our memorable emperor, in the Monastery of the Pantocrator.

4. In February 6959 [1451], Sultan Murad died. I had

[1] Later, Callipolis became Gallipoli. "Lord Thomas" was one of the brothers of "Lord John"—Emperor John VIII Palaeologus (r.1425–1448). So were Lord Demetrius and Lord Constantine, mentioned below. Constantine became emperor (with the approval of Sultan Mehmed II). Demetrius and Thomas vied for control over the Morea (southern Greece); both were despots there until 1460, when they had to surrender it to the Turks.

[2] That the emperor of Constantinople was crowned at Mistra and not in the Church of Hagia Sophia in Constantinople was thought by contemporary writers to be a serious break with tradition. Constantine is known to history as Constantine XI Palaeologus.

[3] The Amisus area is the southern coast of the Black Sea.

not learned of his death while I was in Georgia, but, when I reached Trebizond,[1] the emperor Lord John Comnenus said to me: "Come, Mr. Ambassador, I have good news for you and you must congratulate me."

I rose, bowed, and responded: "May God grant Your Holy Majesty a long reign, as you have always been kind to us in many ways. Even now you are about to grace us, once more, with good news. I regret I have nothing worthy of Your Majesty to compensate for this favor."

He related the sultan's death and said that Murad's son [i.e., Mehmed II] was now in power, had bestowed many honors on him, and had even decided to continue the friendship which that house had enjoyed with his father.

5. Overcome by grief, as if I had been told of the death of those dearest to me, I stood speechless. Finally, with considerable loss of spirit, I said: "Lord, this news brings no joy; on the contrary, it is a cause for grief." "How so, my friend?" he asked. And I responded: "The late sultan was an old man, had given up the conquest of our City, and had no desire of attempting anything like it again; he only wished for friendship and peace. This man, who just became sultan, is young and an enemy of the Christians since childhood; he threatens with proud spirit that he will put in operation certain plans against the Christians.

6. "Our City has been in financial stress and is in great need of funds since the days of the illness of the emperor, your son-in-law; my lord, the newly crowned emperor, wants a period of peace in order to straighten out the City's affairs. If God should grant that the young sultan be overcome by his youth and evil nature and march against our City, I know not what will happen. Indeed God would have granted a joyous occasion if this man, Murad's son, had died instead. It would have been truly good news, since Murad had no other son, and he would have become weaker from grief and died soon after. In the meantime that house would have become stronger and, at his death, increased into great honor."

The emperor responded: "You are one of the more prudent and most honored advisors of his house. You will know better about these matters. In any case, God has the power to bring about the best."

I said, "Indeed it is so, as you say." Our conversation was left at that.

31.1. After I heard this, and that the widow of the late sultan and daughter of the Serbian despot had returned to her parents with full honors, and as I was required to stay in Trebizond for many reasons, I sent by a boat leaving for the City some horses, two boys—whom the king of Georgia had taken as his booty in his expedition against Samahin and given to me as gifts—and some other things that had come into my possession as gifts or in other ways. I sat down and wrote a report to my lord the emperor concerning my mission in Georgia and my plans in Trebizond, as well as the reasons for my long stay.

2. Furthermore, I composed a second letter, the contents of which I will reveal presently, and gave one of the young nobles with me the letters. I sent him with the following instructions: "Present my first report to our lord the emperor when you pay your respects, and also give an oral, detailed version of our mission. Hand over my second letter on the following day."

3. The second letter ran as follows: "I was informed by the emperor of the sultan's death when I reached Trebizond. I also heard that the sultan's widow and cousin returned to her homeland and parents. So it seems to me better for many ends to propose marriage to her, should you agree to do it instead of my errand.

4. "I can discover only four arguments opposing this marriage: (1) Her family is inferior to yours; (2) the Church may object on the grounds of close kinship; (3) she has been married already; and (4) she is older and there is the factor that she may be in danger during childbirth, a common risk according to physicians.

5. "Against the first argument I suggest that it is not untoward, since she is not inferior to my lady, your memorable mother. Against the second, a marriage alliance with Trebizond will have to be pardoned by the Church if much money is donated to individual churches and to the poor. A pardon, on the other hand, will be more easily obtained if you marry in the Serbian House, in view of the fact that the Church, celibate priests, monks, nuns, and the poor are in the despot's debt and have respect for him.

6. "About the third argument I maintain that it is not against tradition; Lady Eudocia had been previously married to a Turkish chief of an insignificant and poor principality and had even given birth to his children before she married your grandfather. Your potential bride, by contrast, was the wife of a very powerful monarch, and she, it is generally believed, did not sleep with him. As for the fourth, it is up to God, and His will shall prevail.

7. "As the other advantages of this match have been

[1] The empire of Trebizond was one of the Greek successor states that emerged in the aftermath of the Fourth Crusade, when, in 1204, crusader armies conquered Constantinople.

demonstrated and her parents will gladly accept it, send one servant of your house, or a monk to test this proposal. Let there be no delay; do it."

8. When my messengers arrived in the City on May 28 [1451], the emperor was away, hunting wild boars. As soon as he was told of the return of the envoys from Georgia, he finished the hunt and came from the estate in high spirits. He rejoiced at the advice on the Serbian match, as my account will reveal later.

9. On the same night of May 28 I had a dream: it seemed to me that I was back in the City; as I made a

motion to prostrate myself and kiss the emperor's feet, he stopped me, raised me, and kissed my eyes. Then I woke up and told those sleeping by me: "I just had this dream. Remember the date."[1]

10. When my lord and emperor realized that I had not returned, but that the envoys were members of my retinue, he read my first report, became sad, appeared depressed, and accused me of tardiness. On the following day he read my second report and regained his cheer, as if I had returned. Immediately, he dispatched to Serbia Manuel Palaeologus, the nephew of Lady Cantacouzena, our protostrator's wife, to test this proposal of marriage.[2] Her parents listened to it with delight and were ready to settle the final details.

11. Then it was discovered that the sultan's widow had made a vow to God and decided that if He freed her from the house of her late husband she would not remarry for the rest of her life, but would remain in His service, as far as possible. Thus the proposed match failed.

12. In August of the same year [1451], our patriarch Lord Gregory [Mamas] fled the City and became an exile.[3]

32.1. On September 14, 6960 [1451], I arrived safely in the City on board the ship of Antonio Rizzo, the good man who later suffered martyrdom for his faith in Christ.[4] I had almost completed, or rather confirmed, a marriage with the House of Georgia, as I had come to the conclusion that a marriage with the House of Trebizond would be far less advantageous....

9. The document was prepared, signed, and sealed with gold. It specified that the daughter of the king would become the wife of the emperor and queen of Constantinople and that he would be her husband, according to the agreement reached by the king of Georgia and myself. We summoned the king's nobleman of the second rank, who had come with me in the City, and in his presence, my lord the emperor drew with his own hand three crosses in red ink on the upper part of the document, thus providing the confirmation demanded by Georgian tradition. He handed the document to the envoy and, pointing at me, he said: "With God's help, this man, in charge of three ships, shall arrive next spring in order to bring her to me." The envoy bowed and departed....

35.1. On March 26 of the same year 6960 [1452], the sultan occupied the straits with the intention of constructing his castle. I kept postponing my mission [to Georgia] from day to day, because a land route was now out of the question and would be dangerous; I had to locate a suitable ship.

2. In June of the same year the war was finally brought to our area; the Turkish army charged, captured all inhabitants found outside the walls, and blockaded the City. When the erection of the castle had been completed, the sultan left on August 31 and attacked the fortifications of the City.

3. On September 3, 6961 [1452], he departed for Adrianople; for two days he had been apparently securing his castle and its position.

4. In autumn of the same year Turahan, with his sons and a huge army, invaded the Morea.[5] At that time the inhabitants of the Morea captured one of his sons.

5. On January 17 of the same year [1453], Lord Andreas Palaeologus was born, the successor and heir of the Palaeologan Dynasty.

6. On April 4 of the same year [1453], the sultan

[1] The significance of this dream undoubtedly had something to do with the date of May 28, as it was early in the morning of May 29, 1453 that Constantinople fell to Mehmed and the emperor perished in the assault.

[2] The protostrator held an important post at the imperial court.

[3] Gregory supported the provisions of the Council of Florence (1439), which declared the union of the Greek and Latin Churches, recognized papal primacy, declared a form of the Creed congruent with the Catholic position, and recognized the existence of Purgatory. The whole package was extremely unpopular at Constantinople.

[4] Although Sphrantzes does not refer to Rizzo again, we know his fate. After the construction of the Turkish fortress Rumeli Hisari, all vessels sailing south were ordered to stop and allow inspection of their cargo. Antonio Rizzo ignored these instructions, and his vessel was sunk on November 26, 1452. Rizzo and his crew were captured and killed.

[5] Turahan was a Turkish general.

returned and laid siege to the City with all sorts of engines and stratagems by land and sea.[1] He surrounded the entire 18 miles of the City with 400 small and large vessels from the sea and with 200,000 men on the land side. In spite of the great size of our City, our defenders amounted to 4,773 Greeks, as well as just about 200 foreigners.

7. I was in a position to know the exact figure of our strength for the following reason: the emperor ordered the tribunes to take a census of their communities and to record the exact number of men—laity and clergy—able to defend the walls, and what weapons each man had for defense. All tribunes completed this task and brought the lists of their communities to the emperor.

8. The emperor said to me: "This task is for you and no one else, as you are skilled in arithmetic and also know how to guard and keep secrets. Take these lists and compute, in the privacy of your home, the exact figure of available defenders, weapons, shields, spears, and arrows." I completed my task and presented the master list to my lord and emperor in the greatest possible sadness and depression. The true figure remained a secret known only to the emperor and to myself.

9. On Tuesday May 29 [1453], early in the day, the sultan took possession of our City; in this time of capture my late master and emperor, Lord Constantine, was killed. I was not at his side at that hour but had been inspecting another part of the City, according to his orders. Alas for me; I did not know what times Providence had in store for me!

10. My late emperor, the martyr, lived for forty-nine years, three months, and twenty days. His reign lasted four years, four months, and twenty-four days. He had been the eighth emperor of the Palaeologan Dynasty. The first was Michael, the second Andronicus, the third Michael, the fourth Andronicus, the fifth John, the sixth Manuel, the seventh John, and the eighth was Constantine. The Palaeologan Dynasty ruled over the City for 194 years, ten months, and four days.

11. I was taken prisoner and suffered the evils of wretched slavery. Finally I was ransomed on September 1, 6962 [1453], and departed for Mistra. My wife and children had passed into the possession of some elderly Turks, who did not treat them badly. Then they were sold to the sultan's Mir Ahor (i.e., Master of the Horse), who amassed a great fortune by selling many other beautiful noble ladies.

12. My children's beauty and proper upbringing could not be concealed; thus, the sultan found out and bought my children from his Master of the Horse for many thousand aspers. Thus their wretched mother was left all alone in the company of a single nurse; the rest of her attendants had been dispersed.

8.9 Byzantine culture persists: *Petitions from the Greek Community at Venice* (1470–1511). Original in Latin and Italian.

There had long been a small Greek community in Venice, a city of about 100,000 inhabitants. But with the conquest of Constantinople and further Ottoman expansion thereafter, a large group of immigrants—perhaps 4000—settled in Venice. At first, the Greek Orthodox rites were highly suspect in Catholic Venice, but after the Council of Florence in 1439, which reconciled the two Churches, the Greek community was allowed to have its own church, San Biagio (Document 1). Around 1498 it successfully petitioned the Venetian Council of Ten to allow it to have a confraternity, a Scuola (Document 2). Such institutions mixed social, economic, and religious functions, looking out for all their members and offering prayers for their souls after death. Ten years or so later, a group of soldiers from the Greek

[1] The Ottomans also relied on gunpowder weapons, for which see "Weapons and Warfare in the Middle Ages," in "Reading through Looking," pp. XX–XXIII.

community successfully petitioned to have another church in Venice, this time dedicated to San Giorgio (Document 3).

1. What evidence is there in these documents that the Greek community was a disadvantaged minority at Venice?
2. How do these documents suggest that Byzantine culture persisted at Venice?

[Source: *Venice: A Documentary History, 1450–1630*, ed. David Chambers and Brian Pullan with Jennifer Fletcher (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2001), pp. 333–36 (some notes added or modified).]

[Document 1: Decree of the Council of Ten and Zonta, March 28, 1470.][1]

BE IT DETERMINED that orders shall be issued that in the city of Venice no services may be held according to the Greek rite in any place other than San Biagio, as has been resolved on other occasions, upon a penalty of 100 lire to any priest and of 50 lire to any layman who attends such services. This law shall be made known to the Greeks, that no one may plead ignorance, and the Lords of the Night and the Heads of the Sestieri shall exact these fines and give all the money to the accusers.[2]

[Document 2: Petition of the Greek community, c.1498]

Most Serene Prince, most illustrious Signoria, most glorious and exalted Council of Ten,[3]

In all sincerity, submission and reverence, this petition is made in the name of the community of Greeks who live in this most holy and nourishing city, and especially in the names of the most loyal and warm-hearted servants, Zuan of Sancta Maura, carpenter, and Master Alesio of Corfu, spicer, who have the duty of asking this favor of Your Serenity. For the Greeks have at all times been good and most loyal servants of this most holy State, and have striven at every opportunity to meet the needs of Your Serenity, both on land and on sea, especially in the conquest of Dalmatia, where they thought it a glorious thing to spill their blood for the expansion of your state and exposed themselves to certain death, because at that time most of the galleys of your illustrious government were manned by the people of the Levant. The said Greeks, knowing the most merciful disposition of Your Most Excellent Serenity, and trusting in their past service and unfailing loyalty, beg and petition Your Serenity and the most illustrious and excellent Council of Ten that as a matter of grace they may in their infinite mercy permit the Greeks to found a Scuola at the church of San Biagio in the sestier of Castello, as the Slavs, Albanians and other nations have already done;[4] and the Greeks ask this on the grounds of their devotion. The Scuola shall be dedicated to St. Nicholas, and the greatest good will result from it, especially through giving maintenance to sick and feeble persons, through giving burial to those who from time to time die in great poverty, and through helping widows and orphans who have lost their husbands and fathers in the service of Your Serenity and are sunk in misfortune and intolerable want.

[Your petitioners] commend themselves to your favor, humbly and upon bended knees.

28 NOVEMBER 1498. IN THE COUNCIL OF TEN

By the authority of this Council the humble request of the above petitioners shall be granted, that they may establish a Scuola in the church of San Biagio in Venice in the name and tide of St. Nicholas. They may not receive more

[1] The Council of Ten was Venice's most powerful governmental body. Zonta refers to a board of people here joined with the Council.

[2] The Lords of the Night and the Heads of the Sestieri constituted the main police and judicial powers in Venice. There were six Lords of the Night in each sestier (district). Not only could they assess fines (as here) but they could also arrest people, inflict torture, hear cases, and sentence people to jail or death.

[3] The "Serene Prince" was the doge, or duke, of Venice; the "Signoria" consisted of the doge and his Councilors.

[4] The Albanians had the Scuola di Santa Maria e San Gallo degli Albanesi (near the church of San Maurizio), and the Slavs had the Scuola di San Giorgio degli Schiavoni (the Slavs).

than 250 males, but they may admit as many females as may wish to enter the Scuola....

[Document 3: Petition of the Greek soldiers to the Council of Ten, October 4, 1511.]

Every good Christian must set the holy faith above all other things, and must pursue it with all energy and diligence as the be-all and end-all of his actions and as the thing which will lead him to the blessed state he desires.

We have been brought to this land by your excellencies to serve as your soldiers and as defenders of your glorious State, and most of us have brought with us our families—that is, our wives and children—with the intention of living and dying under your protection. We have no church in which to give the thanks due to Our Lord God by celebrating divine service according to the Greek rite, since the chapel of San Biagio, previously granted by your lordships to our nation for this purpose, no longer suffices, for the place is too small and our people have increased to such an extent that they cannot be accommodated either inside or outside it. In that chapel, too, there is such a mixture of people, tongues, voices and services, both Greek and Latin, at the same time that it creates a confusion worse than that of Babylon, when God, enraged at Nimrod for his rebellion, confounded the human race by the division of languages.[1] They do not understand us, nor we them: indeed, it might be said that neither they nor we can understand each other, and even, dared we say it, that God himself cannot understand our prayers or theirs for the confusion that arises from such variety and miscellany. Worse still, there is no place to bury the dead, as in all [other] churches. They mingle our bones with those of galleymen, porters and other low creatures; even this would be more tolerable if the graves were not upon the public way, and those poor bodies and bones were not dug up and thrown into the water within a few days of burial. This is done to clear the place, that others may be buried, for burials are the greatest source of gain for the parish priest of San Biagio, since the church is very poor and has no other income. It is fine for that priest, but most cruel and evil for us. At the Last Judgment the fishes of the sea will be hard put to it to yield up our bones and organs that our bodies may be completely restored.

Impelled, therefore, by these hardships, discomforts and grievances, and having nowhere else to turn, we apply to your lordships, knowing you to be most Christian, devout and merciful, and beg you humbly upon our knees to permit us to purchase a site in this city and there at our own expense to build a church in praise of Our Lord and in the name of our most holy leader St. George, so that with God's help and St. George's favor we may be more warmly inspired to dedicate our lives to the service, honor and benefit of your lordships. We ask this not out of cowardice or meanness of spirit, or from any lack of loyalty and love towards you, but solely to make it known that we have no place of burial, an abuse which will not recur when we have a cemetery of our own. This we beg as a special favour, being confident that your lordships will grant it, both because you are men of honor and devotion, and to show us that in your eyes we are no worse than the Armenian heretics and the Jewish infidels who here and in other parts of your lordships' dominions have synagogues and mosques for worshipping God in their own misguided way. On the contrary, we believe that your lordships regard us as true and Catholic Christians, and will treat us as such by granting us this most holy favor. Otherwise we shall know that your lordships treat us worse than the Turks and Moors do their Christian subjects, for they let them have churches and conduct their ceremonies and services in public, and we, who are such loyal servants of your lordships and Christians to boot, cannot believe that you will refuse us this most honorable request, but rather hope that you will grant us even more than we ask.

And to your lordships we commend ourselves for ever.[2]

---

[1] See Gen. 10:8–10 and 11:1–9.

[2] The petition was granted on October 4, 1513. A year later, the doge approved the purchase of land for the church with the stipulation that the pope had to permit the construction. This was quickly granted, but the church was not begun until 1539 and not completed until 1573.

WAR AND SOCIAL UNREST

8.10 Chivalric and non-chivalric models: Froissart, *Chronicles* (*c*.1400). Original in French.

Born in Valenciennes, just outside the kingdom of France, Jean Froissart (1337–*c*.1404) served the rulers of Hainaut, especially Philippa of Hainaut, wife of the English king Edward III (r.1327–1377). His most famous work was the *Chronicles*, a wide-ranging account of the first half of the Hundred Years' War. Late in life, he began to revise this work thoroughly, although he finished only a small section. Nevertheless, the result, parts of which are presented below, reflected Froissart's mature thinking on topics that he had long written about: the glory of great feats of arms and the nature and purposes of chivalric warfare.

1. What forms of violence did Froissart think knights were right to engage in?
2. How did Othman's ambitions and sense of chivalry in Ashikpashazade's *Othman Comes to Power* (above, p. 455) compare with those of the Western knights who populate the pages of Froissart?

[Source: Froissart, *Chroniques. Début du premier livre. Edition du manuscrit de Rome Reg. lat. 869*, ed. George T. Diller (Geneva: Droz, 1972), pp. 303–7, 313–15, 633–39. Translated by Helen Nicholson.]

Chapter 78: Walter de Manny begins the War [1339]

As soon as Lord Walter de Manny discovered and realized that a formal declaration of war had been made against the king of France and that the bishop of Lincoln was on his way back [from delivering the king of England's declaration of war to the king of France], he gathered together 40 lances,[1] good companions from Hainaut and England, and left Brabant and rode by night and day until he arrived in Hainaut. He and his people rode undercover and no one knew about them, except for themselves and a guide who led them where they wanted to go. Then they hid in the wood of Blaton. The noble knight had vowed in England in the hearing of ladies and lords that, "If war breaks out between my lord the king of England and Philip of Valois who calls himself king of France, I will be the first to arm himself and capture a castle or town in the kingdom of France." And he did not fail in this vow, for he came by night and hid in the wood of Wiers [in modern Belgium], very close to Mortagne [now in northern France]. When he had arrived there, he told his companions what he wanted to do and they agreed to his enterprise.

The town of Mortagne on the river Escaut—although it is very well protected—was in great danger of being captured that day, for Lord Walter de Manny and his band arrived at daybreak so close to the town that they hid in ambush in the hedges and bushes next to Mortagne. They had procured dresses and women's clothes, which they had acquired in a village on their road, and great flat baskets, in which women who are going to market put butter, eggs and cheeses. Four of their men dressed in the women's clothes and wrapped lovely white head-wraps of white cloth around their heads and they took the baskets, covered with white cloths, and made out that they were coming to market to sell their butter and cheese. They came to the gate at the hour of sunrise, and found it closed and the wicket gate half open, and a man who guarded it. He truly believed that these were women from a village close by who were coming to market, and he opened the wicket gate wide open so that they could enter with their baskets. When these men in women's clothing

[1] The best guess of the meaning of "one lance" is that it was made up of two men, one the combatant and the other his servant, and two horses.

were inside, they seized hold of the porter and drew long knives which they were carrying under their gowns and said to him, "If you say one word, you're dead." The man was absolutely terrified and feared death, so he remained silent and still in their midst.

Here comes Lord Walter de Manny and his companions, who were following them at a distance; and they had left their horses in the hedges and bushes, quite close to Mortagne, under the guard of their servants. When they saw that their companions had control of the gate, they hurried as fast as they could and entered in by the wicket gate at their ease. Then they went towards the tower and the castle keep, and expected to find it badly guarded; but they did not, for it was shut up. Then they stopped short, for they saw clearly that they had failed in their intentions and that it was worth nothing for them to hold the town without the castle. So they retraced their steps the way that they had come, and did not do any other damage to the town of Mortagne except that they set fire to two or three houses; and then they went out and mounted their horses and left without doing anything more. Many people from the town of Mortagne were still in their beds, and knew nothing about this adventure.

In order to accomplish his enterprise, Lord Walter de Manny and his companions rode and returned into Hainaut, and crossed the Escaut by a little bridge just below Condé. And that day they dined at the abbey of Vicoigne, and refreshed their horses there, and remained there until night. The country was not yet in a state of alarm. At sunset they mounted their horses and rode off, and passed through the Walers wood, and entered [the region of] Ostrevan. They had guides to lead them; and they came between Douai and Cambrai, passing the river of Sensee, which joins the Escaut at Bouchain. They rode until, at the hour of sunrise, they came to a castle, which is called Thun l'Evêque, sited on the river Escaut. They arrived at the very moment that the garrison of the castle were sending out the cattle to graze in the meadows that are close by, and the castellan[1] was still in his bed. So they entered in through the gate, for they found it standing open, and made themselves lords and masters of the gate, and kicked out all the men and women whom they found inside. The said Lord Walter de Manny kept the castle for himself, and put it in order and gave it to a brother of his, a knight, who is known as Lord Giles de Manny. For the rest of that year, the latter gave the people of Cambrai plenty of trouble. When the said Lord Walter de Manny had completed these enterprises, he returned to his lord the king of England, whom he found at Maligne. The king of England had arrived there and was holding a council there....

Chapter 79: The Sack of Southampton [September 1338/1339]

Just as, when the king of England and the king of France issued their challenges to each other, the English began to plot how they could harm and bring damage, so too all that season the French, the king of France, and his council thought about nothing except how to make their preparations by sea and land. Through the preparations that they saw and heard about they realized clearly enough that they would have war. They had established on the sea a number of Norman ships and a great crowd of Genoese and of mariners who are called "sea-going plunderers" [buccaneers]. Their leaders and commanders were Lord Charles Grimaldi, admiral of France, lord Hugh Quieret, [Nicholas] Behuchet and [Pietro] Barbavera; and they stationed themselves on the coast at Dieppe and Harfleur. As soon as the news of the king of England's challenge arrived at Paris, they were informed. Then these so-called plunderers left French waters and rode across the sea, and came, with the wind and the tide, to the harbor of Southampton [England], one Sunday when everybody was at mass. The town was taken so much by surprise that they had no opportunity to think about guarding their town and their harbor. All in all there were a good twenty thousand of these socalled plunderers, and for that day they were lords of Southampton. Those men, women and children who could escape fled to save themselves, and the raiders killed and captured many of them, and they carried off all the wool and cloth that they could find in the town. When the tide came back in, they got into their ships, but first they set fire to the town in more than 60 places, and then they left the harbor and embarked on the sea; and they went back towards Normandy, taking with them many prisoners, whom they later ransomed.

The news spread throughout England of how the Normans had been at Southampton and how they had captured it and robbed and pillaged everything. Then the English certainly felt that the war between France and England had really begun....

[1] The man in command of the castle's garrison.

Chapter 81: The Siege of Cambrai [1339]

You know, as my history stated above, that the city of Cambrai [today in northern France] had gone into the presence of King Philip [VI of France] to complain that they had heard that the king of England, as representative of Louis of Bavaria, king of Germany and emperor of Rome, was coming in strength to lay siege to their town. They had begged the king, as people who wanted to support him in everything, to send them men-at-arms, because they felt that they did not have sufficient forces. The king gave his consent to this plea and sent to garrison the city of Cambrai Lord Amé de Geneva, the Savoyard named "the Gaul of la Baume,"[1] Lord John [Guy] de Groullée, the lord of Vinai, Lord Louis de Chalon, Lord Tiebaut de Moruel, the lord [John] of Roye, the lord [John] of Fosseux, the lord of Biausaut, and a good 100 lances of good men-at-arms, knights and squires. He had all the castles of the Cambrai region equipped and resupplied with good men-at-arms so that no misfortune could take them by surprise. The lord [Enguerrand] of Coucy had sent around 40 lances of good comrades to Oisy in the Cambrai region, with [Robert] the lord of Clari at their head. The country was all prepared on the frontiers of Artois, Cambrai, and the Vermandois. As well as all this, King Philip issued a great summons throughout the whole of his kingdom and outside it, requesting his friends and commanding his subjects to come and fight the king of England, outside Cambrai or elsewhere. His intention was never to return to Paris until he had fought him; until then he would remain at Compiègne and send out his command.

When the king of England had lodged at Haspres for two days and many of his people had already crossed the sea and come to Naves, to Cagnoneles and the area around, he set out and approached Cambrai, halting at Iwuy in the Cambrai region. All the German lords crossed over in good order and came to set up siege before Cambrai. The second day after came the young count William of Hainaut and his uncle Lord John de Hainaut with a fine, large company of Hainauters. There were more than 500 lances, knights and squires, and they set up camp outside Cambrai. Six days later Duke John of Brabant arrived, with a good 900 helmets[2] in his company. Thus the English, German, Hainaut, and Teutonic men-at-arms surrounded the city of Cambrai.

Very soon after the duke of Brabant had joined the army outside Cambrai, the king of England begged and requested him to send a challenge to the king of France. The duke replied, saying that he would do so at once; but the king of France did not wish to do anything until such time as he saw that they were going to march on the kingdom of France. So the matter rested; but certainly the king of England intended never to withdraw until he had set fire to and burned the kingdom of France.

Those of the army had built a bridge across the River Escaut so that they could cross over to each other. Every day the English and the Germans raided across the Cambrai region as far as Bapaumes. The whole country had been warned before Cambrai went under siege, and most of the people had carried their possessions into the fortresses and driven their animals before them a long way into Artois or the Vermandois, because whatever was found on the flat countryside was lost. So while the city of Cambrai was under siege there were several assaults and skirmishes, but the fine body of knights who were within the city took such great care of it that they took and received neither blame nor damage. Lord John de Hainaut, the lord of Valkenburg and some knights from Gueldre and Juliers left the siege one day and rode so far that they reached Oisy in the Cambrai region. Some of them dismounted at the barrier and there was a great skirmish, for the knights and the squires who were within the town on behalf of the lord of Coucy bore themselves valiantly and did not take any damage; and the Germans returned to the army without having achieved anything....

Chapter 186: Negotiations between Jacques d'Arteveld and Edward III [1340–1345]

At this time and at the same season Lord Godfrey de Harcourt, one of the greatest barons of Normandy, brother of the count of Harcourt and lord of Saint-Sauveur-le-Vicomte and of several towns in Normandy, incurred the great displeasure and hatred of the king of France. I am unable to explain the cause of this hatred to you, but it was so great that if the king of France could have laid hold of him in his anger he would have made him die a shameful death. The said Lord Godfrey had to hide, flee and leave the kingdom of France. He went to England to King Edward, offered him his service and placed himself under his command just as Lord Robert d'Artois had

[1] Master of the French king's crossbowmen.

[2] A "helmet" in this context seems to mean a single armed warrior.

done formerly, and no one could ever make his peace with the king of France. The king of England received him and retained him at his side, and gave him sufficient means to maintain his position.

At this time that bourgeois of Ghent still reigned in the country of Flanders in great prosperity and power, Jacques d'Arteveld, who was a close ally of the king of England—so far as he could be, because he was always doubtful about the loyalty of the Flemings, whom he felt were unreliable. And he was right to be doubtful, as he came to such a miserable end, as I shall tell you. Above all he wished to disinherit the count of Flanders, Count Louis the Exile and his son Louis de Male; and he wished the king of England to inherit Flanders. This man Jacques d'Arteveld used to say that Flanders would become a duchy and the prince of Wales would be duke.

On this account at this time, he had the king of England, his close comrade, come to Sluys; but when the king arrived, he did not disembark from his ship. The good towns of Flanders—that is to say the consuls—came to see him and make him welcome at Sluys and laid the whole country open to him and his people, at his command, and begged him to agree to come to Bruges and to Ghent, and said that everywhere he would be welcomed. The king, thanking them, replied very gently and said that at that moment he had not come to disembark on shore. That man Jacques d'Arteveld was present at all these discussions.

Soon afterwards, a conference was held on the king's ship, which was very large and beautiful, and was named the *Christofle*. All the consuls of the good towns of Flanders were present. Jacques d'Arteveld promised what was said above and demonstrated with various arguments, gilded with fine words, that it would be beneficial to accept the prince of Wales as their lord, and Flanders should be made into a duchy and the said duke and prince should stay in the country and govern the land and country of Flanders in all good customs, and maintain justice and reason for all people; and Jacques d'Arteveld begged the [consuls of the] good towns who were there to reply and give their opinion on this. At that they all exchanged glances and did not know what to say. In any case, they asked for permission to talk together, which was given to them. They all reached the same decision, and this was their reply: "Jacques, we have heard clearly what you said; and when we came here, we did not know that you were going to talk to us on this matter, and it came as news to us. And we cannot act on this by ourselves alone; it is necessary that all the land of Flanders agree; and when [representatives of the whole of the land are] assembled, it will be necessary to pick out and identify the rebels who do not wish to agree to this, and that they be publicly banished and lose what they now hold in the land of Flanders, without any hope of seeing it again or returning to it. In this way this inheritance can be secured, for, so far as we are concerned, we would very much like the prince of Wales as our lord, as has been proposed, saving and reserving the conditions aforesaid."

This reply greatly satisfied the king and his council, but the good towns of Flanders who had replied were asked when the king could expect their reply. They agreed on a month and a day; this was given to them. And they dined with the king in his own ship, and then departed and went back each to his place, some of them feeling abused and angered at this news they had heard, although they had replied to please the king and d'Arteveld. And it seemed to them a hard and strange thing to disinherit their lord, and if they did so they would be reputed to be infamous traitors for ever and ever. Nevertheless, d'Arteveld was so feared and dreaded in the land of Flanders that in fact none would have dared anger him or speak against his wishes. Jacques d'Arteveld remained with the king on his ships in Sluys after the rest had gone.

Chapter 187: Jacques d'Arteveld Is Assassinated at Ghent [1345]

As the news spread that Jacques d'Arteveld was aiming for the prince of Wales to be lord of Flanders and to make it a duchy, great murmuring arose throughout the county of Flanders. Some, who supported the king of England, said, "This would be a good thing." Others said the opposite, that it would be shameful, blameworthy and great treason to disinherit their lord. The good people were very distressed at this, more for the sake of the son, Count Louis de Male, than they were for the father, because he had been cruel, violent, harsh and terrible to them, for which reason they had driven him out of Flanders. But they kept Louis, the young son, and said that they would bring him up in their own way, and he would be more familiar with Flemish customs than his father had been.

At that time Duke John of Brabant had a young daughter to marry off, and as a wise, skilful and astute man he had in mind that a marriage between his daughter and the son of the count of Flanders would be very advantageous. The count of Flanders was in sufficient agreement, but he was not lord or master of his son, because the Flemings held and guarded him and were bringing him up under good guards and did not allow him to leave the town of Ghent. The duke of Brabant

carefully considered what was going to happen, and how Jacques d'Arteveld was at that time so powerful in Flanders that everything was done by him and without him nothing was done; and he was informed of the news that the king of England was at Sluys and lay there at anchor, and that he and Jacques d'Arteveld on his behalf were procuring that the king's son, the prince of Wales, should be duke of Flanders. The said duke of Brabant feared that all these things would come about, for they could too easily happen, and he decided that he would put a monkey-wrench in the works.

As for what happened in the town of Ghent: while the king of England was still in his ship before Sluys, and waited for the reply from those of the land of Flanders, a very great dispute arose in the town of Ghent between the weavers of cloth and Jacques d'Arteveld, and all at the instigation and through the advancement of their dean,[1] whose name was Thomas Denis. The duke of Brabant is said to have been the cause of these events. One day more than 400 of these weavers, on the instructions of their dean, assembled in front of d'Arteveld's lodging, and surrounded it from the front and rear, and showed that they wanted to enter by force. When the servants of this d'Arteveld saw them coming like this they wondered what they wanted, for this was not the custom of those of Ghent, nor had other people come in this way to speak to their master nor wishing to force their way into the house. So they began to speak roughly to them and tried to drive them out by force, but they could not; they were beaten and insulted and wounded first.

Jacques d'Arteveld was shut up in his bedchamber, and had heard much of the words and the fighting. So he went to a window that overlooked a road where all these people were assembled and asked them, "Good people, what do you want? Why are you so upset?" They replied, "We want to talk to you. Come out." Then Jacques replied: "And if I come out there, what do you want to say?" "We want you to give us an account of the great riches that you have taken from Flanders as you liked over the last seven years, and tell us what you have done with the money and where you have put it." Then Jacques d'Arteveld saw clearly that the situation was becoming ugly. This was an unprecedented state of affairs, and its outcome was unpredictable. Hoping to appease the crowd with gentle words, he said: "Good people, all of you go back to your own lodgings, and within three days I will summon you and I will be able to render you such a good account of the money that you will be quite content." They replied with one voice: "We don't want to wait so long, but come out of your lodging and give us account."

Jacques d'Arteveld then realized that things were looking bad, and that his life was in danger. So he said: "My lords, my lords, stay there, I will come at once and speak to you." At these words they all stood quietly, and he came out of his room and went to his stable and his horses, intending to mount and leave by the back gate and go on his way, but he could not. For the lodging was so surrounded on all sides that immediately what he intended to do was detected and noticed; and those who were guarding the door warned those who were at the front gate. Then a great tumult arose among them and they broke the doors by force and burst in, and came into the stable and found Jacques d'Arteveld who was getting ready to mount and go on his way. Immediately they attacked him and that man Thomas Denis, the dean of the weavers, gave him the first blow on the head with an axe, knocking him down. Jacques d'Arteveld had done him many good turns and had given him the position of dean of the weavers, and he was his comrade. Nevertheless all these things and affinities were forgotten and put to one side. There Jacques d'Arteveld, who held such high rank, honour and prosperity in Flanders, was miserably slain. No man or judge who would take or levy compensation for this deed was ever to be found in Ghent. Thus go the fortunes of this world; wise persons cannot nor ever should place too much trust in worldly prosperity.

8.11 National feeling: Jeanne d'Arc, *Letter to the English* (1429). Original in French.

Jeanne d'Arc (*c.*1412–1431), born to a peasant family in Lorraine, a region loyal to the French king during the Hundred Years' War, heard voices telling her to defeat the English. She

[1] The president of the guild of weavers at Ghent.

went to the court of Charles, the dauphin (heir to the king of France), to persuade him of her mission against the English on his behalf. Dictated in March 1429, this *Letter to the English* was written while Jeanne was undergoing "tests" ordered by Charles to determine her orthodoxy and chastity. Female examiners attested to her virginity (this is why she called herself "the Maid"); while Jean Gerson (see below, p. 485), among other theologians, decided that her mission echoed those of biblical and classical heroines. In May 1429 the French army, accompanied by Jeanne riding under her own banner, defeated the English at Orléans. It was the psychological turning point of the Hundred Years' War. In July of the same year, Jeanne led Charles to Reims, where he was anointed king. But by the next year her fortunes had waned and, captured and sold to the English, she was tried in 1431 for witchcraft, heresy, and apostasy. Condemned for all, she was burned at the stake. Her *Letter to the English*, copied by notaries working for the English side, was one of many letters she sent to recipients throughout Europe. It shows her radical identification of the divine plan with a particular king and kingdom.

1. How was Jeanne's vision inspired by crusading ideals as expressed, for example, by Helmold (above, p. 291) and "The Templar of Tyre" (above, p. 393)?
2. How was her vision inspired by mystics like Mary of Oignies (above, p. 373)?

[Source: *Joan's Letter to the English*, trans. Nadia Margolis, in *Medieval Hagiography: An Anthology*, ed. Thomas Head (New York: Garland, 2000), pp. 821–22 (slightly modified).]

Jesus Mary,[1]

King of England and you, duke of Bedford,[2] who call yourself regent of the kingdom of France; you, William Pole, earl of Suffolk; John, Lord Talbot; and you, Thomas, lord of Scales—who call yourselves lieutenants of the said duke of Bedford: set things aright with the king of Heaven and render unto the Maid,[3] who has been sent here by God, the king of Heaven, the keys to all the good cities that you have pillaged and ravaged in France. The Maid has come on behalf of God to reclaim the blood royal. She is ready to make peace, if you are willing to settle with her by evacuating France and making restitution for whatever you have stolen. And all of you—archers, companions in arms, gentlemen, and others who are before the city of Orléans—go away, return to your country, by order of God. And if you do not do this, await news of the Maid, who will shortly pay you a visit, much to your disfavor, to inflict great damage upon you. King of England, if you do not do this, I am chief of the army[4] and am waiting to confront your men wherever they are in France; and I will make them leave, whether they wish to or not. And should they not obey, I will have them all killed. For I have been sent here by God, king of Heaven, to chase

[1] Jeanne used this popular invocation on her military standard and several of her letters. The words were also inscribed upon the ring she always wore, a gift from her mother.

[2] When King Henry V died in 1422, his son—who immediately became King Henry VI (d.1471)—was only nine months old. Thus Duke John of Bedford (1389–1435) became regent. By the Treaty of Troyes (1420), and because he was also the principal architect of the Anglo-Burgundian alliance, Bedford ruled France as well as England. Controlling northern France, including Paris and Rouen, he was thus Jeanne's most powerful adversary, both on the battlefield and at the Rouen trial.

[3] In her testimony on February 22, 1431, Jeanne said that she had originally said "Render to the king" here. Pro-English notaries may have changed her words to make her seem more boastful.

[4] In her testimony on February 22, Jeanne affirmed that she never called herself "chief of the army." Her original words may have been changed to make her look more delusional.

you completely out of France, body for body,[1] if necessary. Should they wish to obey me, then I shall take mercy upon them. May you have no other thought than this, since you do not hold the kingdom of France by order of God, king of Heaven, son of Mary—but rather it is Charles who shall hold it as true heir. For God, king of Heaven, so wishes it, as revealed by the Maid unto Charles, who shall soon enter Paris in good company. If you do not believe this news sent on behalf of God via the Maid, then we shall strike you down, with such fury as has never been seen in France for a thousand years, wherever we might find you, if you do not comply with us. You may be sure that the king of Heaven will send more might to the Maid than you shall ever be able to muster against her and her good men, no matter how many times you attack; at the end of which we shall see on whose side God truly sits in Heaven. You, duke of Bedford, the Maid pleads and requests of you not to destroy yourself thus. If you comply with her, you may join her there where the French will achieve the greatest exploit ever for Christianity. Give us your answer whether you wish to make peace in the city of Orléans; and if you do not, much devastation will come to remind you.

8.12 The woolworkers (*ciompi)* revolt at Siena: Donato di Neri and his son, *Chronicle of Siena* (1371). Original in Italian.

The revolt of the woolworkers (*ciompi*) in 1371 at Siena was reported in the *Chronicle of Siena* by Donato di Neri (d.1371/1372). Little is known about him, except that he belonged to the Sienese Guild of the *Ligrittieri*, textile sellers, and may have held public office. Donato's section of the *Chronicle* related to the events of 1352–1371. The next section, taking up the years 1372–1382, was written by his son Neri di Donato, about whom we know nothing. Unlike other Italian city chronicles, which were written by men officially appointed to do so, several among the *Cronache senesi* (the Chronicles of Siena) were written by private citizens—like Donato and his son—on their own initiative.

Led by three wool carders of the *Compagnia del Bruco* (the Company of the Caterpillar, named after the caterpillar on their insignia), the woolworkers of Siena began their revolt by demanding better pay from the Wool Guild's masters, the *Lanaioli*. Their grievances were rooted in Siena's general economic decline and political turbulence. Since 1368, Siena's governing body had been made up of several different but always uneasy coalitions of factions representing various socio-economic groups. In September of that year, the government led by the *Dodici* (the Twelve, named after the number of its lower middle-class members, who were mostly artisans) was overruled by the *Gentiluomini* (members of the noble—or wealthiest—families of the city), the *Nove* (the Nine, named after the number of its upper middle-class members—especially merchants and bankers—who ruled the city between 1287 and 1355), and the *Popolo minuto* (the common people, that is, all the salaried workers, like the *ciompi*). But a few months later, in December 1368, the lowest strata gained even more power when all the members of the *Consiglio dei Riformatori* (the *Reformers*) were chosen from the *Popolo minuto*. In July 1371, when the *ciompi* uprising began, the Sienese government was led by fifteen *Signori* (Lords, not to be mistaken for nobles): eight of them belonged to the *Popolo minuto* (thus the majority), four to the *Dodici*, and only three to the *Nove*.

[1] In her testimony on February 22, Jeanne stated that she had never said this originally; it may have been added by her detractors to make her seem more bloodthirsty.

1. Within this account of urban strife, what institutions of social solidarity may be detected?
2. Who were the *Dodici* and what roles did they take in the woolworkers' revolt?

[*Cronaca senese di Donato di Neri e di suo figlio Neri*, in *Cronache senesi*, ed. A. Lisini and F. Iacometti, in *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, 2nd ed., vol. 15, pt. 6 (Bologna: Zanichelli, 1931–1939), pp. 639–42. Introduction, notes, and translation by Riccardo Cristiani]

[July 1371]

The workers and carders of the Wool Guild of Siena had words and disputes with their masters, demanding to be paid according to the ordinance of the Sienese commune and not that of the Guild. They went to the Palazzo dei Signori[1] but were not admitted and made a great uproar, threatening to kill some of their masters and others. For this, Cecco dalle Fornaci, Giovanni di monna Tessa, and Francesco d'Agnolo, known as Burbicone, carders of the *Compagnia del Bruco* [the Company of the Caterpillar],[2] were arrested. The Senator[3] had them shackled and interrogated, and they said things that would cost them [and others] their lives; for this reason, all members of the *Compagnia del Bruco*, along with other sworn allies, gathered together.

On Monday, July 14, they rushed armed to the Senator's palace and demanded to have the three men back; when they could not get them, they wanted to set the palace on fire. Hearing this, and since the whole city was up in arms, the Captain of the *Popolo*, Francino di maestro Naddo[4] came out of his palace with his *gonfalone* [standard][5] and trumpets, and went to the palace of the Senator. There was a great fight there, with some dead and wounded on the side of the Senator. The said Captain strove so hard that the three men were set free, and he went back to his palace. Now with their three men back, the *Compagnia del Bruco* went to the Palazzo dei Signori in a great uproar, shouting "Bring the *Dodici* and the *Nove* outside," and so it was done; that is, the three men of the *Nove*, and the four of the *Dodici* who were inside the Palazzo dei Signori came out. Then, remonstrating throughout the entire city, shouting "Death to the *Dodici*! Long live the *Popolo*!" they [the *ciompi*] went to the houses of messer Cecco Andrea del Fonda, Meo d'Agnolo, and many others, to kill them. In Pillicciaria [a street], they ran into Nannuccio di Francesco, who had been Captain of the *Popolo* in November and December [1370], and with shouts they killed him, because he had done many filthy things at the request of the *Dodici* and the Salimbeni[6] when he was Captain; and it was Ferraccio, Captain of the *Compagnia del Bruco*, who killed him. Then they went to the house of the Salimbeni and took the *bandiera* [flag] of the *Popolo* from them,[7] which they held as associates of the *Popolo*, and wounded the Prior of the Salimbeni.[8] And the *gonfaloni* were taken from the *Gonfalonieri* and placed at the windows of the Palazzo dei Signori. The said Ferraccio also wounded Bartalo del Forniere, armor maker. And then the aforesaid *gonfaloni* were given back to the *Gonfalonieri* to the sound of trumpets. [...]

[1] I.e., the Palazzo Pubblico, where the government had its seat.

[2] Here the word "company" (*compagnia*) does not refer to a commercial enterprise. The city companies were neighborhood military units (also known as "brigades" [*brigate*]) organized for defensive purposes and mutual support.

[3] The Senator was the chief minister of justice.

[4] The Captain of the *Popolo* was the commander-in-chief of the civic militia. In 1371, his office had a six-month duration. After the revolt, control over the civic army was given to a *Capitano della guerra* (Captain of War), a non-Sienese citizen.

[5] The *gonfalone* (pl. *gonfaloni*) was the standard—much like a flag—used in medieval communes. In general, different *gonfaloni* were used as the insignias of major city offices, guilds, and confraternities, and each had a *gonfaloniere* (standard-bearer). The difference between *banderie* (flags, mentioned below) and *gonfaloni*, was mainly in their shape; both catalyzed the citizens' emotional attachment.

[6] The Salimbeni was one of the most prominent magnate families of Siena. They had plans to establish a despotic government (or *signoria*) over the city.

[7] The *Popolo* had its own flag—a white lion on a red field—as opposed to that of the commune of Siena—a black and white shield.

[8] The title of an official who represented the Salimbeni family.

Six citizens of the *Popolo* from each *terzo* [third][1] were mustered to quiet the city. The *Riformatori* sent them away and appointed themselves in their place and in addition named a hundred *Riformatori* for each *terzo*. And it was permitted to the *Riformatori* to reorganize the city and the offices as they saw fit. On July 24, they had the *gonfalone* of the Masse of Camollia[2] taken from Lorenzo di Puccio Casini, a member of the *Dodici*, and given to Giacomo the armorer, to the sound of trumpets; and that of the Masse of San Martino was taken from Bertaccio the shoemaker, a member of the *Popolo*, and given to Nanni d'Alesso, because he fought at the house of the Salimbeni. And they also went to take the *gonfalone* of the Masse of Città from the house of Nanni di Pietro Giovannini. But Agnolino di Giacomo, a cloth seller of the *Riformatori*, said, "I've got that *gonfalone*," and so it stayed. And they went to take the *gonfalone* of the *Compagnia of San Salvatore*, but the members [of that *Compagnia*] revolted and did not let them take it.

On July 28, they [the *ciompi*] also had the *gonfaloni* taken from the *Gonfalonieri Maestri*, that is, from Maggio, Pasquino, and Migliorino.[3] They appointed two Captains in each *terzo* to guard the city, and these men took notice of whoever left Siena, day and night. And certain citizens among the nobles, the *Nove*, the *Dodici*, and the Salimbeni who had been detained, were released. And 30 of the *Dodici* and 10 of the *Nove* were removed from their offices, and the *Dodici* and the *Nove* were removed from the Palazzo [dei Signori] and replaced with the *Riformatori*.

On July 29, some of the *Bruco* brigade went to the *Signori* and asked for the release of a number of *Gentiluomini* who had been detained, or else—hands on their swords—they would cut the Captain to pieces. They also wanted Niccolò d'Ambrogio di Nese, of the *Dodici*, and Antonio di Bindotto Pelacidi, of the *Nove*, to be beheaded. Thus, in an uproar, they left for the night.

Tofano di Fecino, butcher and citizen of Siena, revealed a subversive plot against the *Riformatori*, and [for this] he was given 180 golden florins by the commune of Siena.

It turned out that the *Dodici* plotted with the Salimbeni and their supporters, and they knew and did so much—both by means of the horrible things they did in the past and through money bribes—that Francino di maestro Naddo, who was Captain of the *Popolo*, and all three *Gonfalonieri Maestri*, along with many others from the *Popolo*, had joined them [the *Dodici* and their allies]. Their order was this: on August 1, before dawn, the said Captain was to place weapons and men in the tower[4] and in the middle of the Palazzo, and at dawn the *Gonfalonieri* were to arm themselves and so would the *Dodici* and everyone in their own *terzo*, and then they would come to the Campo,[5] and each would defend his *terzo* so that no one could enter the Campo; and from outside the Salimbeni would come with all their men on foot and on horse, and [so would] messer Azzo da Bigozzo and friends. And then they would take the streets so that no one could enter or leave the city, and they would cut to pieces the *Compagnia del Bruco*, the Tolomei, the *Nove*, the bishop and certain others, and would reform the city with the *Dodici* and the good men [the nobles], as they wanted.[6] The *Signori*, noticing the [plotters'] happy faces, hearing the words they used and their bad manners, detained some *Gentiluomini*, some of the *Dodici*, the *Nove*, and the *Popolo*. At once, fearing discovery, these men hurried, and the Captain put some of them in his chamber on the night of July 29, and he stood alone at the gate waiting to let the approaching brigade in, as planned. By accident, one of the *Signori* got up that night and heard the clamor and noise of weapons in the Captain's chamber and immediately called his companions.[7] As soon as they got up, he reported the incident to them. They looked at once for the Captain and found him alone by the gate with the keys in his hand, and they said to

[1] The city of Siena was (and still is) divided into three *terzi* (sing. *terzo*): Terzo of Città, Terzo of San Martino, and Terzo of Camollia.

[2] The three suburban districts outside the walls of Siena were called Masse. They were named after the three *terzi* (Città, San Martino, and Camollia) and each had a *gonfalone*.

[3] Maggio, Pasquino, and Migliorino were the *gonfalonieri maestri* of their respective *terzi*: Città, San Martino, and Camollia. The three *gonfalonieri maestri* were subordinate to the Captain of the *Popolo*.

[4] I.e., the Tower of Mangia, which still overlooks the Palazzo Pubblico.

[5] Literally the "field," that is, the main and largest square of Siena, fronting the Palazzo Pubblico.

[6] The bishop was Iacopo di Egidio Malavolti (d.1371), a member of the Malavolti family, rivals of the Salimbeni, as were the Tolomei, another prominent noble lineage in Siena.

[7] The *Signori* lived and slept in the Palazzo during their (two month) term of office. That is why one of them heard the Captain at night.

him: "What are you doing here, Captain?" He uttered confused words but did not know what to say, and they took the keys from him. When the brigade arrived, the *Signori* sent it away and locked the Captain in a chamber.

The morning after, on July 30, the *Gonfalonieri*, that is Maggio di Giacomo, shoemaker of Città, Pasquino, potter of San Martino, and Migliorino, leather worker of Camollia, armed themselves before dawn, armed all the *Dodici* along with their relatives and supporters, and came [toward the Palazzo] each with more than 600 armed men. Maggio took Porta Salaria, Pasquino took Porrione, and Migliorino took Croce al Travaglio, and they began fighting at the Palazzo. The *Signori* defended themselves: a stone was thrown from the tower and bounced off Pasquino's helmet, and he fell. The men in his brigade thought him dead, and they almost ran off. Many had gone to the *Compagnia del Bruco*, as ordered, and were fighting them at Uvile [i.e., Pian d'Ovile, their neighborhood]; they broke them [the woolworkers] up and chased them through that neighborhood with lances, crossbows, and swords [...] Some fled here, some there, some hid and others threw themselves from the walls. Their women fled in fear, screaming, [their hair] disheveled, carrying cradles on their heads, children in their arms and [wool] bales in their hands;[1] there never was such a pitiful [thing], and it had to be seen to be believed. The *Dodici* in person, that is Giovanni Fei, Ambrogio Binducci, Francia with his men and others, stole cloth or cut it from the looms and set eight houses on fire; thus winning, they went back to the Palazzo and the other places. Some of the *Popolo* belonging to the *Compagnia del Bruco* began to cry: "O *Gentiluomini*! O *Nove*! Help, help your *Popolo*." At that, the *Gentiluomini* and the *Nove* armed themselves and stood their ground against them [the *Dodici*]. The Ugurgieri, along with those of piazza del Conte, the Tolomei and the Malavolti [i.e., noble families of Siena] fought against the *Dodici* at Arco dei Rossi, and quickly routed them. The brigade of Postierla, along with that of Casato, the *Nove* and the *Gentiliomini* came through the Casato [...] and fought against Maggio at Porta Salaria. Those of Camollia fought against Migliorino at Croce al Travaglio; they defeated and routed all of them [i.e., the *Dodici*, Maggio and Migliorino]. Pasquino was taken from the tower to Porrione, and those [men] of Città set upon Pasquino and routed them [him and his men], for they could not withstand any of their hits [i.e., attacks] anywhere and vanished like mist [i.e., they fled]: all the *Gonfalonieri*, the *Dodici*, and their supporters ran away. Domenico and Giovanni Fei, Francia di Lenzo, merchant, and a nephew of his, were captured in the very act, still armed, at Camporegio.

The *Signori*, once they duly knew the truth about the whole matter, had Antonio di Bindotto Placidi of the *Nove*; Nicolò d'Ambrogio di Nese, dyer of the *Dodici*; Gualtieri di Riccardo Bettucci of the *Dodici*, and Pietruccio di Pietro, leather worker of the *Popolo*, beheaded at the Campo; the four men had been detained for several days upon suspicion. And Palmerino di Palmerino, textile seller, who had been found in the chamber of the Captain, was beheaded too. And while justice was being done, the brigade shouted: "Take the Captain." And thus Francino, the Captain, was taken and dressed in scarlet, and was beheaded in the middle of the Campo on a scarlet cloth, on the 1st of August. [...]

Landino, a smith from the suburb of San Marco, was made Captain of the *Popolo* in the place of Francino, who had been beheaded, as said above. The shoemaker Maggio di Giacomo, *Gonfaloniere* of Città, was taken on that very day at Camporegio, where he had fled and was still hiding. He betrayed Giovanni di Meo, sock maker, and had him taken and given to the *Signori Riformatori*; [for this] he received a hundred golden florins from the commune. The above-mentioned Maggio was interrogated, and he revealed the truth about the plot in its proper order. Then he was beheaded at Porta Salaria on August 11, along with Giovanni di Meo at [...] and three other felons. And the other *Gonfalonieri* [i.e., Pasquino and Migliorino] ran away from Siena.

The *Signori Riformatori* ordered that everyone lay down his arms and that those who had left come back to Siena, except for those named above; and a little more than 500 men—who left on suspicion—came back to Siena.

Besides, the *Signori Riformatori* had all the *bossoli*[2] of all the offices destroyed; on August 12, at their meeting, they decided that the Government should consist of 15

[1] The Italian reads "e per mano co' le balle": "balle" may refer to "wool bales" (in their hands). It seems that the women tried to save the only treasure they had, for they knew that the *Dodici* were likely to vandalize their workshops.

[2] Instituted in Siena in the first half of the fourteenth century, the *bossoli* (sing. *bossolo*, case) contained the names of all citizens deemed fit to be named to various governmental offices. The names were divided into lists, and each list was sealed in a tiny wax ball inside the *bossolo*. Every two months a wax ball from the *bossolo* was chosen in a blind drawing. The people on the list within the ball then took office (but only for two months; then they were replaced by new citizens chosen in the same way).

[*Signori*] per election, that is 12 from the *Popolo Riformatori* and 3 from the *Nove*, and they should be called *Popolo*, and that a new *bossolo* should be made for [the next] 5 years.[1] For that election, the [4] *Dodici* and the [3] *Nove* still at the Palazzo were removed, while those [8] of the *Popolo Riformatori* were allowed to stay. And they decided that no one from the *Dodici* or their descendants could govern for 5 years. They appointed 3 citizens with full liberty to convict all the guilty and whomever they wanted; and [these 3] were Leonardo di ser Sozzo, Pietro di Lando, pelt worker, and Benedetto di Corazzaio. They declared the two *Gonfalonieri*, that is Pasquino, potter of San Martino, and Migliorino, leather worker of Camollia, rebels; they were also painted in the Council chamber and their houses were razed to the ground.[2] The houses of Maggio, who had been beheaded, Pietro the blacksmith, and many others were also razed to the ground.

One hundred thirty-one of the *Dodici* were convicted, as were 85 of the *Popolo maggiore* [i.e., *Popolo minuto*] who befriended the *Dodici* and the Salimbeni, and 12 of the *Nove* were declared renegades, like Branca Accarigi and four of the Pietroni, and Benvenuto, Luigi etc., and all those beastly supporters of the *Dodici*;[3] and all had to pay about 20,000 golden florins. Domenico and Giovanni Fei paid 200 golden flor., Francia di Lenzo and his brother paid 600 golden flor., Giovanni di ser Cecco, retailer, and Nanni di ser Vanni each paid 500 golden flor., Piero e Ambrogio Landi paid 400 golden flor., Ventura d'Andrea e Giacomo di Giovanni Arighetti each paid 300 golden flor. [...]

All their names and the amount [of the fines] were given to the *Podestà*,[4] and almost all of them were exiled; and those who did not pay within a certain time were declared rebels.

And the three citizens who were appointed to pronounce the above-mentioned sentences each received 200 golden flor. and 3 *moggi* of wheat.[5]

On August 12, the Florentines sent a hundred knights to Siena, to protect the *Riformatori*.[6]

On August 14, the *Podestà* of Siena made public [the names] of the said convicted [...]

Many among the *Riformatori* went to the Hospital [of Santa Maria della Scala],[7] where the *bossolo* [with the names] of the *Signori* was kept, and they broke it on the desk of the *Podestà*; they broke the *bossolo* and threw everything away.

On August 22, the *Signori Riformatori*, as ordered, began the *bossolo* of the *Signori* who would govern the city for the next 5 years—that is three of the *Nove* and twelve of the *Popolo schietto* [i.e., the *Popolo minuto*]. They finished it on the last day of August, as ordered. The elected [15] *Riformatori*—with many trumpets, olive branches and garlands, and with all the *Gentiluomini* and the *Popolo schietto*—carried the little box [with the names] in great joy [*alegreza*] to the Hospital of Santa Maria della Scala.

And then, the following day, the *Signori Riformatori* instructed the *Gentiluomini* and the *Popolo schietto* to tell everyone to join them in making an offering to the Hospital in praise and reverence of the Virgin Mary; and therefore, there was no one in Siena who did not go, carrying a candle. It was one of the most beautiful things ever done in Siena.

---

[1] This new government composition lasted until 1385, when the *Riformatori* were entirely and permanently ousted from power.

[2] Painting the traitors' images and destroying their houses were criminal penalties.

[3] Here and elsewhere Donato di Neri reveals his political bias against the *Dodici* and their supporters.

[4] The podestà was the chief magistrate of the commune. In the thirteenth century, and even more so in the fourteenth, his role was similar to that of the Capitano del *Popolo*. To guarantee neutrality, he had to be a foreigner.

[5] The *moggio* [pl. *moggi*] was a unit of weight. Three *moggi* were roughly 62 bushels.

[6] The Florentines might have feared the consequences of Siena's civic instability.

[7] Built in the eleventh century, it was the main institution for the assistance of the sick, the poor, and the pilgrims.

8.13 The commons revolt: *Wat Tyler's Rebellion* (after 1381). Original in Anglo-French.

A pressing need for more revenue to fight the Hundred Years' War led the English Parliament to impose new poll (head) taxes that hit the "commons" (*not* the House of Commons but rather peasants in the countryside and most people in the cities) very hard. Uncoordinated revolts in the countryside led eventually to coordinated ones, and two armies, one led by Wat Tyler, converged on London. Their chief demand was the end of serfdom. In the *Anonimalle Chronicle of St. Mary's, York*, an anonymous author who often spelled Tyler "Teghler" or "Tighler" told the story in considerable detail, excerpted here. Although the rebels considered themselves loyal to the fourteen-year-old King Richard II (r.1377–1399), he and his counselors fled to the Tower of London. Later, when Richard met with the rebels at Mile End, he gave in to their demands, but the next day at Smithfield, the Mayor of London killed Tyler, and the insurrection largely fell apart.

1. In what ways does the anonymous author reveal the side that he supports?
2. What does this account reveal about class prejudice and class mobility in fourteenth-century England?

[Source: Charles Oman, *The Great Revolt of 1381* (New York: Greenwood Press, 1969), pp. 186–93, 196–99, 201–3, 205 (language slightly updated; notes added).]

Because in the year 1380 the subsidies [taxes] were over lightly granted at the Parliament of Northampton and because it seemed to various Lords and to the commons that the said subsidies were not honestly levied, but commonly exacted from the poor and not from the rich, to the great profit and advantage of the tax-collectors and to the deception of the King and the commons, the Council of the King ordained certain commissions to make inquiry in every township how the tax had been levied. Among these commissions, one for Essex was sent to one Thomas Bampton,[1] seneschal of a certain lord, who was regarded in that country as a king or great magnate for the state that he kept. And before Whitsuntide[2] he held a court at Brentwood in Essex to make inquisition, and [he] showed the commission that had been sent him to raise the money which was in default and to inquire how the collectors had levied the aforesaid subsidy. He had summoned before him the townships of a neighboring hundred and wished to have from them new contributions, commanding the people of those townships to make diligent inquiry, and give their answers, and pay their due. Among these townships was Fobbing, whose people made answer that they would not pay a penny more because they already had a receipt from himself for the said subsidy. On which the said Thomas threatened them angrily, and he had with him two sergeants-at-arms of our lord the king. And for fear of his malice the folks of Fobbing took counsel with the folks of Corringham, and the folks of these two places made levies and assemblies and sent messages to the men of Stanford to bid them rise with them for their common profit. Then the people of these three townships came together to the number of a hundred or more, and with one assent went to the said Thomas Bampton, and roundly gave him answer that they would have no traffic with him nor give him a penny. On which the said Thomas commanded his sergeants-at-arms to arrest these folks, and put them in prison. But the commons made insurrection against him, and would not be arrested, and went about to kill the said Thomas and the said sergeants. On this Thomas fled towards

[1] Thomas Bampton was a tax collector, one of many who had not obtained the full amount expected and now returned to the townships for more money.

[2] That is, before the week of Pentecost, which is the seventh Sunday after Easter.

London to the King's Council; but the commons took to the woods, for fear that they had of his malice, and they hid there some time, till they were almost famished, and afterwards they went from place to place to stir up other people to rise against the lords and great folk of the country. And because of these occurrences Sir Robert Belknap, Chief Justice of the King's Bench, was sent into the county with a commission of Trailbaston,[1] and indictments against various persons were laid before him, and the folks of the countryside were in such fear that they were proposing to abandon their homes. Wherefore the commons rose against him, and came before him, and told him that he was a traitor to the King, and that it was of pure malice that he would put them in default by means of false inquests made before him. And they took him and made him swear on the Bible that never again would he hold such a session, nor act as a justice in such inquests. And they made him give them a list of the names of all the jurors, and they took all the jurors they could catch, and cut off their heads, and cast their houses to the ground. So the said Sir Robert took his way home without delay. And afterwards the said commons assembled together, before Whitsunday, to the number of some 50,000, and they went to the manors and townships of those who would not rise with them, and cast their houses to the ground or set fire to them. At this time they caught three clerks of Thomas Bampton, and cut off their heads, and carried the heads about with them for several days stuck on poles as an example to others. For it was their purpose to slay all lawyers, and all jurors, and all the servants of the King whom they could find. Meanwhile the great lords of that country and other people of substance fled towards London, or to other counties where they might be safe. Then the commons sent various letters to Kent and Suffolk and Norfolk that they should rise with them, and when they were assembled they went about in many bands doing great mischief in all the countryside.... And they made chief over them Wat Teghler of Maidstone, to maintain them and be their councillor.

And on the Monday next after Trinity Sunday[2] they came to Canterbury, before the hour of noon; and 4,000 of them entering into the Minster[3] at the time of High Mass, there made a reverence and cried with one voice to the monks to prepare to choose a monk for Archbishop of Canterbury, "for he who is Archbishop now is a traitor, and shall be decapitated for his iniquity." And so he was within five days after! And when they had done this, they went into the town to their fellows, and with one assent they summoned the Mayor, the bailiffs, and the commons of the said town, and examined them whether they would with good will swear to be faithful and loyal to King Richard and to the true commons of England or no. Then the mayor answered that they would do so willingly, and they made their oath to that effect. Then they [the rebels] asked them if they had any traitors among them, and the townsfolk said that there were three, and named their names. These three the commons dragged out of their houses and cut off their heads. And afterwards they took 500 men of the town with them to London, but left the rest to guard the town.

At this time the commons had as their councillor a chaplain of evil disposition named Sir John Ball, which Sir John advised them to get rid of all the lords, and of the archbishop and bishops, and abbots, and priors, and most of the monks and canons, saying that there should be no bishop in England save one archbishop only, and that he himself would be that prelate, and they would have no monks or canons in religious houses save two, and that their possessions should be distributed among the laity. For which sayings he was esteemed among the commons as a prophet, and labored with them day by day to strengthen them in their malice—and a fit reward he got, when he was hung, drawn, and quartered, and beheaded as a traitor. After this the said commons went to many places, and raised all the folk, some willingly and some unwillingly, till they were gathered together full 60,000. And in going towards London they met various men of law, and twelve knights of that country, and made them swear to support them, or otherwise they should have been beheaded. They wrought much damage in Kent, and notably to Thomas Haselden, a servant of the Duke of Lancaster, because of the hate that they bore to the said duke. They cast his manors to the ground and all his houses, and sold his beasts—his horses, his good cows, his sheep, and his pigs—and all his store of corn, at a cheap price. And they desired every day to have his head, and the head of Sir Thomas Orgrave, Clerk of Receipt and sub-Treasurer of England.

When the King heard of their doings, he sent his messengers to them, on Tuesday after Trinity Sunday,

[1] This was a commission, begun under Edward I (d.1307), for justices to consider both criminal and quasi-criminal cases.

[2] Trinity Sunday is the first Sunday after Pentecost.

[3] A minster is a monastery church.

asking why they were behaving in this fashion and for what cause they were making insurrection in his land. And they sent back by his messengers the answer that they had risen to deliver him and to destroy traitors to him and his kingdom. The King sent again to them bidding them cease their doings, in reverence for him, till he could speak with them, and he would make, according to their will, reasonable amendment of all that was ill-done in the realm. And the commons, out of good feeling to him, sent back word by his messengers that they wished to see him and speak with him at Blackheath. And the King sent again the third time to say that he would come willingly the next day, at the hour of Prime,[1] to hear their purpose. At this time the King was at Windsor, but he removed with all the haste he could to London, and the Mayor and the good folks of London came to meet him, and conducted him in safety to the Tower of London. There all the Council assembled and all the lords of the land round about, that is to say, the Archbishop of Canterbury, Chancellor of England; the Bishop of London; and the Master of the Hospital of St. John's, Clerkenwell, who was then Treasurer of England; and the Earls of Buckingham[2] and Kent, Arundel, Warwick, Suffolk, Oxford, and Salisbury, and others to the number of 600.

And on the vigil of Corpus Christi Day,[3] the commons of Kent came to Blackheath, three leagues from London, to the number of 50,000, to wait for the King, and they displayed two banners of St. George and forty pennons.[4] And the commons of Essex came on the other side of the water to the number of 60,000 to aid them and to have their answer from the King. And on the Wednesday, the King being in the Tower of London, thinking to settle the business, had his barge got ready and took with him in his barge the Archbishop, and the Treasurer, and certain others of his Council, and four other barges for his train, and got him to Greenwich, which is three leagues from London. But there the Chancellor and the Treasurer said to the King that it would be too great folly to trust himself among the commons, for they were men without reason and had not the sense to behave properly. But the commons of Kent, since the King would not come to them because he was dissuaded by his Chancellor and Treasurer, sent him a petition requiring that he should grant them the head of the Duke of Lancaster and the heads of fifteen other lords, of whom three were bishops, who were present with him in the Tower of London. And these were their names: Sir Simon Sudbury, Archbishop of Canterbury, Chancellor of England; Sir Robert Hales, Prior of the Hospital of St. John's, Treasurer of England; the Bishop of London; Sir John Fordham, Bishop-elect of Durham and Clerk of the Privy Seal; Sir Robert Belknap, Chief Justice of the King's Bench; Sir Ralph Ferrers; Sir Robert Plessington, Chief Baron of the Exchequer; John Legge, Sergeant-at-arms of the King; and Thomas Bampton aforesaid. This the King would not grant them, wherefore they sent to him again a yeoman,[5] praying that he would come and speak with them: and he said that he would gladly do so, but the said Chancellor and Treasurer gave him contrary counsel, bidding him tell them that if they would come to Windsor on the next Monday they should there have a suitable answer.

And the said commons had among themselves a watchword in English, "With whome haldes you?"; and the answer was, "With kinge Richarde and the true comons"; and those who could not or would not so answer were beheaded and put to death.

And at this time there came a knight with all the haste that he could, crying to the King to wait; and the King, startled at this, awaited his approach to hear what he would say. And the said knight came to the King telling him that he had heard from his servant, who had been in the hands of the rebels on that day, that if he came to them all the land should be lost, for they would never let him loose, but would take him with them all round England, and that they would make him grant them all their demands, and that their purpose was to slay all the lords and ladies of great renown, and all the archbishops, bishops, abbots and priors, monks and canons, parsons and vicars, by the advice and counsel of the aforesaid Sir John Ball.

Therefore the King returned towards London as fast as he could and came to the Tower at the hour of Tierce.[6] And at this time the yeoman who has been mentioned above hastened to Blackheath, crying to his fellows that the King was departed and that it would be good for them to go on to London and carry out their purpose

[1] The first hour of the day, around 6 a.m.

[2] An error. Buckingham was in Wales.

[3] The feast of Corpus Christi is celebrated shortly after Pentecost; the vigil is the day before.

[4] A pennon is a banner or streamer carried on a lance.

[5] That is, one of their number; yeomen belonged to the class of farmers who owned their own plots of land.

[6] The third hour of the day, around 9 a.m.

that same Wednesday. And before the hour of Vespers,[1] the commons of Kent came, to the number of 60,000, to Southwark, where was the Marshalsea.[2] And they broke and threw down all the houses in the Marshalsea and took out of prison all the prisoners who were imprisoned for debt or for felony. And they leveled to the ground a fine house belonging to John Imworth, then Marshal of the Marshalsea of the King's Bench and warden of the prisoners of the said place, and all the dwellings of the jurors and questmongers[3] belonging to the Marshalsea during that night. But at the same time, the commons of Essex came to Lambeth near London, a manor of the Archbishop of Canterbury, and entered into the buildings and destroyed many of the goods of the said Archbishop, and burnt all the books of register, and rules of remembrances belonging to the Chancellor, which they found there....

At this time the King was in a turret of the great Tower of London, and could see the manor of the Savoy and the Hospital of Clerkenwell, and the house of Simon Hosteler near Newgate, and John Butterwick's place, all on fire at once. And he called all his lords about him to his chamber, and asked counsel what they should do in such necessity. And none of them could or would give him any counsel, wherefore the young King said that he would send to the Mayor of the City to bid him order the sheriffs and aldermen to have it cried round their wards that every man between the age of fifteen and sixty, on pain of life and members, should go next morning (which was Friday) to Mile End, and meet him there at seven o'clock. He did this in order that all the commons who were encamped around the Tower might be induced to abandon the siege and come to Mile End to see him and hear him, so that those who were in the Tower could get off safely whither they would and save themselves. But it came to nothing, for some of them did not get the good fortune to be preserved. And on that Thursday, the said feast of Corpus Christi, the King, being in the Tower very sad and sorry, mounted up into a little turret towards St. Catherine's, where were lying a great number of the commons, and had proclamation made to them that they all should go peaceably to their homes, and he would pardon them all manner of their trespasses. But all cried with one voice that they would not go before they had captured the traitors who lay in the Tower, nor until they had got charters to free them from all manner of serfdom, and had got certain other points which they wished to demand. And the King benevolently granted all and made a clerk write a bill in their presence in these terms: "Richard, King of England and France, gives great thanks to his good commons, for that they have so great a desire to see and to keep their king, and grants them pardon for all manner of trespasses and misprisions and felonies done up to this hour, and wills and commands that every one should now return to his own home, and wills and commands that each should put his grievances in writing and have them sent to him; and he will provide, with the aid of his loyal lords and his good council, such remedy as shall be profitable both to him and to them, and to all the kingdom." On this document he sealed his signet in presence of them all, and sent out the said bill by the hands of two of his knights to the folks before St. Catherine's. And he caused it to be read to them, and the knight who read it stood up on an old chair before the others so that all could hear. All this time the King was in the Tower in great distress of mind. And when the commons had heard the Bill, they said that this was nothing but trifles and mockery. Therefore they returned to London and had it cried around the City that all lawyers, and all the clerks of the Chancery and the Exchequer and every man who could write a brief or a letter should be beheaded, whenever they could be found. At this time they burnt several more houses in the City, and the King himself ascended to a high garret of the Tower and watched the fires. Then he came down again and sent for the lords to have their counsel, but they did not know how they should counsel him, and all were very discouraged.

And next day, Friday, the commons of the countryside and the commons of London assembled in fearful strength, to the number of 100,000 or more, besides some four score who remained on Tower Hill to watch those who were in the Tower. And some went to Mile End, on the Brentwood Road, to wait for the coming of the King, because of the proclamation that he had made. But some came to Tower Hill, and when the King knew that they were there, he sent them orders by messenger to join their friends at Mile End, saying that he would come to them very soon. And at this hour of the morning he advised the Archbishop of Canterbury, and the others who were in the Tower, to go down to the Little Water-gate, and take a boat and save themselves. And the Archbishop did so,

[1] Vespers is at sunset.

[2] The Marshalsea was a prison.

[3] Questmongers were informers who then received a share of any fines they generated.

but a wicked woman raised a cry against him, and he had to turn back to the Tower, to his confusion.

And by seven o'clock the King came to Mile End, and with him his mother in a whirlecote,[1] and also the Earls of Buckingham,[2] Kent, Warwick, and Oxford, and Sir Thomas Percy, and Sir Robert Knolles, and the Mayor of London, and many knights and squires; and Sir Aubrey de Vere carried the sword of state. And when he was come the commons all knelt down to him, saying: "Welcome our Lord King Richard, if it pleases you, and we will not have any other king but you." And Wat Tighler, their leader and chief, asked in the name of the commons that he would allow them to take and deal with all the traitors against him and the law, and the King granted that they should have at their disposition all who were traitors, and could be proved to be traitors by process of law. The said Walter and the commons were carrying two banners and many pennons and pennoncels[3] while they made their petition to the King. And they required that for the future no man should be in serfdom, nor make any manner of homage or suit to any lord, but should give a rent of 4d.[4] an acre for his land. They asked also that no one should serve any man except by his own good will, and on terms of regular agreement.

And at this time the King made the commons draw themselves out in two lines, and proclaimed to them that he would confirm and grant it that they should be free, and generally should have their will, and that they might go through all the realm of England and catch all traitors and bring them to him in safety, and then he would deal with them as the law demanded.

Under color of this grant Wat Tighler and [some of] the commons took their way to the Tower to seize the Archbishop, while the rest remained at Mile End. During this time the Archbishop sang his mass devoutly in the Tower, and shrived[5] the Prior of the Hospitallers and others, and then he heard two masses or three, and chanted the *Commendacione*, and the *Placebo*, and the *Dirige*, and the Seven Psalms, and a Litany, and when he was at the words "Omnes sancti orate pro nobis," the commons burst in, and dragged him out of the chapel of the Tower, and struck and hustled him rudely, as they did also the others who were with him, and dragged them to Tower Hill. There they cut off the heads of Master Simon Sudbury, Archbishop of Canterbury, and of Sir Robert Hales, Prior of the Hospital of St. John's, Treasurer of England, and of Sir William Appleton, a great lawyer and surgeon, and later chief physician to the king, and the Duke of Lancaster. And some time later they beheaded John Legge, the King's Sergeant-at-arms, and with him a certain juror. And at the same time the commons made proclamation that whoever could catch any Fleming or other alien of any nation, might cut off his head, and so they did after this. Then they took the heads of the Archbishop and of the others and put them on wooden poles and carried them before them in procession as far as the shrine of Westminster Abbey, in despite of them and of God and Holy Church; and vengeance descended on them no long time after....

Then the King caused a proclamation to be made that all the commons of the country who were still in London should come to Smithfield, to meet him there; and so they did.

And when the King and his train had arrived there they turned into the Eastern meadow in front of St. Bartholomew's, which is a house of canons: and the commons arrayed themselves on the west side in great battalions. At this moment the Mayor of London, William Walworth, came up, and the King bade him go to the commons and make their chieftain come to him. And when he was summoned by the Mayor, by the name of Wat Tighler of Maidstone, he came to the King with great confidence, mounted on a little horse, that the commons might see him.... Presently Wat Tighler, in the presence of the King, sent for a flagon of water to rinse his mouth because of the great heat that he was in, and when it was brought he rinsed his mouth in a very rude and disgusting fashion before the King's face. And then he made them bring him a jug of beer and drank a great draught, and then, in the presence of the King, climbed on his horse again. At this time a certain valet from Kent, who was among the King's retinue, asked that the said Walter, the chief of the commons, might be pointed out to him. And when he saw him, he said aloud that he knew him for the greatest

[1] A whirlecote was a wheeled carriage. But it is probably not true that the king's mother accompanied him, since all other accounts of the incident say that she remained in the Tower.

[2] Again an error: Buckingham was still in Wales.

[3] A pennoncel is a small pennon.

[4] I.e., four pennies.

[5] "To shrive" is to hear confession and give absolution to a penitent.

thief and robber in all Kent. Watt heard these words and bade him come out to him, wagging his head at him in sign of malice; but the valet refused to approach, for fear that he had of the mob. But at last the lords made him go out to him, to see what he [Wat] would do before the King. And when Watt saw him he ordered one of his followers, who was riding behind him carrying his banner displayed, to dismount and behead the said valet. But the valet answered that he had done nothing worthy of death, for what he had said was true, and he would not deny it, but he could not lawfully make debate in the presence of his liege lord, without leave, except in his own defense: but that he could do without reproof; for if he was struck he would strike back again. And for these words Watt tried to strike him with his dagger and would have slain him in the King's presence; but because he strove so to do, the Mayor of London, William Walworth, reasoned with the said Watt for his violent behavior and spite, done in the King's presence, and arrested him. And because he arrested him, the said Watt stabbed the Mayor with his dagger in the stomach in great wrath. But, as it pleased God, the Mayor was wearing armor and took no harm, but like a hardy and vigorous man drew his cutlass and struck back at the said Watt and gave him a deep cut on the neck and then a great cut on the head. And during this scuffle one of the King's household drew his sword and ran Watt two or three times through the body, mortally wounding him. And he spurred his horse, crying to the commons to avenge him, and the horse carried him some four score paces, and then he fell to the ground half dead. And when the commons saw him fall, and knew not how for certain it was, they began to bend their bows and to shoot, wherefore the King himself spurred his horse, and rode out to them, commanding them that they should all come to him to Clerkenwell Fields....

[Tyler was beheaded by the Mayor.]

And when the commons saw that their chieftain, Watt Tyler, was dead in such a manner, they fell to the ground there among the wheat, like beaten men, imploring the King for mercy for their misdeeds. And the King benevolently granted them mercy, and most of them took to flight. But the King ordained two knights to conduct the rest of them, namely the Kentishmen, through London and over London Bridge without doing them harm, so that each of them could go to his own home. Then the King ordered the Mayor to put a helmet on his head because of what was to happen, and the Mayor asked for what reason he was to do so, and the King told him that he was much obliged to him, and that for this he was to receive the order of knighthood. And the Mayor answered that he was not worthy or able to have or to spend a knight's estate, for he was but a merchant and had to live by traffic: but finally the King made him put on the helmet and took a sword in both his hands and dubbed him knight with great good will. The same day he made three other knights from among the citizens of London on that same spot, and these are their names—John Philpott, and Nicholas Bramber, and [blank in the MS.]:[1] and the King gave Sir William Walworth £100 in land, and each of the others £40 in land, for them and their heirs. And after this the King took his way to London to the Wardrobe to ease him of his great toils....

Afterwards the King sent out his messengers into various regions to capture the malefactors and put them to death. And many were taken and hanged at London, and they set up many gallows around the City of London and in other cities and boroughs of the south country. At last, as it pleased God, the King, seeing that too many of his liege subjects would be undone and too much blood spilt, took pity in his heart and granted them all pardon, on condition that they should never rise again, under pain of losing life or members, and that each of them should get his charter of pardon and pay the King as fee for his seal twenty shillings, to make him rich. And so finished this wicked war.

[1] From a later passage, we know that the third person was John Standwyche.

CRISES AND CHANGES IN THE CHURCH AND RELIGION

8.14 The conciliarist movement: Jean Gerson, *Sermon at the Council of Constance* (1415). Original in Latin.

Jean Gerson (1363–1429), chancellor of the University of Paris and a public intellectual of wide-ranging interests and influence, was called upon to address the Council of Constance (1414–1418) at a moment of papal crisis—the Great Western Schism. Convoked by Antipope John XXIII (1410–1415), the council seemed ready to depose him along with the other two concurrent popes (Antipope Benedict XIII and Pope Gregory XII), prompting John to flee in disguise in March 1415. His leaving—and calling on everyone else to follow him—threw the remaining prelates into a crisis of conscience: should they continue with the council without a papal sponsor? Gerson, a conservative who came to the conciliarist position only slowly, thought they could and must carry on. His sermon, excerpted below, brought the vocabulary of scholasticism—his references to the "efficient," "formal," and "final" causes come from the language of logic—to bear on the legitimacy of a council. His speech was the turning point at Constance, leading the assembly to declare, about a month later in the decree known as *Haec sancta*, that "This holy synod ... holds power directly from Christ; and ... everyone of whatever estate or dignity he be, even papal, is obliged to obey it in those things which belong to the faith."[1] The council deposed the three popes and elected Martin V (1417–1431).

1. How did Gerson reconcile the language of the psalms (especially Ps. 89:7) with the logic of the scholastics?
2. How does the pope fit into the conciliarist notion of the Church?

[Source: *Unity, Heresy and Reform, 1378–1460: The Conciliar Response to the Great Schism*, ed. C.M.D. Crowder (Kingston, ON: Limestone Press, 1986), pp. 76–82.]

... "Walk while ye have the light, lest darkness come upon you."[2] That light, most distinguished fathers, I repeat once more, that light is God, who is glorified in the council of the saints. As the psalmist says: "God is greatly to be feared in the assembly of the saints, and to be had in reverence of all them that are round about him."[3] We hold to this infallible promise of his: "Where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them."[4] The psalmist saw this when he sang: "I will praise the Lord with my whole heart in the assembly of the upright, and in the congregation."[5] And we see in this assembly of the upright the unfolding of the mighty work of God, the freely given and scarcely hoped for way of resignation.

So when God has done all things to please himself and that he may be glorified, whose delight is to be with the sons of men, how may he obtain greater glory than in a council of the upright? For his praise is in the Church of the saints. You, fathers and lords, true believers and pleasing to God, are required to behave

[1] *Haec sancta*, in *Unity, Heresy and Reform, 1378–1460: The Conciliar Response to the Great Schism*, ed. C.M.D. Crowder (Kingston, ON: Limestone Press, 1986), p. 83.

[2] John 12:35.

[3] Ps. 89:7; Douay Ps. 88:8.

[4] Matt. 18:20.

[5] Ps. 111:1; Douay Ps. 110:1.

so as to constitute a council of saints and upright men. God has placed you in the world as so many true lights. "You are the light of the world," he says.[1] If ever it is your role to purge and illuminate others and to make them perfect, now is it especially so, when this holy convention is met, when the assembly is brought together in one place, when the Church is assembled; as it is written in Maccabees how they prayed and sought God's mercy:[2] that with his aid it might be decided what needed to be done. The spirit immediately rejoices, raising its eyes to take in what is happening, seeing all those who have assembled on your behalf, that is, for your benefit, O Christian people. My spirit observes and rejoices with you, and breaks out into this song of the Church. The citizens of the Apostles and the servants of God are here today, bearing a torch and bringing light to their fatherland to give peace to the peoples and to set the Lord's people free. How will they free them? By urging and crying out: "Walk while ye have the light, lest darkness come upon you;" the darkness of divisions and schism, the darkness of so many errors and heresies, in a word, the horrible darkness of so many vices that pour out of the Church's wretched body on a limitless tide. Walk, therefore, while you have light, that these aspects of the darkness do not come upon you....

The first problem is to keep the sequence of what is to be said clear and short. Because nothing is long if put together in orderly fashion. In the meantime, having broached the theme, let us turn our attention to what has been said: that God is he "who is greatly to be feared in the assembly of saints, and to be had in reverence of all them that are round about him."[3] Let us fix our mind on that text from the psalmist for fear we stray too far afield. If I am not mistaken, we see there the fourfold cause of this holy synod, that is its efficient, formal, final and material cause.[4]

If anyone wants to know the efficient cause, that is clear enough: God, greatly to be feared. It is by his impulse, mercy, inspiration and influence that the Church is now brought together, just as the psalmist, lifted up by the spirit, prophesied in song: It is God that "gathers together the outcasts of Israel";[5] and gathered his elect from the four winds "from the east and from the west, from the north and from the south."[6] Only let us pray that he who has begun the work perfects it. O sacred assembly "lift up your eyes round about you and see"; "all these are gathered together, they have come to you."[7] May it happen to you as was spoken by the prophet Isaiah: "Then thou shalt see, and flow together, and thine heart shall fear, and be enlarged."[8] And if it is enlarged, surely, will not God fill it with his spirit?

Next, the formal cause is this very bringing together or association of the council of holy men formed and modeled in the Holy Spirit, the form and exemplar of our acts, who is the bond and connection linking separate members of the saints, making them one. The Church recognizes this when it asks in its own behalf that, gathered in the Holy Spirit, it may not be disturbed by the assault of any adversary.

If anyone goes further to ask for the final cause of this holy assembly, that, surely, is that God, greatly to be feared, should be glorified, as it is said in the words of the Apostle: "Do all to the glory of God."[9] This is the straight and effective path to obtaining all that we wish, so long as we first seek his glory. He gave this to be understood, when he said: "Seek ye first the Kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things will be added unto you."[10]

Finally, all those who are round about God can be taken as the material cause, of itself unformed. For just as men by falling into schism, as a result, deform in some way or other God's creation, since, according to Plato and Aristotle, man is the end of all things, so it is necessary that all things are modified according to the requirements of their end. Thus, by the contrary argument, everything should be reformed by this council of holy men, the Lord beginning and shaping the work and bringing it to its final conclusion. For thus does the Church sing about

---

1 Matt. 5:14.

2 See 1 Macc. 3:44.

3 Ps. 89:7; Douay Ps. 88:8.

4 The idea of the four causes derives from Aristotle's logic.

5 Ps. 147:2; Douay Ps. 146:2.

6 Ps. 107:3; Douay Ps. 106:3.

7 Isa. 60:5 and 49:18.

8 Isa. 60:5.

9 1 Cor. 10:31.

10 Matt. 6:33.

Christ's precious blood: "The earth, sea, stars and heavens are washed in that flood."[1] ...

[Thus] God, greatly to be feared, is glorified in this council of holy men, because he offers it sufficient and infallible authority as its efficient cause. That is the first foundation. Again for the second conclusion: God, greatly to be feared, guides and attracts all Christians in common to the unity of one true head, as the formative and model cause. That is the second foundation and the first basis of reform. Further, for the third conclusion: God, greatly to be feared, wills to be glorified thus in this council of holy men that all things may turn particularly to the honor and preservation of his law and faith, without which no one can please him. That is the third foundation and the second basis of reform. Last of all, the fourth conclusion: God, greatly to be feared, is prepared to grant through this council of holy men to all creation, and especially to mankind, a measure of the beauty, glory, order and dignity of reform, with suitable provision against those who continue, not in upright behavior but on the treadmill of vice. And that is the fourth conclusion on the last foundation, and the third basis of reform....

Twelve considerations are to be derived from the light of this teaching in the Creed and the Apostle,[2] like so many rays of the brilliant truth.

1 The unity of the Church consists in one head, Christ. It is bound fast together by the loving bond of the Holy Spirit by means of divine gifts, by qualities and attitudes, so to speak, which render the constitution of the mystical body harmonious, lively, and seemly, so as to undertake effectively the exercise of the spiritual aspects of life.

2 The unity of the Church consists in one secondary head, who is called supreme pontiff, vicar of Christ. And it is more creative, more various, more plentiful, and greater than the assembly of the synagogue was and than a civil assembly under one ruler, king, or emperor, is.

3 By the life-giving seed instilled into it by the Holy Spirit the Church has the power and capacity to be able to preserve itself in the integrity and unity of its parts, both essential or formal and material and changing.

4 The Church has in Christ a bridegroom who will not fail it. Thus, as the law stands, neither can Christ give the bride, his Church, a bill of divorce, nor the other way round.

5 The Church is not so bound by the bond of marriage to the vicar of her indefectible bridegroom that they are unable to agree on a dissolution of the tie and give a bill of divorce.

6 The Church, or a general council representing it, is so regulated by the direction of the Holy Spirit under authority from Christ that everyone of whatsoever rank, even papal, is obliged to hearken to and obey it. If anyone does not, he is to be reckoned a gentile and a publican. That is clear from the unchanging law of God set out in Matt. 18 [at v. 17]. A general council can be described in this way: a general council is an assembly called under lawful authority at any place, drawn from every hierarchical rank of the whole catholic Church, none of the faithful who requires to be heard being excluded, for the wholesome discussion and ordering of those things which affect the proper regulation of the same Church in faith and morals.

7 When the Church or general council lays anything down concerning the regulation of the Church, the pope is not superior to those laws, even positive laws. So he is not able, at his choice, to dissolve such legislation of the Church contrary to the manner and sense in which it was laid down and agreed.

8 Although the Church and general council cannot take away the pope's plenitude of power, which has been granted by Christ supernaturally and of his mercy, it can, however, limit his use of it by known rules and laws for the edification of the Church. For it was on the Church's behalf that papal and other human authority was granted. And on this rests the sure foundation of the whole reform of the Church.

9 In many circumstances the Church or general council has been and is able to assemble without the explicit consent or mandate of a pope, even duly elected and alive. One instance among others is if a pope is accused

[1] See Luke 21:25.

[2] The part of the Apostles' Creed that Gerson quotes is, "I believe in the Holy Spirit, the giver of life." The apostle that he quotes is St. Paul in Eph. 4, where he speaks of the unity of the Church.

and is summoned to hear, as a party to the dispute, the decision of the Church under the law of the Gospel, to which law he is subject, and he contumaciously[1] refuses to bring the Church together. Another case is where serious matters concerning the regulation of the Church fall to be decided by a general council and the pope contumaciously refuses to summon it. Another, if it has been laid down by a general council that it should be brought together from time to time. The other kind of situation is where there is reasonable doubt about the disputes of several claimants to the papacy.

10 If the Church or general council agrees on any way or lays down that one way is to be accepted by the pope to end schism, he is obliged to accept it. Thus he is obliged to resign, if that is the prevailing opinion, and when he goes further and offers resignation and anticipates the demand, more especially is he to be commended.

11 The Church or general council ought to be particularly dedicated to the prosecution of perfect unity, the eradication of errors, and the correction of the erring, without acceptance of persons.[2] Likewise to this: that the Church's hierarchical order of prelates and curates should be reformed from its seriously disturbed state to a likeness to God's heavenly hierarchy and in conformity to rules instituted in early times.

12 The Church has no more effective means to its own general reformation than to establish a continuous sequence of general councils, not forgetting the holding of provincial councils.

8.15 The Hussite program: *The Four Articles of Prague* (1420). Original in Czech.

Inspired by the English priest and scholar John Wyclif to call for a reformed Church, the Bohemian Jan Hus (1369/1371–1415) was burned at the stake by the Council of Constance. But in Bohemia his followers took up his cause, calling for a moral and less materialistic clergy and asking that even lay people be allowed full participation in both forms of the Eucharist—the bread *and* the wine. The Hussites were declared heretics, and the pope called a crusade against them. The first battles led the Hussites to articulate their views, which they summed up in four articles, frequently repeated in Hussite writings thereafter.

1. How did the Hussites answer the charge of being heretical?
2. What is radical about the four articles?

[Source: *The Crusade against Heretics in Bohemia, 1418–1437: Sources and Documents of the Hussite Crusades*, trans. and ed. Thomas A. Fudge (Aldershot: Ashgate, 2002), pp. 83–84.]

[First] ... throughout the Kingdom of Bohemia the word of God shall be freely preached and proclaimed by Christian priests.... [Second] the holy sacrament of the body and blood of the Lord, in both kinds of bread and wine, shall be freely given to all true Christians who are not prohibited on account of some deadly sin just as our Savior did in the beginning and so commanded it.... [Third] numerous priests and monks, supported by temporal law possess worldly goods in opposition to the commandments of Christ. This is to the detriment of their office and is also harmful to the lords of the secular estates. These priests shall be deprived of such power, which is unlawful, and in keeping with the Scriptures shall live lives of good repute in accordance with the pattern of Christ and the apos-

[1] I.e., with obstinate disobedience.

[2] "Acceptance of persons" means "partiality."

tles.... [Fourth] all serious sins, particularly those committed publicly, along with other offences against the Law of God shall be prohibited and punished regardless of their estate,[1] by those who possess the power to do so. [This is to be done] so that the evil and slanderous rumors about this country might be removed for the common good of the people and the Kingdom of Bohemia....

If anyone wishes to accuse us verbally or in writing with anything evil, heretical, shameful or unclean, we would ask that such an individual not be believed. For such a one is speaking slander out of hatred and ill-will and is both malicious and a liar. We confess boldly before the Lord God and the entire world that with the help of God we have no other motive than to serve the Lord Jesus Christ with all of our hearts, power, strength and endurance and to be dedicated to the fulfillment of God's law and commandments which is appropriate for all good Christians. Any wicked enemy or anyone else who attempts to compel us away from this good we will withstand in keeping with the law and truth of God. On this position we shall defend the truth as well as ourselves against such violence through the use of secular weapons. Should something terrible happen through the zeal of one of our people, we assert that this is not our intention but we shall stand against all serious sins with God's help. And if someone comes to harm because of us it is because it was absolutely necessary or because that person is an enemy of God as well as of us. It is necessary to protect both ourselves and the law of God from such violence and cruelty. Beyond this, we declare with all solemnity that if it appears that we are incorrect in anything we are prepared to make amends and our hearts are open in all things to be instructed by enlightenment from the Holy Scriptures. Dated in the year of the Lord 1421.[2]

THE RENAISSANCE

8.16 Re-evaluating antiquity: Cincius Romanus, *Letter to His Most Learned Teacher Franciscus de Fiana* (1416). Original in Latin.

Serving Antipope John XXIII at the Council of Constance (1414–1418), Cincius Romanus (or de Rusticis) (d.1445) and his humanist friends Poggius Bracciolini and Bartholomeus Montepolitianus took advantage of the turmoil at the council to hunt for old manuscripts and reminisce about the glories of ancient Rome. Although employed by the Roman curia, Cincius and his friends preferred ancient pagan art over the churches and art of Christian Rome. And although they no doubt heard Gerson (p. 485 above) give his speech in modern Latin, they considered that language barbaric compared to the Latin of Cicero and other ancient Romans. Their new appreciation of antiquity—its monuments and its literature—were hallmarks of the Italian Renaissance mentality.

1. Why does Cincius think that his letter will make his teacher happy?
2. Why did Cincius consider the monks and abbot of St. Gall to be "damned dregs of humanity"?

[Source: *Two Renaissance Book Hunters: The Letters of Poggius Bracciolini to Nicolaus de Niccolis*, trans. and ed. Phyllis Walter Goodhart Gordan (New York: Columbia University Press, 1974), pp. 187–90 (notes added).]

[1] I.e., regardless of social status.

[2] The date is 1420 by a modern calendar.

Let us break our silence occasionally, for it seems outrageous and contrary to the ties of friendship and against nature that those who are separated by a considerable distance, though they are bound by the strongest affection, should not take to writing letters back and forth, for simply thinking of an absent friend will not suffice when one is given the opportunity of writing to him. Since the chief pleasure in friendship derives from familiarity, people who receive letters, as symbols of their friends, find no small satisfaction in them. Therefore I urge you vigorously to be kind enough while you have the physical ability (for you have the mental ability all the time) to write me something. I promise to give my letters to be delivered to you to all the couriers leaving Constance for Rome. Take this letter as my assurance in the matter, like a hostage. But let us come to the point, which ought to make you very happy.

In Germany there are many monasteries with libraries full of Latin books. This aroused the hope in me that some of the works of Cicero, Varro, Livy, and other great men of learning, which seem to have completely vanished, might come to light, if a careful search were instituted.[1] A few days ago, Poggius and Bartholomeus Montepolitianus and I, attracted by the fame of the library, went by agreement to the town of St. Gall. As soon as we went into the library, we found *Jason's Argonauticon*, written by C. Valerius Flaccus in verse that is both splendid and dignified and not far removed from poetic majesty.[2] Then we found some discussions in prose of a number of Cicero's orations which make clearly comprehensible many legal practices and many modern equivalents of ancient institutions. We also found one book, a small volume but remarkable in the greatness of its eloquence and wisdom: Lactantius, *On Men of Both Sorts*, which plainly contradicts the statements of those who claim that the state of mankind is lower than that of beasts and more hopeless.[3] Among other books we found Vitruvius, *On Architecture* and Priscian the grammarian's comments on some of the poems of Virgil.[4] There was also in that library one book made of the bark of trees; some barks in the Latin language are called "libri," and from that, according to Jerome, books got their name.[5] Although this book was filled to overflowing with writings which were not exactly literature, still, because of its pure and holy antiquity I greeted it with the utmost devotion. In fact we have copies of all these books. But when we carefully inspected the nearby tower of the church of St. Gall in which countless books were kept like captives and the library neglected and infested with dust, worms, soot, and all the things associated with the destruction of books, we all burst into tears, thinking that this was the way in which the Latin language had lost its greatest glory and distinction. Truly, if this library could speak for itself, it would cry loudly: "You men who love the Latin tongue, let me not be utterly destroyed by this woeful neglect. Snatch me from this prison in whose gloom even the bright light of the books within cannot be seen." There were in that monastery an abbot and monks totally devoid of any knowledge of literature. What barbarous hostility to the Latin tongue! What damned dregs of humanity!

But why do I hate a tribe of barbarians for this kind of indifference to literature when the Romans, the parents of the Latin tongue, have inflicted a greater wound and heaped greater abuse on our native language, the prince over all the others? I call to mind innumerable libraries of Latin and Greek books in ruins in Rome which were carefully built by our ancestors, according to an inscription in Greek letters which was removed from the Porta Capena through one man's concern.[6] These libraries were destroyed partly through ignorance, partly through neglect, and partly so that the divine face of Veronica might be painted.[7] Anyway, I think that the perpetrators of this loathsome crime and those who did not stop them ought to suffer the severest punishment. Indeed if the laws say that he who has killed a man deserves capital punishment, what penalty and what suffering shall we require for those who deprive the public of culture, of the liberal arts, and actually of all nourishment of the human

[1] Cicero (106–43 BCE), Varro (116–27 BCE), and Livy (*c.*59 BCE–17 CE) were all classical Roman writers.

[2] C. Valerius Flaccus (*fl.* 1st cent. CE) was another classical Roman writer.

[3] Lactantius (*c.*250–*c.*320 CE) was yet another Latin writer, but unlike the others mentioned here, he was a Christian.

[4] Vitruvius (*fl.* 1st cent. CE) was a Roman architect. Priscian (*fl. c.*500 CE) wrote grammar books much in use during the Middle Ages. Virgil (70–19 BCE) was a great classical Latin poet.

[5] Jerome (*c.*347–419/420) was a Latin Church Father.

[6] The Porta Capena was one of the gates of ancient Rome.

[7] The "divine face of Veronica" is the image of Christ's face said to have been left on the cloth used to wipe his face (by Saint Veronica) as he carried his cross to Calvary.

mind, without which men can hardly live at all or live like beasts? Two things used to stand out in Rome: the libraries and the monumental buildings which (and I shall omit the libraries) easily surpassed, in size and beauty, the pyramids of Egypt, the Basilica of Cyrus, and other wonders of the world which Herodotus mentions.[1] Every day you see citizens (if indeed a man should be called a citizen who is so degraded by abominable deeds) demolishing the Amphitheater or the Hippodrome or the Colosseum or statues or walls made with marvelous skill and marvelous stone and showing that old and almost divine power and dignity.[2] Truly I would prefer and would pay more for a small marble figure by Phidias or Praxiteles than for a living and breathing image of the man who turns the statues of those glorious men into dust or gravel.[3] But if anyone asks these men why they are led to destroy marble statues, they answer that they abominate the images of false gods. Oh voice of savages, who flee from one error to another! For it is not contrary to our religion if we contemplate a statue of Venus or of Hercules made with the greatest of skill and admire the almost divine art of the ancient sculptors.[4] But mistakes of this kind are to be blamed not only on those we have just mentioned but on the former governors of the city and on the popes, who have continually consented to this destructive behavior which lowers the dignity of mankind.

It happens too that many books of Holy Scripture and many sacred structures have been lost through the carelessness of those who represented Christ on earth. We consider them the more despicable because the cure for all evil is expected from them. But I believe they follow the dictum of some wretch who, when he doubted that he could acquire for himself the name of virtue, burned the temple of Diana at Ephesus.[5] So these priests of our religion, since they could not appreciate the excellence and beauty of the City and could accomplish nothing, strove for this kind of ruin and destruction. Let us pursue such inhuman, such savage stupidity with curses. And you, my teacher, gifted as you are in both poetry and prose, write something against these destroyers of our illustrious monuments. If you do so, you will assure yourself henceforth immortal glory and them perpetual shame. Farewell.

8.17 A new theory of art: Leon Battista Alberti, *On Painting* (1435–1436). Original in Latin.

Trained in law and literature, Leon Battista Alberti (1404–1472) wrote dialogues, treatises, and poetry in both Latin and the vernacular. He was keenly interested in art and around 1435 composed *On Painting*. Dedicated to the most eminent architect of his day, Filippo Brunelleschi (1377–1446), the treatise celebrated Brunelleschi's nearly completed dome for the cathedral at Florence, an incredible engineering feat. (It was the largest dome ever built, and it used several new construction techniques.)[6] Alberti eventually devoted himself to architectural projects of his own, designing buildings at Rome, Rimini, Mantua, and Florence.

[1] Herodotus (5th cent. BCE) was a traveler and historian whose history of the Persian wars mentions (among many other things) the Egyptian and Persian monuments.

[2] The Amphitheater, Hippodrome, and Colosseum were huge stadiums built by the ancient Romans. Some of the ruins remain today.

[3] Phidias (*fl. c.*490–430 BCE) and Praxiteles (*fl.* 370–330 BCE) were famous ancient Athenian sculptors.

[4] Venus was a Roman goddess, Hercules a Greek and Roman god.

[5] Plutarch (*c.*46–after 119 CE), an ancient Greek biographer avidly read by humanists such as Cincius, reported that Eratostratus burned down the much-admired temple of Diana at Ephesus in 356 BCE in order to ensure eternal fame for himself.

[6] For an image of the dome, see Plate 8.7 in Barbara H. Rosenwein, *A Short History of the Middle Ages*, 5th ed. (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 2018), p. 330.

1. How did Alberti's discussion of painting echo Cincius's enthusiasm for ancient writings?
2. How important were fame and praise to the artist (according to Alberti) and how could they be obtained?

[Source: Rocco Sinisgalli, ed. and trans., *Leon Battista Alberti: On Painting. A New Translation and Critical Edition* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2011), pp. 17–19, 74–76 (notes modified).]

Prologue Addressed to Filippo Brunelleschi

I used to wonder and to regret at the same time that so many excellent and divine arts and sciences, which we see, through their works and copious historical accounts, during those very virtuous days of distant past, are thus now missing and almost entirely lost. Painters, sculptors, architects, musicians, geometrician, rhetoricians, augurs, and similar most noble and marvelous intellects today are found very rarely and [are] little to be praised. Hence I came to believe what many keep saying, that already Nature, mistress of things, by now aged and weary, no longer produced either giants or great minds like those which she produced very big and marvelous in her almost youthful and more glorious times. But as from the long exile, in which we the Alberti have grown old, I was returned to this fatherland of ours, very ornate above all others,[1] I recognized in many, but first in you, Filippo, and in that our great friend Donato the sculptor, and in those others, who are so well praised for their intellect, Nencio, Luca, and Masaccio,[2] that they are not to be [thought] inferior to any who might have been in antiquity, however famous they could have possibly been in these arts. Thus I perceived that the possibility of acquiring distinction in whatever [the] endeavor lies in our industry and diligence no less than in the good disposition of Nature and of the times. I confess to you that for the ancients, of course, it was less difficult to reach a degree of excellence in those arts most difficult for us to master, because they had many models to learn from and to imitate. But, on the other hand, our fame should be greater if we, without teachers and [with] no example whatsoever, discover arts and sciences hitherto unheard of or never seen, Whoever would be stubborn or envious enough to deny praise to the architect Pippo, seeing such an enormous structure towering over the skies, and wide enough to cast its shadow all over the Tuscan people, made as it is without any beam or abundance of wooden supports, surely hard to believe as an artifice that it was done at this time when nothing of the kind was ever to have been seen in antiquity.[3] But praise of your virtues as well as of those of our Donato, together with those of others who are dear to me for their good behaviors, will be kept for another occasion. You just hold steady in your daily efforts to find things that bring perpetual fame and renown to your brilliant mind, and if occasionally you should find a moment of leisure, it would please me to have you look at this little work of mine "On Painting," which I composed, in your name, in the Tuscan language.[4] You will see three books: the first, entirely on mathematics, causes this pleasant and most noble art to spring from its roots in Nature. The second book places this art in the hands of the painter, articulated as it is in its parts and with a full explanation of it. The third shows how the painter should be and how he should acquire proper knowledge to master every aspect of the art of painting. Please, then, read my work with diligence, and if you think that anything in it has to be amended, do correct me. No writer was ever so learned as not to profit from learned friends. And I would like to be corrected by you first, so as not to be censured by detractors.

[1] The Alberti family, originally from Florence, was exiled during the *ciompi* rebellion (1378). The exile ended in 1428, and Alberti returned "to this fatherland of ours" in 1432.

[2] Filippo was Filippo Brunelleschi (d.1446); Donato was Donatello (d.1446); Nencio was Lorenzo Ghiberti (d.1455); Luca was Luca Della Robbia (d.1482); Masaccio was the nickname of Tommaso di Ser Giovanni di Simone (d.1428). All were painters, sculptors, and/or architects in and around Florence.

[3] Pippo was a diminutive for Filippo (Brunelleschi). Here Alberti is praising the cathedral dome of Florence.

[4] The Tuscan language, i.e. the vernacular, an ancestor of modern Italian. The most recent scholarship argues that Alberti first wrote *On Painting* in Tuscan and then translated it, somewhat changed, into Latin.

Book Three
The Painter

51. But to educate the painter to perfection, in order that he can obtain all the praises of which we have spoken, at the moment when several thoughts still remain that I think ought not to be completely neglected in these commentaries, let us report them in the briefest way possible.

52. It is the task of the painter to delimit and depict with lines and colors on a surface any assigned bodies to such a point that—given a certain distance and a certain position of the centric ray—painted things that you see appear, each [at the same time], prominent and very much like the assigned bodies.[1] The purpose of the painter is to obtain from a work praise, favor, and approval more than riches, a [feature] that he will certainly gain provided his painting will capture the eyes and hearts of the observers and, above all, will make [hearts] palpitate. We have said on what conditions these things can take place when we first spoke about composition and reception of light. But I wish that the painter, in order that he be able to obtain all these [conditions] in the best way, is firstly a man both honest and educated in the praiseworthy arts.[2] In fact, everyone knows how honesty—more so than admiration of every activity or art—is valid to gain the benevolence of the people. There are no doubts, then, that the benevolence of many contributes very much to procuring praise and, above all, riches [by] the artist, if it is true that the rich are sometimes moved by this benevolence more than by the skill of art, or rather offer earnings to him who firstly is modest and virtuous after they have dismissed another who may be, if you please, more skilled but perhaps dissolute. Things being so, the artist will have to be moderate in his morals, of great humanity and availability, in order to also obtain benevolence—[a] firm defense against poverty—and benefits, the best help to [the] perfection of art.

53. Furthermore, I wish that the painter be expert, as far as possible, in all liberal arts, but above all I desire in him the knowledge of geometry. I certainly agree with Pamphilus, a very ancient and very famous painter from whom the young nobles learned painting for the first time.[3] His opinion, in fact, was that no one by ignoring geometry would have been a good painter. Certainly, our rudiments, from which one extracts a whole, complete, and precise technique of painting, are easily assimilable by a geometrician. I also believe that for those who ignore this science neither rudiments nor some procedures of painting can be sufficiently comprehensible. I, therefore, claim that geometry absolutely must not be neglected by painters. It will not be useless if they will find pleasure very near to poets and orators; in fact, these certainly have many qualities in common with the painter. Indeed, those literary men, not little equipped with the knowledge of many things, will help to settle in the best way the composition of a *historia*,[4] a wholly praiseworthy undertaking that is first based on creativity. Or rather, this [undertaking] surely has such a force that even the creativity alone attracts without the painting. While one reads, one praises that famous description of Calumny that Lucian says [has been] depicted by Apelles.[5] Without doubt, I think it is not at all alien to the purpose to tell it, in order that painters remember that they must dedicate themselves to realize creations of this kind. There was in fact a man whose ears protruded in an overwhelming way; standing close to him there were two women: Ignorance and Superstition; somewhere else [there was] Calumny herself, who was approaching with the appearance of an attractive woman, but this [woman] in [her] face itself seemed callous beyond measure by cunning intention, while she held with the left hand a lighted torch and with the other hand dragged by the hair an adolescent in the act of turning [his] hands toward the sky. And her guide is a certain man, filled with pallor, disfigured, with frowning look, whom you would rightly compare to those whom a long fatigue will have exhausted in

---

[1] "The centric ray": Alberti subscribed to the theory that the eye emitted rays through which images were transmitted to the senses. The rays left the eye in a spreading bundle of straight lines. Some rays touched the extremities of objects. Others covered the whole surface. The centric ray went from the center of the eye right to the geometric center of the object. Alberti wanted the artist to reproduce with utter precision the way objects were perceived by the eye. But the ultimate point was to move the viewer to awe and praise.

[2] Echoing 1st cent. CE Latin rhetorician Quintilian's *Institutio oratoria* 12.1.1.

[3] Echoing 1st cent. CE Latin naturalist Pliny the Elder's *Naturalis historia* 35.76–77.

[4] A *historia* was a story told through visual means.

[5] A reference to 2nd cent. CE Greek rhetorician Lucian, *De Calumnia*, 5.

battle. They justly said that he was Envy. There are also two other female companions of Calumny in the act of arranging the ornaments of [their] mistress: Deceit and Fraud. Behind them, there is Penitence, covered in dark and very dirty robes in the act of lacerating herself. Very near, Truth follows, chaste and modest.[1] If this *historia* fascinates even the hearts just by narrating it, how mush beauty and seduction do you think has originated from the painting itself by the excellent painter?

8.18 Defending women: Christine de Pisan, *The Book of the City of Ladies* (1404–1407). Original in French.

Born in Italy and educated in France, Christine de Pisan (*c.*1364–*c.*1429/1430) married at the age of fifteen and was left a widow with two young children at age twenty-five. Forced to support her family on her own, she turned to copying manuscripts and writing poetry and prose, both of which were commissioned by royal and other wealthy patrons. In *The Book of the City of Ladies* she defended the virtue, intelligence, and capabilities of women against the many men who disparaged the female sex. The book presents a dream or vision in which the author—with the help of three ladies (Reason, Rectitude, and Justice, all "daughters of God")—populates a new city with the best women from the past and present. Those worthy of the city are named in the course of question-and-answer dialogues between Christine and the three ladies. In the passage below, Christine asks Lady Reason about women's ability to govern. During their discussion, Queen Fredegund, wife of King Chilperic and the nemesis of Gregory of Tours (see above, p. 38), comes up.

1. In what ways does Christine challenge the status quo?
2. How do her arguments help justify her own position as an independent bread-winner?

[Source: Christine de Pizan, *The Book of the City of Ladies*, trans. Earl Jeffrey Richards, rev. ed. (New York: Persea Books, 1992), pp. 30–34.]

CHRISTINE ASKS REASON WHY WOMEN ARE NOT IN THE SEATS OF LEGAL COUNSEL; AND REASON'S RESPONSE.

"Most high and honored lady, your fair words [about a different matter] amply satisfy my thinking. But tell me still, if you please, why women do not plead law cases in the courts of justice, are unfamiliar with legal disputes, and do not hand down judgments? For these men say that it is because of some woman (who I don't know) who governed unwisely from the seat of justice."

"My daughter, everything told about this woman is frivolous and contrived out of deception. But whoever would ask the causes and reasons of all things would have to answer for too much in this question, even though Aristotle in the *Problemata* takes account of many things and even though his *Categoriae* contains the essences of so many natural actions.[2] Now, as to this particular question, dear friend, one could just as well ask why God did not ordain that men fulfill the offices of women, and women the offices of men. So I must answer this question by saying that just as a wise and well ordered lord organizes his domain so that one servant accomplishes one task and another servant another task, and that what the one does the other does not do, God has similarly

[1] Later, *c.*1494, Florentine painter Botticelli painted Calumny in accordance with Lucian's (and Alberti's) description.

[2] The point is that even Aristotle's books on *Problems* and *Categories* cannot explain everything.

ordained man and woman to serve Him in different offices and also to aid, comfort, and accompany one another, each in their ordained task, and to each sex has given a fitting and appropriate nature and inclination to fulfill their offices.

Inasmuch as the human species often errs in what it is supposed to do, God has given men strong and hardy bodies for coming and going as well as for speaking boldly. And for this reason, men with this nature learn the laws—and must do so—in order to keep the world under the rule of justice and, in case anyone does not wish to obey the statutes which have been established by reason of law, are required to make them obey with physical constraint and force of arms, a task which women could never accomplish. Nevertheless, though God has given women great understanding—there are many such women—because of the integrity to which women are inclined, it would not be at all appropriate for them to go and appear so brazenly in the courts like men, for there are enough men who do so. What would be accomplished by sending three men to lift a burden which two can carry easily?

But if anyone maintained that women do not possess enough understanding to learn the laws, the opposite is obvious from the proof afforded by experience, which is manifest and has been manifested in many women—just as I will soon tell—who have been very great philosophers and have mastered fields far more complicated, subtle, and lofty than written laws and man-made institutions. Moreover, in case anyone says that women do not have a natural sense for politics and government, I will give you examples of several great women rulers who have lived in past times. And so that you will better know my truth, I will remind you of some women of your own time who remained widows and whose skill governing—both past and present—in all their affairs following the deaths of their husbands provides obvious demonstration that a woman with a mind is fit for all tasks."

HERE SHE TELLS OF NICAULA, EMPRESS OF ETHIOPIA, AND AFTERWARDS ABOUT SEVERAL QUEENS AND PRINCESSES OF FRANCE.

"Please tell me where there was ever a king endowed with greater skill in politics, government, and sovereign justice, and even with such lofty and magnificent style as one can read about the most noble Empress Nicaula.[1] For though there had been many kings of great fame called pharaohs in the vast, wide, and varied lands which she governed, and from whom she was descended, during her rule this lady was the first to begin to live according to laws and coordinated policies, and she destroyed and abolished the crude customs found in the territories over which she was lord and reformed the rude manners of the savage Ethiopians. This lady accomplished even more praiseworthy deeds than reforming the rough manners of others, according to the authors who speak of her. She remained the heiress of these pharaohs, and not just of a small land but of the kingdom of Arabia, Ethiopia, Egypt, and the island of Meroë (which is very long and wide and filled with all kinds of goods and is near to the Nile), which she governed with wonderful prudence. What more should I tell you about this lady? She was so wise and so capable a ruler that even the Holy Scriptures speak of her great virtue. She herself instituted laws of far-reaching justice for governing her people. She enjoyed great nobility and vast wealth—almost as much as all the men who have ever lived. She was profoundly learned in the Scriptures and all fields of knowledge, and she had so lofty a heart that she did not deign to marry, nor did she desire that any man be at her side."

HERE REASON SPEAKS OF A QUEEN OF FRANCE, NAMED FREDEGUND.

"I could tell you a great deal about ladies who governed wisely in ancient times, just as what I will presently tell you will deal with this question. In France there was once a queen, Fredegund, who was the wife of King Chilperic. Although she was cruel, contrary to the natural disposition of women, nevertheless, following her husband's death, with great skill this lady governed the kingdom of France which found itself at this time in very great unrest and danger, and she was left with nothing else besides Chilperic's heir, a small son named Clothar. There was great division among the barons regarding the government, and already a great civil war had broken out in the kingdom. Having assembled the barons in council, she addressed them, all the while holding her child in her arms: 'My lords, here is your king. Do not forget the loyalty which has always been present among the French, and do not scorn him because he is a child, for with God's help he will grow up, and when he comes of age he will recognize his good friends and reward them according to their deserts, unless you desire to disinherit him wrongfully and sinfully. As for me, I assure you that I will reward those who act well and loyally with such generosity that no other

[1] The "Queen of Sheba" of the Bible.

reward could be better.' Thus did this queen satisfy the barons, and through her wise government, she delivered her son from the hands of his enemies. She herself nourished him until he was grown, and he was invested by her with the crown and honor of the kingdom, which never would have happened if she had not been so prudent.

"Similarly, the same can be said of the most wise and in every instance virtuous and noble Queen Blanche [of Castile], mother of Saint Louis [King Louis IX] who governed the kingdom of France while her son was a minor so nobly and so prudently that it was never better ruled by any man. Even when he was grown, she was still the head of his council because of her experience of wise government, nor was anything done without her, and she even followed her son to war."

FINDING A NEW WORLD

8.19 Mapping the New World: Juan de la Cosa, *World Chart* (1500).

As soon as Columbus discovered the Americas in 1492, European map makers scrambled to make the new information about the world available in maps. For a long time, world maps had been largely abstract and symbolic. They often divided the world into three parts, showing Asia (the east) at the top (sometimes crowned by the Garden of Eden) with the western (bottom) half occupied on the north by Europe and the south by Africa. This conception of the world was shattered by Columbus's voyage. But even before that, starting *c.*1300, cartographers had begun to make "portolan maps" that were meant to be practical guides to real geography. These maps traced the coastline of the Mediterranean, and by the time of Spaniard Juan de la Cosa (d.*c.*1509), they were also depicting the coast of West Africa down to the Cape of Good Hope. De la Cosa, who sailed with Columbus three times and with other explorers as well, drew on his own expertise as a pilot and navigator as well as on these earlier cartographic precedents to draw his *World Chart*.

The map is actually two maps drawn in different scales and with different goals in mind. The scale of the Americas is larger than that of the eastern half of the map. Europe and Asia are dominated by symbols: in Asia, the three Magi head toward Syria, while in Europe images of buildings and royalty predominate. The outline of the coasts of the Mediterranean Sea and the east coast of the Atlantic Ocean are taken from portolan maps and are quite accurate. Accuracy is equally the case for the shape of Cuba, which de la Cosa depicted as an island even though he was among the signers of a document that claimed that Cuba was attached to Asia—the "Indies" to which Columbus sought a western route. De la Cosa included a tribute to Columbus and the missionary ideal that in part inspired him: between North and South America is a picture of Columbus' namesake, St. Christopher, carrying the baby Jesus across deep water.

The map divides the world horizontally by two red lines—the Equator to the south and the Tropic of Cancer above it to the north—and vertically by the green Meridian line. The Meridian here corresponds to the agreement reached between Spain and Portugal in the Treaty of Tordesillas (1494); it gave Spain the rights to newly discovered lands to the west of the line while Portugal was granted dominion over the lands to the east.

See Plate 5, "Reading through Looking," pp. VIII–IX, for a color reproduction of Juan de la Cosa, *World Chart*.

1. In what ways does de la Cosa's map combine science, art, and religion?
2. What explains the detail and accuracy of the Mediterranean coastline?

[Image courtesy of Album/Art Resource, NY]

8.20 Taking Mexico: Hernán Cortés, *The Second Letter* (1520). Original in Spanish.

Hernán Cortés (1485–1547) confronted a "new world," but he interpreted it with the mental categories of the old. Determined to secure the rulers of Mexico as "vassals" of Emperor Charles V (r.1519–1558), he struck out on his own, without the authorization of his commanding officer, to stage his personal version of the *reconquista* of the new land. Setting up a community—complete with officials whose titles echoed those known in Spanish cities—Cortés sent representatives of his "municipality" to Spain to plead his side of the story to the emperor. His *Second Letter*, following on this visit, depicts him as a loyal upholder of the realm, working to secure vassals for His Majesty and to conquer and win souls on God's behalf.

1. How does Cortés's letter reflect the crusading tradition?
2. What do the natives seem to think of Cortés and his entourage, and how do they behave toward him?

[Source: Hernán Cortés, *Letters from Mexico*, trans. and ed. Anthony Pagden (New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 2001), pp. 54–60.]

Most Powerful Lord, I traveled for three days through the country and the kingdom of Cempoal, where I was very well received and accommodated by all the natives. On the fourth day I entered a province which is called Sienchimalen,[1] in which there is a town which is very strong and built in a defensible position on the side of a very steep mountain. There is only one entrance, up steep steps which can only be climbed on foot and that with considerable difficulty. In the plain there are many villages and hamlets of five or three or two hundred inhabitants, so that there are in all as many as five or six thousand warriors; and this land is in the kingdom of Mutezuma [Montezuma]. Here they received me very well and generously provided the provisions I needed for the journey. They told me that they knew I was going to visit their lord Mutezuma, and that I should be confident he was my friend and had sent word that they were to give me every facility, for they served him by so doing. I responded to their great kindness by saying that Your Majesty had received news of him and had sent me to see him, and that I was going for no other purpose. Then I went over a pass which is at the frontier of this province, and we called it Nombre de Dios, because it was the first we had crossed in these lands: it is so rough and steep that there is none in Spain so difficult. But I did cross it, safely and without adverse incident. On the slopes below the pass there are other villages and a fortress called Ceyxnacan,[2] which also belongs to Mutezuma; here we were no less well received than at Sienchimalen; also, they told us, because Mutezuma wished it. And I replied as before.

From there I continued for three days through desert country which is uninhabitable because of its infertility and lack of water and because of the extreme cold. God knows how much my people suffered from thirst and hunger, and especially from a hail- and rainstorm that hit us there, which I thought would cause the deaths of many people from cold; and indeed several Indians from the island of Fernandina who had not enough to wear did die from it. After three days we crossed another pass not so steep as the first. At the top of it there was a small tower, almost like a wayside shrine, in which they kept a number of idols, and around the tower were more than a thousand cartloads of firewood, all very well stacked; for this reason we called it the Firewood Pass.[3] On the descent from this pass, between some very steep mountains, there is a valley thickly inhabited with people who seemed to be very poor. After going two leagues through this region without learning anything about it, I reached a flatter place where the chief of that valley appeared to live; for he had the largest and the best-constructed buildings we had seen in that land so far. They were all of dressed stone and very well built and very new, and they had very large and beautiful halls in them and many rooms, also well built: this valley and town are called Caltanm."[4] By the chief and the people I was very well received and lodged.

After I had spoken to him on behalf of Your Majesty and of the reason for my coming to these parts, I asked him if he was a vassal of Mutezuma or owed some other allegiance. And he showed surprise at my question, and asked who was not a vassal of Mutezuma, meaning that here he is king of the whole world. I replied by telling him of the great power of Your Majesty and of the many other princes, greater than Mutezuma, who were Your Highness's vassals and considered it no small favor to be so; Mutezuma also would become one; as would all the natives of these lands. I therefore asked him to become one, for if he did it would be greatly to his honor and advantage, but if, on the other hand, he refused to obey he would be punished. And to acknowledge that he had been received into Your Royal service, I begged him to give me some gold to send to Your Majesty. He replied that he had gold but would give me none unless Mutezuma commanded it, but that once this had been done he would surrender to me the gold and his own person and all that he had. So as not to offend him and for fear that some calamity might befall my endeavor and my journey, I dissembled as best I could and told him that very soon I would have Mutezuma order him to give the gold and all that he owned.

Here two other chieftains who held lands in that valley came to see me: one lived four leagues down the valley and the other two leagues up the valley, and they gave me several gold necklaces of little weight and value and seven or eight female slaves. After staying there four or five days, I left them all very pleased and went up the valley to the town of the other chief I spoke of, which is called Ystacmastitán.[5] His territory consists of some three or four leagues' extent of built-up land, lying in

[1] Xicochimalco.

[2] Ixhuacan.

[3] Puerto de la Leña.

[4] Most likely the modern Zautla.

[5] Ixtacamaxtitlan (Puebla).

the valley floor beside a small river which runs through it. On a very high hill is this chief's house, with a better fortress than any to be found in the middle of Spain, and fortified with better walls and barbicans and earthworks. On top of this hill live some five or six thousand inhabitants with very good houses and somewhat richer than those living in the valley. Here likewise I was very well received, and this chief said that he was also a vassal of Mutezuma. I remained in this town three days, to allow my people to recover from the hardships they had suffered in the desert as well as to await the return of four native messengers from Cempoal who had come with me and whom I had sent from Catalmy to a very large province called Tascalteca,[1] which they told me was very close by, and so it seemed to be. They had also told me that the natives of this province were their friends and very hated enemies of Mutezuma, and they wished to be my allies for they were many and very strong. They shared a large frontier with Mutezuma and fought continual wars with him and would help me if Mutezuma wished to oppose me. But the whole time I was in that valley, which was eight days in all, the messengers did not return; so I asked those chieftains of Cempoal who traveled in my company why the messengers had not returned. They replied that the land must be far away and they could not return so quickly. When I saw how long they were in coming, and that the chieftains of Cempoal so assured me of the friendship and good faith of those of that province, I set out thither.

On leaving this valley I found a great barrier built of dry stone and as much as nine feet high, which ran right across the valley from one mountain range to the other. It was some twenty paces wide and all along the top was a battlement a foot and a half thick to provide an advantageous position for battle; it had only one entrance, some ten paces wide. At this entrance one wall doubled over the other, in the manner of a ravelin [a curved wall], within a space of forty paces, so that the entrance was not direct but had turns in it. When I asked the reason for this wall they replied that that was the frontier of the province of Tascalteca, whose inhabitants were Mutezuma's enemies and were always at war with him. The natives of the valley, because I was going to see Mutezuma their lord, begged me not to go through the territory of his enemies, for they might be hostile to me and do me some harm; they themselves would lead me to Mutezuma without leaving his territory, in which I would always be well received.

But those of Cempoal told me not to do this, but to go through Tascalteca, for what the others had said was only to prevent me from forming an alliance with that province. They said that all Mutezuma's people were wicked traitors and would lead me to a place whence I could not escape. As I held those of Cempoal in greater esteem than the others, I took their advice, leading my men with as much caution as possible. And I, with some six horsemen, rode half a league ahead, not in anticipation of what later befell me, but to explore the land, so that if anything should happen I might have time to gather and instruct my men.

After proceeding four leagues, we reached the brow of a hill, and the two horsemen who went in front of me saw some Indians dressed in the feathers they wear in battle, and bearing swords and bucklers, who when they saw the horses began to run away. I arrived soon after and I called out to them to return and not to be afraid; as we approached them (there must have been about fifteen Indians) they banded together and began to throw spears and to call to others of their people who were in a valley. They fought so fiercely with us that they killed two horses and wounded three others and two horsemen. At this point the others appeared who must have been four or five thousand. Some eight horsemen were now with me, not counting the dead, and we fought them making several charges while we waited for the other soldiers whom I had sent a horseman to fetch; and in the fighting we did them some damage, in that we killed fifty or sixty of them and ourselves suffered no harm, although they fought with great courage and ferocity. But as we were all mounted we attacked in safety and retreated likewise.

When they saw our men approaching, they withdrew, for they were few, and left us the field. After they had gone, several messengers arrived, who said they came from the chieftains of that province and with them two of the messengers I had sent, who said that the lords of the province knew nothing of what those others had done; for they were of an independent community and had done it without his permission. They regretted what had happened and would pay me for the horses which had been killed; they wanted to be my friends, wished me good fortune and said I would be welcomed by them. I replied that I was grateful to them and that I held them as friends and would go where they said. That night I was forced to sleep in a river bed one league beyond where this happened, for it was late and the men were tired.

[1] Tlaxcala.

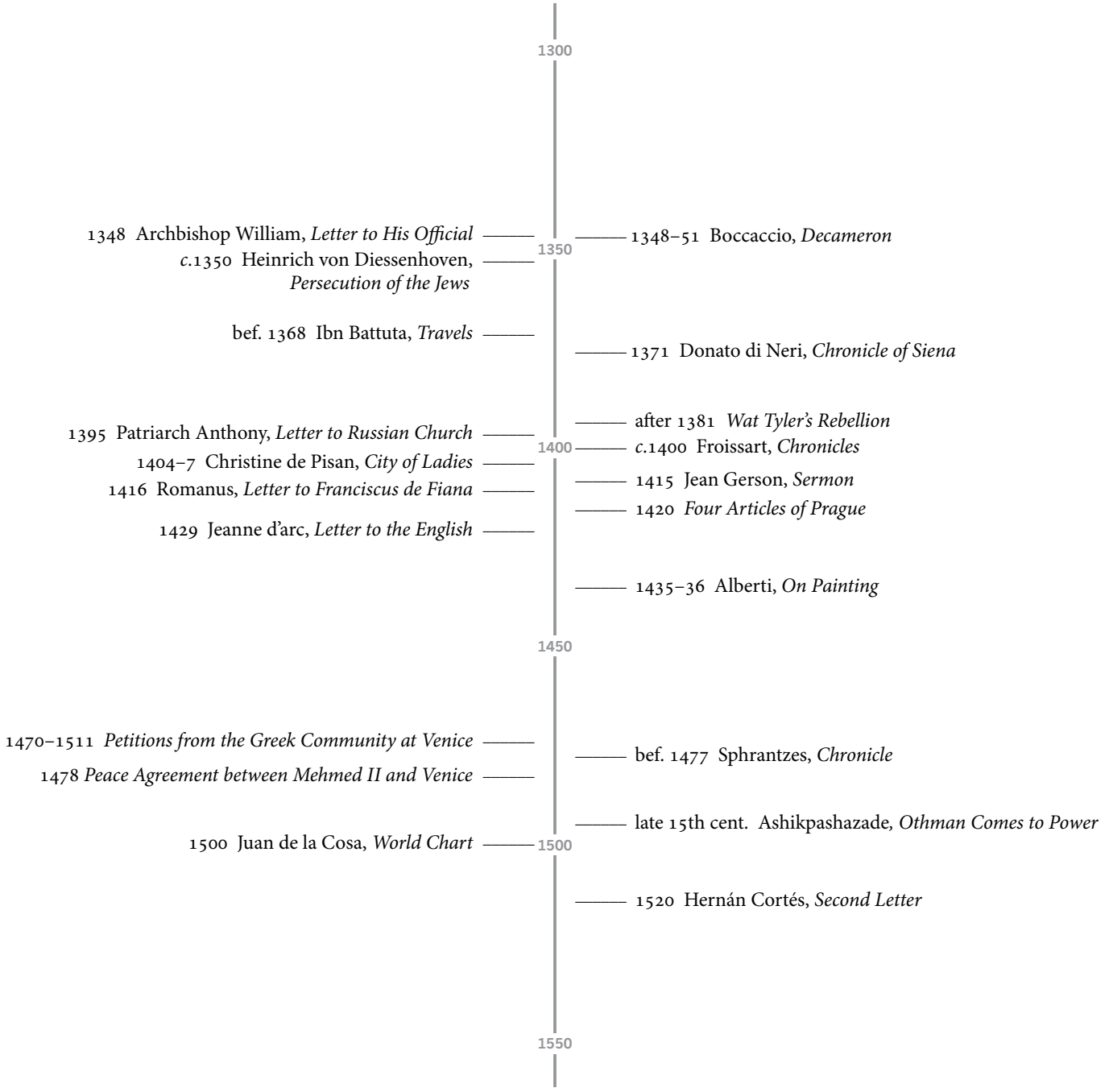
There I took all the precautions I could, with watchmen and scouts both on foot and on horseback. When it was light I departed, keeping my vanguard and baggage in close formation and my scouts in front. When, at sunrise, I arrived at a very small village I found the other two messengers weeping, saying that they had been tied up to be killed, but had escaped that night. Only a stone's throw from them there appeared a large number of Indians, heavily armed, who with a great shout began to attack us with many javelins and arrows. I began to deliver the formal requerimiento [demand for peace] through the interpreters who were with me and before a notary, but the longer I spent in admonishing them and requesting peace, the more they pressed us and did us as much harm as they could. Seeing therefore that nothing was to be gained by the requerimiento or protestations we began to defend ourselves as best we could, and so drew us fighting into the midst of more than 100,000 warriors who surrounded us on all sides. We fought all day long until an hour before sunset, when they withdrew; with half a dozen guns and five or six harquebuses and forty crossbowmen and with the thirteen horsemen who remained, I had done them much harm without receiving any except from exhaustion and hunger.[1] And it truly seemed that God was fighting for us, because from such a multitude, such fierce and able warriors and with so many kinds of weapons to harm us, we escaped so lightly.

That night I fortified a small tower on top of a hill, where they kept their idols. When it was day I left two hundred men and all the artillery behind and rode out to attack them with the horsemen, one hundred foot soldiers and four hundred Indians of those I brought from Cempoal, and three hundred from Yztaemestitan [*sic*]. Before they had time to rally, I burnt five or six small places of about a hundred inhabitants, and took prisoner about four hundred persons, both men and women; and returned to the camp having suffered no loss whatever. The following day at dawn, more than 149,000 men, who covered the entire ground, attacked the camp with such force that some of them broke in and fought the Spaniards hand to hand. We then went out and charged them, and so much did Our Lord help us that in four hours' fighting we had advanced so far that they could no longer harm us in the camp, although they still made some attacks. And so we fought until late, when they retired.

The following day I left before dawn by a different route, without being observed, with the horsemen, a hundred foot soldiers and my Indian allies. I burnt more than ten villages, in one of which there were more than three thousand houses, where the inhabitants fought with us, although there was no one there to help them. As we were carrying the banner of the Cross and were fighting for our Faith and in the service of Your Sacred Majesty in this Your Royal enterprise, God gave us such a victory that we killed many of them without ourselves receiving any hurt. Having gained our victory, we returned to camp a little after midday, for the enemy was gathering from all directions.

[1] For gunpowder weapons, see "*Handgonnes* and Cannons," especially Plate 14, and for crossbows, see "The Longbow," Plate 13, both in "Reading through Looking," pp. XX–XXIII and XVIII–XIX.

TIMELINE FOR CHAPTER EIGHT


1300
1348 Archbishop William, *Letter to His Official*
*c.*1350 Heinrich von Diessenhoven, *Persecution of the Jews*
1348–51 Boccaccio, *Decameron*
1350
bef. 1368 Ibn Battuta, *Travels*
1371 Donato di Neri, *Chronicle of Siena*
after 1381 *Wat Tyler's Rebellion*
1395 Patriarch Anthony, *Letter to Russian Church*
1400
*c.*1400 Froissart, *Chronicles*
1404–7 Christine de Pisan, *City of Ladies*
1415 Jean Gerson, *Sermon*
1416 Romanus, *Letter to Franciscus de Fiana*
1420 *Four Articles of Prague*
1429 Jeanne d'arc, *Letter to the English*
1435–36 Alberti, *On Painting*
1450
1470–1511 *Petitions from the Greek Community at Venice*
bef. 1477 Sphrantzes, *Chronicle*
1478 *Peace Agreement between Mehmed II and Venice*
late 15th cent. Ashikpashazade, *Othman Comes to Power*
1500 Juan de la Cosa, *World Chart*
1500
1520 Hernán Cortés, *Second Letter*
1550

To test your knowledge and gain deeper understanding of this chapter, please go to **www.utphistorymatters.com** for Study Questions.

This page intentionally left blank

Sources

1.1 From *Church and State through the Centuries: A Collection of Historic Documents with Commentaries*, trans. and ed. Sidney Z. Ehler and John B. Morrall. © 1954, The Newman Press. Used with permission of Paulist Press, Inc., New York/Mahwah, N.J. www.paulistpress.com.

1.2 Pharr, Clyde; *The Theodosian Code and Novels and the Sermondian Constitutions*. © 1952 in the name of the author, 1980 renewed in name of Roy Pharr, executor. Reprinted by permission of Princeton University Press.

1.4 From *Manichaean Texts from the Roman Empire*, ed. Iain Gardner and Samuel N.C. Lieu. © 2004. Published by Cambridge University Press. Reproduced with permission.

1.5 Courtesy of Continuum International Publishing Group.

1.6 From *The Confessions of Saint Augustine* by St. Augustine, translated by Rex Warner, translation copyright © 1963 by Rex Warner; copyright renewed © 1991 by F.C. Warner. Used by permission of New American Library, an imprint of Penguin Publishing Group, a division of Penguin Random House LLC. All rights reserved.

1.7 Augustine, *Concerning the City of God against the Pagans*, trans. Henry Bettenson. © 1972. Reproduced by permission of Penguin Books Ltd.

1.8 Reprinted by permission of the publisher from *The Rule of Saint Benedict*, edited and translated by Bruce L. Venarde, Dumbarton Oaks Medieval Library Volume 6, pp. 3, 7, 9, 17, 19, 21, 23, 29, 31, 33, 35, 37, 45, 47, 57, 59, 61, 79, 85, 87, 89, 97, 123, 125, 139, 141, 143, 161, 163, 177, 179, 187, 189, 191, 193, 229. Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, © 2011 by the President and Fellows of Harvard College.

1.9 Courtesy of David Brakke.

1.12 *Gregory of Tours: Life of the Fathers*, trans. Edward James. © 1991, Liverpool University Press. Reprinted by permission of Liverpool University Press.

1.13 *Cassiodorus: Variae*, trans. S.J.B. Barnish. © 1992, Liverpool University Press. Reprinted by permission of Liverpool University Press.

1.14 *Avitus of Vienne: Letters and Selected Prose*, trans. Danuta Shanzer and Ian Wood. © 1992, Liverpool University Press. Reprinted by permission of Liverpool University Press.

1.15 *Medieval Iberia: Readings from Christian, Muslim, and Jewish Sources*, 2/e, ed. Olivia Remie Constable, trans. David Nirenberg, pp. 12–20. © University of Pennsylvania Press, 2011. Reprinted with permission of the University of Pennsylvania Press.

2.1 *Chronicon Paschale, 284–628 AD*, trans. Michael Whitby and Mary Whitby. © 1989, Liverpool University Press. Reprinted by permission of Liverpool University Press.

2.2 Courtesy of the Internet Medieval Source Book.

2.4 Republished with permission of White Cloud Press, from *Approaching the Qur'an: The Early Revelations*, trans. Michael Sells. © 1999. Permission conveyed through Copyright Clearance Center, Inc.

2.6 *Medieval Iberia: Readings from Christian, Muslim, and Jewish Sources*, ed. Olivia Remie Constable, trans. David Nirenberg, pp. 37–38. © University of Pennsylvania Press, 1997. Reprinted with permission of the University of Pennsylvania Press.

2.7 From *Shaping a Muslim State: The World of a Mid-Eighth-Century Egyptian Official* by Sijpesteijn (2013). By permission of Oxford University Press.

2.8 Republished with permission of Indiana University Press, from *The Poetics of Islamic Legitimacy: Myth, Gender, and Ceremony in the Classical Arabic Ode*, Suzanne Pinckney Stetkevych. © 2002. Reprinted with permission of Indiana University Press.

2.10 From *Late Merovingian France: History and Hagiography (640–720)*, ed. and trans. Paul Fouracre and Richard A. Gerberding. © 1996 Manchester University Press. Reprinted by permission of Manchester University Press.

2.11 From *The Letters of Saint Boniface*, trans. Ephraim Emerton. © 1940 Columbia University Press. Reprinted with permission of the publisher.

2.12 Bede, *The Ecclesiastical History of the English People*, ed. Judith McClure and Roger Collins (1994). By permission of Oxford University Press.

3.3 From *Medieval Trade in the Mediterranean World*, trans. and ed. Robert S. Lopez and Irving W. Raymond. © 2001 Columbia University Press. Reprinted with permission of the publisher.

3.6 Reprinted from *Handbook for William: A Carolingian Woman's Counsel for Her Son by Dhouda*, translated by Carol Neel, by permission of the University of Nebraska Press. © 1991 by the University of Nebraska Press.

3.7 *Conquerors and Chroniclers of Early Medieval Spain*, trans. Kenneth Baxter Wolf. © 1990, Liverpool University Press. Reprinted by permission of Liverpool University Press.

3.13 Republished with permission of St. Vladimir's Seminary Press, from Roman Jakobson, "St. Constantine's Prologue to the Gospel," *St. Vladimir's Seminary Quarterly 7*. © 1963.

3.14 From *The Voices of Medieval Bulgaria, Seventh–Fifteenth Century: The Records of a Bygone Culture*, ed. and trans. Kiril Petkov. Brill, 2008. Reproduced by permission of Koninklijke BRILL NV.

3.15 Reprinted by permission of William L. North.

4.1 Reprinted by permission from *The History of al-Tabari Vol. 37: The 'Abbasid Recovery: The War against the Zanj Ends A.D. 879–893/A.H. 266–279*, translated by Philip M. Fields, the State University of New York Press, © 1987 State University of New York. All rights reserved.

4.2 From *The Land Legislation of the Macedonian Emperors*, trans. and ed. Eric McGeer. Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies, 2000. Reprinted by permission of the Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies.

4.3 Reprinted by permission of James T. Monroe.

4.5 Jane Martindale, "Conventum inter Guillelmum Aquitanorum comitem et Hugonem Chiliarchum," in *Status, Authority and Regional Power: Aquitaine and France, 9th to 12th Centuries*. Variorum, 1997. Reprinted by permission of the translators.

4.9 Courtesy of the Internet Medieval Source Book.

4.10 From *Al-Farabi: The Perfect State*, ed. and trans. Richard Walzer. © 1985. By permission of Oxford University Press.

4.12 From *Classical Foundations of Islamic Educational Thought*, ed. Bradley J. Cook with Fathi H. Malkawi, trans. Michael Fishbein. 2010. Courtesy of Brigham Young University Press.

4.13 From *The Laws of the Medieval Kingdom of Hungary, Vol. 1: 1000–1301*, trans. and ed. János M. Bak, György Bónis, and James Ross Sweeney. Charles Schlacks, Jr., Publisher, 1989. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

4.14 From *Ottonian Germany: The Chronicon of Thietmar of Merseburg*, trans. David A. Warner. © 2001 Manchester University Press. Reprinted by permission of Manchester University Press.

4.16 From *The Russian Primary Chronicle: Laurentian Text*, trans. and ed. Samuel Hazzard Cross and Olgerd P. Sherbowitz-Wetzor. 1953. Courtesy of the Medieval Academy of America.

4.18 From *English Historical Documents, Vol. 1: c. 300–1042*, 2nd ed., ed. Dorothy Whitelock. © 1979 Routledge. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

4.20 From *English and Norse Documents Relating to the Reign of Ethelred the Unready*, ed. and trans. Margaret Ashdown. © 1930. Reproduced by permission of Cambridge University Press.

4.21 *Egil's Saga*, trans. Bernard Scudder, ed. Svanhildur Óskarsdóttir. © 2004. Reproduced by permission of Penguin Books Ltd.

5.1 Abu'l-Faẓl Beyhaqi, *The History of Beyhaqi (The History of Sultan 'Mas'ud of Ghazna, 1030–1041)*. Translated by C.E. Bosworth and revised by Mohsen Ashtiany. 3 vols. 2011. Boston: Ilex Foundation. Reproduced by permission.

5.2 From *The Book of Government or Rules for Kings*, trans. Hubert Darke. © 1960. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

5.4 From *Islam: From the Prophet Muhammas to the Capture of Constantinople, Vol. 2: Religion and Society* translated by Lewis (1987). © 1974 by Bernard Lewis. By permission of Oxford University Press, USA.

5.5 From *English Historical Documents, Vol. 2: 1042–1189*, 2nd ed., ed. David C. Douglas and George W. Greenaway. © 1981 Routledge. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

5.6 From *The Correspondence of Pope Gregory VII: Selected Letters from the Registrum*, trans. Ephriam Emerton. © 1969 Columbia University Press. Reprinted with permission of the publisher.

5.7 From *Imperial Lives and Letters*, ed. Robert L. Benson, trans. Theodor E. Mommsen and Karl F. Morrison. © 2000 Columbia University Press. Reprinted with permission of the publisher.

5.8 From *The Register of Pope Gregory VII*, 1073–1085 by H.E.J. Cowdrey (2002). By permission of Oxford University Press.

5.12 Courtesy of the Internet Medieval Source Book.

5.15 From *The Norman Conquest of England: Sources and Documents*, ed. and trans. R. Allen Brown. Boydell Press, 1984, 9780851156187. Reprinted by permission of Boydell & Brewer Ltd.

5.16 From *English Historical Documents, Vol. 2: 1042–1189*, 2nd ed., ed. David C. Douglas and George W. Greenaway. © 1981 Routledge. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

5.18 From *Domesday Book: A Complete Translation*, ed. Ann Williams and G.H. Martin. Penguin, 2002. © Alecto Historical Editions. Reproduced by permission.

5.19 From *Basic Issues in Medieval Philosophy*, second edition, edited by Richard N. Bosley and Martin Tweedale. Broadview Press, 2006; pages 353–54. Reprinted with the permission of Broadview Press.

5.21 From *The Cistercian World: Monastic Writings of the Twelfth Century*, translated and edited with an introduction by Pauline Matarasso (Penguin Classics, 1993). © Pauline Matarasso, 1993. Reproduced by permission of Penguin Books Ltd.

6.1 From *The Chronicle of the Slavs*, by Helmold, Priest of Bosau, trans. Francis Joseph Tschan. © 1935 Columbia University Press. Reprinted with permission of the publisher.

6.2 From Ibn Shaddad, *The Rare and Excellent History of Saladin or al-Nawadir al-Sultaniyya wa'l-Mahasin al-Yusufiyya*, trans. D.S. Richards. © 2001 Ashgate. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

6.3 Reprinted from *O City of Byzantium: Annals of Niketas Choniates*, translated by Harry J. Magoulias. © 1984 Wayne State University Press, with the permission of Wayne State University Press.

6.4 From *English Historical Documents, Vol. 2: 1042–1189*, 2nd ed., ed. David C. Douglas and George W. Greenaway. © 1981 Routledge. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

6.5 From *The Code of Cuenca: Municipal Law on the Twelfth-Century Castilian Frontier*, trans. James F. Powers. University of Pennsylvania Press, 2000. Reprinted with permission of the University of Pennsylvania Press.

6.7 From *Medieval Trade in the Mediterranean World: Illustrative Documents*, trans. Robert S. Lopez and Irving W. Raymond. © 2001 Columbia University Press. Reprinted with permission of the publisher.

6.8 From *Women's Lives in Medieval Europe: A Sourcebook*, ed. Emilie Amt. © 1993 Routledge. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

6.10 From *English Historical Documents, Vol. 3: 1189–1327*, ed. Harry Rothwell. © 1975 Routledge. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

6.12 From *English Historical Documents, Vol. 2: 1042–1189*, 2nd ed., ed. David C. Douglas and George W. Greenaway. © 1981 Routledge. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

6.13 From *The Deeds of Frederick Barbarossa by Otto of Freising and His Continuator, Rahewin*, trans. Charles Christopher Mierow. © 1953 Columbia University Press. Reprinted with permission of the publisher.

6.14 From *English Historical Documents, Vol. 3: 1189–1327*, ed. Harry Rothwell. © 1975 Routledge. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

6.15 From *Four Byzantine Novels*, ed. and trans. Elizabeth Jeffreys. © 2012, Liverpool University Press. Reprinted by permission of Liverpool University Press.

6.16 From *Medieval Andalusian Courtly Culture in the Mediterranean: Hadith Bayad wa Riyad*, ed. and trans. Cynthia Robinson. © 2007 Routledge. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

6.20 From *The Fabliaux*, translated by Nathaniel E. Dubin. © 2013 by Nathaniel E. Dubin. Used by permission of Liveright Publishing Corporation.

6.21 From Chrétien de Troyes, *Lancelot: The Knight of the Cart*, trans. Burton Raffel. © 1997 Yale University Press. Reproduced by permission.

6.22 From *Decrees of the Ecumenical Councils, Vol. 1: Nicaea I to Lateran V*, ed. Norman P. Tanner. © 1990 Norman P. Tanner. Reproduced by permission of Burns & Oates, an imprint of Bloomsbury Publishing Plc.

6.24 From *Medieval Women's Visionary Literature*, trans. Margot H. King. 1986. © Brepols Publishers. Reproduced by permission of Brepols and Margot King.

6.26 From *Heresies of the High Middle Ages*, ed. and trans. Walter L. Wakefield and Austin P. Evans. © 1969 Columbia University Press. Reprinted with permission of the publisher.

7.1 From *The Mongol Mission: Narratives and Letters of the Franciscan Missionaries in Mongolia and China in the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries*, ed. Christopher Dawson. © 1955 Christopher Dawson. Reproduced by permission of Sheed & Ward, an imprint of Bloomsbury Publishing Plc.

7.3 Reproduced by permission of Piroska Nagy.

7.4 From *The Memoirs of a Syrian Prince: Abu'l Fida', Sultan of Hamah (672–732/1273–1331)*, trans. and intro. P.M. Holt. © 1983. Reproduced by permission of Franz Steiner.

7.5 From *Templar of Tyre*, trans. Paul Crawford. © 2003 Ashgate. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

7.7 *A Local Society in Transition: The Henryków Book and Related Documents*, trans. Piotr Górecki. Pontifical Institute of Medieval Studies, 2007. Reprinted by permission of the Pontifical Institute of Mediaeval Studies.

7.10 From *The Voices of Medieval Bulgaria, Seventh–Fifteenth Century: The Records of a Bygone Culture*, ed. and trans. Kiril Petkov. Brill, 2008. Reproduced by permission of Koninklijke Brill NV.

7.11 From *The Towns of Italy in the Later Middle Ages*, ed. and trans. Trevor Dean. © 2000 Manchester University Press. Reprinted by permission of Manchester University Press.

7.13 From *Medieval Trade in the Mediterranean World: Illustrative Documents Translated with Introductions and Notes*, ed. and trans. Robert S. Lopez and Irving W. Raymond. © 2001 Columbia University Press. Reprinted with permission of the publisher.

7.15 From *English Historical Documents, Vol. 3: 1189–1327*, ed. Harry Rothwell. © 1975 Routledge. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

7.18 From *Chronicles of the Crusades* by Joinville and Villehardouin, translated with an introduction by M.R.B. Shaw (Penguin Books, 1963). © M.R.B. Shaw, 1963. Reproduced by permission of Penguin Books Ltd.

7.21 Singleton, Charles S.; *The Divine Comedy*, III. Paradiso. © 1991 by Princeton University Press; Singleton, Charles S.; *The Divine Comedy: Inferno* 2 Vols. © 1970 Princeton University Press, 1998 renewed PUP. Reprinted by permission of Princeton University Press.

8.3 & 8.4 From *The Black Death*, ed. and trans. Rosemary Horrox. © 1994 Manchester University Press. Reprinted by permission of Manchester University Press.

8.5 Reprinted by permission of Robert Dankoff.

8.7 Deno John Geanakoplos, *Byzantium: Church, Society, and Civilization Seen through Contemporary Eyes*. © 1984, University of Chicago Press. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

8.8 Reprinted from *The Fall of the Byzantine Empire: A Chronicle by George Sphrantzes, 1401–1477*. © 1980 by the University of Massachusetts Press.

8.11 Courtesy of Nadia Margolis.

8.13 Charles Oman, *The Great Revolt of 1381*. Greenwood Press, 1969. © ABC-CLIO Inc., 1906. Reproduced by permission.

8.14 From *Unity, Heresy and Reform, 1378–1460: The Conciliar Response to the Great Schism*, ed. C.M.D. Crowder. Edward Arnold, 1977. Reprinted by permission of the estate of C.M.D. Crowder.

8.15 From *The Crusade against Heretics in Bohemia, 1418–1437: Sources and Documents of the Hussite Crusades*, ed. and trans. Thomas A. Fudge. © 2002 Ashgate. Reproduced by permission of Taylor & Francis Books UK.

8.16 From *Two Renaissance Book Hunters: The Letters of Poggius Bracciolini to Nicolaus de Niccolis*, ed. and trans. Phyllis Walter Goodhart Gordan. © 1974 Columbia University Press. Reprinted with permission of the publisher.

8.17 *Leon Battista Alberti: On Painting. A New Translation and Critical Edition*, ed. and trans. Rocco Sinisgalli. © 2011 Rocco Sinisgalli. Published by Cambridge University Press. Reproduced with permission.

8.18 Christine de Pizan, excerpts from *The Book of the City of Ladies*, translated by Earl J. Richards, pp. 30–34. © 1982, 1998 by Persea Books, Inc. Reprinted with the permission of Persea Books, Inc. (New York), www.perseabooks.com. All rights reserved.

8.20 Hernán Cortés, *Letters from Mexico*, trans. and ed. Anthony Pagden. Yale University Press, 2001. © 1971 by Anthony Pagden. Revised edition © 1986 by Yale University Press. Reprinted by permission of Yale University Press.

Index of Names, Places, and Readings

Roman numerals in bold refer to "Reading through Looking."

Abbo of Saint-Germain-des-Prés, 135
ʿAbd Allah b. Asʿad, 80
ʿAbd al-ʿAziz (d.716), 76
ʿAbd al-Malik, caliph (r.685–705), 82
ʿAbd al-Rahman III, caliph (r.912–961), 179
Abelard, Peter (1079–1142), 278–79, 440
Abingdon, 233
Abu al-ʿAbbas, 171
Abu Tammam (804–846), 124, 179
Abu'l-Fazl Beyhaqi (995–1077), 241
Abu'l-Fida, lord of Hama (r.*c.*1310–1331), 390, 393
Acre, 390, 393, **XIII**
Adalbert (956–997), saint, 219, 264
Adela, 266
Admonitio Generalis (789), 159, 214
Admonition to Henry IV (1075), 251
Adrian IV, pope (1154–1159), 327
Aegean, 457
Æthelred II the Unready, king (r.978–1016), 228–29, 233
Afghanistan, 241
Africa, 496. *See also* North Africa
Agreement between Count William of the Aquitainians and Hugh IV of Lusignan (1028), 190, 196
Aimon, archbishop of Bourges (r.1030–1070), 196
al-Akhtal (*c.*640–*c.*710), 83
Alaric, Visigothic leader, 17, 41
Alberti, Leon Battista (1404–1472), 491–92
Aleppo, 205
Alexander, bishop of Alexandria, 11
Alexandria, 11, 30, 69
Alexius, emp. (r.1081–1118), 261
Alfonso III, king of Asturias (r.866–910), 132
Alfonso VIII, king of Castile (r.1158–1214), 305, 353
Alfonso X *el Sabio*, king of Castile-León (r.1252–1284), 427
Alfred the Great, king (r.871–899), 233
Algeria, 12
ʿAli b. Muhammad, 171
Alighieri, Dante (1265–1321), 351, 441
Alp Arslan, sultan (r.1063–1072), 244
Ambrose, saint, bishop of Milan, 12
Americas, 496, **VIII**
Amorium, 124
Amul, 171
Anatolia, 336
al-Andalus, 179, 208, 247, 305, 344, 427
Andrew of Fleury, 196
Anglo-Saxon Chronicle (*c.*1048?), 228, 233, 235
Angoulême, 190
Anian II, bishop of St. Asaph, 320
Annaba. *See* Hippo
Anthony IV, patriarch of Constantinople (r.1389–1390 and 1391–1397), 460
Antioch, 28, 266, 269
Antony (d.*c.*356), saint, 30–1, 35, 38
Antwerp, 399
Apologia (1125), 284
Aquileia, 28
Aquinas. *See* Thomas Aquinas, saint
Aquitaine, 35, 184, 350, 353
Arabia, 337

Aristotle, 279, 439
Arius, 11, 63
Armenia, 390
Asella, 29, 31
Ashikpashazade (d. after 1484), 455, 468
Asia, 381, 496, **VIII**
Assisi, 375
Assize of Clarendon (1166), 302, 305
Asturias, 132
Athanasius (d.373), bishop of Alexandria, 30
Atlantic Ocean, 496
Augustine (354–430), saint, bishop of Hippo, 7, 8, 12, 16–17, 20, 31, 373
Austatz, Guillaume, 418
Autafort, 353
Avignon, 404, 418, 438
Avitus, bishop of Vienne, 43
Azov, 400

Baghdad, 171–72, 179, 205, 280, 294
Balkans, 457
Balthild (d.*c.*680), queen, 88
Baltic, 404, 414
Bardi (family), 399, 447
Basil II, emp. (r.976–1025), 199–200, **XII**
Basil Sclerus, **XII**
Basra, 171
Battle of Dandanqan (bef. 1077), 241
Battles of the City of Paris (late 9th cent.), 135
Bavaria, 93, 213
Bayeux, 259, 275
Bayeux Tapestry (end of the 11th cent.), 274–75, **VI–VII (Plate 4)**
Becket, Thomas, archbishop of Canterbury (r.1162–1170), 323, 438
Bede (673–735), 6, 95
Béla IV, king of Hungary (r.1235–1270), 387–88
Belgium, 444
Benedict XII, pope (1334–1342), 418. *See also* Fournier, Jacques
Benedict XIII, antipope, 485
Benedict Biscop, 95
Benedict of Nursia (d.*c.*550–*c.*560), saint, 7, 20, 311, 373
Benedictine Rule (*c.*530–*c.*560), 7, 20, 85, 311
Bernard, count of the Spanish March, 128
Bernard (d.1153), saint, 284, 288
Bernart de Ventadorn, 350–51, 352, 353
Bertran de Born (*fl. c.*1180–1196), 353
Besançon, 327
Bethlehem, 29
Black Sea, 298
Boccaccio, Giovanni (1313–1351), 447
Boethius (d.524/526), 41, 279
Bohemia, 218–19, 488
Boleslaw the Brave, duke of Poland (r.992–1025), 218–19, 222, **III**
Boleslaw's Coin (992–1000), 222, **III (Plate 2)**
Boniface (672/675–754), saint, 92–93, 115
Boniface VIII, pope (1294–1303), 438
Bonsignore (family), 415
Book of Policy (1091), 244
Book of the City of Ladies (1404–1407), 494
Boris-Michael, khan of Bulgaria (r.852–889), 163–64, **II**
Bosau, 291
Bourges, 196
Bouvines, 330
Bracciolini, Poggius, 489
Bremen, 246
British Isles, 229. *See also* England
Brunelleschi, Filippo (1377–1446), 491
Brunhild, queen, 48
Bruno, archbishop of Cologne (r.953–965), 218, 224–25
al-Bukhari (810–870), 143, 147
Bulgaria, 163, 411, **II**
Burgundy, 184, 402
Byzantium. *See* Constantinople

Cairo, 210
Canterbury, 233, 320, 323–24
Cantilupe, Thomas, bishop of Hereford (r.1275–1282), 320, 322, 324, 418
Carthage, 7
Caspian Sea, 171
Cassiodorus (d.583), 41
Castelnaud, **XXIII**
Caucasus, **X**
Cawood, 452
Champagne, 356
Charlemagne, king and emp. (r.768–814), 105, 115, 135, 151, 159, 214, 294, **I**
Charles (d.1461), dauphin of France, 473
Charles V, emp. (r.1519–1558), 497
Charles Martel (d.741), mayor of the palace, 93
Charles the Bald, emp., 128
Charles the Fat, emp. (r.881–887), 135
Charters of Donation (of Cluny), 184
Chelles, 88
Chilperic, king (r.561–584), 48, 494
China, 399, **XX**
Chinghis Khan (d.1227), 381, **XVII**

Choniates, Nicetas (*c.*1150–*c.*1217), 298
Chrétien de Troyes, 356
Christ Church (Canterbury), 233
Christine de Pisan (*c.*1364–*c.*1429/1430), 494
Chronicle (*c.*690), 69
Chronicle (1013–1018), 218, 264
Chronicle (*c.*1140), 263
Chronicle (bef. 1477), 461
Chronicle of Alfonso III (early 880s), 132
Chronicle of Chronicles (early 12th cent.), 272
Chronicle of Laon (1173–1178), 371
Chronicle of Siena (1371), 474
Chronicle of the Prussian Land (*c.*1320–1326), 407
Chronicle of the Slavs (1167–1168), 291
Chronicle of Trier (1231), 378
Chronicles (*c.*1400), 468
Cicero (106–43 bce), 12, 224, 489
Cincius Romanus (d.1445), 489, 492
City of God (413–426), 7, 16–17, 20, 48, 206
Clarendon, 302, 323
Clermont, 261
Clothar III, king, 88
Clovis I, king (r.481/482–511), 41, 43
Clovis II, king (r.639–657), 88
Cluny, 184, 272, 288–89, 402
Codex Carolinus. See *Letters to King Pippin III*
Cologne, 151, 218, 224
Columbus, Christopher, 496
Comtessa de Dia, 352
Confessions (397–401), 12, 16
Constance, 485, 488, 489
Constantine I, emp. (r.306–337), 1–2, 11, **X**
Constantine V, emp. (r.741–775), 62
Constantine VI, emp. (r.780–797), 107
Constantine VII Porphyrogenitus (before 963), 198
Constantine VII, emp. (r.945–959), 198, **X**
Constantine VIII, emp. (r.1025–1028), 200
Constantine XI, emp. (r.1449–1453), 461
Constantine the African, 280
Constantine-Cyril, saint, 161, 213
Constantinople, 11, 55, 56, 60, 69, 135, 199, 200, 222, 298, 310, 399, 411, 457, 460, 461, 465, **X**, **XXIII**
Constantius II, emp. (r.337–361), 11
Constitutions of Clarendon (1164), 323–24
Contract of Sale (725), 114
Corbie, 88
Córdoba, 179, 208
Cortés, Hernán (1485–1547), 497
Cortes of Valladolid (1258), 427
Cotton, 275–76
Crécy, **XVIII–XIX**
Crusader States, 390
Crypt Monastery (Kiev), 222
Cuba, 496
Cuenca, 305
Cyprus, 310, 393, 399
Cyril. *See* Constantine-Cyril

Dalmatia, 28
Damascus, 269, 344, 451–52
Damascus Chronicle of the Crusades (bef. 1160), 269
Dandanqan, 241
Dante. *See* Alighieri, Dante
Danube River, 163, 213
Decameron (1348–1351), 447
Decrees of Lateran IV (1215), 366
Decrees of the League (1260–1264), 414
Deeds of the Cypriots (bef. 1343), 393
Deeds of the Dukes of the Normans (*c.*1070), 271
Defeat of the Zanj Revolt (*c.*915), 3, 171
Demmin, 291
Demouville, 259
Denmark, 231
Déols, 196
Dhuoda, 128
Dia, 352
Die. *See* Dia
Diet of Besançon (1157), 326
Diocletian, emp. (r.284–305), 1
Direction for an Annunciation Play (14th cent.), 444
Dnieper River, 404
Domesday Book (1087), 275–76
Dominic, bishop of Carthage, 7
Donato di Neri (d.1371/1372), 474
Drosilla and Charikles (*c.*1156), 336–37
Dunash ben Labrat (*fl.* mid-10th cent.), 208

Easter Chronicle (630), 55, 135, 179
Ecclesiastical History of the English People (731), 95
Edict of Milan (313), 1–3, 171–73
Edward I, king of England (r.1272–1307), 425, 431
Edward III, king of England (r.1327–1377), 468
Edward the Confessor, king (r.1042–1066), 271, 275
Egil Skallagrimsson (*c.*910–990), 235
Egil's Saga (10th cent./13th cent.), 235
Egypt, 8, 69, 70, 79–80, 171, 390
Einhard (*c.*770–840), 115, 128, 294
Eleanor of Aquitaine (1122–1204), queen, 350
England, 92, 95, 233, 250, 271, 275, 310, 318, 320, 323, 327, 330, 350, 353, 424–25, 438, 479, **VI**

Episcopal Register (1318–1325), 371, 418
Epitaph of Basil II (1025), 199
Etienne de Boileau, provost of Paris, 322
Euphrates River, 171
Europe, 6, 135, 213, 224, 261, 381, 388, 402, 404, 407, 427, 473, 496
Eusebius, 3

al-Farabi, Abu Nasr (872–950), 205–6
Fayyum, 79–80
Fez, 208
Fleury, 196
Florence, 399, 447, 465, 491
"Florence of Worcester," 272–73
Foundation Charter (of Cluny) (910), 184
Four Articles of Prague (1420), 488
Fournier, Jacques, bishop of Pamiers (r.1317–1326), 371, 418
France, 135, 184, 323, 330, 350, 350, 353, 354, 373, 418, 438, 452, 453, 468, 473, 494, **XII**
Francia, 38, 48, 88, 93. *See also* France; Gaul
Francis of Assisi (1181/1182–1226), saint, 371, 375
Fredegund, queen, 494
Frederick, archbishop of Hamburg-Bremen (r.1105–1123), 246, 250
Frederick I Barbarossa, king of Germany and emp. (r.1152–1190), 326–27
Frederick of Hamburg's Agreement with Colonists from Holland (1106), 246, 250
Frisia, 92–93
Froissart, Jean (1337–*c*.1404), 468, **XVIII**
Fulda, 115

Galen, 280
Gaul, 35, 48, 93. *See also* France; Francia
Gediminas, duke of Lithuania (r.1315/1316–1341), 404, 407
Genevieve, saint, 135
Genoese societas (1253), 316
Germain, saint, 135
Germany, 93, 213, 218–19, 222, 253, 326, 378, 402, 404, 453
Gerson, Jean (1363–1429), 473, 485, 489
Géza, prince (r.972–997), 213
Ghazan Khan (r.1295–1304), 381
Ghengis Khan. *See* Chinghis Khan
Ghibelline Annals of Piacenza (1250), 412
Glosses on Porphyry (*c*.1100), 278–79, 440
Gniezno, 219, 222, 402, **III**
Gorm, king (d.958), 231–32
Gospel According to the Marks of Silver (*c*.1200), 322
Gozlin, bishop of Paris (r.884–885), 135
Great Bank Petitions the City Council of Siena (1298), 415
Greece, 460
Gregory, bishop of Tours (r.573–594), 38, 43, 48, 55, 494
Gregory I the Great, pope (590–604), 6–7, 95
Gregory II, pope (715–731), 93
Gregory VII, pope (1073–1085), 251, 253
Gregory XII, pope, 485
Grossi (family), 184
Guild Regulations of the Parisian Silk Fabric Makers (13th cent.), 317
Guy de Lusignan, king of Cyprus (1192–1194), 310
Guyuk Khan (r.1246–1248), 381, 386

Hagia Sophia (Constantinople), 222
Hainaut, 468
Haiseau, 354
Haistulf, king, **I**
Haldon, John, **X**
Half a sirventés I'll sing (1190), 350
Hama, 390
Hamburg, 246
Handbook for Her Son (841–843), 128
Hangzhou, 400
Harald Bluetooth, king, 231–32, **IV**
Harald Fairhair, king of Norway (d.*c*.930), 235
Harold Godwineson, king, 271, 273, 275, **VI**
Hasdai ibn Shaprut, 208
Hastings, 271, 275
Hautefort. *See* Autafort
Heinrich von Diessenhoven (d.1376), 453
Helmold (*c*.1125–after 1177?), 291, 473
Henri de Vézelay, archdeacon of Bayeux, 259
Henry I, king of England (r.1100–1135), 250, 323
Henry I, king of Germany (r.919–936), 224
Henry II, king of England (r.1154–1189), 302, 305, 323, 350
Henry II the Pious (d.1241), duke of Silesia, 402
Henry III, king of England (r.1216–1272), 424, 431
Henry IV, duke of Bavaria, 213
Henry IV, king of Germany and emp. (r.1056–1106), 251, 253, 255
Henryków, 402
Henryków Book (*c*.1268), 402
Hereford, 320, 322, 324, 418
Hermann, bishop of Metz, 255
Heron of Byzantium, **XII**
Hildebrand. *See* Gregory VII, pope
Hippo, 12, 16
Hippocrates, 280
Histories (576–594), 43, 48, 55
Holland, 246

Holy Cross (Cyprus), 310
Holy Land, 261, 263, 266
Hugh I of Lusignan, king of Cyprus (r.1205–1218), 310
Hugh IV of Lusignan, 190
Hungary, 213, 218, 219, 223, 229, 387–88
Huntingdonshire, 275–76
Hus, Jan (1369/1371–1415), 488

I have been in heavy grief (late 12th–early 13th cent.), 352
Iberia, 132, 247, 344. *See also* Spain
Ibn ʿAbd Rabbihi (860–940), 179
Ibn ʿAbdun, 247
Ibn Battuta (1304–1368), 451
Ibn Hisham (d.833), 143
Ibn Ishaq, Hunayn (Johannitius), 280
Ibn Ishaq, Muhammad (*c.*704–767), 143
Ibn al-Qalanisi (1073–1160), 269
Ibn Shaddad (1145–1234), 294
Iceland, 235
India, 8
Inferno (1313–1321), 441
Ingelberga, 184
Innocent III, pope (1198–1216), 298, 318, 366
Innocent IV, pope (1243–1254), 386–87
Iran, 241, 381
Isagoge. *See* Translation of Johannitius's *Isagoge*
Israel, 159
Italy, 7, 41, 114, 151, 326, 375, 412, 444, 453, 494, **XVIII**
Ivan Asen II, tsar of Bulgaria (r.1218–1241), 411
Izmit. *See* Nicomedia

Jacques de Vitry (d.1240), 373
Japan, **XVII**
Jean de Joinville (1225–1317), 432, 455
Jeanne d'Arc (*c.*1412–1431), 472–73
Jelling, 231–32, **IV–V**
Jelling Monument (960s), 231–32, **IV (Plate 3A)**, **V (Plate 3B)**
Jerome (*c.*347–419/420), saint, 28–29
Jerusalem, 263, 294
Johannitius. *See* Ibn Ishaq, Hunayn
John, bishop of Nikiu, 69
John, king of England (r.1199–1216), 330–31
John XXII, pope (1316–1334), 404
John XXIII, antipope (1410–1415), 485, 489
John of Plano Carpini, 386
John of Worcester. *See* "Florence of Worcester"
Juan de la Cosa (d.*c.*1509), 496–97, **VIII**
Jumièges, 271
Justinian I, emp. (r.527–565), 6, 41, 222
Justinian II, emp. (r.685–695; 705–711), 60
Jutland, 231

Kalikratia, 411
Khadija, 66
Kiev, 222
Kveldulf, 235

Lactantius, 3
Lancelot (*c.*1177–1181), 356
Landi (family), 412
Landi, Guglielmo, 412
Law Code (1008), 228, 233
Lawrence of Portugal, 386
Laws (1000–1038), 213–14
Laws of Cuenca (1189–1193), 305
Legnica, 402
Leicester, 425
Leo III, emp. (r.717–741), 62
Letter 24 (To Marcella) (384), 28–29
Letter to Answer the Bulgarians' Questions (866), 164
Letter to Bishop Dominic of Carthage (600), 6–7
Letter to Clovis (508?), 43
Letter to Gregory VII (1075), 253
Letter to Hermann of Metz (1076), 255
Letter to His Most Learned Teacher Franciscus de Fiana (1416), 489
Letter to His Official at York (July 1348), 451
Letter to His Wife (March 1098), 266
Letter to Pope Innocent IV (1246), 386
Letter to Pope Innocent IV (*c.*1250), 387
Letter to Pope John XXII (1322), 404
Letter to the English (1429), 472–73
Letter to the Russian Church (1395), 460
Letter to the Townspeople of Lübeck, *Rostock*, *Stralsund*, *Griefswald*, *Stettin*, *and Gotland* (May 26, 1323), 404
Letters (1200–1202), 318
Letters to ʿAbd Allah b. Asʿad (*c.*730–750), 79
Letters to Boniface (723–726), 92–93
Letters to King Pippin III (755–756), 151
Licinius, emp. (r.308–324), 1–2
Life of Bruno, *Archbishop of Cologne* (late 960s), 224
Life of Charlemagne (825–826?), 115
Life of Mary of Oignies (1213), 373
Life of Monegundis (580s), 38
Life of Muhammad (754–767), 143
Life of Queen Balthild (*c.*680), 88
Life of Saint Philaretos (821/822), 107, 336
Life of St. Antony of Egypt (357), 30–1, 107, 143
Life of St. Louis (1272), 432

Life of St. Martin of Tours (397), 35, 38, 48
Limoges, 350
Limousin, 350
Lincoln, 276
Lithuania, 404, 407
Ljubljana, 28
Loades, Mike, **XVIII**
London, 250, 479
Lorraine, 472
Lotharingia, 224
Louis I the Pious, king and emp. (r.814–840), 115, 128
Louis VII, king of France (r.1137–1180), 350
Louis IX, saint, king of France (r.1226–1270), 259, 317, 432, 455
Low Countries, 453
Lübeck, 291, 414
Lusignan, 190, 310
Lyon, 371

Macedonia, 161
Mâcon, 184
Magdeburg, 218–19
Magna Carta (1215), 330–31
Mainz, 93, 264
Malik ibn Anas (d.796), 210
Malikshah, sultan (r.1072–1092), 244
Mani (d.277), prince, 8
Manichaean Texts (bef. 350?), 8–9
al-Mansur, caliph, 143
Mantua, 491
Manuel II Palaeologus, emp. (r.1391–1425), 460
Manzikert, 336
Marcella, 29
Marie, countess of Champagne, 356
Marseille, 105
Martin (d.397), saint, bishop of Tours, 35, 38, 48
Martin V, pope (1417–1431), 485
Mary of Oignies (1177–1213), 373, 375, 473
Masʿud, emir (r.1030–1041), 241
Mecca, 66, 210
Medina, 66, 143
Mediterranean, 6, 316, 415, 496–97
Mehmed II (d.1481), sultan, 457, **XXIII**
Merovech, 48
Merseburg, 218, 264
Merv, 241
Methodius, saint, 158, 213
Metz, 255
Mexico, 497
Michael III, emp. (r.842–867), 164
Michael IV, emp. (r.1034–1041), 200
Michael V, emp. (r.1041–1042), 200–1
Michael VII, emp. (r.1071–1078), 200
Middle East, 6, 381
Middlesex, 250
Mieszko I, duke of Poland (r.*c.*960–992), 218
Milan, 1–2, 12, 251
Mile End, 479
Miracles (mid-1130s–mid-1150s), 288–89
Miracles of St. Benedict (1040–1043), 196
Monegundis, saint, 38, 48, 88, 373
Monte Cassino, 280
Montepolitianus, Bartholomeus, 489
Montforts (family), 393
Moravia, 161, 218
Morocco, 208, 451
Moscow, 460
Mosul, 294
Muhammad the Prophet (*c.*570–632), 66, 143, 147, 210
Murad, sultan, 461
Murcia, 79
Musa, governor, 79
al-Muʿtadid, caliph, 171
al-Muʿtamid, caliph (r.870–892), 171
al-Muʿtasim, caliph (r.833–842), 124, 179
al-Muwaffaq, Abu Ahmad, 171

Najid b. Mulim, 80
Neophytos, 310–11, 375
Neri di Donato, 474
Nestorius (d.451), patriarch of Constantinople, 63
Netherlands, 224
Nicaea, 2, 11, 310, **XII**
Nicene Creed (325), 2, 11, 44
Nicetas Choniates. *See* Choniates, Nicetas
Nicholas I, pope (858–867), 164
Nicomedia, 2
Niketas, 107
Niketas Eugenianos, 336–37, 351
Nikiu, 69
Nizam al-Mulk (1018–1072), 244
Normandy, 271, 272, 275, **VI**
North Africa, 12, 79
North America, 496
North Sea, 414
Norway, 231, 235
Novel (934), 177, 198

O City of Byzantium (*c.*1215), 298
Oder River, 218

Odo (*c.*860–898), count of Paris, 135
Odo of Bayeux, 275
Odo of Déols, 196
Ogetei Khan (r.1229–1241), 381, 386
Oignies, 373
On Fasting (9th cent.), 143, 147
On Love (1271), 439
On Painting (1435–1436), 491
On the Persecution of the Jews (*c.*1350), 453
Orléans, 473
Othman (d.1324/1326), sultan, 455, 468
Othman Comes to Power (late 15th cent.), 455, 468
Otto I, king of Germany and emp. (r.936–973), 224
Otto III, emp. (r.996–1002), 213, 218–19, 222

Padua, 444
Pamiers, 418, 438
Paphos, 310
Paraskeve. *See* Petka, saint
Paris, 135, 317, 485
Parma, 444
Pavia, **I**
Peace Agreement between the Ottoman Sultan Mehmed II and the Signoria of Venice (January 25, 1478), 457
Peckam, John, archbishop of Canterbury (r.1279–1292), 320
Pegolotti, Francesco Balducci (d. after 1374), 399, 447
Penitential of Finnian (late 6th cent.), 85
Perfect State (*c.*940–942), 205
Peter, abbot of Henryków, 402
Peter, saint, 152, 251, 253
Peter of Dusburg (d.*c.*1326), 407
Peter the Hermit, 263
Peter the Venerable (1092/1094–1156), abbot of Cluny, 288–89
Petition of the "Commonalty" of the Jews (shortly after 1275), 424–25
Petitions from the Greek Community at Venice (1470–1511), 465
Petka, saint, 411
Petrarch, Francesco, 447
Philaretos, saint, 107
Philea, 298
Philip II Augustus, king of France (r.1180–1223), 317, 353
Philip III the Bold, king of France (r.1270–1285), 259
Philip IV the Fair, king of France (r.1285–1314), 438
Philippa of Hainaut, queen, 468
Photius, patriarch of Constantinople, 161
Piacenza, 412
Piasts (family), 402
Piece of Shit (13th cent.), 354
Pippin III, king (r.752–768), 151
Pistoia, 320
Poitiers, 190
Poitou, 190
Poland, 218–19, 222–23, 402, **III**
Polo, Marco (d.1324), **XV**
Polyptique of the Church of Saint Mary of Marseille (814–815), 105, 276
Pope Urban II Preaches the First Crusade (1095), 261
Porphyry (d.*c.*305), 279
Portugal, 386, 496
Practice of Trade (*c.*1340s), 399
Praetextatus, bishop of Rouen, 48
Prague, 219, 488
Praise Be to Him (929–940), 179
Privileges for the Citizens of London (1130–1133), 250
Prologue to the Gospel (863–867), 161
Provence, 105, 352
Prudentius (348–after 405), 224
Prussia, 219, 407
Psellus, Michael (1018–1078), 200–1

al-Qabisi, Abu al-Hasan Ali ibn Khalaf (935–1012), 210, 225
Qubilai Khan (d.1294), **XVII**
Quinisext Council (691/692), 60
Qur'an Suras (*c.*610–622), 66

Rahewin, 327
Rare and Excellent History of Saladin (1195–1216), 294
Rashid al-Din (*c.*1247–1318), 381, **XV**
Ratislav, 161
Reccared, king (r.586–601), 44
Register of Thomas of Hereford (1281), 320, 322
Regulations for the Market at Seville (early 12th cent.), 247
Rhine River, 93
Rhineland, 263
Richard I the Lion-Heart, king of England (r.1189–1199), 310, 353
Richard II, king of England (r.1377–1399), 479
Rimini, 491
Ring That Controlled Erections (13th cent.), 354
Robert the Monk (d.1122), 261
Romanus I Lecapenus, emp. (r.920–944), 177, 198
Romanus III, emp. (r.1028–1034), 200
Rome, 4, 7, 17, 20, 28–29, 41, 60, 92, 95, 151, 213, 219, 223, 261, 280, 326, 327, 489, 491
Rouen, 48, 271
Rule for Hermitages (1217–1221), 375

Runnymede, 331
Ruotger, 218, 224–25
Rus', 222–23.
Russian Primary Chronicle (*c.*1113), 222

Saint-Germain-des-Prés (Paris), 135
Saint-Mary (Marseille), 105
Saint-Vincent (Marseille), 105
Saisset (d.1314), Bernard, bishop of Pamiers, 438
Saladin (d.1193), sultan, 294
Salerno, 280
Sallust (86–35/34 bce), 224
al-Salt b. al-Muhajir, 80
San Biagio (Venice), 465
San Giorgio (Venice), 465
Sarakhs, 241
Saviagata, Antolino, 412
Saxony, 224, 404
Scandinavia, 231–32
Seal of Boris-Michael (864–889), 163, **II** (**Plate 1)**
Second Letter (1520), 497
Septimania. *See* Spanish March
Sergius I, pope (687–701), 60
Sermon at the Council of Constance (1415), 485
Seville, 247, 344, 427
Short History of Mankind (1318–1319), 390
Short Life of St. Petka (Paraskeve) of Tarnov (13th cent.), 411
Sicily, **X**
Siena, 415, 474
Silesia, 402
Simon de Montfort (1208–1265), 431
Skylitzes, John, **X**
Smithfield, 479
Solomon bar Samson, 263–64
South America, 496
Spain, 44–45, 78–79, 179, 208, 428, 496–97. *See also* Iberia
Spanish March, 128
Speyer, 264
Sphrantzes, George (1401–1477), 461
St. Asaph, 320
St. Gall, 489
St. Matthias (Trier), 378
St. Sophia (Kiev), 222
Statute of the Jewry (1275), 424–25
Stephen, king of Hungary (r.997–1038), 213–14, 229
Stephen II, pope (752–757), 151
Stephen of Blois (d.1102), count, 266, 269
Sturm, saint, 115
Suetonius (69–after 122), 115
Sulpicius Severus (*c.*360–*c.*420), 35
Summons of Representatives of Shires and Towns to Parliament (1295), 431
Svein Forkbeard, king, 232
Sword gives truer tidings (838), 124
Sylvester II, pope (999–1003), 213
Synod of 754, 62
Syria, 83, 205, 269, 390, 496

al-Tabari (839–923), 3, 171–73
Taj al-Mulk, 244
Tale of Bayad and Riyad (early 13th cent.), 344
Tangiers, 451
Tarnov, 411
Tedald, bishop of Milan, 251
"Templar of Tyre" (*c.*1255–bef. 1343), 393, 473
Testament (1226), 371, 375
Testamentary Rule (1214), 310–11, 375
Theodemir, 79
Theodora, empress (r.1042), 200–1
Theodoric, king, 41
Theodosian Code (438), 3, 4, 228
Theodosius I, emp. (r.379–395), 12
Theodosius II, emp. (r.408–450), 4, 41
"Theophanes Continuatus," 198
There Came a Voice (mid-10th cent.), 208
Thietmar, bishop of Merseburg (r.1009–1018), 218–19, 264
Third Council of Toledo (589), 44
Thomas Aquinas (*c.*1225–1274), saint, 439–40, 441
Thrace, 411
Thuringia, 93
Tigris River, 171
Toghril Beg Mohammad, sultan (r.1040–1063), 241
Toledo, 44
Tordesillas, 496
Tournai, 444
Tours, 38, 48
Translation of Johannitius's *Isagoge* (bef. 1098), 280
Travels (bef. 1368), 451
Treatise Detailing the Circumstances of Students and the Rules Governing Teachers and Students (bef. 1012), 210
Treaty of Tudmir (713), 78
Tribe Has Departed (*c.*692), 82–83
Trier, 28, 378
Troyes, 356
Tudmir. *See* Theodemir
Tunisia, 196
Turkestan, 210
Tyler Wat (d.1381), 479
Tyre, 393

Uberto de Iniquitate, 412
Ukraine, 404
Ulfila, 11
Unam sanctam (1302), 438
Universal History (bef. 1318), 381, **XV**
Urban II, pope (1088–1099), 261, 263, 269
Utrecht, 224

Valdès. *See* Waldo, Peter
Valenciennes, 468
Valladolid, 427
Variae (*State Papers*) (*c.*507–536), 41
Vasily I, grand prince of Moscow, 460
Vejle, 231
Veliko Tarnovo. *See* Tarnov
Venice, 457, 465–66
Ventadorn, 350, 353
Verdun, 128
Vesting Prayers (*c.*1000?), 257–58
Vienne, 43
Visitation Record (1268), 259
Vistula River, 218
Vouillé, 41

Waldo, Peter (d.*c.*1207), 371, 375
Wales, 320
Wamba, king (r.672–680), 132
Wat Tyler's Rebellion (after 1381), 479
Wearmouth-Jarrow, 95
Werner von Orseln, 407
Wessex, 92
When I see the lark (*c.*1147–after 1172), 350
Whitby, 95
William, count of Poitou (r.*c.*995–1030), 190
William (875–918), duke of Aquitaine, 184
William (d.1087), duke of Normandy, 271, 272, 275, **VI**
William (Dhuoda's son) (d.850), 128
William de la Zouche, archbishop of York (r.1342–1352), 452
William of Champeaux (d.1121), 279
William of Jumièges, 271, 272, 274–75
William of Saint-Thierry, 284
Willibert, archbishop of Cologne, 151
Witigis, king, 41
Witiza, king (r.698–710), 132
Worcester, 272
Worms, 253, 255, 264
World Chart (1500), 496, **VIII–IX (Plate 5)**
Wulfstan, archbishop of York (r.1002–1023), 229
Wulfstan (d.1095), bishop of Worcester, 272
Wyclif, John, 488
Wynfrith. *See* Boniface, saint

Yaghi Siyan, emir, 269
Yaroslav the Wise, prince of Kiev (r.1019–1054), 222
York, 229, 452

al-Zahir (d.1216), 294
Zibatra, 124
Zoe, empress (r.1042), 200–1
Zoe and Theodora (bef. 1063), 200